

# PROJECT MANUAL | SPECIFICATIONS



## OAKTON COLLEGE SKOKIE CAMPUS LIBRARY & LEARNING COMONS

7701 LINCOLN AVE  
SKOKIE, IL 60077

ISSUED FOR BIDDING  
SEPTEMBER 20, 2023

UrbanWorks

Architecture  
Interiors  
Planning

UrbanWorks, Ltd.  
125 S. Clark Street  
Suite 2070  
Chicago, IL 60603

T 312.202.1200  
urbanworksarchitecture.com

UW P2224 OAKTON COLLEGE SKOKIE  
CAMPUS LIBRARY & LEARNING  
COMMONS

20 SEPT 2023

ISSUED FOR BIDDING

**SECTION 00 01 01  
PROJECT TITLE PAGE**

**PROJECT MANUAL**

**FOR**

**OAKTON COLLEGE SKOKIE CAMPUS LIBRARY & LEARNING COMMONS**

**ARCHITECT'S PROJECT NUMBER: P2224.**

**OAKTON COLLEGE  
7701 LINCOLN AVE  
PROJECT LOCATION ADDRESS 2  
SKOKIE, ILLINOIS 60077**

**DATE: 20-SEP-2023**

**PREPARED BY:  
URBANWORKS, LTD.**

**END OF SECTION 00 01 01**

This page intentionally left blank

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

### DIVISION 00 - PROCUREMENT AND CONTRACTING REQUIREMENTS

00 01 01	PROJECT TITLE PAGE	1
00 01 02	PROJECT INFORMATION	1
00 01 03	PROJECT DIRECTORY	2
00 26 00	PROCUREMENT SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES	2
00 31 00	AVAILABLE PROJECT INFORMATION	1
00 41 00	BID FORM	4
00 43 25	SUBSTITUTION REQUEST FORM - DURING PROCUREMENT	1
00 50 00	CONTRACTING FORMS AND SUPPLEMENTS	2

### DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

01 10 00	SUMMARY	3
01 20 00	PRICE AND PAYMENT PROCEDURES	5
01 21 00	ALLOWANCES	1
01 22 00	UNIT PRICES	2
01 23 00	ALTERNATES	3
01 25 00	SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES	4
01 26 00	CONTRACT MODIFICATION PROCEDURES	2
01 30 00	ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS	6
01 32 16	CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS SCHEDULE	2
01 33 00	SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES	7
01 40 00	QUALITY REQUIREMENTS	5
01 41 00	REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS	1
01 42 16	DEFINITIONS	1
01 42 19	REFERENCE STANDARDS	6
01 50 00	TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS	2
01 60 00	PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS	3
01 70 00	EXECUTION AND CLOSEOUT REQUIREMENTS	7
01 78 00	CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS	3
01 79 00	DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING	3

### DIVISION 02 - EXISTING CONDITIONS

02 41 00	DEMOLITION	4
----------	------------	---

### DIVISION 03 - CONCRETE

03 30 00	CAST IN PLACE CONCRETE	15
----------	------------------------	----

### DIVISION 04 - MASONRY

04 20 00	UNIT MASONRY	13
----------	--------------	----

### DIVISION 05 - METALS

05 12 00	STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING	7
05 31 00	STEEL DECKING	5
05 50 00	METAL FABRICATIONS	1
05 58 13	COLUMN COVERS	2

<b>DIVISION 06 - WOOD, PLASTICS, AND COMPOSITES</b>		
<b>06 10 53</b>	<b>MISCELLANEOUS ROUGH CARPENTRY</b>	<b>4</b>
<b>06 41 00</b>	<b>ARCHITECTURAL WOOD CASEWORK</b>	<b>7</b>
<b>06 42 00</b>	<b>WOOD PANELING</b>	<b>2</b>
<b>DIVISION 07 - THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION</b>		
<b>07 21 00</b>	<b>THERMAL INSULATION</b>	<b>2</b>
<b>07 81 00</b>	<b>APPLIED FIRE PROTECTION</b>	<b>3</b>
<b>07 84 00</b>	<b>FIRESTOPPING</b>	<b>3</b>
<b>07 92 00</b>	<b>JOINT SEALANTS</b>	<b>4</b>
<b>DIVISION 08 - OPENINGS</b>		
<b>08 11 13</b>	<b>HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES</b>	<b>9</b>
<b>08 11 16</b>	<b>ALUMINUM DOORS AND FRAMES</b>	<b>2</b>
<b>08 14 16</b>	<b>FLUSH WOOD DOORS</b>	<b>5</b>
<b>08 41 26</b>	<b>ALL-GLASS ENTRANCES AND STOREFRONTS</b>	<b>4</b>
<b>08 71 00</b>	<b>DOOR HARDWARE</b>	<b>13</b>
<b>08 80 00</b>	<b>GLAZING</b>	<b>6</b>
<b>08 87 00</b>	<b>GLAZING FILM</b>	<b>5</b>
<b>DIVISION 09 - FINISHES</b>		
<b>09 05 61</b>	<b>COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR FLOORING PREPARATION</b>	<b>4</b>
<b>09 21 16</b>	<b>GYPSUM BOARD ASSEMBLIES</b>	<b>8</b>
<b>09 30 00</b>	<b>TILING</b>	<b>7</b>
<b>09 51 00</b>	<b>ACOUSTICAL CEILINGS</b>	<b>3</b>
<b>09 54 26</b>	<b>SUSPENDED WOOD CEILINGS</b>	<b>3</b>
<b>09 65 00</b>	<b>RESILIENT FLOORING</b>	<b>3</b>
<b>09 68 13</b>	<b>TILE CARPETING</b>	<b>3</b>
<b>09 84 30</b>	<b>SOUND-ABSORBING WALL AND CEILING UNITS</b>	<b>4</b>
<b>09 91 23</b>	<b>INTERIOR PAINTING</b>	<b>6</b>
<b>09 93 00</b>	<b>STAINING AND TRANSPARENT FINISHING</b>	<b>2</b>
<b>DIVISION 10 - SPECIALTIES</b>		
<b>10 11 00</b>	<b>VISUAL DISPLAY UNITS</b>	<b>2</b>
<b>10 14 19</b>	<b>DIMENSIONAL LETTER SIGNAGE</b>	<b>2</b>
<b>10 23 10</b>	<b>GLAZED INTERIOR WALL AND DOOR ASSEMBLIES</b>	<b>5</b>
<b>10 44 00</b>	<b>FIRE PROTECTION SPECIALTIES</b>	<b>3</b>
<b>10 51 29</b>	<b>PHENOLIC LOCKERS</b>	<b>3</b>
<b>DIVISION 11 - EQUIPMENT</b>		
<b>11 30 13</b>	<b>RESIDENTIAL APPLIANCES</b>	<b>2</b>
<b>11 51 00</b>	<b>LIBRARY EQUIPMENT</b>	<b>2</b>
<b>DIVISION 12 - FURNISHINGS</b>		
<b>12 24 00</b>	<b>WINDOW SHADES</b>	<b>3</b>
<b>12 36 00</b>	<b>COUNTERTOPS</b>	<b>4</b>
<b>DIVISION 14 - CONVEYING EQUIPMENT</b>		

14 24 00	HYDRAULIC ELEVATORS	13
<b>DIVISION 21 - FIRE SUPPRESSION</b>		
21 05 17	SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING	3
21 05 23	GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR WATER-BASED FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING	4
21 05 29	HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR FIRE SUPPRESSION PIPING AND EQUIPMENT	5
21 11 19	FIRE DEPARTMENT CONNECTIONS	1
21 13 13	WET PIPE SPRINKER SYSTEMS	8
<b>DIVISION 22 - PLUMBING</b>		
22 05 17	SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR PLUMBING PIPING	3
22 05 19	METERS AND GAGES FOR PLUMBING PIPING	6
22 05 18	ESCUTCHEONS FOR PLUMBING PIPING	2
22 05 23.12	BALL VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING	4
22 05 23.14	CHECK VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING	4
22 05 29	HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT	8
22 05 53	IDENTIFICATION FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT	3
22 05 93	TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR PLUMBING	8
22 07 19	PLUMBING PIPING INSULATION	12
22 09 00	INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC	14
22 11 16	DOMESTIC WATER PIPING	6
22 11 19	DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SPECIALTIES	6
22 13 16	SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING	6
22 13 19.13	SANITARY DRAINS	2
22 14 29	SUMP PUMPS	4
<b>DIVISION 23 - HEATING, VENTILATING, AND AIR-CONDITIONING (HVAC)</b>		
23 05 13	COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT	2
23 05 18	ESCUTCHEONS FOR HVAC PIPING	2
23 05 29	HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT	8
23 05 53	IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT	3
23 05 93	TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC	12
23 07 13	DUCT INSULATION	13
23 31 13	METAL DUCTS	12
23 33 00	AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES	7
23 33 46	FLEXIBLE DUCTS	3
23 36 00	AIR TERMINAL UNITS	6
23 37 13.13	AIR DIFFUSERS	4
23 37 13.23	REGISTERS AND GRILLES	2
<b>DIVISION 26 - ELECTRICAL</b>		
26 00 10	SUPPLEMENTAL REQUIREMENTS FOR ELECTRICAL	17
26 05 19	LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND	5

	<b>CABLES</b>	
26 05 26	GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS	4
26 05 29	HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS	4
26 05 33	RACEWAY AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS	11
26 05 44	SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR ELECTRICAL RACEWAYS AND CABLING	3
26 05 53	IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS	7
26 09 23	LIGHTING CONTROL DEVICES	4
26 09 36	MODULAR DIMMING CONTROLS	4
26 27 26	WIRING DEVICES	10
26 28 16	ENCLOSED SWITCHES AND CIRCUIT BREAKERS	8
26 51 19	LED INTERIOR LIGHTING	8
26 52 13	EMERGENCY AND EXIT LIGHTING	5
	<b>DIVISION 27 - COMMUNICATIONS</b>	
27 05 26	GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS	6
27 05 28	PATHWAYS FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS	7
27 05 29	HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS	4
27 05 53	IDENTIFICATION FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS	6
27 11 00	COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT ROOM FITTINGS	4
27 11 16	COMMUNICATIONS RACKS, FRAMES, AND ENCLOSURES	5
27 13 13	COMMUNICATIONS COPPER BACKBONE CABLING	11
27 15 13	COMMUNICATIONS COPPER HORIZONTAL CABLING	9
	<b>DIVISION 28 - ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY</b>	
28 20 00	VIDEO SURVEILLANCE	8
28 46 21.11	ADDRESSABLE FIRE-ALARM SYSTEMS	4

**SECTION 00 01 02  
PROJECT INFORMATION**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 PROJECT IDENTIFICATION**

- A. Project Name: Oakton College Skokie Campus Library & Learning Commons, located at: 7701 Lincoln Ave, Skokie, IL 60077.
- B. Architect's Project Number: P2224.
- C. The Owner, hereinafter referred to as Owner: Oakton Community College
  - 1. Sales Tax Exemption Number: \_\_\_\_\_.
- D. Architect: UrbanWorks Ltd., 125 S. Clark Street; Suite 2070 Chicago, IL 60603

**1.02 PROJECT DESCRIPTION**

- A. Summary Project Description: The work of Project is defined by the Contract Documents and consists of the following.
  - 1. Contract Scope: Construction, demolition, and renovation.
    - a. Renovation: Work includes demolition, new walls, interior glazing system, doors, flooring, ceilings, finishes, acoustical panels, millwork, lighting, mechanical, fire protection, electrical, plumbing, audio visual, and technology scopes. Refer to Drawings.
- B. Contract Terms: Lump sum (fixed price, stipulated sum).

**1.03 PROJECT CONSULTANTS**

- A. The Architect, hereinafter referred to as Architect: UrbanWorks Ltd..
  - 1. Address: 125 S. Clark Street; Suite 2070 .
  - 2. City, State, Zip: Chicago, IL, 60603.

**1.04 PROCUREMENT DOCUMENTS**

- A. Availability of Documents: Complete sets of procurement documents may be obtained:
  - 1. Documents may be viewed at Owner's procurement website:  
<https://www.oakton.edu/about/offices-and-departments/business-and-financial-services/procurement.php>.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS (NOT USED)**

**PART 3 EXECUTION (NOT USED)**

**END OF SECTION 00 01 02**



This page intentionally left blank

**SECTION 00 01 03  
PROJECT DIRECTORY**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Identification of project team members and their contact information.

**1.02 OWNER:**

- A. Name: Oakton College
- B. Primary Contact: All correspondence from the Contractor to the Architect will be through this party, unless alternate arrangements are mutually agreed upon at preconstruction meeting.
1. Title: Owner's Representative.
  2. Name: Jamie Boller.
  3. Company: Cotter Consulting
  4. Telephone: (312) 835-2142

**1.03 CONSULTANTS:**

- A. Architect: Design Professional of Record. All correspondence from the Contractor regarding construction documents authored by Architect's consultants will be through this party, unless alternate arrangements are mutually agreed upon at preconstruction meeting.
1. Company Name: UrbanWorks, Ltd..
    - a. Address Line 1: 125 S. Clark St.
    - b. City: Chicago.
    - c. State: IL.
    - d. Zip Code: 60603.
    - e. Telephone: (312) 202-1200.
  2. Primary Contact:
    - a. Title: Senior Project Manager.
- B. Structural Engineering Consultant:
1. Company Name: David Mason & Associates.
    - a. Address Line 1: 333 S. Desplaines Street.
    - b. Address Line 2: Suite 200.
    - c. City: Chicago.
    - d. State: IL.
    - e. Zip Code: 60661.
    - f. Telephone: (312) 884-5100.
  2. Primary Contact:
    - a. Title: VP, Structural Engineering.
    - b. Name: Mark Zahn.
    - c. Email: mzahn@davidmason.com.
- C. Mechanical Engineering Consultant - Fire Suppression, Plumbing, HVAC, Electrical, Communications, & Electronic Safety & Security:
1. Company Name: MEPIS, Inc.
    - a. Address Line 1: 36 S Wabash Ave, Suite 310.
    - b. City: Chicago.
    - c. State: IL.
    - d. Zip Code: 60603.
    - e. Telephone: (312) 279 -1185.
    - f. Fax:(312) 279-1186.
  2. Primary Contact:
    - a. Name: Gustavo Zarazua.
    - b. Title: Senior Mechanical Engineer..
    - c. Email: gzarazua@mepisinc.com.

UW P2224 OAKTON COLLEGE SKOKIE  
CAMPUS LIBRARY & LEARNING  
COMMONS

20 SEPT 2023

ISSUED FOR BIDDING

**PART 2 PRODUCTS - NOT USED**

**PART 3 EXECUTION - NOT USED**

**END OF SECTION 00 01 03**

**SECTION 00 26 00  
PROCUREMENT SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Procurement Substitution Requests: Requests for changes in products, materials, equipment, and methods of construction from those indicated in the Procurement and Contracting Documents, submitted prior to receipt of bids.
- B. Substitution Requests: Requests for changes in products, materials, equipment, and methods of construction from those indicated in the Contract Documents, submitted following Contract award. See Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" for conditions under which Substitution requests will be considered following Contract award.

**1.02 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Compatibility of Substitutions: Investigate and document compatibility of proposed substitution with related products and materials. Engage a qualified testing agency to perform compatibility tests recommended by manufacturers.

**1.03 PROCUREMENT SUBSTITUTIONS**

- A. Procurement Substitutions, General: By submitting a bid, the Bidder represents that its bid is based on materials and equipment described in the Procurement and Contracting Documents, including Addenda. Bidders are encouraged to request approval of qualifying substitute materials and equipment when the Specifications Sections list materials and equipment by product or manufacturer name.
- B. Procurement Substitution Requests will be received and considered by Owner when the following conditions are satisfied, as determined by Architect; otherwise requests will be returned without action:
  - 1. Extensive revisions to the Contract Documents are not required.
  - 2. Proposed changes are in keeping with the general intent of the Contract Documents, including the level of quality of the Work represented by the requirements therein.
  - 3. The request is fully documented and properly submitted.

**1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Procurement Substitution Request: Submit to Owner during the Procurement phase. Procurement Substitution Request must be made in writing by prime contract Bidder only in compliance with the following requirements:
  - 1. Requests for substitution of materials and equipment will be considered if received no later than 10 days prior to date of bid opening.
  - 2. Submittal Format: Submit PDF copy of each written Procurement Substitution Request, using CSI Substitution Request Form 1.5C.
  - 3. Submittal Format: Submit Procurement Substitution Request, using format provided on Project Web site.
    - a. Identify the product or the fabrication or installation method to be replaced in each request. Include related Specifications Sections and drawing numbers.
    - b. Provide complete documentation on both the product specified and the proposed substitute, including the following information as appropriate:
      - 1) Point-by-point comparison of specified and proposed substitute product data, fabrication drawings, and installation procedures.
      - 2) Copies of current, independent third-party test data of salient product or system characteristics.
      - 3) Samples where applicable or when requested by Architect.
      - 4) Detailed comparison of significant qualities of the proposed substitute with those of the Work specified. Significant qualities may include attributes such as performance, weight, size, durability, visual effect, sustainable design characteristics, warranties, and specific features and requirements indicated. Indicate deviations, if any, from the Work specified.

- 5) Material test reports from a qualified testing agency indicating and interpreting test results for compliance with requirements indicated.
  - 6) Research reports, where applicable, evidencing compliance with building code in effect for Project, from ICC-ES or similar
  - 7) Coordination information, including a list of changes or modifications needed to other parts of the Work and to construction performed by Owner and separate contractors, which will become necessary to accommodate the proposed substitute.
- c. Provide certification by manufacturer that the substitute proposed is equal to or superior to that required by the Procurement and Contracting Documents, and that its in-place performance will be equal to or superior to the product or equipment specified in the application indicated.
  - d. Bidder, in submitting the Procurement Substitution Request, waives the right to additional payment or an extension of Contract Time because of the failure of the substitute to perform as represented in the Procurement Substitution Request.
- B. Architect's Action:
1. Architect may request additional information or documentation necessary for evaluation of the Procurement Substitution Request. Architect will notify all bidders of acceptance of the proposed substitute by means of an Addendum to the Procurement and Contracting Documents.
- C. Architect's approval of a substitute during bidding does not relieve Contractor of the responsibility to submit required shop drawings and to comply with all other requirements of the Contract Documents.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS - NOT USED**

**PART 3 EXECUTION - NOT USED**

**END OF SECTION 00 26 00**

**SECTION 00 31 00  
AVAILABLE PROJECT INFORMATION**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 EXISTING CONDITIONS**

- A. Certain information relating to existing surface and subsurface conditions and structures is available to bidders but will not be part of Contract Documents, as follows:
- B. Geotechnical Report: Entitled "Geotechnical Engineering Report- Proposed OCC Skokie Campus Elevator" by ECS Midwest, LLC, dated August 18, 2023 ECS Project Number 16:9836-I.
  - 1. The report is included as an appendix to this project manual
  - 2. This report identifies properties of below grade conditions and offers recommendations for the design of foundations, prepared primarily for the use of Architect.
  - 3. The recommendations described shall not be construed as a requirement of this Contract, unless specifically referenced in Contract Documents.
  - 4. This report, by its nature, cannot reveal all conditions that exist on the site. Should subsurface conditions be found to vary substantially from this report, changes in the design and construction of foundations will be made, with resulting credits or expenditures to the Contract Sum accruing to Owner.

**1.02 PERMITS**

- A. Owner is obtaining the following permits and/or approvals, that are required to be secured prior to commencement of construction work on this project.:
  - 1. Building Permit.
- B. The Contractor will assist the Owner in obtaining the permit by providing any necessary contractor information or AHJ-required certifications. Typically, permits and fees are not required for community colleges. However, if needed, the contractor would be required to work with the College to obtain the required permits and fees. For the purposes of submitting a bid, do not include an amount for permits and fees. Payment of any required permits or fees will be paid directly by the College or as a project change order to the winning contractor.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS (NOT USED)**

**PART 3 EXECUTION (NOT USED)**

**END OF SECTION 00 31 00**

This page intentionally left blank

**SECTION 00 41 00  
BID FORM**

**THE PROJECT AND THE PARTIES**

**1.01 TO:**

- A. Oakton College (Owner)
  - 1. 7701 Lincoln Ave
  - 2. Skokie, Illinois 60077

**1.02 FOR:**

- A. Project: Oakton College Skokie Campus Library & Learning Commons
  - 1. 7701 Lincoln Ave
  - 2. Skokie, Illinois 60077

**1.03 DATE:**

- A. \_\_\_\_\_ (Bidder enter date)

**1.04 SUBMITTED BY:**

- A. Bidder's Full Name \_\_\_\_\_
  - 1. Address \_\_\_\_\_
  - 2. City, State, Zip \_\_\_\_\_

**1.05 OFFER**

- A. Having carefully examined the Place of The Work and all matters referred to in the Instructions to Bidders and the Bid Documents prepared by UrbanWorks, Ltd for the above mentioned project, we, the undersigned, hereby offer to enter into a Contract to perform the Work for the Sum of:
- B. \_\_\_\_\_ dollars  
( \$ \_\_\_\_\_ ), in lawful money of the United States of America.
- C. We have provided a Bid Bond with this Bid in the amount of 10% of the Bid total amount.
- D. We will provide the required payment & performance assurance bonds in the Bid Amount as required by the Instructions to Bidders.
  - 1. The cost of the required performance assurance bonds is \_\_\_\_\_ dollars  
( \$ \_\_\_\_\_ ), in lawful money of the United States of America.
  - 2. No federal, State of Illinois or local taxes are included, as the project is tax-exempt.

**1.06 ACCEPTANCE**

- A. This offer shall be open to acceptance and is irrevocable for ninety (90) days from the bid closing date.
- B. If this bid is accepted by Owner within the time period stated above, we will:
  - 1. Execute the Agreement within ten days of receipt of Notice of Award.
  - 2. Furnish the required bonds within ten days of receipt of Notice of Award.
- C. If this bid is accepted within the time stated, and we fail to commence the Work or we fail to provide the required Bond(s), the security deposit shall be forfeited as damages to Owner by reason of our failure, limited in amount to the lesser of the face value of the or the difference between this bid and the bid upon which a Contract is signed.
- D. In the event our bid is not accepted within the time stated above, the required Bid Bond shall be returned to the undersigned, in accordance with the provisions of the Instructions to Bidders; unless a mutually satisfactory arrangement is made for its retention and validity for an extended period of time.



**1.07 CONTRACT TIME**

- A. If this Bid is accepted, we will:
- B. Complete the Work to Substantial Completion for partial occupancy in twenty-two (22) calendar weeks from Notice to Proceed.
- C. Complete the Work to Final Completion of the Work with complete occupancy by November 26th, 2024.
- D. Partial Occupancy will be construed as completion of all Work other than the elevator installation and associated finishes around the elevator, per the Construction Documents.
- E. We understand that the Owner must commence move-in by July 8th, 2024. Substantial Completion for partial occupancy shall be defined as all spaces, other than those affected by subsequent installation and operational testing of the elevator, being ready for Owner move in and occupancy.

**1.08 UNIT PRICES**

- A. The following are Unit Prices for specific portions of the Work as listed, for use in governing costs for potential changes in the Work. See associated drawings and specifications. Unit prices are NOT included in the Bid Sum. The following is the list of Unit Prices:

<b>No.</b>	<b>ITEM DESCRIPTION</b>	<b>UNIT QUANTITY</b>	<b>UNIT PRICE</b>
1	Contaminated soils (not Clean Construction Debris)	cu yd	\$ _____
2	Unsuitable soils & required engineered fill	cu yd	\$ _____
3	Additional foundation concrete per specs w reinforcing	cu yd	\$ _____
5	Additional interior wall painting	sq ft	\$ _____
7	Additional wall or ceiling mounted illuminated exit signs	ea	\$ _____
8	Additional fire alarm A/V notification appliance	ea	\$ _____
9	Additional ceiling mounted 360 security camera	ea	\$ _____
10	Additional ceiling mounted smoke detector	ea	\$ _____
11	Additional typical concealed sprinkler head and cover	ea	\$ _____
12	Additional wall mounted duplex power outlet and cover	ea	\$ _____
13	Additional wall mounted single port CAT 6 flush data jack & cover	ea	\$ _____

**1.09 CHANGES TO THE WORK**

- A. When Architect establishes that the method of valuation for Changes in the Work will be net cost plus a percentage fee in accordance with General Conditions, our percentage fee will be:
  - 1. \_\_\_\_\_ percent overhead and profit on the net cost of our own Work;
  - 2. \_\_\_\_\_ percent on the cost of work done by any Subcontractor.
  - 3. Deduct change orders crediting to the owner for work deleted from the Contract will use the same percentages.

**1.10 ADDENDA**

- A. The following Addenda have been received. The modifications to the Bid Documents noted below have been considered and all costs are included in the Bid Sum.
  - 1. Addendum # \_\_\_\_\_ Dated \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 2. Addendum # \_\_\_\_\_ Dated \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 3. Addendum # \_\_\_\_\_ Dated \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 4. Addendum # \_\_\_\_\_ Dated \_\_\_\_\_.

**1.11 ALTERNATES**

- A. The following list of Alternates is based on Specification Section 01 23 00 Alternates- See Alternates Section for a detailed description of the Alternates and procedures for pricing. Alternates are NOT included in the Bid Sum.

<b>No.</b>	<b>DESCRIPTION</b>	<b>AMOUNT</b>
1	Exterior Wall Interior Drywall Replacement	\$ _____
2a	Delete Linear Wood Ceiling -1st floor only	\$ _____
2b	Delete Linear Wood Ceiling - both 1st and 2nd floor	\$ _____
3	Delete Suspended Acoustic Baffles & Associated Suspended Light Fixtures	\$ _____
4	Delete Wood Cladding from Elevator Shaft Enclosure 1st Floor Welcome Center and 2nd Floor Circulation & Reference Desk	\$ _____
5	Millwork: Install Plastic Laminate in Lieu of Wood Veneer 1st Floor Welcome Center and 2nd Floor Circulation & Reference Desk	\$ _____
6	Millwork: Install Plastic Laminate in Lieu of Engineered Quartz Countertops 2nd Floor Interior Glass Walls: Install conventional Drywall partitions & Soild Core Wood Veneer Doors in Hollow Metal Frames w/ Glass Sidelites: Huddle	\$ _____
7	204, Focus 205, Classroom 206, Tutoring Office 214 & Library Office 216 HVAC- Reduce the Quantity of VAV Boxes and Fan Powered Boxes to be	\$ _____
8	Replaced with New	\$ _____
9	Reduce AV & Data infrastructure in Huddle Room A202 & Focus Room A203 Install Tinted Acrylic Glazing in Sidelights of Doors in Frame Type "F2" in Lieu of Indicated Tempered Laminated Glazing with Surface Applied Privacy Film	\$ _____
10	per Plans.	\$ _____
11	Floor Slab Excess Moisture or pH Mitigation	\$ _____

**1.12 BID FORM SUPPLEMENTS**

- A. The following information is included with Bid submission:

**PARTICIPATING SUBCONTRACTORS**

<b>TRADE</b>	<b>NAME OF SUB</b>	<b>ADDRESS</b>	<b>PHONE</b>
_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____

- B. The following Supplements are attached to this Bid Form and are considered an integral part of this Bid Form:

1. Document 00 43 25 - Substitution Request Form - During Procurement, only if we are requesting a procurement phase substitution.
2. Our company profile, with information as requested in the Owner's Advertisement for Bid.
3. Our qualifications statement, demonstrating compliance with the qualifications requirements in the Owner's Advertisement for Bid, Including:
  - a. a list of at least four (4) similar projects completed in the past 2 years, and contact information for active references for these projects.
  - b. also, a list of at least five (5) references (with contact name and email addresses) for whom we have performed similar services as this Work.

- c. a sample ACORD certificate of insurance demonstrating we meet the project insurance requirements.
  - d. Bonding company information, including company name and risk rating.
  - e. Proof that we are a duly licensed contractor for the type of work of the Project in this jurisdiction, and that all fees, applications, etc. pursuant to submitting this proof have been paid in full & completed.
4. All other documents or descriptions needed to demonstrate fulfillment of the requirements of the Owner's Advertisement for Bid.

**1.13 BID FORM SIGNATURE(S)**

The Corporate Seal of

\_\_\_\_\_

(Bidder - print the full name of your firm)

was hereunto affixed in the presence of:

\_\_\_\_\_

(Authorized signing officer, Title)

(Seal)

\_\_\_\_\_

(Authorized signing officer, Title)

**END OF SECTION 00 41 00**

UW P2224 OAKTON COLLEGE SKOKIE  
CAMPUS LIBRARY & LEARNING  
COMMONS

20 SEPT 2023

ISSUED FOR BIDDING

**SECTION 00 43 25**  
**SUBSTITUTION REQUEST FORM - DURING PROCUREMENT**  
**END OF SECTION 00 43 25**

**CSI Form 1.5C**

**SUBSTITUTION  
REQUEST  
(During the Bid Period)**

Project: \_\_\_\_\_ Substitution Request Number: \_\_\_\_\_

From: \_\_\_\_\_

To: \_\_\_\_\_ Date: \_\_\_\_\_

A/E Project Number: \_\_\_\_\_

Re: \_\_\_\_\_ Contract For: \_\_\_\_\_

Specification Title: \_\_\_\_\_ Description: \_\_\_\_\_

Section: \_\_\_\_\_ Page: \_\_\_\_\_ Article/Paragraph: \_\_\_\_\_

Proposed Substitution: \_\_\_\_\_

Manufacturer: \_\_\_\_\_ Address: \_\_\_\_\_ Phone: \_\_\_\_\_

Trade Name: \_\_\_\_\_ Model No.: \_\_\_\_\_

Attached data includes product description, specifications, drawings, photographs, and performance and test data adequate for evaluation of the request; applicable portions of the data are clearly identified.

Attached data also includes a description of changes to the Contract Documents that the proposed substitution will require for its proper installation.

The Undersigned certifies:

- Proposed substitution has been fully investigated and determined to be equal or superior in all respects to specified product.
- Same warranty will be furnished for proposed substitution as for specified product.
- Same maintenance service and source of replacement parts, as applicable, is available.
- Proposed substitution will have no adverse effect on other trades and will not affect or delay progress schedule.
- Proposed substitution does not affect dimensions and functional clearances.
- Payment will be made for changes to building design, including A/E design, detailing, and construction costs caused by the substitution.

Submitted by: \_\_\_\_\_

Signed by: \_\_\_\_\_

Firm: \_\_\_\_\_

Address: \_\_\_\_\_

Telephone: \_\_\_\_\_

**A/E's REVIEW AND ACTION**

- Substitution approved - Make submittals in accordance with Specification Section 01 25 00 Substitution Procedures.
- Substitution approved as noted - Make submittals in accordance with Specification Section 01 25 00 Substitution Procedures.
- Substitution rejected - Use specified materials.
- Substitution Request received too late - Use specified materials.

Signed by: \_\_\_\_\_ Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Supporting Data Attached:  Drawings  Product Data  Samples  Tests  Reports  \_\_\_\_\_

**SECTION 00 50 00  
CONTRACTING FORMS AND SUPPLEMENTS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 CONTRACTOR IS RESPONSIBLE FOR OBTAINING A VALID LICENSE TO USE ALL  
COPYRIGHTED DOCUMENTS SPECIFIED BUT NOT INCLUDED IN THE PROJECT MANUAL.**

**1.02 AGREEMENT AND CONDITIONS OF THE CONTRACT**

- A. The Agreement is based on AIA A101.
- B. The General Conditions are based on AIA A201.

**1.03 FORMS**

- A. Use the following forms for the specified purposes unless otherwise indicated elsewhere in Contract Documents.
- B. Bond Forms:
  - 1. Bid Bond Form: AIA A310.
  - 2. Performance and Payment Bond Form: AIA A312.
- C. Post-Award Certificates and Other Forms:
  - 1. Certificate of Insurance Form: ACORD Certificate of Insurance 25.
  - 2. Schedule of Values Form: AIA G703.
  - 3. Application for Payment Forms: AIA G702 with AIA G703 (for Contractors).
- D. Clarification and Modification Forms:
  - 1. Request for Interpretation Form: Contractor's standard.
  - 2. Substitution Request Form: CSI/CSC Form 1.5C (During the Bidding/Negotiating Stage).
  - 3. Substitution Request Form: CSI/CSC Form 13.1A (After the Bidding/Negotiating Stage).
  - 4. Architect's Supplemental Instructions Form: AIA G710.
  - 5. Construction Change Directive Form: AIA G714.
  - 6. Work Changes Proposal Request Form: AIA G709-2001.
  - 7. Change Order Form: AIA G701.
- E. Closeout Forms:
  - 1. Certificate of Substantial Completion Form: AIA G704.

**1.04 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. AIA A101 - Standard Form of Agreement Between Owner and Contractor where the basis of Payment is a Stipulated Sum 2017.
- B. AIA A201 - General Conditions of the Contract for Construction 2017.
- C. AIA A310 - Bid Bond 2010.
- D. AIA A312 - Performance Bond and Payment Bond 2010.
- E. AIA G701 - Change Order 2017.
- F. AIA G702 - Application and Certificate for Payment 1992.
- G. AIA G703 - Continuation Sheet 1992.
- H. AIA G704 - Certificate of Substantial Completion 2017.
- I. AIA G709-2001 - Proposal Request 2001.
- J. AIA G710 - Architect's Supplemental Instructions 2017.
- K. AIA G714 - Construction Change Directive 2017.
- L. CSI/CSC Form 1.5C - Substitution Request (During the Bidding/Negotiating Stage) Current Edition.
- M. CSI/CSC Form 13.1A - Substitution Request (After the Bidding/Negotiating Phase) Current Edition.

UW P2224 OAKTON COLLEGE SKOKIE  
CAMPUS LIBRARY & LEARNING  
COMMONS

20 SEPT 2023

ISSUED FOR BIDDING

**PART 2 PRODUCTS - NOT USED**

**PART 3 EXECUTION - NOT USED**

**END OF SECTION 00 50 00**

**SECTION 01 10 00  
SUMMARY**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 PROJECT**

- A. Project Name: Oakton College Skokie Campus Library & Learning Commons
- B. Owner's Name: Oakton Community College.
- C. Architect's Name: UrbanWorks Ltd.
- D. Additional Project contact information is specified in Section 00 01 03 - Project Directory.
- E. The Project consists of the alteration of Oakton Community College Skokie Campus Learning Center.

**1.02 CONTRACT DESCRIPTION**

- A. Contract Type: A single prime contract based on a Stipulated Price as described in Document 00 52 00 - Agreement Form.

**1.03 DESCRIPTION OF ALTERATIONS WORK**

- A. Scope of demolition and removal work is indicated on drawings and specified in Section 02 41 00.
- B. The Work of Project is defined by the Contract Documents and consists of the following
  - 1. Renovation of existing and adjoining spaces per documents/ drawings. Work includes demolition, new walls, interior glazing systems, doors, flooring, ceilings, finishes, acoustical panels, millwork, lighting, mechanical, fire protection, electrical, plumbing, audio visual, security, and technology scopes. Refer to Drawings for further information.

**1.04 WORK BY OWNER**

- A. Items noted NIC (Not in Contract) will be supplied and installed by Owner before Date of Substantial Completion. Some items include:
  - 1. Movable cabinets.
  - 2. Furnishings.
  - 3. Small equipment.
- B. Owner will supply and install the following:
  - 1. Classroom technology equipment in accordance with Oakton College Classroom Technologies Standards, latest version.
- C. Owner will supply the following for installation by Contractor:
  - 1. Ceiling mounted video projector in classroom A204.
  - 2. Other items in accordance with Oakton College Classroom Technologies Standards (latest version) and Oakton College Conference Room Technologies Standards, latest version.

**1.05 OWNER OCCUPANCY**

- A. Owner intends to occupy the Project upon Substantial Completion.
- B. Cooperate with Owner to minimize conflict and to facilitate Owner's operations.
- C. Schedule the Work to accommodate Owner occupancy.
- D. Owner understands that the elevator installation may be delayed beyond the desired occupancy date, and the Contractor shall cooperate with the Owner in partial occupancy of the contract area in the interim period.

**1.06 CONTRACTOR USE OF SITE AND PREMISES**

- A. Construction Operations: \_\_\_\_\_
  - 1. Locate and conduct construction activities in ways that will limit disturbance to site.
- B. Arrange use of site and premises to allow:
  - 1. Owner occupancy.



2. Work by Others.
3. Work by Owner.
- C. General: Contractor shall have full use of Project site for construction operations during construction period. Contractor's use of Project site is limited only by Owner's right to perform work or to retain other contractors on portions of Project.
- D. Provide access to and from site as required by law and by Owner:
  1. Limit use of Project site to work in areas indicated. Do not disturb portions of Project site beyond areas in which the Work is indicated.
  2. Emergency Building Exits During Construction: Keep all exits required by code open during construction period; provide temporary exit signs if exit routes are temporarily altered.
  3. Do not obstruct entrances, roadways, sidewalks, or other public ways without permit. Keep driveways and entrances serving premises clear and available to Owner, Owner's employees, and emergency vehicles at all times. Do not use these areas for parking or storage of materials.
    - a. Schedule deliveries to minimize use of driveways and entrances by construction operations.
    - b. Schedule deliveries to minimize space and time requirements for storage of materials and equipment on-site.
- E. Existing building spaces may not be used for storage unless otherwise arranged with Owner.
- F. Condition of Existing Building: Maintain portions of existing building affected by construction operations in a weathertight condition throughout construction period. Repair damage caused by construction operations and Work.
- G. Utility Outages and Shutdown:
  1. Limit disruption of utility services to hours the building is unoccupied.
  2. Notify Owner not less than two days in advance of proposed utility interruptions.
  3. Do not disrupt or shut down life safety systems, including but not limited to fire sprinklers and fire alarm system, without 7 days notice to Owner and authorities having jurisdiction.
  4. Prevent accidental disruption of utility services to other facilities.
- H. Noise, Vibration, and Odors: Coordinate operations that may result in high levels of noise and vibration, odors, or other disruption to Owner occupancy with Owner.
  1. Notify Owner not less than two days in advance of proposed disruptive operations.
- I. Controlled Substances: Use of tobacco products, including cigars and smokeless tobacco, and other controlled substances on Project site is not permitted.

#### **1.07 COORDINATION WITH OCCUPANTS**

- A. Owner Limited Occupancy of Completed: Owner Limited Occupancy of Completed Areas of Construction: Owner reserves the right to occupy and to place and install equipment in completed portions of the Work, prior to Substantial Completion of the Work, provided such occupancy does not interfere with completion of the Work. Such placement of equipment and limited occupancy shall not constitute acceptance of the total Work.
  1. Architect will prepare a Certificate of Substantial Completion for each specific portion of the Work to be occupied prior to Owner acceptance of the completed Work.
  2. Obtain a Certificate of Occupancy from authorities having jurisdiction before limited Owner occupancy.
  3. Before limited Owner occupancy, mechanical and electrical systems shall be fully operational, and required tests and inspections shall be successfully completed. On occupancy, Owner will operate and maintain mechanical and electrical systems serving occupied portions of Work.
  4. On occupancy, Owner will assume responsibility for maintenance and custodial service for occupied portions of Work.

#### **1.08 WORK RESTRICTIONS**

- A. Work Restrictions, General: Comply with Oakton Community College requirements.

1. Comply with limitations on use of public streets and with other requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Existing Utility Interruptions: Do not interrupt utilities serving facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after providing temporary utility services according to requirements indicated:
  1. Notify Owner not less than three days in advance of proposed utility interruptions.
  2. Obtain Owner's written permission before proceeding with utility interruptions.
- C. Noise, Vibration, and Odors: Coordinate operations that may result in high levels of noise and vibration, odors, or other disruption to Owner occupancy with Owner.
  1. Notify Owner not less than three days in advance of proposed disruptive operations.
  2. Obtain Owner's written permission before proceeding with disruptive operations.
- D. Controlled Substances: Use of tobacco products, including cigars and smokeless tobacco, and other controlled substances on Project site is not permitted.
- E. Employee Identification: Provide identification tags for Contractor personnel working on Project site. Require personnel to use identification tags at all times.

#### **1.09 SPECIFICATIONS AND DRAWING CONVENTIONS**

- A. Specification Content: The Specifications use certain conventions for the style of language and the intended meaning of certain terms, words, and phrases when used in particular situations. These conventions are as follows: Imperative mood and streamlined language are generally used in the Specifications. The words "shall," "shall be," or "shall comply with," depending on the context, are implied where a colon (:) is used within a sentence or phrase.
  1. Specification requirements are to be performed by Contractor unless specifically stated otherwise.
- B. Division 01 General Requirements: Requirements of Sections in Division 01 apply to the Work of all Sections in the Specifications.
- C. Drawing Coordination: Requirements for materials and products identified on Drawings are described in detail in the Specifications. One or more of the following are used on Drawings to identify materials and products:
  1. Terminology: Materials and products are identified by the typical generic terms used in the individual Specifications Sections.
  2. Abbreviations: Materials and products are identified by abbreviations scheduled on Drawings.
  3. Keynoting: Materials and products are identified by reference keynotes referencing Specification Section numbers found in this Project Manual.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS - NOT USED**

**PART 3 EXECUTION - NOT USED**

**END OF SECTION 01 10 00**

This page intentionally left blank

**SECTION 01 20 00  
PRICE AND PAYMENT PROCEDURES**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Procedures for preparation and submittal of applications for progress payments.
- B. Change procedures.
- C. Procedures for preparation and submittal of application for final payment.
- D. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 00 50 00 - Contracting Forms and Supplements: Forms to be used.
  - 2. Section 01 21 00 - Allowances: Payment procedures relating to allowances.
  - 3. Section 01 22 00 - Unit Prices: Monetary values of unit prices; Payment and modification procedures relating to unit prices.
  - 4. Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals: Project record documents.

**1.02 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Schedule of Values: A statement furnished by Contractor allocating portions of the Contract Sum to various portions of the Work and used as the basis for reviewing Contractor's Applications for Payment.

**1.03 SCHEDULE OF VALUES**

- A. Use Schedule of Values Form: AIA G703, edition stipulated in the Agreement.
- B. Electronic media printout including equivalent information will be considered in lieu of standard form specified; submit draft to Architect for approval.
- C. Forms filled out by hand will not be accepted.
- D. Submit Schedule of Values in triplicate within 15 days after date of Owner-Contractor Agreement.
- E. Format: Utilize the Table of Contents of this Project Manual. Identify each line item with number and title of the specification section. Identify site mobilization.
- F. Revise schedule to list approved Change Orders, with each Application For Payment.
- G. Coordination: Coordinate preparation of the schedule of values with preparation of Contractor's construction schedule.
  - 1. Coordinate line items in the schedule of values with other required administrative
    - a. Application for Payment forms with continuation sheets.
    - b. Submittal schedule.
    - c. Items required to be indicated as separate activities in Contractor's construction schedule.
  - 2. Submit the schedule of values to Architect at earliest possible date, but no later than seven days before the date scheduled for submittal of initial Applications for Payment.
  - 3. Subschedules for Separate Elements of Work: Where the Contractor's construction schedule defines separate elements of the Work, provide subschedules showing values coordinated with each element.
- H. Format and Content: Use Project Manual table of contents as a guide to establish line items for the schedule of values. Provide at least one line item for each Specification Section.
  - 1. Identification: Include the following Project identification on the schedule of values:
    - a. Project name and location.
    - b. Name of Architect.
    - c. Architect's project number.
    - d. Contractor's name and address.
    - e. Date of submittal.
  - 2. Arrange schedule of values consistent with format of AIA Document G703.

3. Arrange the schedule of values in tabular form with separate columns to indicate the following for each item listed:
  - a. Related Specification Section or Division.
  - b. Description of the Work.
  - c. Name of subcontractor.
  - d. name of manufacturer or fabricator.
  - e. Name of supplier.
  - f. Change Orders (numbers) that affect value.
  - g. Dollar value of the following, as a percentage of the Contract Sum to nearest one-hundredth percent, adjusted to total 100 percent.
    - 1) Labor.
    - 2) Materials.
    - 3) Equipment.
4. Provide a breakdown of the Contract Sum in enough detail to facilitate continued evaluation of Applications for Payment and progress reports. Coordinate with Project Manual table of contents. Provide multiple line items for principal subcontract amounts in excess of five percent of the Contract Sum.
  - a. Include separate line items under Contractor and principal subcontracts for sustainable design documentation and other Project closeout requirements in an amount totaling five percent of the Contract Sum and subcontract amount.
5. Round amounts to nearest whole dollar; total shall equal the Contract Sum.
6. Provide a separate line item in the schedule of values for each part of the Work where Applications for Payment may include materials or equipment purchased or fabricated and stored, but not yet installed.
  - a. Differentiate between items stored on-site and items stored off-site. If required, include evidence of insurance.
7. Provide separate line items in the schedule of values for initial cost of materials, for each subsequent stage of completion, and for total installed value of that part of the Work.
8. Each item in the schedule of values and Applications for Payment shall be complete. Include total cost and proportionate share of general overhead and profit for each item.
  - a. Temporary facilities and other major cost items that are not direct cost of actual work-in-place may be shown either as separate line items in the schedule of values or distributed as general overhead expense, at Contractor's option.
9. Schedule Updating: Update and resubmit the schedule of values before the next Applications for Payment when Change Orders or Construction Change Directives result in a change in the Contract Sum.

#### **1.04 APPLICATIONS FOR PROGRESS PAYMENTS**

- A. Payment Period: Submit at intervals stipulated in the Agreement.
  1. The date for each progress payment is indicated in the Agreement between Owner and Contractor. The period of construction work covered by each Application for Payment is the period indicated in the Agreement.
- B. Use Form AIA G702 and Form AIA G703, edition stipulated in the Agreement.
- C. Electronic media printout including equivalent information will be considered in lieu of standard form specified; submit sample to Architect for approval.
- D. Each Application for Payment following the initial Application for Payment shall be consistent with previous applications and payments as certified by Architect and paid for by Owner.
  1. Initial Application for Payment, Application for Payment at time of Substantial Completion, and final Application for Payment involve additional requirements.
  2. Administrative actions and submittals that must precede or coincide with submittal of first Application for Payment include the following:
    - a. List of subcontractors.
    - b. Schedule of values.
    - c. Sustainable design submittal for project materials cost data.

- d. Contractor's construction schedule (preliminary if not final).
  - e. Products list (preliminary if not final).
  - f. Sustainable design action plans.
  - g. Submittal schedule (preliminary if not final).
  - h. List of Contractor's staff assignments.
  - i. List of Contractor's principal consultants.
  - j. Copies of building permits.
  - k. Copies of authorizations and licenses from authorities having jurisdiction for performance of the Work.
  - l. Initial progress report.
  - m. Report of preconstruction conference.
  - n. Certificates of insurance and insurance policies.
  - o. Performance and payment bonds.
  - p. Data needed to acquire Owner's insurance.
- E. Forms filled out by hand will not be accepted.
- F. For each item, provide a column for listing each of the following:
1. Item Number.
  2. Description of work.
  3. Scheduled Values.
  4. Previous Applications.
  5. Work in Place and Stored Materials under this Application.
  6. Authorized Change Orders.
  7. Total Completed and Stored to Date of Application.
  8. Percentage of Completion.
  9. Balance to Finish.
  10. Retainage.
- G. Application Preparation: Complete every entry on form. Notarize and execute certification by signature of authorized officer or by a person authorized to sign legal documents on behalf of Contractor. Architect will return incomplete applications without action.
1. Entries shall match data on the schedule of values and Contractor's construction schedule. Use updated schedules if revisions were made.
  2. Include amounts for work completed following previous Application for Payment, whether or not payment has been received. Include only amounts for work completed at time of Application for Payment.
  3. Include amounts of Change Orders and Construction Change Directives issued before last day of construction period covered by application.
  4. Indicate separate amounts for work being carried out under Owner-requested project acceleration.
  5. List each authorized Change Order as a separate line item, listing Change Order number and dollar amount as for an original item of work.
- H. Stored Materials: Include in Application for Payment amounts applied for materials or equipment purchased or fabricated and stored, but not yet installed. Differentiate between items stored on-site and items stored off-site.
1. Provide certificate of insurance, evidence of transfer of title to Owner, and consent of surety to payment, for stored materials.
  2. Provide supporting documentation that verifies amount requested, such as paid invoices. Match amount requested with amounts indicated on documentation; do not include overhead and profit on stored materials.
  3. Provide summary documentation for stored materials indicating the following:
    - a. Value of materials previously stored and remaining stored as of date of previous Applications for Payment.
    - b. Value of previously stored materials put in place after date of previous Application for Payment and on or before date of current Application for Payment.

- c. Value of materials stored since date of previous Application for Payment and remaining stored as of date of current Application for Payment.
- I. Submit one electronic and three signed and notarized hard-copies of each Application for Payment to Architect by method ensuring receipt within 24 hours. One electronic and one hard copy shall include waivers and lien and similar attachments if required.
  1. Transmit each copy with a transmittal form listing attachments and recording appropriate information about application.
- J. Include the following with the application:
  1. Transmittal letter as specified for submittals in Section 01 30 00.
  2. Construction progress schedule, revised and current as specified in Section 01 30 00.
  3. Current construction photographs specified in Section 01 30 00.
  4. Partial release of liens from major subcontractors and vendors.
    - a. With each Application for Payment, submit waivers of mechanic's lien from entities lawfully entitled to file a mechanic's lien arising out of the Contract and related to the Work covered by the payment.
      - 1) Submit partial waivers on each item for amount requested in previous application, after deduction for retainage, on each item.
      - 2) When an application shows completion of an item, submit conditional final or full waivers.
      - 3) Owner reserves the right to designate which entities involved in the Work must submit waivers.
      - 4) Waiver Forms: Submit executed waivers of lien on forms acceptable to Owner.
- K. When Architect requires substantiating information, submit data justifying dollar amounts in question. Provide one copy of data with cover letter for each copy of submittal. Show application number and date, and line item by number and description.

#### **1.05 APPLICATION FOR PAYMENT AT SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION**

- A. After Architect issues the Certificate of Substantial Completion, submit an Application for Payment showing 100 percent completion for portion of the Work claimed as substantially complete.
  1. Include documentation supporting claim that the Work is substantially complete and a statement showing an accounting of changes to the Contract Sum.
  2. This application shall reflect Certificate(s) of Substantial Completion issued previously for Owner occupancy of designated portions of the Work.

#### **1.06 APPLICATION FOR FINAL PAYMENT**

- A. Prepare Application for Final Payment as specified for progress payments, identifying total adjusted Contract Sum, previous payments, and sum remaining due.
- B. Application for Final Payment will not be considered until the following have been accomplished:
  1. All closeout procedures specified in Section 01 70 00. Evidence of completion of Project closeout requirements.
  2. Insurance certificates for products and completed operations where required and proof that taxes, fees, and similar obligations were paid..
  3. Updated final statement, accounting for final changes to the Contract Sum..
  4. AIA Document G706, "Contractor's Affidavit of Payment of Debts and Claims." .
  5. AIA Document G706A, "Contractor's Affidavit of Release of Liens." .
  6. AIA Document G707, "Consent of Surety to Final Payment."]
  7. Evidence that claims have been settled.
  8. Final meter readings for utilities, a measured record of stored fuel, and similar data as of date of Substantial Completion or when Owner took possession of and assumed responsibility for corresponding elements of the Work.
  9. Final liquidated damages settlement statement.

UW P2224 OAKTON COLLEGE SKOKIE  
CAMPUS LIBRARY & LEARNING  
COMMONS

20 SEPT 2023

ISSUED FOR BIDDING

**PART 2 PRODUCTS - NOT USED**

**PART 3 EXECUTION - NOT USED**

**END OF SECTION 01 20 00**



This page intentionally left blank

**SECTION 01 21 00  
ALLOWANCES**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Cash allowances.
- B. Payment and modification procedures relating to allowances.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 01 20 00 - Price and Payment Procedures: Additional payment and modification procedures.

**1.03 CASH ALLOWANCES**

- A. Costs Included in Cash Allowances: Cost of product to Contractor or subcontractor, less applicable trade discounts .
- B. Architect Responsibilities:
  - 1. Consult with Contractor for consideration and selection of products, suppliers , and installers.
  - 2. Select products in consultation with Owner and transmit decision to Contractor.
  - 3. Prepare Change Order.
- C. Contractor Responsibilities:
  - 1. Assist Architect in selection of products, suppliers , and installers.
  - 2. Obtain proposals from suppliers and installers and offer recommendations.
  - 3. On notification of which products have been selected, execute purchase agreement with designated supplier and installer.
  - 4. Arrange for and process shop drawings, product data, and samples. Arrange for delivery.
  - 5. Promptly inspect products upon delivery for completeness, damage, and defects. Submit claims for transportation damage.
- D. Differences in costs will be adjusted by Change Order.

**1.04 ALLOWANCES SCHEDULE**

- A. Section 09 05 61 - Common Work Results For Flooring: Include the stipulated sum of \$15,000 for purchase and installation of floor patching & leveling.
- B. Section 12 24 00 - Window Shades: Include the stipulated sum of \$5,000 for purchase and installation of manual roller shades.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS - NOT USED**

**PART 3 EXECUTION - NOT USED**

**END OF SECTION 01 21 00**

This page intentionally left blank

**SECTION 01 22 00  
UNIT PRICES**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. This Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for unit prices.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 01 20 00 - Price and Payment Procedures: Additional payment and modification procedures.

**1.03 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Unit price is an amount proposed by bidders, stated on the Bid Form, as a price per unit of measurement for materials or services added to or deducted from the Contract Sum by appropriate modification, if estimated quantities of Work required by the Contract Documents are increased or decreased.

**1.04 COSTS INCLUDED**

- A. Unit Prices included on the Bid Form shall include full compensation for all required labor, products, tools, equipment, plant, transportation, services and incidentals; erection, application or installation of an item of the Work; overhead and profit.

**1.05 UNIT QUANTITIES SPECIFIED**

- A. Quantities indicated in the Bid Form are for bidding and contract purposes only. Quantities and measurements of actual Work will determine the payment amount.

**1.06 MEASUREMENT OF QUANTITIES**

- A. Measurement methods delineated in the individual specification sections complement the criteria of this section. In the event of conflict, the requirements of the individual specification section govern.
- B. Take all measurements and compute quantities. Measurements and quantities will be verified by Architect.
- C. Measurement by Volume: Measured by cubic dimension using mean length, width and height or thickness.
- D. Measurement by Area: Measured by square dimension using mean length and width or radius.
- E. Linear Measurement: Measured by linear dimension, at the item centerline or mean chord.
- F. Stipulated Price Measurement: Items measured by weight, volume, area, or linear means or combination, as appropriate, as a completed item or unit of the Work.

**1.07 PROCEDURES**

- A. Unit prices include all necessary material, plus cost for delivery, installation, equipment, supervision, insurance, applicable taxes, permits, fees, overhead, and profit.
- B. Measurement and Payment: Refer to individual Specification Sections for work that requires establishment of unit prices. Methods of measurement and payment for unit prices are specified in those Sections.
- C. Owner reserves the right to reject Contractor's measurement of work-in-place that involves use of established unit prices and to have this work measured, at Owner's expense, by an independent surveyor acceptable to Contractor.
- D. The Owner may make written request for additional unit prices throughout the Contract when it deems it appropriate to meet project requirements. Supply all unit prices within five business days after date of request.
- E. List of Unit Prices: A list of unit prices is included at the end of this Section. Specification Sections referenced in the schedule contain requirements for materials described under each unit price.

**1.08 DEFECT ASSESSMENT**

- A. Replace Work, or portions of the Work, not complying with specified requirements.
- B. The individual specification sections may modify these options or may identify a specific formula or percentage price reduction.

**1.09 SCHEDULE OF UNIT PRICES**

**PART 2 PRODUCTS - NOT USED**

**PART 3 EXECUTION - NOT USED**

**END OF SECTION 01 22 00**

**SECTION 01 23 00  
ALTERNATES**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Description of Alternates.
- B. Procedures for pricing Alternates.
- C. Administrative and procedural requirements for Alternates.

**1.02 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Alternate: An amount proposed by bidders and stated on the Bid Form for certain work defined in the Bidding Requirements that may be added to or deducted from the Base Bid amount if Owner decides to accept a corresponding change either in the amount of construction to be completed or in the products, materials, equipment, systems, or installation methods described in the Contract Documents.
  - 1. The cost or credit for each alternate is the net addition to or deduction from the Contract Sum to incorporate alternate into the Work. No other adjustments are made to the Contract Sum.

**1.03 PROCEDURES**

- A. Coordination: Modify or adjust affected adjacent work as necessary to completely integrate work of the alternate into Project.
- B. Include as part of each alternate, miscellaneous devices, accessory objects, and similar items incidental to or required for a complete installation whether or not indicated as part of alternate.
- C. Notification: Immediately following award of the Contract, notify each party involved, in writing, of the status of each alternate. Indicate if alternates have been accepted, rejected, or deferred for later consideration. Include a complete description of negotiated modifications to alternates.
- D. Execute accepted alternates under the same conditions as other work of the Contract.
- E. Submit a price for each of the scheduled Alternates. Alternates may require the work of more than one trade. Coordinate prices to include all costs so that no additional costs is borne by the Owner due to the acceptance of additive or deductive alternates.
- F. All additional costs due to the inclusion of Alternates is to be included in the amount to be added to the Contract Sum, including, without limitation, all labor, materials, equipment, supervision, taxes, permits, fees, overhead and profit, so that no additional costs will be borne by the Owner due to the inclusion of the additive or deductive Alternates.
- G. Schedule: A Schedule of Alternates is included at the end of this Section. Specification Sections referenced in schedule contain requirements for materials necessary to achieve the work described under each alternate.

**1.04 ACCEPTANCE OF ALTERNATES**

- A. Alternates quoted on Bid Forms will be reviewed and accepted or rejected at Owner's option. Accepted Alternates will be identified in the Owner-Contractor Agreement.
- B. Coordinate related work and modify surrounding work to integrate the Work of each Alternate.

**1.05 SCHEDULE OF ALTERNATES**

- A. Alternate No. 1 - Exterior Wall Interior Drywall Replacement:
  - 1. Base Bid Item: Section 02 41 00 and Drawing number A0.02 & A0.03: Retain existing exterior wall interior drywall finish, and only remove and replace as required for work indicated; patch & repaint walls per finish schedule.
  - 2. Alternate Item: Section 02 41 00 and Drawing number A0.02 & A0.03: Entirely remove exterior wall drywall interior finish, replace missing or displaced wall furring insulation & damaged wall furring framing, and install new drywall interior. Finish per plans.
- B. Alternate No. 2a - Delete Linear Wood Ceiling -1st floor only:

1. Base Bid Item: Section 09 54 26 Suspended Wood Ceilings and Drawing number A4.01 & A4.02: Install suspended linear wood ceiling as shown w/ light fixtures as shown .
  2. Alternate Item: Section 09 51 00 and Drawing number A4.01: install ACT-01 coplanar with adjacent ACT-01 ceiling and install light fixtures at a consistent fixture layout density.
- C. Alternate No. 2b - Delete Linear Wood Ceiling - both 1st and 2nd floor:
1. Base Bid Item: Section 09 54 26 Suspended Wood Ceilings and Drawing number A4.01 & A4.02: Install suspended linear wood ceiling as shown w/ light fixtures as shown .
  2. Alternate Item: Section 09 51 00 and Drawing number A4.01 & A4.02: install ACT-01 coplanar with adjacent ACT-01 ceiling and install light fixtures at a consistent fixture layout density.
- D. Alternate No. 3 - Delete Suspended Acoustic Baffle and Associated Suspended Light Fixtures:
1. Base Bid Item: Section 09 84 30 Sound-Absorbing Wall and Ceiling Units and Drawing number A4.02: Install suspended acoustic baffles and suspended light fixtures as shown.
  2. Alternate Item: Section 09 51 00 and Drawing number A4.01 & A4.02: Delete suspended acoustic baffles and associated suspended light fixtures, and install F1 light fixtures at a consistent fixture layout density with adjacent library ceiling.
- E. Alternate No. 4 - Delete Wood Cladding from Elevator Shaft Enclosure:
1. Base Bid Item: Section 06 42 00 Wood Paneling and Drawing number A3.01 & A6.12: Install bamboo wood cladding on elevator shaft enclosure as shown .
  2. Alternate Item: Section 09 21 16 Gypsum Board Assemblies and Drawing number A3.01 & A6.12: in lieu of millwork panels, install gyp bd wall finish. Finish to Level 3 standards..
- F. Alternate No. 5 - 1st Floor Welcome Center and 2nd Floor Circulation & Reference Desk Millwork: Install Plastic Laminate in Lieu of Wood Veneer:
1. Base Bid Item: Section 06 41 00 Architectural Wood Casework and Drawing number A6.21 & A6.22: Install wood veneer per Material & Finish schedule on drawings and millwork drawings.
  2. Alternate Item: Section 06 41 00 Architectural Wood Casework and Drawing number A6.21 & A6.22: Install plastic laminate.
- G. Alternate No. 6 - 1st Floor Welcome Center and 2nd Floor Circulation & Reference Desk Millwork: Install Plastic Laminate in Lieu of Engineered Quartz Countertops:
1. Base Bid Item: Section 12 36 00 Countertops and Drawing number A6.21 & A6.22: Install engineered quartz countertops as indicated on Material & Finish Schedule on Drawings.
  2. Alternate Item: Section 12 36 00 Countertops and Drawing number A6.21 & A6.22: Install plastic laminate.
- H. Alternate No. 7 - 2nd Floor Interior Glass Walls: Install conventional Drywall partitions and Solid Core Wood Veneer Doors in Hollow Metal Frames with Glass Sidelites: Huddle 204, Focus 205, Classroom 206, Tutoring Office 214, Library Office 216:
1. Base Bid Item: Section 08 41 26 All-Glass Entrances & Storefronts and Drawing number A1.03: Install glass partitions per plans.
  2. Alternate Item: Section 09 21 16 Gypsum Board Assemblies and Drawing number A1.03: Install drywall partitions of wall type P4 per partition types in drawings.
- I. Alternate No. 8 - HVAC- Reduce the Quantity of VAV Boxes and Fan Powered Boxes to be Replaced with New:
1. Base Bid Item: Section 23 36 00 Air Terminal Units and Drawing number M1.1, M1.2, MD1.1, & MD1.2: Replace all VAV Boxes and fan powered boxes within contract limit lines per plans.
  2. Alternate Item: Section 23 36 00 Air Terminal Units and Drawing number M1.1, M1.2, MD1.1, & MD1.2: Do not replace VAV Boxes and fan powered boxes tagged to remain as part of this alternate on plans..
- J. Alternate No. 9 - Reduce AV & Data infrastructure in Huddle Room A202 & Focus Room A203:
1. Base Bid Item: Install AV & Data cabling, conduits & infrastructure per plans, in compliance with Oakton College data & AV wiring standards for conference rooms..

2. Alternate Item: Eliminate conference room standard wiring & infrastructure from Focus Room A203, and reduce wiring in A202 to that indicated on 50% CD documents. Preserve indicated data jack locations, typical of a small office..
- K. Alternate No. 10 - Install Tinted Acrylic Glazing in Sidelights of Doors in Frame Type "F2" in Lieu of Indicated Tempered Laminated Glazing with Surface Applied Privacy Film per Plans.:
  1. Base Bid Item: Section 08 88 00 Glazing and Drawing number A7.21: Install glass sidelites per plans.
  2. Alternate Item: Section 08 88 00 Glazing and Drawing number A7.21: Install tinted acrylic fire retardant plastic glazing, colors indicated per plans.
- L. Alternate No. 1 - Install Flooring Using Moisture Mitigation Membrane or Moisture Resistant Adhesives.:
  1. Base Bid Item: Section 09 65 00 Resilient Flooring & 09 68 13 Tile Carpeting and Drawing number A6.01 & A6.02: Install flooring per plans & specifications.
  2. Alternate Item: Section 09 05 61 Common Work Results for Flooring and Drawing number A6.01 & A6.02: In the event that subfloor to receive finish floors does not satisfy flooring manufacturer's moisture or pH requirements for flooring installation, mitigate the issue with flooring manufacturer-approved added mitigation membrane or moisture/pH tolerant adhesives.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS - NOT USED**

**PART 3 EXECUTION - NOT - NOT USEDUSED**

**END OF SECTION 01 23 00**



This page intentionally left blank

**SECTION 01 25 00  
SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Procedural requirements for proposed substitutions.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 01 23 00 - Alternates, for product alternatives affecting this section.
- B. Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements: Submittal procedures, coordination.
- C. Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements: Fundamental product requirements, product options, delivery, storage, and handling.

**1.03 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Substitutions: Changes from Contract Documents requirements proposed by Contractor to materials, products, assemblies, and equipment.
  - 1. Substitutions for Cause: Proposed due to changed Project circumstances beyond Contractor's control.
    - a. Unavailability of product.
    - b. Regulatory changes.
    - c. Unavailability of required warranty terms.

**1.04 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. CSI/CSC Form 1.5C - Substitution Request (During the Bidding/Negotiating Stage) Current Edition.
- B. CSI/CSC Form 13.1A - Substitution Request (After the Bidding/Negotiating Phase) Current Edition.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS - NOT USED**

**PART 3 EXECUTION**

**3.01 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS**

- A. A Substitution Request for products, assemblies, materials, and equipment constitutes a representation that the submitter:
  - 1. Has investigated proposed product and determined that it meets or exceeds the quality level of the specified product, equipment, assembly, or system.
  - 2. Agrees to provide the same warranty for the substitution as for the specified product.
  - 3. Agrees to coordinate installation and make changes to other work that may be required for the work to be complete, with no additional cost to Owner.
  - 4. Waives claims for additional costs or time extension that may subsequently become apparent.
  - 5. Requested substitution will not adversely affect Contractor's construction schedule.
  - 6. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce indicated results.
  - 7. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 8. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
- B. A Substitution Request for specified installer constitutes a representation that the submitter:
  - 1. Has acted in good faith to obtain services of specified installer, but was unable to come to commercial, or other terms.
- C. Document each request with complete data substantiating compliance of proposed substitution with Contract Documents. Burden of proof is on proposer.
  - 1. Note explicitly any non-compliant characteristics.
- D. Content: Include information necessary for tracking the status of each Substitution Request, and information necessary to provide an actionable response.

1. Forms indicated in the Project Manual are adequate for this purpose, and must be used.
- E. Limit each request to a single proposed substitution item.
  1. Submit an electronic document, combining the request form with supporting data into single document.

### **3.02 SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES DURING PROCUREMENT**

- A. Submittal Time Restrictions:
  1. Owner will consider requests for substitutions only if submitted at least 10 days prior to the date for receipt of bids.
- B. Submittal Form (before award of contract):
  1. Submit substitution requests by completing CSI/CSC Form 1.5C - Substitution Request. See this form for additional information and instructions.

### **3.03 SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES DURING CONSTRUCTION**

- A. Submittal Form (after award of contract):
  1. Submit substitution requests by completing CSI/CSC Form 13.1A - Substitution Request (After Bidding/Negotiating). See this form for additional information and instructions. Use only this form; other forms of submission are unacceptable.
- B. Submit request for Substitution for Cause within 14 days of discovery of need for substitution, but not later than 14 days prior to time required for review and approval by Architect, in order to stay on approved project schedule.
- C. Submit request for Substitution for Convenience within 14 days of discovery of its potential advantage to the project, but not later than 14 days prior to time required for review and approval by Architect, in order to stay on approved project schedule.
  1. In addition to meeting general documentation requirements, document how the requested substitution benefits the Owner through cost savings, time savings, greater energy conservation, or in other specific ways.
  2. Document means of coordinating of substitution item with other portions of the work, including work by affected subcontractors.
  3. Bear the costs engendered by proposed substitution of:
    - a. Owner's compensation to the Architect for any required redesign, time spent processing and evaluating the request.
- D. Substitutions will not be considered under one or more of the following circumstances:
  1. When they are indicated or implied on shop drawing or product data submittals, without having received prior approval.
  2. Without a separate written request.

### **3.04 RESOLUTION**

- A. Architect may request additional information and documentation prior to rendering a decision. Provide this data in an expeditious manner.
- B. Architect will notify Contractor in writing of decision to accept or reject request.
  1. Architect's decision following review of proposed substitution will be noted on the submitted form.

### **3.05 ACCEPTANCE**

- A. Accepted substitutions change the work of the Project. They will be documented and incorporated into work of the project by Change Order, Construction Change Directive, Architectural Supplementary Instructions, or similar instruments provided for in the Conditions of the Contract.

### **3.06 CLOSEOUT ACTIVITIES**

- A. See Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals, for closeout submittals.
- B. Include completed Substitution Request Forms as part of the Project record. Include both approved and rejected Requests.

UW P2224 OAKTON COLLEGE SKOKIE  
CAMPUS LIBRARY & LEARNING  
COMMONS

20 SEPT 2023

ISSUED FOR BIDDING

**END OF SECTION 01 25 00**

This page intentionally left blank

**SECTION 01 26 00  
CONTRACT MODIFICATION PROCEDURES**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.01 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for handling and processing Contract modifications.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 25 00, Substitution Procedures, for administrative procedures for handling requests for substitutions made after the Contract award.

**1.02 MINOR CHANGES IN THE WORK**

- A. Architect will issue supplemental instructions authorizing minor changes in the Work, not involving adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time, on AIA Document G710, "Architect's Supplemental Instructions."

**1.03 PROPOSAL REQUESTS**

- A. Owner-Initiated Proposal Requests: Architect will issue a detailed description of proposed changes in the Work that may require adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time. If necessary, the description will include supplemental or revised Drawings and Specifications.
  - 1. Work Change Proposal Requests issued by Architect are not instructions either to stop work in progress or to execute the proposed change.
  - 2. Within time specified in Proposal Request or 20 days, when not otherwise specified, after receipt of Proposal Request, submit a quotation estimating cost adjustments to the Contract Sum and the Contract Time necessary to execute the change.
    - a. Include a list of quantities of products required or eliminated and unit costs, with total amount of purchases and credits to be made. If requested, furnish survey data to substantiate quantities.
    - b. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade discounts.
    - c. Include costs of labor and supervision directly attributable to the change.
    - d. Include an updated Contractor's construction schedule that indicates the effect of the change, including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and finish times, and activity relationship. Use available total float before requesting an extension of the Contract Time.
    - e. Quotation Form: Use forms acceptable to Architect.
- B. Contractor-Initiated Proposals: If latent or changed conditions require modifications to the Contract, Contractor may initiate a claim by submitting a request for a change to Architect.
  - 1. Include a statement outlining reasons for the change and the effect of the change on the Work. Provide a complete description of the proposed change. Indicate the effect of the proposed change on the Contract Sum and the Contract Time.
  - 2. Include a list of quantities of products required or eliminated and unit costs, with total amount of purchases and credits to be made. If requested, furnish survey data to substantiate quantities.
  - 3. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade
    - a. discounts.
  - 4. Include costs of labor and supervision directly attributable to the change.
  - 5. Include an updated Contractor's construction schedule that indicates the effect of the change, including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and finish times, and activity relationship. Use available total float before requesting an extension of the Contract Time.
  - 6. Comply with requirements in Section 01 25 00 "Substitution Procedures" if the proposed change requires substitution of one product or system for product or system specified.
  - 7. Proposal Request Form: Use form acceptable to Architect.

**1.04 CHANGE ORDER PROCEDURES**

- A. On Owner's approval of a Work Changes Proposal Request, Architect will issue a Change Order for signatures of Owner and Contractor on AIA Document G701.

**1.05 CONSTRUCTION CHANGE DIRECTIVE**

- A. Construction Change Directive: Architect may issue a Construction Change Directive on AIA Document G714. Construction Change Directive instructs Contractor to proceed with a change in the Work, for subsequent inclusion in a Change Order.
  - 1. Construction Change Directive contains a complete description of change in the Work. It also designates method to be followed to determine change in the Contract Sum or the Contract Time.
- B. Documentation: Maintain detailed records on a time and material basis of work required by the Construction Change Directive.
  - 1. After completion of change, submit an itemized account and supporting data necessary to substantiate cost and time adjustments to the Contract.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS (NOT USED)**

**PART 3 - EXECUTION (NOT USED)**

**END OF SECTION 01 26 00**

**SECTION 01 30 00  
ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. General administrative requirements.
- B. Preconstruction meeting.
- C. Site mobilization meeting.
- D. Progress meetings.
- E. Construction progress schedule.
- F. Progress photographs.
- G. Coordination drawings.
- H. Requests for Interpretation (RFI) procedures.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 01 32 16 - Construction Progress Schedule: Form, content, and administration of schedules.
- B. Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements: General product requirements.
- C. Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Additional coordination requirements.
- D. Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals: Project record documents; operation and maintenance data; warranties and bonds.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. AIA G716 - Request for Information 2004.
- B. CSI/CSC Form 12.1A - Submittal Transmittal Current Edition.
- C. CSI/CSC Form 13.2A - Request for Information Current Edition.

**1.04 GENERAL ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Comply with requirements of Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements for coordination of execution of administrative tasks with timing of construction activities.
- B. Make the following types of submittals to Architect:
  - 1. Requests for Interpretation (RFI).
  - 2. Requests for substitution.
  - 3. Shop drawings, product data, and samples.
  - 4. Test and inspection reports.
  - 5. Design data.
  - 6. Manufacturer's instructions and field reports.
  - 7. Applications for payment and change order requests.
  - 8. Progress schedules.
  - 9. Coordination drawings.
  - 10. Correction Punch List and Final Correction Punch List for Substantial Completion.
  - 11. Closeout submittals.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS - NOT USED**

**PART 3 EXECUTION**

**3.01 PRECONSTRUCTION MEETING**

- A. Schedule meeting after Notice of Award.
- B. Attendance Required:
  - 1. Owner.



2. Architect.
3. Contractor.

C. Agenda:

1. Execution of Owner-Contractor Agreement.
2. Submission of executed bonds and insurance certificates.
3. Distribution of Contract Documents.
4. Submission of list of subcontractors, list of products, schedule of values, and progress schedule.
5. Designation of personnel representing the parties to Contract, Owner and Architect.
6. Procedures and processing of field decisions, submittals, substitutions, applications for payments, proposal request, Change Orders, and Contract closeout procedures.
7. Scheduling.

- D. Record minutes and distribute copies within two days after meeting to participants, with two copies to Architect, Owner, participants, and those affected by decisions made.

**3.02 SITE MOBILIZATION MEETING**

A. Attendance Required:

1. Contractor.
2. Owner.
3. Architect.
4. Contractor's superintendent.
5. Major subcontractors.

B. Agenda:

1. Use of premises by Owner and Contractor.
2. Owner's requirements.
3. Construction facilities and controls provided by Owner.
4. Temporary utilities provided by Owner.
5. Survey and building layout.
6. Security and housekeeping procedures.
7. Schedules.
8. Application for payment procedures.
9. Procedures for testing.
10. Procedures for maintaining record documents.
11. Requirements for start-up of equipment.
12. Inspection and acceptance of equipment put into service during construction period.

- C. Record minutes and distribute copies within two days after meeting to participants, with two copies to Architect, Owner, participants, and those affected by decisions made.

**3.03 PROGRESS MEETINGS**

- A. Make arrangements for meetings, prepare agenda with copies for participants, preside at meetings.

B. Attendance Required:

1. Contractor.
2. Owner.
3. Architect.
4. Contractor's superintendent.
5. Major subcontractors.

C. Agenda:

1. Review minutes of previous meetings.
2. Review of work progress.
3. Field observations, problems, and decisions.
4. Identification of problems that impede, or will impede, planned progress.
5. Review of submittals schedule and status of submittals.

6. Review of RFIs log and status of responses.
7. Review of off-site fabrication and delivery schedules.
8. Maintenance of progress schedule.
9. Corrective measures to regain projected schedules.
10. Planned progress during succeeding work period.
11. Coordination of projected progress.
12. Maintenance of quality and work standards.
13. Effect of proposed changes on progress schedule and coordination.
14. Other business relating to work.

- D. Record minutes and distribute copies within two days after meeting to participants, with two copies to Architect, Owner, participants, and those affected by decisions made.

### **3.04 CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS SCHEDULE**

- A. If preliminary schedule requires revision after review, submit revised schedule within 10 days.
- B. Within 20 days after review of preliminary schedule, submit draft of proposed complete schedule for review.
  1. Include written certification that major contractors have reviewed and accepted proposed schedule.
- C. Within 10 days after joint review, submit complete schedule.
- D. Submit updated schedule with each Application for Payment.

### **3.05 PROGRESS PHOTOGRAPHS**

- A. Photography Type: Digital; electronic files.
- B. Provide photographs of site and construction throughout progress of work produced by an experienced photographer, acceptable to Architect.
- C. Views:
  1. Provide non-aerial photographs from four cardinal views at each specified time, until date of Substantial Completion.
  2. Consult with Architect for instructions on views required.
  3. Provide factual presentation.
  4. Provide correct exposure and focus, high resolution and sharpness, maximum depth of field, and minimum distortion.
- D. Digital Photographs: 24 bit color, minimum resolution of 1024 by 768, in JPG format; provide files unaltered by photo editing software.
  1. Delivery Medium: Via email.
  2. File Naming: Include project identification, date and time of view, and view identification.
  3. PDF File: Assemble all photos into printable pages in PDF format, with 2 to 3 photos per page, each photo labeled with file name; one PDF file per submittal.

### **3.06 COORDINATION DRAWINGS**

- A. Coordination Drawings, General: Prepare coordination drawings according to requirements in individual Sections, and additionally where installation is not completely shown on Shop Drawings, where limited space availability necessitates coordination, or if coordination is required to facilitate integration of products and materials fabricated or installed by more than one entity.
  1. Content: Project-specific information, drawn accurately to a scale large enough to indicate and resolve conflicts. Do not base coordination drawings on standard printed data. Include the following information, as applicable:
    - a. Use applicable Drawings as a basis for preparation of coordination drawings. Prepare sections, elevations, and details as needed to describe relationship of various systems and components.
    - b. Indicate functional and spatial relationships of components of architectural, structural, civil, mechanical, and electrical systems.

- c. Indicate space requirements for routine maintenance and for anticipated replacement of components during the life of the installation.
  - d. Show location and size of access doors required for access to concealed dampers, valves, and other controls.
  - e. Indicate required installation sequences.
  - f. Indicate dimensions shown on the Drawings. Specifically note dimensions that appear to be in conflict with submitted equipment and minimum clearance requirements. Provide alternate sketches to Architect indicating proposed resolution of such conflicts. Minor dimension changes and difficult installations will not be considered changes to the Contract.
- B. Coordination Drawing Organization: Organize coordination drawings as follows:
1. Floor Plans and Reflected Ceiling Plans: Show architectural and structural elements, and mechanical, plumbing, fire-protection, fire-alarm, and electrical Work. Show locations of visible ceiling-mounted devices relative to acoustical ceiling grid. Supplement plan drawings with section drawings where required to adequately represent the Work.
  2. Plenum Space: Indicate subframing for support of ceiling and wall systems, mechanical and electrical equipment, and related Work. Locate components within ceiling plenum to accommodate layout of light fixtures indicated on Drawings. Indicate areas of conflict between light fixtures and other components.
  3. Mechanical Rooms: Provide coordination drawings for mechanical rooms showing plans and elevations of mechanical, plumbing, fire-protection, fire-alarm, and electrical equipment.
  4. Structural Penetrations: Indicate penetrations and openings required for all disciplines.
  5. Slab Edge and Embedded Items: Indicate slab edge locations and sizes and locations of embedded items for metal fabrications, sleeves, anchor bolts, bearing plates, angles, door floor closers, slab depressions for floor finishes, curbs and housekeeping pads, and similar items.
  6. Mechanical and Plumbing Work: Show the following:
    - a. Sizes and bottom elevations of ductwork, piping, and conduit runs, including insulation, bracing, flanges, and support systems.
    - b. Dimensions of major components, such as dampers, valves, diffusers, access doors, cleanouts and electrical distribution equipment.
    - c. Fire-rated enclosures around ductwork.
  7. Electrical Work: Show the following:
    - a. Runs of vertical and horizontal conduit 1-1/4 inches in diameter and larger.
    - b. Light fixture, exit light, emergency battery pack, smoke detector, and other fire-alarm locations.
    - c. Panel board, switch board, switchgear, transformer, busway, generator, and motor control center locations.
    - d. Location of pull boxes and junction boxes, dimensioned from column center lines.
  8. Fire-Protection System: Show the following:
    - a. Locations of standpipes, mains piping, branch lines, pipe drops, and sprinkler heads.
    - b. Coordination with other systems (MEP) and trades.
  9. Review: Architect will review coordination drawings to confirm that the Work is being coordinated, but not for the details of the coordination, which are Contractor's responsibility. If Architect determines that coordination drawings are not being prepared in sufficient scope or detail, or are otherwise deficient, Architect will so inform Contractor, who shall make changes as directed and resubmit.
- C. Provide information required by Project Coordinator for preparation of coordination drawings.
- D. Review drawings prior to submission to Architect.

### 3.07 REQUESTS FOR INFORMATION (RFI)

- A. Definition: A request seeking one of the following:
1. An interpretation, amplification, or clarification of some requirement of Contract Documents arising from inability to determine from them the exact material, process, or

- system to be installed; or when the elements of construction are required to occupy the same space (interference); or when an item of work is described differently at more than one place in Contract Documents.
2. A resolution to an issue which has arisen due to field conditions and affects design intent.
- B. Preparation: Prepare an RFI immediately upon discovery of a need for interpretation of Contract Documents. Failure to submit a RFI in a timely manner is not a legitimate cause for claiming additional costs or delays in execution of the work.
1. Prepare a separate RFI for each specific item.
  2. Prepare in a format and with content acceptable to Owner.
- C. Reason for the RFI: Prior to initiation of an RFI, carefully study all Contract Documents to confirm that information sufficient for their interpretation is definitely not included.
1. Include in each request Contractor's signature attesting to good faith effort to determine from Contract Documents information requiring interpretation.
  2. Unacceptable Uses for RFIs: Do not use RFIs to request the following:
    - a. Approval of submittals (use procedures specified elsewhere in this section).
    - b. Approval of substitutions (see Section - 01 60 00 - Product Requirements)
    - c. Changes that entail change in Contract Time and Contract Sum (comply with provisions of the Conditions of the Contract).
    - d. Different methods of performing work than those indicated in the Contract Drawings and Specifications (comply with provisions of the Conditions of the Contract).
  3. Improper RFIs: Requests not prepared in compliance with requirements of this section, and/or missing key information required to render an actionable response. They will be returned without a response, with an explanatory notation.
  4. Frivolous RFIs: Requests regarding information that is clearly indicated on, or reasonably inferable from, Contract Documents, with no additional input required to clarify the question. They will be returned without a response, with an explanatory notation.
    - a. The Owner reserves the right to assess the Contractor for the costs (on time-and-materials basis) incurred by the Architect, and any of its consultants, due to processing of such RFIs.
- D. Content: Include identifiers necessary for tracking the status of each RFI, and information necessary to provide an actionable response.
1. Official Project name and number, and any additional required identifiers established in Contract Documents.
  2. Owner's, Architect's, and Contractor's names.
  3. Discrete and consecutive RFI number, and descriptive subject/title.
  4. Issue date, and requested reply date.
  5. Reference to particular Contract Document(s) requiring additional information/interpretation. Identify pertinent drawing and detail number and/or specification section number, title, and paragraph(s).
  6. Annotations: Field dimensions and/or description of conditions which have engendered the request.
  7. Contractor's suggested resolution: A written and/or a graphic solution, to scale, is required in cases where clarification of coordination issues is involved, for example; routing, clearances, and/or specific locations of work shown diagrammatically in Contract Documents. If applicable, state the likely impact of the suggested resolution on Contract Time or the Contract Sum.
- E. Attachments: Include sketches, coordination drawings, descriptions, photos, submittals, and other information necessary to substantiate the reason for the request.
- F. RFI Log: Prepare and maintain a tabular log of RFIs for the duration of the project.
1. Indicate current status of every RFI. Update log promptly and on a regular basis.
  2. Highlight items requiring priority or expedited response.
  3. Highlight items for which a timely response has not been received to date.
  4. Identify and include improper or frivolous RFIs.

- G. Review Time: Architect will respond and return RFIs to Contractor within seven calendar days of receipt. For the purpose of establishing the start of the mandated response period, RFIs received after 12:00 noon will be considered as having been received on the following regular working day.
- H. Responses: Content of answered RFIs will not constitute in any manner a directive or authorization to perform extra work or delay the project. If in Contractor's belief it is likely to lead to a change to Contract Sum or Contract Time, promptly issue a notice to this effect, and follow up with an appropriate Change Order request to Owner.
  - 1. Response may include a request for additional information, in which case the original RFI will be deemed as having been answered, and an amended one is to be issued forthwith.
  - 2. Notify Architect within seven calendar days if an additional or corrected response is required by submitting an amended version of the original RFI, identified as specified above.

**END OF SECTION 01 30 00**

**SECTION 01 32 16  
CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS SCHEDULE**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Preliminary schedule.
- B. Construction progress schedule, with network analysis diagrams and reports.

**1.02 RELATED SECTIONS**

- A. Section 01 10 00 - Summary: Work sequence.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. AGC (CPSM) - Construction Planning and Scheduling Manual 2004.
- B. M-H (CPM) - CPM in Construction Management - Project Management with CPM 2015.

**1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Within 20 days after review of preliminary schedule, submit draft of proposed complete schedule for review.
- B. Within 10 days after joint review, submit complete schedule.

**1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Scheduler: Contractor's personnel or specialist Consultant specializing in CPM scheduling with one years minimum experience in scheduling construction work of a complexity comparable to this Project, and having use of computer facilities capable of delivering a detailed graphic printout within 48 hours of request.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS - NOT USED**

**PART 3 EXECUTION**

**3.01 PRELIMINARY SCHEDULE**

- A. Prepare preliminary schedule in the form of a horizontal bar chart.

**3.02 CONTENT**

- A. Show complete sequence of construction by activity, with dates for beginning and completion of each element of construction.
- B. Identify each item by specification section number.
- C. Show accumulated percentage of completion of each item, and total percentage of Work completed, as of the first day of each month.
- D. Provide legend for symbols and abbreviations used.

**3.03 NETWORK ANALYSIS**

- A. Prepare network analysis diagrams and supporting mathematical analyses using the Critical Path Method.
- B. Illustrate order and interdependence of activities and sequence of work; how start of a given activity depends on completion of preceding activities, and how completion of the activity may restrain start of subsequent activities.
- C. Mathematical Analysis: Tabulate each activity of detailed network diagrams, using calendar dates, and identify for each activity:
  - 1. Preceding and following event numbers.
  - 2. Activity description.
  - 3. Estimated duration of activity, in maximum 15 day intervals.
  - 4. Earliest start date.
  - 5. Earliest finish date.
  - 6. Actual start date.
  - 7. Actual finish date.

8. Latest start date.
  9. Latest finish date.
  10. Total and free float; float time shall accrue to Owner and to Owner's benefit.
  11. Monetary value of activity, keyed to Schedule of Values.
  12. Percentage of activity completed.
  13. Responsibility.
- D. Analysis Program: Capable of compiling monetary value of completed and partially completed activities, accepting revised completion dates, and recomputation of all dates and float.
- E. Required Reports: List activities in sorts or groups:
1. By preceding work item or event number from lowest to highest.
  2. By amount of float, then in order of early start.

#### **3.04 UPDATING SCHEDULE**

- A. Maintain schedules to record actual start and finish dates of completed activities.
- B. Indicate progress of each activity to date of revision, with projected completion date of each activity.
- C. Annotate diagrams to graphically depict current status of Work.
- D. Identify activities modified since previous submittal, major changes in Work, and other identifiable changes.
- E. Indicate changes required to maintain Date of Substantial Completion.
- F. Submit reports required to support recommended changes.
- G. Provide narrative report to define problem areas, anticipated delays, and impact on the schedule. Report corrective action taken or proposed and its effect.

#### **3.05 DISTRIBUTION OF SCHEDULE**

- A. Distribute copies of updated schedules to Contractor's project site file, to subcontractors, suppliers, Architect, Owner, and other concerned parties.
- B. Instruct recipients to promptly report, in writing, problems anticipated by projections indicated in schedules.

**END OF SECTION 01 32 16**

**SECTION 01 33 00  
SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.01 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes requirements for the submittal schedule and administrative and procedural requirements for submitting Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and other submittals.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 20 00, Price and Payment Procedures
  - 2. Section 01 78 00, Closeout Submittals, and Section 01 79 00 Demonstration and Training; for submitting record Drawings, record Specifications, and record Product Data.

**1.02 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Action Submittals: Written and graphic information and physical samples that require Architect's responsive action. Action submittals are those submittals indicated in individual Specification Sections as "action submittals."
- B. Informational Submittals: Written and graphic information and physical samples that do not require Architect's responsive action. Submittals may be rejected for not complying with requirements. Informational submittals are those submittals indicated in individual Specification Sections as "informational submittals."
- C. Portable Document Format (PDF): An open standard file format licensed by Adobe Systems used for representing documents in a device-independent and display resolution-independent fixed-layout document format.

**1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submittal Schedule: Submit a schedule of submittals, arranged in chronological order by dates required by construction schedule. Include time required for review, ordering, manufacturing, fabrication, and delivery when establishing dates. Include additional time required for making corrections or revisions to submittals noted by Architect and additional time for handling and reviewing submittals required by those corrections.
  - 1. Coordinate submittal schedule with list of subcontracts, the schedule of values, and Contractor's construction schedule.
  - 2. Initial Submittal: Submit concurrently with startup construction schedule. Include submittals required during the first 60 days of construction. List those submittals required to maintain orderly progress of the Work and those required early because of long lead time for manufacture or fabrication.
  - 3. Final Submittal: Submit concurrently with the first complete submittal of Contractor's construction schedule.
    - a. Submit revised submittal schedule to reflect changes in current status and timing for submittals.
  - 4. Format: Arrange the following information in a tabular format:
    - a. Scheduled date for first submittal.
    - b. Specification Section number and title.
    - c. Submittal category: Action; informational.
    - d. Name of subcontractor.
    - e. Description of the Work covered.
    - f. Scheduled date for Architect's final release or approval.
    - g. Scheduled date of fabrication.
    - h. Scheduled dates for purchasing.
    - i. Scheduled dates for installation.
    - j. Activity or event number.

**1.04 SUBMITTAL ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Architect's Digital Data Files: Electronic digital data files of the Contract Drawings will be provided by Architect for Contractor's use in preparing submittals.



1. Architect will furnish Contractor one set of digital data drawing files of the Contract Drawings for use in preparing Shop Drawings.
  - a. Architect makes no representations as to the accuracy or completeness of digital data drawing files as they relate to the Contract Drawings.
  - b. Digital Drawing Software Program: The Contract Drawings are available in Autodesk AutoCAD.
  - c. Contractor shall execute an Electronic File Transfer Agreement in the form of AIA Document C106, Digital Data Licensing Agreement.
  - d. The following digital data files will be furnished for each appropriate discipline:
    - 1) Floor plans.
    - 2) Reflected ceiling plans.
- B. Coordination: Coordinate preparation and processing of submittals with performance of construction activities.
  1. Coordinate each submittal with fabrication, purchasing, testing, delivery, other submittals, and related activities that require sequential activity.
  2. Submit all submittal items required for each Specification Section concurrently unless partial submittals for portions of the Work are indicated on approved submittal schedule.
  3. Submit action submittals and informational submittals required by the same Specification Section as separate packages under separate transmittals.
  4. Coordinate transmittal of different types of submittals for related parts of the Work so processing will not be delayed because of need to review submittals concurrently for coordination.
    - a. Architect reserves the right to withhold action on a submittal requiring coordination with other submittals until related submittals are received.
- C. Processing Time: Allow time for submittal review, including time for resubmittals, as follows. Time for review shall commence on Architect's receipt of submittal. No extension of the Contract Time will be authorized because of failure to transmit submittals enough in advance of the Work to permit processing, including resubmittals.
  1. Initial Review: Allow 15 days for initial review of each submittal. Allow additional time if coordination with subsequent submittals is required. Architect will advise Contractor when a submittal being processed must be delayed for coordination.
  2. Intermediate Review: If intermediate submittal is necessary, process it in same manner as initial submittal.
  3. Resubmittal Review: Allow 15 days for review of each resubmittal.
  4. Sequential Review: Where sequential review of submittals by Architect's consultants, Owner, or other parties is indicated, allow 21 days for initial review of each submittal.
  5. Concurrent Consultant Review: Where the Contract Documents indicate that submittals may be transmitted simultaneously to Architect and to Architect's consultants, allow 15 days for review of each submittal. Submittal will be returned to Architect before being returned to Contractor.
- D. Electronic Submittals: Identify and incorporate information in each electronic submittal file as follows:
  1. Assemble complete submittal package into a single indexed file incorporating submittal requirements of a single Specification Section and transmittal form with links enabling navigation to each item.
  2. Name file with submittal number, a unique submittal identifier, and a revision identifier.
    - a. File name shall use Specification Section number followed by a hyphen, followed by a numerical identifier that is unique to each submittal related to the Specification Section, and then a second hyphen and sequential submission number for each submittal/resubmittal (e.g., 061000-01-01).
  3. Provide means for insertion to permanently record Contractor's review and approval markings and action taken by Architect.
  4. Transmittal Form for Electronic Submittals: Use electronic form acceptable to Architect and Owner, containing the following information:
    - a. Project name.

- b. Date.
  - c. Name and address of Architect.
  - d. Name of Contractor.
  - e. Name of firm or entity that prepared submittal.
  - f. Names of subcontractor, manufacturer, and supplier.
  - g. Category and type of submittal.
  - h. Submittal purpose and description.
  - i. Specification Section number and title.
  - j. Specification paragraph number or drawing designation and generic name for each of multiple items.
  - k. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
  - l. Location(s) where product is to be installed, as appropriate.
  - m. Related physical samples submitted directly.
  - n. Indication of full or partial submittal.
  - o. Transmittal number, numbered consecutively.
  - p. Submittal and transmittal distribution record.
  - q. Other necessary identification.
  - r. Remarks.
5. Metadata: Include the following information as keywords in the electronic submittal file metadata:
- a. Project name.
  - b. Number and title of appropriate Specification Section.
  - c. Manufacturer name.
  - d. Product name.
- E. Options: Identify options requiring selection by Architect.
- F. Deviations and Additional Information: On an attached separate sheet, prepared on Contractor's letterhead, record relevant information, requests for data, revisions other than those requested by Architect on previous submittals, and deviations from requirements in the Contract Documents, including minor variations and limitations. Include same identification information as related submittal.
- G. Resubmittals: Make resubmittals in same form and number of copies as initial submittal.
1. Note date and content of previous submittal.
  2. Note date and content of revision in label or title block and clearly indicate extent of revision.
  3. Resubmit submittals until they are marked with approval notation from Architect's action stamp.
- H. Distribution: Furnish copies of final submittals to manufacturers, subcontractors, suppliers, fabricators, installers, authorities having jurisdiction, and others as necessary for performance of construction activities. Show distribution on transmittal forms.
- I. Use for Construction: Retain complete copies of submittals on Project site. Use only final action submittals that are marked with approval notation from Architect's action stamp.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES**

- A. General Submittal Procedure Requirements: Prepare and submit submittals required by individual Specification Sections. Types of submittals are indicated in individual Specification Sections.
1. Submit electronic submittals via email as PDF electronic files.
    - a. Architect will return annotated file. Annotate and retain one copy of file as an electronic Project record document file.
  2. Certificates and Certifications Submittals: Provide a statement that includes signature of entity responsible for preparing certification. Certificates and certifications shall be signed by an officer or other individual authorized to sign documents on behalf of that entity.

- a. Provide a digital signature with digital certificate on electronically submitted certificates and certifications where indicated.
- B. Product Data: Collect information into a single submittal for each element of construction and type of product or equipment.
  1. If information must be specially prepared for submittal because standard published data are not suitable for use, submit as Shop Drawings, not as Product Data.
  2. Mark each copy of each submittal to show which products and options are applicable.
  3. Include the following information, as applicable:
    - a. Manufacturer's catalog cuts.
    - b. Manufacturer's product specifications.
    - c. Standard color charts.
    - d. Statement of compliance with specified referenced standards.
    - e. Testing by recognized testing agency.
    - f. Application of testing agency labels and seals.
    - g. Notation of coordination requirements.
    - h. Availability and delivery time information.
  4. For equipment, include the following in addition to the above, as applicable:
    - a. Wiring diagrams showing factory-installed wiring.
    - b. Printed performance curves.
    - c. Operational range diagrams.
    - d. Clearances required to other construction, if not indicated on accompanying Shop Drawings.
  5. Submit Product Data before or concurrent with Samples.
  6. Submit Product Data in the following format:
    - a. PDF electronic file.
- C. Shop Drawings: Prepare Project-specific information, drawn accurately to scale. Do not base Shop Drawings on reproductions of the Contract Documents or standard printed data, unless submittal based on Architect's digital data drawing files is otherwise permitted.
  1. Preparation: Fully illustrate requirements in the Contract Documents. Include the following information, as applicable:
    - a. Identification of products.
    - b. Schedules.
    - c. Compliance with specified standards.
    - d. Notation of coordination requirements.
    - e. Notation of dimensions established by field measurement.
    - f. Relationship and attachment to adjoining construction clearly indicated.
    - g. Seal and signature of professional engineer if specified.
  2. Sheet Size: Except for templates, patterns, and similar full-size drawings, submit Shop Drawings on sheets at least 8-1/2 by 11 inches, but no larger than 30 by 42 inches.
  3. Submit Shop Drawings in the following format:
    - a. PDF electronic file.
- D. Samples: Submit Samples for review of kind, color, pattern, and texture for a check of these characteristics with other elements and for a comparison of these characteristics between submittal and actual component as delivered and installed.
  1. Transmit Samples that contain multiple, related components such as accessories together in one submittal package.
  2. Identification: Attach label on unexposed side of Samples that includes the following:
    - a. Generic description of Sample.
    - b. Product name and name of manufacturer.
    - c. Sample source.
    - d. Number and title of applicable Specification Section.
    - e. Specification paragraph number and generic name of each item.
  3. For projects where electronic submittals are required, provide corresponding electronic submittal of Sample transmittal, digital image file illustrating Sample characteristics, and

- identification information for record.
4. Disposition: Maintain sets of approved Samples at Project site, available for quality-control comparisons throughout the course of construction activity. Sample sets may be used to determine final acceptance of construction associated with each set.
    - a. Samples that may be incorporated into the Work are indicated in individual Specification Sections. Such Samples must be in an undamaged condition at time of use.
    - b. Samples not incorporated into the Work, or otherwise designated as Owner's property, are the property of Contractor.
  5. Samples for Initial Selection: Submit manufacturer's color charts consisting of units or sections of units showing the full range of colors, textures, and patterns available.
    - a. Number of Samples: Submit one full set(s) of available choices where color, pattern, texture, or similar characteristics are required to be selected from manufacturer's product line. Architect will return submittal with options selected.
  6. Samples for Verification: Submit full-size units or Samples of size indicated, prepared from same material to be used for the Work, cured and finished in manner specified, and physically identical with material or product proposed for use, and that show full range of color and texture variations expected. Samples include, but are not limited to, the following: partial sections of manufactured or fabricated components; small cuts or containers of materials; complete units of repetitively used materials; swatches showing color, texture, and pattern; color range sets; and components used for independent testing and inspection.
    - a. Number of Samples: Submit three sets of Samples. Architect will retain two Sample sets; remainder will be returned. Mark up and retain one returned Sample set as a project record sample.
      - 1) Submit a single Sample where assembly details, workmanship, fabrication techniques, connections, operation, and other similar characteristics are to be demonstrated.
      - 2) If variation in color, pattern, texture, or other characteristic is inherent in material or product represented by a Sample, submit at least three sets of paired units that show approximate limits of variations.
- E. Product Schedule: As required in individual Specification Sections, prepare a written summary indicating types of products required for the Work and their intended location. Include the following information in tabular form:
1. Type of product. Include unique identifier for each product indicated in the Contract Documents or assigned by Contractor if none is indicated.
  2. Manufacturer and product name, and model number if applicable.
  3. Number and name of room or space.
  4. Location within room or space.
  5. Submit product schedule in the following format:
    - a. PDF electronic file.
- F. Coordination Drawing Submittals: Comply with requirements specified in Section 01 30 00 "Administrative Requirements."
- G. Application for Payment and Schedule of Values: Comply with requirements specified in Section 01 20 00 "Price and Payment Procedures."
- H. Test and Inspection Reports and Schedule of Tests and Inspections Submittals: Comply with requirements specified in Section 01 40 00 "Quality Requirements."
- I. Closeout Submittals and Maintenance Material Submittals: Comply with requirements specified in Section 01 78 00 and 01 79 00.
- J. Qualification Data: Prepare written information that demonstrates capabilities and experience of firm or person. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, contact information of architects and owners, and other information specified.
- K. Welding Certificates: Prepare written certification that welding procedures and personnel comply with requirements in the Contract Documents. Submit record of Welding Procedure

Specification and Procedure Qualification Record on AWS forms. Include names of firms and personnel certified.

- L. Installer Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that Installer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents and, where required, is authorized by manufacturer for this specific Project.
- M. Manufacturer Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Include evidence of manufacturing experience where required.
- N. Product Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that product complies with requirements in the Contract Documents.
- O. Material Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that material complies with requirements in the Contract Documents.
- P. Material Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting test results of material for compliance with requirements in the Contract Documents.
- Q. Product Test Reports: Submit written reports indicating that current product produced by manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Base reports on evaluation of tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, or on comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- R. Research Reports: Submit written evidence, from a model code organization acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, that product complies with building code in effect for Project. Include the following information:
  - 1. Name of evaluation organization.
  - 2. Date of evaluation.
  - 3. Time period when report is in effect.
  - 4. Product and manufacturers' names.
  - 5. Description of product.
  - 6. Test procedures and results.
  - 7. Limitations of use.
- S. Preconstruction Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of tests performed before installation of product, for compliance with performance requirements in the Contract Documents.
- T. Compatibility Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of compatibility tests performed before installation of product. Include written recommendations for primers and substrate preparation needed for adhesion.
- U. Field Test Reports: Submit written reports indicating and interpreting results of field tests performed either during installation of product or after product is installed in its final location, for compliance with requirements in the Contract Documents.
- V. Design Data: Prepare and submit written and graphic information, including, but not limited to, performance and design criteria, list of applicable codes and regulations, and calculations. Include list of assumptions and other performance and design criteria and a summary of loads. Include load diagrams if applicable. Provide name and version of software, if any, used for calculations. Include page numbers.

## **2.02 DELEGATED-DESIGN SERVICES**

- A. Performance and Design Criteria: Where professional design services or certifications by a design professional are specifically required of Contractor by the Contract Documents, provide products and systems complying with specific performance and design criteria indicated.
  - 1. If criteria indicated are not sufficient to perform services or certification required, submit a written request for additional information to Architect.

- B. Delegated-Design Services Certification: In addition to Shop Drawings, Product Data, and other required submittals, submit digitally signed PDF electronic file and three paper copies of certificate, signed and sealed by the responsible design professional, for each product and system specifically assigned to Contractor to be designed or certified by a design professional.
  - 1. Indicate that products and systems comply with performance and design criteria in the Contract Documents. Include list of codes, loads, and other factors used in performing these services.

## **PART 2 - EXECUTION**

### **3.01 CONTRACTOR'S REVIEW**

- A. Action and Informational Submittals: Review each submittal and check for coordination with other Work of the Contract and for compliance with the Contract Documents. Note corrections and field dimensions. Mark with approval stamp before submitting to Architect.
- B. Project Closeout and Maintenance Material Submittals: See requirements in Section 01 78 00 "Closeout Submittals."
- C. Approval Stamp: Stamp each submittal with a uniform, approval stamp. Include Project name and location, submittal number, Specification Section title and number, name of reviewer, date of Contractor's approval, and statement certifying that submittal has been reviewed, checked, and approved for compliance with the Contract Documents.

### **3.02 ARCHITECT'S ACTION**

- A. Action Submittals: Architect will review each submittal, make marks to indicate corrections or revisions required, and return it. Architect will stamp each submittal with an action stamp and will mark stamp appropriately to indicate action.
- B. Informational Submittals: Architect will review each submittal and will not return it, or will return it if it does not comply with requirements. Architect will forward each submittal to appropriate party.
- C. Partial submittals prepared for a portion of the Work will be reviewed when use of partial submittals has received prior approval from Architect.
- D. Incomplete submittals are unacceptable, will be considered nonresponsive, and will be returned for resubmittal without review.
- E. Submittals not required by the Contract Documents may be returned by the Architect without action.

**END OF SECTION 01 33 00**

This page intentionally left blank

**SECTION 01 40 00  
QUALITY REQUIREMENTS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Submittals.
- B. Quality assurance.
- C. References and standards.
- D. Testing and inspection agencies and services.
- E. Contractor's construction-related professional design services.
- F. Contractor's design-related professional design services.
- G. Control of installation.
- H. Mock-ups.
- I. Tolerances.
- J. Manufacturers' field services.
- K. Defect Assessment.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 01 21 00 - Allowances: Allowance for payment of testing services.
- B. Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements: Submittal procedures.
- C. Section 01 42 16 - Definitions.
- D. Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements: Requirements for material and product quality.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ASTM C1021 - Standard Practice for Laboratories Engaged in Testing of Building Sealants 2008 (Reapproved 2023).
- B. ASTM C1077 - Standard Practice for Agencies Testing Concrete and Concrete Aggregates for Use in Construction and Criteria for Testing Agency Evaluation 2017.
- C. ASTM C1093 - Standard Practice for Accreditation of Testing Agencies for Masonry 2023.
- D. ASTM D3740 - Standard Practice for Minimum Requirements for Agencies Engaged in Testing and/or Inspection of Soil and Rock as Used in Engineering Design and Construction 2019.
- E. ASTM E329 - Standard Specification for Agencies Engaged in Construction Inspection, Testing, or Special Inspection 2021.
- F. ASTM E543 - Standard Specification for Agencies Performing Nondestructive Testing 2021.
- G. ASTM E699 - Standard Specification for Agencies Involved in Testing, Quality Assurance, and Evaluating of Manufactured Building Components 2016.

**1.04 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Contractor's Quality Control Plan: Contractor's management plan for executing the Contract for Construction.
- B. Contractor's Professional Design Services: Design of some aspect or portion of the project by party other than the design professional of record. Provide these services as part of the Contract for Construction.
  - 1. Design Services Types Required:

**1.05 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION-RELATED PROFESSIONAL DESIGN SERVICES**

- A. Coordination: Contractor's professional design services are subject to requirements of project's Conditions for Construction Contract.



### **1.06 CONTRACTOR'S DESIGN-RELATED PROFESSIONAL DESIGN SERVICES**

- A. Coordination: Contractor's professional design services are subject to requirements of project's Conditions for Construction Contract.
- B. Base design on performance and/or design criteria indicated in individual specification sections.

### **1.07 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 33 00 - Submittal Procedures, for submittal procedures.
- B. Design Data: Submit for Architect's knowledge as contract administrator for the limited purpose of assessing compliance with information given and the design concept expressed in the Contract Documents, or for Owner's information.
- C. Test Reports: After each test/inspection, promptly submit two copies of report to Architect and to Contractor.
  - 1. Include:
    - a. Date issued.
    - b. Project title and number.
    - c. Name of inspector.
    - d. Date and time of sampling or inspection.
    - e. Identification of product and specifications section.
    - f. Location in the Project.
    - g. Type of test/inspection.
    - h. Date of test/inspection.
    - i. Results of test/inspection.
    - j. Compliance with Contract Documents.
    - k. When requested by Architect, provide interpretation of results.
  - 2. Test report submittals are for Architect's knowledge as contract administrator for the limited purpose of assessing compliance with information given and the design concept expressed in the Contract Documents, or for Owner's information.
- D. Certificates: When specified in individual specification sections, submit certification by the manufacturer and Contractor or installation/application subcontractor to Architect, in quantities specified for Product Data.
  - 1. Indicate material or product complies with or exceeds specified requirements. Submit supporting reference data, affidavits, and certifications as appropriate.
- E. Manufacturer's Instructions: When specified in individual specification sections, submit printed instructions for delivery, storage, assembly, installation, start-up, adjusting, and finishing, for the Owner's information. Indicate special procedures, perimeter conditions requiring special attention, and special environmental criteria required for application or installation.
- F. Manufacturer's Field Reports: Submit reports for Architect's benefit as contract administrator or for Owner.
  - 1. Submit for information for the limited purpose of assessing compliance with information given and the design concept expressed in the Contract Documents.
- G. Erection Drawings: Submit drawings for Architect's benefit as contract administrator or for Owner.
  - 1. Submit for information for the limited purpose of assessing compliance with information given and the design concept expressed in the Contract Documents.

### **1.08 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Designer Qualifications: Where professional engineering design services and design data submittals are specifically required of Contractor by Contract Documents, provide services of a Professional Engineer experienced in design of this type of work and licensed in the State in which the Project is located.
- B. Contractor's Quality Control (CQC) Plan:
  - 1. Prior to start of work, submit a comprehensive plan describing how contract deliverables will be produced. Tailor CQC plan to specific requirements of the project. Include the

following information:

- a. Management Structure: Identify personnel responsible for quality. Include a chart showing lines of authority.
    - 1) Include qualifications (in resume form), duties, responsibilities of each person assigned to CQC function.
  - b. Management Approach: Define, describe, and include in the plan specific methodologies used in executing the work.
    - 1) Management and control of documents and records relating to quality.
    - 2) Communications.
    - 3) Coordination procedures.
    - 4) Resource management.
    - 5) Process control.
    - 6) Inspection and testing procedures and scheduling.
    - 7) Control of noncomplying work.
    - 8) Tracking deficiencies from identification, through acceptable corrective action, and verification.
    - 9) Control of testing and measuring equipment.
    - 10) Project materials certification.
    - 11) Managerial continuity and flexibility.
  - c. Owner will not make a separate payment for providing and maintaining a Quality Control Plan. Include associated costs in Bid price.
- C. Quality-Control Personnel Qualifications. Engage a person with requisite training and experience to implement and manage quality assurance (QA) and quality control (QC) for the project.

#### **1.09 TESTING AND INSPECTION AGENCIES AND SERVICES**

- A. Owner will employ and pay for services of an independent testing agency to perform specified testing and inspection.
- B. As indicated in individual specification sections, Owner or Contractor shall employ and pay for services of an independent testing agency to perform other specified testing.
- C. Employment of agency in no way relieves Contractor of obligation to perform Work in accordance with requirements of Contract Documents.
- D. Contractor Employed Agency:
  1. Testing agency: Comply with requirements of ASTM E329, ASTM E543, ASTM E699, ASTM C1021, ASTM C1077, ASTM C1093, and ASTM D3740.
  2. Inspection agency: Comply with requirements of ASTM D3740 and ASTM E329.

#### **PART 2 PRODUCTS - NOT USED**

#### **PART 3 EXECUTION**

##### **3.01 CONTROL OF INSTALLATION**

- A. Monitor quality control over suppliers, manufacturers, products, services, site conditions, and workmanship, to produce work of specified quality.
- B. Comply with manufacturers' instructions, including each step in sequence.
- C. Should manufacturers' instructions conflict with Contract Documents, request clarification from Architect before proceeding.
- D. Comply with specified standards as minimum quality for the work except where more stringent tolerances, codes, or specified requirements indicate higher standards or more precise workmanship.
- E. Have work performed by persons qualified to produce required and specified quality.
- F. Verify that field measurements are as indicated on shop drawings or as instructed by the manufacturer.

- G. Secure products in place with positive anchorage devices designed and sized to withstand stresses, vibration, physical distortion, and disfigurement.

### **3.02 MOCK-UPS**

- A. Before installing portions of the Work where mock-ups are required, construct mock-ups in location and size indicated for each form of construction and finish required to comply with the following requirements, using materials indicated for the completed Work. The purpose of mock-up is to demonstrate the proposed range of aesthetic effects and workmanship.
- B. Accepted mock-ups establish the standard of quality the Architect will use to judge the Work.
- C. Room Mock-ups: Construct room mock-ups as indicated on drawings. Coordinate installation of materials, products, and assemblies as required in specification sections; finish according to requirements. Provide required lighting and any supplemental lighting where required to enable Architect to evaluate quality of the mock-up.
- D. Notify Architect and Owner fifteen (15) working days in advance of dates and times when mock-ups will be constructed.
- E. Tests shall be performed under provisions identified in this section and identified in the respective product specification sections.
- F. Assemble and erect specified items with specified attachment and anchorage devices, flashings, seals, and finishes.
- G. Obtain Architect's approval of mock-ups before starting work, fabrication, or construction.
  - 1. Architect will issue written comments within seven (7) working days of initial review and each subsequent follow up review of each mock-up.
  - 2. Make corrections as necessary until Architect's approval is issued.
- H. Architect will use accepted mock-ups as a comparison standard for the remaining Work.
- I. Where mock-up has been accepted by Architect and is specified in product specification sections to be removed, protect mock-up throughout construction, remove mock-up and clear area when directed to do so by Architect.

### **3.03 TOLERANCES**

- A. Monitor fabrication and installation tolerance control of products to produce acceptable Work. Do not permit tolerances to accumulate.
- B. Comply with manufacturers' tolerances. Should manufacturers' tolerances conflict with Contract Documents, request clarification from Architect before proceeding.
- C. Adjust products to appropriate dimensions; position before securing products in place.

### **3.04 TESTING AND INSPECTION**

- A. See individual specification sections for testing and inspection required.
- B. Testing Agency Duties:
  - 1. Test samples of mixes submitted by Contractor.
  - 2. Provide qualified personnel at site. Cooperate with Architect and Contractor in performance of services.
  - 3. Perform specified sampling and testing of products in accordance with specified standards.
  - 4. Ascertain compliance of materials and mixes with requirements of Contract Documents.
  - 5. Promptly notify Architect and Contractor of observed irregularities or non-compliance of Work or products.
  - 6. Perform additional tests and inspections required by Architect.
  - 7. Submit reports of all tests/inspections specified.
- C. Limits on Testing/Inspection Agency Authority:
  - 1. Agency may not release, revoke, alter, or enlarge on requirements of Contract Documents.
  - 2. Agency may not approve or accept any portion of the Work.

3. Agency may not assume any duties of Contractor.
  4. Agency has no authority to stop the Work.
- D. Contractor Responsibilities:
1. Deliver to agency at designated location, adequate samples of materials proposed to be used that require testing, along with proposed mix designs.
  2. Cooperate with laboratory personnel, and provide access to the Work and to manufacturers' facilities.
  3. Provide incidental labor and facilities:
    - a. To provide access to Work to be tested/inspected.
    - b. To obtain and handle samples at the site or at source of Products to be tested/inspected.
    - c. To facilitate tests/inspections.
    - d. To provide storage and curing of test samples.
  4. Notify Architect and laboratory 24 hours prior to expected time for operations requiring testing/inspection services.
  5. Employ services of an independent qualified testing laboratory and pay for additional samples, tests, and inspections required by Contractor beyond specified requirements.
  6. Arrange with Owner's agency and pay for additional samples, tests, and inspections required by Contractor beyond specified requirements.
- E. Re-testing required because of non-compliance with specified requirements shall be performed by the same agency on instructions by Architect.
- F. Re-testing required because of non-compliance with specified requirements shall be paid for by Contractor.

### **3.05 MANUFACTURERS' FIELD SERVICES**

- A. When specified in individual specification sections, require material or product suppliers or manufacturers to provide qualified staff personnel to observe site conditions, conditions of surfaces and installation, quality of workmanship, start-up of equipment, test, adjust, and balance equipment as applicable, and to initiate instructions when necessary.
- B. Submit qualifications of observer to Architect 30 days in advance of required observations.
- C. Report observations and site decisions or instructions given to applicators or installers that are supplemental or contrary to manufacturers' written instructions.

### **3.06 DEFECT ASSESSMENT**

- A. Replace Work or portions of the Work not complying with specified requirements.
- B. If, in the opinion of Owner, it is not practical to remove and replace the work, Architect will direct an appropriate remedy or adjust payment.

**END OF SECTION 01 40 00**

This page intentionally left blank

**SECTION 01 41 00  
REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SUMMARY OF REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. Regulatory requirements applicable to this project are the following:
- B. ADA Standards - 2010 ADA Standards for Accessible Design 2010.
- C. FED-STD-795 - Uniform Federal Accessibility Standards (UFAS) 1988.
- D. 29 CFR 1910 - Occupational Safety and Health Standards Current Edition.
- E. ICC A117.1 - Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities 2017.
- F. NFPA 101 - Life Safety Code Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- G. ICC (IBC) - International Building Code Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- H. ICC (IECC) - International Energy Conservation Code Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 01 40 00 - Quality Requirements.

**1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Contractor's Designer Qualifications: Refer to Section - 01 40 00 - Quality Requirements.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS - NOT USED**

**PART 3 EXECUTION - NOT USED**

**END OF SECTION 01 41 00**

This page intentionally left blank

**SECTION 01 42 16  
DEFINITIONS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SUMMARY**

- A. Other definitions are included in individual specification sections.

**1.02 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Furnish: To supply, deliver, unload, and inspect for damage.
- B. Install: To unpack, assemble, erect, apply, place, finish, cure, protect, clean, start up, and make ready for use.
- C. Product: Material, machinery, components, equipment, fixtures, and systems forming the work result. Not materials or equipment used for preparation, fabrication, conveying, or erection and not incorporated into the work result. Products may be new, never before used, or re-used materials or equipment.
- D. Project Manual: The book-sized volume that includes the procurement requirements (if any), the contracting requirements, and the specifications.
- E. Provide: To furnish and install.
- F. Supply: Same as Furnish.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS - NOT USED**

**PART 3 EXECUTION - NOT USED**

**END OF SECTION 01 42 16**



This page intentionally left blank

**SECTION 01 42 19  
REFERENCE STANDARDS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Definitions.
- B. Requirements relating to referenced standards.
- C. Reference standards full title and edition date.

**1.02 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. For products or workmanship specified by reference to a document or documents not included in the Project Manual, also referred to as reference standards, comply with requirements of the standard, except when more rigid requirements are specified or are required by applicable codes.
- B. Should specified reference standards conflict with Contract Documents, request clarification from the Architect before proceeding.
- C. Neither the contractual relationships, duties, or responsibilities of the parties in Contract nor those of the Architect shall be altered by Contract Documents by mention or inference otherwise in any reference document.

**1.03 DEFINITIONS**

- A. General Explanation: A substantial amount of specification language consists of definitions of terms found in other Contract Documents, including Drawings. (Drawings are recognized as being diagrammatic in nature and not completely descriptive of the requirements indicated thereon). Certain terms used in Contract Documents are defined in this article. Definitions and explanations contained in this Section are not necessarily either complete or exclusive but are general for the Work to the extent that they are not stated more explicitly in another element of the Contract Documents.
- B. General Requirements: The provisions or requirements of other Division 01 Sections apply to entire work of the Contract and where so indicated, to other elements which are included in the project.
- C. Indicated: The term "indicated" refers to graphic representations, notes or schedules on drawings, to other paragraphs or schedules in the specifications, and to similar means of recording requirements in the Contract Documents. Similar terms such as "shown," "noted," "scheduled," and "specified" are used in lieu of "indicated," are used for the purpose to help the reader locate the reference, and no limitation of location is intended except as specifically noted.
- D. Directed, Requested, etc.: Where not otherwise explained, terms such as "directed," "requested," "authorized," "selected," "reviewed," "required," "accepted," and "permitted" mean "directed by Architect," "requested by Architect," and similar phrases. However, no such implied meaning will be interpreted to extend the Architect's responsibility into the Contractor's area of construction supervision.
- E. Furnish: Except as otherwise defined in greater detail, the term "Furnish" is used to mean "supply and deliver to project site, ready for unloading, unpacking, assembly, installation, and similar operations," as applicable in each instance.
- F. Install: Except as otherwise defined in greater detail, the term "install" is used to describe operations at project site, including "unloading, unpacking, assembly, erection, placing, anchoring, applying, working to dimension, finishing, curing, protecting, cleaning, and similar operation," as applicable in each instance.
- G. Approved: The term "approved," when used in conjunction with Architect's action on Contractor's submittals, applications, and requests, is limited to Architect's duties and responsibilities as stated in the Conditions of the Contract.

- H. Provide: Except as otherwise defined in greater detail, the term "provide" means "to furnish and install, complete and ready for intended use," as applicable in each instance.
- I. Installer: The term "installer" is defined as the entity (person or firm) engaged by the Contractor, its subcontractor or sub-subcontractor for performance of a particular unit of work at the project site, including installation, erection, application and similar operations. It is a general requirement that such entities (installers) be expert in the operation they are engaged to perform.
- J. Testing Laboratories: The term "Testing Laboratory" is defined as an independent entity engaged to perform specific inspections or tests of the work, either at the project site or elsewhere, and to report, and (if required) interpret results of those inspections or tests.

#### **1.04 DRAWING SYMBOLS**

- A. General: Except as otherwise indicated, graphic symbols used on the Drawings are those symbols recognized in the construction industry for purposes indicated.

#### **1.05 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. Applicability of Standards: Except where more explicit or more stringent requirements are written directly into the Contract Documents, applicable standards of the construction industry have the same force and effect as if bound into or copied directly into the Contract Documents. Such industry standards are made a part of the Contract Documents by reference. Individual specification sections indicate which codes and standards the Contractor must keep available at the project site for reference.
  - 1. Referenced standards (standards referenced directly in the Contract Documents) take precedence over non-referenced standards which are recognized in industry for applicability to the Work.
  - 2. Non-referenced standards are defined as not being applicable to the Work, except as a general requirement of whether the Work complies with recognized construction industry standards.
- B. Conflicting Requirements: Where compliance with two or more standards is specified, and where these standards established different or conflicting requirements for minimum quantities or quality levels, the most stringent requirement will be enforced, unless the Contract Documents specifically indicate less stringent requirements. Refer requirements that are different, but apparently equal, and uncertainties as to which quality level is more stringent to the Architect for a decision before proceeding.
- C. Copies of Standards: The Contract Documents require that each entity performing work be experienced in that part of the work being performed. Each entity is also required to be familiar with recognized industry standards applicable to that part of the work. Copies of applicable standards are not bound with the Contract Documents. Where copies of standards are needed for proper performance of the Work, the Contractor is required to obtain such copies directly from the publication source.

### **PART 2 CONSTRUCTION INDUSTRY ORGANIZATION DOCUMENTS AND REFERENCES**

#### **2.01 LIST OF REFERENCES**

- A. 3GPP Specification - The 3GPP Specifications (IoT or Mobile Broadband Standard): 5G, GSM (GPRS, EDGE, EDGE+), W-CDMA (HSPA, HSPA+), LTE (LTE-Advanced, LTE-Advanced Pro), and UMTS; Current Edition.
- B. AA -- ALUMINUM ASSOCIATION, INC.
- C. AABC -- ASSOCIATED AIR BALANCE COUNCIL
- D. AAMA -- AMERICAN ARCHITECTURAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION
- E. AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440 - North American Fenestration Standard/Specification for Windows, Doors, and Skylights 2022.
- F. AAMA 501.1 - Standard Test Method for Water Penetration of Windows, Curtain Walls and Doors Using Dynamic Pressure 2017.

- G. AAMA 501.2 - Quality Assurance and Diagnostic Water Leakage Field Check of Installed Storefronts, Curtain Walls, and Sloped Glazing Systems 2015.
- H. AAMA 501.4 - Recommended Static Test Method for Evaluating Window Wall, Curtain Wall and Storefront Systems Subjected to Seismic and Wind-Induced Inter-Story Drift 2018.
- I. AAMA 502 - Voluntary Specification for Field Testing of Newly Installed Fenestration Products 2021.
- J. AAMA 609 & 610 - Cleaning and Maintenance Guide for Architecturally Finished Aluminum (Combined Document) 2015.
- K. AAMA SFM-1 - Aluminum Storefront and Entrance Manual 2014.
- L. AASHTO -- AMERICAN ASSOCIATION OF STATE HIGHWAY AND TRANSPORTATION OFFICIALS

**2.02 AATCC -- AMERICAN ASSOCIATION OF TEXTILE CHEMISTS & COLORISTS**

- A. AATCC Test Method 30 - Test Method for Antifungal Activity, Assessment on Textile Materials: Mildew and Rot Resistance of Textile Materials 2017, with Editorial Revision (2019).
- B. AATCC Test Method 127 - Test Method for Water Resistance: Hydrostatic Pressure 2018, with Editorial Revision (2019).
- C. AATCC Test Method 174 - Antimicrobial Activity Assessment of New Carpets 2022, with Editorial Revision (2023).

**2.03 ACA -- AMERICAN COATINGS ASSOCIATION**

**2.04 ACG -- AABC COMMISSIONING GROUP**

- A. ACG Cx Guideline - ACG Commissioning Guideline for Building Owners, Design Professionals, and Commissioning Service Providers 2005.

**2.05 ACI -- AMERICAN CONCRETE INSTITUTE INTERNATIONAL**

**2.06 ACT**

**2.07 ADC -- AIR DIFFUSION COUNCIL**

**2.08 AERC -- ATTACHMENTS ENERGY RATING COUNCIL**

**2.09 AFNOR - ASSOCIATION FRANCAISE DE NORMALISATION**

**2.10 AFPA -- AMERICAN FOREST AND PAPER ASSOCIATION**

**2.11 AGA -- AMERICAN GALVANIZERS ASSOCIATION, INC.**

**2.12 AGC -- ASSOCIATED GENERAL CONTRACTORS OF AMERICA**

- 2.13 AGMA -- AMERICAN GEAR MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION**
- 2.14 AHA -- AMERICAN HARDBOARD ASSOCIATION**
- 2.15 AHAM -- ASSOCIATION OF HOME APPLIANCE MANUFACTURERS:**
- 2.16 AHRI -- AIR-CONDITIONING, HEATING, AND REFRIGERATION INSTITUTE**
- 2.17 AI -- THE ASPHALT INSTITUTE**
- 2.18 AIA -- THE AMERICAN INSTITUTE OF ARCHITECTS**
- 2.19 AISC -- AMERICAN INSTITUTE OF STEEL CONSTRUCTION, INC.**
- 2.20 AISI -- AMERICAN IRON AND STEEL INSTITUTE**
- 2.21 AIST -- ASSOCIATION FOR IRON AND STEEL TECHNOLOGY**
- 2.22 AITC -- AMERICAN INSTITUTE OF TIMBER CONSTRUCTION**
- 2.23 ALI -- AMERICAN LADDER INSTITUTE**
- 2.24 ALSC -- AMERICAN LUMBER STANDARDS COMMITTEE**
- 2.25 AMCA -- AIR MOVEMENT AND CONTROL ASSOCIATION INTERNATIONAL, INC.**
- 2.26 ANSI -- AMERICAN NATIONAL STANDARDS INSTITUTE**
- 2.27 APA -- APA - THE ENGINEERED WOOD ASSOCIATION**
- 2.28 APHA -- AMERICAN PUBLIC HEALTH ASSOCIATION**
- 2.29 ASA -- ACOUSTICAL SOCIETY OF AMERICA**
- 2.30 ASHRAE -- AMERICAN SOCIETY OF HEATING, REFRIGERATING AND AIR-CONDITIONING ENGINEERS, INC.**
- 2.31 ASME -- THE AMERICAN SOCIETY OF MECHANICAL ENGINEERS**
- 2.32 ASTM A SERIES -- ASTM INTERNATIONAL**
  - A. ASTM A153/A153M - Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware 2023.
  - B. ASTM A653/A653M - Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process 2023.
- 2.33 ASTM B SERIES -- ASTM INTERNATIONAL**
- 2.34 ASTM C SERIES -- ASTM INTERNATIONAL**
  - A. ASTM C557 - Standard Specification for Adhesives for Fastening Gypsum Wallboard to Wood Framing 2003 (Reapproved 2017).
- 2.35 ASTM E SERIES -- ASTM INTERNATIONAL**
  - A. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials 2023b.
- 2.36 ASTM G SERIES -- ASTM INTERNATIONAL**
  - A. ASTM G21 - Standard Practice for Determining Resistance of Synthetic Polymeric Materials to Fungi 2015, with Editorial Revision (2021).
- 2.37 AWI -- ARCHITECTURAL WOODWORK INSTITUTE**
- 2.38 AWWA -- AMERICAN WOOD-PRESERVERS' ASSOCIATION**
  - A. AWWA U1 - Use Category System: User Specification for Treated Wood 2023.

- 2.39 BHMA -- BUILDERS HARDWARE MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION**
- 2.40 BIA -- BRICK INDUSTRY ASSOCIATION**
- 2.41 CDA -- COPPER DEVELOPMENT ASSOCIATION, INC.**
- 2.42 CISCA -- CEILINGS & INTERIOR SYSTEMS CONSTRUCTION ASSOCIATION**
- 2.43 CISPI -- CAST IRON SOIL PIPE INSTITUTE**
- 2.44 CLFMI -- CHAIN LINK FENCE MANUFACTURERS INSTITUTE**
- 2.45 CPA -- COMPOSITE PANEL ASSOCIATION**
- 2.46 CRI -- CARPET AND RUG INSTITUTE**
- 2.47 CSI/CSC -- CONSTRUCTION SPECIFICATIONS INSTITUTE/CONSTRUCTION SPECIFICATIONS CANADA**
- 2.48 CTA -- CONSUMER TECHNOLOGY ASSOCIATION (FORMERLY CONSUMER ELECTRONICS ASSOCIATION)**
- 2.49 DHI -- DOOR AND HARDWARE INSTITUTE**
- 2.50 EJMA -- EXPANSION JOINT MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION**
- 2.51 GA -- GYPSUM ASSOCIATION**
- 2.52 GANA -- GLASS ASSOCIATION OF NORTH AMERICA**
- 2.53 HPVA -- HARDWOOD PLYWOOD VENEER ASSOCIATION**
- 2.54 ICC -- INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL, INC.**
  - A. ICC A117.1 - Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities 2017.
- 2.55 IEEE -- INSTITUTE OF ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONIC ENGINEERS**
- 2.56 IES/IESNA -- ILLUMINATING ENGINEERING SOCIETY**
- 2.57 IGMA -- INSULATING GLASS MANUFACTURERS ALLIANCE**
- 2.58 ISFA - INTERNATIONAL SURFACE FABRICATORS ASSOCIATION**
- 2.59 ISSFA - INTERNATIONAL SOLID SURFACE FABRICATORS ASSOCIATION**
- 2.60 ISO -- INTERNATIONAL STANDARDS ORGANIZATION**
- 2.61 KCMA -- KITCHEN CABINET MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION**
- 2.62 LPI -- LIGHTNING PROTECTION INSTITUTE**
- 2.63 MFMA -- METAL FRAMING MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION**
- 2.64 NADCA -- NATIONAL AIR DUCT CLEANING ASSOCIATION**
- 2.65 NAMM -- NATIONAL ASSOCIATION OF MIRROR MANUFACTURERS**
- 2.66 NEII -- NATIONAL ELEVATOR INDUSTRY, INC.**
- 2.67 NEMA -- NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION**
- 2.68 NETA -- INTERNATIONAL ELECTRICAL TESTING ASSOCIATION**
- 2.69 NFPA -- NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION**
  - A. NFPA 701 - Standard Methods of Fire Tests for Flame Propagation of Textiles and Films 2023, with Errata.

- 2.70 NHLA -- NATIONAL HARDWOOD LUMBER ASSOCIATION**
  - 2.71 NIBS -- NATIONAL INSTITUTE OF BUILDING SCIENCES**
  - 2.72 NPCA -- NATIONAL PAINT AND COATINGS ASSOCIATION**
  - 2.73 PDCA -- PAINTING AND DECORATING CONTRACTORS OF AMERICA**
  - 2.74 RCSC -- RESEARCH COUNCIL ON STRUCTURAL CONNECTIONS**
  - 2.75 RFCI -- RESILIENT FLOOR COVERING INSTITUTE**
  - 2.76 SAE -- SAE INTERNATIONAL**
  - 2.77 SDI -- STEEL DOOR INSTITUTE**
  - 2.78 SIGMA -- SEALED INSULATING GLASS MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (SEE IGMA)**
  - 2.79 SMACNA -- SHEET METAL AND AIR CONDITIONING CONTRACTORS' NATIONAL ASSOCIATION, INC.**
  - 2.80 SPIB -- SOUTHERN PINE INSPECTION BUREAU, INC.**
    - A. SPIB (GR) - Standard Grading Rules 2021.
  - 2.81 SSPC -- SOCIETY FOR PROTECTIVE COATINGS**
  - 2.82 SWI -- STEEL WINDOW INSTITUTE**
  - 2.83 TCNA -- TILE COUNCIL OF NORTH AMERICA, INC.**
  - 2.84 TIA -- TELECOMMUNICATIONS INDUSTRY ASSOCIATION**
  - 2.85 UL -- UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES INC.**
    - A. UL (FRD) - Fire Resistance Directory Current Edition.
    - B. UL 325 - Standard for Door, Drapery, Gate, Louver, and Window Operators and Systems Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
  - 2.86 USGBC -- U.S. GREEN BUILDING COUNCIL**
  - 2.87 WCLIB -- WEST COAST LUMBER INSPECTION BUREAU**
    - A. WCLIB (GR) - Standard Grading Rules for West Coast Lumber No. 17 2018.
  - 2.88 WCMA -- WINDOW COVERING MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION**
    - A. WCMA A100.1 - Standard for Safety of Window Covering Products 2022.
  - 2.89 WDMA -- WINDOW AND DOOR MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (FORMERLY NWWDA)**
  - 2.90 WI -- WOODWORK INSTITUTE**
- PART 3 UNITED STATES GOVERNMENT AND RELATED AGENCIES DOCUMENTS**
- 3.01 CEQ -- COUNCIL ON ENVIRONMENTAL QUALITY GUIDANCE**
  - 3.02 CFR -- CODE OF FEDERAL REGULATIONS**
    - A. ADA Standards - 2010 ADA Standards for Accessible Design 2010.
    - B. 36 CFR 1191 - Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities; Architectural Barriers Act (ABA) Accessibility Guidelines current edition.
  - 3.03 EPA -- ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION AGENCY**
  - 3.04 FEMA -- U.S. FEDERAL EMERGENCY MANAGEMENT AGENCY**
  - 3.05 OSHA - OCCUPATIONAL SAFETY HEALTH ADMINISTRATION**
  - 3.06 IDOT - ILLINOIS DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION**
  - 3.07 PS -- PRODUCT STANDARDS**
    - A. PS 1 - Structural Plywood 2019.
    - B. PS 20 - American Softwood Lumber Standard 2021.

**END OF SECTION 01 42 19**

**SECTION 01 50 00  
TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Temporary utilities.
- B. Temporary telecommunications services.
- C. Temporary sanitary facilities.
- D. Temporary Controls: Barriers, enclosures, and fencing.
- E. Security requirements.
- F. Vehicular access and parking.
- G. Waste removal facilities and services.
- H. Project identification sign.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 01 51 00 - Temporary Utilities.
- B. Section 01 55 00 - Vehicular Access and Parking.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials 2023b.
- B. ASTM E90 - Standard Test Method for Laboratory Measurement of Airborne Sound Transmission Loss of Building Partitions and Elements 2009 (Reapproved 2016).

**1.04 TEMPORARY UTILITIES - SEE SECTION 01 51 00**

- A. Owner will provide the following:
  - 1. Electrical power and metering, consisting of connection to existing facilities.

**1.05 TELECOMMUNICATIONS SERVICES**

- A. Provide, maintain, and pay for telecommunications services to field office at time of project mobilization.
- B. Telecommunications services shall include:
  - 1. Windows-based personal computer dedicated to project telecommunications, with necessary software and laser printer.
  - 2. Internet Connections: Minimum of one; DSL modem or faster.
  - 3. Email: Account/address reserved for project use.

**1.06 TEMPORARY SANITARY FACILITIES**

- A. Provide and maintain required facilities and enclosures. Provide at time of project mobilization.
- B. Use of existing facilities is permitted, upon owner agreement.
- C. Maintain daily in clean and sanitary condition.
- D. At end of construction, return facilities to same or better condition as originally found.

**1.07 BARRIERS**

- A. Provide barriers to prevent unauthorized entry to construction areas, to prevent access to areas that could be hazardous to workers or the public, to allow for owner's use of site and to protect existing facilities and adjacent properties from damage from construction operations and demolition.
- B. Provide barricades and covered walkways required by governing authorities for public rights-of-way and for public access to existing building.
- C. Protect non-owned vehicular traffic, stored materials, site, and structures from damage.



**1.08 FENCING**

- A. Provide 6 foot (1.8 m) high fence around construction site; equip with vehicular and pedestrian gates with locks.

**1.09 INTERIOR ENCLOSURES**

- A. Provide temporary partitions and ceilings as indicated to separate work areas from Owner-occupied areas, to prevent penetration of dust and moisture into Owner-occupied areas, and to prevent damage to existing materials and equipment.
- B. Construction: Framing and reinforced polyethylene sheet materials with closed joints and sealed edges at intersections with existing surfaces:
  - 1. STC rating of 35 in accordance with ASTM E90.
  - 2. Maximum flame spread rating of 75 in accordance with ASTM E84.
- C. Paint surfaces exposed to view from Owner-occupied areas.

**1.10 SECURITY - SEE SECTION 01 35 53**

- A. Provide security and facilities to protect Work, existing facilities, and Owner's operations from unauthorized entry, vandalism, or theft.

**1.11 VEHICULAR ACCESS AND PARKING - SEE SECTION 01 55 00**

- A. Coordinate access and haul routes with governing authorities and Owner.
- B. Provide and maintain access to fire hydrants, free of obstructions.
- C. Provide means of removing mud from vehicle wheels before entering streets.
- D. Provide temporary parking areas to accommodate construction personnel. When site space is not adequate, provide additional off-site parking.

**1.12 WASTE REMOVAL**

- A. Provide waste removal facilities and services as required to maintain the site in clean and orderly condition.
- B. Provide containers with lids. Remove trash from site periodically.
- C. If materials to be recycled or re-used on the project must be stored on-site, provide suitable non-combustible containers; locate containers holding flammable material outside the structure unless otherwise approved by the authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Open free-fall chutes are not permitted. Terminate closed chutes into appropriate containers with lids.

**1.13 PROJECT IDENTIFICATION**

- A. Provide project identification sign of design and construction indicated on drawings.
- B. Erect on site at location indicated.
- C. No other signs are allowed without Owner permission except those required by law.

**1.14 REMOVAL OF UTILITIES, FACILITIES, AND CONTROLS**

- A. Remove temporary utilities, equipment, facilities, materials, prior to Date of Substantial Completion inspection.
- B. Remove underground installations to a minimum depth of 2 feet (600 mm). Grade site as indicated.
- C. Clean and repair damage caused by installation or use of temporary work.
- D. Restore existing facilities used during construction to original condition.
- E. Restore new permanent facilities used during construction to specified condition.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS - NOT USED**

**PART 3 EXECUTION - NOT USED**

**END OF SECTION 01 50 00**

**SECTION 01 60 00  
PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. General product requirements.
- B. Sustainable design-related product requirements.
- C. Re-use of existing products.
- D. Transportation, handling, storage and protection.
- E. Product option requirements.
- F. Substitution limitations.
- G. Procedures for Owner-supplied products.
- H. Maintenance materials, including extra materials, spare parts, tools, and software.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 01 10 00 - Summary: Identification of Owner-supplied products.
- B. Section 01 25 00 - Substitution Procedures: Substitutions made during procurement and/or construction phases.
- C. Section 01 61 16 - Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Content Restrictions: Requirements for VOC-restricted product categories.
- D. Section 01 74 19 - Construction Waste Management and Disposal: Waste disposal requirements potentially affecting product selection, packaging and substitutions.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

**1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data Submittals: Submit manufacturer's standard published data. Mark each copy to identify applicable products, models, options, and other data. Supplement manufacturers' standard data to provide information specific to this Project.
- B. Shop Drawing Submittals: Prepared specifically for this Project; indicate utility and electrical characteristics, utility connection requirements, and location of utility outlets for service for functional equipment and appliances.
- C. Sample Submittals: Illustrate functional and aesthetic characteristics of the product, with integral parts and attachment devices. Coordinate sample submittals for interfacing work.
  - 1. For selection from standard finishes, submit samples of the full range of the manufacturer's standard colors, textures, and patterns.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 EXISTING PRODUCTS**

- A. Do not use materials and equipment removed from existing premises unless specifically required or permitted by Contract Documents.
- B. Unforeseen historic items encountered remain the property of the Owner; notify Owner promptly upon discovery; protect, remove, handle, and store as directed by Owner.
- C. Existing materials and equipment indicated to be removed, but not to be re-used, relocated, reinstalled, delivered to the Owner, or otherwise indicated as to remain the property of the Owner, become the property of the Contractor; remove from site.

**2.02 NEW PRODUCTS**

- A. Provide new products unless specifically required or permitted by Contract Documents.
- B. Use of products having any of the following characteristics is not permitted:
  - 1. Made using or containing CFC's or HCFC's.
  - 2. Containing lead, cadmium, or asbestos.

- C. Where other criteria are met, Contractor shall give preference to products that:
  - 1. If used on interior, have lower emissions, as defined in Section 01 61 16.
  - 2. If wet-applied, have lower VOC content, as defined in Section 01 61 16.
  - 3. Are extracted, harvested, and/or manufactured closer to the location of the project.
  - 4. Have longer documented life span under normal use.
  - 5. Result in less construction waste. See Section 01 74 19

### **2.03 PRODUCT OPTIONS**

- A. Products Specified by Reference Standards or by Description Only: Use any product meeting those standards or description.
- B. Products Specified by Naming One or More Manufacturers: Use a product of one of the manufacturers named and meeting specifications, no options or substitutions allowed.
- C. Products Specified by Naming One or More Manufacturers with a Provision for Substitutions: Submit a request for substitution for any manufacturer not named.

### **2.04 MAINTENANCE MATERIALS**

- A. Furnish extra materials, spare parts, tools, and software of types and in quantities specified in individual specification sections.
- B. Deliver to Project site; obtain receipt prior to final payment.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 SUBSTITUTION LIMITATIONS**

- A. See Section 01 25 00 - Substitution Procedures.

### **3.02 OWNER-SUPPLIED PRODUCTS**

- A. Owner's Responsibilities:
  - 1. Arrange for and deliver Owner reviewed shop drawings, product data, and samples, to Contractor.
  - 2. Arrange and pay for product delivery to site.
  - 3. On delivery, inspect products jointly with Contractor.
  - 4. Submit claims for transportation damage and replace damaged, defective, or deficient items.
  - 5. Arrange for manufacturers' warranties, inspections, and service.
- B. Contractor's Responsibilities:
  - 1. Review Owner reviewed shop drawings, product data, and samples.
  - 2. Receive and unload products at site; inspect for completeness or damage jointly with Owner.
  - 3. Handle, store, install and finish products.
  - 4. Repair or replace items damaged after receipt.

### **3.03 TRANSPORTATION AND HANDLING**

- A. Package products for shipment in manner to prevent damage; for equipment, package to avoid loss of factory calibration.
- B. If special precautions are required, attach instructions prominently and legibly on outside of packaging.
- C. Coordinate schedule of product delivery to designated prepared areas in order to minimize site storage time and potential damage to stored materials.
- D. Transport and handle products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- E. Transport materials in covered trucks to prevent contamination of product and littering of surrounding areas.
- F. Promptly inspect shipments to ensure that products comply with requirements, quantities are correct, and products are undamaged.

- G. Provide equipment and personnel to handle products by methods to prevent soiling, disfigurement, or damage, and to minimize handling.
- H. Arrange for the return of packing materials, such as wood pallets, where economically feasible.

**3.04 STORAGE AND PROTECTION**

- A. Designate receiving/storage areas for incoming products so that they are delivered according to installation schedule and placed convenient to work area in order to minimize waste due to excessive materials handling and misapplication. See Section 01 74 19.
- B. Store and protect products in accordance with manufacturers' instructions.
- C. Store with seals and labels intact and legible.
- D. Store sensitive products in weathertight, climate-controlled enclosures in an environment favorable to product.
- E. For exterior storage of fabricated products, place on sloped supports above ground.
- F. Protect products from damage or deterioration due to construction operations, weather, precipitation, humidity, temperature, sunlight and ultraviolet light, dirt, dust, and other contaminants.
- G. Comply with manufacturer's warranty conditions, if any.
- H. Cover products subject to deterioration with impervious sheet covering. Provide ventilation to prevent condensation and degradation of products.
- I. Prevent contact with material that may cause corrosion, discoloration, or staining.
- J. Provide equipment and personnel to store products by methods to prevent soiling, disfigurement, or damage.
- K. Arrange storage of products to permit access for inspection. Periodically inspect to verify products are undamaged and are maintained in acceptable condition.

**END OF SECTION 01 60 00**

This page intentionally left blank

**SECTION 01 70 00  
EXECUTION AND CLOSEOUT REQUIREMENTS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Examination, preparation, and general installation procedures.
- B. Requirements for alterations work, including selective demolition.
- C. Pre-installation meetings.
- D. Cutting and patching.
- E. Surveying for laying out the work.
- F. Cleaning and protection.
- G. Starting of systems and equipment.
- H. Closeout procedures, including Contractor's Correction Punch List, except payment procedures.
- I. General requirements for maintenance service.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 01 10 00 - Summary: Limitations on working in existing building; continued occupancy; work sequence; identification of salvaged and relocated materials.
- B. Section 01 40 00 - Quality Requirements: Testing and inspection procedures.
- C. Section 01 50 00 - Temporary Facilities and Controls: Temporary exterior enclosures.
- D. Section 01 50 00 - Temporary Facilities and Controls: Temporary interior partitions.
- E. Section 01 74 19 - Construction Waste Management and Disposal: Additional procedures for trash/waste removal, recycling, salvage, and reuse.
- F. Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals: Project record documents, operation and maintenance data, warranties, and bonds.
- G. Section 01 79 00 - Demonstration and Training: Demonstration of products and systems to be commissioned and where indicated in specific specification sections
- H. Section 07 84 00 - Firestopping.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. NFPA 241 - Standard for Safeguarding Construction, Alteration, and Demolition Operations 2022, with Errata (2021).

**1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Survey work: Submit name, address, and telephone number of Surveyor before starting survey work.
  - 1. On request, submit documentation verifying accuracy of survey work.
  - 2. Submit a copy of site drawing signed by the Land Surveyor, that the elevations and locations of the work are in compliance with Contract Documents.
  - 3. Submit surveys and survey logs for the project record.
- C. Cutting and Patching: Submit written request in advance of cutting or alteration that affects:
  - 1. Structural integrity of any element of Project.
  - 2. Integrity of weather exposed or moisture resistant element.
  - 3. Efficiency, maintenance, or safety of any operational element.
  - 4. Visual qualities of sight exposed elements.
  - 5. Work of Owner or separate Contractor.
- D. Project Record Documents: Accurately record actual locations of capped and active utilities.

### **1.05 QUALIFICATIONS**

- A. For surveying work, employ a land surveyor registered in the State in which the Project is located and acceptable to Architect. Submit evidence of surveyor's Errors and Omissions insurance coverage in the form of an Insurance Certificate. Employ only individual(s) trained and experienced in collecting and recording accurate data relevant to ongoing construction activities,

### **1.06 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Ventilate enclosed areas to assist cure of materials, to dissipate humidity, and to prevent accumulation of dust, fumes, vapors, or gases.
- B. Noise Control: Provide methods, means, and facilities to minimize noise produced by construction operations.
- C. Pest and Rodent Control: Provide methods, means, and facilities to prevent pests and insects from damaging the work.
- D. Rodent Control: Provide methods, means, and facilities to prevent rodents from accessing or invading premises.

### **1.07 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate scheduling, submittals, and work of the various sections of the Project Manual to ensure efficient and orderly sequence of installation of interdependent construction elements, with provisions for accommodating items installed later.
- B. Notify affected utility companies and comply with their requirements.
- C. Verify that utility requirements and characteristics of new operating equipment are compatible with building utilities. Coordinate work of various sections having interdependent responsibilities for installing, connecting to, and placing in service, such equipment.
- D. Coordinate space requirements, supports, and installation of mechanical and electrical work that are indicated diagrammatically on drawings. Follow routing indicated for pipes, ducts, and conduit, as closely as practicable; place runs parallel with lines of building. Utilize spaces efficiently to maximize accessibility for other installations, for maintenance, and for repairs.
- E. In finished areas except as otherwise indicated, conceal pipes, ducts, and wiring within the construction. Coordinate locations of fixtures and outlets with finish elements.
- F. Coordinate completion and clean-up of work of separate sections.
- G. After Owner occupancy of premises, coordinate access to site for correction of defective work and work not in accordance with Contract Documents, to minimize disruption of Owner's activities.

## **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 PATCHING MATERIALS**

- A. New Materials: As specified in product sections; match existing products and work for patching and extending work.
- B. Type and Quality of Existing Products: Determine by inspecting and testing products where necessary, referring to existing work as a standard.
- C. Product Substitution: For any proposed change in materials, submit request for substitution described in Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify that existing site conditions and substrate surfaces are acceptable for subsequent work. Start of work means acceptance of existing conditions.
- B. Verify that existing substrate is capable of structural support or attachment of new work being applied or attached.

- C. Examine and verify specific conditions described in individual specification sections.
- D. Take field measurements before confirming product orders or beginning fabrication, to minimize waste due to over-ordering or misfabrication.
- E. Verify that utility services are available, of the correct characteristics, and in the correct locations.
- F. Prior to Cutting: Examine existing conditions prior to commencing work, including elements subject to damage or movement during cutting and patching. After uncovering existing work, assess conditions affecting performance of work. Beginning of cutting or patching means acceptance of existing conditions.

### **3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Clean substrate surfaces prior to applying next material or substance.
- B. Seal cracks or openings of substrate prior to applying next material or substance.
- C. Apply manufacturer required or recommended substrate primer, sealer, or conditioner prior to applying any new material or substance in contact or bond.

### **3.03 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS**

- A. When required in individual specification sections, convene a preinstallation meeting at the site prior to commencing work of the section.
- B. Require attendance of parties directly affecting, or affected by, work of the specific section.
- C. Notify Architect four days in advance of meeting date.
- D. Prepare agenda and preside at meeting:
  - 1. Review conditions of examination, preparation and installation procedures.
  - 2. Review coordination with related work.
- E. Record minutes and distribute copies within two days after meeting to participants, with two copies to Architect, Owner, participants, and those affected by decisions made.

### **3.04 LAYING OUT THE WORK**

- A. Verify locations of survey control points prior to starting work.
- B. Promptly notify Architect of any discrepancies discovered.
- C. Protect survey control points prior to starting site work; preserve permanent reference points during construction.
- D. Promptly report to Architect the loss or destruction of any reference point or relocation required because of changes in grades or other reasons.
- E. Replace dislocated survey control points based on original survey control. Make no changes without prior written notice to Architect.
- F. Utilize recognized engineering survey practices.
- G. Establish elevations, lines and levels. Locate and lay out by instrumentation and similar appropriate means:
  - 1. Site improvements including pavements; stakes for grading, fill and topsoil placement; utility locations, slopes, and invert elevations; and \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 2. Grid or axis for structures.
  - 3. Building foundation, column locations, ground floor elevations, and \_\_\_\_\_.
- H. Periodically verify layouts by same means.
- I. Maintain a complete and accurate log of control and survey work as it progresses.

### **3.05 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Install products as specified in individual sections, in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and recommendations, and so as to avoid waste due to necessity for replacement.
- B. Make vertical elements plumb and horizontal elements level, unless otherwise indicated.



- C. Install equipment and fittings plumb and level, neatly aligned with adjacent vertical and horizontal lines, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Make consistent texture on surfaces, with seamless transitions, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Make neat transitions between different surfaces, maintaining texture and appearance.

### 3.06 ALTERATIONS

- A. Drawings showing existing construction and utilities are based on casual field observation and existing record documents only.
  - 1. Verify that construction and utility arrangements are as indicated.
  - 2. Report discrepancies to Architect before disturbing existing installation.
  - 3. Beginning of alterations work constitutes acceptance of existing conditions.
- B. Keep areas in which alterations are being conducted separated from other areas that are still occupied.
  - 1. Provide, erect, and maintain temporary dustproof partitions of construction specified in Section 01 50 00 in locations indicated on drawings.
- C. Maintain weatherproof exterior building enclosure except for interruptions required for replacement or modifications; take care to prevent water and humidity damage.
  - 1. Where openings in exterior enclosure exist, provide construction to make exterior enclosure weatherproof.
  - 2. Insulate existing ducts or pipes that are exposed to outdoor ambient temperatures by alterations work.
- D. Remove existing work as indicated and as required to accomplish new work.
  - 1. Remove items indicated on drawings.
  - 2. Relocate items indicated on drawings.
  - 3. Where new surface finishes are to be applied to existing work, perform removals, patch, and prepare existing surfaces as required to receive new finish; remove existing finish if necessary for successful application of new finish.
  - 4. Where new surface finishes are not specified or indicated, patch holes and damaged surfaces to match adjacent finished surfaces as closely as possible.
- E. Services (Including but not limited to HVAC, Plumbing, Fire Protection, Electrical, Telecommunications, and \_\_\_\_\_): Remove, relocate, and extend existing systems to accommodate new construction.
  - 1. Maintain existing active systems that are to remain in operation; maintain access to equipment and operational components; if necessary, modify installation to allow access or provide access panel.
  - 2. Where existing systems or equipment are not active and Contract Documents require reactivation, put back into operational condition; repair supply, distribution, and equipment as required.
  - 3. Where existing active systems serve occupied facilities but are to be replaced with new services, maintain existing systems in service until new systems are complete and ready for service.
    - a. Disable existing systems only to make switchovers and connections; minimize duration of outages.
    - b. Provide temporary connections as required to maintain existing systems in service.
  - 4. Verify that abandoned services serve only abandoned facilities.
  - 5. Remove abandoned pipe, ducts, conduits, and equipment, including those above accessible ceilings; remove back to source of supply where possible, otherwise cap stub and tag with identification; patch holes left by removal using materials specified for new construction.
- F. Protect existing work to remain.
  - 1. Prevent movement of structure; provide shoring and bracing if necessary.
  - 2. Perform cutting to accomplish removals neatly and as specified for cutting new work.
  - 3. Repair adjacent construction and finishes damaged during removal work.

- G. Adapt existing work to fit new work: Make as neat and smooth transition as possible.
  - 1. When existing finished surfaces are cut so that a smooth transition with new work is not possible, terminate existing surface along a straight line at a natural line of division and make recommendation to Architect.
  - 2. Where removal of partitions or walls results in adjacent spaces becoming one, rework floors, walls, and ceilings to a smooth plane without breaks, steps, or bulkheads.
  - 3. Where a change of plane of 1/4 inch (6 mm) or more occurs in existing work, submit recommendation for providing a smooth transition for Architect review and request instructions.
- H. Patching: Where the existing surface is not indicated to be refinished, patch to match the surface finish that existed prior to cutting. Where the surface is indicated to be refinished, patch so that the substrate is ready for the new finish.
- I. Refinish existing surfaces as indicated:
  - 1. Where rooms or spaces are indicated to be refinished, refinish all visible existing surfaces to remain to the specified condition for each material, with a neat transition to adjacent finishes.
  - 2. If mechanical or electrical work is exposed accidentally during the work, re-cover and refinish to match.
- J. Clean existing systems and equipment.
- K. Remove demolition debris and abandoned items from alterations areas and dispose of off-site; do not burn or bury.
- L. Do not begin new construction in alterations areas before demolition is complete.
- M. Comply with all other applicable requirements of this section.

### 3.07 CUTTING AND PATCHING

- A. Whenever possible, execute the work by methods that avoid cutting or patching.
- B. See Alterations article above for additional requirements.
- C. Perform whatever cutting and patching is necessary to:
  - 1. Complete the work.
  - 2. Fit products together to integrate with other work.
  - 3. Provide openings for penetration of mechanical, electrical, and other services.
  - 4. Match work that has been cut to adjacent work.
  - 5. Repair areas adjacent to cuts to required condition.
  - 6. Repair new work damaged by subsequent work.
  - 7. Remove samples of installed work for testing when requested.
  - 8. Remove and replace defective and non-complying work.
- D. Execute work by methods that avoid damage to other work and that will provide appropriate surfaces to receive patching and finishing. In existing work, minimize damage and restore to original condition.
- E. Employ original installer to perform cutting for weather exposed and moisture resistant elements, and sight exposed surfaces.
- F. Cut rigid materials using masonry saw or core drill. Pneumatic tools not allowed without prior approval.
- G. Restore work with new products in accordance with requirements of Contract Documents.
- H. Fit work air tight to pipes, sleeves, ducts, conduit, and other penetrations through surfaces.
- I. At penetrations of fire rated walls, partitions, ceiling, or floor construction, completely seal voids with fire rated material in accordance with Section 07 84 00, to full thickness of the penetrated element.
- J. Patching:

1. Finish patched surfaces to match finish that existed prior to patching. On continuous surfaces, refinish to nearest intersection or natural break. For an assembly, refinish entire unit.
2. Match color, texture, and appearance.
3. Repair patched surfaces that are damaged, lifted, discolored, or showing other imperfections due to patching work. If defects are due to condition of substrate, repair substrate prior to repairing finish.

### **3.08 PROGRESS CLEANING**

- A. Maintain areas free of waste materials, debris, and rubbish. Maintain site in a clean and orderly condition.
- B. Remove debris and rubbish from pipe chases, plenums, attics, crawl spaces, and other closed or remote spaces, prior to enclosing the space.
- C. Broom and vacuum clean interior areas prior to start of surface finishing, and continue cleaning to eliminate dust.
- D. Collect and remove waste materials, debris, and trash/rubbish from site periodically and dispose off-site; do not burn or bury.

### **3.09 PROTECTION OF INSTALLED WORK**

- A. Protect installed work from damage by construction operations.
- B. Provide special protection where specified in individual specification sections.
- C. Provide temporary and removable protection for installed products. Control activity in immediate work area to prevent damage.
- D. Provide protective coverings at walls, projections, jambs, sills, and soffits of openings.
- E. Protect finished floors, stairs, and other surfaces from traffic, dirt, wear, damage, or movement of heavy objects, by protecting with durable sheet materials.
- F. Prohibit traffic or storage upon waterproofed or roofed surfaces. If traffic or activity is necessary, obtain recommendations for protection from waterproofing or roofing material manufacturer.
- G. Remove protective coverings when no longer needed; reuse or recycle coverings if possible.

### **3.10 SYSTEM STARTUP**

- A. Coordinate schedule for start-up of various equipment and systems.
- B. Verify that each piece of equipment or system has been checked for proper lubrication, drive rotation, belt tension, control sequence, and for conditions that may cause damage.
- C. Verify tests, meter readings, and specified electrical characteristics agree with those required by the equipment or system manufacturer.
- D. Verify that wiring and support components for equipment are complete and tested.
- E. Execute start-up under supervision of applicable Contractor personnel and manufacturer's representative in accordance with manufacturers' instructions.
- F. Submit a written report that equipment or system has been properly installed and is functioning correctly.

### **3.11 ADJUSTING**

- A. Adjust operating products and equipment to ensure smooth and unhindered operation.

### **3.12 FINAL CLEANING**

- A. Use cleaning materials that are nonhazardous.
- B. Clean interior and exterior glass, surfaces exposed to view; remove temporary labels, stains and foreign substances, polish transparent and glossy surfaces, vacuum carpeted and soft surfaces.

- C. Remove all labels that are not permanent. Do not paint or otherwise cover fire test labels or nameplates on mechanical and electrical equipment.
- D. Clean equipment and fixtures to a sanitary condition with cleaning materials appropriate to the surface and material being cleaned.
- E. Clean filters of operating equipment.
- F. Clean debris from roofs, gutters, downspouts, scuppers, overflow drains, area drains, drainage systems, and \_\_\_\_\_.
- G. Clean site; sweep paved areas, rake clean landscaped surfaces.
- H. Remove waste, surplus materials, trash/rubbish, and construction facilities from the site; dispose of in legal manner; do not burn or bury.

### **3.13 CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES**

- A. Make submittals that are required by governing or other authorities.
  - 1. Provide copies to Architect and Owner.
- B. Accompany Project Coordinator on preliminary inspection to determine items to be listed for completion or correction in the Contractor's Correction Punch List for Contractor's Notice of Substantial Completion.
- C. Notify Architect when work is considered ready for Architect's Substantial Completion inspection.
- D. Submit written certification containing Contractor's Correction Punch List, that Contract Documents have been reviewed, work has been inspected, and that work is complete in accordance with Contract Documents and ready for Architect's Substantial Completion inspection.
- E. Conduct Substantial Completion inspection and create Final Correction Punch List containing Architect's and Contractor's comprehensive list of items identified to be completed or corrected and submit to Architect.
- F. Correct items of work listed in Final Correction Punch List and comply with requirements for access to Owner-occupied areas.
- G. Notify Architect when work is considered finally complete and ready for Architect's Substantial Completion final inspection.
- H. Complete items of work determined by Architect listed in executed Certificate of Substantial Completion.

### **3.14 MAINTENANCE**

- A. Provide service and maintenance of components indicated in specification sections.
- B. Maintenance Period: As indicated in specification sections or, if not indicated, not less than one year from the Date of Substantial Completion or the length of the specified warranty, whichever is longer.
- C. Examine system components at a frequency consistent with reliable operation. Clean, adjust, and lubricate as required.
- D. Include systematic examination, adjustment, and lubrication of components. Repair or replace parts whenever required. Use parts produced by the manufacturer of the original component.
- E. Maintenance service shall not be assigned or transferred to any agent or subcontractor without prior written consent of the Owner.

**END OF SECTION 01 70 00**

This page intentionally left blank

**SECTION 01 78 00  
CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Project record documents.
- B. Operation and maintenance data.
- C. Materials transparency manual.
- D. Warranties and bonds.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements: Submittals procedures, shop drawings, product data, and samples.
- B. Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Contract closeout procedures.
- C. Individual Product Sections: Specific requirements for operation and maintenance data.
- D. Individual Product Sections: Warranties required for specific products or Work.

**1.03 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Project Record Documents: Submit documents to Architect with claim for final Application for Payment.
- B. Operation and Maintenance Data:
  - 1. For equipment, or component parts of equipment put into service during construction and operated by Owner, submit completed documents within ten days after acceptance.
  - 2. Submit one copy of completed documents 15 days prior to final inspection. This copy will be reviewed and returned after final inspection, with Architect comments. Revise content of all document sets as required prior to final submission.
  - 3. Submit two sets of revised final documents in final form within 10 days after final inspection.
- C. Materials Transparency Manual:
  - 1. Compile and submit a digital and a printed version of information disclosing materials content for interior finishes, furnishings (including workstations), built-in furniture. Meet IWBI (BS) requirements for format and content.
- D. Warranties and Bonds:
  - 1. For equipment or component parts of equipment put into service during construction with Owner's permission, submit documents within 10 days after acceptance.
  - 2. Make other submittals within 10 days after Date of Substantial Completion, prior to final Application for Payment.
  - 3. For items of Work for which acceptance is delayed beyond Date of Substantial Completion, submit within 10 days after acceptance, listing the date of acceptance as the beginning of the warranty period.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS - NOT USED**

**PART 3 EXECUTION**

**3.01 PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS**

- A. Maintain on site one set of the following record documents; record actual revisions to the Work:
  - 1. Drawings.
  - 2. Addenda.
  - 3. Change Orders and other modifications to the Contract.
- B. Ensure entries are complete and accurate, enabling future reference by Owner.
- C. Store record documents separate from documents used for construction.
- D. Record information concurrent with construction progress.

- E. Record Drawings: Legibly mark each item to record actual construction including:
  - 1. Field changes of dimension and detail.
  - 2. Details not on original Contract drawings.

### **3.02 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA**

- A. Product Data: Mark each sheet to clearly identify specific products and component parts, and data applicable to installation. Delete inapplicable information.
- B. Drawings: Supplement product data to illustrate relations of component parts of equipment and systems, to show control and flow diagrams. Do not use Project Record Documents as maintenance drawings.
- C. Typed Text: As required to supplement product data. Provide logical sequence of instructions for each procedure, incorporating manufacturer's instructions.

### **3.03 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA FOR MATERIALS AND FINISHES**

- A. For Each Product, Applied Material, and Finish:
- B. Instructions for Care and Maintenance: Manufacturer's recommendations for cleaning agents and methods, precautions against detrimental cleaning agents and methods, and recommended schedule for cleaning and maintenance.
- C. Moisture protection and weather-exposed products: Include product data listing applicable reference standards, chemical composition, and details of installation. Provide recommendations for inspections, maintenance, and repair.
- D. Where additional instructions are required, beyond the manufacturer's standard printed instructions, have instructions prepared by personnel experienced in the operation and maintenance of the specific products.

### **3.04 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA FOR EQUIPMENT AND SYSTEMS**

- A. Where additional instructions are required, beyond the manufacturer's standard printed instructions, have instructions prepared by personnel experienced in the operation and maintenance of the specific products.
- B. Operating Procedures: Include start-up, break-in, and routine normal operating instructions and sequences. Include regulation, control, stopping, shut-down, and emergency instructions. Include summer, winter, and any special operating instructions.
- C. Maintenance Requirements: Include routine procedures and guide for preventative maintenance and trouble shooting; disassembly, repair, and reassembly instructions; and alignment, adjusting, balancing, and checking instructions.
- D. Provide list of original manufacturer's spare parts, current prices, and recommended quantities to be maintained in storage.
- E. Include test and balancing reports.
- F. Additional Requirements: As specified in individual product specification sections.

### **3.05 ASSEMBLY OF OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS**

- A. Assemble operation and maintenance data into durable manuals for Owner's personnel use, with data arranged in the same sequence as, and identified by, the specification sections.
- B. Where systems involve more than one specification section, provide separate tabbed divider for each system.
- C. Binders: Commercial quality, 8-1/2 by 11 inch (216 by 280 mm) three D side ring binders with durable plastic covers; 2 inch (50 mm) maximum ring size. When multiple binders are used, correlate data into related consistent groupings.
- D. Cover: Identify each binder with typed or printed title OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE INSTRUCTIONS; identify title of Project; identify subject matter of contents.
- E. Project Directory: Title and address of Project; names, addresses, and telephone numbers of Architect, Consultants, Contractor and subcontractors, with names of responsible parties.

- F. Tables of Contents: List every item separated by a divider, using the same identification as on the divider tab; where multiple volumes are required, include all volumes Tables of Contents in each volume, with the current volume clearly identified.
- G. Dividers: Provide tabbed dividers for each separate product and system; identify the contents on the divider tab; immediately following the divider tab include a description of product and major component parts of equipment.
- H. Text: Manufacturer's printed data, or typewritten data on 20 pound paper.
- I. Drawings: Provide with reinforced punched binder tab. Bind in with text; fold larger drawings to size of text pages.

### **3.06 WARRANTIES AND BONDS**

- A. Obtain warranties and bonds, executed in duplicate by responsible Subcontractors, suppliers, and manufacturers, within 10 days after completion of the applicable item of work. Except for items put into use with Owner's permission, leave date of beginning of time of warranty until Date of Substantial completion is determined.
- B. Verify that documents are in proper form, contain full information, and are notarized.
- C. Co-execute submittals when required.
- D. Retain warranties and bonds until time specified for submittal.
- E. Table of Contents: Neatly typed, in the sequence of the Table of Contents of the Project Manual, with each item identified with the number and title of the specification section in which specified, and the name of product or work item.
- F. Separate each warranty or bond with index tab sheets keyed to the Table of Contents listing. Provide full information, using separate typed sheets as necessary. List Subcontractor, supplier, and manufacturer, with name, address, and telephone number of responsible principal.

**END OF SECTION 01 78 00**



This page intentionally left blank

**SECTION 01 79 00  
DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SUMMARY**

- A. Demonstration of products and systems to be commissioned and where indicated in specific specification sections.
- B. Training of Owner personnel in operation and maintenance is required for:
  - 1. All software-operated systems.
  - 2. HVAC systems and equipment.
- C. Training of Owner personnel in care, cleaning, maintenance, and repair is required for:
  - 1. Finishes, including flooring, wall finishes, ceiling finishes.
  - 2. Items specified in individual product Sections.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals: Operation and maintenance manuals.
- B. Other Specification Sections: Additional requirements for demonstration and training.

**1.03 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures; except:
  - 1. Make all submittals specified in this section, and elsewhere where indicated for commissioning purposes, directly to the Commissioning Authority.
  - 2. Submit one copy to the Commissioning Authority, not to be returned.
  - 3. Make commissioning submittals on time schedule specified by Commissioning Authority.
  - 4. Submittals indicated as "Draft" are intended for the use of the Commissioning Authority in preparation of overall Training Plan; submit in editable electronic format, Microsoft Word 2003 preferred.
- B. Draft Training Plans: Owner will designate personnel to be trained; tailor training to needs and skill-level of attendees.
  - 1. Submit to Commissioning Authority for review and inclusion in overall training plan.
  - 2. Submit not less than four weeks prior to start of training.
  - 3. Revise and resubmit until acceptable.
  - 4. Provide an overall schedule showing all training sessions.
  - 5. Include at least the following for each training session:
    - a. Identification, date, time, and duration.
    - b. Description of products and/or systems to be covered.
    - c. Name of firm and person conducting training; include qualifications.
    - d. Intended audience, such as job description.
    - e. Objectives of training and suggested methods of ensuring adequate training.
    - f. Methods to be used, such as classroom lecture, live demonstrations, hands-on, etc.
    - g. Media to be used, such as slides, hand-outs, etc.
    - h. Training equipment required, such as projector, projection screen, etc., to be provided by Contractor.
- C. Training Manuals: Provide training manual for each attendee; allow for minimum of two attendees per training session.
  - 1. Include applicable portion of O&M manuals.
  - 2. Include copies of all hand-outs, slides, overheads, video presentations, etc., that are not included in O&M manuals.
  - 3. Provide one extra copy of each training manual to be included with operation and maintenance data.

**1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Instructor Qualifications: Familiar with design, operation, maintenance and troubleshooting of the relevant products and systems.

1. Provide as instructors the most qualified trainer of those contractors and/or installers who actually supplied and installed the systems and equipment.
2. Where a single person is not familiar with all aspects, provide specialists with necessary qualifications.

## **PART 2 PRODUCTS - NOT USED**

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 DEMONSTRATION - GENERAL**

- A. Demonstrations conducted during system start-up do not qualify as demonstrations for the purposes of this section, unless approved in advance by Owner.
- B. Demonstrations conducted during Functional Testing need not be repeated unless Owner personnel training is specified.
- C. Demonstration may be combined with Owner personnel training if applicable.
- D. Operating Equipment and Systems: Demonstrate operation in all modes, including start-up, shut-down, seasonal changeover, emergency conditions, and troubleshooting, and maintenance procedures, including scheduled and preventive maintenance.
  1. Perform demonstrations not less than two weeks prior to Substantial Completion.
  2. For equipment or systems requiring seasonal operation, perform demonstration for other season within six months.
- E. Non-Operating Products: Demonstrate cleaning, scheduled and preventive maintenance, and repair procedures.
  1. Perform demonstrations not less than two weeks prior to Substantial Completion.

### **3.02 TRAINING - GENERAL**

- A. Commissioning Authority will prepare the Training Plan based on draft plans submitted.
- B. Conduct training on-site unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Owner will provide classroom and seating at no cost to Contractor.
- D. Do not start training until Functional Testing is complete, unless otherwise specified or approved by the Commissioning Authority.
- E. Provide training in minimum two hour segments.
- F. The Commissioning Authority is responsible for determining that the training was satisfactorily completed and will provide approval forms.
- G. Training schedule will be subject to availability of Owner's personnel to be trained; re-schedule training sessions as required by Owner; once schedule has been approved by Owner failure to conduct sessions according to schedule will be cause for Owner to charge Contractor for personnel "show-up" time.
- H. Review of Facility Policy on Operation and Maintenance Data: During training discuss:
  1. The location of the O&M manuals and procedures for use and preservation; backup copies.
  2. Typical contents and organization of all manuals, including explanatory information, system narratives, and product specific information.
  3. Typical uses of the O&M manuals.
- I. Product- and System-Specific Training:
  1. Review the applicable O&M manuals.
  2. For systems, provide an overview of system operation, design parameters and constraints, and operational strategies.
  3. Review instructions for proper operation in all modes, including start-up, shut-down, seasonal changeover and emergency procedures, and for maintenance, including preventative maintenance.
  4. Provide hands-on training on all operational modes possible and preventive maintenance.

5. Emphasize safe and proper operating requirements; discuss relevant health and safety issues and emergency procedures.
  6. Discuss common troubleshooting problems and solutions.
  7. Discuss any peculiarities of equipment installation or operation.
  8. Discuss warranties and guarantees, including procedures necessary to avoid voiding coverage.
  9. Review recommended tools and spare parts inventory suggestions of manufacturers.
  10. Review spare parts and tools required to be furnished by Contractor.
  11. Review spare parts suppliers and sources and procurement procedures.
- J. Be prepared to answer questions raised by training attendees; if unable to answer during training session, provide written response within three days.

**END OF SECTION 01 79 00**

This page intentionally left blank

**SECTION 02 41 00  
DEMOLITION**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Building demolition excluding removal of hazardous materials and toxic substances.
- B. Selective demolition of built site elements.
- C. Selective demolition of building elements for alteration purposes.
- D. Abandonment and removal of existing utilities and utility structures.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 01 10 00 - Summary: Limitations on Contractor's use of site and premises.
- B. Section 01 10 00 - Summary: Description of items to be salvaged or removed for re-use by Contractor.
- C. Section 01 50 00 - Temporary Facilities and Controls: Site fences, security, protective barriers, and waste removal.
- D. Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements: Handling and storage of items removed for salvage and relocation.
- E. Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Project conditions; protection of bench marks, survey control points, and existing construction to remain; reinstallation of removed products; temporary bracing and shoring.
- F. Section 31 23 23 - Fill: Fill material for filling holes, pits, and excavations generated as a result of removal operations.

**1.03 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Demolition: Dismantle, raze, destroy or wreck any building or structure or any part thereof.
- B. Remove: Detach or dismantle items from existing construction and dispose of them off site, unless items are indicated to be salvaged or reinstalled.
- C. Remove and Salvage: Detach or dismantle items from existing construction in a manner to prevent damage. Clean, package, label and deliver salvaged items to Owner in ready-for-reuse condition.
- D. Remove and Reinstall: Detach or dismantle items from existing construction in a manner to prevent damage. Clean and prepare for reuse and reinstall where indicated.
- E. Existing to Remain: Designation for existing items that are not to be removed and that are not otherwise indicated to be salvaged or reinstalled.

**1.04 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. 29 CFR 1926 - Safety and Health Regulations for Construction Current Edition.
- B. NFPA 241 - Standard for Safeguarding Construction, Alteration, and Demolition Operations 2022, with Errata (2021).

**1.05 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements for submittal procedures.
- B. Site Plan: Indicate:
  - 1. Areas for temporary construction and field offices.
- C. Demolition Plan: Submit demolition plan as required by OSHA and local AHJs.
  - 1. Indicate extent of demolition, removal sequencing, bracing and shoring, and location and construction of barricades and fences.
- D. Demolition firm qualifications.
- E. Project Record Documents: Accurately record actual locations of capped and active utilities and subsurface construction.

### 1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Demolition Firm Qualifications: Company specializing in the type of work required.
  - 1. Minimum of 10 years of experience.

### PART 2 PRODUCTS -- NOT USED

### PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.01 DEMOLITION

- A. Remove portions of existing building to extents and as shown in Drawings..
- B. Remove other items indicated, for salvage, relocation, recycling, and \_\_\_\_\_.
- C. Fill excavations, open pits, and holes in ground areas generated as result of removals, using specified fill; compact fill as specified in Section 31 22 00.

#### 3.02 GENERAL PROCEDURES AND PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Comply with applicable codes and regulations for demolition operations and safety of adjacent structures and the public.
  - 1. Obtain required permits.
  - 2. Comply with applicable requirements of NFPA 241.
  - 3. Use of explosives is not permitted.
  - 4. Take precautions to prevent catastrophic or uncontrolled collapse of structures to be removed; do not allow worker or public access within range of potential collapse of unstable structures.
  - 5. Provide, erect, and maintain temporary barriers and security devices.
  - 6. Conduct operations to minimize effects on and interference with adjacent structures and occupants.
  - 7. Do not close or obstruct roadways or sidewalks without permits from authority having jurisdiction.
  - 8. Conduct operations to minimize obstruction of public and private entrances and exits. Do not obstruct required exits at any time. Protect persons using entrances and exits from removal operations.
  - 9. Obtain written permission from owners of adjacent properties when demolition equipment will traverse, infringe upon, or limit access to their property.
- B. Do not begin removal until receipt of notification to proceed from Owner.
- C. Do not begin removal until built elements to be salvaged or relocated have been removed.
- D. Do not begin removal until vegetation to be relocated has been removed and vegetation to remain has been protected from damage.
- E. Protect existing structures and other elements to remain in place and not removed.
  - 1. Provide bracing and shoring.
  - 2. Prevent movement or settlement of adjacent structures.
  - 3. Stop work immediately if adjacent structures appear to be in danger.
- F. Minimize production of dust due to demolition operations. Do not use water if that will result in ice, flooding, sedimentation of public waterways or storm sewers, or other pollution.
- G. Hazardous Materials:
  - 1. If hazardous materials are discovered during removal operations, stop work and notify Architect and Owner; hazardous materials include regulated asbestos containing materials, lead, PCBs, and mercury.
- H. Perform demolition in a manner that maximizes salvage and recycling of materials.
  - 1. Dismantle existing construction and separate materials.
  - 2. Set aside reusable, recyclable, and salvageable materials; store and deliver to collection point or point of reuse.

### 3.03 EXISTING UTILITIES

- A. Coordinate work with utility companies. Notify utilities before starting work, comply with their requirements, and obtain required permits.
- B. Protect existing utilities to remain from damage.
- C. Do not disrupt public utilities without permit from authority having jurisdiction.
- D. Do not close, shut off, or disrupt existing life safety systems that are in use without at least 7 days prior written notification to Owner.
- E. Do not close, shut off, or disrupt existing utility branches or take-offs that are in use without at least 3 days prior written notification to Owner.
- F. Locate and mark utilities to remain; mark using highly visible tags or flags, with identification of utility type; protect from damage due to subsequent construction, using substantial barricades if necessary.
- G. Remove exposed piping, valves, meters, equipment, supports, and foundations of disconnected and abandoned utilities.

### 3.04 SELECTIVE DEMOLITION FOR ALTERATIONS

- A. Existing construction and utilities indicated on drawings are based on casual field observation and existing record documents only.
  - 1. Verify construction and utility arrangements are as indicated.
  - 2. Report discrepancies to Architect before disturbing existing installation.
  - 3. Beginning of demolition work constitutes acceptance of existing conditions that would be apparent upon examination prior to starting demolition.
- B. Separate areas in which demolition is being conducted from areas that remain occupied.
  - 1. Provide, erect, and maintain temporary dustproof partitions of construction specified in Section 01 50 00 in locations indicated on drawings.
- C. Maintain weatherproof exterior building enclosure, except for interruptions required for replacement or modifications; prevent water and humidity damage.
- D. Remove existing work as indicated and required to accomplish new work.
  - 1. Remove rotted wood, corroded metals, and deteriorated masonry and concrete; replace with new construction indicated.
  - 2. Remove items indicated on drawings.
- E. Services including, but not limited to, HVAC, Plumbing, Fire Protection, Electrical, and Telecommunications: Remove existing systems and equipment as indicated.
  - 1. Maintain existing active systems to remain in operation, and maintain access to equipment and operational components.
  - 2. Where existing active systems serve occupied facilities but are to be replaced with new services, maintain existing systems in service until new systems are complete and ready for service.
  - 3. Verify that abandoned services serve only abandoned facilities before removal.
  - 4. Remove abandoned pipe, ducts, conduits, and equipment, including those above accessible ceilings. Remove back to source of supply where possible, otherwise cap stub and tag with identification.
- F. Protect existing work to remain.
  - 1. Prevent movement of structure. Provide shoring and bracing as required.
  - 2. Perform cutting to accomplish removal work neatly and as specified for cutting new work.
  - 3. Repair adjacent construction and finishes damaged during removal work.
  - 4. Patch to match new work.

### 3.05 DEBRIS AND WASTE REMOVAL

- A. Remove debris, junk, and trash from site.
- B. Leave site in clean condition, ready for subsequent work.



- C. Clean up spillage and wind-blown debris from public and private lands.

**END OF SECTION 02 41 00**

**SECTION 03 30 00  
CAST IN PLACE CONCRETE**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes cast-in-place concrete, including formwork, reinforcement, concrete materials, mixture design, placement procedures, and finishes.

**1.03 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Cementitious Materials: Portland cement alone or in combination with one or more of the following: blended hydraulic cement, fly ash, slag cement, other pozzolans, and silica fume; materials subject to compliance with requirements.
- B. W/C Ratio: The ratio by weight of water to cementitious materials.

**1.04 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS**

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
  - 1. Before submitting design mixtures, review concrete design mixture and examine procedures for ensuring quality of concrete materials. Require representatives of each entity directly concerned with cast-in-place concrete to attend, including the following:
    - a. Contractor's superintendent.
    - b. Independent testing agency responsible for concrete design mixtures.
    - c. Ready-mix concrete manufacturer.
    - d. Concrete Subcontractor.
    - e. Special concrete finish Subcontractor.
  - 2. Review special inspection and testing and inspecting agency procedures for field quality control, concrete finishes and finishing, construction contraction and isolation joints, and joint-filler strips, anchor rod and anchorage device installation tolerances, steel reinforcement installation, methods for achieving specified floor and slab flatness and levelness, and concrete protection.

**1.05 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Design Mixtures: For each concrete mixture. Submit alternate design mixtures when characteristics of materials, Project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant adjustments.
  - 1. Indicate amounts of mixing water to be withheld for later addition at Project site.
- C. Steel Reinforcement Shop Drawings: Placing Drawings that detail fabrication, bending, and placement. Include bar sizes, lengths, material, grade, bar schedules, stirrup spacing, bent bar diagrams, bar arrangement, splices and laps, mechanical connections, tie spacing, hoop spacing, and supports for concrete reinforcement.
- D. Construction Joint Layout: Indicate proposed construction joints required to construct the structure.
  - 1. Location of construction joints is subject to approval of the Architect and Engineer of Record.
- E. Samples: For waterstops and vapor retarder.

**1.06 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer, manufacturer, testing agency.
- B. Welding certificates.
- C. Material Certificates: For each of the following, signed by manufacturers:
  - 1. Revise fourteen subparagraphs below to suit Project.

2. Cementitious materials.
3. Admixtures.
4. Form materials and form-release agents.
5. Steel reinforcement and accessories.
6. Fiber reinforcement.
7. Waterstops.
8. Curing compounds.
9. Floor and slab treatments.
10. Bonding agents.
11. Adhesives.
12. Vapor retarders.
13. Semirigid joint filler.
14. Joint-filler strips.
15. Repair materials.

- D. Material Test Reports: For the following, from a qualified testing agency:
1. Aggregates: Include service record data indicating absence of deleterious expansion of concrete due to alkali aggregate reactivity.
- E. Formwork Shop Drawings: Prepared by or under the supervision of a qualified licensed structural engineer in Illinois, detailing fabrication, assembly, and support of formwork.
1. Shoring and Reshoring: Indicate proposed schedule and sequence of stripping formwork, shoring removal, and reshoring installation and removal.
- F. Floor surface flatness and levelness measurements indicating compliance with specified tolerances.
- G. Field quality-control reports.
- H. Minutes of preinstallation conference.

#### **1.07 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who employs on Project personnel qualified as ACI-certified Flatwork Technician and Finisher and a supervisor who is an ACI-certified Concrete Flatwork Technician.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing ready-mixed concrete products and that complies with ASTM C 94/C 94M requirements for production facilities and equipment.
1. Manufacturer certified according to NRMCA's "Certification of Ready Mixed Concrete Production Facilities."
- C. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, qualified according to ASTM C 1077 and ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.
1. Personnel conducting field tests shall be qualified as ACI Concrete Field Testing Technician, Grade 1, according to ACI CP-1 or an equivalent certification program.
  2. Personnel performing laboratory tests shall be ACI-certified Concrete Strength Testing Technician and Concrete Laboratory Testing Technician, Grade I. Testing agency laboratory supervisor shall be an ACI-certified Concrete Laboratory Testing Technician, Grade II.
- D. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.4/D 1.4M.

#### **1.08 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING**

- A. Preconstruction Testing Service: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform preconstruction testing on concrete mixtures.

#### **1.09 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Steel Reinforcement: Deliver, store, and handle steel reinforcement to prevent bending and damage. Avoid damaging coatings on steel reinforcement.

- B. Waterstops: Store waterstops under cover to protect from moisture, sunlight, dirt, oil, and other contaminants.

### 1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Cold-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 306.1 and as follows. Protect concrete work from physical damage or reduced strength that could be caused by frost, freezing actions, or low temperatures.
  - 1. When average high and low temperature is expected to fall below 40 deg F for three successive days, maintain delivered concrete mixture temperature within the temperature range required by ACI 301.
  - 2. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow. Do not place concrete on frozen subgrade or on subgrade containing frozen materials.
  - 3. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other materials containing antifreeze agents or chemical accelerators unless otherwise specified and approved in mixture designs.
- B. Hot-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 301 and as follows:
  - 1. Maintain concrete temperature below 90 deg F at time of placement. Chilled mixing water or chopped ice may be used to control temperature, provided water equivalent of ice is calculated to total amount of mixing water. Using liquid nitrogen to cool concrete is Contractor's option.
  - 2. Fog-spray forms, steel reinforcement, and subgrade just before placing concrete. Keep subgrade uniformly moist without standing water, soft spots, or dry areas.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.01 CONCRETE, GENERAL

- A. ACI Publications: Comply with the following unless modified by requirements in the Contract Documents:
  - 1. ACI 301.
  - 2. ACI 117.

### 2.02 FORM-FACING MATERIALS

- A. Smooth-Formed Finished Concrete: Form-facing panels that provide continuous, true, and smooth concrete surfaces. Furnish in largest practicable sizes to minimize number of joints.
  - 1. Plywood, metal, or other approved panel materials.
  - 2. Exterior-grade plywood panels, suitable for concrete forms, complying with DOC PS 1, and as follows:
    - a. High-density overlay, Class 1 or better.
    - b. Medium-density overlay, Class 1 or better; mill-release agent treated and edge sealed.
    - c. Structural 1, B-B or better; mill oiled and edge sealed.
    - d. B-B (Concrete Form), Class 1 or better; mill oiled and edge sealed.
- B. Rough-Formed Finished Concrete: Plywood, lumber, metal, or another approved material. Provide lumber dressed on at least two edges and one side for tight fit.
- C. Void Forms: Biodegradable paper surface, treated for moisture resistance, structurally sufficient to support weight of plastic concrete and other superimposed loads.
- D. Chamfer Strips: Wood, metal, PVC, or rubber strips, 3/4 by 3/4 inch, minimum.
- E. Rustication Strips: Wood, metal, PVC, or rubber strips, kerfed for ease of form removal.
- F. Form-Release Agent: Commercially formulated form-release agent that does not bond with, stain, or adversely affect concrete surfaces and does not impair subsequent treatments of concrete surfaces.
  - 1. Formulate form-release agent with rust inhibitor for steel form-facing materials.
- G. Form Ties: Factory-fabricated, removable or snap-off glass-fiber-reinforced plastic or metal form ties designed to resist lateral pressure of fresh concrete on forms and to prevent spalling of concrete on removal.

1. Furnish units that leave no corrodible metal closer than 1 inch to the plane of exposed concrete surface.
2. Furnish ties that, when removed, leave holes no larger than 1 inch in diameter in concrete surface.
3. Furnish ties with integral water-barrier plates to walls indicated to receive dampproofing or waterproofing.

### **2.03 STEEL REINFORCEMENT**

- A. LEED Requirement: Provide at least 90% recycled steel content steel sections fabricated within 500 miles of the site from raw materials sourced within 500 miles from the project site.
- B. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60, deformed.
- C. Galvanized Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60, deformed bars, ASTM A 767/A 767M, Class I zinc coated after fabrication and bending.
- D. Epoxy-Coated Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60, deformed bars, ASTM A 775/A 775, epoxy coated, with less than 2 percent damaged coating in each 12-inch bar length.

### **2.04 REINFORCEMENT ACCESSORIES**

- A. Joint Dowel Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60, plain-steel bars, cut true to length with ends square and free of burrs.
- B. Epoxy-Coated Joint Dowel Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60, plain-steel bars, ASTM A 775/A 775M epoxy coated.
- C. Epoxy Repair Coating: Liquid, two-part, epoxy repair coating; compatible with epoxy coating on reinforcement and complying with ASTM A 775/A 775M.
- D. Zinc Repair Material: ASTM A 780/A 780M.
- E. Bar Supports: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars and welded-wire reinforcement in place. Manufacture bar supports from steel wire, plastic, or precast concrete according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice," of greater compressive strength than concrete and as follows:
  1. For concrete surfaces exposed to view, where legs of wire bar supports contact forms, use CRSI Class 1 plastic-protected steel wire or CRSI Class 2 stainless-steel bar supports.
  2. For epoxy-coated reinforcement, use epoxy-coated or other dielectric-polymer-coated wire bar supports.
  3. For zinc-coated reinforcement, use galvanized wire or dielectric-polymer-coated wire bar supports.

### **2.05 CONCRETE MATERIALS**

- A. LEED Requirement: All Concrete ingredients, including aggregate, and cementitious materials shall be manufactured within 500 miles of the Project from raw materials obtained within 500 miles of the Project.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain each type or class of cementitious material of the same brand from the same manufacturer's plant, obtain aggregate from single source, and obtain admixtures from single source from single manufacturer.
- C. Cementitious Materials:
  1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150/C 150M, Type I, gray.
  2. Fly Ash: ASTM C 618, Class F or C.
  3. Slag Cement: ASTM C 989/C 989M, Grade 100 or 120.
  4. Silica Fume: ASTM C 1240, amorphous silica.
- D. Normal-Weight Aggregates: ASTM C 33/C 33M, Class 3S coarse aggregate or better, graded. Provide aggregates from a single source with documented service record data of at least 10 years' satisfactory service in similar applications and service conditions using similar aggregates and cementitious materials.

1. Maximum Coarse-Aggregate Size: 3/4 inch nominal.
2. Fine Aggregate: Free of materials with deleterious reactivity to alkali in cement.
- E. Lightweight Aggregate: ASTM C 330/C 330M, 3/4-inch nominal maximum aggregate size.
- F. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260/C 260M.
- G. Chemical Admixtures: Certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures and that do not contribute water-soluble chloride ions exceeding those permitted in hardened concrete. Do not use calcium chloride or admixtures containing calcium chloride.
  1. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type A.
  2. Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type B.
  3. Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type D.
  4. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type F.
  5. High-Range, Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type G.
  6. Plasticizing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 1017/C 1017M, Type II.
  7. Crystalline waterproofing additive to be used at basement foundation and slab on grade.
- H. Set-Accelerating Corrosion-Inhibiting Admixture: Commercially formulated, anodic inhibitor or mixed cathodic and anodic inhibitor; capable of forming a protective barrier and minimizing chloride reactions with steel reinforcement in concrete and complying with ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type C.
- I. Non-Set-Accelerating Corrosion-Inhibiting Admixture: Commercially formulated, non-set-accelerating, anodic inhibitor or mixed cathodic and anodic inhibitor; capable of forming a protective barrier and minimizing chloride reactions with steel reinforcement in concrete.
- J. Water: ASTM C 94/C 94M and potable.

## **2.06 WATERSTOPS**

- A. Self-Expanding Butyl Strip Waterstops: Manufactured rectangular or trapezoidal strip, butyl rubber with sodium bentonite or other hydrophilic polymers, for adhesive bonding to concrete, 3/4 by 1 inch.

## **2.07 VAPOR RETARDERS**

- A. Sheet Vapor Retarder: Polyethylene sheet, ASTM D 4397, not less than 10 mils thick.

## **2.08 CURING MATERIALS**

- A. Evaporation Retarder: Waterborne, monomolecular film forming, manufactured for application to fresh concrete.
- B. Absorptive Cover: AASHTO M 182, Class 2, burlap cloth made from jute or kenaf, weighing approximately 9 oz./sq. yd. when dry.
- C. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C 171, polyethylene film or white burlap-polyethylene sheet.
- D. Water: Potable.
- E. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B, dissipating.

## **2.09 RELATED MATERIALS**

- A. Expansion- and Isolation-Joint-Filler Strips: ASTM D 1751, asphalt-saturated cellulosic fiber.
- B. Bonding Agent: ASTM C 1059/C 1059M, Type II, nonredispersible, acrylic emulsion or styrene butadiene.

## **2.10 REPAIR MATERIALS**

- A. Repair Underlayment: Cement-based, polymer-modified, self-leveling product that can be applied in thicknesses from 1/8 inch and that can be feathered at edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
  1. Cement Binder: ASTM C 150/C 150M, portland cement or hydraulic or blended hydraulic cement as defined in ASTM C 219.

2. Primer: Product of underlayment manufacturer recommended for substrate, conditions, and application.
  3. Aggregate: Well-graded, washed gravel, 1/8 to 1/4 inch or coarse sand as recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
  4. Compressive Strength: Not less than 4100 psi at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C 109/C 109M.
- B. Repair Overlayment: Cement-based, polymer-modified, self-leveling product that can be applied in thicknesses from 1/4 inch and that can be filled in over a scarified surface to match adjacent floor elevations.
1. Cement Binder: ASTM C 150/C 150M, portland cement or hydraulic or blended hydraulic cement as defined in ASTM C 219.
  2. Primer: Product of topping manufacturer recommended for substrate, conditions, and application.
  3. Aggregate: Well-graded, washed gravel, 1/8 to 1/4 inch or coarse sand as recommended by topping manufacturer.
  4. Compressive Strength: Not less than 5000 psi at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C 109/C 109M.

## 2.11 CONCRETE MIXTURES, GENERAL

- A. Prepare design mixtures for each type and strength of concrete, proportioned on the basis of laboratory trial mixture or field test data, or both, according to ACI 301.
1. Use a qualified independent testing agency for preparing and reporting proposed mixture designs based on laboratory trial mixtures.
- B. Cementitious Materials: Use fly ash, pozzolan, slag cement, and silica fume as needed to reduce the total amount of portland cement, which would otherwise be used, by not less than 30 percent.
- C. Limit water-soluble, chloride-ion content in hardened concrete to 0.03 percent by weight of cement.
- D. Admixtures: Use admixtures according to manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Use water-reducing high-range water-reducing or plasticizing admixture in concrete, as required, for placement and workability.
  2. Use water-reducing and -retarding admixture when required by high temperatures, low humidity, or other adverse placement conditions.
  3. Use water-reducing admixture in pumped concrete, concrete for heavy-use industrial slabs and parking structure slabs, concrete required to be watertight, and concrete with a w/c ratio below 0.50.
  4. Use corrosion-inhibiting admixture in concrete mixtures where indicated.
  5. Use crystalline waterproofing additive at basement foundation and slab on grade.

## 2.12 CONCRETE MIXTURES FOR BUILDING ELEMENTS

- A. Footings and Foundation Walls: Normal-weight concrete.
1. Minimum Compressive Strength: See Plans
  2. Maximum W/C Ratio: 0.45.
  3. Slump Limit: 5 inches for concrete with verified slump of 2 to 4 inches before adding high-range water-reducing admixture or plasticizing admixture, plus or minus 1 inch.
  4. Air Content: 6.0 plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for concrete that will be exposed to freeze thaw cycles or deicing chemicals
  5. 1 inch nominal maximum aggregate size.
- B. Slabs on Grade: Normal-weight concrete.
1. Minimum Compressive Strength: See Plans
  2. Maximum W/C Ratio: 0.45
  3. Slump Limit: 5 inches for concrete with verified slump of 2 to 4 inches before adding high-range water-reducing admixture or plasticizing admixture, plus or minus 1 inch.
  4. 1 inch nominal maximum aggregate size.

- C. Slabs on Metal Deck: Light-weight concrete.
  - 1. Minimum Compressive Strength: See Plans
  - 2. Maximum W/C Ratio: 0.45
  - 3. Slump Limit: 5 inches for concrete with verified slump of 2 to 4 inches before adding high-range water-reducing admixture or plasticizing admixture, plus or minus 1 inch.
  - 4. 1 inch nominal maximum aggregate size.

## **2.13 FABRICATING REINFORCEMENT**

- A. Fabricate steel reinforcement according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice."

## **2.14 CONCRETE MIXING**

- A. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, mix, and deliver concrete according to ASTM C 94/C94M and furnish batch ticket information.
  - 1. When air temperature is between 85 and 90 deg F, reduce mixing and delivery time from 1-1/2 hours to 75 minutes; when air temperature is above 90 deg F, reduce mixing and delivery time to 60 minutes.
- B. Project-Site Mixing: Measure, batch, and mix concrete materials and concrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M. Mix concrete materials in appropriate drum-type batch machine mixer.
  - 1. For mixer capacity of 1 cu. yd. or smaller, continue mixing at least 1-1/2 minutes, but not more than 5 minutes after ingredients are in mixer, before any part of batch is released.
  - 2. For mixer capacity larger than 1 cu. yd., increase mixing time by 15 seconds for each additional 1 cu. yd.
  - 3. Provide batch ticket for each batch discharged and used in the Work, indicating Project identification name and number, date, mixture type, mixture time, quantity, and amount of water added. Record approximate location of final deposit in structure.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 FORMWORK INSTALLATION**

- A. Design, erect, shore, brace, and maintain formwork, according to ACI 301, to support vertical, lateral, static, and dynamic loads, and construction loads that might be applied, until structure can support such loads.
- B. Construct formwork so concrete members and structures are of size, shape, alignment, elevation, and position indicated, within tolerance limits of ACI 117.
- C. Construct forms tight enough to prevent loss of concrete mortar.
- D. Construct forms for easy removal without hammering or prying against concrete surfaces. Provide crush or wrecking plates where stripping may damage cast-concrete surfaces. Provide top forms for inclined surfaces steeper than 1.5 horizontal to 1 vertical.
  - 1. Install keyways, reglets, recesses, and the like, for easy removal.
  - 2. Do not use rust-stained steel form-facing material.
- E. Set edge forms, bulkheads, and intermediate screed strips for slabs to achieve required elevations and slopes in finished concrete surfaces. Provide and secure units to support screed strips; use strike-off templates or compacting-type screeds.
- F. Provide temporary openings for cleanouts and inspection ports where interior area of formwork is inaccessible. Close openings with panels tightly fitted to forms and securely braced to prevent loss of concrete mortar. Locate temporary openings in forms at inconspicuous locations.
- G. Chamfer exterior corners and edges of permanently exposed concrete. As indicated on the architectural drawings.
- H. Form openings, chases, offsets, sinkages, keyways, reglets, blocking, screeds, and bulkheads required in the Work. Determine sizes and locations from trades providing such items.
- I. Clean forms and adjacent surfaces to receive concrete. Remove chips, wood, sawdust, dirt, and other debris just before placing concrete.



- J. Retighten forms and bracing before placing concrete, as required, to prevent mortar leaks and maintain proper alignment.
- K. Coat contact surfaces of forms with form-release agent, according to manufacturer's written instructions, before placing reinforcement.

### **3.02 EMBEDDED ITEM INSTALLATION**

- A. Place and secure anchorage devices and other embedded items required for adjoining work that is attached to or supported by cast-in-place concrete. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  - 1. Install anchor rods, accurately located, to elevations required and complying with tolerances in Section 7.5 of AISC 303.
  - 2. Install reglets to receive waterproofing and to receive through-wall flashings in outer face of concrete frame at exterior walls, where flashing is shown at lintels, shelf angles, and other conditions.
  - 3. Install dovetail anchor slots in concrete structures as indicated.

### **3.03 REMOVING AND REUSING FORMS**

- A. General: Formwork for sides of beams, walls, columns, and similar parts of the Work that does not support weight of concrete may be removed after cumulatively curing at not less than 50 deg F for 24 hours after placing concrete. Concrete has to be hard enough to not be damaged by form-removal operations, and curing and protection operations need to be maintained.
  - 1. Leave formwork for beam soffits, joists, slabs, and other structural elements that support weight of concrete in place until concrete has achieved its 28-day design compressive strength.
  - 2. Remove forms only if shores have been arranged to permit removal of forms without loosening or disturbing shores.
- B. Clean and repair surfaces of forms to be reused in the Work. Split, frayed, delaminated, or otherwise damaged form-facing material are not acceptable for exposed surfaces. Apply new form-release agent.
- C. When forms are reused, clean surfaces, remove fins and laitance, and tighten to close joints. Align and secure joints to avoid offsets. Do not use patched forms for exposed concrete surfaces unless approved by Architect.

### **3.04 VAPOR-RETARDER INSTALLATION**

- A. Sheet Vapor Retarders: Place, protect, and repair sheet vapor retarder according to ASTM E 1643 and manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Lap joints 6 inches and seal with manufacturer's recommended tape.

### **3.05 STEEL REINFORCEMENT INSTALLATION**

- A. General: Comply with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for fabricating, placing, and supporting reinforcement.
  - 1. Do not cut or puncture vapor retarder. Repair damage and reseal vapor retarder before placing concrete.
- B. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, ice, and other foreign materials that reduce bond to concrete.
- C. Accurately position, support, and secure reinforcement against displacement. Locate and support reinforcement with bar supports to maintain minimum concrete cover. Do not tack weld crossing reinforcing bars.
  - 1. Weld reinforcing bars according to AWS D1.4/D 1.4M, where indicated.
- D. Set wire ties with ends directed into concrete, not toward exposed concrete surfaces.
- E. Install welded-wire reinforcement in longest practicable lengths on bar supports spaced to minimize sagging. Lap edges and ends of adjoining sheets at least one mesh spacing. Offset laps of adjoining sheet widths to prevent continuous laps in either direction. Lace overlaps with wire.

- F. Epoxy-Coated Reinforcement: Repair cut and damaged epoxy coatings with epoxy repair coating according to ASTM D 3963/D 3963M. Use epoxy-coated steel wire ties to fasten epoxy-coated steel reinforcement.
- G. Zinc-Coated Reinforcement: Repair cut and damaged zinc coatings with zinc repair material according to ASTM A 780/A 780M. Use galvanized-steel wire ties to fasten zinc-coated steel reinforcement.

### 3.06 JOINTS

- A. General: Construct joints true to line with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete.
- B. Construction Joints: Install so strength and appearance of concrete are not impaired, at locations indicated or as approved by Engineer of Record.
  - 1. Place joints perpendicular to main reinforcement. Continue reinforcement across construction joints unless otherwise indicated. Do not continue reinforcement through sides of strip placements of floors and slabs.
  - 2. Form keyed joints as indicated. Embed keys at least 1-1/2 inches into concrete.
  - 3. Locate joints for beams, slabs, joists, and girders in the middle third of spans. Offset joints in girders a minimum distance of twice the beam width from a beam-girder intersection.
  - 4. Locate horizontal joints in walls and columns at underside of floors, slabs, beams, and girders and at the top of footings or floor slabs.
  - 5. Space vertical joints in walls as indicated. Locate joints beside piers integral with walls, near corners, and in concealed locations where possible.
  - 6. Use a bonding agent at locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.
  - 7. Use epoxy-bonding adhesive at locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.
- C. Contraction Joints in Slabs-on-Grade: Form weakened-plane contraction joints, sectioning concrete into areas as indicated. Construct contraction joints for a depth equal to at least one-fourth of concrete thickness as follows:
  - 1. Grooved Joints: Form contraction joints after initial floating by grooving and finishing each edge of joint to a radius of 1/8 inch. Repeat grooving of contraction joints after applying surface finishes. Eliminate groove tool marks on concrete surfaces.
  - 2. Sawed Joints: Form contraction joints with power saws equipped with shatterproof abrasive or diamond-rimmed blades. Cut 1/8-inch wide joints into concrete when cutting action does not tear, abrade, or otherwise damage surface and before concrete develops random contraction cracks.
- D. Isolation Joints in Slabs-on-Grade: After removing formwork, install joint-filler strips at slab junctions with vertical surfaces, such as column pedestals, foundation walls, grade beams, and other locations, as indicated.
  - 1. Extend joint-filler strips full width and depth of joint, terminating flush with finished concrete surface unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Terminate full-width joint-filler strips not less than 1/2 inch or more than 1 inch below finished concrete surface where joint sealants, specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants," are indicated.
  - 3. Install joint-filler strips in lengths as long as practicable. Where more than one length is required, lace or clip sections together.
- E. Doweled Joints: Install dowel bars and support assemblies at joints where indicated. Lubricate or asphalt coat one-half of dowel length to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint.

### 3.07 WATERSTOP INSTALLATION

- A. Flexible Waterstops: Install in construction joints and at other joints indicated to form a continuous diaphragm. Install in longest lengths practicable. Support and protect exposed waterstops during progress of the Work. Field fabricate joints in waterstops according to manufacturer's written instructions.

- B. Self-Expanding Strip Waterstops: Install in construction joints and at other locations indicated, according to manufacturer's written instructions, adhesive bonding, mechanically fastening, and firmly pressing into place. Install in longest lengths practicable.

### **3.08 CONCRETE PLACEMENT**

- A. Before placing concrete, verify that installation of formwork, reinforcement, and embedded items is complete and that required inspections are completed.
- B. Do not add water to concrete during delivery, at Project site, or during placement unless approved by Engineer of Record.
- C. Before test sampling and placing concrete, water may be added at Project site, subject to limitations of ACI 301.
  - 1. Do not add water to concrete after adding high-range water-reducing admixtures to mixture.
- D. Deposit concrete continuously in one layer or in horizontal layers of such thickness that no new concrete is placed on concrete that has hardened enough to cause seams or planes of weakness. If a section cannot be placed continuously, provide construction joints as indicated. Deposit concrete to avoid segregation.
  - 1. Deposit concrete in horizontal layers of depth not to exceed formwork design pressures and in a manner to avoid inclined construction joints.
  - 2. Consolidate placed concrete with mechanical vibrating equipment according to ACI 301.
  - 3. Do not use vibrators to transport concrete inside forms. Insert and withdraw vibrators vertically at uniformly spaced locations to rapidly penetrate placed layer and at least 6 inches into preceding layer. Do not insert vibrators into lower layers of concrete that have begun to lose plasticity. At each insertion, limit duration of vibration to time necessary to consolidate concrete and complete embedment of reinforcement and other embedded items without causing mixture constituents to segregate.
- E. Deposit and consolidate concrete for floors and slabs in a continuous operation, within limits of construction joints, until placement of a panel or section is complete.
  - 1. Consolidate concrete during placement operations, so concrete is thoroughly worked around reinforcement and other embedded items and into corners.
  - 2. Maintain reinforcement in position on chairs during concrete placement.
  - 3. Screed slab surfaces with a straightedge and strike off to correct elevations.
  - 4. Slope surfaces uniformly to drains where required.
  - 5. Begin initial floating using bull floats or darbies to form a uniform and open-textured surface plane, before excess bleedwater appears on the surface. Do not further disturb slab surfaces before starting finishing operations.

### **3.09 FINISHING FORMED SURFACES**

- A. Rough-Formed Finish: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material with tie holes and defects repaired and patched. Remove fins and other projections that exceed specified limits on formed-surface irregularities.
  - 1. Apply to concrete surfaces not exposed to public view.
- B. Smooth-Formed Finish: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material, arranged in an orderly and symmetrical manner with a minimum of seams. Repair and patch tie holes and defects. Remove fins and other projections that exceed specified limits on formed-surface irregularities.
  - 1. Apply to concrete surfaces exposed to public view, to receive a rubbed finish, or to be covered with a coating or covering material applied directly to concrete.
- C. Rubbed Finish: Apply the following to smooth-formed-finished as-cast concrete where indicated:
  - 1. Smooth-Rubbed Finish: Not later than one day after form removal, moisten concrete surfaces and rub with carborundum brick or another abrasive until producing a uniform color and texture. Do not apply cement grout other than that created by the rubbing process.

2. Grout-Cleaned Finish: Wet concrete surfaces and apply grout of a consistency of thick paint to coat surfaces and fill small holes. Mix 1 part portland cement to 1-1/2 parts fine sand with a 1:1 mixture of bonding admixture and water. Add white portland cement in amounts determined by trial patches, so color of dry grout matches adjacent surfaces. Scrub grout into voids and remove excess grout. When grout whitens, rub surface with clean burlap and keep surface damp by fog spray for at least 36 hours.
  3. Cork-Floated Finish: Wet concrete surfaces and apply a stiff grout. Mix 1 part portland cement and 1 part fine sand with a 1:1 mixture of bonding agent and water. Add white portland cement in amounts determined by trial patches, so color of dry grout matches adjacent surfaces. Compress grout into voids by grinding surface. In a swirling motion, finish surface with a cork float.
- D. Related Unformed Surfaces: At tops of walls, horizontal offsets, and similar unformed surfaces adjacent to formed surfaces, strike off smooth and finish with a texture matching adjacent formed surfaces. Continue final surface treatment of formed surfaces uniformly across adjacent unformed surfaces unless otherwise indicated.

### 3.10 FINISHING FLOORS AND SLABS

- A. General: Comply with ACI 302.1R recommendations for screeding, restraighening, and finishing operations for concrete surfaces. Do not wet concrete surfaces.
- B. Scratch Finish: While still plastic, texture concrete surface that has been screeded and bull-floated or darbied. Use stiff brushes, brooms, or rakes to produce a profile amplitude of 1/4 inch in one direction.
1. Apply scratch finish to surfaces indicated on the architectural drawings and to receive concrete floor toppings, to receive mortar setting beds for bonded cementitious floor finishes. See architectural drawings.
- C. Trowel Finish: After applying float finish, apply first troweling and consolidate concrete by hand or power-driven trowel. Continue troweling passes and restraighen until surface is free of trowel marks and uniform in texture and appearance. Grind smooth any surface defects that would telegraph through applied coatings or floor coverings.
1. Apply a trowel finish to surfaces exposed to view or to be covered with resilient flooring, carpet, ceramic or quarry tile set over a cleavage membrane, paint, or another thin-film-finish coating system.
  2. Finish surfaces to the following tolerances, according to ASTM E 1155, for a randomly trafficked floor surface:
    - a. Unless noted otherwise: F(F) of 35; F(L) of 25, on-grade only. with minimum local values of flatness, F(F) 24, and levelness, F(L) 17.
  3. Finish and measure surface, so gap at any point between concrete surface and an unlevelled, freestanding, 10-ft. long straightedge resting on two high spots and placed anywhere on the surface does not exceed 3/16 inch.
- D. Broom Finish: Apply a broom finish to exterior concrete platforms, steps, ramps, and elsewhere as indicated.
1. Immediately after float finishing, slightly roughen trafficked surface by brooming with fiber-bristle broom perpendicular to main traffic route. Coordinate required final finish with Architect before application.

### 3.11 MISCELLANEOUS CONCRETE ITEM INSTALLATION

- A. Filling In: Fill in holes and openings left in concrete structures after work of other trades is in place unless otherwise indicated. Mix, place, and cure concrete, as specified, to blend with in-place construction. Provide other miscellaneous concrete filling indicated or required to complete the Work.
- B. Curbs: Provide monolithic finish to interior curbs by stripping forms while concrete is still green and by steel-troweling surfaces to a hard, dense finish with corners, intersections, and terminations slightly rounded.

### 3.12 CONCRETE PROTECTING AND CURING

- A. General: Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures. Comply with ACI 306.1 for cold-weather protection and ACI 305.1 for hot-weather protection during curing.
- B. Evaporation Retarder: Apply evaporation retarder to unformed concrete surfaces if hot, dry, or windy conditions cause moisture loss approaching 0.2 lb/sq. ft. x h before and during finishing operations. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions after placing, screeding, and bull floating or darbying concrete, but before float finishing.
- C. Formed Surfaces: Cure formed concrete surfaces, including underside of beams, supported slabs, and other similar surfaces. If forms remain during curing period, moist cure after loosening forms. If removing forms before end of curing period, continue curing for remainder of curing period.
- D. Unformed Surfaces: Begin curing immediately after finishing concrete. Cure unformed surfaces, including floors and slabs, concrete floor toppings, and other surfaces.
- E. Cure concrete according to ACI 308.1, by one or a combination of the following methods:
  - 1. Moisture Curing: Keep surfaces continuously moist for not less than seven days with the following materials:
    - a. Water.
    - b. Continuous water-fog spray.
    - c. Absorptive cover, water saturated, and kept continuously wet. Cover concrete surfaces and edges with 12-inch lap over adjacent absorptive covers.
  - 2. Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover for curing concrete, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least 12 inches, and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive. Cure for not less than seven days. Immediately repair any holes or tears during curing period, using cover material and waterproof tape.
    - a. Moisture cure or use moisture-retaining covers to cure concrete surfaces to receive floor coverings.
    - b. Moisture cure or use moisture-retaining covers to cure concrete surfaces to receive penetrating liquid floor treatments.
    - c. Cure concrete surfaces to receive floor coverings with either a moisture-retaining cover or a curing compound that the manufacturer certifies does not interfere with bonding of floor covering used on Project.
  - 3. Curing Compound: Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.
    - a. Removal: After curing period has elapsed, remove curing compound without damaging concrete surfaces by method recommended by curing compound manufacturer unless manufacturer certifies curing compound does not interfere with bonding of floor covering used on Project.
  - 4. Curing and Sealing Compound: Apply uniformly to floors and slabs indicated in a continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Repeat process 24 hours later and apply a second coat. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.

### 3.13 JOINT FILLING

- A. Prepare, clean, and install joint filler according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Defer joint filling until concrete has aged at least one month. Do not fill joints until construction traffic has permanently ceased.
- B. Remove dirt, debris, saw cuttings, curing compounds, and sealers from joints; leave contact faces of joints clean and dry.

- C. Install semirigid joint filler full depth in saw-cut joints and at least 2 inches deep in formed joints. Overfill joint and trim joint filler flush with top of joint after hardening.

### 3.14 CONCRETE SURFACE REPAIRS

- A. Defective Concrete: Repair and patch defective areas when approved by Architect. Remove and replace concrete that cannot be repaired and patched to Architect's approval.
- B. Patching Mortar: Mix dry-pack patching mortar, consisting of 1 part portland cement to 2-1/2 parts fine aggregate passing a No. 16 sieve, using only enough water for handling and placing.
- C. Repairing Formed Surfaces: Surface defects include color and texture irregularities, cracks, spalls, air bubbles, honeycombs, rock pockets, fins and other projections on the surface, and stains and other discolorations that cannot be removed by cleaning.
  - 1. Immediately after form removal, cut out honeycombs, rock pockets, and voids more than 1/2 inch in any dimension to solid concrete. Limit cut depth to 3/4 inch. Make edges of cuts perpendicular to concrete surface. Clean, dampen with water, and brush-coat holes and voids with bonding agent. Fill and compact with patching mortar before bonding agent has dried. Fill form-tie voids with patching mortar or cone plugs secured in place with bonding agent.
  - 2. Repair defects on surfaces exposed to view by blending white portland cement and standard portland cement so that, when dry, patching mortar matches surrounding color. Patch a test area at inconspicuous locations to verify mixture and color match before proceeding with patching. Compact mortar in place and strike off slightly higher than surrounding surface.
  - 3. Repair defects on concealed formed surfaces that affect concrete's durability and structural performance as determined by Engineer of Record.
- D. Repairing Unformed Surfaces: Test unformed surfaces, such as floors and slabs, for finish and verify surface tolerances specified for each surface. Correct low and high areas. Test surfaces sloped to drain for trueness of slope and smoothness; use a sloped template.
  - 1. Repair finished surfaces containing defects. Surface defects include spalls, popouts, honeycombs, rock pockets, crazing and cracks in excess of 0.01 inch wide or that penetrate to reinforcement or completely through unreinforced sections regardless of width, and other objectionable conditions.
  - 2. After concrete has cured at least 14 days, correct high areas by grinding.
  - 3. Correct localized low areas during or immediately after completing surface finishing operations by cutting out low areas and replacing with patching mortar. Finish repaired areas to blend into adjacent concrete.
  - 4. Correct other low areas scheduled to receive floor coverings with a repair underlayment. Prepare, mix, and apply repair underlayment and primer according to manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface. Feather edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
  - 5. Correct other low areas scheduled to remain exposed with a repair topping. Cut out low areas to ensure a minimum repair topping depth of 1/4 inch to match adjacent floor elevations. Prepare, mix, and apply repair topping and primer according to manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface.
  - 6. Repair defective areas, except random cracks and single holes 1 inch or less in diameter, by cutting out and replacing with fresh concrete. Remove defective areas with clean, square cuts and expose steel reinforcement with at least a 3/4-inch clearance all around. Dampen concrete surfaces in contact with patching concrete and apply bonding agent. Mix patching concrete of same materials and mixture as original concrete, except without coarse aggregate. Place, compact, and finish to blend with adjacent finished concrete. Cure in same manner as adjacent concrete.
  - 7. Repair random cracks and single holes 1 inch or less in diameter with patching mortar. Groove top of cracks and cut out holes to sound concrete and clean off dust, dirt, and loose particles. Dampen cleaned concrete surfaces and apply bonding agent. Place patching mortar before bonding agent has dried. Compact patching mortar and finish to match adjacent concrete. Keep patched area continuously moist for at least 72 hours.

- E. Perform structural repairs of concrete, subject to Engineer of Record's approval, using epoxy adhesive and patching mortar.
- F. Repair materials and installation not specified above may be used, subject to Engineer of Record's approval.

### 3.15 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Special Inspections: Owner will engage a special inspector and qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform tests and inspections and to submit reports.
- C. Inspections:
  - 1. Steel reinforcement placement.
  - 2. Steel reinforcement welding.
  - 3. Headed bolts and studs.
  - 4. Verification of use of required design mixture.
  - 5. Concrete placement, including conveying and depositing.
  - 6. Curing procedures and maintenance of curing temperature.
  - 7. Verification of concrete strength before removal of shores and forms from beams and slabs.
- D. Concrete Tests: Testing of composite samples of fresh concrete obtained according to ASTM C 172/C 172M shall be performed according to the following requirements:
  - 1. Testing Frequency: Obtain one composite sample for each day's pour of each concrete mixture exceeding 5 cu. yd., but less than 25 cu. yd., plus one set for each additional 50 cu. yd. or fraction thereof.
  - 2. Testing Frequency: Obtain at least one composite sample for each 100 cu. yd. or fraction thereof of each concrete mixture placed each day.
    - a. When frequency of testing provides fewer than five compressive-strength tests for each concrete mixture, testing shall be conducted from at least five randomly selected batches or from each batch if fewer than five are used.
  - 3. Slump: ASTM C 143/C 143M; one test at point of placement for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture. Perform additional tests when concrete consistency appears to change.
  - 4. Air Content: ASTM C 231/C 231M, pressure method, for normal-weight concrete; one test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
  - 5. Concrete Temperature: ASTM C 1064/C 1064M; one test hourly when air temperature is 40 deg F and below or 80 deg F and above, and one test for each composite sample.
  - 6. Unit Weight: ASTM C 567/C 567M, fresh unit weight of structural lightweight concrete; one test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
  - 7. Compression Test Specimens: ASTM C 31/C 31M.
    - a. Cast and laboratory cure two sets of two standard cylinder specimens for each composite sample.
    - b. Cast and field cure two sets of two standard cylinder specimens for each composite sample.
  - 8. Compressive-Strength Tests: ASTM C 39/C 39M; test one set of two laboratory-cured specimens at 7 days and one set of two specimens at 28 days.
    - a. Test one set of two field-cured specimens at 7 days and one set of two specimens at 28 days.
    - b. A compressive-strength test shall be the average compressive strength from a set of two specimens obtained from same composite sample and tested at age indicated.
  - 9. When strength of field-cured cylinders is less than 85 percent of companion laboratory-cured cylinders, Contractor shall evaluate operations and provide corrective procedures for protecting and curing in-place concrete.

10. Strength of each concrete mixture will be satisfactory if every average of any three consecutive compressive-strength tests equals or exceeds specified compressive strength and no compressive-strength test value falls below specified compressive strength by more than 500 psi if  $f'c$  is 5000 psi or less or by more than  $0.10f'c$  if  $f'c$  exceeds 5000psi .
11. Test results shall be reported in writing to Architect, Engineer of Record, concrete manufacturer, and Contractor within 48 hours of testing. Reports of compressive-strength tests shall contain Project identification name and number, date of concrete placement, name of concrete testing and inspecting agency, location of concrete batch in Work, design compressive strength at 28 days, concrete mixture proportions and materials, compressive breaking strength, and type of break for both 7- and 28-day tests.
12. Nondestructive Testing: Impact hammer, sonoscope, or other nondestructive device will not be used for approval of deficient concrete.
13. Additional Tests: Testing and inspecting agency shall make additional tests of concrete when test results indicate that slump, air entrainment, compressive strengths, or other requirements have not been met, as directed by Engineer of Record. Testing and inspecting agency may conduct tests to determine adequacy of concrete by cored cylinders complying with ASTM C 42/C 42M or by other methods as directed by Engineer of Record.
14. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
15. Correct deficiencies in the Work that test reports and inspections indicate do not comply with the Contract Documents.

**END OF SECTION 03 30 00**



This page intentionally left blank

**SECTION 04 20 00  
UNIT MASONRY**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 WORK INCLUDES**

- A. Base Bid
  - 1. General Contractor:
    - a. Concrete masonry units.
    - b. Lintels.
    - c. Mortar and grout materials.
    - d. Reinforcement.
    - e. Ties and anchors.
    - f. Accessories.
    - g. Mortar and grout mixes.
- B. Products Installed but not Furnished under This Section:
  - 1. Steel lintels in unit masonry.
- C. Installed but not Furnished under This Section:
  - 1. Steel lintels in unit masonry.

**1.02 DEFINITIONS**

- A. CMU(s): Concrete masonry unit(s).
- B. Reinforced Masonry: Masonry containing reinforcing steel in grouted cells.

**1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For the following:
  - 1. Masonry Units: Indicate sizes, profiles, coursing, and locations of special shapes.
  - 2. Reinforcing Steel: Indicate bending, lap lengths, and placement of unit masonry reinforcing bars. Comply with ACI 315R. Indicate elevations of reinforced walls.
- C. Delegated Design Submittals: For masonry anchors and ties, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified structural engineer responsible for their preparation.
- D. Sustainable Design Submittals:
  - 1. Environmental Product Declaration (EPD): For each product.
  - 2. Type III Environmental Product Declaration (EPD): For each product.
- E. Health Product Declaration (HPD): Provide documentation indicating that manufacturer has screened and publicly provided ingredient disclosure to 1000 ppm, and has developed an action plan to mitigate known hazards.

**1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Material Certificates: For each type of the following:
  - 1. Masonry units.
    - a. Include data on material properties.
    - b. For brick, include size-variation data verifying that actual range of sizes falls within specified tolerances.
    - c. For masonry units used in structural masonry, include data and calculations establishing average net-area compressive strength of units.
  - 2. Integral water repellent used in CMUs.
  - 3. Cementitious materials. Include name of manufacturer, brand name, and type.
  - 4. Mortar admixtures.
  - 5. Preblended, dry mortar mixes. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
  - 6. Grout mixes. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
  - 7. Reinforcing bars.
  - 8. Joint reinforcement.

9. Anchors, ties, and metal accessories.
- B. Qualification Statements: For testing agency.
- C. Delegated design engineer qualifications.
- D. Mix Designs: For each type of mortar and grout. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
  1. Include test reports for mortar mixes required to comply with property specification. Test in accordance with ASTM C109/C109M for compressive strength, ASTM C1506 for water retention, and ASTM C91/C91M for air content.
  2. Include test reports, in accordance with ASTM C1019, for grout mixes required to comply with compressive strength requirement.
- E. Statement of Compressive Strength of Masonry: For each combination of masonry unit type and mortar type, provide statement of average net-area compressive strength of masonry units, mortar type, and resulting net-area compressive strength of masonry determined in accordance with TMS 602.
- F. Cold-Weather and Hot-Weather Procedures: Detailed description of methods, materials, and equipment to be used to comply with requirements.

#### **1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Qualifications:
  1. Delegated Design Engineer: A structural engineer who is legally qualified to practice in Illinois where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the type indicated.
  2. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified in accordance with ASTM C1093 for testing indicated.

#### **1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Store masonry units on elevated platforms in a dry location. If units are not stored in an enclosed location, cover tops and sides of stacks with waterproof sheeting, securely tied. If units become wet, do not install until they are dry.
- B. Store cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location. Do not use cementitious materials that have become damp.
- C. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained, and contamination avoided.
- D. Deliver preblended, dry mortar mix in moisture-resistant containers. Store preblended, dry mortar mix in delivery containers on elevated platforms in a dry location or in covered weatherproof dispensing silos.
- E. Store masonry accessories, including metal items, to prevent corrosion and accumulation of dirt and oil.

#### **1.07 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Protection of Masonry: During construction, cover tops of walls, projections, and sills with waterproof sheeting at end of each day's work. Cover partially completed masonry when construction is not in progress.
  1. Extend cover a minimum of 24 inches down both sides of walls, and hold cover securely in place.
- B. Do not apply uniform floor or roof loads for at least 12 hours and concentrated loads for at least three days after building masonry walls or columns.
- C. Stain Prevention: Prevent grout, mortar, and soil from staining the face of masonry to be left exposed or painted. Immediately remove grout, mortar, and soil that come in contact with such masonry.
  1. Protect base of walls from rain-splashed mud and from mortar splatter by spreading coverings on ground and over wall surface.
  2. Protect sills, ledges, and projections from mortar droppings.

3. Protect surfaces of window and door frames, as well as similar products with painted and integral finishes, from mortar droppings.
  4. Turn scaffold boards near the wall on edge at the end of each day to prevent rain from splashing mortar and dirt onto completed masonry.
- D. Cold-Weather Requirements: Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice or frost. Do not build on frozen substrates. Remove and replace unit masonry damaged by frost or by freezing conditions. Comply with cold-weather construction requirements contained in TMS 602.
1. Cold-Weather Cleaning: Use liquid cleaning methods only when air temperature is 40 deg F and higher and will remain so until masonry has dried, but not less than seven days after completing cleaning.
- E. Hot-Weather Requirements: Comply with hot-weather construction requirements contained in TMS 602.

## **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Seismic Performance: Masonry to withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined in accordance with ASCE/SEI 7.

### **2.02 UNIT MASONRY, GENERAL**

- A. Masonry Standard: Comply with TMS 602, except as modified by requirements in the Contract Documents.
- B. Defective Units: Referenced masonry unit standards may allow a certain percentage of units to contain chips, cracks, or other defects exceeding limits stated. Do not use units where such defects are exposed in the completed Work.
- C. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Comply with requirements for fire-resistance-rated assembly designs indicated.
1. Where fire-resistance-rated construction is indicated, units are listed by UL or a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

### **2.03 CONCRETE MASONRY UNITS**

- A. Regional Materials: Verify CMUs are manufactured within 100 miles of Project site from aggregates and cement that have been extracted, harvested, or recovered, as well as manufactured, within 100 miles of Project site.
- B. Shapes: Provide shapes indicated and as follows, with exposed surfaces matching exposed faces of adjacent units unless otherwise indicated.
1. Provide special shapes for lintels, corners, jambs, sashes, movement joints, headers, bonding, and other special conditions.
  2. Provide bullnose units for outside corners unless otherwise indicated.
- C. CMUs: ASTM C90, medium weight unless otherwise indicated.
1. Unit Compressive Strength: See structural plans.
  2. Size (Width): Manufactured to dimensions 3/8 inch less than nominal dimensions.
  3. Faces to Receive Plaster: Where units are indicated to receive a direct application of plaster, provide textured-face units made with gap-graded aggregates.

### **2.04 LINTELS**

- A. Masonry Lintels: Built-in-place masonry lintels made from bond beam CMUs matching adjacent CMUs in color, texture, and density classification, with reinforcing bars placed as indicated and filled with coarse grout. Temporarily support built-in-place lintels until cured.

### **2.05 MORTAR AND GROUT MATERIALS**

- A. Regional Materials: Manufacture aggregate for mortar and grout within 100 miles of Project site from materials that have been extracted, harvested, or recovered, as well as manufactured, within 100 miles of Project site.

- B. Portland Cement: ASTM C150/C150M, Type I or II, except Type III may be used for cold-weather construction. Provide natural color or white cement as required to produce mortar color indicated.
  - 1. Alkali content will not be more than 0.1 percent when tested in accordance with ASTM C114.
- C. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C207, Type S.
- D. Mortar Pigments: Natural and synthetic iron oxides and chromium oxides, compounded for use in mortar mixes and complying with ASTM C979/C979M. Use only pigments with a record of satisfactory performance in masonry mortar.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Solomon Colors Inc.; SGS 94A Iron Black.
    - b. Davis Colors.; Similar to SGS 94A Iron Black above.
    - c. Euclid Chemical Company (The); an RPM company.; Similar to SGS 94A Iron Black above.
    - d. Lanxess Corporation.; Similar to SGS 94A Iron Black above.
- E. Aggregate for Mortar: ASTM C144.
  - 1. For mortar that is exposed to view, use washed aggregate consisting of natural sand or crushed stone.
  - 2. For joints less than 1/4 inch thick, use aggregate graded with 100 percent passing the No. 16 sieve.
  - 3. White-Mortar Aggregates: Natural white sand or crushed white stone.
  - 4. Colored-Mortar Aggregates: Natural sand or crushed stone of color necessary to produce required mortar color.
- F. Aggregate for Grout: ASTM C404.
- G. Cold-Weather Admixture: Nonchloride, noncorrosive, accelerating admixture complying with ASTM C494/C494M, Type C, and recommended by manufacturer for use in masonry mortar of composition indicated.
- H. Water-Repellent Admixture: Liquid water-repellent mortar admixture intended for use with CMUs containing integral water repellent from same manufacturer.
- I. Water: Potable.

## 2.06 REINFORCEMENT

- A. Uncoated-Steel Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A615/A615M or ASTM A996/A996M, Grade 60.
- B. Reinforcing Bar Positioners: Wire units designed to fit into mortar bed joints spanning masonry unit cells and to hold reinforcing bars in center of cells. Units are formed from 0.148-inch steel wire, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication. Provide units designed for number of bars indicated.
- C. Masonry-Joint Reinforcement, General: ASTM A951/A951M.
  - 1. Interior Walls: Hot-dip galvanized carbon steel.
  - 2. Exterior Walls: Hot-dip galvanized carbon steel.
  - 3. Wire Size for Side Rods: 0.148-inch diameter.
  - 4. Wire Size for Cross Rods: 0.148-inch diameter.
  - 5. Wire Size for Veneer Ties: 0.187-inch diameter with compressed leg.
  - 6. Spacing of Cross Rods, Tabs, and Cross Ties: Not more than 16 inches o.c.
  - 7. Provide in lengths of not less than 10 ft., with prefabricated corner and tee units.
- D. Masonry-Joint Reinforcement for Single-Wythe Masonry: Ladder type with single pair of side rods.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Heckmann Building Products, Inc.
    - b. Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.
    - c. Wire-Bond.

- E. Masonry-Joint Reinforcement for Multiwythe Masonry:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Heckmann Building Products, Inc.
    - b. Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.
    - c. Wire-Bond.
  - 2. Adjustable (two-piece) type, ladder or design, with one side rod at each face shell of backing wythe and with separate adjustable ties with pintle-and-eye connections having a maximum horizontal play of 1/16 inch and maximum vertical adjustment of 1-1/4 inches. Size ties to extend at least halfway through facing wythe but with at least 5/8-inch cover on outside face. Ties have hooks or clips to engage a continuous horizontal wire in the facing wythe.
- F. Masonry-Joint Reinforcement for Veneers Anchored with Seismic Masonry-Veneer Anchors: Single 0.148-inch-diameter, hot-dip galvanized carbon steel continuous wire.

## 2.07 TIES AND ANCHORS

- A. General: Ties and anchors extend at least 1-1/2 inches into veneer but with at least a 5/8-inch cover on outside face.
- B. Materials: Provide ties and anchors specified in this article that are made from materials that comply with the following unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Hot-Dip Galvanized, Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A1064/A1064M, with ASTM A153/A153M, Class B-2 coating.
  - 2. Steel Sheet, Galvanized after Fabrication: ASTM A1008/A1008M, Commercial Steel, with ASTM A153/A153M, Class B coating.
- C. Adjustable Anchors for Connecting to Structural Steel Framing: Provide anchors that allow vertical or horizontal adjustment but resist tension and compression forces perpendicular to plane of wall.
  - 1. Anchor Section for Welding to Steel Frame: Crimped 1/4-inch-diameter, hot-dip galvanized steel wire.
  - 2. Tie Section: Triangular-shaped wire tie made from 0.25-inch-diameter, hot-dip galvanized steel wire.
- D. Adjustable Anchors for Connecting to Concrete: Provide anchors that allow vertical or horizontal adjustment but resist tension and compression forces perpendicular to plane of wall.
  - 1. Connector Section: Dovetail tabs for inserting into dovetail slots in concrete and attached to tie section; formed from 0.105-inch-thick steel sheet, galvanized after fabrication.
  - 2. Tie Section: Triangular-shaped wire tie made from 0.187-inch diameter, hot-dip galvanized steel wire.
- E. Partition Top Anchors: 0.105-inch-thick metal plate with a 3/8-inch-diameter metal rod 6 inches long welded to plate and with closed-end plastic tube fitted over rod that allows rod to move in and out of tube. Fabricate from steel, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication.

## 2.08 ACCESSORIES

- A. Compressible Filler: Premolded filler strips complying with ASTM D1056, Grade 2A1; compressible up to 35 percent; of width and thickness indicated; formulated from neoprene.
- B. Preformed Control-Joint Gaskets: Made from styrene-butadiene-rubber compound, complying with ASTM D2000, Designation M2AA-805 or PVC, complying with ASTM D2287, Type PVC-65406 and designed to fit standard sash block and to maintain lateral stability in masonry wall; size and configuration as indicated.
- C. Bond-Breaker Strips: Asphalt-saturated felt complying with ASTM D226/D226M, Type I (No. 15 asphalt felt).
- D. Weep/Cavity Vents: Use one of the following unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Cellular Plastic Weep/Vent: One-piece, flexible extrusion made from UV-resistant polypropylene copolymer, full height and width of head joint and depth 1/8 inch less than

depth of outer wythe, in color selected from manufacturer's standard.

- a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1) Advanced Building Products Inc.
  - 2) Heckmann Building Products, Inc.
  - 3) Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.
  - 4) Mortar Net Solutions.
  - 5) Wire-Bond.
2. Mesh Weep/Vent: Free-draining mesh; made from polyethylene strands, full height and width of head joint and depth 1/8 inch less than depth of outer wythe; in color selected from manufacturer's standard.
  - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - 1) CavClear; a division of Archovations, Inc.
    - 2) Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.
    - 3) Keene Building Products.
    - 4) Mortar Net Solutions.
- E. Cavity Drainage Material: Free-draining mesh, made from polymer strands that will not degrade within the wall cavity.
  1. Mortar Deflector: Strips, full depth of cavity and 10 inches high, with dovetail-shaped notches that prevent clogging with mortar droppings.
    - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - 1) Advanced Building Products Inc.
      - 2) Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.
      - 3) Keene Building Products.
      - 4) Mortar Net Solutions.
      - 5) Wire-Bond.
- F. Proprietary Acidic Masonry Cleaner: Manufacturer's standard-strength cleaner designed for removing mortar/grout stains, efflorescence, and other new construction stains from new masonry without discoloring or damaging masonry surfaces. Use product expressly approved for intended use by cleaner manufacturer and manufacturer of masonry units being cleaned.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Diedrich Technologies, Inc.; a Hohmann & Barnard company.
    - b. EaCo Chem, Inc.
    - c. PROSOCO, Inc.

## 2.09 MORTAR AND GROUT MIXES

- A. General: Do not use admixtures, including pigments, air-entraining agents, accelerators, retarders, water-repellent agents, antifreeze compounds, or other admixtures unless otherwise indicated.
  1. Do not use calcium chloride in mortar or grout.
  2. Use portland cement-lime mortar unless otherwise indicated.
  3. For exterior masonry, use portland cement-lime mortar.
  4. For reinforced masonry, use portland cement-lime mortar.
  5. Add cold-weather admixture (if used) at same rate for all mortar that will be exposed to view, regardless of weather conditions, to ensure that mortar color is consistent.
- B. Mortar for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C270, Proportion Specification. Provide the following types of mortar for applications stated unless another type is indicated or needed to provide required compressive strength of masonry.
  1. For masonry below grade or in contact with earth, use Type M.
  2. For reinforced masonry, use Type S.

3. For exterior, above-grade, load-bearing, nonload-bearing walls, and parapet walls; for interior load-bearing walls; for interior nonload-bearing partitions; and for other applications where another type is not indicated, use Type N.
- C. Pigmented Mortar: Use colored cement product or select and proportion pigments with other ingredients to produce color required. Do not add pigments to colored cement products.
  1. Pigments do not exceed 10 percent of portland cement by weight.
  2. Pigments do not exceed 5 percent of by weight.
  3. Mix to match Architect's sample.
  4. Application: Use pigmented mortar for exposed mortar joints with the following units: face brick.
- D. Grout for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C476.
  1. Use grout of type indicated or, if not otherwise indicated, of type (fine or coarse) that will comply with TMS 602 for dimensions of grout spaces and pour height.
  2. Proportion grout in accordance with ASTM C476, Table 1.
  3. Provide grout with a slump of 8 to 11 inches as measured in accordance with ASTM C143/C143M.

### **PART 3 EXECUTION**

#### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  1. For the record, prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
  2. Verify that foundations are within tolerances specified.
  3. Verify that reinforcing dowels are properly placed.
  4. Verify that substrates are free of substances that impair mortar bond.
- B. Before installation, examine rough-in and built-in construction for piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### **3.02 INSTALLATION, GENERAL**

- A. Thickness: Build cavity and composite walls and other masonry construction to full thickness shown. Build single-wythe walls to actual widths of masonry units, using units of widths indicated.
- B. Build chases and recesses to accommodate items specified in this and other Sections.
- C. Leave openings for equipment to be installed before completing masonry. After installing equipment, complete masonry to match construction immediately adjacent to opening.
- D. Use full-size units without cutting if possible. If cutting is required to provide a continuous pattern or to fit adjoining construction, cut units with motor-driven saws; provide clean, sharp, unchipped edges. Allow units to dry before laying unless wetting of units is specified. Install cut units with cut surfaces and, where possible, cut edges concealed.
- E. Select and arrange units for exposed unit masonry to produce a uniform blend of colors and textures. Mix units from several pallets or cubes as they are placed.
- F. Wetting of Brick: Wet brick before laying if initial rate of absorption exceeds 30 g/30 sq. in. per minute when tested in accordance with ASTM C67/C67M. Allow units to absorb water so they are damp but not wet at time of laying.

#### **3.03 TOLERANCES**

- A. Dimensions and Locations of Elements:
  1. For dimensions in cross section or elevation, do not vary by more than plus 1/2 inch or minus 1/4 inch.
  2. For location of elements in plan, do not vary from that indicated by more than plus or minus 1/2 inch.



3. For location of elements in elevation, do not vary from that indicated by more than plus or minus 1/4 inch in a story height or 1/2 inch total.
- B. Lines and Levels:
1. For bed joints and top surfaces of bearing walls, do not vary from level by more than 1/4 inch in 10 ft., or 1/2-inch maximum.
  2. For conspicuous horizontal lines, such as lintels, sills, parapets, and reveals, do not vary from level by more than 1/8 inch in 10 ft., 1/4 inch in 20 ft., or 1/2-inch maximum.
  3. For vertical lines and surfaces, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/4 inch in 10 ft., 3/8 inch in 20 ft., or 1/2-inch maximum.
  4. For conspicuous vertical lines, such as external corners, door jambs, reveals, and expansion and control joints, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/8 inch in 10 ft., 1/4 inch in 20 ft., or 1/2-inch maximum.
  5. For lines and surfaces, do not vary from straight by more than 1/4 inch in 10 ft., 3/8 inch in 20 ft., or 1/2-inch maximum.
  6. For vertical alignment of exposed head joints, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/4 inch in 10 ft., or 1/2-inch maximum.
  7. For faces of adjacent exposed masonry units, do not vary from flush alignment by more than 1/16 inch except due to warpage of masonry units within tolerances specified for warpage of units.
- C. Joints:
1. For bed joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus 1/8 inch, with a maximum thickness limited to 1/2 inch.
  2. For exposed bed joints, do not vary from bed-joint thickness of adjacent courses by more than 1/8 inch.
  3. For head and collar joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus 3/8 inch or minus 1/4 inch.
  4. For exposed head joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus 1/8 inch. Do not vary from adjacent bed-joint and head-joint thicknesses by more than 1/8 inch.
  5. For exposed bed joints and head joints of stacked bond, do not vary from a straight line by more than 1/16 inch from one masonry unit to the next.

### 3.04 LAYING MASONRY WALLS

- A. Lay out walls in advance for accurate spacing of surface bond patterns with uniform joint thicknesses and for accurate location of openings, movement-type joints, returns, and offsets. Avoid using less-than-half-size units, particularly at corners, jambs, and, where possible, at other locations.
- B. Bond Pattern for Exposed Masonry: Unless otherwise indicated, lay exposed masonry in one-third running bond; do not use units with less-than-nominal 4-inch horizontal face dimensions at corners or jambs.
- C. Lay concealed masonry with all units in a wythe in running bond or bonded by lapping not less than 4 inches. Bond and interlock each course of each wythe at corners. Do not use units with less-than-nominal 4-inch horizontal face dimensions at corners or jambs.
- D. Stopping and Resuming Work: Stop work by stepping back units in each course from those in course below; do not tooth. When resuming work, clean masonry surfaces that are to receive mortar, remove loose masonry units and mortar, and wet brick if required before laying fresh masonry.
- E. Built-in Work: As construction progresses, build in items specified in this and other Sections. Fill in solidly with masonry around built-in items.
- F. Fill space between steel frames and masonry solidly with mortar unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Where built-in items are to be embedded in cores of hollow masonry units, place a layer of metal lath, wire mesh, or plastic mesh in the joint below, and rod mortar or grout into core.

- H. Fill cores in hollow CMUs with grout 24 inches under bearing plates, beams, lintels, posts, and similar items unless otherwise indicated.
- I. Build nonload-bearing interior partitions full height of story to underside of solid floor or roof structure above unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Install compressible filler in joint between top of partition and underside of structure above.
  - 2. Fasten partition top anchors to structure above and build into top of partition. Grout cells of CMUs solidly around plastic tubes of anchors, and push tubes down into grout to provide 1/2-inch clearance between end of anchor rod and end of tube. Space anchors 48 inches o.c. unless otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Wedge nonload-bearing partitions against structure above with small pieces of tile, slate, or metal. Fill joint with mortar after dead-load deflection of structure above approaches final position.
  - 4. At fire-rated partitions, treat joint between top of partition and underside of structure above to comply with Section 078443 "Joint Firestopping."

### 3.05 MORTAR BEDDING AND JOINTING

- A. Lay CMUs as follows:
  - 1. Bed face shells in mortar and make head joints of depth equal to bed joints.
  - 2. Bed webs in mortar in all courses of piers, columns, and pilasters.
  - 3. Bed webs in mortar in grouted masonry, including starting course on footings.
  - 4. Fully bed entire units, including areas under cells, at starting course on footings where cells are not grouted.
  - 5. Fully bed units and fill cells with mortar at anchors and ties as needed to fully embed anchors and ties in mortar.
- B. Lay solid masonry units with completely filled bed and head joints; butter ends with sufficient mortar to fill head joints and shove into place. Do not deeply furrow bed joints or slush head joints.
- C. Set cast-stone trim units in full bed of mortar with full vertical joints. Fill dowel, anchor, and similar holes.
  - 1. Clean soiled surfaces with fiber brush and soap powder and rinse thoroughly with clear water.
  - 2. Allow cleaned surfaces to dry before setting.
  - 3. Wet joint surfaces thoroughly before applying mortar.
- D. Tool exposed joints slightly concave when thumbprint hard, using a jointer larger than joint thickness unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Cut joints flush for masonry walls to receive plaster or other direct-applied finishes (other than paint) unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Cut joints flush where indicated to receive cavity wall insulation or air barriers unless otherwise indicated.

### 3.06 CAVITY WALLS

- A. Bond wythes of cavity walls together as follows:
  - 1. Masonry-Joint Reinforcement: Installed in horizontal mortar joints.
    - a. Where one wythe is of clay masonry and the other of concrete masonry, use adjustable-type (two-piece-type) reinforcement with continuous horizontal wire in facing wythe attached to ties to allow for differential movement regardless of whether bed joints align.
  - 2. Masonry-Veneer Anchors: Comply with requirements for anchoring masonry veneers.
- B. Bond wythes of cavity walls together using bonding system indicated on Drawings.
- C. Keep cavities clean of mortar droppings and other materials during construction. Bevel beds away from cavity, to minimize mortar protrusions into cavity. Do not attempt to trowel or remove mortar fins protruding into cavity.

- D. Installing Cavity Wall Insulation: Place small dabs of adhesive, spaced approximately 12 inches o.c. both ways, on inside face of insulation boards, or attach with plastic fasteners designed for this purpose. Fit courses of insulation between wall ties and other confining obstructions in cavity, with edges butted tightly both ways. Press units firmly against inside wythe of masonry or other construction as indicated.

1. Fill cracks and open gaps in insulation with crack sealer compatible with insulation and masonry.

### **3.07 ANCHORED MASONRY VENEERS**

- A. Anchor masonry veneers to concrete and masonry backup with seismic masonry-veneer anchors to comply with the following requirements:
1. Embed connector sections and continuous wire in masonry joints.
  2. Locate anchor sections to allow maximum vertical differential movement of ties up and down.
  3. Space anchors as indicated, but not more than 18 inches o.c. vertically and horizontally, with not less than one anchor for each 1.92 sq. ft. of wall area. Install additional anchors within 12 inches of openings and at intervals, not exceeding 24 inches, around perimeter.
- B. Provide not less than 1.5 inches- of airspace between back of masonry veneer and face of insulation.
1. Keep airspace clean of mortar droppings and other materials during construction. Bevel beds away from airspace, to minimize mortar protrusions into airspace. Do not attempt to trowel or remove mortar fins protruding into airspace.

### **3.08 MASONRY-JOINT REINFORCEMENT**

- A. General: Install entire length of longitudinal side rods in mortar with a minimum cover of 5/8 inch on exterior side of walls, 1/2 inch elsewhere. Lap reinforcement a minimum of 6 inches.
1. Space reinforcement not more than 16 inches o.c.
  2. Space reinforcement not more than 8 inches o.c. in foundation walls and parapet walls.
  3. Provide reinforcement not more than 8 inches above and below wall openings and extending 12 inches beyond openings.
- B. Interrupt joint reinforcement at control and expansion joints unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Provide continuity at wall intersections by using prefabricated T-shaped units.
- D. Provide continuity at corners by using prefabricated L-shaped units.

### **3.09 ANCHORING MASONRY TO STRUCTURAL STEEL AND CONCRETE**

- A. Anchor masonry to structural steel and concrete, where masonry abuts or faces structural steel or concrete, to comply with the following:
1. Provide an open space not less than 1 inch wide between masonry and structural steel or concrete unless otherwise indicated. Keep open space free of mortar and other rigid materials.
  2. Anchor masonry with anchors embedded in masonry joints and attached to structure.
  3. Space anchors as indicated, but not more than 24 inches o.c. vertically and 36 inches o.c. horizontally.

### **3.10 CONTROL AND EXPANSION JOINTS**

- A. General: Install control- and expansion-joint materials in unit masonry as masonry progresses. Do not allow materials to span control and expansion joints without provision to allow for in-plane wall or partition movement.
- B. Form control joints in concrete masonry as follows:
1. Install preformed control-joint gaskets designed to fit standard sash block.
- C. Form expansion joints in brick using one of the following methods:
1. Build in compressible joint fillers where indicated.
  2. Form open joint full depth of brick wythe and of width indicated, but not less than 1/2 inch for installation of sealant and backer rod specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

- D. Provide horizontal, pressure-relieving joints by either leaving an airspace or inserting a compressible filler of width required for installing sealant and backer rod specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants," but not less than 3/8 inch.
  - 1. Locate horizontal, pressure-relieving joints beneath shelf angles supporting masonry.

### 3.11 LINTELS

- A. Install steel lintels where indicated.
- B. Contractors option to provide masonry lintels where openings of more than 12 inches for brick-size units and 24 inches for block-size units are indicated without structural steel or other supporting lintels.
- C. Provide minimum bearing of 8 inches at each jamb unless otherwise indicated.

### 3.12 FLASHING, WEEP HOLES, AND CAVITY VENTS

- A. General: Install embedded flashing and weep holes in masonry at shelf angles, lintels, ledges, other obstructions to downward flow of water in wall, and where indicated. Install cavity vents at shelf angles, ledges, and other obstructions to upward flow of air in cavities, and where indicated.
- B. Install flashing as follows unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Prepare masonry surfaces so they are smooth and free from projections that could puncture flashing. Where flashing is within mortar joint, place through-wall flashing on sloping bed of mortar and cover with mortar. Before covering with mortar, seal penetrations in flashing with adhesive, sealant, or tape.
  - 2. At multiwythe masonry walls, including cavity walls, extend flashing through outer wythe, turned up a minimum of 8 inches, and 1-1/2 inches into the inner wythe.
  - 3. At lintels and shelf angles, extend flashing 6 inches minimum, to edge of next full unit at each end. At heads and sills, extend flashing 6 inches minimum, to edge of next full unit and turn ends up not less than 2 inches to form end dams.
  - 4. Install metal drip edges beneath flexible flashing at exterior face of wall. Stop flexible flashing 1/2 inch back from outside face of wall, and adhere flexible flashing to top of metal drip edge.
- C. Install reglets and nailers for flashing and other related construction where they are indicated to be built into masonry.
- D. Install weep holes in exterior wythes and veneers in head joints of first course of masonry immediately above embedded flashing.
  - 1. Use specified weep/cavity vent products to form weep holes.
  - 2. Space weep holes 24 inches o.c. unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Place cavity drainage material in airspace behind veneers to comply with configuration requirements for cavity drainage material in "Accessories" Article.
- F. Install cavity vents in head joints in exterior wythes at spacing indicated. Use specified weep/cavity vent products to form cavity vents.
  - 1. Close cavities off vertically and horizontally with blocking in manner indicated. Install through-wall flashing and weep holes above horizontal blocking.

### 3.13 REINFORCED UNIT MASONRY

- A. Temporary Formwork and Shores: Construct formwork and shores as needed to support reinforced masonry elements during construction.
  - 1. Construct formwork to provide shape, line, and dimensions of completed masonry as indicated. Make forms sufficiently tight to prevent leakage of mortar and grout. Brace, tie, and support forms to maintain position and shape during construction and curing of reinforced masonry.
  - 2. Do not remove forms and shores until reinforced masonry members have hardened sufficiently to carry their own weight and that of other loads that may be placed on them during construction.
- B. Placing Reinforcement: Comply with requirements in TMS 602.

- C. Grouting: Do not place grout until entire height of masonry to be grouted has attained enough strength to resist grout pressure.
  - 1. Comply with requirements in TMS 602 for cleanouts and for grout placement, including minimum grout space and maximum pour height.
  - 2. Limit height of vertical grout pours to not more than 60 inches.

### **3.14 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections. Allow inspectors access to scaffolding and work areas as needed to perform tests and inspections. Retesting of materials that fail to comply with specified requirements will be at Contractor's expense.
- B. Inspections: Special inspections in accordance with Level 3 in TMS 402.
  - 1. Begin masonry construction only after inspectors have verified proportions of site-prepared mortar.
  - 2. Place grout only after inspectors have verified compliance of grout spaces and of grades, sizes, and locations of reinforcement.
  - 3. Place grout only after inspectors have verified proportions of site-prepared grout.
- C. Testing Frequency: One set of tests for each 5000 sq. ft. of wall area or portion thereof.
- D. Clay Masonry Unit Test: For each type of unit provided, in accordance with ASTM C67/C67M for compressive strength.
- E. Concrete Masonry Unit Test: For each type of unit provided, in accordance with ASTM C140/C140M for compressive strength.
- F. Mortar Aggregate Ratio Test (Proportion Specification): For each mix provided, in accordance with ASTM C780.

### **3.15 REPAIRING, POINTING, AND CLEANING**

- A. Remove and replace masonry units that are loose, chipped, broken, stained, or otherwise damaged or that do not match adjoining units. Install new units to match adjoining units; install in fresh mortar, pointed to eliminate evidence of replacement.
- B. Pointing: During the tooling of joints, enlarge voids and holes, except weep holes, and completely fill with mortar. Point up joints, including corners, openings, and adjacent construction, to provide a neat, uniform appearance. Prepare joints for sealant application, where indicated.
- C. In-Progress Cleaning: Clean unit masonry as work progresses by dry brushing to remove mortar fins and smears before tooling joints.
- D. Final Cleaning: After mortar is thoroughly set and cured, clean exposed masonry as follows:
  - 1. Remove large mortar particles by hand with wooden paddles and nonmetallic scrape hoes or chisels.
  - 2. Test cleaning methods on sample wall panel; leave one-half of panel uncleaned for comparison purposes. Obtain Architect's approval of sample cleaning before proceeding with cleaning of masonry.
  - 3. Protect adjacent stone and nonmasonry surfaces from contact with cleaner by covering them with liquid strippable masking agent or polyethylene film and waterproof masking tape.
  - 4. Wet wall surfaces with water before applying cleaners; remove cleaners promptly by rinsing surfaces thoroughly with clear water.
  - 5. Clean masonry with a proprietary acidic masonry cleaner applied according to manufacturer's written instructions.

### **3.16 MASONRY WASTE DISPOSAL**

- A. Salvageable Materials: Unless otherwise indicated, excess masonry materials are Contractor's property. At completion of unit masonry work, remove from Project site.

- B. Waste Disposal as Fill Material: Dispose of clean masonry waste, including excess or soil-contaminated sand, waste mortar, and broken masonry units, by crushing and mixing with fill material as fill is placed.
  - 1. Crush masonry waste to less than 4 inches in each dimension.
  - 2. Mix masonry waste with at least two parts of specified fill material for each part of masonry waste. Fill material is specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."
  - 3. Do not dispose of masonry waste as fill within 18 inches of finished grade.
- C. Masonry Waste Recycling: Return broken CMUs not used as fill to manufacturer for recycling.
- D. Excess Masonry Waste: Remove excess clean masonry waste that cannot be used as fill, as described above or recycled, and other masonry waste, and legally dispose of off Using Agency's property.

**END OF SECTION 04 20 00**

This page intentionally left blank

**SECTION 05 12 00  
STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Structural-steel materials.
  - 2. Shrinkage-resistant grout.
  - 3. Shear stud connectors.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 053100 "Steel Decking" for field installation of shear stud connectors through deck.
  - 2. Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting" and Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings" for painting requirements.

**1.02 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Structural Steel: Elements of the structural frame indicated on Drawings and as described in ANSI/AISC 303.
- B. Seismic-Load-Resisting System: Elements of structural-steel frame designated as "SLRS" or along grid lines designated as "SLRS" on Drawings, including columns, beams, and braces and their connections.
- C. Heavy Sections: Rolled and built-up sections as follows:
  - 1. Shapes included in ASTM A6 with flanges thicker than 1-1/2 inches.
  - 2. Welded built-up members with plates thicker than 2 inches.
  - 3. Column base plates thicker than 2 inches.

**1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data:
  - 1. Structural-steel materials.
  - 2. High-strength, bolt-nut-washer assemblies.
  - 3. Shear stud connectors.
  - 4. Anchor rods.
  - 5. Threaded rods.
  - 6. Shop primer.
  - 7. Galvanized-steel primer.
  - 8. Galvanized repair paint.
  - 9. Shrinkage-resistant grout.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication of structural-steel components.
  - 1. Include details of cuts, connections, splices, camber, holes, and other pertinent data.
  - 2. Include embedment Drawings.
  - 3. Indicate welds by standard AWS symbols, distinguishing between shop and field welds, and show size, length, and type of each weld. Show backing bars that are to be removed and supplemental fillet welds where backing bars are to remain.
  - 4. Indicate type, size, and length of bolts, distinguishing between shop and field bolts. Identify pretensioned and slip-critical, high-strength bolted connections.
  - 5. Identify members not to be shop primed.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For simple shear connections indicated to comply with design loads, include analysis data for all connections not fully detailed and sized on the contract drawings. Calculations shall be cross referenced to the shop drawing piece marks and be completely coordinated prior to submittal to the Engineer of Record for review.
- D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For lateral bracing and/or moment connections indicated to comply with design loads, include analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified structural engineer responsible for their preparation. Calculations shall be cross referenced to the shop



drawing piece marks and be completely coordinated prior to submittal to the Engineer of Record for review.

#### **1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Qualification Data: For fabricator.
- B. Welding certificates.
- C. Mill test reports for structural-steel materials, including chemical and physical properties.
- D. Product Test Reports: For the following:
  - 1. Bolts, nuts, and washers, including mechanical properties and chemical analysis.
  - 2. Direct-tension indicators.
  - 3. Tension-control, high-strength, bolt-nut-washer assemblies.
  - 4. Shear stud connectors.
  - 5. Shop primers.
  - 6. Non-shrink grout.
- E. Field quality-control reports.

#### **1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: A qualified fabricator that participates in the AISC Quality Certification Program and is designated an AISC-Certified Plant, Category BU.
- B. Installer Qualifications: A qualified Installer who participates in the AISC Quality Certification Program and is designated an AISC-Certified Erector.
- C. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel in accordance with AWS D1.1.

#### **1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Store materials to permit easy access for inspection and identification. Keep steel members off ground and spaced by using pallets, dunnage, or other supports and spacers. Protect steel members and packaged materials from corrosion and deterioration.
  - 1. Do not store materials on structure in a manner that might cause distortion, damage, or overload to members or supporting structures. Repair or replace damaged materials or structures as directed.
- B. Store fasteners in a protected place in sealed containers with manufacturer's labels intact.
  - 1. Fasteners may be repackaged provided Owner's testing and inspecting agency observes repackaging and seals containers.
  - 2. Clean and relubricate bolts and nuts that become dry or rusty before use.
  - 3. Comply with manufacturers' written recommendations for cleaning and lubricating ASTM F3125, Grade F1852 bolt assemblies and for retesting bolt assemblies after lubrication.

### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Comply with applicable provisions of the following specifications and documents:
  - 1. ANSI/AISC 303.
  - 2. ANSI/AISC 341.
  - 3. ANSI/AISC 360.
  - 4. RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using High-Strength Bolts."
- B. Connection Design Information:
  - 1. Design connections and final configuration of member reinforcement at connections in accordance with ANSI/AISC 303 by fabricator's qualified Structural Engineer.
    - a. Use Load and Resistance Factor Design; data are given at factored-load level.
- C. Moment Connections: Type FR, fully restrained.
- D. Construction: Combined system of moment frame and braced frame.

## 2.02 STRUCTURAL-STEEL MATERIALS

- A. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content not less than 25 percent.
- B. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Provide products with an average recycled content of steel products so postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content is not less than the following:
  - 1. W-Shapes: 60 percent.
  - 2. Channels, Angles, M-Shapes: 60 percent.
  - 3. Plate and Bar: 25 percent.
  - 4. Cold-Formed Hollow Structural Sections: 25 percent.
  - 5. Steel Pipe: 25 percent.
  - 6. Insert category name: Insert number percent.
  - 7. All Other Steel Materials: 25 percent.
- C. W-Shapes: ASTM A992.
- D. Channels, Angles, M or S-Shapes: ASTM A36.
- E. Plate and Bar: ASTM A36; unless otherwise indicated on drawings.
- F. Cold-Formed Hollow Structural Sections: ASTM A500, Grade C, structural tubing.
- G. Steel Pipe: ASTM A53, Type E or Type S, Grade B.
- H. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS requirements.

## 2.03 BOLTS AND CONNECTORS

- A. High-Strength A325 Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM F3125, Grade A325, Type 1, heavy-hex steel structural bolts; ASTM A563, Grade C, heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F436, Type 1, hardened carbon-steel washers; all with plain finish.
  - 1. Direct-Tension Indicators: ASTM F959, Type 325-1, compressible-washer type with plain finish.
- B. High-Strength A490 Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM F3125, Grade A490, Type 1, heavy-hex steel structural bolts or Grade F2280 tension-control, bolt-nut-washer assemblies with splined ends; ASTM A563 Grade DH, heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F436, Type 1, hardened carbon-steel washers; all with plain finish.
  - 1. Direct-Tension Indicators: ASTM F959, Type 490-1, compressible-washer type with plain finish.
- C. Zinc-Coated High-Strength A325 Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM F3125, Grade A325, Type 1, heavy-hex steel structural bolts; ASTM A563, Grade DH, heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F436, Type 1, hardened carbon-steel washers.
  - 1. Finish: Hot-dip zinc coating.
  - 2. Direct-Tension Indicators: ASTM F959, Type 325-1, compressible-washer type with mechanically deposited zinc coating finish.
- D. Tension-Control, High-Strength Bolt-Nut-Washer Assemblies: ASTM F3125/F3125M, Grade F1852, Type 1, heavy-hex head assemblies, consisting of steel structural bolts with splined ends; ASTM A563, Grade DH, heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F436/F436M, Type 1, hardened carbon-steel washers.
  - 1. Finish: Plain.
- E. Shear Stud Connectors: ASTM A108, AISI C-1015 through C-1020, headed-stud type, cold-finished carbon steel; AWS D1.1, Type B.

## 2.04 RODS

- A. Headed Anchor Rods: ASTM F1554, Grade 36, straight.
  - 1. Nuts: ASTM A563 heavy-hex carbon steel.
  - 2. Plate Washers: ASTM A36/A36M carbon steel.
  - 3. Washers: ASTM F436, Type 1, hardened carbon steel.
  - 4. Finish: Plain.

- B. Threaded Rods: ASTM A36.
  - 1. Nuts: ASTM A63 heavy-hex carbon steel.
  - 2. Washers: ASTM F436, Type 1, hardened carbon steel.
  - 3. Finish: Plain.

## **2.05 PRIMER**

- A. Steel Primer:
  - 1. Fabricator's standard lead- and chromate-free, nonasphaltic, rust-inhibiting primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with topcoat.
- B. Galvanized-Steel Primer:
  - 1. Galvanizing Repair Paint: ASTM A780.

## **2.06 SHRINKAGE-RESISTANT GROUT**

- A. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C1107, factory-packaged, nonmetallic aggregate grout, noncorrosive and nonstaining, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.

## **2.07 FABRICATION**

- A. Structural Steel: Fabricate and assemble in shop to greatest extent possible. Fabricate in accordance with ANSI/AISC 303 and to ANSI/AISC 360.
  - 1. Camber structural-steel members where indicated.
  - 2. Fabricate beams with rolling camber up.
  - 3. Identify high-strength structural steel in accordance with ASTM A6 and maintain markings until structural-steel framing has been erected.
  - 4. Mark and match-mark materials for field assembly.
  - 5. Complete structural-steel assemblies, including welding of units, before starting shop-priming operations.
- B. Thermal Cutting: Perform thermal cutting by machine to greatest extent possible.
  - 1. Plane thermally cut edges to be welded to comply with requirements in AWS D1.1.
- C. Bolt Holes: Cut, drill, or punch standard bolt holes perpendicular to metal surfaces.
- D. Finishing: Accurately finish ends of columns and other members transmitting bearing loads.
- E. Cleaning: Clean and prepare steel surfaces that are to remain unpainted in accordance with SSPC-SP 1.
- F. Shear Stud Connectors: Prepare steel surfaces as recommended by manufacturer of shear connectors. Weld using automatic end welding of headed-stud shear connectors in accordance with AWS D1.1 and manufacturer's written instructions.
- G. Holes: Provide holes required for securing other work to structural steel and for other work to pass through steel members.
  - 1. Cut, drill, or punch holes perpendicular to steel surfaces. Do not thermally cut bolt holes or enlarge holes by burning.
  - 2. Baseplate Holes: Cut, drill, mechanically thermal cut, or punch holes perpendicular to steel surfaces.
  - 3. Weld threaded nuts to framing and other specialty items indicated to receive other work.

## **2.08 SHOP CONNECTIONS**

- A. High-Strength Bolts: Shop install high-strength bolts in accordance with RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using High-Strength Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.
  - 1. Joint Type: Snug tightened.
- B. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1 and AWS D1.8 for tolerances, appearances, welding procedure specifications, weld quality, and methods used in correcting welding work.
  - 1. Assemble and weld built-up sections by methods that maintain true alignment of axes without exceeding tolerances in ANSI/AISC 303 for mill material.

## 2.09 GALVANIZING

- A. Hot-Dip Galvanized Finish: Apply zinc coating by the hot-dip process to structural steel in accordance with ASTM A123.
  - 1. Fill vent and drain holes that are exposed in the finished Work unless they function as weep holes, by plugging with zinc solder and filing off smooth.
  - 2. Galvanize lintels and shelf angles attached to structural-steel frame and located in exterior walls.

## 2.10 SHOP PRIMING

- A. Shop prime steel surfaces, except the following:
  - 1. Surfaces embedded in concrete or mortar. Extend priming of partially embedded members to a depth of 2 inches.
  - 2. Surfaces to be field welded.
  - 3. Surfaces of high-strength bolted, slip-critical connections.
  - 4. Surfaces to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials (applied fireproofing).
  - 5. Galvanized surfaces unless indicated to be painted.
- B. Surface Preparation of Steel: Clean surfaces to be painted. Remove loose rust and mill scale and spatter, slag, or flux deposits. Prepare surfaces in accordance with the following specifications and standards:
  - 1. SSPC-SP 2.
  - 2. SSPC-SP 3.
- C. Surface Preparation of Galvanized Steel: Prepare galvanized-steel surfaces for shop priming by thoroughly cleaning steel of grease, dirt, oil, flux, and other foreign matter, and treating with etching cleaner or in accordance with SSPC-SP 16.
- D. Priming: Immediately after surface preparation, apply primer in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions and at rate recommended by SSPC to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils. Use priming methods that result in full coverage of joints, corners, edges, and exposed surfaces.

## 2.11 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform shop tests and inspections.
  - 1. Allow testing agency access to places where structural-steel work is being fabricated or produced to perform tests and inspections.
  - 2. Bolted Connections: Inspect shop-bolted connections in accordance with RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using High-Strength Bolts."
  - 3. Welded Connections: Visually inspect shop-welded connections in accordance with AWS D1.1 and the following inspection procedures, at testing agency's option:
    - a. Liquid Penetrant Inspection: ASTM E165.
    - b. Magnetic Particle Inspection: ASTM E709; performed on root pass and on finished weld. Cracks or zones of incomplete fusion or penetration are not accepted.
    - c. Ultrasonic Inspection: ASTM E164.
    - d. Radiographic Inspection: ASTM E94.
  - 4. In addition to visual inspection, test and inspect shop-welded shear stud connectors in accordance with requirements in AWS D1.1 for stud welding and as follows:
    - a. Perform bend tests if visual inspections reveal either a less-than-continuous 360-degree flash or welding repairs to any shear stud connector.
    - b. Conduct tests in accordance with requirements in AWS D1.1 on additional shear stud connectors if weld fracture occurs on shear stud connectors already tested.
  - 5. Prepare test and inspection reports.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify, with certified steel erector present, elevations of concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces and locations of anchor rods, bearing plates, and other embedments for compliance with requirements.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Provide temporary shores, guys, braces, and other supports during erection to keep structural steel secure, plumb, and in alignment against temporary construction loads and loads equal in intensity to design loads. Remove temporary supports when permanent structural steel, connections, and bracing are in place unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
  - 1. Do not remove temporary shoring supporting composite deck construction and structural-steel framing until cast-in-place concrete has attained its design compressive strength.

### **3.03 ERECTION**

- A. Set structural steel accurately in locations and to elevations indicated and in accordance with ANSI/AISC 303 and ANSI/AISC 360.
- B. Baseplates, Bearing Plates, and Leveling Plates: Clean concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials, and roughen surfaces prior to setting plates. Clean bottom surface of plates.
  - 1. Set plates for structural members on wedges, shims, or setting nuts as required.
  - 2. Weld plate washers to top of baseplate.
  - 3. Pretension anchor rods after supported members have been positioned and plumbed. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of plate before packing with grout.
  - 4. Promptly pack shrinkage-resistant grout solidly between bearing surfaces and plates, so no voids remain. Neatly finish exposed surfaces; protect grout and allow to cure. Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions for grouting.
- C. Maintain erection tolerances of structural steel within ANSI/AISC 303.
- D. Align and adjust various members that form part of complete frame or structure before permanently fastening. Before assembly, clean bearing surfaces and other surfaces that are in permanent contact with members. Perform necessary adjustments to compensate for discrepancies in elevations and alignment.
  - 1. Level and plumb individual members of structure. Slope roof framing members to slopes indicated on Drawings.
  - 2. Make allowances for difference between temperature at time of erection and mean temperature when structure is completed and in service.
- E. Splice members only where indicated.
- F. Do not use thermal cutting during erection.
- G. Do not enlarge unfair holes in members by burning or using drift pins. Ream holes that must be enlarged to admit bolts.

### **3.04 FIELD CONNECTIONS**

- A. High-Strength Bolts: Install high-strength bolts in accordance with RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using High-Strength Bolts" for bolt and joint type specified.
  - 1. Joint Type: Snug tightened.
- B. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1 and AWS D1.8 for tolerances, appearances, welding procedure specifications, weld quality, and methods used in correcting welding work.
  - 1. Comply with ANSI/AISC 303 and ANSI/AISC 360 for bearing, alignment, adequacy of temporary connections, and removal of paint on surfaces adjacent to field welds.
  - 2. Remove backing bars or runoff tabs where indicated, back gouge, and grind steel smooth.

3. Assemble and weld built-up sections by methods that maintain true alignment of axes without exceeding tolerances in ANSI/AISC 303 for mill material.
- C. Shear Stud Connectors: Prepare steel surfaces as recommended by manufacturer of shear connectors. Weld using end welding of headed-stud shear connectors in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M and manufacturer's written instructions.

### **3.05 INSTALLATION OF PREFABRICATED BUILDING COLUMNS**

- A. Install prefabricated building columns to comply with ANSI/AISC 360, manufacturer's written recommendations, and requirements of testing and inspecting agency that apply to the fire-resistance rating indicated.

### **3.06 REPAIR**

- A. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean areas where galvanizing is damaged or missing, and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A780/A780M.
- B. Touchup Painting:
  1. Immediately after erection, clean exposed areas where primer is damaged or missing, and paint with the same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
    - a. Clean and prepare surfaces by SSPC-SP 2 hand-tool cleaning or SSPC-SP 3 power-tool cleaning.
- C. Touchup Priming: Cleaning and touchup priming are specified in Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings."

### **3.07 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Special Inspections: Owner will engage a special inspector to perform the following special inspections:
  1. Verify structural-steel materials and inspect steel frame joint details.
  2. Verify weld materials and inspect welds.
  3. Verify connection materials and inspect high-strength bolted connections.
- B. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
  1. Bolted Connections: Inspect bolted connections in accordance with RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using High-Strength Bolts."
  2. Welded Connections: Visually inspect field welds in accordance with AWS D1.1.
    - a. Liquid Penetrant Inspection: ASTM E165.
    - b. Magnetic Particle Inspection: ASTM E709; performed on root pass and on finished weld. Cracks or zones of incomplete fusion or penetration are not accepted.
    - c. Ultrasonic Inspection: ASTM E164.
    - d. Radiographic Inspection: ASTM E94.
  3. Shear Stud Connectors: In addition to visual inspection, test and inspect field-welded shear connectors according to requirements in AWS D1.1 for stud welding and as follows:
    - a. Perform bend tests if visual inspections reveal either a less-than-continuous 360-degree flash or welding repairs to any shear connector.
    - b. Conduct tests according to requirements in AWS D1.1 on additional shear connectors if weld fracture occurs on shear connectors already tested.

**END OF SECTION 05 12 00**

This page intentionally left blank

**SECTION 05 31 00  
STEEL DECKING**

**SUMMARY**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES:**

- A. Roof deck.
- B. Composite floor deck.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS:**

- A. Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for normal-weight and lightweight structural concrete fill over steel deck.
- B. Section 051200 "Structural Steel Framing" for shop- and field-welded shear connectors.
- C. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for framing deck openings with miscellaneous steel shapes.

**ACTION SUBMITTALS**

**2.01 PRODUCT DATA:**

- A. Roof deck.
- B. Composite floor deck.

**2.02 SHOP DRAWINGS:**

- A. Include layout and types of deck panels, anchorage details, reinforcing channels, pans, cut deck openings, special jointing, accessories, and attachments to other construction.

**2.03 LEED SUBMITTALS:**

- A. Product Data for Credit MR 4: For products having recycled content, documentation indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content. Include statement indicating cost for each product having recycled content.
- B. Laboratory Test Reports for Credit EQ 4: For primers, documentation indicating that products comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

**INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

**3.01 WELDING CERTIFICATES.**

**3.02 PRODUCT CERTIFICATES: FOR EACH TYPE OF STEEL DECK.**

**3.03 TEST AND EVALUATION REPORTS:**

- A. Product Test Reports: For tests performed by a qualified testing agency, indicating that each of the following complies with requirements:
  - 1. Power-actuated mechanical fasteners.
- B. Research Reports: For steel deck, from ICC-ES showing compliance with the building code.

**3.04 FIELD QUALITY-CONTROL SUBMITTALS:**

- A. Field quality-control reports.

**QUALITY ASSURANCE**

**4.01 WELDING QUALIFICATIONS: QUALIFY PROCEDURES AND PERSONNEL IN ACCORDANCE WITH SDI QA/QC AND THE FOLLOWING WELDING CODES:**

- A. AWS D1.1.
- B. AWS D1.3.



**4.02 FM APPROVALS' ROOFNAV LISTING: PROVIDE STEEL ROOF DECK EVALUATED BY FM APPROVALS AND LISTED IN ITS "ROOFNAV" FOR CLASS 1 FIRE RATING AND CLASS 1-90 WINDSTORM RATINGS. IDENTIFY MATERIALS WITH FM APPROVALS CERTIFICATION MARKINGS.**

**DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

**5.01 PROTECT STEEL DECK FROM CORROSION, DEFORMATION, AND OTHER DAMAGE DURING DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING.**

**5.02 STORE PRODUCTS IN ACCORDANCE WITH SDI MOC3. STACK STEEL DECK ON PLATFORMS OR PALLETS AND SLOPE TO PROVIDE DRAINAGE. PROTECT WITH A WATERPROOF COVERING AND VENTILATE TO AVOID CONDENSATION.**

**PART 1 PRODUCTS**

**6.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

**6.02 AISI SPECIFICATIONS: COMPLY WITH CALCULATED STRUCTURAL CHARACTERISTICS OF STEEL DECK IN ACCORDANCE WITH AISI S100.**

**6.03 FIRE-RESISTANCE RATINGS: COMPLY WITH ASTM E119; TESTING BY A QUALIFIED TESTING AGENCY. IDENTIFY PRODUCTS WITH APPROPRIATE MARKINGS OF APPLICABLE TESTING AGENCY.**

- A. Indicate design designations from UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" or from listings of another qualified testing agency.

**NON-COMPOSITE DECK**

**7.01 FABRICATION OF NON-COMPOSITE DECK: FABRICATE PANELS, WITHOUT TOP-FLANGE STIFFENING GROOVES, TO COMPLY WITH SDI RD AND WITH THE FOLLOWING:**

- A. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A653, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 50, G60 (Z180) zinc coating.
- B. Deck Profile: As indicated.
- C. Profile Depth: As indicated.
- D. Design Uncoated-Steel Thickness: As indicated.
- E. Span Condition: Triple span or more.
- F. Side Laps: Overlapped.

**COMPOSITE FLOOR DECK**

**8.01 FABRICATION OF COMPOSITE FLOOR DECK: FABRICATE PANELS, WITH INTEGRALLY EMBOSSED OR RAISED PATTERN RIBS AND INTERLOCKING SIDE LAPS, TO COMPLY WITH SDI C, WITH THE MINIMUM SECTION PROPERTIES INDICATED, AND WITH THE FOLLOWING:**

- A. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A653, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 50, G60 (Z180) zinc coating.
- B. Profile Depth: As indicated.
- C. Design Uncoated-Steel Thickness: As indicated.
- D. Span Condition: Triple span or more.
- E. Side Laps: Overlapped.

## **ACCESSORIES**

- 9.01 PROVIDE MANUFACTURER'S STANDARD ACCESSORY MATERIALS FOR DECK THAT COMPLY WITH REQUIREMENTS INDICATED.**
- 9.02 MECHANICAL FASTENERS: CORROSION-RESISTANT, LOW-VELOCITY, POWER-ACTUATED OR PNEUMATICALLY DRIVEN CARBON-STEEL FASTENERS; OR SELF-DRILLING, SELF-THREADING SCREWS.**
- 9.03 SIDE-LAP FASTENERS: CORROSION-RESISTANT, HEXAGONAL WASHER HEAD; SELF-DRILLING, CARBON-STEEL SCREWS, NO. 10 MINIMUM DIAMETER.**
- 9.04 FLEXIBLE CLOSURE STRIPS: VULCANIZED, CLOSED-CELL, SYNTHETIC RUBBER.**
- 9.05 MISCELLANEOUS SHEET METAL DECK ACCESSORIES: STEEL SHEET, MINIMUM YIELD STRENGTH OF 33,000 PSI NOT LESS THAN 0.0359-INCH DESIGN UNCOATED THICKNESS, OF SAME MATERIAL AND FINISH AS DECK; OF PROFILE INDICATED OR REQUIRED FOR APPLICATION.**
- 9.06 POUR STOPS AND GIRDER FILLERS: STEEL SHEET, MINIMUM YIELD STRENGTH OF 33,000 PSI, OF SAME MATERIAL AND FINISH AS DECK, AND OF THICKNESS AND PROFILE RECOMMENDED BY SDI STANDARDS FOR OVERHANG AND SLAB DEPTH.**
- 9.07 COLUMN CLOSURES, END CLOSURES, Z-CLOSURES, AND COVER PLATES: STEEL SHEET, OF SAME MATERIAL, FINISH, AND THICKNESS AS DECK UNLESS OTHERWISE INDICATED.**
- 9.08 PIERCING HANGER TABS: PIERCING STEEL SHEET HANGER ATTACHMENT DEVICES FOR USE WITH FLOOR DECK.**
- 9.09 SHEAR STUD CONNECTORS: ASTM A108, AISI C-1015 THROUGH C-1020, HEADED-STUD TYPE, COLD-FINISHED CARBON STEEL; AWS D1.1/D1.1M, TYPE B.**
- 9.10 FLAT SUMP PLATES: SINGLE-PIECE STEEL SHEET, 0.0747 INCH THICK, OF SAME MATERIAL AND FINISH AS DECK. FOR DRAINS, CUT HOLES IN THE FIELD.**
- 9.11 GALVANIZING REPAIR PAINT: ASTM A780.**
- 9.12 REPAIR PAINT: MANUFACTURER'S STANDARD RUST-INHIBITIVE PRIMER OF SAME COLOR AS PRIMER.**

## **PART 2 EXECUTION**

### **10.01 EXAMINATION**

- 10.02 EXAMINE SUPPORTING FRAME AND FIELD CONDITIONS FOR COMPLIANCE WITH REQUIREMENTS FOR INSTALLATION TOLERANCES AND OTHER CONDITIONS AFFECTING PERFORMANCE OF THE WORK.**
- 10.03 PROCEED WITH INSTALLATION ONLY AFTER UNSATISFACTORY CONDITIONS HAVE BEEN CORRECTED.**

### **INSTALLATION, GENERAL**

- 11.01 INSTALL DECK PANELS AND ACCESSORIES IN ACCORDANCE WITH SDI C, SDI NC, AND SDI RD, AS APPLICABLE; MANUFACTURER'S WRITTEN INSTRUCTIONS; AND REQUIREMENTS IN THIS SECTION.**
- 11.02 INSTALL TEMPORARY SHORING BEFORE PLACING DECK PANELS IF REQUIRED TO MEET DEFLECTION LIMITATIONS.**
- 11.03 LOCATE DECK BUNDLES TO PREVENT OVERLOADING OF SUPPORTING MEMBERS.**
- 11.04 PLACE DECK PANELS ON SUPPORTING FRAME AND ADJUST TO FINAL POSITION WITH ENDS ACCURATELY ALIGNED AND BEARING ON SUPPORTING FRAME BEFORE BEING PERMANENTLY FASTENED. DO NOT STRETCH OR CONTRACT SIDE-LAP INTERLOCKS.**
- 11.05 PLACE DECK PANELS FLAT AND SQUARE AND FASTEN TO SUPPORTING FRAME WITHOUT WARP OR DEFLECTION.**

**11.06 CUT AND NEATLY FIT DECK PANELS AND ACCESSORIES AROUND OPENINGS AND OTHER WORK PROJECTING THROUGH OR ADJACENT TO DECK.**

**11.07 PROVIDE ADDITIONAL REINFORCEMENT AND CLOSURE PIECES AT OPENINGS AS REQUIRED FOR STRENGTH, CONTINUITY OF DECK, AND SUPPORT OF OTHER WORK.**

**11.08 COMPLY WITH AWS REQUIREMENTS AND PROCEDURES FOR MANUAL SHIELDED METAL ARC WELDING, APPEARANCE AND QUALITY OF WELDS, AND METHODS USED FOR CORRECTING WELDING WORK.**

**11.09 MECHANICAL FASTENERS MAY BE USED IN LIEU OF WELDING TO FASTEN DECK. LOCATE MECHANICAL FASTENERS AND INSTALL IN ACCORDANCE WITH DECK MANUFACTURER'S WRITTEN INSTRUCTIONS.**

**11.10 SHEAR STUD CONNECTORS: PREPARE STEEL SURFACES AS RECOMMENDED BY MANUFACTURER OF SHEAR CONNECTORS. WELD USING END WELDING OF HEADED-STUD SHEAR CONNECTORS IN ACCORDANCE WITH AWS D1.1 AND MANUFACTURER'S WRITTEN INSTRUCTIONS.**

#### **INSTALLATION OF NON-COMPOSITE DECK**

**12.01 FASTEN ROOF-DECK PANELS TO STEEL SUPPORTING MEMBERS BY ARC SPOT (PUDDLE) WELDS OF THE SURFACE DIAMETER INDICATED OR ARC SEAM WELDS WITH AN EQUAL PERIMETER THAT IS NOT LESS THAN 1-1/2 INCHES LONG, AND AS FOLLOWS:**

- A. Weld Diameter: 3/4 inch, nominal.
- B. Weld Spacing: Weld edge and interior ribs of deck units with a minimum of two welds per deck unit at each support. Space welds 12 inches apart in Zone 1 and 6 inches apart in Zones 2 and 3, based on roof-area definitions in FM Global Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-28.

**12.02 SIDE-LAP AND PERIMETER EDGE FASTENING: FASTEN SIDE LAPS AND PERIMETER EDGES OF PANELS BETWEEN SUPPORTS, AT INTERVALS NOT EXCEEDING THE LESSER OF ONE-HALF OF THE SPAN OR 18 INCHES, AND AS FOLLOWS:**

- A. Mechanically fasten with self-drilling, No. 10 diameter or larger, carbon-steel screws.
- B. Mechanically clinch or button punch.
- C. Fasten with a minimum of 1-1/2-inch long welds.

**12.03 END BEARING: INSTALL DECK ENDS OVER SUPPORTING FRAME WITH A MINIMUM END BEARING OF 1-1/2 INCHES, WITH END JOINTS AS FOLLOWS:**

- A. End Joints: Lapped 2 inches minimum.

**12.04 FLEXIBLE CLOSURE STRIPS: INSTALL FLEXIBLE CLOSURE STRIPS OVER PARTITIONS, WALLS, AND WHERE INDICATED. INSTALL WITH ADHESIVE IN ACCORDANCE WITH MANUFACTURER'S WRITTEN INSTRUCTIONS TO ENSURE COMPLETE CLOSURE.**

#### **INSTALLATION OF COMPOSITE DECK**

**13.01 FASTEN FLOOR-DECK PANELS TO STEEL SUPPORTING MEMBERS BY ARC SPOT (PUDDLE) WELDS OF THE SURFACE DIAMETER INDICATED AND AS FOLLOWS:**

- A. Weld Diameter: 3/4 inch, nominal.
- B. Weld Spacing:
  - 1. Weld edge ribs of panels at each support. Space additional welds an average of 16 inches apart, but not more than 18 inches apart.

**13.02 SIDE-LAP AND PERIMETER EDGE FASTENING: FASTEN SIDE LAPS AND PERIMETER EDGES OF PANELS BETWEEN SUPPORTS, AT INTERVALS NOT EXCEEDING THE LESSER OF ONE-HALF OF THE SPAN OR 36 INCHES, AND AS FOLLOWS:**

- A. Mechanically fasten with self-drilling, No. 10 diameter or larger, carbon-steel screws.
- B. Mechanically clinch or button punch.
- C. Fasten with a minimum of 1-1/2-inch long welds.

**13.03 END BEARING: INSTALL DECK ENDS OVER SUPPORTING FRAME WITH A MINIMUM END BEARING OF 1-1/2 INCHES, WITH END JOINTS AS FOLLOWS:**

- A. End Joints: Butted.

**13.04 POUR STOPS AND GIRDER FILLERS: WELD STEEL SHEET POUR STOPS AND GIRDER FILLERS TO SUPPORTING STRUCTURE IN ACCORDANCE WITH SDI RECOMMENDATIONS UNLESS OTHERWISE INDICATED.**

**13.05 COMPOSITE DECK CLOSURES: WELD STEEL SHEET COLUMN CLOSURES, CELL CLOSURES, AND Z-CLOSURES TO DECK, IN ACCORDANCE WITH SDI RECOMMENDATIONS, TO PROVIDE TIGHT-FITTING CLOSURES AT OPEN ENDS OF RIBS AND SIDES OF DECK.**

**REPAIR**

**14.01 GALVANIZING REPAIRS: PREPARE AND REPAIR DAMAGED GALVANIZED COATINGS ON BOTH SURFACES OF DECK WITH GALVANIZED REPAIR PAINT IN ACCORDANCE WITH ASTM A780/A780M AND MANUFACTURER'S WRITTEN INSTRUCTIONS.**

**FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

**15.01 TESTING AGENCY: OWNER WILL ENGAGE A QUALIFIED TESTING AGENCY TO PERFORM TESTS AND INSPECTIONS.**

**15.02 TESTS AND INSPECTIONS:**

- A. Special inspections and qualification of welding special inspectors for cold-formed steel floor and roof deck in accordance with quality-assurance inspection requirements of SDI QA/QC.
  - 1. Field welds will be subject to inspection.
- B. Steel decking will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Shear Stud Connectors: In addition to visual inspection, test and inspect field-welded shear connectors in accordance with requirements in AWS D1.1 for stud welding and as follows:
  - 1. Perform bend tests if visual inspections reveal either a less-than-continuous 360-degree flash or welding repairs to any shear connector.
  - 2. Conduct tests in accordance with requirements in AWS D1.1 on additional shear connectors if weld fracture occurs on shear connectors that are already tested.

**15.03 PREPARE TEST AND INSPECTION REPORTS.**

**END OF SECTION 05 31 00**

This page intentionally left blank

UW P2224 OAKTON COLLEGE SKOKIE  
CAMPUS LIBRARY & LEARNING  
COMMONS

20 SEPT 2023

ISSUED FOR BIDDING

**SECTION 05 50 00  
METAL FABRICATIONS**

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**END OF SECTION 05 50 00**

This page intentionally left blank

**SECTION 05 58 13  
COLUMN COVERS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes wood veneer-clad aluminum column covers.

**1.02 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product, including finishing materials.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for column covers.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For products involving selection of color, texture, or design[, including mechanical finishes].
- D. Samples for Initial Selection: For products involving selection of color, texture, or design
- E. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, prepared on 6-inch- (150-mm-) square Samples of metal of same thickness and material indicated for the Work.

**1.03 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Qualification Data: For fabricator.

**1.04 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Maintenance Data: For finish, species, and coatings to include in maintenance manuals.

**1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: A firm experienced in producing column covers similar to that indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units.
- B. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals, to demonstrate aesthetic effects, and to set quality standards for fabrication and installation.
  - 1. Build mockups of typical column covers.
  - 2. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

**1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Deliver column covers wrapped in protective coverings and strapped together in suitable packs or in heavy-duty cartons. Remove protective coverings before they stain or bond to finished surfaces.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 SNAP-TOGETHER COLUMN COVERS**

- A. Basis of Design: Pittcon Industries: Division of Pittcon Architectural Metals, LLC. Column Covers Series 1500v, Wood Veneer clad metal column covers. [pittconindustries.com](http://pittconindustries.com). 800-637-7638.
- B. Form column covers to shapes indicated from metal of type and minimum thickness indicated below. Return vertical edges and bend to form hook that engages continuous mounting clips.
  - 1. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B209 (ASTM B209M), with not less than strength and durability properties of Alloy 5005-H32, [0.063 inch (1.60 mm)] thick.
    - a. Finish: Wood veneer selected: use AWS Finishing System 12, Water Based Polyurethane, minimum of (2) coats.
  - 2. Increase metal thickness or reinforce with concealed stiffeners, backing materials, or both, as needed to provide flat surfaces where indicated.
  - 3. Support joints with concealed stiffeners as needed to hold exposed faces of adjoining sheets in flush alignment.
  - 4. Form returns at vertical joints to provide 1/2-inch- (12-mm-) wide reveal at joints. Provide snap-in wood filler strips at reveals that leave reveals 1/2 inch (12 mm) deep.



5. Fabricate column covers with 1/2-inch- (12-mm-) wide reveals at horizontal joints produced by forming returns on mating ends of column cover sections. Provide snap-in wood-look filler strips at reveals matching reveals at vertical joints. Locate horizontal joints as indicated.
6. Fabricate [base] [ceiling] ring to [match] [contrast with] column covers.
7. Fabricate base ring to match column covers.
8. Apply manufacturer's recommended sound-deadening [insulation] [mastic] to backs of column covers.

## **2.02 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS**

- A. Fasteners: Fabricated from same basic metal and alloy as fastened metal unless otherwise indicated. Do not use metals that are incompatible with materials joined.
  1. Provide concealed fasteners for interconnecting column covers and for attaching them to other work unless otherwise indicated, exposed fasteners are unavoidable, or are the standard fastening method.
- B. Sound-Deadening Materials:
  1. Insulation: Unfaced, mineral-fiber blanket insulation complying with ASTM C665, Type I, and passing ASTM E136 test.
  2. Mastic: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D1187/D1187M.
- C. Backing Materials: Provided or recommended by column cover manufacturer.

## **2.03 FABRICATION, GENERAL**

- A. Coordinate dimensions and attachment methods of column covers with those of adjoining construction to produce integrated assemblies with closely fitting joints and with edges and surfaces aligned unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Form metal to profiles indicated, in maximum lengths to minimize joints. Produce flat, flush surfaces without cracking or grain separation at bends.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of column covers.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.02 INSTALLATION**

- A. Locate and place column covers plumb and in alignment with adjacent construction. Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required to install column covers.
  1. Do not cut or abrade finishes that cannot be completely restored in the field. Return items with such finishes to the shop for required alterations, followed by complete refinishing, or provide new units as required.
- B. Use concealed anchorages where possible.
- C. Form tight joints with exposed connections accurately fitted together. Provide reveals and openings for sealants and joint fillers as indicated.

### **3.03 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING**

- A. Restore finishes damaged during installation and construction period so no evidence remains of correction work. Return items that cannot be refinished in the field to the shop; make required alterations and refinish entire unit or provide new units.

### **3.04 PROTECTION**

- A. Protect finishes from damage during construction period. Remove temporary protective coverings at time of Substantial Completion.

**END OF SECTION 05 58 13**

**SECTION 06 10 53  
MISCELLANEOUS ROUGH CARPENTRY**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Preservative treated wood materials.
- B. Fire retardant treated wood materials.
- C. Communications and electrical room mounting boards.
- D. Concealed wood blocking, nailers, and supports.
- E. Miscellaneous wood nailers, furring, and grounds.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 03 30 00 - Cast-in-Place Concrete: Setting anchors in concrete.
- B. Section 09 21 16 - Gypsum Board Assemblies: Gypsum-based sheathing.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ASTM A153/A153M - Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware 2023.
- B. ASTM C557 - Standard Specification for Adhesives for Fastening Gypsum Wallboard to Wood Framing 2003 (Reapproved 2017).
- C. ASTM D3498 - Standard Specification for Adhesives for Field-Gluing Wood Structural Panels (Plywood or Oriented Strand Board) to Wood Based Floor System Framing 2019a.
- D. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials 2023b.
- E. AWPA U1 - Use Category System: User Specification for Treated Wood 2023.
- F. PS 1 - Structural Plywood 2019.
- G. PS 20 - American Softwood Lumber Standard 2021.
- H. SPIB (GR) - Standard Grading Rules 2021.
- I. WCLIB (GR) - Standard Grading Rules for West Coast Lumber No. 17 2018.

**1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide technical data on wood preservative materials and application instructions.
- C. Warranty Documentation: Submit manufacturer warranty and ensure that forms have been completed in Owner's name and registered with manufacturer.

**1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. General: Cover wood products to protect against moisture. Support stacked products to prevent deformation and to allow air circulation.
- B. Fire Retardant Treated Wood: Prevent exposure to precipitation during shipping, storage, and installation.

**1.06 WARRANTY**

- A. See Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals for additional warranty requirements.
- B. Correct defective work within a two-year period commencing on Date of Substantial Completion.
- C. Manufacturer Warranty: Provide two-year manufacturer warranty for \_\_\_\_\_ commencing on Date of Substantial Completion.

## **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Dimension Lumber: Comply with PS 20 and requirements of specified grading agencies.
  - 1. If no species is specified, provide species graded by the agency specified; if no grading agency is specified, provide lumber graded by grading agency meeting the specified requirements.
  - 2. Grading Agency: Grading agency whose rules are approved by the Board of Review, American Lumber Standard Committee ([www.alsc.org](http://www.alsc.org)) and who provides grading service for the species and grade specified; provide lumber stamped with grade mark unless otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Lumber of other species or grades is acceptable provided structural and appearance characteristics are equivalent to or better than products specified.

### **2.02 DIMENSION LUMBER FOR CONCEALED APPLICATIONS**

- A. Grading Agency: Southern Pine Inspection Bureau, Inc; SPIB (GR).
- B. Grading Agency: West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau; WCLIB (GR).
- C. Sizes: Nominal sizes as indicated on drawings, S4S.
- D. Moisture Content: S-dry or MC19.
- E. Stud Framing for sizes 2 by 2 through 2 by 6 (50 by 50 mm through 50 by 150 mm):
  - 1. Grade: No.2.
- F. Miscellaneous Framing, Blocking, Nailers, Grounds, and Furring:
  - 1. Lumber: S4S, No.2 or Standard Grade.
  - 2. Boards: Standard or No.3.

### **2.03 CONSTRUCTION PANELS**

- A. Communications and Electrical Room Mounting Boards: PS 1, A-D plywood, or medium density fiberboard; 3/4 inch (19 mm) thick; flame spread index of 25 or less, smoke developed index of 450 or less, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
- B. Other Applications:
  - 1. Plywood Concealed From View But Located Within Exterior Enclosure: PS 1, C-C Plugged or better, Exterior grade.
  - 2. Plywood Exposed to View But Not Exposed to Weather: PS 1, A-D, or better.
  - 3. Other Locations: PS 1, C-D Plugged or better.

### **2.04 ACCESSORIES**

- A. Fasteners and Anchors:
  - 1. Metal and Finish: Hot-dipped galvanized steel complying with ASTM A153/A153M for high humidity and preservative-treated wood locations, unfinished steel elsewhere.
- B. Construction Adhesives: Adhesives complying with ASTM C557 or ASTM D3498.

### **2.05 FACTORY WOOD TREATMENT**

- A. Treated Lumber and Plywood: Comply with requirements of AWWA U1 - Use Category System for wood treatments determined by use categories, expected service conditions, and specific applications.
  - 1. Fire-Retardant Treated Wood: Mark each piece of wood with producer's stamp indicating compliance with specified requirements.
  - 2. Preservative-Treated Wood: Provide lumber and plywood marked or stamped by an ALSC-accredited testing agency, certifying level and type of treatment in accordance with AWWA standards.
- B. Fire Retardant Treatment:
  - 1. Interior Type A: AWWA U1, Use Category UCFA, Commodity Specification H, low temperature, low hygroscopic type, chemically treated and pressure impregnated; capable of providing a maximum flame spread index of 25 when tested in accordance with ASTM

E84, with no evidence of significant combustion when test is extended for an additional 20 minutes.

- a. Kiln dry wood after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent for lumber and 15 percent for plywood.
- b. Interior rough carpentry items are to be fire retardant treated.
- c. Treat rough carpentry items as indicated.
- d. Do not use treated wood in applications exposed to weather or where the wood may become wet.

C. Preservative Treatment:

1. Preservative Pressure Treatment of Lumber Above Grade: AWWA U1, Use Category UC3B, Commodity Specification A using waterborne preservative to \_\_\_\_ lb/cu ft retention ( to \_\_\_\_ kg/cu m retention).
  - a. Kiln dry lumber after treatment to maximum moisture content of 19 percent.
2. Preservative Pressure Treatment of Plywood Above Grade: AWWA U1, Use Category UC2 and UC3B, Commodity Specification F using waterborne preservative to 0.25 lb/cu ft retention (to 4.0 kg/cu m retention).
  - a. Kiln dry plywood after treatment to maximum moisture content of 19 percent.

### **PART 3 EXECUTION**

#### **3.01 PREPARATION**

- A. Coordinate installation of rough carpentry members specified in other sections.

#### **3.02 INSTALLATION - GENERAL**

- A. Select material sizes to minimize waste.
- B. Reuse scrap to the greatest extent possible; clearly separate scrap for use on site as accessory components, including: shims, bracing, and blocking.
- C. Where treated wood is used on interior, provide temporary ventilation during and immediately after installation sufficient to remove indoor air contaminants.

#### **3.03 BLOCKING, NAILERS, AND SUPPORTS**

- A. Provide framing and blocking members as indicated or as required to support finishes, fixtures, specialty items, and trim.
- B. In metal stud walls, provide continuous blocking around door and window openings for anchorage of frames, securely attached to stud framing.
- C. In walls, provide blocking attached to studs as backing and support for wall-mounted items, unless item can be securely fastened to two or more studs or other method of support is explicitly indicated.
- D. Provide the following specific nonstructural framing and blocking:
  1. Cabinets and shelf supports.
  2. Wall brackets.
  3. Handrails.
  4. Grab bars.
  5. Towel and bath accessories.
  6. Wall-mounted door stops.
  7. Chalkboards and marker boards.
  8. Wall paneling and trim.
  9. Joints of rigid wall coverings that occur between studs.

#### **3.04 INSTALLATION OF CONSTRUCTION PANELS**

- A. Communications and Electrical Room Mounting Boards: Secure with screws to studs with edges over firm bearing; space fasteners at maximum 24 inches (610 mm) on center on edges and into studs in field of board.
  1. At fire-rated walls, install board over wall board indicated as part of the fire-rated assembly.

2. Where boards are indicated as full floor-to-ceiling height, install with long edge of board parallel to studs.
3. Install adjacent boards without gaps.

**3.05 SITE APPLIED WOOD TREATMENT**

- A. Apply preservative treatment compatible with factory applied treatment at site-sawn cuts, complying with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Allow preservative to dry prior to erecting members.

**3.06 CLEANING**

- A. Waste Disposal: See Section 01 74 19 - Construction Waste Management and Disposal.
  1. Comply with applicable regulations.
  2. Do not burn scrap on project site.
  3. Do not burn scraps that have been pressure treated.
  4. Do not send materials treated with pentachlorophenol, CCA, or ACA to co-generation facilities or "waste-to-energy" facilities.
- B. Do not leave wood, shavings, sawdust, etc. on the ground or buried in fill.
- C. Prevent sawdust and wood shavings from entering the storm drainage system.

**END OF SECTION 06 10 53**

**SECTION 06 41 00  
ARCHITECTURAL WOOD CASEWORK**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Specially fabricated cabinet units.
- B. Plastic Laminate Countertops.
- C. Hardware.
- D. Factory finishing.
- E. Preparation for installing utilities.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 06 10 00 - Rough Carpentry: Support framing, grounds, and concealed blocking.
- B. Section 09 91 23 - Interior Painting: Field finishing of cabinet exterior.
- C. Section 12 36 00 - Countertops.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. AWI/AWMAC/WI (AWS) - Architectural Woodwork Standards, 2nd Edition 2014, with Errata (2016).
- B. AWMAC/WI (NAAWS) - North American Architectural Woodwork Standards 2021, with Errata.
- C. BHMA A156.9 - Cabinet Hardware 2020.
- D. HPVA HP-1 - American National Standard for Hardwood and Decorative Plywood 2020.
- E. NEMA LD 3 - High-Pressure Decorative Laminates 2005.
- F. UL (DIR) - Online Certifications Directory Current Edition.

**1.04 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Preinstallation Meeting: Convene a preinstallation meeting not less than one week before starting work of this section; require attendance by all affected installers.
  - 1. Ensure required submittals have been provided with sufficient time for review prior to scheduling the Preinstallation Meeting.
  - 2. Review the detailed requirements for the work of this section and to review the drawings and specifications for this work
    - a. Require attendance by all affected installers including but not limited to
      - 1) Contractor's Superintendent
      - 2) Installer
      - 3) Manufacturer/Fabricator Representative
      - 4) Other affected Subcontractors
      - 5) Architect/Engineer of Record
      - 6) Board's Representative
  - 3. Record minutes and distribute copies within 5 days after meeting to participants as well as Architect/Engineer of Record, Board and those affected by decisions made.

**1.05 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements for submittal procedures.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate materials, component profiles, fastening methods, jointing details, and accessories.
  - 1. Scale of Drawings: 1-1/2 inch to 1 foot (125 mm to 1 m), minimum.
  - 2. Provide information as required by AWI/AWMAC/WI (AWS) or AWMAC/WI (NAAWS).
  - 3. Include certification program label.
- C. Product Data: Provide data for hardware accessories.

- D. Samples: Submit actual samples of architectural cabinet construction, minimum 12 inches (300 mm) square, illustrating proposed cabinet, countertop, and shelf unit substrate and finish.
- E. Samples: Submit actual sample items of proposed pulls, hinges, shelf standards, and locksets, demonstrating hardware design, quality, and finish.
- F. Certificate: Submit labels and certificates required by quality assurance and quality control programs.
- G. Sustainable Design Submittal: Documentation for sustainably harvested wood-based components.

#### **1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: Company specializing in fabricating the products specified in this section with minimum five years of documented experience.
  - 1. Accredited participant in the specified certification program prior to the commencement of fabrication and throughout the duration of the project.
- B. Quality Certification:
  - 1. Provide labels or certificates indicating that the installed work complies with AWI/AWMAC/WI (AWS) or AWMAC/WI (NAAWS) requirements for grade or grades specified.
  - 2. Provide designated labels on shop drawings as required by certification program.
  - 3. Provide designated labels on installed products as required by certification program.
  - 4. Submit certifications upon completion of installation that verifies this work is in compliance with specified requirements.
  - 5. Replace, repair, or rework all work for which certification is refused.

#### **1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Protect units from moisture damage.

#### **1.08 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. During and after installation of custom cabinets, maintain temperature and humidity conditions in building spaces at same levels planned for occupancy.

### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Single Source Responsibility: Provide and install this work from single fabricator.

#### **2.02 CABINETS**

- A. Quality Standard: Custom Grade, in accordance with AWI/AWMAC/WI (AWS) or AWMAC/WI (NAAWS), unless noted otherwise.
- B. Wood Veneer Faced Cabinet:
  - 1. Exposed Surfaces: HPVA HP-1 Grade A, Maple, plain sliced, book-matched.
    - a. Run and match grain vertically for drawer fronts, doors and fixed panels.
    - b. Fabricate Work of each continuous casework unit from book matched, flitch-matched architectural plywood panel sets.
  - 2. Semi-Exposed Surfaces: HPVA HP-1 Grade B, Maple, plain sliced, book-matched.
  - 3. Concealed Surfaces: Manufacturer's option.
- C. Plastic Laminate Faced Cabinets: Custom grade.
  - 1. Finish - Exposed Exterior Surfaces: Decorative laminate.
  - 2. Finish - Exposed Interior Surfaces: Decorative laminate.
  - 3. Finish - Semi-Exposed Surfaces: Decorative laminate
  - 4. Finish - Concealed Surfaces: Manufacturer's option.
  - 5. Edges of Doors, Drawers, and Face Frame: 3 mil PVC.
  - 6. Thickness and Style: As shown, or if not shown, provide 3/4" thick doors, drawer fronts and fixed panels, except where required to be thicker by Standards; and provide flush units.

7. Cabinet Design Series: As indicated on drawings.
8. Adjustable Shelf Loading: 50 lbs. per sq. ft.
  - a. Deflection: L/144.

- D. Cabinets:
1. Cabinet Style: Flush overlay.

### **2.03 WOOD-BASED COMPONENTS**

- A. Wood fabricated from old growth timber is not permitted.
- B. Provide sustainably harvested wood, certified or labeled; see Section 01 60 00.
- C. Provide wood harvested within a 500 mile (805 km) radius of the project site.
- D. Wood fabricated from timber recovered from riverbeds or otherwise abandoned is permitted, unless otherwise noted, provided it is clean and free of contamination; identify source; provide lumber re-graded by an inspection service accredited by the American Lumber Standard Committee, Inc.
- E. Solid Wood for Transparent Finishes: AWI Grade I plain sawn Northern hard white maple, selected for compatibility of color and grain from piece to piece.
- F. Solid Wood for Opaque (Painted) Finishes: Paint grade poplar or birch.
- G. Particle Board: ANSI A 208.1 composed of wood chips, medium (40-50 PSF) density, Grade M-2-Exterior Glue (no Formaldehyde), sanded faces, fire retardant treated where indicated, and where used as backing core of wall paneling (UL stamp for Class 1. rating).
- H. Hardboard: ANSI A 135.4, pressed wood fibers with resin binders, tempered grade, 1/4" thick unless shown otherwise, smooth two sides where exposed.
- I. Fiberboard: ANSI A208.2 composed of wood reduced to fine fibers mixed with binders and formed into panels by heat and pressure, 37 to 50 lb./cu. ft. density, grade MD-exterior glue (no Formaldehyde).
- J. Thermoset Decorative Overlay Board: Particleboard specified above, or medium-density fiberboard specified above with surface of thermally fused, melamine-impregnated decorative paper complying with LMA SAT-1.

### **2.04 LAMINATE MATERIALS**

- A. Manufacturers:
  1. Formica Corporation: [www.formica.com/#sle](http://www.formica.com/#sle).
  2. Panolam Industries International, Inc: [www.panolam.com/#sle](http://www.panolam.com/#sle).
  3. Wilsonart LLC: [www.wilsonart.com/#sle](http://www.wilsonart.com/#sle).
- B. High Pressure Decorative Laminate (HPDL): NEMA LD 3, types as recommended for specific applications.
- C. Provide specific types as indicated.
  1. Horizontal Surfaces: HGS, 0.048 inch (1.22 mm) nominal thickness, through color, color as selected, finish as indicated.
  2. Vertical Surfaces: VGS, 0.028 inch (0.71 mm) nominal thickness, through color, color as selected, finish as indicated.
  3. Laminate Backer: BKL, 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) nominal thickness, undecorated; for application to concealed backside of panels faced with high pressure decorative laminate.

### **2.05 COUNTERTOPS**

- A. Countertops: See Section 12 36 00.

### **2.06 ACCESSORIES**

- A. Adhesive: Type recommended by fabricator to suit application.
- B. Plastic Edge Banding: Extruded PVC, convex shaped; smooth finish; self locking serrated tongue; of width to match component thickness.
  1. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.



2. Use at all exposed plywood edges.
3. Use at all exposed shelf edges.
- C. Fasteners: Size and type to suit application.
- D. Bolts, Nuts, Washers, Lags, Pins, and Screws: Of size and type to suit application; galvanized or chrome-plated finish in concealed locations and stainless steel or chrome-plated finish in exposed locations.
- E. Concealed Joint Fasteners: Threaded steel.
- F. Grommets: Standard plastic, painted metal, or rubber grommets for cut-outs, in color to match adjacent surface.

## 2.07 HARDWARE

- A. Hardware: BHMA A156.9, types as recommended by fabricator for quality grade specified.
- B. Metal Z-Shaped Wall Cabinet Support Clips: Paired, cleated, structural anchorage components applied to back of cabinets and walls for wall cabinet mounting.
- C. Adjustable Shelf Supports: Standard side-mounted system using recessed metal shelf standards or multiple holes for pin supports and coordinated self rests, polished chrome finish, for nominal 1 inch (25 mm) spacing adjustments.
- D. Adjustable Shelf Supports: Standard back-mounted system using surface mounted metal shelf standards and coordinated cantilevered shelf brackets, satin chrome finish, for nominal 1 inch (25 mm) spacing adjustments.
- E. Shelf Support Brackets: Fixed, L-shaped, corner reinforced, face-of-stud mounting.
  1. Materials: Formed steel shapes.
    - a. Finish: Manufacturer's standard, factory-applied, textured powder coat.
  2. Products:
    - a. A&M Hardware, Inc; Standard Brackets: [www.aandmhardware.com/#sle](http://www.aandmhardware.com/#sle).
    - b. A&M Hardware, Inc; Stainless Steel Standard Brackets: [www.aandmhardware.com/#sle](http://www.aandmhardware.com/#sle).
- F. Countertop Support Brackets: Fixed, L-shaped, face-of-stud mounting.
  1. Materials: Steel; T-shape cross-section.
  2. Materials: Steel plates.
- G. Countertop Brackets; L-shaped, top of knee wall mounting.
  1. Materials: Steel plates.
  2. Finish: Manufacturer's standard, factory-applied, powder coat.
  3. Support Length: 6 inches (150 mm).
  4. Plate Thickness and Width: 3/8 inch (9.53 mm) by 2-1/2 inches (64 mm).
- H. Countertop Brackets: Fixed, concealed vertical leg, side-of-stud mounting.
  1. Materials: Steel L- and T-shapes.
    - a. Finish: Manufacturer's standard, factory-applied, powder coat.
    - b. Vertical Leg: 12 inches (300 mm).
    - c. Support Member Depth: 1 inch (25 mm).
    - d. Support Member Width: 1 inch (25 mm)
    - e. Support Member Length: 9 inches (230 mm).
- I. Drawer and Door Pulls: "U" shaped wire pull, steel with satin finish, 4 inch centers ("U" shaped wire pull, steel with satin finish, 100 mm centers).
- J. Sliding Door Pulls: Circular shape for recessed installation, steel with satin finish.
- K. Keyed Cabinet Locks: Keyed cylinder, two keys per lock, master keyed, steel with chrome finish.
- L. Cabinet Catches and Latches:
  1. Type: Push latch.
  2. Manufacturers:

- a. Knape & Vogt Manufacturing Company: [www.knapeandvogt.com/#sle](http://www.knapeandvogt.com/#sle).
  - b. Sugatsune America, Inc: [www.sugatsune.com/#sle](http://www.sugatsune.com/#sle).
- M. Drawer Slides:
1. Type: Full extension with overtravel.
  2. Static Load Capacity: Commercial grade.
  3. Stops: Integral type.
  4. Features: Provide self closing/stay closed type.
  5. Manufacturers:
    - a. Accuride International, Inc; Heavy-Duty Drawer Slides: [www accuride.com/#sle](http://www accuride.com/#sle).
    - b. Knape & Vogt Manufacturing Company; Heavy-Duty Drawer Slides: [www.knapeandvogt.com/#sle](http://www.knapeandvogt.com/#sle).
    - c. Or Equal.
- N. Soft-Close, Door and Drawer Adjustable Dampers:
1. Manufacturers:
- O. Hinges: European style concealed self-closing type, steel with nickel-plated finish.
1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Blum, Inc: [www.blum.com/#sle](http://www.blum.com/#sle).
    - b. Hardware Resources; \_\_\_\_\_: [www.hardwareresources.com/#sle](http://www.hardwareresources.com/#sle).
    - c. Sugatsune America, Inc; \_\_\_\_\_: [www.sugatsune.com/#sle](http://www.sugatsune.com/#sle).
- P. Television and Monitor Support Slides:
1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Accuride International, Inc; CBLIFT-0019: [www accuride.com/#sle](http://www accuride.com/#sle).
    - b. Accuride International, Inc; CB3620-258TV: [www accuride.com/#sle](http://www accuride.com/#sle).
    - c. Or Equal.
- Q. Hooks: Surface-mounted; stainless steel, satin finish.
1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Rockwood; an Assa Abloy Group company; \_\_\_\_\_: [www.assaabloydss.com/#sle](http://www.assaabloydss.com/#sle).
    - b. Sugatsune America, Inc; \_\_\_\_\_: [www.sugatsune.com/#sle](http://www.sugatsune.com/#sle).
    - c. Hewi 513 or equal.
- R. Keyboard Tray: Integral ball-bearing slides; adjustable tilt, gel palm rest, storage compartments, cable management, and mouse pad.
- S. Adjustable Pilaster Shelf Supports and Brackets: Flush mounted pilaster type slotted steel standards, comply with BHMA B84073. Provide matching shelf rests, BHMA B84093. Multiple holes, 5mm diameter with pins matching shelf supports acceptable.
1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Knape & Vogt Nos. 255 and 256.
    - b. Sugatsune No. SP-1820 and SPB-20.
    - c. Or Equal.
- T. Drawer and Cupboard Locks: BHMA E0761.
1. Provide on all doors and drawers, unless otherwise noted on Drawings or by client.
- U. Finish for Exposed Cabinet Hardware: Except as otherwise indicated, provide the following finish for exposed hardware comply with BHMA A156.18. For items not available in required finish, provide finish selected by Architect from those available. If more than one finish is indicated, match finish of hardware items on each "set" of casework as indicated.
1. Satin Chromium Plated: BHMA 626 for brass or bronze base; BHMA 652 for steel base.

## 2.08 SHOP TREATMENT OF WOOD MATERIALS

- A. Provide UL (DIR) listed and approved identification on fire retardant treated material.
- B. Deliver fire retardant treated materials cut to required sizes. Minimize field cutting.

## **2.09 SITE FINISHING MATERIALS**

### **2.10 FABRICATION**

- A. Assembly: Shop assemble cabinets for delivery to site in units easily handled and to permit passage through building openings.
- B. Edging: Fit shelves, doors, and exposed edges with specified edging. Do not use more than one piece for any single length.
- C. Fitting: When necessary to cut and fit on site, provide materials with ample allowance for cutting. Provide matching trim for scribing and site cutting.
- D. Plastic Laminate: Apply plastic laminate finish in full uninterrupted sheets consistent with manufactured sizes. Fit corners and joints hairline; secure with concealed fasteners. Slightly bevel arises. Locate counter butt joints minimum 2 feet from sink cut-outs. (Locate counter butt joints minimum 600 mm from sink cut-outs.)
  - 1. Apply laminate backing sheet to reverse side of plastic laminate finished surfaces.
  - 2. Cap exposed plastic laminate finish edges with material of same finish and pattern.
- E. Matching Wood Grain: Comply with requirements of quality standard for specified Grade and as follows:
  - 1. Provide center matched panels at each elevation.
  - 2. Provide sequence matching across each elevation.
  - 3. Carry figure of cabinet fronts to toe kicks.
- F. Provide cutouts for plumbing fixtures. Verify locations of cutouts from on-site dimensions. Prime paint cut edges.
- G. Shop glaze glass materials using Interior Dry method; see Section 08 80 00.

### **2.11 SHOP FINISHING**

- A. Sand work smooth and set exposed nails and screws.
- B. On items to receive transparent finishes, use wood filler matching or blending with surrounding surfaces and of types recommended for applied finishes.
- C. Finish work in accordance with AWI/AWMAC/WI (AWS) or AWMAC/WI (NAAWS), Section 5 - Finishing for grade specified and as follows:
  - 1. Transparent:
    - a. System - 5, Varnish, Conversion.
    - b. Stain: As selected by Architect.
    - c. Sheen: Satin.
  - 2. Opaque:
    - a. Color: As selected by Architect.
    - b. Sheen: Satin.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify adequacy of backing and support framing.

### **3.02 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install work in accordance with AWI/AWMAC/WI (AWS) or AWMAC/WI (NAAWS) requirements for grade indicated.
- B. Set and secure custom cabinets in place, assuring that they are rigid, plumb, and level.
- C. Use fixture attachments in concealed locations for wall mounted components.
- D. Use concealed joint fasteners to align and secure adjoining cabinet units.
- E. Carefully scribe casework abutting other components, with maximum gaps of 1/32 inch (0.79 mm). Do not use additional overlay trim for this purpose.
- F. Secure cabinets to floor using appropriate angles and anchorages.

- G. Countersink anchorage devices at exposed locations. Conceal with solid wood plugs of species to match surrounding wood; finish flush with surrounding surfaces.

**3.03 ADJUSTING**

- A. Test installed work for rigidity and ability to support loads.
- B. Adjust moving or operating parts to function smoothly and correctly.

**3.04 CLEANING**

- A. Clean casework, counters, shelves, hardware, fittings, and fixtures.

**END OF SECTION 06 41 00**

This page intentionally left blank

**SECTION 06 42 00  
WOOD PANELING**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. CNC machined engineered bamboo wood panels & installation

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 06 10 00 - Rough Carpentry: Grounds and concealed blocking.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. AWI/AWMAC/WI (AWS) - Architectural Woodwork Standards, 2nd Edition 2014, with Errata (2016).
- B. AWMAC/WI (NAAWS) - North American Architectural Woodwork Standards 2021, with Errata.

**1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements for submittal procedures.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate materials, component profiles, fastening methods, jointing details, and accessories.
  - 1. Provide information as required by AWI/AWMAC/WI (AWS) or AWMAC/WI (NAAWS).
- C. Samples: Submit two samples of finished bamboo panel, [12 x 12] inch in size, illustrating wood grain and specified finish.

**1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: Company specializing in fabricating the products specified in this section with minimum five years of experience.
  - 1. Single Source Responsibility: Provide and install this work from single fabricator.

**1.06 MOCK-UP**

- A. Construct mock-up, 6 feet (2 m) long by 6 feet (2 m) wide, illustrating full panel sheet, edges, corners, joints, applied finish .
- B. Locate where directed.
- C. Mock-up may not remain as part of the Work.

**1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Protect work from moisture damage.
- B. Do not deliver wood materials to project site until building is fully enclosed and interior temperature and humidity are in accordance with recommendations of AWI/AWMAC/WI (AWS) or AWMAC/WI (NAAWS).

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 PANELING**

- A. Quality Standard: Custom Grade, in accordance with AWI/AWMAC/WI (AWS) or AWMAC/WI (NAAWS), unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Engineered Bamboo Paneling:
  - 1. Thickness: 3/4 inch (19 mm).
  - 2. Species: Bamboo composition.
  - 3. Milling Options: CNC Pattern as indicated on drawings.
  - 4. Application: Vertical.
  - 5. Manufacturers:
    - a. Smith &Fong; Durapalm Sumba C5-100HP.
    - b. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.
  - 6.

## **2.02 WOOD-BASED MATERIALS - GENERAL**

- A. Lumber: Maximum moisture content of 6 percent; with vertical grain, of quality suitable for transparent finish.

## **2.03 ADHESIVES AND FASTENERS**

- A. Fasteners: Concealed z-style panel hanging clips & rails. No exposed fasteners.

## **2.04 FABRICATION**

- A. Prepare panels for delivery to site, permitting passage through building openings.
- B. Finish exposed edges of panels as specified by grade requirements.
- C. Include Acoustic absorbing felt backing material the full depth of the Z-clip hanging space.

## **2.05 ACCESSORIES**

- A. Include Acoustic absorbing felt backing material the full depth of the Z-clip hanging space. Class A rating when tested in accordance with ASTM E-84 for flame spread and smoke developed.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify adequacy of backing and support framing.

### **3.02 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install work in accordance with AWI/AWMAC/WI (AWS) or AWMAC/WI (NAAWS) requirements for grade indicated.
- B. Do not begin installation until wood materials have been fully acclimated to interior conditions.
- C. Set and secure materials and components in place, plumb and level, using concealed fasteners wherever possible.
- D. Where necessary to cut and fit on site, scribe work abutting other components. Do not use additional overlay trim to conceal gaps.
- E. Coordinate the installation of firestopping behind paneling.

### **3.03 TOLERANCES**

- A. Maximum Variation from True Position: 1/16 inch (1.6 mm).
- B. Maximum Offset from True Alignment with Abutting Materials: 1/32 inch (0.8 mm).

**END OF SECTION 06 42 00**

**SECTION 07 21 00  
THERMAL INSULATION**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Batt insulation and vapor retarder in exterior wall construction.
- B. Batt insulation for filling perimeter window and door shim spaces and crevices in exterior wall and roof.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

**1.03 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Mineral Fiber Material Composition: Insulation referred to as mineral fiber block, board, and blanket insulation is composed of fibers from mineral based substances such as rock, slag, or glass and processed from the molten state into fibrous form.
  - 1. Based on type of insulation substance, the material will be referred to as a mineral fiber when having a rock or slag base, and glass fiber with a glass or silica sand base, also considered a mineral.
  - 2. Insulation blankets are flexible units consisting of felted, bonded, or unbonded fibers formed into rolls or flat cut pieces referred to as batts; rolls are simply longer versions of batts.
  - 3. For additional information about mineral fiber and the various classification types, refer to the following reference standards; ASTM C553, ASTM C612, ASTM C665, and ASTM C726.

**1.04 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ASTM C553 - Standard Specification for Mineral Fiber Blanket Thermal Insulation for Commercial and Industrial Applications 2013 (Reapproved 2019).
- B. ASTM C612 - Standard Specification for Mineral Fiber Block and Board Thermal Insulation 2014 (Reapproved 2019).
- C. ASTM C665 - Standard Specification for Mineral-Fiber Blanket Thermal Insulation for Light Frame Construction and Manufactured Housing 2023.
- D. ASTM C726 - Standard Specification for Mineral Wool Roof Insulation Board 2017.
- E. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials 2023b.

**1.05 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide data on product characteristics, performance criteria, and product limitations.

**1.06 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Do not install insulation adhesives when temperature or weather conditions are detrimental to successful installation.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 APPLICATIONS**

- A. Insulation in Metal Framed Walls: Batt insulation with separate vapor retarder.

**2.02 MINERAL FIBER BLANKET INSULATION MATERIALS**

- A. Mineral Wool Blanket Thermal Insulation: Flexible or semi-rigid preformed insulation, complying with ASTM C665.
  - 1. Flame Spread Index: 25 or less, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
  - 2. Smoke Developed Index: 450 or less, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
  - 3. Thickness: fill wall cavities to full depth. at other locations, see plans. inch (\_\_\_ mm).
  - 4. Products:



- a. Johns Manville; MinWool Sound Attenuation Fire Batts: [www.jm.com/#sle](http://www.jm.com/#sle).
- b. Knauf Insulation; EcoBatt Insulation: [www.knaufinsulation.com/#sle](http://www.knaufinsulation.com/#sle).
- c. ROCKWOOL; COMFORTBATT: [www.rockwool.com/#sle](http://www.rockwool.com/#sle).
- d. ROCKWOOL; AFB: [www.rockwool.com/#sle](http://www.rockwool.com/#sle).
- e. ROCKWOOL; AFB evo™: [www.rockwool.com/#sle](http://www.rockwool.com/#sle).
- f. Thermafiber, Inc; SAFB: [www.thermafiber.com/#sle](http://www.thermafiber.com/#sle).
- g. Thermafiber, Inc; SAFB FF: [www.thermafiber.com/#sle](http://www.thermafiber.com/#sle).

### 2.03 ACCESSORIES

- A. Sheet Vapor Retarder: Black polyethylene film for above grade application, 10 mil, 0.010 inch (0.25 mm) thick.
- B. Tape: Reinforced polyethylene film with acrylic pressure sensitive adhesive.
  1. Application: Sealing of interior circular penetrations, such as pipes or cables.
  2. Width: Are required for application.
- C. Mineral Wool Insulation Attachment:
  1. Products:
    - a. TruFast Walls, a Division of Altenloh, Brinck & Co. US, Inc; Grip-Lok MW Plate: [www.trufastwalls.com/#sle](http://www.trufastwalls.com/#sle).
    - b. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.
- D. Insulation Fasteners: Lengths of unfinished, 13 gauge, 0.072 inch (1.83 mm) high carbon spring steel with chisel or mitered tips, held in place by tension, length to suit insulation thickness and substrate, capable of securely supporting insulation in place.
- E. Insulation Fasteners: Impaling clip of unfinished steel with washer retainer and clips, to be adhered to surface to receive insulation, length to suit insulation thickness and substrate, capable of securely and rigidly fastening insulation in place.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that substrate, adjacent materials, and insulation materials are dry and that substrates are ready to receive insulation.
- B. Verify substrate surfaces are flat, free of honeycomb, fins, irregularities, or materials or substances that may impede adhesive bond.

### 3.02 BATT INSTALLATION

- A. Install insulation and vapor retarder in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install in exterior wall and roof spaces without gaps or voids. Do not compress insulation.
- C. Trim insulation neatly to fit spaces. Insulate miscellaneous gaps and voids.
- D. Fit insulation tightly in cavities and tightly to exterior side of mechanical and electrical services within the plane of the insulation.
- E. At metal framing, place vapor retarder on warm side of insulation; lap and seal sheet retarder joints over face of member
- F. Tape seal tears or cuts in vapor retarder.
- G. Extend vapor retarder tightly to full perimeter of adjacent window and door frames and other items interrupting the plane of the membrane; tape seal in place.

### 3.03 PROTECTION

- A. Do not permit installed insulation to be damaged prior to its concealment.

**END OF SECTION 07 21 00**

**SECTION 07 81 00  
APPLIED FIRE PROTECTION**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Applied fire protection of interior structural steel not exposed to damage or moisture.
- B. Preparation of applied fire protection for application of exposed overcoat finish specified elsewhere.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 05 12 00 - Structural Steel Framing.
- B. Section 05 31 00 - Steel Decking.
- C. Section 07 84 00 - Firestopping.
- D. Section 09 21 16 - Gypsum Board Assemblies: Gypsum board fireproofing.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials 2023b.
- B. ASTM E736/E736M - Standard Test Method for Cohesion/Adhesion of Sprayed Fire-Resistive Materials Applied to Structural Members 2019 (Reapproved 2023).
- C. ASTM E760/E760M - Standard Test Method for Effect of Impact on Bonding of Sprayed Fire-Resistive Material Applied to Structural Members 1992 (Reapproved 2023).
- D. ASTM E937/E937M - Standard Test Method for Corrosion of Steel by Sprayed Fire-Resistive Material (SFRM) Applied to Structural Members 1993 (Reapproved 2023).

**1.04 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Preinstallation Meeting: Convene one week before starting work of this section.

**1.05 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittals procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide data indicating product characteristics.
- C. Manufacturer's Certificate: Certify that applied fireproofing products meet or exceed requirements of Contract Documents.
- D. Test Reports: Reports from reputable independent testing agencies for proposed products, indicating compliance with specified criteria, conducted under conditions similar to those on project, as follows:
  - 1. Bond strength.
  - 2. Bond impact.
  - 3. Compressive strength.
  - 4. Fire tests using substrate materials similar those on project.
- E. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate special procedures.
- F. Field Quality Control Submittals: Submit field test report.
- G. Manufacturer's Qualification Statement.
- H. Installer's Qualification Statement.

**1.06 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Do not apply fireproofing when temperature of substrate material and surrounding air is below 40 degrees F (4 degrees C) or when temperature is predicted to be below said temperature for 24 hours after application.
- B. Provide ventilation in areas to receive fireproofing during application and 24 hours afterward, to dry applied material.

- C. Provide temporary enclosure to prevent spray from contaminating air.

### **1.07 WARRANTY**

- A. See Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.
- B. Correct defective Work within a two year period after Date of Substantial Completion.
  - 1. Include coverage for fireproofing to remain free from cracking, checking, dusting, flaking, spalling, separation, and blistering.
  - 2. Reinstall or repair failures that occur within warranty period.

## **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Applied Fire Protection:
  - 1. GCP Applied Technologies: [www.gcpat.com/#sle](http://www.gcpat.com/#sle).
  - 2. Isolatak International Corp: [www.isolatak.com/#sle](http://www.isolatak.com/#sle).

### **2.02 APPLIED FIRE PROTECTION ASSEMBLIES**

### **2.03 MATERIALS**

- A. Applied Fire Protection Material for Interior Applications, Concealed: Manufacturer's standard factory mixed material, which when combined with water is capable of providing indicated fire resistance, and complying with following requirements:
  - 1. Bond Strength: 150 pounds per square foot (7.2 kPa), minimum, when tested in accordance with ASTM E736/E736M when set and dry.
  - 2. Compressive Strength: 8.33 pounds per square inch (57.4 kPa), minimum.
  - 3. Effect of Impact on Bonding: No cracking, spalling or delamination, when tested in accordance with ASTM E760/E760M.
  - 4. Corrosivity: No evidence of corrosion, when tested in accordance with ASTM E937/E937M.
  - 5. Surface Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame spread index of 0 (zero) and maximum smoke developed index of 0 (zero), when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.

### **2.04 ACCESSORIES**

- A. Primer Adhesive: Of type recommended by applied fire protection manufacturer.
- B. Overcoat: As recommended by manufacturer of applied fire protection material.
- C. Metal Lath: Expanded metal lath; minimum weight of 1.7 psf (8 kg/sq m), galvanized finish.
- D. Water: Clean, potable.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify that surfaces are ready to receive fireproofing.
- B. Verify that clips, hangers, supports, sleeves, and other items required to penetrate fireproofing are in place.
- C. Verify that ducts, piping, equipment, or other items that would interfere with application of fireproofing have not been installed.
- D. Verify that voids and cracks in substrate have been filled.
- E. Verify that projections have been removed where fireproofing will be exposed to view as a finish material.

### **3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Perform tests as recommended by fireproofing manufacturer in applications where adhesion of fireproofing to substrate is in question.
- B. Remove incompatible materials that could effect bond by scraping, brushing, scrubbing, or sandblasting.

- C. Prepare substrates to receive fireproofing in strict accordance with instructions of fireproofing manufacturer.
- D. Protect surfaces not scheduled for fireproofing and equipment from damage by overspray, fall-out, and dusting.
- E. Close off and seal duct work in areas where fireproofing is being applied.

**3.03 APPLICATION**

- A. Install metal lath over structural members as indicated or as required by UL Assembly Design Numbers.
- B. Apply primer adhesive in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Apply fireproofing in uniform thickness and density as necessary to achieve required ratings.
- D. Apply overcoat to a thickness of \_\_\_\_ inches (to a thickness of \_\_\_\_ mm).

**3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Perform field inspection and testing in accordance with Section 01 40 00 - Quality Requirements.
- B. Inspect installed fireproofing after application and curing for integrity, prior to its concealment.
  - 1. Submit field test reports promptly to Contractor and Architect.
- C. Ensure that actual thicknesses, densities, and bond strengths meet requirements for specified ratings and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction (AHJ).
- D. Repair or replace applied fireproofing at locations where test results indicate fireproofing does not meet specified requirements.
- E. Re-inspect installed fireproofing for integrity of fire protection, after installation of subsequent Work.

**3.05 CLEANING**

- A. Remove excess material, overspray, droppings, and debris.
- B. Remove fireproofing from materials and surfaces not required to be fireproofed.

**END OF SECTION 07 81 00**

This page intentionally left blank

**SECTION 07 84 00  
FIRESTOPPING**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Firestopping systems.
- B. Firestopping of joints and penetrations in fire-resistance-rated and smoke-resistant assemblies, whether indicated on drawings or not, and other openings indicated.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Cutting and patching.
- B. Section 07 81 00 - Applied Fire Protection.
- C. Section 09 21 16 - Gypsum Board Assemblies: Gypsum wallboard fireproofing.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ASTM E814 - Standard Test Method for Fire Tests of Penetration Firestop Systems 2023a.
- B. ASTM E1966 - Standard Test Method for Fire-Resistive Joint Systems 2015 (Reapproved 2019).
- C. ASTM E2174 - Standard Practice for On-Site Inspection of Installed Firestop Systems 2020a.
- D. ASTM E2393 - Standard Practice for On-Site Inspection of Installed Fire Resistive Joint Systems and Perimeter Fire Barriers 2020a.
- E. ASTM E2307 - Standard Test Method for Determining Fire Resistance of Perimeter Fire Barriers Using Intermediate-Scale, Multi-story Test Apparatus 2023a.
- F. ASTM E2837 - Standard Test Method for Determining the Fire Resistance of Continuity Head-of-Wall Joint Systems Installed Between Rated Wall Assemblies and Nonrated Horizontal Assemblies 2023.
- G. ITS (DIR) - Directory of Listed Products Current Edition.
- H. FM (AG) - FM Approval Guide Current Edition.
- I. UL 2079 - Standard for Tests for Fire Resistance of Building Joint Systems Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- J. UL (FRD) - Fire Resistance Directory Current Edition.

**1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide data on product characteristics, performance ratings, and limitations.
- C. Manufacturer's qualification statement.
- D. Installer's qualification statement.

**1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Fire Testing: Provide firestopping assemblies of designs that provide the scheduled fire ratings when tested in accordance with methods indicated.
  - 1. Listing in UL (FRD), FM (AG), or ITS (DIR) will be considered as constituting an acceptable test report.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.
- C. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing the work of this section and:
  - 1. Verification of minimum three years documented experience installing work of this type.

## **1.06 FIELD CONDITIONS**

### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Firestopping Manufacturers:
  - 1. 3M Fire Protection Products: [www.3m.com/firestop/#sle](http://www.3m.com/firestop/#sle).
  - 2. A/D Fire Protection Systems Inc: [www.adfire.com/#sle](http://www.adfire.com/#sle).
  - 3. Hilti, Inc: [www.hilti.com/#sle](http://www.hilti.com/#sle).
  - 4. Nelson FireStop Products: [www.nelsonfirestop.com/#sle](http://www.nelsonfirestop.com/#sle).
  - 5. Passive Fire Protection Partners: [www.firestop.com/#sle](http://www.firestop.com/#sle).
  - 6. Specified Technologies Inc: [www.stifirestop.com/#sle](http://www.stifirestop.com/#sle).

#### **2.02 MATERIALS**

- A. Firestopping Materials: Any materials meeting requirements.
- B. Primers, Sleeves, Forms, Insulation, Packing, Stuffing, and Accessories: Provide type of materials as required for tested firestopping assembly.
- C. Fire Ratings: Refer to drawings for required systems and ratings.

#### **2.03 FIRESTOPPING ASSEMBLY REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Perimeter Fire Containment Firestopping: Use system that has been tested according to ASTM E2307 to have fire resistance F Rating equal to required fire rating of floor assembly.
  - 1. Movement: Provide systems that have been tested to show movement capability as indicated.
  - 2. Temperature Rise: Provide systems that have been tested to show T Rating as indicated.
  - 3. Air Leakage: Provide systems that have been tested to show L Rating as indicated.
- B. Head-of-Wall (HW) Joint System Firestopping at Joints Between Fire-Rated Wall Assemblies and Non-Rated Horizontal Assemblies: Use system that has been tested according to ASTM E2837 to have fire resistance F Rating equal to required fire rating of wall assembly.
- C. Floor-to-Floor (FF), Floor-to-Wall (FW), Head-of-Wall (HW), and Wall-to-Wall (WW) Joints, Except Perimeter, Where Both Are Fire-Rated: Use system that has been tested according to ASTM E1966 or UL 2079 to have fire resistance F Rating equal to required fire rating of the assembly in which the joint occurs.
- D. Through Penetration Firestopping: Use system that has been tested according to ASTM E814 to have fire resistance F Rating equal to required fire rating of penetrated assembly.

#### **2.04 FIRESTOPPING SYSTEMS**

- A. Firestopping: Any material meeting requirements.
  - 1. Fire Ratings: See drawings for required systems and ratings.

### **PART 3 EXECUTION**

#### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify openings are ready to receive the work of this section.

#### **3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Clean substrate surfaces of dirt, dust, grease, oil, loose material, or other materials that could adversely affect bond of firestopping material.
- B. Remove incompatible materials that could adversely affect bond.

#### **3.03 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install materials in manner described in fire test report and in accordance with manufacturer's instructions, completely closing openings.
- B. Do not cover installed firestopping until inspected by Owner's Independent Testing Agency.
- C. Do not cover installed firestopping until inspected by authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Install labeling required by code.

**3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Independent Testing Agency: Inspection agency employed and paid by Owner, will examine penetration firestopping in accordance with ASTM E2174 and ASTM E2393.
- B. Repair or replace penetration firestopping and joints at locations where inspection results indicate firestopping or joints do not meet specified requirements.

**3.05 CLEANING**

- A. Clean adjacent surfaces of firestopping materials.

**3.06 PROTECTION**

- A. Protect adjacent surfaces from damage by material installation.

**END OF SECTION 07 84 00**



This page intentionally left blank

**SECTION 07 92 00  
JOINT SEALANTS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Nonsag gunnable joint sealants.
- B. Self-leveling pourable joint sealants.
- C. Joint backings and accessories.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 01 61 16 - Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Content Restrictions: Additional requirements for sealants and primers.
- B. Section 09 21 16 - Gypsum Board Assemblies: Sealing acoustical and sound-rated walls and ceilings.
- C. Section 09 30 00 - Tiling: Sealant between tile and plumbing fixtures and at junctions with other materials and changes in plane.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ASTM C661 - Standard Test Method for Indentation Hardness of Elastomeric-Type Sealants by Means of a Durometer 2015 (Reapproved 2022).
- B. ASTM C834 - Standard Specification for Latex Sealants 2017 (Reapproved 2023).
- C. ASTM C919 - Standard Practice for Use of Sealants in Acoustical Applications 2022.
- D. ASTM C920 - Standard Specification for Elastomeric Joint Sealants 2018.
- E. ASTM C1193 - Standard Guide for Use of Joint Sealants 2016 (Reapproved 2023).
- F. ASTM C1248 - Standard Test Method for Staining of Porous Substrate by Joint Sealants 2022.

**1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's technical datasheets for each product to be used; include the following:
  - 1. Physical characteristics, including movement capability, VOC content, hardness, cure time, and color availability.
  - 2. List of backing materials approved for use with the specific product.
  - 3. Substrates that product is known to satisfactorily adhere to and with which it is compatible.
  - 4. Substrates the product should not be used on.
  - 5. Substrates for which use of primer is required.
  - 6. Installation instructions, including precautions, limitations, and recommended backing materials and tools.
- C. Product Data for Accessory Products: Submit manufacturer's technical data sheet for each product to be used, including physical characteristics, installation instructions, and recommended tools.
- D. Color Cards for Selection: Where sealant color is not specified, submit manufacturer's color cards showing standard colors available for selection.
- E. Executed warranty.

**1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.

**1.06 WARRANTY**

- A. See Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals for additional warranty requirements.

- B. Manufacturer Warranty: Provide 2-year manufacturer warranty for installed sealants and accessories that fail to achieve a watertight seal, exhibit loss of adhesion or cohesion, or do not cure. Complete forms in Owner's name and register with manufacturer.
- C. Extended Correction Period: Correct defective work within 2-year period commencing on Date of Substantial Completion.

## **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Nonsag Sealants:
  - 1. Dow: [www.dow.com/#sle](http://www.dow.com/#sle).
  - 2. Henry Company: [www.henry.com/#sle](http://www.henry.com/#sle).
  - 3. Master Builders Solutions: [www.master-builders-solutions.com/en-us/#sle](http://www.master-builders-solutions.com/en-us/#sle).
  - 4. Sika Corporation: [www.usa.sika.com/#sle](http://www.usa.sika.com/#sle).
  - 5. Specified Technologies Inc: [www.stifirestop.com/#sle](http://www.stifirestop.com/#sle).
  - 6. Tremco Commercial Sealants & Waterproofing: [www.tremcosealants.com/#sle](http://www.tremcosealants.com/#sle).
  - 7. W.R. Meadows, Inc: [www.wrmeadows.com/#sle](http://www.wrmeadows.com/#sle).
  - 8. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.
- B. Self-Leveling Sealants:
  - 1. Bostik Inc: [www.bostik-us.com/#sle](http://www.bostik-us.com/#sle).
  - 2. Dayton Superior Corporation: [www.daytonsuperior.com/#sle](http://www.daytonsuperior.com/#sle).
  - 3. Dow: [www.dow.com/#sle](http://www.dow.com/#sle).
  - 4. Master Builders Solutions: [www.master-builders-solutions.com/en-us/#sle](http://www.master-builders-solutions.com/en-us/#sle).
  - 5. Pecora Corporation: [www.pecora.com/#sle](http://www.pecora.com/#sle).
  - 6. Sika Corporation: [www.usa.sika.com/#sle](http://www.usa.sika.com/#sle).
  - 7. Tremco Commercial Sealants & Waterproofing: [www.tremcosealants.com/#sle](http://www.tremcosealants.com/#sle).
  - 8. W.R. Meadows, Inc: [www.wrmeadows.com/#sle](http://www.wrmeadows.com/#sle).
  - 9. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.

### **2.02 JOINT SEALANT APPLICATIONS**

- A. Scope:
  - 1. Exterior Joints:
    - a. Seal the following joints:
      - 1) Wall expansion and control joints.
      - 2) Joints between doors, windows, and other frames or adjacent construction.
      - 3) Joints between different exposed materials.
  - 2. Interior Joints:
    - a. Do not seal interior joints indicated on drawings as not sealed.
    - b. Seal the following joints:
      - 1) Joints between door frames and window frames and adjacent construction.
      - 2) In sound-rated wall and ceiling assemblies, gaps at electrical outlets, wiring devices, and piping penetrations.
      - 3) In sound-rated wall and ceiling assemblies, seal joints between wall assemblies and ceiling assemblies; between wall assemblies and other construction; between ceiling assemblies and other construction.
      - 4) Joints between countertops, backsplashes & cabinets with adjacent wall or floor surfaces.
      - 5) Joints between plumbing fixtures such as overmount or undermount sink basins, deck or wall mounted faucet sets & plumbing accessories, and adjacent surfaces such as countertops, backsplashes and walls.
  - 3. Do Not Seal:
    - a. Intentional weep holes in masonry.
    - b. Joints indicated to be covered with expansion joint cover assemblies.
    - c. Joints where sealant installation is specified in other sections.
    - d. Joints between suspended ceilings and walls.

- B. Type SE-01 - Exterior Joints: Use nonsag nonstaining silicone sealant, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Type SE-02 or SE-02 ALT - Control and Expansion Joints in Concrete Paving: Non Sag or Self-leveling polyurethane traffic-grade sealant.
- C. Type SE-01 - Interior Joints: Use nonsag nonstaining silicone sealant, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Type SE-06 - Wall and Ceiling Joints in Nonwet Areas: Acrylic emulsion latex sealant.
  - 2. In Sound-Rated Assemblies: Acrylic emulsion latex sealant.
  - 3. Narrow Control Joints in Interior Concrete Slabs: Self-leveling polyurethane sealant.
  - 4. Other Floor Joints: Non-sag polyurethane traffic-grade sealant.
- D. Interior Wet Areas: kitchens; fixtures in wet areas include plumbing fixtures, countertops, cabinets, and other similar items.
- E. Sound-Rated Assemblies: Walls and ceilings identified as STC-rated, sound-rated, or acoustical.

### 2.03 JOINT SEALANTS - GENERAL

- A. Sealants and Primers: Provide products with acceptable levels of volatile organic compound (VOC) content; see Section 01 61 16.
- B. Colors: Architect to select from manufacturer's standard color range.

### 2.04 NONSAG JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Type SE-01 - Nonstaining Silicone Sealant: ASTM C920, Grade NS, Uses M and A; not expected to withstand continuous water immersion or traffic.
  - 1. Movement Capability: Plus and minus 50 percent, minimum.
  - 2. Nonstaining to Porous Stone: Nonstaining to light-colored natural stone when tested in accordance with ASTM C1248.
  - 3. Dirt Pick-Up: Reduced dirt pick-up compared to other silicone sealants.
  - 4. Color: Match adjacent finished surfaces.
  - 5. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to 180 degrees F (Minus 29 to 82 degrees C).
- B. Type SE-02 - Nonsag Traffic-Grade Polyurethane Sealant: ASTM C920, Grade NS, Uses M and A; single or multi-component; explicitly approved by manufacturer for continuous water immersion and traffic without the necessity to recess sealant below traffic surface.
  - 1. Movement Capability: Plus and minus 25 percent, minimum.
  - 2. Hardness Range: 20 to 30, Shore A, when tested in accordance with ASTM C661.
  - 3. Color: Match adjacent finished surfaces.
- C. Type SE-06 - Acrylic Emulsion Latex: Water-based; ASTM C834, single component, nonstaining, nonbleeding, nonsagging; not intended for exterior use.
  - 1. Color: To be selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.
  - 2. Grade: ASTM C834; Grade 0 Degrees F (Minus 18 Degrees C).

### 2.05 SELF-LEVELING JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Type SE-02 ALT - Self-Leveling Polyurethane Sealant: ASTM C920, Grade P, Uses M and A; single or multicomponent; explicitly approved by manufacturer for traffic exposure; not expected to withstand continuous water immersion .
  - 1. Movement Capability: Plus and minus 25 percent, minimum.
  - 2. Color: To be selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.
- B. Type \_\_\_ - Rigid Self-Leveling Polyurethane Joint Filler: Two part, low viscosity, fast setting; intended for cracks and control joints not subject to significant movement.
  - 1. Hardness Range: Greater than 100, Shore A, and 50 to 80, Shore D, when tested in accordance with ASTM C661.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that joints are ready to receive work.

- B. Verify that backing materials are compatible with sealants.
- C. Verify that backer rods are of the correct size.

**3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Remove loose materials and foreign matter that could impair adhesion of sealant.
- B. Clean joints, and prime as necessary, in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Perform preparation in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and ASTM C1193.
- D. Mask elements and surfaces adjacent to joints from damage and disfigurement due to sealant work; be aware that sealant drips and smears may not be completely removable.

**3.03 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install this work in accordance with sealant manufacturer's requirements for preparation of surfaces and material installation instructions.
- B. Provide joint sealant installations complying with ASTM C1193.
- C. Install acoustical sealant application work in accordance with ASTM C919.
- D. Measure joint dimensions and size joint backers to achieve width-to-depth ratio, neck dimension, and surface bond area as recommended by manufacturer, except where specific dimensions are indicated.
- E. Install bond breaker backing tape where backer rod cannot be used.
- F. Install sealant free of air pockets, foreign embedded matter, ridges, and sags, and without getting sealant on adjacent surfaces.
- G. Do not install sealant when ambient temperature is outside manufacturer's recommended temperature range, or will be outside that range during the entire curing period, unless manufacturer's approval is obtained and instructions are followed.
- H. Nonsag Sealants: Tool surface concave, unless otherwise indicated; remove masking tape immediately after tooling sealant surface.

**END OF SECTION 07 92 00**

**SECTION 08 11 13  
HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Non-fire-rated hollow metal doors and frames.
- B. Hollow metal frames for wood doors.
- C. Fire-rated hollow metal doors and frames.
- D. Thermally insulated hollow metal doors with frames.
- E. Sound-rated hollow metal doors and frames.
- F. Hollow metal borrowed lites glazing frames.
- G. Accessories, including glazing, louvers, and matching panels.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 08 71 00 - Door Hardware.
- B. Section 08 80 00 - Glazing: Glass for doors and borrowed lites.
- C. Section 09 91 23 - Interior Painting: Field painting.
- D. Section 081416 - Flush Wood Doors

**1.03 ABBREVIATIONS AND ACRONYMS**

- A. ANSI: American National Standards Institute.
- B. ASCE: American Society of Civil Engineers.
- C. HMMA: Hollow Metal Manufacturers Association.
- D. NAAMM: National Association of Architectural Metal Manufacturers.
- E. NFPA: National Fire Protection Association.
- F. SCIF: Sensitive Compartmented Information Facility.
- G. SDI: Steel Door Institute.
- H. UL: Underwriters Laboratories.

**1.04 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ADA Standards - 2010 ADA Standards for Accessible Design 2010.
- B. ANSI/SDI A250.3 - Test Procedure and Acceptance Criteria for Factory Applied Finish Coatings for Steel Doors and Frames 2019.
- C. ANSI/SDI A250.4 - Test Procedure and Acceptance Criteria for Physical Endurance for Steel Doors, Frames and Frame Anchors 2022.
- D. ANSI/SDI A250.6 - Recommended Practice for Hardware Reinforcing on Standard Steel Doors and Frames 2020.
- E. ANSI/SDI A250.8 - Specifications for Standard Steel Doors and Frames (SDI-100) 2023.
- F. ANSI/SDI A250.10 - Test Procedure and Acceptance Criteria for Prime Painted Steel Surfaces for Steel Doors and Frames 2020.
- G. ASTM A480/A480M - Standard Specification for General Requirements for Flat-Rolled Stainless and Heat-Resisting Steel Plate, Sheet, and Strip 2023.
- H. ASTM A653/A653M - Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process 2023.
- I. ASTM A666 - Standard Specification for Annealed or Cold-Worked Austenitic Stainless Steel Sheet, Strip, Plate, and Flat Bar 2023.
- J. ASTM A1008/A1008M - Standard Specification for Steel, Sheet, Cold-Rolled, Carbon, Structural, High-Strength Low-Alloy, High-Strength Low-Alloy with Improved Formability,

Required Hardness, Solution Hardened, and Bake Hardenable 2021a.

- K. ASTM A1011/A1011M - Standard Specification for Steel, Sheet and Strip, Hot-Rolled, Carbon, Structural, High-Strength Low-Alloy, High-Strength Low-Alloy with Improved Formability, and Ultra-High Strength 2023.
- L. ASTM C143/C143M - Standard Test Method for Slump of Hydraulic-Cement Concrete 2020.
- M. ASTM C476 - Standard Specification for Grout for Masonry 2023.
- N. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials 2023b.
- O. ASTM E90 - Standard Test Method for Laboratory Measurement of Airborne Sound Transmission Loss of Building Partitions and Elements 2009 (Reapproved 2016).
- P. ASTM E413 - Classification for Rating Sound Insulation 2022.
- Q. BHMA A156.115 - Hardware Preparation in Steel Doors and Frames 2016.
- R. ICC A117.1 - Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities 2017.
- S. ITS (DIR) - Directory of Listed Products Current Edition.
- T. NAAMM HMMA 830 - Hardware Selection for Hollow Metal Doors and Frames 2002.
- U. NAAMM HMMA 831 - Hardware Locations for Hollow Metal Doors and Frames 2011.
- V. NAAMM HMMA 840 - Guide Specifications For Receipt, Storage and Installation of Hollow Metal Doors and Frames 2017.
- W. NAAMM HMMA 850 - Fire-Rated Hollow Metal Doors and Frames 2014.
- X. NAAMM HMMA 860 - Guide Specifications for Hollow Metal Doors and Frames 2018.
- Y. NAAMM HMMA 861 - Guide Specifications for Commercial Hollow Metal Doors and Frames 2014.
- Z. NFPA 80 - Standard for Fire Doors and Other Opening Protectives 2022.
- AA. NFPA 252 - Standard Methods of Fire Tests of Door Assemblies 2022.
- BB. SDI 117 - Manufacturing Tolerances for Standard Steel Doors and Frames 2023.
- CC. UL (DIR) - Online Certifications Directory Current Edition.
- DD. UL 10B - Standard for Fire Tests of Door Assemblies Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- EE. UL 10C - Standard for Positive Pressure Fire Tests of Door Assemblies Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- FF. UL 1784 - Standard for Air Leakage Tests of Door Assemblies Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

#### **1.05 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Materials and details of design and construction, hardware locations, reinforcement type and locations, anchorage and fastening methods, and finishes; and one copy of referenced standards/guidelines.
- C. Shop Drawings: Details of each opening, showing elevations, glazing, frame profiles, and any indicated finish requirements.
- D. Samples: Submit two samples of metal, 12 by 12 inches (403 by 403 mm) in size, showing factory finishes, colors, and surface texture.
- E. Design Submittals: Manufacturer to submit anchor design analysis calculations for blast-resistant doors signed and sealed by specialty design engineer experienced in this type of work and licensed in the State in which the Project is located.
- F. Installation Instructions: Manufacturer's published instructions, including any special installation instructions relating to this project.

- G. Manufacturer's Certificate: Certification that products meet or exceed specified requirements.
- H. Manufacturer's Qualification Statement.

#### **1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing products specified in this section, with not less than three years documented experience.
- B. Maintain at project site copies of reference standards relating to installation of products specified.
- C. Source Limitations: Obtain hollow metal doors and frames through one source from a single manufacturer wherever possible.
- D. Quality Standard: In addition to requirements specified, furnish SDI-Certified manufacturer products that comply with ANSI/SDI A250.8, latest edition, "Recommended Specifications for Standard Steel Doors and Frames".
- E. Fire-Rated Door Assemblies: Assemblies complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency, for fire-protection ratings indicated, based on testing at positive pressure according to UL10C (neutral pressure at 40" above sill) or UL 10C.
  - 1. Oversize Fire-Rated Door Assemblies Construction: For units exceeding sizes of tested assemblies, attach construction label certifying doors are built to standard construction requirements for tested and labeled fire rated door assemblies except for size.
  - 2. Temperature-Rise Limit: Where indicated and at vertical exit enclosures (stairwell openings) and exit passageways, provide doors that have a maximum transmitted temperature end point of not more than 450 deg F (250 deg C) above ambient after 30 minutes of standard fire-test exposure.
  - 3. Smoke Control Door Assemblies: Comply with NFPA 105.
    - a. Smoke "S" Label: Doors to bear "S" label and include smoke and draft control gasketing applied to frame and on meeting stiles of pair doors.
- F. Fire-Rated, Borrowed-Light Frame Assemblies: Assemblies complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled, by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire-protection ratings indicated, based on testing according to NFPA 257. Provide labeled glazing material.
- G. Pre-Submittal Conference: Conduct conference in compliance with requirements in Division 01 Section "Project Meetings" with attendance by representatives of Supplier, Installer, and Contractor to review proper methods and procedures for installing hollow metal doors and frames and to verify installation of electrical knockout boxes and conduit at frames with electrified or access control hardware.

#### **1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Comply with NAAMM HMMA 840 or ANSI/SDI A250.8 (SDI-100) in accordance with specified requirements.
- B. Protect with resilient packaging; avoid humidity build-up under coverings; prevent corrosion and adverse effects on factory applied painted finish.
- C. Deliver hollow metal work palletized, wrapped, or crated to provide protection during transit and Project site storage. Do not use non-vented plastic.
- D. Deliver welded frames with two removable spreader bars across bottom of frames, tack welded to jambs and mullions.
- E.
  - 1. Provide minimum 1/4-inch space between each stacked door to permit air circulation. Door and frames to be stacked in a vertical upright position.

#### **1.08 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual dimensions of openings by field measurements before fabrication.



## 1.09 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate installation of anchorages for hollow metal frames. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.
- B. Building Information Modeling (BIM) Support: Utilize designated BIM software tools and obtain training needed to successfully participate in the Project BIM processes. All technical disciplines are responsible for the product data integration and data reliability of their Work into the coordinated BIM applications.

## 1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace doors that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
- B. Warranty includes installation and finishing that may be required due to repair or replacement of defective doors.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Hollow Metal Doors and Frames:
  - 1. Ceco Door, an Assa Abloy Group company: [www.assaabloydss.com/#sle](http://www.assaabloydss.com/#sle).
  - 2. Curries, an Assa Abloy Group company: [www.assaabloydss.com/#sle](http://www.assaabloydss.com/#sle).
  - 3. Fleming Door Products, an Assa Abloy Group company: [www.assaabloydss.com/#sle](http://www.assaabloydss.com/#sle).
  - 4. Steelcraft, an Allegion brand: [www.allegion.com/#sle](http://www.allegion.com/#sle).
  - 5. Technical Glass Products; SteelBuilt Window & Door Systems: [www.tgpamerica.com/#sle](http://www.tgpamerica.com/#sle).
  - 6. Pioneer Industries.
- B. Sound-Rated Hollow Metal Doors and Frames:
  - 1. AMBICO Limited: [www.ambico.com/#sle](http://www.ambico.com/#sle).
  - 2. Overly Door Company: [www.overly.com/#sle](http://www.overly.com/#sle).

### 2.02 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Requirements for Hollow Metal Doors and Frames:
  - 1. Steel Sheet: Comply with one or more of the following requirements; galvanized steel complying with ASTM A653/A653M, cold-rolled steel complying with ASTM A1008/A1008M, or hot-rolled pickled and oiled (HRPO) steel complying with ASTM A1011/A1011M, commercial steel (CS) Type B, for each.
  - 2. Accessibility: Comply with ICC A117.1 and ADA Standards.
  - 3. Exterior Door Top Closures: Flush end closure channel, with top and door faces aligned.
  - 4. Door Edge Profile: Manufacturers standard for application indicated.
  - 5. Glazed Lights: Non-removable stops on non-secure side; sizes and configurations as indicated on drawings. Style: Manufacturer's standard.
  - 6. Hardware Preparations, Selections and Locations: Comply with NAAMM HMMA 830 and NAAMM HMMA 831 or BHMA A156.115 and ANSI/SDI A250.8 (SDI-100) in accordance with specified requirements.
  - 7. Zinc Coating for Typical Interior and/or Exterior Locations: Provide metal components zinc-coated (galvanized) and/or zinc-iron alloy-coated (galvanized) by the hot-dip process in accordance with ASTM A653/A653M, with manufacturer's standard coating thickness, unless noted otherwise for specific hollow metal doors and frames.
- B. Combined Requirements: If a particular door and frame unit is indicated to comply with more than one type of requirement, comply with the specified requirements for each type; for instance, an exterior door that is also indicated as being sound-rated must comply with the requirements specified for exterior doors and for sound-rated doors; where two requirements conflict, comply with the most stringent.

### 2.03 HOLLOW METAL DOORS

- A. Door Finish: Factory primed and field finished.
- B. Exterior Doors: Thermally insulated.
  - 1. Based on SDI Standards: ANSI/SDI A250.8 (SDI-100).
    - a. Level 1 - Standard-duty.
    - b. Physical Performance Level C, 250,000 cycles; in accordance with ANSI/SDI A250.4.
    - c. Model 1 - Full Flush.
    - d. Door Face Metal Thickness: 16 gauge, 0.053 inch (1.3 mm), minimum.
  - 2. Door Core Material: Polystyrene, 1 lbs/cu ft minimum density.
    - a. Foam Plastic Insulation: Manufacturer's standard board insulation with maximum flame spread index (FSI) of 75, and maximum smoke developed index (SDI) of 450 in accordance with ASTM E84, and completely enclosed within interior of door.
    - b. Provide 22-gauge steel stiffeners at 6 inches on-center internally welded at 5" on-center to integral core assembly, foamed in place polyurethane core chemically bonded to all interior surfaces. No stiffener face welding is permitted.
  - 3. Door Thermal Resistance: R-Value of 6.0 minimum, for installed thickness of polystyrene.
  - 4. Door Thickness: 1-3/4 inches (44.5 mm), nominal.
  - 5. Door Face Sheets: Flush.
  - 6. Weatherstripping: Refer to Section 08 71 00.
- C. Interior Doors, Non-Fire-Rated:
  - 1. Door Core Material: Manufacturers standard core material/construction and in compliance with requirements.
  - 2. Door Thickness: 1-3/4 inches (44.5 mm), nominal.
- D. Fire-Rated Doors:
  - 1. Based on SDI Standards: ANSI/SDI A250.8 (SDI-100).
    - a. Level 2 - Heavy-duty.
    - b. Physical Performance Level B, 500,000 cycles; in accordance with ANSI/SDI A250.4.
    - c. Model 1 - Full Flush.
    - d. Door Face Metal Thickness: 16 gauge, 0.053 inch (1.3 mm), minimum.
    - e. Zinc Coating: A60/ZF180 galvanized coating; ASTM A653/A653M.
  - 2. Fire Rating: As indicated on Door Schedule, tested in accordance with UL 10C and NFPA 252 ("positive pressure fire tests").
  - 3. Provide units listed and labeled by UL (DIR) or ITS (DIR).
    - a. Attach fire rating label to each fire rated unit.
  - 4. Door Core Material: Manufacturers standard core material/construction in compliance with requirements.
  - 5. Door Thickness: 1-3/4 inches (44.5 mm), nominal.
  - 6. Door Face Sheets: Flush.
- E. Sound-Rated Interior Doors:
  - 1. Based on SDI Standards: ANSI/SDI A250.8 (SDI-100).
    - a. Level 1 - Standard-duty.
    - b. Physical Performance Level C, 250,000 cycles; in accordance with ANSI/SDI A250.4.
    - c. Model 1 - Full Flush.
    - d. Door Face Metal Thickness: 16 gauge, 0.053 inch (1.3 mm), minimum.
  - 2. Sound Transmission Class (STC) Rating of Door and Frame Assembly: STC of 39, minimum, calculated in accordance with ASTM E413, and tested in accordance with ASTM E90.
  - 3. Door Thickness: As required to meet acoustic requirements indicated.
  - 4. Opening Force of Sound-Rated Doors, Non-Fire-Rated: 5 pounds (22.2 N), maximum, in compliance with ADA Standards.

## 2.04 HOLLOW METAL FRAMES

- A. Comply with standards and/or custom guidelines as indicated for corresponding door in accordance with applicable door frame requirements.
- B. Frame Finish: Factory primed and field finished.
- C. Exterior Door Frames: Knock-down type.
  - 1. Galvanizing: Components hot-dipped zinc-iron alloy-coated (galvannealed) in accordance with ASTM A653/A653M, with A40/ZF120 coating.
  - 2. Frame Metal Thickness: 14 gauge, 0.067 inch (1.7 mm), minimum.
  - 3. Weatherstripping: Separate, see Section 08 71 00.
- D. Interior Door Frames, Non-Fire Rated: Full profile/continuously welded type.
  - 1. Terminated Stops: Provide at interior doors; closed end stop terminated 6 inch (150 mm), maximum, above floor at 45 degree angle.
  - 2. Frame Metal Thickness: 16 gauge, 0.053 inch (1.3 mm), minimum.
- E. Door Frames, Fire-Rated: Knock-down type.
  - 1. Fire Rating: Same as door, labeled.
  - 2. Terminated Stops: Provide at interior doors; closed end stop terminated 6 inch (150 mm), maximum, above floor at 45 degree angle.
- F. Sound-Rated Door Frames: Knock-down type.
- G. Frames for Wood Doors: Comply with frame requirements in accordance with corresponding door.
- H. Borrowed Lites Glazing Frames: Construction and face dimensions to match door frames, and as indicated on drawings.
- I. Transom Bars: Fixed, of profile same as jamb and head.
- J. Provide mortar guard boxes for hardware cut-outs in frames to be installed in masonry or to be grouted.
- K. Frames in Masonry Walls: Size to suit masonry coursing with head member 4 inches (102 mm) high to fill opening without cutting masonry units.
- L. Frames Wider than 48 inches (1219 mm): Reinforce with steel channel fitted tightly into frame head, flush with top.

## 2.05 FINISHES

- A. Primer: Rust-inhibiting, complying with ANSI/SDI A250.10, door manufacturer's standard.
- B. Factory Finish: Complying with ANSI/SDI A250.3, manufacturer's standard coating.
- C. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt mastic, compounded for 15 mil, 0.015 inch (0.4 mm) dry film thickness (DFT) per coat; provide inert-type noncorrosive compound free of asbestos fibers, sulfur components, and other deleterious impurities.
  - 1. Fire-Rated Frames: Comply with fire rating requirements indicated.
- D. Prime Finishes: Doors and frames to be cleaned, and chemically treated to insure maximum finish paint adhesion. Surfaces of the door and frame exposed to view to receive a factory applied coat of rust inhibiting shop primer.
  - 1. Shop Primer: Manufacturer's standard, fast-curing, lead and chromate free primer complying with ANSI/SDI A250.10 acceptance criteria; recommended by primer manufacturer for substrate; and compatible with substrate and field-applied coatings.

## 2.06 ACCESSORIES

- A. Louvers: Roll formed steel with overlapping frame; finish same as door components ; factory-installed.
  - 1. In Fire-Rated Doors: UL (DIR) or ITS (DIR) listed fusible link louver, same rating as door.
  - 2. Style: Sightproof inverted Y blade.
  - 3. Fasteners: Concealed fasteners.

- B. Door Window Frames: Door window frames with glazing securely fastened within door opening.
  - 1. Size: 12 inch wide by 12 inch high (305 mm wide by 305 mm high).
  - 2. Frame Material: 18 gauge, 0.0478 inch (1.21 mm), galvanized steel.
  - 3. Glazing: 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) thick, tempered glass, in compliance with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Glazing: As specified in Section 08 80 00, factory installed.
- D. Removable Stops: Formed sheet steel, mitered or butted corners; prepared for countersink style tamper proof screws.
- E. Mortar Guards: Formed from same material as frames, not less than 0.016 inches thick.
- F. Astragals and Edges for Double Doors: Pairs of door astragals, and door edge sealing and protection devices.
  - 1. UL listed products in compliance with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 2. Provide surface mounted astragal to cover or fill space for full door height between pair of doors or door and adjacent jamb.
  - 3. Astragal Type: Split, two parts, and with automatic locking, cutouts for other door hardware, and sealing gasket.
  - 4. Edge Type: Beveled edge
  - 5. Metal Finish: See Materials and Finish List, and Drawings powder coating.
  - 6. Provide non-corroding fasteners at exterior locations.
- G. Grout for Frames: Mortar grout complying with ASTM C476 with maximum slump of 4 inches (102 mm) as measured in accordance with ASTM C143/C143M for hand troweling in place; plaster grout and thinner pumpable grout are prohibited.

## 2.07 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate hollow metal work to be rigid and free of defects, warp, or buckle. Accurately form metal to required sizes and profiles, with minimum radius for thickness of metal. Where practical, fit and assemble units in manufacturer's plant. When shipping limitations so dictate, frames for large openings are to be fabricated in sections for splicing or splining in the field by others.
- B. Tolerances: Fabricate hollow metal work to tolerances indicated in ANSI/SDI A250.8.
- C. Hollow Metal Doors:
  - 1. Exterior Doors: Provide optional weep-hole openings in bottom of exterior doors to permit moisture to escape where specified.
  - 2. Glazed Lites: Factory cut openings in doors with applied trim or kits to fit. Factory install glazing where indicated.
  - 3. Astragals: Provide overlapping astragals as noted in door hardware sets in Division 08 Section "Door Hardware" on one leaf of pairs of doors where required by NFPA 80 for fire-performance rating or where indicated. Extend minimum 3/4 inch beyond edge of door on which astragal is mounted.
  - 4. Continuous Hinge Reinforcement: Provide welded continuous 12 gauge strap for continuous hinges specified in hardware sets in Division 08 Section "Door Hardware".
- D. Hollow Metal Frames:
  - 1. Shipping Limitations: Where frames are fabricated in sections due to shipping or handling limitations, provide alignment plates or angles at each joint, fabricated of same thickness metal as frames.
  - 2. Welded Frames: Weld flush face joints continuously; grind, fill, dress, and make smooth, flush, and invisible.
    - a. Welded frames are to be provided with two steel spreaders temporarily attached to the bottom of both jambs to serve as a brace during shipping and handling. Spreader bars are for bracing only and are not to be used to size the frame opening.
  - 3. Sidelight and Transom Bar Frames: Provide closed tubular members with no visible face seams or joints, fabricated from same material as door frame. Fasten members at

- crossings and to jambs by butt welding.
4. High Frequency Hinge Reinforcement: Provide high frequency hinge reinforcements at door openings 48-inches and wider with mortise butt type hinges at top hinge locations.
  5. Continuous Hinge Reinforcement: Provide welded continuous 12 gauge straps for continuous hinges specified in hardware sets in Division 08 Section "Door Hardware".
  6. Provide countersunk, flat- or oval-head exposed screws and bolts for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated for removable stops, provide security screws at exterior locations.
  7. Mortar Guards: Provide guard boxes at back of hardware mortises in frames at all hinges and strike preps regardless of grouting requirements.
  8. Floor Anchors: Weld anchors to bottom of jambs and mullions with at least four spot welds per anchor.
  9. Jamb Anchors: Provide number and spacing of anchors as follows:
    - a. Masonry Type: Locate anchors not more than 18 inches from top and bottom of frame. Space anchors not more than 32 inches o.c. and as follows:
      - 1) Two anchors per jamb up to 60 inches high.
      - 2) Three anchors per jamb from 60 to 90 inches high.
      - 3) Four anchors per jamb from 90 to 120 inches high.
      - 4) Four anchors per jamb plus 1 additional anchor per jamb for each 24 inches or fraction thereof above 120 inches high.
    - b. Stud Wall Type: Locate anchors not more than 18 inches from top and bottom of frame. Space anchors not more than 32 inches o.c. and as follows:
      - 1) Three anchors per jamb up to 60 inches high.
      - 2) Four anchors per jamb from 60 to 90 inches high.
      - 3) Five anchors per jamb from 90 to 96 inches high.
      - 4) Five anchors per jamb plus 1 additional anchor per jamb for each 24 inches or fraction thereof above 96 inches high.
      - 5) Two anchors per head for frames above 42 inches wide and mounted in metal stud partitions.
  10. Door Silencers: Except on weatherstripped or gasketed doors, drill stops to receive door silencers. Silencers to be supplied by frame manufacturer regardless if specified in Division 08 Section "Door Hardware".
  11. Bituminous Coating: Where frames are fully grouted with an approved Portland Cement based grout or mortar, coat inside of frame throat with a water based bituminous or asphaltic emulsion coating to a minimum thickness of 3 mils DFT, tested in accordance with UL 10C and applied to the frame under a 3rd party independent follow-up service procedure.
- E. Hardware Preparation: Factory prepare hollow metal work to receive template mortised hardware; include cutouts, reinforcement, mortising, drilling, and tapping according to the Door Hardware Schedule and templates furnished as specified in Division 08 Section "Door Hardware."
1. Locate hardware as indicated, or if not indicated, according to ANSI/SDI A250.8.
  2. Reinforce doors and frames to receive non-template, mortised and surface mounted door hardware.
  3. Comply with applicable requirements in ANSI/SDI A250.6 and ANSI/DHI A115 Series specifications for preparation of hollow metal work for hardware.
  4. Coordinate locations of conduit and wiring boxes for electrical connections with Division 26 Sections.

### **PART 3 EXECUTION**

#### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify existing conditions before starting work.
- B. Verify that opening sizes and tolerances are acceptable.
- C. Verify that finished walls are in plane to ensure proper door alignment.

### **3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Coat inside of frames to be installed in masonry or to be grouted, with bituminous coating, prior to installation.

### **3.03 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install doors and frames in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and related requirements of specified door and frame standards or custom guidelines indicated.
- B. Install fire rated units in accordance with NFPA 80.
- C. Coordinate frame anchor placement with wall construction.
- D. Grout frames in masonry construction, using hand trowel methods; brace frames so that pressure of grout before setting will not deform frames.
- E. Install door hardware as specified in Section 08 71 00.
  - 1. Comply with recommended practice for hardware placement of doors and frames in accordance with ANSI/SDI A250.6 or NAAMM HMMA 861.
- F. Comply with glazing installation requirements of Section 08 80 00.
- G. Coordinate installation of electrical connections to electrical hardware items.
- H. Touch up damaged factory finishes.

### **3.04 TOLERANCES**

- A. Clearances Between Door and Frame: Comply with related requirements of specified frame standards or custom guidelines indicated in accordance with SDI 117 or NAAMM HMMA 861.
- B. Maximum Diagonal Distortion: 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) measured with straight edge, corner to corner.

### **3.05 ADJUSTING**

- A. Adjust for smooth and balanced door movement.
- B. Adjust sound control doors so that seals are fully engaged when door is closed.
- C. Test sound control doors for force to close, latch, and unlatch; adjust as necessary in compliance with requirements.

**END OF SECTION 08 11 13**

This page intentionally left blank

**SECTION 08 11 16  
ALUMINUM DOORS AND FRAMES**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Glazed aluminum doors, at exterior exit.
- B. Aluminum frames, at exterior exit.
- C. Glazing, at exterior exit.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 07 25 00 - Weather Barriers: Sealing door frame to water-resistive barrier installed on adjacent construction.
- B. Section 07 92 00 - Joint Sealants: Sealing joints between door frames and adjacent construction.
- C. Section 08 12 13 - Hollow Metal Frames: Fire rated door frames.
- D. Section 08 71 00 - Door Hardware: Hardware for aluminum doors.
- E. Section 08 80 00 - Glazing: Glazing materials for aluminum doors and frames.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ADA Standards - 2010 ADA Standards for Accessible Design 2010.
- B. ICC A117.1 - Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities 2017.
- C. ITS (DIR) - Directory of Listed Products Current Edition.
- D. NFPA 252 - Standard Methods of Fire Tests of Door Assemblies 2022.
- E. UL (DIR) - Online Certifications Directory Current Edition.

**1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Manufacturer's descriptive literature for each type of door; include information on fabrication methods.
- C. Shop Drawings: Include elevations of each opening type.
  - 1. Verify dimensions by field measurements before fabrication and indicate on shop drawings.
- D. Selection Samples: Complete set of color and finish options, using actual materials, for Architect's selection.
- E. Test Report: Certified test reports from qualified independent testing agency indicating doors comply with specified performance requirements.
- F. Manufacturer's qualification statement.
- G. Installer's qualification statement.
- H. Field Quality Control Submittals: Report of field testing for water penetration and air leakage.
- I. Specimen warranty.

**1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing work of type specified and with at least three years of documented experience.

**1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Deliver aluminum components in manufacturer's standard protective packaging, palletted, crated, or banded together.
- B. Inspect delivered components for damage and replace. Repaired components will not be accepted.



- C. Store components in clean, dry, indoor area, under cover in manufacturer's packaging until installation.
- D. Protect materials and finish from damage during handling and installation.

### **1.07 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Do not begin installation of interior aluminum components until space has been enclosed and ambient thermal conditions are being maintained at levels consistent with final project requirements.

### **1.08 WARRANTY**

- A. See Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals for additional warranty requirements.
- B. Correct defective Work within a five year period after Date of Substantial Completion.
- C. Manufacturer Warranty: Provide 10-year manufacturer warranty for defects in workmanship and materials. Complete forms in Owner's name and register with manufacturer.

## **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Glazed Aluminum Doors:
- B. Aluminum Frames:

### **2.02 DOORS AND FRAMES**

- A. Accessibility: Comply with ICC A117.1 and ADA Standards.
- B. Glazed Aluminum Doors: Extruded aluminum tube frame, full glazed, with middle rail; factory glazed.
  - 1. Thickness: Manufacturer's standard for door size and construction.
  - 2. Stile Width: As indicated on drawings.
  - 3. Finish: Class I - Natural anodized.
  - 4. Texture: Smooth.
  - 5. Seals: Manufacturer's standard.
  - 6. Glazing: See Section 08 80 00 and Materials and Finishes List, and Drawings.
- C. Aluminum Frames for Doors, Sidelights, or Transoms: Extruded aluminum, thermally broken hollow or C-shaped sections; no steel components.
  - 1. Frames for Fire-Rated Doors Specified Elsewhere: Tested in accordance with NFPA 252, listed and labeled by UL (DIR), ITS (DIR), or testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 2. Finish: Same as doors.
  - 3. Sidelight/Transom Glazing: Sealed insulating glass units, 1 inch (25 mm) overall thickness, with two panes of clear 1/4 inch (6 mm) thick fully tempered glass.
- D. Dimensions and Shapes: As indicated on drawings; dimensions indicated are nominal.
  - 1. Provide the following clearances:
    - a. Hinge and Lock Stiles: 1/8 inch (3.2 mm).
    - b. Between Meeting Stiles: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm).
    - c. At Top Rail and Bottom Rail: 1/8 inch (3.2 mm).

### **2.03 COMPONENTS**

- A. Frames: Extruded aluminum shapes, not less than 0.062 inch (1.6 mm) thick, reinforced at hinge and strike locations.
  - 1. Corner Brackets: Extruded aluminum, fastened with stainless steel screws.
  - 2. Trim: Extruded aluminum, not less than 0.062 inch (1.6 mm) thick, removable snap-in type without exposed fasteners.

**END OF SECTION 08 11 16**

**SECTION 08 14 16  
FLUSH WOOD DOORS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Flush wood doors; flush and flush glazed configuration; fire-rated, non-rated, acoustical, and special function.
  - 1. Wood doors hung in metal frames.
  - 2. Solid core wood door.
  - 3. Factory finishing flush wood doors.
  - 4. Factory fitting flush wood doors to frames and factory machining for hardware.

**1.02 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS**

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

**1.03 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 08 11 13 - Hollow Metal Doors and Frames.
- B. Section 08 12 13 - Hollow Metal Frames.
- C. Section 08 71 00 - Door Hardware.
- D. Section 08 80 00 - Glazing.
- E. Section 09 91 23 - Interior Painting: Field finishing of doors.

**1.04 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ANSI A135.4 - Basic Hardboard 2012 (Reaffirmed 2020).
- B. ASTM E90 - Standard Test Method for Laboratory Measurement of Airborne Sound Transmission Loss of Building Partitions and Elements 2009 (Reapproved 2016).
- C. ASTM E413 - Classification for Rating Sound Insulation 2022.
- D. ASTM E2112 - Standard Practice for Installation of Exterior Windows, Doors and Skylights 2023.
- E. AWI/AWMAC/WI (AWS) - Architectural Woodwork Standards, 2nd Edition 2014, with Errata (2016).
- F. AWMAC/WI (NAAWS) - North American Architectural Woodwork Standards 2021, with Errata.
- G. BHMA A156.2 - Bored and Preassembled Locks and Latches 2022.
- H. BHMA A156.13 - Mortise Locks & Latches Series 1000 2022.
- I. NFPA 80 - Standard for Fire Doors and Other Opening Protectives 2022.
- J. NFPA 105 - Standard for Smoke Door Assemblies and Other Opening Protectives 2022.
- K. UL 10C - Standard for Positive Pressure Fire Tests of Door Assemblies Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- L. UL 1784 - Standard for Air Leakage Tests of Door Assemblies Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- M. WDMA I.S. 1A - Interior Architectural Wood Flush Doors 2021, with Errata (2022).

**1.05 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Indicate door core materials and construction; veneer species, type and characteristics.
- C. Shop Drawings: Show doors and frames, elevations, sizes, types, swings, undercuts, beveling, blocking for hardware, factory machining, factory finishing, cutouts for glazing and other details.
  - 1. Provide information as required by AWI/AWMAC/WI (AWS) or AWMAC/WI (NAAWS).
  - 2. Include certification program label.

- D. Samples: Submit two samples of door construction, 12 by 12 inches (403 by 403 mm) in size cut from top corner of door.
- E. Samples: Submit two samples of door veneer, 12 by 12 inches (403 by 403 mm) in size illustrating wood grain, stain color, and sheen.
- F. Certificate: Submit labels and certificates required by quality assurance and quality control programs.
- G. Test Reports: Show compliance with specified requirements for the following:
  - 1. Sound-retardant doors and frames; sealed panel tests are not acceptable.
- H. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate special installation instructions.
- I. Manufacturer's qualification statement.
- J. Installer's qualification statement.
- K. Specimen warranty.
- L. Warranty, executed in Owner's name.

#### **1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section, with not less than three years of documented experience.
  - 1. Accredited participant in the specified certification program prior to the commencement of fabrication and throughout the duration of the project.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing work of the type specified in this section, with not less than three years of documented experience.
- C. Woodwork Quality Assurance Program:
  - 1. Provide labels indicating that the installed work complies with AWI/AWMAC/WI (AWS) or AWMAC/WI (NAAWS) requirements for grade or grades specified.
  - 2. Provide designated labels on shop drawings as required by quality assurance program.
  - 3. Provide designated labels on installed products as required by quality assurance program.
  - 4. Submit documentation upon completion of installation that verifies this work is in compliance with specified requirements.

#### **1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Package, deliver and store doors in accordance with specified quality standard.
- B. Accept doors on site in manufacturer's packaging, and inspect for damage.
- C. Protect doors with resilient packaging sealed with heat shrunk plastic; do not store in damp or wet areas or areas where sunlight might bleach veneer; seal top and bottom edges with tinted sealer if stored more than one week, and break seal on site to permit ventilation.

#### **1.08 WARRANTY**

- A. See Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals for additional warranty requirements.
- B. Manufacturer Warranty: Provide manufacturer's warranty on interior doors for the life of the installation. Complete forms in Owner's name and register with manufacturer.
  - 1. Include coverage for delamination of veneer, warping beyond specified installation tolerances, defective materials, and telegraphing core construction.
- C. Warranty Period:
  - 1. Interior Doors: Lifetime.
  - 2. Exterior Doors: Five Years.

### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Wood Veneer Faced Doors:
  - 1. Masonite Architectural; Aspiro Select Wood Veneer Doors:  
[www.architectural.masonite.com/#sle](http://www.architectural.masonite.com/#sle).

2. Algoma Hardwoods, Inc..
3. Graham wood Doors; ASSA ABLOY Group company..
4. Marshfield DoorSystems, Inc..
5. VT Industries Inc..

B. Source Limitations: Obtain flush wood doors from single manufacturer.

## 2.02 DOORS AND PANELS

- A. Doors: See drawings for locations and additional requirements.
1. Quality Standard: Custom Grade, Heavy Duty performance, in accordance with AWI/AWMAC/WI (AWS) or AWMAC/WI (NAAWS), unless noted otherwise.
  2. Wood Veneer Faced Doors: 5-ply unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Interior Doors: 1-3/4 inches (44 mm) thick unless otherwise indicated; flush construction.
1. Provide solid core doors at each location.
  2. Fire Rated Doors: Tested to ratings indicated on drawings in accordance with UL 10C - Positive Pressure; Underwriters Laboratories Inc (UL) or Intertek/Warnock Hersey (WHI) labeled without any visible seals when door is open.
  3. Smoke and Draft Control Doors: In addition to required fire rating, provide door assemblies tested in accordance with UL 1784 with maximum air leakage of 3.0 cfm per sq ft (0.01524 cu m/s/sq m) of door opening at 0.10 inch wg (24.9 Pa) pressure at both ambient and elevated temperatures for "S" label; if necessary, provide additional gasketing or edge sealing.
  4. Sound-Rated Doors: Minimum STC as indicated on drawings, calculated in accordance with ASTM E413, tested in accordance with ASTM E90.

## 2.03 DOOR AND PANEL CORES

- A. Non-Rated Solid Core and 20 Minute Rated Doors: Type particleboard core (PC), plies and faces as indicated.
- B. Premium Grade, Structural composite lumber.
- C. Construction: Seven plies, either bonded or nonbonded.
- D. Fire-Rated Doors: Mineral core type, with fire resistant composite core (FD), plies and faces as indicated above; with core blocking as required to provide adequate anchorage of hardware without through-bolting.
- E. Sound-Rated Doors: Equivalent to type, with particleboard core (PC) construction as required to achieve STC rating specified; plies and faces as indicated above.

## 2.04 DOOR FACINGS

- A. Veneer Facing for Transparent Finish: White oak, HPVA Grade AA, rift cut (only red and white oak), with book match between leaves of veneer, running match of spliced veneer leaves assembled on door or panel face.
1. "Running Match" each pair of doors and doors in close proximity to each other.
  2. Assembly of Veneer Leaves on Door Faces: Center-balance match.
  3. Pair and Set Match: Provide for doors hung in same opening or separated only by mullions.
  4. Room Match: Match door faces within each separate room or area of building. Corridor-door faces do not need to match where they are separated by 10 feet or more.
  5. Exposed Vertical and top Edges: Same species as faces or a compatible s
  6. WDMA I.S.1-A Performance Grade: Heavy Duty.
- B. Veneer Facing for Opaque Finish: Medium density overlay (MDO), in compliance with indicated quality standard.
- C. Hardboard Facing for Opaque Finish: ANSI A135.4, Class 1 - Tempered, S2S (smooth two sides) hardboard, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick.

## 2.05 DOOR CONSTRUCTION

- A. Fabricate doors in accordance with door quality standard specified.

- B. Cores Constructed with stiles and rails:
  - 1. Provide solid blocks at lock edge for hardware reinforcement.
  - 2. Provide solid blocking for other throughbolted hardware.
- C. Glazed Openings: Non-removable stops on non-secure side; sizes and configurations as indicated on drawings.
- D. Factory machine doors for hardware other than surface-mounted hardware, in accordance with hardware requirements and dimensions.
- E. Factory fit doors for frame opening dimensions identified on shop drawings, with edge clearances in accordance with specified quality standard.
  - 1. Exception: Doors to be field finished.
- F. Provide edge clearances in accordance with the quality standard specified.

## 2.06 FINISHES - WOOD VENEER DOORS

- A. Finish work in accordance with AWI/AWMAC/WI (AWS) or AWMAC/WI (NAAWS), Section 5 - Finishing for grade specified and as follows:
  - 1. Transparent:
    - a. System - 11, Polyurethane, Catalyzed.
    - b. Grade: Premium
    - c. Stain: As selected by Architect.
    - d. Effect: Filled Finish.
    - e. Sheen: Semigloss.
    - f. Doors for Transparent Finish: Shop prime faces and all four edges with stain (if required), other required pretreatments, and first coat of finish as specified in Section 099300 "Staining and Transparent Finishing." Seal edges of cutouts and mortises with first coat of finish.
  - 2. Opaque:
    - a. System - 1, Lacquer, Nitrocellulose.
    - b. Color: As selected by Architect.
    - c. Sheen: Semigloss.
    - d. Doors for Opaque Finish: Shop prime faces, all four edges, edges of cutouts, and mortises with one coat of wood primer specified in Section 099123" Interior Painting."
- B. Factory finish doors in accordance with approved sample.
  - 1. General: Comply with referenced quality standard for factory finishing. Complete fabrication, including fitting doors for openings and machining for hardware that is not surface applied, before finishing.
    - a. Finish faces, all four edges, edges of cutouts, and mortises. Stains and fillers may be omitted on bottom edges, edges of cutouts, and mortises.
  - 2.
- C.

## 2.07 ACCESSORIES

- A. Hollow Metal Door Frames: See Section 08 11 13.
- B. Glazed Openings: See Materials and Finish List, and Drawings.
- C. Glazing: See Section 08 80 00.
- D. Glazing Stops: Wood, of same species as door facing, butted corners; prepared for countersink style tamper proof screws.
- E. Astragals and Edges for Double Doors: Pairs of doors astragals, and door edge sealing and protection devices.
  - 1. UL listed products in compliance with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 2. Provide non-corroding fasteners at exterior locations.
- F. Door Hardware: See Section 08 71 00.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify existing conditions before starting work.
- B. Verify that opening sizes and tolerances are acceptable.
- C. Do not install doors in frame openings that are not plumb or are out-of-tolerance for size or alignment.

### **3.02 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install doors in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and specified quality standard.
  - 1. Install fire-rated doors in accordance with NFPA 80 requirements.
  - 2. Install smoke and draft control doors in accordance with NFPA 105 requirements.
  - 3. Install exterior doors in accordance with ASTM E2112.
- B. Factory-Finished Doors: Do not field cut or trim; if fit or clearance is not correct, replace door.
- C. Use machine tools to cut or drill for hardware.
- D. Coordinate installation of doors with installation of frames and hardware.
- E. Coordinate installation of glazing.

### **3.03 TOLERANCES**

- A. Comply with specified quality standard for fit and clearance tolerances.
- B. Comply with specified quality standard for telegraphing, warp, and squareness.

### **3.04 ADJUSTING**

- A. Adjust doors for smooth and balanced door movement.
- B. Adjust closers for full closure.

**END OF SECTION 08 14 16**

This page intentionally left blank

**SECTION 08 41 26**  
**ALL-GLASS ENTRANCES AND STOREFRONTS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. All-glass entrances.
- B. All-glass storefronts (Interior entries from other areas not within scope).
- C. Swinging doors (Interior entries from other areas not within scope).
- D. Interior sliding doors.
- E. Interior multi-folding doors.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 05 40 00 - Cold-Formed Metal Framing: Supplementary supports.
- B. Section 084227 - Frameless Sliding Glass Doors - Avanti
- C. Section 08 71 00 - Door Hardware.
- D. Section 09 21 16 - Gypsum Board Assemblies.
- E. Section 102310 - Glazed Interior Wall and Door Assemblies

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ASTM A666 - Standard Specification for Annealed or Cold-Worked Austenitic Stainless Steel Sheet, Strip, Plate, and Flat Bar 2023.
- B. ASTM B221 - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Profiles, and Tubes 2021.
- C. ASTM B221M - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Profiles, and Tubes (Metric) 2021.
- D. ASTM C920 - Standard Specification for Elastomeric Joint Sealants 2018.
- E. ASTM C1036 - Standard Specification for Flat Glass 2021.
- F. ASTM C1048 - Standard Specification for Heat-Strengthened and Fully Tempered Flat Glass 2018.
- G. BHMA A156.3 - Exit Devices 2020.
- H. BHMA A156.4 - Door Controls - Closers 2019.
- I. BHMA A156.13 - Mortise Locks & Latches Series 1000 2022.
- J. BHMA A156.17 - Self Closing Hinges & Pivots 2019.

**1.04 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Preinstallation Meeting: Convene at project site seven calendar days prior to scheduled beginning of construction activities of this section to review section requirements.

**1.05 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Manufacturer's descriptive literature for each component in all-glass entrance assembly.
- C. Shop Drawings: Drawings showing layout, dimensions, identification of components, and interface with adjacent construction.
  - 1. Include field measurements of openings.
  - 2. Include elevations showing:
    - a. Appearance of all-glass entrance layouts.
    - b. Locations and identification of manufacturer-supplied door hardware and fittings.
    - c. Locations and sizes of cut-outs and drilled holes for other door hardware.
  - 3. Include details of:



- a. Requirements for support and bracing at openings.
- b. Installation details.
- c. Appearance of manufacturer-supplied door hardware and fittings.
4. Schedule: Listing of each type component in all-glass entrance assemblies, cross-referenced to shop drawing plans, elevations, and details.
- D. Selection Samples: Two sets, representing manufacturer's full range of available metal materials and finishes.
- E. Verification Samples: Two samples, minimum size 2 by 3 inches (50 by 75 mm), representing actual material and finish of exposed metal.
- F. Certificates: Contractor's certification that installer of entrance assemblies meets specified qualifications.
- G. Design Data: Design calculations, bearing seal and signature of structural engineer licensed to practice in the State in which the Project is located, documenting compliance of exterior assemblies with wind pressure criteria.
- H. Operation and Maintenance Data: For manufacturer-supplied operating hardware.

#### **1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Installer Qualifications: Minimum three years of experience installing entrance assemblies similar to those specified in this section.

#### **1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Store products in manufacturer's unopened packaging until installation.

### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Entrances and Storefronts:
  1. Avanti Systems USA; Eclipse Standard Doors: [www.avantisystemsusa.com/#sle](http://www.avantisystemsusa.com/#sle).
  2. CR Laurence - Blumcraft; 150 & 250 Series: [www.crlaurence.com/products/brands/blumcraft](http://www.crlaurence.com/products/brands/blumcraft).
  3. Solite Systems A1200 Series: <https://www.solitesystems.com/a1200series>.
  4. Linear Interior Systems Inc; Vetro Fisso: [www.linearinteriorsystems.com](http://www.linearinteriorsystems.com).
  5. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.
- B. Fittings and Hardware:
  1. Avanti Systems USA: [www.avantisystemsusa.com/#sle](http://www.avantisystemsusa.com/#sle).
  2. CR Laurence - Blumcraft; 150 & 250 Series: [www.crlaurence.com/products/brands/blumcraft](http://www.crlaurence.com/products/brands/blumcraft).

#### **2.02 ALL-GLASS ENTRANCES AND STOREFRONTS ASSEMBLIES**

- A. Entrances and Storefronts: Factory fabricated assemblies consisting of frameless glass panels fastened with metal structural fittings in configuration indicated on drawings.
  1. Exterior Assemblies: Designed to resist the following wind pressures:
    - a. Positive Pressure: \_\_\_ psf (\_\_\_ Pa).
    - b. Negative Pressure: \_\_\_ psf (\_\_\_ Pa).
  2. Operational Loads: Designed to withstand door operation under normal traffic without damage, racking, sagging, or deflection.
  3. Prepared for all specified hardware whether specified in this section or not.
  4. Finished metal surfaces protected with strippable film.
  5. Factory assembled to greatest extent practicable; may be disassembled to accommodate shipping constraints.
- B. Swinging Door Fittings and Hardware:
  1. Top and bottom pivots concealed in full width rails top and bottom.
  2. Single Doors: Floor mounted door stop.
- C. Interior Top Hung Sliding Door Fittings and Hardware:

1. Top Track: Box channel, designed for support of panels of size and weight required.
  2. Hangers: Overhead mounted twin roller assembly, concealed within top track, with concealed clamps.
  3. Pulls Both Sides: YES.
  4. Floor guides.
- D. Interior Multi-Folding Door Fittings and Hardware:
1. Top Track: Box channel, design for support of panels of size and weight required.
  2. Hangers: Overhead mounted twin roller assembly, attached to pivots concealed in full width top and bottom rails.

### 2.03 FITTINGS AND HARDWARE

- A. Overhead Concealed Closers and Bottom Pivots for Glass Swinging Doors: Non-handed closer for both single and double-acting doors with mechanical backcheck, and meeting requirements of BHMA A156.4, Grade 1.
1. Application: Center hung, with swing as indicated on drawings.
  2. Hold Open: Fixed.
  3. Opening Force: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
  4. Door Weight: Maximum 200 lbs (91 kgs) for exterior doors, and 250 lbs (113 kgs) for interior doors, including hardware.
  5. Provide accessories as required for complete installation, including wall/floor stop.
- B. Exit Devices (Panic Hardware) for Glass Swinging Doors: Bolt action mechanism hidden within interior of door handle, and meeting requirements of BHMA A156.3, Grade 1, Type 2.
1. Latching bolt with manual and electric strikes.
  2. Glass Thickness: 1/2 to 3/4 inch (12.7 to 19 mm).
- C. Auxiliary Locks (Deadbolts) for Glass Swinging Doors:
1. Locking Functions: As defined in BHMA A156.5, and as follows:
- D. Mortise Locksets for Glass Swinging Doors:
1. Locking Functions: As defined in BHMA A156.13, and as follows:

### 2.04 BASIS OF DESIGN - FITTINGS AND HARDWARE

- A. Rail Style Fittings for Swinging Doors and Related Fixed Glazing:
1. Basis of Design: AVANTI Systems USA,
    - a. Full Length Top Rails: 3-5/16 inch (84 mm) high, tapered edge.
    - b. Full Length Bottom Rails: 2-5/16 inch (59 mm) high.
    - c. Aluminum Finish: Satin anodized.
    - d. Cladding Finish: Custom finish as selected by Architect.
- B. Head Rails for Interior Glass Doors and Transom Panels:
1. Basis of Design: AVANTI Systems USA.
- C. Hinge and Pivots for Interior Glass Doors:
1. Basis of Design: AVANTI Systems USA.

### 2.05 MATERIALS

- A. Glass: Flat glass meeting requirements of ASTM C1036, Type I - Transparent Flat Glass, Quality Q3, and Kind FT, fully tempered, in accordance with ASTM C1048, and as follows:
1. Thickness: 3/8 inch (9.5 mm).
  2. Color: Class 1, Clear.
  3. Temper glass materials horizontally; visible tong marks or tong mark distortions are not permitted.
- B. Aluminum Components: Comply with ASTM B221 (ASTM B221M), Alloy 6063, Temper T5.
- C. Stainless Steel Components: Comply with ASTM A666, Type 304.
- D. Sealant: One-part silicone sealant, comply with ASTM C920, clear.

## **2.06 ACCESSORIES**

- A. Exposed Fittings and Hardware: Stainless steel, brushed finish.
- B. Fixed Glazed Panel Fittings: Sufficient to structurally support glazing and doors under specified loads; including but not limited to cover caps for door hardware, glazing mullions, clamp fittings, and panel corner patches.
- C. Sidelight and Transom Fittings: No rails; provide extruded aluminum channels, for recessed installation in construction above and below glazing panels for frameless appearance.
- D. Sliding Door Fittings: Continuous rail at top and bottom of door:
  - 1. Rail Cross-Section: 1-3/4 inches (44.4 mm) wide by 4 inches (101 mm) high.
  - 2. Rail Profile: Tapered.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify that openings are acceptable.
- B. Do not begin installation until substrates and openings have been properly prepared.
- C. If substrate preparation is the responsibility of another installer, notify Architect of unsatisfactory preparation before proceeding.

### **3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Clean substrates thoroughly prior to installation.
- B. Prepare substrates using the methods recommended by the manufacturer for achieving the best result for the substrate under the project conditions.

### **3.03 INSTALLATION**

- A. Installation of cold-formed metal framing for openings as specified in Section 05 40 00.
- B. Installation of metal framing for openings as specified in Section 09 21 16.
- C. Install in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions.
- D. Tolerances:
  - 1. Horizontal Components and Sight Lines: Not more than 1/8 inch in 10 feet (3.2 mm in 3 m) variation from level, non-cumulative.
  - 2. Vertical Components and Sight Lines: Not more than 1/8 inch in 10 feet (3.2 mm in 3 m) variation from plumb, non-cumulative.
  - 3. Variation from Plane or Indicated Location: Not more than 1/16 inch (1.6 mm).
- E. Installation of door hardware not supplied by entrance/storefront manufacturer as specified in Section 08 71 00.

### **3.04 ADJUSTING**

- A. Adjust doors to operate correctly, without binding to frame, sill, or adjacent doors.
- B. Adjust door hardware for smooth operation.

### **3.05 CLEANING**

- A. Clean installed work to like-new condition.

### **3.06 PROTECTION**

- A. Protect installed products until Date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Touch-up, repair or replace damaged products before Date of Substantial Completion.

**END OF SECTION 08 41 26**

**SECTION 08 71 00  
DOOR HARDWARE**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Hardware for wood, aluminum, and hollow metal doors.
- B. Hardware for fire-rated doors.
- C. Electrically operated and controlled hardware.
- D. Lock cylinders for doors that hardware is specified in other sections.
- E. Thresholds.
- F. Weatherstripping and gasketing.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 08 11 13 - Hollow Metal Doors and Frames.
- B. Section 08 14 16 - Flush Wood Doors.
- C. Section 084126 - All-Glass Entrances and Storefronts.
- D. Section 10 14 00 - Signage: Additional signage requirements.
- E. Section 102310 - Glased Interior Wall and Door Assemblies
- F. Section 28 10 00 - Access Control: Electronic access control devices.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ADA Standards - 2010 ADA Standards for Accessible Design 2010.
- B. BHMA (CPD) - Certified Products Directory Current Edition.
- C. BHMA A156.1 - Standard for Butts and Hinges 2021.
- D. BHMA A156.2 - Bored and Preassembled Locks and Latches 2022.
- E. BHMA A156.3 - Exit Devices 2020.
- F. BHMA A156.4 - Door Controls - Closers 2019.
- G. BHMA A156.5 - Cylinders and Input Devices for Locks 2020.
- H. BHMA A156.6 - Standard for Architectural Door Trim 2021.
- I. BHMA A156.7 - Template Hinge Dimensions 2016.
- J. BHMA A156.8 - Door Controls - Overhead Stops and Holders 2021.
- K. BHMA A156.12 - Interconnected Locks 2022.
- L. BHMA A156.13 - Mortise Locks & Latches Series 1000 2022.
- M. BHMA A156.15 - Release Devices - Closer Holder, Electromagnetic and Electromechanical 2021.
- N. BHMA A156.16 - Auxiliary Hardware 2023.
- O. BHMA A156.17 - Self Closing Hinges & Pivots 2019.
- P. BHMA A156.18 - Materials and Finishes 2020.
- Q. BHMA A156.20 - Standard for Strap and Tee Hinges, and Hasps 2021.
- R. BHMA A156.21 - Thresholds 2019.
- S. BHMA A156.22 - Standard for Gasketing 2021.
- T. BHMA A156.26 - Standard for Continuous Hinges 2021.
- U. BHMA A156.28 - Standard for Recommended Practices for Mechanical Keying Systems 2023.
- V. BHMA A156.29 - American National Standard for Exit Locks, Exit Alarms, Alarms for Exit Devices 2017.

- W. BHMA A156.30 - High Security Cylinders 2020.
- X. BHMA A156.115 - Hardware Preparation in Steel Doors and Frames 2016.
- Y. BHMA A156.115W - Hardware Preparation in Wood Doors with Wood or Steel Frames 2006.
- Z. DHI (H&S) - Sequence and Format for the Hardware Schedule 2019.
- AA. DHI (KSN) - Keying Systems and Nomenclature 2019.
- BB. ICC A117.1 - Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities 2017.
- CC. ITS (DIR) - Directory of Listed Products Current Edition.
- DD. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- EE. NFPA 80 - Standard for Fire Doors and Other Opening Protectives 2022.
- FF. NFPA 101 - Life Safety Code Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- GG. NFPA 105 - Standard for Smoke Door Assemblies and Other Opening Protectives 2022.
- HH. NFPA 252 - Standard Methods of Fire Tests of Door Assemblies 2022.
- II. UL (DIR) - Online Certifications Directory Current Edition.
- JJ. UL 10C - Standard for Positive Pressure Fire Tests of Door Assemblies Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- KK. UL 437 - Standard for Key Locks Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- LL. UL 1784 - Standard for Air Leakage Tests of Door Assemblies Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

#### **1.04 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Coordinate the manufacture, fabrication, and installation of products that door hardware is installed on.
- B. Sequence installation to ensure utility connections are achieved in an orderly and expeditious manner.
- C. Preinstallation Meeting: Convene a preinstallation meeting one week prior to commencing work of this section; attendance is required by affected installers and the following:
  - 1. Architect.
  - 2. Installer's Architectural Hardware Consultant (AHC).
  - 3. Hardware Installer.
  - 4. Owner's Security Consultant.
  - 5. Property manager, or primary maintenance engineer..
- D. Furnish templates for door and frame preparation to manufacturers and fabricators of products requiring internal reinforcement for door hardware.
- E. Keying Requirements Meeting:
  - 1. Schedule meeting at project site prior to Contractor occupancy.
  - 2. Attendance Required:
    - a. Contractor.
    - b. Owner.
    - c. Architect.
    - d. Installer's Architectural Hardware Consultant (AHC).
    - e. Hardware Installer.
    - f. Owner's Security Consultant.
  - 3. Agenda:
    - a. Establish keying requirements.
    - b. Verify locksets and locking hardware are functionally correct for project requirements.
    - c. Verify that keying and programming complies with project requirements.
    - d. Establish keying submittal schedule and update requirements.

4. Incorporate "Keying Requirements Meeting" decisions into keying submittal upon review of door hardware keying system including, but not limited to, the following:
  - a. Access control requirements.
  - b. Key control system requirements.
  - c. Schematic diagram of preliminary key system.
  - d. Flow of traffic and extent of security required.
5. Record minutes and distribute copies within two days after meeting to participants, with two copies to Architect, Owner, participants, and those affected by decisions made.
6. Deliver established keying requirements to manufacturers.

#### **1.05 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Manufacturer's catalog literature for each type of hardware, marked to clearly show products to be furnished for this project, and includes construction details, material descriptions, finishes, and dimensions and profiles of individual components.
- C. Shop Drawings - Door Hardware Schedule: Submit detailed listing that includes each item of hardware to be installed on each door. Use door numbering scheme as included in Contract Documents.
  1. Prepared by or under supervision of Architectural Hardware Consultant (AHC).
  2. Comply with DHI (H&S) using door numbers and hardware set numbers as indicated in construction documents.
  3. List groups and suffixes in proper sequence.
  4. Provide complete description for each door listed.
  5. Provide manufacturer name, product names, and catalog numbers; include functions, types, styles, sizes and finishes of each item.
  6. Include account of abbreviations and symbols used in schedule.
- D. Shop Drawings - Electrified Door Hardware: Submit diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring for electrified door hardware that include details of interface with building safety and security systems. Provide elevations and diagrams for each electrified door opening as follows:
  1. Prepared by or under supervision of Architectural Hardware Consultant (AHC) and Electrified Hardware Consultant (EHC).
  2. Elevations: Submit front and back elevations of each door opening showing electrified devices with connections installed and an operations narrative describing how opening operates from either side at any given time.
  3. Diagrams: Submit point-to-point wiring diagram that shows each device in door opening system with related colored wire connections to each device.
- E. Samples for Verification:
  1. Submit minimum size of 2 by 4 inch (51 by 102 mm) for sheet samples, and minimum length of 4 inch (102 mm) for other products.
  2. Submit one (1) sample of hinge, latchset, lockset, and closer illustrating style, color, and finish.
  3. Return full-size samples to Contractor.
  4. Submit product description with samples.
- F. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate special procedures and perimeter conditions requiring special attention.
- G. Maintenance Data: Include data on operating hardware, lubrication requirements, and inspection procedures related to preventative maintenance.
- H. Keying Schedule:
  1. Submit three (3) copies of Keying Schedule in compliance with requirements established during Keying Requirements Meeting unless otherwise indicated.
- I. Manufacturer's qualification statement.
- J. Installer's qualification statement.

- K. Specimen warranty.
- L. Project Record Documents: Record actual locations of concealed equipment, services, and conduit.
- M. Maintenance Materials and Tools: Furnish the following for Owner's use in maintenance of project.
  - 1. See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements, for additional provisions.
  - 2. Lock Cylinders: Ten for each master keyed group.
  - 3. Tools: One set of each special wrench or tool applicable for each different or special hardware component, whether supplied by hardware component manufacturer or not.

#### **1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Standards for Fire-Rated Doors: Maintain one copy of each referenced standard on site, for use by Architect and Contractor.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing products specified in this section with minimum three years of documented experience.
- C. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing work of the type specified for commercial door hardware with at least three years of documented experience.
- D. Supplier Qualifications: Company with certified Architectural Hardware Consultant (AHC) and Electrified Hardware Consultant (EHC) to assist in work of this section.
- E. Certified Products: Where specified, products must maintain a current listing in the Builders Hardware Manufacturers Association (BHMA) Certified Products Directory (CPD).
- F. Door Hardware Supplier Qualifications: Experienced commercial door hardware distributors with a minimum 5 years documented experience supplying both mechanical and electromechanical hardware installations comparable in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project. Supplier recognized as a factory direct distributor by the manufacturers of the primary materials with a warehousing facility in Project's vicinity. Supplier to have on staff a certified Architectural Hardware Consultant (AHC) available during the course of the Work to consult with Contractor, Architect, and Owner concerning both standard and electromechanical door hardware and keying.
- G. Integrated Wiegand, Wireless, and IP-Enabled Access Control Products Supplier Qualifications: Integrated access control products and accessories are required to be supplied and installed through current members of the ASSA ABLOY "Authorized Channel Partner" (ACP) and "Certified Integrator" (CI) programs. Suppliers are to be factory trained, certified prior to project bid, and a direct purchaser of the specified product. Installers are to be factory trained, certified prior to project bid, and are responsible for commissioning, servicing, and warranting the installed equipment specified for the project.
- H. Automatic Operator Supplier Qualifications: Power operator products and accessories are required to be supplied and installed through the Norton Preferred Installer (NPI) program. Suppliers are to be factory trained, certified, and a direct purchaser of the specified power operators and be responsible for the installation and maintenance of the units and accessories indicated for the Project.
- I. Source Limitations: Obtain each type and variety of door hardware specified in this section from a single source unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Electrified modifications or enhancements made to a source manufacturer's product line by a secondary or third party source will not be accepted.
  - 2. Provide electromechanical door hardware from the same manufacturer as mechanical door hardware, unless otherwise indicated.
- J. Each unit to bear third party permanent label demonstrating compliance with the referenced standards.

#### **1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Package hardware items individually; label and identify each package with door opening code to match door hardware schedule.

- B. Inventory door hardware on receipt and provide secure lock-up and shelving for door hardware delivered to Project site. Do not store electronic access control hardware, software or accessories at Project site without prior authorization.
- C. Tag each item or package separately with identification related to the final Door Hardware Schedule, and include basic installation instructions with each item or package.
- D. Deliver, as applicable, permanent keys, cylinders, cores, access control credentials, software and related accessories directly to Owner via registered mail or overnight package service. Instructions for delivery to the Owner shall be established at the "Keying Conference".

#### **1.08 COORDINATION**

- A. Templates: Obtain and distribute to the parties involved templates for doors, frames, and other work specified to be factory prepared for installing standard and electrified hardware. Check Shop Drawings of other work to confirm that adequate provisions are made for locating and installing hardware to comply with indicated requirements.
- B. Door Hardware and Electrical Connections: Coordinate the layout and installation of scheduled electrified door hardware and related access control equipment with required connections to source power junction boxes, low voltage power supplies, detection and monitoring hardware, and fire and detection alarm systems.
- C. Door and Frame Preparation: Doors and corresponding frames are to be prepared, reinforced and pre-wired (if applicable) to receive the installation of the specified electrified, monitoring, signaling and access control system hardware without additional in-field modifications.

#### **1.09 WARRANTY**

- A. See Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals for additional warranty requirements.
- B. Warranty Period: Written warranty, executed by manufacturer(s), agreeing to repair or replace components of standard and electrified door hardware that fails in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period after final acceptance by the Owner. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Structural failures including excessive deflection, cracking, or breakage.
  - 2. Faulty operation of the hardware.
  - 3. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.
  - 4. Electrical component defects and failures within the systems operation.
- C. Manufacturer's Warranty: Provide warranty against defects in material and workmanship for period indicated. Complete forms in Owner's name and register with manufacturer.
  - 1. Closers: Five years, minimum.
  - 2. Exit Devices: Three years, minimum.
  - 3. Locksets and Cylinders: Three years, minimum.
  - 4. Other Hardware: Two years, minimum.
- D. Special Warranty Periods:
  - 1. Five years for exit hardware.
  - 2. Twenty five years for manual overhead door closer bodies.
  - 3. Five years for motorized electric latch retraction exit devices.
  - 4. Two years for electromechanical door hardware, unless noted otherwise.
- E. Maintenance Tools and Instructions: Furnish a complete set of specialized tools and maintenance instructions as needed for Owner's continued adjustment, maintenance, and removal and replacement of door hardware.

### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 DESIGN AND PERFORMANCE CRITERIA**

- A. Provide specified door hardware as required to make doors fully functional, compliant with applicable codes, and secure to extent indicated.
- B. Provide individual items of single type, of same model, and by same manufacturer.
- C. Provide door hardware products that comply with the following requirements:



1. Applicable provisions of federal, state, and local codes.
  2. Accessibility: ADA Standards and ICC A117.1.
  3. Applicable provisions of NFPA 101.
  4. Fire-Rated Doors: NFPA 80, listed and labeled by qualified testing agency for fire protection ratings indicated, based on testing at positive pressure in accordance with NFPA 252 or UL 10C.
  5. Hardware on Fire-Rated Doors: Listed and classified by UL (DIR), ITS (DIR), or testing firm acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as suitable for application indicated.
  6. Hardware for Smoke and Draft Control Doors (Indicated as "S" on Drawings): Provide door hardware that complies with local codes, and requirements of assemblies tested in accordance with UL 1784.
    - a. Air Leakage Rate: Tested in accordance with UL 1784, with air leakage rate not to exceed 3.0 cfm/sf (0.01524 cu m/sec/sq m) of door opening at 0.10 inch (24.9 Pa) of water for both ambient and elevated temperature tests.
  7. Listed and certified compliant with specified standards by BHMA (CPD).
  8. Auxiliary Hardware: BHMA A156.16.
  9. Straps and Tee Hinges: BHMA A156.20.
  10. Hardware Preparation for Steel Doors and Steel Frames: BHMA A156.115.
  11. Hardware Preparation for Wood Doors with Wood or Steel Frames: BHMA A156.115W.
  12. Products Requiring Electrical Connection: Listed and classified by UL (DIR) as suitable for the purpose specified.
- D. Electrically Operated and/or Controlled Hardware: Provide necessary power supplies, power transfer hinges, relays, and interfaces as required for proper operation; provide wiring between hardware and control components and to building power connection in compliance with NFPA 70.
1. See Section 28 10 00 for additional access control system requirements.
- E. Lock Function: Provide lock and latch function numbers and descriptions of manufacturer's series. See Door Hardware Schedule.
- F. Fasteners:
1. Provide fasteners of proper type, size, quantity, and finish that comply with commercially recognized standards for proposed applications.
    - a. Aluminum fasteners are not permitted.
    - b. Provide phillips flat-head screws with heads finished to match door surface hardware unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Provide machine screws for attachment to reinforced hollow metal and aluminum frames.
    - a. Self-drilling (Tek) type screws are not permitted.
  3. Provide stainless steel machine screws and lead expansion shields for concrete and masonry substrates.
  4. Provide wall grip inserts for hollow wall construction.
  5. Provide spacers or sex bolts with sleeves for through bolting of hollow metal doors and frames.
  6. Fire-Rated Applications: Comply with NFPA 80.
    - a. Provide wood or machine screws for hinges mortised to doors or frames, strike plates to frames, and closers to doors and frames.
    - b. Provide steel through bolts for attachment of surface mounted closers, hinges, or exit devices to door panels unless proper door blocking is provided.

## 2.02 HINGES

- A. Manufacturers:
1. McKinney; an Assa Abloy Group company: [www.assaabloydss.com/#sle](http://www.assaabloydss.com/#sle).
  2. Hager Companies: [www.hagerco.com/#sle](http://www.hagerco.com/#sle).
  3. Ives (IV).
  4. dormakaba Best - CB Series
- B. Hinges: Comply with BHMA A156.1, Grade 1.

1. Self Closing Hinges: Comply with BHMA A156.17.
  2. Butt Hinges: Comply with BHMA A156.1 and BHMA A156.7 for templated hinges.
    - a. Provide hinge width required to clear surrounding trim.
  3. Continuous Hinges: Comply with BHMA A156.26.
  4. Provide hinges on every swinging door.
  5. Provide five-knuckle full mortise butt hinges unless otherwise indicated.
  6. Provide power transfer hinges where electrified hardware is mounted in door leaf.
  7. Provide following quantity of butt hinges for each door:
    - a. Doors From 60 inches (1.5 m) High up to 90 inches (2.3 m) High: Three hinges.
    - b. Doors 90 inches (2.3 m) High up to 120 inches (3 m) High: Four hinges.
    - c. Doors over 120 inches (3 m) High: One additional hinge per each additional 30 inches (762 mm) in height.
    - d. Dutch Doors: Two hinges each leaf.
- C. Concealed Hinges: Hinges completely mortised in door and jamb such that hinge is concealed when door is closed.
1. Hinge Size: As recommended by manufacturer for door weight and size.
  2. Quantity: Same as those of butt hinges for similarly sized doors.
  3. Knuckles: Three.
  4. Materials: Manufacturer's standard.

### 2.03 PIVOTS

- A. Manufacturers:
1. Basis of Design: AVANTI Systems USA.
  2. McKinney or Rixson; an Assa Abloy Group company: [www.assaabloydss.com/#sle](http://www.assaabloydss.com/#sle).
  3. DORMA USA, Inc; LM Series: [www.dorma.com/#sle](http://www.dorma.com/#sle).
  4. Ives, an Allegion brand: [www.allegion.com/us/#sle](http://www.allegion.com/us/#sle).
  5. Stanley, dormakaba Group: [www.stanleyhardwarefordoors.com/#sle](http://www.stanleyhardwarefordoors.com/#sle).
- B. Center-Hung and Offset Pivots: Comply with BHMA A156.4.
- C. Self-Closing Pivots: Comply with BHMA A156.17.
- D. Door Weight: Medium; standard openings with up to 650 lbs door weight.

### 2.04 FLOOR CLOSERS

- A. Manufacturers:
1. Basis of Design: Door manufacturer's recommended and standard..
  2. Rixson; an Assa Abloy Group company: [www.assaabloydss.com/#sle](http://www.assaabloydss.com/#sle).
  3. DORMA USA, Inc: [www.dorma.com/#sle](http://www.dorma.com/#sle).
  4. Ives.
- B. Floor Closers: Comply with BHMA A156.4, Grade 1.
- C. Type: Heavy-duty, with 4 inch (102 mm) nominal depth floor preparation, and having 450 pounds (204 kg) carrying weight.

### 2.05 FLUSH BOLTS

- A. Flush Bolts: Comply with BHMA A156.16, Grade 1.
1. Flush Bolt Throw: 3/4 inch (19 mm), minimum.
  2. Provides extension bolts in leading edge of door, one bolt into floor, one bolt into top of frame.
    - a. Pairs of Swing Doors: At inactive leaves, provide flush bolts of type as required to comply with code.
  3. Provide dustproof floor strike for bolt into floor, except at metal thresholds.
  4. Manual Flush Bolts: Provide lever extensions for top bolt at over-sized doors.
  5. Self-Latching Flush Bolts: Automatically latch upon closing of door; manually retracted; located on inactive leaf of pair of doors.
  6. Automatic Flush Bolts: Automatically latch upon closing of door; automatic retraction of bolts when active leaf is opened; located on inactive leaf of pair of doors.

## 2.06 EXIT DEVICES

- A. Exit Devices: Comply with BHMA A156.3, Grade 1.
  - 1. Lever design to match lockset trim.
  - 2. Provide cylinder with cylinder dogging or locking trim.
  - 3. Provide exit devices properly sized for door width and height.
  - 4. Provide strike as recommended by manufacturer for application indicated.
  - 5. Provide UL (DIR) listed exit device assemblies for fire-rated doors and panic device assemblies for non-fire-rated doors.

## 2.07 EXIT ALARMS

- A. Exit Alarms: Comply with BHMA A156.29.
  - 1. Include exit device integrated type(s), as indicated in Door Hardware Schedule.
  - 2. Arming and Disarming: By inside control key, allowing authorized entry or exit by means of an on-and-off key switch.
    - a. Key Cylinder and Keys: See Door Hardware Schedule.
  - 3. Alarm: Manufacturer's standard piezo horn.
    - a. Low battery alert on applicable units.
  - 4. Housing: Manufacturer's standard, weatherized for exterior or high-humidity environment applications.
  - 5. Cover Plate Color: As indicated on drawings.
  - 6. Mounting: as seen on drawings, and required per code..
  - 7. Accessories: Provide items in locations and quantities indicated.

## 2.08 LOCK CYLINDERS

- A. Lock Cylinders: Provide key access on outside of each lock, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Provide small format interchangeable core (SFIC) type cylinders, Grade 1, with six-pin core in compliance with BHMA A156.5 at locations indicated.
  - 2. Provide high security mechanical type cylinders, Grade 1, with six-pin core in compliance with BHMA A156.30 or UL 437 at locations indicated.
  - 3. Provide cylinders from same manufacturer as locking device.
  - 4. Provide cams and/or tailpieces as required for locking devices.
  - 5. Within specific Door Sections, when provisions for lock cylinder are being referenced to this Section, provide specified lock cylinder and keyed to building keying system, unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.09 CYLINDRICAL LOCKS

- A. Cylindrical Locks (Bored): Comply with BHMA A156.2, Grade 1, 4000 Series.
  - 1. Bored Hole: 2-1/8 inch (54 mm) diameter.
  - 2. Latchbolt Throw: 1/2 inch (12.7 mm), minimum.
  - 3. Backset: 2-3/4 inch (70 mm) unless otherwise indicated.
  - 4. Strikes: Provide manufacturer's standard strike for each latchset or lockset with strike box and curved lip extending to protect frame in compliance with indicated requirements.
    - a. Finish: To match lock or latch.
    - b. Flat-Lip Strikes: Provide for locks with three piece antifriction latchbolts as recommended by manufacturer.
    - c. Extra-Long-Lip Strikes: Provide for locks used on frames with applied wood casing trim.
    - d. Aluminum-Frame Strike Box: Provide strike box fabricated for use with aluminum framing by framing manufacturer.
    - e. Rabbet Front and Strike: Provide on locksets for use with rabbeted meeting rails.
  - 5. Provide a lock for each door, unless otherwise indicated that lock is not required.
  - 6. Provide an office lockset for swinging door where hardware set is not indicated.
  - 7. Trim: Provide lever handle or pull trim on outside of each lock, unless otherwise indicated.

## **2.10 MORTISE LOCKS**

- A. Mortise Locks: Comply with BHMA A156.13, Grade 1, Security, 1000 Series.
1. Latchbolt Throw: 3/4 inch (19 mm), minimum.
  2. Deadbolt Throw: 1 inch (25.4 mm), minimum.
  3. Backset: 2-3/4 inch (70 mm) unless otherwise indicated.
  4. Strikes: Provide manufacturer's standard strike for each latchset or lockset with strike box and curved lip extending to protect frame in compliance with indicated requirements.
    - a. Flat-Lip Strikes: Provide for locks with three piece antifriction latchbolts as recommended by manufacturer.
    - b. Extra-Long-Lip Strikes: Provide for locks used on frames with applied wood casing trim.
    - c. Rabbet Front and Strike: Provide on locksets for use with rabbeted meeting rails.
    - d. Finish: To match lock or latch.

## **2.11 INTERCONNECTED LOCKS**

- A. Interconnected Locks: Comply with BHMA A156.12, Grade 1, 5000 Series.

## **2.12 DOOR PULLS AND PUSH PLATES**

- A. Door Pulls and Push Plates: Comply with BHMA A156.6.
1. Pull Type: Straight, unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Push Plate Type: Flat, with square corners, unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. Edges: Beveled, unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Material: Aluminum, unless otherwise indicated.
  4. Provide door pulls and push plates on doors without a lockset, latchset, exit device, or auxiliary lock unless otherwise indicated.
  5. On solid doors, provide matching door pull and push plate on opposite faces.
  6. On glazed storefront doors, provide matching door pulls/push plates on both faces unless otherwise indicated.

## **2.13 DOOR PULLS AND PUSH BARS**

- A. Door Pulls and Push Bars: Comply with BHMA A156.6.
1. Bar Type: Bar set, unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Material: Aluminum, unless otherwise indicated.

## **2.14 COORDINATORS**

- A. Coordinators: Provide on doors having closers and self-latching or automatic flush bolts to ensure that inactive door leaf closes before active door leaf.
1. Type: Bar, unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Material: Aluminum, unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Ensure that coordination of other door hardware affected by placement of coordinators and carry bar is applied properly for completely operable installation.

## **2.15 CARRY BAR**

- A. Carry Bar: Provides a push on active door when inactive door is opened first to allow coordinator to be engaged for proper door leaf closing sequence.
1. Material: Brass with nylon rollers, unless otherwise indicated.

## **2.16 CLOSERS**

- A. Closers: Comply with BHMA A156.4, Grade 1.
1. Type: Surface mounted to door.
  2. Provide door closer on each exterior door.
  3. Provide door closer on each fire-rated and smoke-rated door.
    - a. Spring hinges are not an acceptable self-closing device, unless otherwise indicated.
  4. Where an overlapping astragal is included on pairs of swinging doors, provide coordinator to ensure door leaves close in proper order.
  5. At corridor entry doors, mount closer on room side of door.

6. At outswinging exterior doors, mount closer on interior side of door.

### **2.17 OVERHEAD STOPS AND HOLDERS**

- A. Overhead Stops and Holders (Door Checks): Comply with BHMA A156.8, Grade 1.
  1. Provide stop for every swinging door, unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Stop is not required if positive stop feature is specified for door closer; positive stop feature of door closer is not an acceptable substitute for a stop, unless otherwise indicated.

### **2.18 KICK PLATES**

- A. Kick Plates: Provide along bottom edge of push side of every door with closer, except aluminum storefront and glass entry doors, unless otherwise indicated.
  1. Size: 8 inch (203 mm) high by 2 inch (51 mm) less door width (LDW) on push side of door.

### **2.19 MOP PLATES**

- A. Mop Plates: Provide along bottom edge of push side of doors to provide protection from cleaning liquids and equipment damage to door surface.
  1. Size: 6 inch (152 mm) high by 1-1/2 inch (38 mm) less door width (LDW) on pull side and 2 inch (51 mm) LDW on push side of door.

### **2.20 DOOR HOLDERS**

- A. Door Holders: Comply with BHMA A156.16, Grade 1.
  1. Provide surface mounted door holders when wall or floor stop is not applicable and hold-open device is mounted on door.
  2. Type: Lever, or kick down stop, with rubber bumper at bottom end.
  3. Material: Aluminum.

### **2.21 ELECTROMAGNETIC DOOR HOLDERS**

- A. Electromagnetic Door Holders: Comply with BHMA A156.15.
  1. Type: Wall mounted, single unit, standard duty, with strike plate attached to door.
  2. Holding Force, Standard Duty: 40 lbs-force (177 N), minimum.
  3. Voltage: 12 VDC, and provide power supplies by same manufacturer as holders.
  4. Provide interface with fire detectors and fire-alarm system for fire-rated door assemblies.

### **2.22 FLOOR STOPS**

- A. Floor Stops: Comply with BHMA A156.16, Grade 1 and Resilient Material Retention Test as described in this standard.
  1. Provide floor stops when wall surface is not available; be cautious not to create a tripping hazard.
  2. Type: Manual hold-open, with pencil floor stop.
  3. Material: Aluminum housing with rubber insert.

### **2.23 WALL STOPS**

- A. Wall Stops: Comply with BHMA A156.16, Grade 1 and Resilient Material Retention Test as described in this standard.
  1. Provide wall stops to prevent damage to wall surface upon opening door.
  2. Type: Bumper, concave, wall stop.
  3. Material: Aluminum housing with rubber insert.

### **2.24 ASTRAGALS**

- A. Astragals: Comply with BHMA A156.22.
  1. Provide surface mounted astragal to cover or fill space for full door height between pair of doors or door and adjacent jamb.
  2. Type: Split, two parts, and with sealing gasket.
  3. Material: Aluminum, with neoprene weatherstripping.
  4. Provide non-corroding fasteners at exterior locations.

## **2.25 THRESHOLDS**

- A. Thresholds: Comply with BHMA A156.21.
  - 1. Provide threshold at interior doors for transition between two different floor types, and over building expansion joints, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Provide threshold at each exterior door, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Provide threshold with Sound Transmission Class (STC) of 25-30 at locations indicated.
  - 4. Type: Flat surface.
  - 5. Material: Aluminum.
  - 6. Threshold Surface: Fluted horizontal grooves across full width.
  - 7. Field cut threshold to profile of frame and width of door sill for tight fit.
  - 8. Provide non-corroding fasteners at exterior locations.

## **2.26 WEATHERSTRIPPING AND GASKETING**

- A. Weatherstripping and Gasketing: Comply with BHMA A156.22.
  - 1. Head and Jamb Type: Adjustable.
  - 2. Door Sweep Type: Encased in retainer.
  - 3. Material: Aluminum, with brush weatherstripping.
  - 4. Provide gasketing for smoke and draft control doors (Indicated as "S" on Drawings) that complies with local codes, requirements of assemblies tested in accordance with UL 1784.
  - 5. Provide frame-applied intumescent gasketing on wood doors that are labeled as smoke and draft control doors (Indicated as "S" on Drawings), unless otherwise indicated.
  - 6. See Section 08 1416 when wood door to frame sealing system is applied by door manufacturer.
  - 7. Provide weatherstripping on each exterior door at head, jambs, and meeting stiles of door pairs, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 8. Provide door bottom sweep on each exterior door, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 9. Provide sound-rated gasketing and automatic door bottom on doors indicated as "Sound-Rated", "Acoustical", or with "Sound Transmission Class (STC) rating"; fabricate as continuous gasketing, do not cut or notch gasketing material.
  - 10. Provide applicable gasketing on doors indicated as "Lightproof."

## **2.27 MAGNETIC CATCH**

- A. Magnetic Catch: Provide on doors that are not frequently used and need to latch, and on doors that must stay in closed position within the frame.
  - 1. Location: Mount magnetic catch at top of door jamb with strike plate fastened to door.
  - 2. Material: Brass.

## **2.28 SIGNAGE**

- A. Signage (Room Name Plates and Numbers): Provide on doors for individuals to easily identify room names and/or numbers.
  - 1. Text Required: "RESTROOM" with symbols and braille text.
  - 2. Material: In plastic or metal with paint used to create necessary text, adhered to door.

## **2.29 SILENCERS**

- A. Silencers: Provide at equal locations on door frame to mute sound of door's impact upon closing.
  - 1. Single Door: Provide three on strike jamb of frame.
  - 2. Pair of Doors: Provide two on head of frame, one for each door at latch side.
  - 3. Material: Rubber, gray color.

## **2.30 KEY CONTROL SYSTEMS**

- A. Key Control Systems: Comply with guidelines of BHMA A156.28.
  - 1. Provide keying information in compliance with DHI (KSN) standards.
  - 2. Keying: Grand master keyed.
  - 3. Supply keys in following quantities:
    - a. 1 each Grand Master keys.

## 2.31 FINISHES

- A. Finishes: Provide door hardware of same finish, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Primary Finish: 625; bright chromium plated over nickel, with brass or bronze base material (former US equivalent US26); BHMA A156.18.
  - 2. Secondary Finish: 626; satin chromium plated over nickel, with brass or bronze base material (former US equivalent US26D); BHMA A156.18.
    - a. Use secondary finish in kitchens, bathrooms, and other spaces containing chrome or stainless steel finished appliances, fittings, and equipment; provide primary finish on one side of door and secondary finish on other side if necessary.
  - 3. Exceptions:
    - a. Where base material metal is specified to be different, provide finish that is an equivalent appearance in accordance with BHMA A156.18.
    - b. Hinges for Fire-Rated Doors: Steel base material with painted finish, in compliance with NFPA 80.
    - c. Door Closer Covers and Arms: Color as selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard colors unless otherwise indicated.
    - d. Aluminum Surface Trim and Gasket Housings: Anodized to match door panel finish, not other hardware, unless otherwise indicated.
    - e. Hardware for Aluminum Entrance Doors: Finished to match door panel finish, except at hand contact surfaces provide stainless steel with satin finish, unless otherwise indicated.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that doors and frames are ready to receive this work; labeled, fire-rated doors and frames are properly installed, and dimensions are as indicated on shop drawings.

### 3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Install hardware in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and applicable codes.
- B. Install hardware on fire-rated doors and frames in accordance with applicable codes and NFPA 80.
- C. Install hardware for smoke and draft control doors in accordance with NFPA 105.
- D. Use templates provided by hardware item manufacturer.
- E. Do not install surface mounted items until application of finishes to substrate are fully completed.
- F. Door Hardware Mounting Heights: Distance from finished floor to center line of hardware item. As indicated in following list; unless noted otherwise in Door Hardware Schedule or on drawings.
- G. Set exterior door thresholds with full-width bead of elastomeric sealant at each point of contact with floor providing a continuous weather seal; anchor thresholds with stainless steel countersunk screws.

### 3.03 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform field inspection and testing under provisions of Section 01 40 00 - Quality Requirements.

### 3.04 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust work under provisions of Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements.
- B. Adjust hardware for smooth operation.
- C. Adjust gasketing for complete, continuous seal; replace if unable to make complete seal.

### 3.05 CLEANING

- A. Clean finished hardware in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions after final adjustments have been made.

- B. Clean adjacent surfaces soiled by hardware installation.
- C. Replace items that cannot be cleaned to manufacturer's level of finish quality at no additional cost.

**3.06 PROTECTION**

- A. Protect finished Work under provisions of Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements.
- B. Do not permit adjacent work to damage hardware or finish.

**END OF SECTION 08 71 00**



This page intentionally left blank

**SECTION 08 80 00  
GLAZING**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Insulating glass units.
- B. Glazing units.
  - 1. Glass and glazing for interior doors and borrowed lites.
  - 2. Glass and glazing for storefront systems.
  - 3. Glass, rated and non-rated.
  - 4. Glazing accessories.
- C. Glazing compounds.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ASTM C864 - Standard Specification for Dense Elastomeric Compression Seal Gaskets, Setting Blocks, and Spacers 2005 (Reapproved 2019).
- B. ASTM C920 - Standard Specification for Elastomeric Joint Sealants 2018.
- C. ASTM C1193 - Standard Guide for Use of Joint Sealants 2016 (Reapproved 2023).
- D. ASTM C1376 - Standard Specification for Pyrolytic and Vacuum Deposition Coatings on Flat Glass 2021a.
- E. ASTM E1300 - Standard Practice for Determining Load Resistance of Glass in Buildings 2016.
- F. ASTM E2190 - Standard Specification for Insulating Glass Unit Performance and Evaluation 2019.
- G. GANA (GM) - GANA Glazing Manual 2022.
- H. GANA (SM) - GANA Sealant Manual 2008.
- I. GANA (LGRM) - Laminated Glazing Reference Manual 2019.
- J. IGMA TM-3000 - North American Glazing Guidelines for Sealed Insulating Glass Units for Commercial & Residential Use 1990 (2016).
- K. NFRC 100 - Procedure for Determining Fenestration Product U-factors 2023.
- L. NFRC 200 - Procedure for Determining Fenestration Product Solar Heat Gain Coefficient and Visible Transmittance at Normal Incidence 2023.
- M. NFRC 300 - Test Method for Determining the Solar Optical Properties of Glazing Materials and Systems 2023.

**1.04 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Preinstallation Meeting: Convene a preinstallation meeting one week before starting work of this section; require attendance by each of the affected installers.
  - 1. Conduct meeting at project site in conjunction with preinstallation meetings for fenestration framing systems.
  - 2. Agenda Items:
    - a. Coordinate schedules and material deliveries.

**1.05 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data on Insulating Glass Unit, Glazing Unit, Plastic Sheet Glazing Unit, and Plastic Film Glazing Types: Provide structural, physical and environmental characteristics, size limitations, special handling and installation requirements.
- C. Product Data on Glazing Compounds and Accessories: Provide chemical, functional, and environmental characteristics, limitations, special application requirements, and identify

available colors.

- D. Samples: Submit two samples 12 by 12 inch (305 by 305 mm) in size of glass units.
- E. Samples: Submit 12 inch (305 mm) long bead of glazing sealant, color as selected.
- F. Certificate: Certify that products of this section meet or exceed specified requirements.
- G. Manufacturer's qualification statement.
- H. Installer's qualification statement.
- I. Warranty Documentation: Submit manufacturer warranty and ensure that forms have been completed in Owner's name and registered with manufacturer.
- J. Maintenance Materials: Furnish the following for Owner's use in maintenance of project.
  - 1. See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements, for additional provisions.
  - 2. Extra Insulating Glass Units: One of each glass size and each glass type.

#### **1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Perform Work in accordance with GANA (GM), GANA (SM), GANA (LGRM), and IGMA TM-3000 for glazing installation methods. Maintain one copy on site.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section with minimum three years of documented experience.
  - 1. Provide certified glass products through ANSI accredited certifications that include plant audits and independent laboratory performance testing.
- C. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing work of the type specified and with at least three years documented experience.
  - 1. Provide company, field supervisors, and installers that hold active ANSI accredited certifications in appropriate categories for work specified.
    - a. North American Contractor Certification (NACC) for glazing contractors.
- D. Testing Agency Qualifications: Independent firm specializing in performing testing and inspections of the type specified in this section.

#### **1.07 MOCK-UPS**

- A. See Section 01 40 00 - Quality Requirements for additional requirements.
- B. Provide on-site glazing mock-up with the specified glazing components.
- C. Locate where directed.
- D. Mock-ups may remain as part of the Work.

#### **1.08 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Do not install glazing when ambient temperature is less than 40 degrees F (4 degrees C).
- B. Maintain minimum ambient temperature before, during and 24 hours after installation of glazing compounds.
- C. Install glass only on when glazing frames are free of moisture, including condensation, frost, and ice

#### **1.09 WARRANTY**

- A. See Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals for additional warranty requirements.
- B. Insulating Glass Units: Provide a ten (10) year manufacturer warranty to include coverage for seal failure, interpane dusting or misting, including providing products to replace failed units.
- C. Laminated Glass: Provide a ten (10) year manufacturer warranty to include coverage for delamination, including providing products to replace failed units.
- D. Coated Glazing: Provide a ten (10) year manufacturer warranty to include coverage for breakage, coating failure, abrasion resistance, including providing products to replace failed units.
- E. Heat Soaked Tempered Glass: Provide a ten (10) year manufacturer warranty to include coverage for spontaneous breakage of fully tempered glass caused by nickel sulfide (NiS)

inclusions.

## **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. See Materials and Finish List, and Drawings.
- B. Glass Fabricators:
  - 1. GGI - General Glass International: [www.generalglass.com/#sle](http://www.generalglass.com/#sle).
  - 2. Viracon, Inc: [www.viracon.com/#sle](http://www.viracon.com/#sle).
  - 3. Pilkington North America..
  - 4. Guardian Glass.
  - 5. Vitro Architectural Glass.

### **2.02 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS - EXTERIOR GLAZING ASSEMBLIES**

- A. Provide type and thickness of exterior glazing assemblies to support assembly dead loads, and to withstand live loads caused by positive and negative wind pressure acting normal to plane of glass.
  - 1. Comply with ASTM E1300 for design load resistance of glass type, thickness, dimensions, and maximum lateral deflection of supported glass.
  - 2. Provide glass edge support system sufficiently stiff to limit the lateral deflection of supported glass edges to less than 1/175 of their lengths under specified design load.
  - 3. Glass thicknesses listed are minimum.
- B. Weather-Resistive Barrier Seals: Provide completed assemblies that maintain continuity of building enclosure water-resistive barrier, vapor retarder, and/or air barrier.
  - 1. In conjunction with weather barrier related materials described in other sections, as follows:
- C. Thermal and Optical Performance: Provide exterior glazing products with performance properties as indicated. Performance properties are in accordance with manufacturer's published data as determined with the following procedures and/or test methods:
  - 1. Center of Glass U-Value: Comply with NFRC 100 using Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory (LBNL) WINDOW 6.3 computer program.
  - 2. Center of Glass Solar Heat Gain Coefficient (SHGC): Comply with NFRC 200 using Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory (LBNL) WINDOW 6.3 computer program.
  - 3. Solar Optical Properties: Comply with NFRC 300 test method.

### **2.03 GLASS MATERIALS**

### **2.04 INSULATING GLASS UNITS**

- A. Manufacturers: See Materials and Finish List on Drawings.
  - 1. Pilkington North America Inc; \_\_\_\_\_: [www.pilkington.com/na/#sle](http://www.pilkington.com/na/#sle).Pilkington North America Inc; \_\_\_\_\_: [www.pilkington.com/na/#sle](http://www.pilkington.com/na/#sle).
  - 2. Viracon, Apogee Enterprises, Inc; \_\_\_\_\_: [www.viracon.com/#sle](http://www.viracon.com/#sle).
  - 3. Vitro Architectural Glass (formerly PPG Glass); \_\_\_\_\_: [www.vitroglazings.com/#sle](http://www.vitroglazings.com/#sle).
- B. Insulating Glass Units: Types as indicated.
  - 1. Durability: Certified by an independent testing agency to comply with ASTM E2190.
  - 2. Coated Glass: Comply with requirements of ASTM C1376 for pyrolytic (hard-coat) or magnetic sputter vapor deposition (soft-coat) type coatings on flat glass; coated vision glass, Kind CV; coated overhead glass, Kind CO; or coated spandrel glass, Kind CS.
  - 3. Spacer Color: Black.
  - 4. Edge Seal:
    - a. Color: Black.
  - 5. Purge interpane space with dry air, hermetically sealed.

### **2.05 GLASS COATINGS**

- A. Solar Control Coating: Two-component, metal-oxide nano-particles with 5 percent solids content, minimum.

1. Application: Locations as indicated on drawings.
  2. Color: Clear, fade resistant.
  3. Dry Film Thickness: 10 microns (0.01 mm), bubble and crack resistant.
  4. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient: 0.53.
  5. Shading Coefficient: 0.72.
- B. Protective Glass Coatings: Transparent coatings used to seal and protect surface of glass subject to wear, soiling, and degradation from environmental exposure.
1. Application: Locations as indicated on drawings.

## 2.06 GLAZING COMPOUNDS

- A. Type GC-1 - Glazing Putty: Polymer modified latex recommended by manufacturer for outdoor use, knife grade consistency; gray color.
- B. Type GC-2 - Butyl Sealant: Single component; ASTM C920 Grade NS, Class 12-1/2, Uses M and A, Shore A hardness of 10 to 20; black color.
- C. Type GC-4 - Polyurethane Sealant: Single component, chemical curing, nonstaining, nonbleeding; ASTM C920 Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Uses M, A, and G; with cured Shore A hardness range of 20 to 35; color as selected.
- D. Type GC-5 - Silicone Sealant: Single component; neutral curing; capable of water immersion without loss of properties; nonbleeding, nonstaining; ASTM C920 Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Uses M, A, and G; with cured Shore A hardness range of 15 to 25; color as selected.

## 2.07 ACCESSORIES

- A. Setting Blocks: Silicone, with 80 to 90 Shore A durometer hardness; ASTM C864 Option II. Length of 0.1 inch for each square foot (25 mm for each square meter) of glazing or minimum 4 inch (100 mm) by width of glazing rabbet space minus 1/16 inch (1.5 mm) by height to suit glazing method and pane weight and area.
- B. Spacer Shims: Neoprene, 50 to 60 Shore A durometer hardness; ASTM C864 Option II. Minimum 3 inch (75 mm) long by one half the height of the glazing stop by thickness to suit application, self adhesive on one face.
- C. Glazing Tape, Back Bedding Mastic Type: Preformed, butyl-based, 100 percent solids compound with integral resilient spacer rod applicable to application indicated; 5 to 30 cured Shore A durometer hardness; coiled on release paper; black color.
1. Width: As required for application.
  2. Thickness: As required for application.
  3. Spacer Rod Diameter: As required for application.
- D. Glazing Splines: Resilient silicone extruded shape to suit glazing channel retaining slot; ASTM C864 Option II; color black.
- E. Glazing Clips: Manufacturer's standard type.

## 2.08 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. See Section 01 40 00 - Quality Requirements for additional requirements.
- B. Provide shop inspection and testing for \_\_\_\_\_ glass.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.01 VERIFICATION OF CONDITIONS

- A. Verify that openings for glazing are correctly sized and within tolerances, including those for size, squareness, and offsets at corners.
- B. Verify that surfaces of glazing channels or recesses are clean, free of obstructions that may impede moisture movement, weeps are clear, and support framing is ready to receive glazing system.
- C. Verify that sealing between joints of glass framing members has been completed effectively.
- D. Proceed with glazing system installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Clean contact surfaces with appropriate solvent and wipe dry within maximum of 24 hours before glazing. Remove coatings that are not tightly bonded to substrates.
- B. Seal porous glazing channels or recesses with substrate compatible primer or sealer.
- C. Prime surfaces scheduled to receive sealant where required for proper sealant adhesion.

### **3.03 INSTALLATION, GENERAL**

- A. Install glazing sealants in accordance with ASTM C1193, GANA (SM), and manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Set glass lites of system with uniform pattern, draw, bow, and similar characteristics.
- C. Set glass lites in proper orientation so that coatings face exterior or interior as indicated.
- D. Prevent glass from contact with any contaminating substances that may be the result of construction operations such as, and not limited to the following; weld splatter, fire-safing, plastering, mortar droppings, and paint.

### **3.04 INSTALLATION - DRY GLAZING METHOD (GASKET GLAZING)**

- A. Application - Exterior and/or Interior Glazed: Set glazing infills from either the exterior or the interior of the building.
- B. Place setting blocks at 1/4 points with edge block no more than 6 inch (152 mm) from corners.
- C. Rest glazing on setting blocks and push against fixed stop with sufficient pressure on gasket to attain full contact.
- D. Install removable stops without displacing glazing gasket; exert pressure for full continuous contact.

### **3.05 INSTALLATION - DRY GLAZING METHOD (TAPE AND GASKET SPLINE GLAZING)**

- A. Application - Exterior Glazed: Set glazing infills from the exterior of the building.
- B. Cut glazing tape to length; install on glazing pane. Seal corners by butting tape and sealing junctions with butyl sealant.
- C. Place setting blocks at 1/4 points with edge block no more than 6 inch (152 mm) from corners.
- D. Rest glazing on setting blocks and push against fixed stop with sufficient pressure to attain full contact.
- E. Install removable stops without displacing glazing spline. Exert pressure for full continuous contact.
- F. Carefully trim protruding tape with knife.

### **3.06 INSTALLATION - PLASTIC FILM**

- A. Install plastic film with adhesive, applied in accordance with film manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Place without air bubbles, creases or visible distortion.
- C. Install film tight to perimeter of glass and carefully trim film with razor sharp knife. Provide 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) to 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) gap at perimeter of glazed panel unless otherwise required. Do not score the glass.

### **3.07 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Glass and Glazing product manufacturers to provide field surveillance of the installation of their products.
- B. Monitor and report installation procedures and unacceptable conditions.

### **3.08 CLEANING**

- A. Remove excess glazing materials from finish surfaces immediately after application using solvents or cleaners recommended by manufacturers.
- B. Remove nonpermanent labels immediately after glazing installation is complete.

- C. Clean glass and adjacent surfaces after sealants are fully cured.
- D. Clean glass on both exposed surfaces not more than 4 days prior to Date of Substantial Completion in accordance with glass manufacturer's written recommendations.

**3.09 PROTECTION**

- A. After installation, mark pane with an 'X' by using removable plastic tape or paste; do not mark heat absorbing or reflective glass units.
- B. Remove and replace glass that is damaged during construction period prior to Date of Substantial Completion.

**END OF SECTION 08 80 00**

**SECTION 08 87 00  
GLAZING FILM**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Surface Applied Architectural Window Film

**1.02 RELATED SECTIONS**

- A. Section 08 14 16 – Flush Wood Doors.
- B. Section 08 11 16 – Aluminum Doors and Frames.
- C. Section 08 80 00 - Glazing.

**1.03 REFERENCES**

- A. ANSI Z97.1 - American National Standard for Safety Glazing Materials Used in Buildings - Safety Performance Specifications and Methods of Test.
- B. ASHRAE - American Society for Heating, Refrigeration, and Air Conditioning Engineers; Handbook of Fundamentals.
- C. ASTM International (ASTM):
  - 1. ASTM D 882 - Standard Test Method for Tensile Properties of Thin Plastic Sheeting.
  - 2. ASTM D 624 - Standard Test Method for Tear Strength of Conventional Vulcanized Rubber and Thermoplastic Elastomers.
  - 3. ASTM D 1004 - Standard Test Method for Tear Resistance of Plastic Film and Sheeting.
  - 4. ASTM D 2582 - Standard Test Method for Puncture-Propagation Tear Resistance of Plastic Film and Thin Sheeting.
  - 5. ASTM E 84 - Standard Method of Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.
  - 6. ASTM E 1886 - Standard Test Method for Performance of Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls, Doors, and Impact Protective Systems Impacted by Missile(s) and Exposed to Cyclic Pressure Differentials.
  - 7. ASTM F1642 - Standard Method of Test for Glazing and Glazing Systems Subject to Airblast Loadings
- D. Consumer Products Safety Commission 16 CFR, Part 1201 - Safety Standard for Architectural Glazing Materials.
- E. GSA-TS01 - Standard Test for Glazing and Glazing Systems Subject to Airblast Loadings.
- F. NFRC 100/200 (Formerly ASTM E903) - Standard Methods of Test for Solar Absorbance, Reflectance and Transmittance of Materials Using Integrating Spheres.
- G. IES LM-83-12: IES Spatial Daylight Autonomy (sDA) and Annual Sunlight Exposure.
- H. ISO 16933, International Standard for Glass in Building: Explosion-resistant security glazing - Test and classification for arena air-blast testing.
- I. Underwriters Laboratories Inc. (UL): UL 972 - Burglary Resisting Glazing Material.
- J. Window 6.3 - A Computer Tool for Analyzing Window Thermal Performance; Lawrence Berkeley Laboratory.

**1.04 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Light to Solar Gain Ratio: The ratio of visible light transmission to Solar Heat Gain Coefficient.

**1.05 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Impact Resistance and Pressure Cycling:
  - 1. ASTM E1996 / E1886: Large Missile "C", plus or minus 75 psf Design Pressure.
  - 2. ASTM E1996 / E1886: Small Missile "A", plus or minus 60 psf Design Pressure.
- B. Tear Resistance:



1. Minimum Graves Area Tear Strength of 1,050 lbs percent as measured on coated film product, without liner, per ASTM D1004.
- C. Adhesion to Glass:
  1. Minimum 9 lbs/in peel strength per ASTM D3330 (Method A).
  2. Nominal 5 lbs/in peel strength per ASTM D3330 (Method A).
- D. ASTM E 84, demonstrating film applied to glass rated Class A for Interior Use:
  1. Flame Spread Index: no greater than 25.
  2. Smoke Developed Index: no greater than 55.
- E. Abrasion Resistance:
  1. Film shall have a surface coating that is resistant to abrasion such that less than 5 percent increase of transmitted light haze will result when tested in accordance to ASTM D 1044 using 100 cycles, 500 grams weight, and the CS10F Calibrase Wheel.
- F. UV Light Rejection:
  1. Minimum of 99 percent UV light rejection (300 - 380 nm), per ASTM E903, as determined with film applied on 1/4 inch clear glass.

#### **1.06 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit under provisions of Section 01 30 00.
- B. Product Data: Manufacturer's current technical literature on each product to be used, including:
  1. Manufacturer's Data Sheets.
  2. Preparation instructions and recommendations.
  3. Storage and handling requirements and recommendations.
  4. Installation methods.
- C. 3rd Party Test Report Submittal Requirements. Submit the following 3rd Party test reports indicating compliance with the test values listed in this section.
  1. Flammability Testing, ASTM E84.
  2. Film Properties Testing, ASTM D882.
  3. Abrasion Resistance Testing, ASTM D1044.
  4. Peel Strength Testing, ASTM D3330.
  5. Tear Resistance Testing, ASTM D1004.
  6. Puncture Strength Testing, ASTM D4830.
- D. Verification Samples: For each film specified, two samples representing actual film color and pattern.
- E. Performance Submittals: Provide laboratory data of emissivity and calculated window U-Factors for various outdoor temperatures based upon established calculation procedure defined by the ASHRAE Handbook of Fundamentals, Chapter 29, or Lawrence Berkeley Laboratory Window 5.2 Computer Program.

#### **1.07 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: All primary products specified in this section will be supplied by a single manufacturer with a minimum of ten years experience.
  1. Provide documentation that the adhesive used on the specified films is a Pressure Sensitive Adhesive (PSA).
- B. Installer Qualifications: All products listed in this section are to be installed by a single installer with a minimum of five years demonstrated experience in installing products of the same type and scope as specified.
  1. Provide documentation that the installer is authorized by the Manufacturer to perform Work specified in this section.
  2. Provide a commercial building reference list of 5 properties where the installer has applied window film. This list will include the following information:
    - a. Name of building.
    - b. The name and telephone number of a management contact.
    - c. Type of glass.

- d. Type of film and/or film attachment system.
- e. Amount of film and/or film attachment system installed.
- f. Date of completion.
3. Provide a Glass Stress Analysis of the existing glass and proposed glass/film combination as recommended by the film manufacturer.
4. Provide an EFilm application analysis to determine available energy cost reduction and savings.
- C. Mock-Up: Provide a mock-up for evaluation of surface preparation techniques and application workmanship.
  1. Finish areas designated by Architect.
  2. Do not proceed with remaining work until workmanship, color, and sheen are approved by Architect.
  3. Refinish mock-up area as required to produce acceptable work.

#### **1.08 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Follow Manufacturer's instructions for storage and handling.
- B. Store products in manufacturer's unopened packaging until ready for installation.
- C. Store and dispose of hazardous materials, and materials contaminated by hazardous materials, in accordance with requirements of local authorities having jurisdiction.

#### **1.09 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Maintain environmental conditions (temperature, humidity, and ventilation) within limits recommended by manufacturer for optimum results. Do not install products under environmental conditions outside manufacturer's recommended limits.

#### **1.10 WARRANTY**

- A. At project closeout, provide to Owner or Owners Representative an executed current copy of the manufacturer's standard limited warranty against manufacturing defect, outlining its terms, conditions, and exclusions from coverage.
- B. In order to validate warranty, installation must be performed by an Authorized 3M dealer and according to Manufacturer's installation instructions. Verification of Authorized 3M dealer can be confirmed by submission of active 3M dealer code number.

### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Acceptable Manufacturer: 3M Commercial Solutions
- B. Substitutions: Equal product

#### **2.02 ARCHITECTURAL FINISH FILMS**

- A. Architectural Finish Films: 3M Fasara Milky White SH2MAML-1201 Glass Finishes as manufactured by 3M Company - Commercial Solutions.
- B. Material Properties:
  1. General: Glass finishes field-applied application to glass or plastic material as visual opaque or decorative film.
  2. Film: Vinyl.
  3. Option to Electrocut (by other than Manufacturer).
  4. Adhesive: Acrylic, Pressure Sensitive, Permanent.
  5. Liner: Silicone-coated Polyester.
  6. Thickness (Film and Adhesive without Liner):
    - a. Dusted - 3.2 mils (81 microns).
    - b. Frosted - 4.7 mils (120 microns).
  7. Fire Performance: Surface burning characteristics when tested in accordance with ASTM E84, Class A:
    - a. Flame Spread: 25 maximum.

- b. Smoke Developed: 450 maximum.
- C. Optical Performance:
  - 1. Fasara Milky White / Privacy Glazing Film:
    - a. Ultraviolet Transmittance (ASTM E 903): 20 percent.
    - b. Visible Light Transmittance (ASTM E 903, ASTM E308): 72 percent.
    - c. Visible Light Reflectance (ASTM E 903): 12 percent.
    - d. Solar Heat Transmittance: 64 percent.
    - e. Solar Heat Reflectance: 10 percent.
    - f. Shading Coefficient at 90 Degrees (Normal Incidence) (ASTM E 903): 0.82

### **PART 3 EXECUTION**

#### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Film Examination:
  - 1. If preparation of glass surfaces is the responsibility of another installer, notify Architect in writing of deviations from manufacturer's recommended installation tolerances and conditions.
    - a. Glass surfaces receiving new film should first be examined to verify that they are free from defects and imperfections, which will affect the final appearance.
  - 2. Do not proceed with installation until glass surfaces have been properly prepared and deviations from manufacturer's recommended tolerances are corrected. Prepare surfaces using the methods recommended by the manufacturer for achieving the best result under the project conditions.
  - 3. Commencement of installation constitutes acceptance of conditions.

#### **3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Clean surfaces thoroughly prior to installation.
- B. Prepare surfaces using the methods recommended by the manufacturer for achieving the best result for the substrate under the project conditions.
- C. Refer to Manufacturer's installation instructions for methods of preparation for Impact Protection Adhesive or Impact Protection Profile film attachment systems.

#### **3.03 INSTALLATION**

- A. Film Installation, General:
  - 1. Privacy film to be applied on inside face of room glass.
    - a. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
  - 2. Cut film edges neatly and square at a uniform distance of 1/8 inch (3 mm) to 1/16 inch (1.5 mm) of window sealant. Use new blade tips after 3 to 4 cuts.
  - 3. Spray the slip solution, composed of one capful of baby shampoo or dishwashing liquid to 1 gallon of water, on window glass and adhesive to facilitate proper positioning of film.
  - 4. Apply film to glass and lightly spray film with slip solution.
  - 5. Squeegee from top to bottom of window. Spray slip solution to film and squeegee a second time.
  - 6. Bump film edge with lint-free towel wrapped around edge of a 5-way tool.
  - 7. Upon completion of film application, allow 30 days for moisture from film installation to dry thoroughly, and to allow film to dry flat with no moisture dimples when viewed under normal viewing conditions.
  - 8. If completing an exterior application, check with the manufacturer as to whether edge sealing is required.

#### **3.04 CLEANING AND PROTECTION**

- A. Remove left over material and debris from Work area. Use necessary means to protect film before, during, and after installation.
- B. Touch-up, repair or replace damaged products before Substantial Completion.

- C. After application of film, wash film using common window cleaning solutions, including ammonia solutions, 30 days after application. Do not use abrasive type cleaning agents and bristle brushes to avoid scratching film. Use synthetic sponges or soft cloths.

**END OF SECTION 08 87 00**

This page intentionally left blank

**SECTION 09 05 61  
COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR FLOORING PREPARATION**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. This section applies to floors identified in Contract Documents that are receiving the following types of floor coverings:
  - 1. Resilient tile and sheet.
  - 2. Carpet tile.
- B. Removal of existing floor coverings.
- C. Preparation of new and existing concrete floor slabs for installation of floor coverings.
- D. Testing of concrete floor slabs for moisture and alkalinity (pH).
- E. Remediation of concrete floor slabs due to unsatisfactory moisture or alkalinity (pH) conditions.
  - 1. Contractor shall perform all specified remediation of concrete floor slabs. If such remediation is indicated by testing agency's report and is due to a condition not under Contractor's control or could not have been predicted by examination prior to entering into the contract, a contract modification will be issued.
- F. Patching compound.
- G. Remedial floor treatment.
- H. Remedial floor sheet membrane.
- I. Preparation of new and existing wood-based floors and subfloors for installation of new floor coverings.

**1.02 PRICE AND PAYMENT PROCEDURES**

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ASTM C109/C109M - Standard Test Method for Compressive Strength of Hydraulic Cement Mortars (Using 2-in. or [50 mm] Cube Specimens) 2021.
- B. ASTM C472 - Standard Test Methods for Physical Testing of Gypsum, Gypsum Plasters, and Gypsum Concrete 2020.
- C. ASTM F1869 - Standard Test Method for Measuring Moisture Vapor Emission Rate of Concrete Subfloor Using Anhydrous Calcium Chloride 2022.
- D. ASTM F2170 - Standard Test Method for Determining Relative Humidity in Concrete Floor Slabs Using in situ Probes 2019a.
- E. RFCI (RWP) - Recommended Work Practices for Removal of Resilient Floor Coverings 2018.

**1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Visual Observation Report: For existing floor coverings to be removed.
- B. Floor Covering and Adhesive Manufacturers' Product Literature: For each specific combination of substrate, floor covering, and adhesive to be used; showing:
  - 1. Moisture and alkalinity (pH) limits and test methods.
  - 2. Manufacturer's required bond/compatibility test procedure.
- C. Remedial Materials Product Data: Manufacturer's published data on each product to be used for remediation.
- D. Testing Agency's Report:
  - 1. Description of areas tested; include floor plans and photographs if helpful.
  - 2. Summary of conditions encountered.
  - 3. Moisture and alkalinity (pH) test reports.
  - 4. Copies of specified test methods.
  - 5. Recommendations for remediation of unsatisfactory surfaces.
  - 6. Submit report to Architect.

7. Submit report not more than two business days after conclusion of testing.
- E. Adhesive Bond and Compatibility Test Report.
- F. Copy of RFCI (RWP).

#### **1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Moisture and alkalinity (pH) testing shall be performed by an independent testing agency employed and paid by Contractor.
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Independent testing agency experienced in the types of testing specified.
  1. Submit evidence of experience consisting of at least 3 test reports of the type required, with project Owner's project contact information.
- C. Contractor's Responsibility Relating to Independent Agency Testing:
  1. Provide access for and cooperate with testing agency.
  2. Confirm date of start of testing at least 10 days prior to actual start.
  3. Allow at least 4 business days on site for testing agency activities.
  4. Achieve and maintain specified ambient conditions.
  5. Notify Architect when specified ambient conditions have been achieved and when testing will start.

#### **1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Deliver, store, handle, and protect products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and recommendations.
- B. Deliver materials in manufacturer's packaging; include installation instructions.
- C. Keep materials from freezing.

#### **1.07 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Maintain ambient temperature in spaces where concrete testing is being performed, and for at least 48 hours prior to testing, at not less than 65 degrees F (18 degrees C) or more than 85 degrees F (30 degrees C).
- B. Maintain relative humidity in spaces where concrete testing is being performed, and for at least 48 hours prior to testing, at not less than 40 percent and not more than 60 percent.

### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 MATERIALS**

- A. Patching Compound: Floor covering manufacturer's recommended product, suitable for conditions, and compatible with adhesive and floor covering. In the absence of any recommendation from flooring manufacturer, provide a product with the following characteristics:
  1. Cementitious moisture-, mildew-, and alkali-resistant compound, compatible with floor, floor covering, and floor covering adhesive, and capable of being feathered to nothing at edges.
  2. Compressive Strength: 3000 psi, minimum, after 28 days, when tested in accordance with ASTM C109/C109M or ASTM C472, whichever is appropriate.
- B. Alternate Flooring Adhesive: Floor covering manufacturer's recommended product, suitable for the moisture and pH conditions present; low-VOC. In the absence of any recommendation from flooring manufacturer, provide a product recommended by adhesive manufacturer as suitable for substrate and floor covering and for conditions present.
- C. Remedial Floor Treatment: Penetrating, spray-applied, silicate-based product intended by its manufacturer to resist water vapor transmission to degree sufficient to meet flooring manufacturer's emission limits, resistant to the level of alkalinity (pH) found, and suitable for adhesion of flooring without further treatment.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 CONCRETE SLAB PREPARATION**

- A. Perform following operations in the order indicated:
  - 1. Preliminary cleaning.
  - 2. Moisture vapor emission tests; 3 tests in the first 1000 square feet (100 square meters) and one test in each additional 1000 square feet (100 square meters), unless otherwise indicated or required by flooring manufacturer.
  - 3. Internal relative humidity tests; in same locations as moisture vapor emission tests, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 4. Alkalinity (pH) tests; in same locations as moisture vapor emission tests, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 5. Specified remediation, if required.
  - 6. Patching, smoothing, and leveling, as required.
  - 7. Other preparation specified.
  - 8. Adhesive bond and compatibility test.
  - 9. Protection.

### **3.02 REMOVAL OF EXISTING FLOOR COVERINGS**

- A. Comply with local, State, and federal regulations and recommendations of RFCI (RWP), as applicable to floor covering being removed.
- B. Dispose of removed materials in accordance with local, State, and federal regulations and as specified.

### **3.03 MOISTURE VAPOR EMISSION TESTING**

- A. Where the floor covering manufacturer's requirements conflict with either the referenced test method or this specification, comply with the manufacturer's requirements.
- B. Where this specification conflicts with the referenced test method, comply with the requirements of this section.
- C. Test in accordance with ASTM F1869 and as follows.
- D. Plastic sheet test and mat bond test may not be substituted for the specified ASTM test method, as those methods do not quantify the moisture content sufficiently.
- E. In the event that test values exceed floor covering manufacturer's limits, perform remediation as indicated. In the absence of manufacturer limits, perform remediation if test values exceed 3 pounds per 1000 square feet (1.4 kg per 93 square meters) per 24 hours.
- F. Report: Report the information required by the test method.

### **3.04 INTERNAL RELATIVE HUMIDITY TESTING**

- A. Where the floor covering manufacturer's requirements conflict with either the referenced test method or this specification, comply with the manufacturer's requirements.
- B. Where this specification conflicts with the referenced test method, comply with the requirements of this section.
- C. Test in accordance with ASTM F2170 Procedure A and as follows.
- D. Testing with electrical impedance or resistance apparatus may not be substituted for the specified ASTM test method, as the values determined are not comparable to the ASTM test values and do not quantify the moisture content sufficiently.
- E. In the event that test values exceed floor covering manufacturer's limits, perform remediation as indicated. In the absence of manufacturer limits, perform remediation if any test value exceeds 75 percent relative humidity.
- F. Report: Report the information required by the test method.



**3.05 ALKALINITY TESTING**

- A. Where the floor covering manufacturer's requirements conflict with either the referenced test method or this specification, comply with the manufacturer's requirements.
- B. In the event that test values exceed floor covering manufacturer's limits, perform remediation as indicated. In the absence of manufacturer limits, perform remediation if alkalinity (pH) test value is over 10.

**3.06 PREPARATION**

- A. See individual floor covering section(s) for additional requirements.
- B. Comply with requirements and recommendations of floor covering manufacturer.
- C. Fill and smooth surface cracks, grooves, depressions, control joints and other non-moving joints, and other irregularities with patching compound.
- D. Do not fill expansion joints, isolation joints, or other moving joints.

**3.07 ADHESIVE BOND AND COMPATIBILITY TESTING**

- A. Comply with requirements and recommendations of floor covering manufacturer.

**3.08 APPLICATION OF REMEDIAL FLOOR TREATMENT**

- A. Comply with requirements and recommendations of treatment manufacturer.

**3.09 PROTECTION**

- A. Cover prepared floors with building paper or other durable covering.

**END OF SECTION 09 05 61**

**SECTION 09 21 16  
GYPSUM BOARD ASSEMBLIES**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Performance criteria for gypsum board assemblies.
- B. Metal stud wall framing.
- C. Metal channel ceiling framing.
- D. Resilient sound isolation clips.
- E. Acoustic insulation.
- F. Cementitious backing board.
- G. Gypsum wallboard.
- H. Joint treatment and accessories.
- I. Plenum space sound control.
- J. Textured finish system.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 06 10 00 - Rough Carpentry: Wood blocking product and execution requirements.
- B. Section 07 84 00 - Firestopping: Top-of-wall assemblies at fire-resistance-rated walls.
- C. Section 07 92 00 - Joint Sealants: Sealing acoustical gaps in construction other than gypsum board or plaster work.
- D. Section 09 22 16 - Non-Structural Metal Framing.
- E. Section 09 30 00 - Tiling: Tile backing board.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. AISI S100 - North American Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members 2016, with Supplement (2020).
- B. AISI S201 - North American Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Product Data 2017.
- C. AISI S220 - North American Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Nonstructural Framing 2020.
- D. AISI S240 - North American Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Structural Framing 2015, with Errata (2020).
- E. ANSI A108.11 - American National Standard Specifications for Interior Installation of Cementitious Backer Units 2018.
- F. ANSI A118.9 - American National Standard Specifications for Test Methods and Specifications for Cementitious Backer Units 2019.
- G. ASHRAE Std 62.1 - Ventilation for Acceptable Indoor Air Quality Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- H. ASTM A36/A36M - Standard Specification for Carbon Structural Steel 2019.
- I. ASTM A653/A653M - Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process 2023.
- J. ASTM A1003/A1003M - Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Carbon, Metallic- and Nonmetallic-Coated for Cold-Formed Framing Members 2015.
- K. ASTM C1007 - Standard Specification for Installation of Load Bearing (Transverse and Axial) Steel Studs and Related Accessories 2020.
- L. ASTM C475/C475M - Standard Specification for Joint Compound and Joint Tape for Finishing Gypsum Board 2017 (Reapproved 2022).
- M. ASTM C665 - Standard Specification for Mineral-Fiber Blanket Thermal Insulation for Light Frame Construction and Manufactured Housing 2023.

- N. ASTM C754 - Standard Specification for Installation of Steel Framing Members to Receive Screw-Attached Gypsum Panel Products 2020.
- O. ASTM C840 - Standard Specification for Application and Finishing of Gypsum Board 2020.
- P. ASTM C954 - Standard Specification for Steel Drill Screws for the Application of Gypsum Panel Products or Metal Plaster Bases to Steel Studs from 0.033 in. (0.84 mm) to 0.112 in. (2.84 mm) in Thickness 2022.
- Q. ASTM C1002 - Standard Specification for Steel Self-Piercing Tapping Screws for Application of Gypsum Panel Products or Metal Plaster Bases to Wood Studs or Steel Studs 2022.
- R. ASTM C1047 - Standard Specification for Accessories for Gypsum Wallboard and Gypsum Veneer Base 2019.
- S. ASTM C1278/C1278M - Standard Specification for Fiber-Reinforced Gypsum Panel 2017.
- T. ASTM C1325 - Standard Specification for Fiber-Mat Reinforced Cementitious Backer Units 2022.
- U. ASTM C1396/C1396M - Standard Specification for Gypsum Board 2017.
- V. ASTM D3273 - Standard Test Method for Resistance to Growth of Mold on the Surface of Interior Coatings in an Environmental Chamber 2021.
- W. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials 2023b.
- X. ASTM E90 - Standard Test Method for Laboratory Measurement of Airborne Sound Transmission Loss of Building Partitions and Elements 2009 (Reapproved 2016).
- Y. ASTM E413 - Classification for Rating Sound Insulation 2022.
- Z. ASTM E1264 - Standard Classification for Acoustical Ceiling Products 2023.
- AA. GA-216 - Application and Finishing of Gypsum Panel Products 2021.
- BB. GA-600 - Fire Resistance and Sound Control Design Manual 2021.
- CC. ICC (IBC) - International Building Code Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- DD. UL (FRD) - Fire Resistance Directory Current Edition.
- EE. UL 325 - Standard for Door, Drapery, Gate, Louver, and Window Operators and Systems Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

#### **1.04 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Coordination: Coordinate the installation of gypsum board assemblies with size, location, and installation of service utilities.
- B. Preinstallation Meeting: Conduct a preinstallation meeting one week prior to the start of the work of this section; require attendance by all affected installers.
- C. Sequencing: Install service utilities in an orderly and expeditious manner.

#### **1.05 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data:
  - 1. Provide data on metal framing, gypsum board, accessories, and joint finishing system.
  - 2. Provide manufacturer's data on partition head to structure connectors, showing compliance with requirements.
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate special details associated with fireproofing and acoustic seals.
- D. Samples: Submit two samples of gypsum board finished with proposed texture application, 12 by 12 inches (300 by 300 mm) in size, indicating finish color and texture.

### 1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Documents at Project Site: Maintain at the project site a copy of manufacturer's instructions, erection drawings, and shop drawings.

### 1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. See Section 01 74 19 - Construction Waste Management and Disposal for packaging waste requirements.
- B. Store gypsum products and accessories indoors and keep above freezing. Elevate boards above floor, on nonwicking supports, in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.
- C. Store metal products to prevent corrosion.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.01 GYPSUM BOARD ASSEMBLIES

- A. Provide completed assemblies complying with ASTM C840 and GA-216.
- B. Interior Partitions, Indicated as Acoustic: Provide completed assemblies with the following characteristics:
  - 1. Acoustic Attenuation: STC of 45-49 calculated in accordance with ASTM E413, based on tests conducted in accordance with ASTM E90.
- C. Shaft Walls at Elevator Shafts: Provide completed assemblies with the following characteristics:
  - 1. Air Pressure Within Shaft: Intermittent loads of 5 lbf/sq ft (0.24 kPa) with maximum mid-span deflection of L/240.
  - 2. Acoustic Attenuation: STC of 35-39 calculated in accordance with ASTM E413, based on tests conducted in accordance with ASTM E90.
- D. Grid Suspension Systems: Provide grid suspension systems in accordance with ASTM C840 and GA-216 complying with the following:
  - 1. ICC-ES Evaluation Report No. \_\_\_\_\_.
- E. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: Provide completed assemblies complying with applicable code. See Drawings.
  - 1. ICC IBC Item Numbers: Comply with applicable requirements of ICC IBC for the particular assembly.
  - 2. Gypsum Association File Numbers: Comply with requirements of GA-600 for the particular assembly.
  - 3. UL Assembly Numbers: Provide construction equivalent to that listed for the particular assembly in the current UL (FRD).

### 2.02 METAL FRAMING MATERIALS

- A. Material and Product Requirements Criteria: AISI S201.
- B. Steel Sheet: ASTM A1003/A1003M, subject to the ductility limitations indicated in AISI S220 or equivalent.
- C. Manufacturers - Metal Framing, Connectors, and Accessories:
  - 1. ClarkDietrich; \_\_\_\_: [www.clarkdietrich.com/#sle](http://www.clarkdietrich.com/#sle).
  - 2. Jaimes Industries; \_\_\_\_: [www.jaimesind.com/#sle](http://www.jaimesind.com/#sle).
  - 3. SCAFCO Corporation; \_\_\_\_: [www.scafco.com/#sle](http://www.scafco.com/#sle).
  - 4. Steel Construction Systems; \_\_\_\_: [www.steelconsystems.com/#sle](http://www.steelconsystems.com/#sle).
- D. Nonstructural Framing System Components: AISI S220; galvanized sheet steel, of size and properties necessary to comply with ASTM C754 for the spacing indicated, with maximum deflection of wall framing of L/120 at 5 psf (L/120 at 240 Pa).
  - 1. Studs: C-shaped with knurled or embossed faces.
  - 2. Paired Studs for Sound-Rated Assemblies: Engineered single-piece assemblies comprised of paired studs coupled by sound isolators, designed to replace conventional side-by-side, parallel, double-wall partition framing.

- a. Widths: As indicated on drawings.
- b. Products:
  - 1) SCAFCO Corporation; SoundGuard Silent Steel Framing System: [www.scafco.com/#sle](http://www.scafco.com/#sle).
  - 2) MarinoWARE; SoundGuard Stud: [www.marinoware.com/#sle](http://www.marinoware.com/#sle).
3. Runners: U shaped, sized to match studs.
4. Ceiling Channels: C-shaped.
5. Flexible Track: Flexible framing consisting of adjustable leg straps and pivoting, hinged track brackets designed to provide curved framing assemblies of varying radii.
  - a. Dimensions: 3-5/8 inches (92 mm) deep by 1-3/16 inches (30.2 mm) high in lengths and configurations indicated.
  - b. Products:
    - 1) ClarkDietrich; 360TRAK: [www.clarkdietrich.com/#sle](http://www.clarkdietrich.com/#sle).
6. Furring Members: Hat-shaped sections, minimum depth of 7/8 inch (22 mm).
  - a. Products:
    - 1) MBA Building Supplies; MBA Furring Channel: [www.mbastuds.com/#sle](http://www.mbastuds.com/#sle).
7. Furring Members: U-shaped sections, minimum depth of 3/4 inch (19 mm).
  - a. Products:
    - 1) MBA Building Supplies; MBA U-Channel: [www.mbastuds.com/#sle](http://www.mbastuds.com/#sle).
8. Furring Members: Zee-shaped sections, minimum depth of 1 inch (25 mm).
  - a. Products:
    - 1) MBA Building Supplies; MBA Z-Furring: [www.mbastuds.com/#sle](http://www.mbastuds.com/#sle).
9. Resilient Furring Channels: Single or double leg configuration; 1/2 inch (13 mm) channel depth.
  - a. Products:
    - 1) Same manufacturer as other framing materials.
    - 2) ClarkDietrich; RC Deluxe Resilient Channel: [www.clarkdietrich.com/#sle](http://www.clarkdietrich.com/#sle).
10. Resilient Sound Isolation Clips: Steel resilient clips with molded rubber isolators, attaches to framing; improves noise isolation performance of wall and floor-ceiling assemblies.
  - a. Products:
    - 1) ClarkDietrich; Sound Clip (CDSC): [www.clarkdietrich.com/#sle](http://www.clarkdietrich.com/#sle).
    - 2) Keene Building Products; Cylent Assurance Clip: [www.keenebuilding.com/#sle](http://www.keenebuilding.com/#sle).
11. Sill Plate Isolation Pads: Acoustical separation between sole plate and subfloor.
  - a. Products:
    - 1) AcoustiGuard – WILREP LTD; Iso-Sill Rubber Isolation Pad: [www.acoustiguard.com/#sle](http://www.acoustiguard.com/#sle).
- E. Shaft Wall Studs and Accessories: AISI S220; galvanized sheet steel, of size and properties necessary to comply with ASTM C754 and specified performance requirements.
  1. Products:
    - a. Same manufacturer as other framing materials.
- F. Partition Head to Structure Connections: Provide mechanical anchorage devices that accommodate deflection and prevent rotation of studs while maintaining structural performance of partition.
  1. Structural Performance: Maintain lateral load resistance and vertical movement capacity required by applicable code, when evaluated in accordance with AISI S100.
  2. Material: ASTM A653/A653M steel sheet, SS Grade 50/340, with G60/Z180 hot-dipped galvanized coating.
  3. Provide components UL-listed for use in UL-listed fire-resistance-rated head of partition joint systems indicated on drawings.
  4. Provide mechanical anchorage devices as described above that accommodate deflection while maintaining the fire-resistance rating of the wall assembly.
  5. Provide top track preassembled with connection devices spaced to fit stud spacing indicated on drawings; minimum track length of 12 feet (3660 mm).
- G. Non-structural Framing Accessories:

1. Ceiling Hangers: Type and size as specified in ASTM C754 for spacing required.
  2. Partial Height Wall Framing Support: Provides stud reinforcement and anchored connection to floor.
    - a. Materials: ASTM A36/A36M formed sheet steel support member with factory-welded ASTM A1003/A1003M steel plate base.
  3. Framing Connectors: ASTM A653/A653M G90 galvanized steel clips; secures cold rolled channel to wall studs for lateral bracing.
  4. Flexible Wood Backing: Fire-retardant-treated wood with sheet steel connectors.
  5. Drywall Corner Clips: Drywall clips help support drywall to reduce wood blocking on top plates, end walls, and corners.
  6. Steel Column and Beam Drywall Clip: UL-listed slip-on clips to connect gypsum board to steel beams and columns for fireproofing.
- H. Grid Suspension Systems: Steel grid system of main tees and support bars connected to structure using hanging wire.

### 2.03 BOARD MATERIALS

- A. Manufacturers - Gypsum-Based Board:
1. American Gypsum Company; \_\_\_\_: [www.americangypsum.com/#sle](http://www.americangypsum.com/#sle).
  2. CertainTeed Corporation; \_\_\_\_: [www.certainteed.com/#sle](http://www.certainteed.com/#sle).
  3. Gold Bond Building Products, LLC provided by National Gypsum Company; \_\_\_\_: [www.goldbondbuilding.com/#sle](http://www.goldbondbuilding.com/#sle).
  4. USG Corporation; \_\_\_\_: [www.usg.com/#sle](http://www.usg.com/#sle).
- B. Gypsum Wallboard: Paper-faced gypsum panels as defined in ASTM C1396/C1396M; sizes to minimize joints in place; ends square cut.
1. Application: Use for vertical surfaces and ceilings, unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Unfaced fiber-reinforced gypsum panels as defined in ASTM C1278/C1278M, suitable for paint finish, of the same core type and thickness may be substituted for paper-faced board.
  3. Mold Resistance: Score of 10, when tested in accordance with ASTM D3273.
    - a. Mold-resistant board is required whenever board is being installed before the building is enclosed and conditioned.
  4. At Assemblies Indicated with Fire-Resistance Rating: Use type required by indicated tested assembly; if no tested assembly is indicated, use Type X board, UL or WH listed.
  5. Thickness:
    - a. Multi-Layer Assemblies: Thicknesses as indicated on drawings.
- C. Abuse Resistant Wallboard:
1. Application: High-traffic areas indicated.
  2. Mold Resistance: Score of 10, when tested in accordance with ASTM D3273.
  3. Type: Fire-resistance-rated Type X, UL or WH listed.
  4. Thickness: 5/8 inch (16 mm).
  5. Edges: Tapered.
- D. Backing Board For Wet Areas: One of the following products:
1. Application: Surfaces behind tile in wet areas including tub and shower surrounds, shower ceilings, and vanity and toilet locations..
  2. Application: Horizontal surfaces behind tile in wet areas including countertops and sinks..
  3. Mold Resistance: Score of 10, when tested in accordance with ASTM D3273.
  4. ANSI Cement-Based Board: Non-gypsum-based; aggregated Portland cement panels with glass fiber mesh embedded in front and back surfaces complying with ANSI A118.9 or ASTM C1325.
    - a. Thickness: 5/8 inch (16 mm).
    - b. Products:
      - 1) PermaBASE Building Products, LLC provided by National Gypsum Company; PermaBase Cement Board: [www.goldbondbuilding.com/#sle](http://www.goldbondbuilding.com/#sle).

- 2) USG Corporation; Fiberock Brand Aqua-Tough AR Interior Panels Regular 5/8 in. (15.9 mm): [www.usg.com/#sle](http://www.usg.com/#sle).

#### **2.04 PLENUM SPACE SOUND CONTROL**

- A. Description: Acoustical extension wall board for noise control within ceiling plenums above wall partitions.
- B. General Requirements:
  1. Airstream surfaces installed in return air plenum to comply with requirements in ASHRAE Std 62.1.

#### **2.05 GYPSUM BOARD ACCESSORIES**

- A. Acoustic Insulation: ASTM C665; preformed mineral-fiber, friction fit type, unfaced; thickness as required for STC.
- B. Acoustic Sealant: Acrylic emulsion latex or water-based elastomeric sealant; do not use solvent-based non-curing butyl sealant.
- C. Finishing Accessories: ASTM C1047, extruded aluminum alloy (6063 T5) or galvanized steel sheet ASTM A924/A924M G90, unless noted otherwise.
  1. Types: As detailed or required for finished appearance.
- D. Decorative Metal Trim:
  1. Material: Extruded aluminum alloy 6063-T5 temper.
  2. Finish: Anodized, clear.
  3. Type: Profile as selected from manufacturer's standard range.
- E. Ceiling Pockets with Prewired Raceway: UL 325 listed, extruded aluminum shade pocket with removable closure panel and ceiling tile support, for recess mounting in acoustical tile or drywall ceilings; size and configuration as indicated on drawings.
  1. Designed to accommodate installation of motor control and wiring accessories within pocket.
- F. Moisture Guard Trim: ASTM C1047, rigid plastic, 48 inch (1219.2 mm) length, applied to bottom edge of gypsum board.
- G. Joint Materials: ASTM C475/C475M and as recommended by gypsum board manufacturer for project conditions.
  1. Fiberglass Tape: 2 inch (50 mm) wide, coated glass fiber tape for joints and corners, except as otherwise indicated.
  2. Joint Compound: Drying type, vinyl-based, ready-mixed.
  3. Joint Compound: Setting type, field-mixed.
- H. Finishing Compound: Surface coat and primer, takes the place of skim coating.
- I. High Build Drywall Surfer: Vinyl acrylic latex-based coating for spray application, designed to take the place of skim coating and separate paint primer in achieving Level 5 finish.
- J. Concrete Cover Coat Compound: Ready-mix compound for filling and smoothing interior, above-grade, monolithic concrete ceilings and columns.
- K. Textured Finish Materials: Latex-based compound; plain.
- L. Abuse Resistant Finishes:
- M. Glass-Fiber-Reinforced Gypsum Access Panels: Wall- and ceiling-mounted; natural white color, smooth finish, square corners.
  1. Material: Glass-fiber-reinforced gypsum cement.
  2. Exposed fasteners: Stainless steel.
  3. Class A flame spread rating in accordance with ASTM E84.
  4. Comply with ASTM E1264 for acoustical ceiling use.
- N. Screws for Fastening of Gypsum Panel Products to Cold-Formed Steel Studs Less than 0.033 inches (0.84 mm) in Thickness and Wood Members: ASTM C1002; self-piercing tapping screws, corrosion-resistant.

- O. Screws for Fastening of Gypsum Panel Products to Steel Members from 0.033 to 0.112 inch (0.84 to 2.84 mm) in Thickness: ASTM C954; steel drill screws, corrosion-resistant.
- P. Anchorage to Substrate: Tie wire, nails, screws, and other metal supports, of type and size to suit application; to rigidly secure materials in place.

### **PART 3 EXECUTION**

#### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify that project conditions are appropriate for work of this section to commence.

#### **3.02 SHAFT WALL INSTALLATION**

- A. Shaft Wall Framing: Install in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions.
  - 1. Install studs at spacing required to meet performance requirements.
- B. Shaft Wall Liner: Cut panels to accurate dimensions and install sequentially between special friction studs.

#### **3.03 FRAMING INSTALLATION**

- A. Metal Framing: Install in accordance with ASTM C1007/AISI S220 and manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Suspended Ceilings and Soffits: Space framing and furring members as indicated.
- C. Studs: Space studs at 16 inches on center (at 406 mm on center).
  - 1. Extend partition framing to structure where indicated and to ceiling in other locations.
  - 2. Partitions Terminating at Ceiling: Attach ceiling runner securely to ceiling track in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
  - 3. Partitions Terminating at Structure: Attach top runner to structure, maintain clearance between top of studs and structure, and connect studs to track using specified mechanical devices in accordance with manufacturer's instructions; verify free movement of top of stud connections; do not leave studs unattached to track.
- D. Openings: Reinforce openings as required for weight of doors or operable panels, using not less than double studs at jambs.
- E. Standard Wall Furring: Install at concrete walls scheduled to receive gypsum board, not more than 4 inches (100 mm) from floor and ceiling lines and abutting walls. Secure in place on alternate channel flanges at maximum 24 inches (600 mm) on center.
- F. Resilient Sound Isolation Clips: Install resilient sound isolation clips, and where applicable, associated furring sections and channels, in accordance with clip manufacturer's written instructions.
- G. Blocking: Install wood blocking for support of:
  - 1. Framed openings.
  - 2. Wall-mounted cabinets.
  - 3. Plumbing fixtures.
  - 4. Toilet partitions.
  - 5. Toilet accessories.
  - 6. Wall-mounted door hardware.

#### **3.04 ACOUSTIC ACCESSORIES INSTALLATION**

- A. Acoustic Insulation: Place tightly within spaces, around cut openings, behind and around electrical and mechanical items within partitions, and tight to items passing through partitions.
- B. Acoustic Sealant: Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

#### **3.05 BOARD INSTALLATION**

- A. Comply with ASTM C840, GA-216, and manufacturer's instructions. Install to minimize butt end joints, especially in highly visible locations.
- B. Fire-Resistance-Rated Construction: Install gypsum board in strict compliance with requirements of assembly listing.



- C. Cementitious Backing Board: Install over steel framing members and plywood substrate where indicated, in accordance with ANSI A108.11 and manufacturer's instructions.

### **3.06 INSTALLATION OF TRIM AND ACCESSORIES**

- A. Control Joints: Place control joints consistent with lines of building spaces and as indicated.
- B. Corner Beads: Install at external corners, using longest practical lengths.
- C. Decorative Trim: Install at locations shown on drawings and in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- D. Moisture Guard Trim: Install on bottom edge of gypsum board according to manufacturer's instructions and in locations indicated on drawings.

### **3.07 JOINT TREATMENT**

- A. Finish gypsum board in accordance with levels defined in ASTM C840, as follows:
  - 1. Level 1: Fire-resistance-rated wall areas above finished ceilings, whether or not accessible in the completed construction.
- B. Tape, fill, and sand exposed joints, edges, and corners to produce smooth surface ready to receive finishes.
  - 1. Feather coats of joint compound so that camber is maximum 1/32 inch (0.8 mm).
- C. Where Level 5 finish is indicated, spray apply high build drywall surfer over entire surface after joints have been properly treated; achieve a flat and tool mark-free finish.

### **3.08 TEXTURE FINISH**

- A. Apply finish texture coating by means of spraying apparatus in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and to match approved sample.

### **3.09 TOLERANCES**

- A. Maximum Variation of Finished Gypsum Board Surface from True Flatness: 1/8 inch in 10 feet (3 mm in 3 m) in any direction.

### **3.10 CLEANING**

- A. See Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements for additional requirements.
- B. Clean \_\_\_\_\_.

### **3.11 PROTECTION**

- A. Protect installed gypsum board assemblies from subsequent construction operations.

**END OF SECTION 09 21 16**

**SECTION 09 30 00  
TILING**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Tile for floor applications.
- B. Tile for wall applications.
- C. Cementitious backer board as tile substrate.
- D. Ceramic accessories.
- E. Ceramic trim.
- F. Non-ceramic trim.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 07 92 00 - Joint Sealants: Sealing joints between tile work and adjacent construction and fixtures.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ANSI A108/A118/A136 - American National Standard Specifications for the Installation of Ceramic Tile (Compendium) 2019.
- B. ANSI A108.1a - American National Standard Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile in the Wet-Set Method, with Portland Cement Mortar 2017 (Reaffirmed 2022).
- C. ANSI A108.1b - American National Standard Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile on a Cured Portland Cement Mortar Setting Bed with Dry-Set or Latex-Portland Cement Mortar 2017.
- D. ANSI A108.1c - Contractor's Option: Installation of Ceramic Tile in the Wet-Set Method with Portland Cement Mortar or Installation of Ceramic Tile on a Cured Portland Cement Mortar Setting Bed with Dry-Set or Latex-Portland Cement Mortar 1999 (Reaffirmed 2021).
- E. ANSI A108.2 - American National Standard General Requirements: Materials, Environmental and Workmanship 2019.
- F. ANSI A108.4 - American National Standard Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile with Organic Adhesive or Water Cleanable Tile-Setting Epoxy Adhesive 2019.
- G. ANSI A108.5 - American National Standard Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile with Dry-Set Portland Cement Mortar or Latex-Portland Cement Mortar 2021.
- H. ANSI A108.6 - American National Standard Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile with Chemical Resistant, Water Cleanable Tile-Setting and -Grout Epoxy 1999 (Reaffirmed 2019).
- I. ANSI A108.8 - American National Standard Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile with Chemical Resistant Furan Resin Mortar and Grout 1999 (Reaffirmed 2019).
- J. ANSI A108.9 - American National Standard Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile with Modified Epoxy Emulsion Mortar/Grout 1999 (Reaffirmed 2019).
- K. ANSI A108.10 - American National Standard Specifications for Installation of Grout in Tilework 2017 (Reaffirmed 2022).
- L. ANSI A108.11 - American National Standard Specifications for Interior Installation of Cementitious Backer Units 2018.
- M. ANSI A108.12 - American National Standard for Installation of Ceramic Tile with EGP (Exterior Glue Plywood) Latex-Portland Cement Mortar 1999 (Reaffirmed 2019).
- N. ANSI A108.13 - American National Standard for Installation of Load Bearing, Bonded, Waterproof Membranes for Thin-Set Ceramic Tile and Dimension Stone 2005 (Reaffirmed 2021).
- O. ANSI A108.19 - American National Standard Specifications for Interior Installation of Gauged Porcelain Tiles and Gauged Porcelain Tile Panels/Slabs by the Thin-Bed Method Bonded with

Modified Dry-Set Cement Mortar or Improved Modified Dry-Set Cement Mortar 2020.

- P. ANSI A108.20 - American National Standard Specifications for Exterior Installation of Gauged Porcelain Tiles and Gauged Porcelain Tile Panels/Slabs 2020.
- Q. ANSI A118.3 - American National Standard Specifications for Chemical Resistant, Water Cleanable Tile-Setting and -Grouting Epoxy and Water Cleanable Tile-Setting Epoxy Adhesive 2021.
- R. ANSI A118.7 - American National Standard Specifications for High Performance Cement Grouts for Tile Installation 2019.
- S. ANSI A118.9 - American National Standard Specifications for Test Methods and Specifications for Cementitious Backer Units 2019.
- T. ANSI A118.10 - American National Standard Specifications for Load Bearing, Bonded, Waterproof Membranes for Thin-Set Ceramic Tile and Dimension Stone 2014 (Reaffirmed 2019).
- U. ANSI A118.12 - American National Standard Specifications for Crack Isolation Membranes for Thin-Set Ceramic Tile and Dimension Stone Installation 2014 (Reaffirmed 2019).
- V. ASTM E492 - Standard Test Method for Laboratory Measurement of Impact Sound Transmission through Floor-Ceiling Assemblies Using the Tapping Machine 2022.
- W. TCNA (HB) - Handbook for Ceramic, Glass, and Stone Tile Installation 2023.

#### **1.04 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Preinstallation Meeting: Convene a preinstallation meeting one week before starting work of this section; require attendance by affected installers.

#### **1.05 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide manufacturers' data sheets on tile, mortar, grout, and accessories. Include instructions for using grouts and adhesives.
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate tile layout, patterns, color arrangement, perimeter conditions, junctions with dissimilar materials, control and expansion joints, thresholds, ceramic accessories, and setting details.
- D. Samples: Mount tile and apply grout on two plywood panels, minimum 18 by 18 inches (457 by 457 mm) in size illustrating pattern, color variations, and grout joint size variations.
- E. Manufacturer's Certificate: Certify that products meet or exceed specified requirements.
- F. Installer's Qualification Statement:
  - 1. Submit documentation of Natural Stone Institute Accreditation.
- G. Maintenance Data: Include recommended cleaning methods, cleaning materials, and stain removal methods.
- H. Maintenance Materials: Furnish the following for Owner's use in maintenance of project.
  - 1. See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements, for additional provisions.

#### **1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Maintain one copy of ANSI A108/A118/A136 and TCNA (HB) on site.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the types of products specified in this section, with minimum five years of documented experience.
- C. Installer Qualifications: Natural Stone Institute (NSI) Accredited Commercial B Contractor (light commercial): [www.naturalstoneinstitute.org/#sle](http://www.naturalstoneinstitute.org/#sle).

#### **1.07 MOCK-UPS**

- A. See Section 01 40 00 - Quality Requirements for general requirements for mock-up.
- B. Construct tile mock-up where indicated on drawings, incorporating all components specified for the location.

1. Minimum size of mock-up is 48 by 48 inches.
2. Approved samples establish work results standard.
3. Approved mock-up may remain as part of work.

#### **1.08 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Protect adhesives from freezing or overheating in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

#### **1.09 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Do not install solvent-based products in an unventilated environment.
- B. Maintain ambient and substrate temperature above 50 degrees F (10 degrees C) and below 100 degrees F (38 degrees C) during installation and curing of setting materials.

### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 TILE**

- A. Manufacturers: All products by the same manufacturer. See Materials and Finish List, and Drawings.

#### **2.02 TRIM AND ACCESSORIES**

- A. Ceramic Accessories: Glazed finish, same color and finish as adjacent field tile; same manufacturer as tile.
- B. Pre-Formed Accessories To Be Covered with Tile: High density expanded polystyrene with ANSI A118.10 waterproofing finish or membrane.
- C. Ceramic Trim: Matching bullnose, double bullnose, cove base, and cove ceramic shapes in sizes coordinated with field tile.
  1. Manufacturers: Same as for tile.
- D. Non-Ceramic Trim: Satin brass anodized extruded aluminum, style and dimensions to suit application, for setting using tile mortar or adhesive.
  1. Applications:
    - a. Open edges of wall tile.
    - b. Open edges of floor tile.
    - c. Transition between floor finishes of different heights.
    - d. Thresholds at door openings.
    - e. Expansion and control joints, floor and wall.
    - f. Floor to wall joints.
  2. Manufacturers:
    - a. Schluter-Systems: [www.schluter.com/#sle](http://www.schluter.com/#sle).
    - b. Genesis APS International: [www.genesis-aps.com/#sle](http://www.genesis-aps.com/#sle).

#### **2.03 SETTING MATERIALS**

- A. Basis of Design: Provide setting and grout materials from same manufacturer.
- B. Manufacturers:
  1. ARDEX Engineered Cements; ARDEX N23: [www.ardexamericas.com/#sle](http://www.ardexamericas.com/#sle).
  2. Custom Building Products; MegaLite: [www.custombuildingproducts.com/#sle](http://www.custombuildingproducts.com/#sle).
  3. LATICRETE International, Inc; Laticrete 220: [www.laticrete.com/#sle](http://www.laticrete.com/#sle).
  4. Merkrete, by Parex USA, Inc; Merkrete 735 Premium Flex: [www.merkrete.com/#sle](http://www.merkrete.com/#sle).
  5. MAPEI UltraFlex 3..

#### **2.04 GROUTS**

- A. Basis of Design: Provide setting and grout materials from same manufacturer.
- B. Manufacturers:
- C. High Performance Polymer Modified Grout: ANSI A118.7 polymer modified cement grout.
  1. Applications: Use this type of grout where indicated and where no other type of grout is indicated.

2. Use sanded grout for joints 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) wide and larger; use unsanded grout for joints less than 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) wide.
  3. Color(s): As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full line.
  4. Products:
    - a. ARDEX Engineered Cements; ARDEX FL: [www.ardexamericas.com/#sle](http://www.ardexamericas.com/#sle).
    - b. Custom Building Products; Prism Color Consistent Grout: [www.custombuildingproducts.com/#sle](http://www.custombuildingproducts.com/#sle).
    - c. LATICRETE International, Inc; LATICRETE PERMACOLOR Grout: [www.laticrete.com/#sle](http://www.laticrete.com/#sle).
    - d. Merkrete, by Parex USA, Inc; Merkrete Pro Grout: [www.merkrete.com/#sle](http://www.merkrete.com/#sle).
    - e. MAPEI Ultracolor Plus FA as basis of design..
    - f. Laticrete PERMACOLOR Select..
- D. Epoxy Grout: ANSI A118.3 chemical resistant and water-cleanable epoxy grout.
1. Applications: Where indicated.
  2. Color(s): As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full line.
  3. Products:
    - a. ARDEX Engineered Cements; ARDEX WA: [www.ardexamericas.com/#sle](http://www.ardexamericas.com/#sle).
    - b. Custom Building Products; CEG-IG 100% Solids Industrial Grade Epoxy Grout: [www.custombuildingproducts.com/#sle](http://www.custombuildingproducts.com/#sle).
    - c. LATICRETE International, Inc; LATICRETE SPECTRALOCK PRO Premium Grout: [www.laticrete.com/#sle](http://www.laticrete.com/#sle).
    - d. Merkrete, by Parex USA, Inc; Merkrete Pro Epoxy: [www.merkrete.com/#sle](http://www.merkrete.com/#sle).
    - e. Sika Corp; SikaTile 825 Epoxy: [www.sika.com/#sle](http://www.sika.com/#sle).
    - f. MAPEI Kerapoxy..

## 2.05 MAINTENANCE MATERIALS

- A. Tile Sealant: Gunnable, silicone, siliconized acrylic, or urethane sealant; moisture and mildew resistant type.
1. Applications: Between tile and plumbing fixtures.
  2. Color(s): As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full line.
  3. Products:
    - a. ARDEX Engineered Cements; ARDEX SX: [www.ardexamericas.com/#sle](http://www.ardexamericas.com/#sle).
    - b. Custom Building Products; Commercial 100% Silicone Caulk: [www.custombuildingproducts.com/#sle](http://www.custombuildingproducts.com/#sle).
    - c. LATICRETE International, Inc; LATICRETE LATASIL: [www.laticrete.com/#sle](http://www.laticrete.com/#sle).
    - d. Merkrete, by Parex USA, Inc; Merkrete Colored Caulking: [www.merkrete.com/#sle](http://www.merkrete.com/#sle).
- B. Grout Sealer: Liquid-applied, moisture and stain protection for existing or new Portland cement grout.
1. Composition: Water-based colorless silicone.
  2. Color(s): As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full line.
  3. Products:
    - a. Merkrete, by Parex USA, Inc; Merkrete Revive: [www.merkrete.com/#sle](http://www.merkrete.com/#sle).

## 2.06 ACCESSORY MATERIALS

- A. Concrete Floor Slab Crack Isolation Membrane: Material complying with ANSI A118.12; not intended as waterproofing.
1. Crack Resistance: No failure at 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) gap, minimum.
- B. Waterproofing Membrane at Floors: Specifically designed for bonding to cementitious substrate under thick mortar bed or thin-set tile; complying with ANSI A118.10.
1. Crack Resistance: No failure at 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) gap, minimum; comply with ANSI A118.12.
  2. Fluid or Trowel Applied Type:
    - a. Material: Synthetic rubber or Acrylic.
    - b. Thickness: 25 mils (0.6 mm), minimum, dry film thickness.

- c. Products:
  - 1) ARDEX Engineered Cements; ARDEX 8+9: [www.ardexamericas.com/#sle](http://www.ardexamericas.com/#sle).
  - 2) Custom Building Products; RedGard Crack Prevention and Waterproofing Membrane: [www.custombuildingproducts.com/#sle](http://www.custombuildingproducts.com/#sle).
  - 3) LATICRETE International, Inc; LATICRETE HYDRO BAN: [www.laticrete.com/#sle](http://www.laticrete.com/#sle).
  - 4) Merkrete, by Parex USA, Inc; Merkrete Hydro Guard 1: [www.merkrete.com/#sle](http://www.merkrete.com/#sle).
  - 5) Sika Corp; SikaTile 100 Moisture Guard: [www.sika.com/#sle](http://www.sika.com/#sle).
- C. Sound Control Underlayment at Floors: Flexible, self-bonding, fabric reinforced, loadbearing type, fully-adhered.
  - 1. Sound Reduction: Comply with ASTM E492.
  - 2. Thickness: 90 mils, 0.090 in (2.3 mm), nominal.
- D. Sound Control Underlayment at Floors: Recycled rubber type, fully-adhered.
  - 1. Sound Reduction: Comply with ASTM E492.
  - 2. Thickness: 1/8 inch (3.2 mm), nominal.
- E. Backer Board: Cementitious type complying with ANSI A118.9; high density, glass fiber reinforced, 7/16 inch (11 mm) thick; 2 inch (51 mm) wide coated glass fiber tape for joints and corners.

### **PART 3 EXECUTION**

#### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify that subfloor surfaces are smooth and flat within the tolerances specified for that type of work and are ready to receive tile.
- B. Verify that wall surfaces are smooth and flat within the tolerances specified for that type of work, are dust-free, and are ready to receive tile.
- C. Verify that subfloor surfaces are dust free and free of substances that could impair bonding of setting materials to subfloor surfaces.
- D. Cementitious Subfloor Surfaces: Verify that substrates are ready for tiling installation by testing for moisture and alkalinity (pH).
  - 1. Obtain instructions if test results are not within limits recommended by tiling material manufacturer and setting material manufacturer.
- E. Verify that required floor-mounted utilities are in correct location.

#### **3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Protect surrounding work from damage.
- B. Vacuum clean surfaces and damp clean.
- C. Seal substrate surface cracks with filler. Level existing substrate surfaces to acceptable flatness tolerances.
- D. Install backer board in accordance with ANSI A108.11 and board manufacturer's instructions. Tape joints and corners, cover with skim coat of setting material to a feather edge.

#### **3.03 INSTALLATION - GENERAL**

- A. Install tile, thresholds, and stair treads and grout in accordance with applicable requirements of ANSI A108.1a through ANSI A108.20, manufacturer's instructions, and TCNA (HB) recommendations.
- B. Lay tile to pattern indicated. Do not interrupt tile pattern through openings.
- C. Cut and fit tile to penetrations through tile, leaving sealant joint space. Form corners and bases neatly. Align floor joints.
- D. Place tile joints uniform in width, subject to variance in tolerance allowed in tile size. Make grout joints without voids, cracks, excess mortar or excess grout, or too little grout.

- E. Form internal angles square and external angles bullnosed.
- F. Install ceramic accessories rigidly in prepared openings.
- G. Install non-ceramic trim in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- H. Sound tile after setting. Replace hollow sounding units.
- I. Keep control and expansion joints free of mortar, grout, and adhesive.
- J. Prior to grouting, allow installation to completely cure; minimum of 48 hours.
- K. Grout tile joints unless otherwise indicated. Use standard grout unless otherwise indicated.
- L. At changes in plane and tile-to-tile control joints, use tile sealant instead of grout, with either bond breaker tape or backer rod as appropriate to prevent three-sided bonding.

### **3.04 INSTALLATION - FLOORS - THIN-SET METHODS**

- A. Over interior concrete substrates, install in accordance with TCNA (HB) Method F113, dry-set or latex-Portland cement bond coat, with standard grout, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Use uncoupling membrane under all tile unless other underlayment is indicated.
  - 2. Where waterproofing membrane is indicated, install in accordance with TCNA (HB) Method F122, with latex-Portland cement grout.
  - 3. Where epoxy bond coat and grout are indicated, install in accordance with TCNA (HB) Method F131.
- B. Over wood substrates, install in accordance with TCNA (HB) Method F142, with standard grout, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Where epoxy bond coat and grout are indicated, install in accordance with TCNA (HB) Method F143.
- C. Over wood substrate with backer board underlayment, install in accordance with TCNA (HB) Method F144, for cementitious backer boards, with standard grout.

### **3.05 INSTALLATION - FLOORS - MORTAR BED METHODS**

- A. Over exterior concrete substrates, install in accordance with TCNA (HB) Method F101, bonded, with standard grout.
- B. Over interior concrete substrates, install in accordance with TCNA (HB) Method F111, with cleavage membrane, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Where waterproofing membrane is indicated, with standard grout or no mention of grout type, install in accordance with TCNA (HB) Method F121.
  - 2. Where epoxy bond coat and grout are indicated, install in accordance with TCNA (HB) Method F132, bonded.
- C. Over wood substrates, install in accordance with TCNA (HB) Method F141, with standard grout, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Cleavage Membrane: Lap edges and ends.
- E. Mortar Bed Thickness: 5/8 inch (15.9 mm), unless otherwise indicated.

### **3.06 INSTALLATION - WALL TILE**

- A. Over cementitious backer units on studs, install in accordance with TCNA (HB) Method W244, using membrane at toilet rooms.
- B. Over interior concrete and masonry install in accordance with TCNA (HB) Method W202, thin-set with dry-set or latex-Portland cement bond coat.
- C. Over wood studs without backer install in accordance with TCNA (HB) Method W231, mortar bed, with membrane where indicated.
- D. Over metal studs without backer install in accordance with TCNA (HB) Method W241, mortar bed, with membrane where indicated.

### **3.07 CLEANING**

- A. Clean tile and grout surfaces.

**3.08 PROTECTION**

- A. Do not permit traffic over finished floor surface for 4 days after installation.

**END OF SECTION 09 30 00**



This page intentionally left blank

**SECTION 09 51 00  
ACOUSTICAL CEILINGS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Suspended metal grid ceiling system.
- B. Acoustical units.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 07 21 00 - Thermal Insulation: Acoustical insulation.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ASTM C635/C635M - Standard Specification for Manufacture, Performance, and Testing of Metal Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and Lay-in Panel Ceilings 2022.
- B. ASTM C636/C636M - Standard Practice for Installation of Metal Ceiling Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and Lay-In Panels 2019.
- C. ASTM E580/E580M - Standard Practice for Installation of Ceiling Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and Lay-in Panels in Areas Subject to Earthquake Ground Motions 2022.
- D. ASTM E1264 - Standard Classification for Acoustical Ceiling Products 2023.

**1.04 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Sequence work to ensure acoustical ceilings are not installed until building is enclosed, sufficient heat is provided, dust generating activities have terminated, and overhead work is completed, tested, and approved.
- B. Do not install acoustical units until after interior wet work is dry.

**1.05 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements for submittal procedures.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate grid layout and related dimensioning.
- C. Product Data: Provide data on suspension system components and acoustical units.
- D. Samples: Submit two samples 12 by 12 inch (403 by 403 mm) in size illustrating material and finish of acoustical units.
- E. Samples: Submit two samples each, 12 inches (403 mm) long, of suspension system main runner, cross runner, and perimeter molding.
- F. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate special procedures and perimeter conditions requiring special attention.
- G. Manufacturer's qualification statement.
- H. Maintenance Materials: Furnish the following for Owner's use in maintenance of project.
  - 1. See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements, for additional provisions.

**1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Suspension System Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.
- B. Acoustical Unit Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.

**1.07 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Maintain uniform temperature of minimum 60 degrees F (16 degrees C), and maximum humidity of 40 percent prior to, during, and after acoustical unit installation.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Acoustic Tiles/Panels: See Materials and Finish List and Drawings.

1. Armstrong World Industries, Inc: [www.armstrongceilings.com/#sle](http://www.armstrongceilings.com/#sle).
2. Certainteed Architectural: [www.certainteed.com/ceilings-and-walls/#sle](http://www.certainteed.com/ceilings-and-walls/#sle).
3. Rockfon: [www.rockfon.com/#sle](http://www.rockfon.com/#sle).

B. Suspension Systems:

1. Same as for acoustical units.
2. Armstrong World Industries, Inc: [www.armstrongceilings.com/#sle](http://www.armstrongceilings.com/#sle).
3. Certainteed Architectural: [www.certainteed.com/ceilings-and-walls/#sle](http://www.certainteed.com/ceilings-and-walls/#sle).
4. Rockfon: [www.rockfon.com/#sle](http://www.rockfon.com/#sle).

**2.02 ACOUSTICAL UNITS**

- A. Acoustical Units - General: ASTM E1264, Class A.

**2.03 SUSPENSION SYSTEM(S)**

- A. Metal Suspension Systems - General: Complying with ASTM C635/C635M; die cut and interlocking components, with perimeter moldings, hold down clips, stabilizer bars, clips, and splices as required.
- B. Metal Suspension Systems - General: Complying with ASTM C635/C635M; die cut and interlocking components, with perimeter moldings, hold down clips, stabilizer bars, clips, and splices as required.
- C. Concealed Ceiling Suspension System: Aluminum grid.
1. Description: Engineered grid, with slotted faces in main tees, cross tees, hangers, trim molding, load resisting struts, hinge assemblies, and other suspension components required to support ceiling and other ceiling supported construction. Panels installed from below by inserting torsion springs into slots in faces of main tees of ceiling grid.
  2. Structural Classification: Intermediate-duty, when tested in accordance with ASTM C635/C635M.
  3. Profile: Flat.
  4. Finish: Powder coat.
  5. Color: Black.

**2.04 ACCESSORIES**

- A. Support Channels and Hangers: Galvanized steel; size and type to suit application, seismic requirements, and ceiling system flatness requirement specified.
- B. Hanger Wire: 12 gauge, 0.08 inch (2 mm) galvanized steel wire.
- C. Hold-Down Clips: Manufacturer's standard clips to suit application.
- D. Perimeter Moldings: Same metal and finish as grid.
- E. Metal Edge Trim for Suspension Systems: Steel or extruded aluminum; provide attachment clips, splice plates, and preformed corner pieces for complete trim system.
- F. Gypsum Board: Fire rated type; 5/8 inch (16 mm) thick, ends and edges square, paper faced.
- G. Touch-up Paint: Type and color to match acoustical and grid units.

**PART 3 EXECUTION**

**3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify existing conditions before starting work.
- B. Verify that layout of hangers will not interfere with other work.

**3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Install after major above-ceiling work is complete.
- B. Coordinate the location of hangers with other work.

**3.03 INSTALLATION - SUSPENSION SYSTEM**

- A. Install suspension system in accordance with ASTM C636/C636M, ASTM E580/E580M, and manufacturer's instructions and as supplemented in this section.

- B. Rigidly secure system, including integral mechanical and electrical components, for maximum deflection of 1:360.
- C. Perimeter Molding: Install at intersection of ceiling and vertical surfaces and at junctions with other interruptions.
  - 1. Use longest practical lengths.
- D. Suspension System, Non-Seismic: Hang suspension system independent of walls, columns, ducts, pipes and conduit. Where carrying members are spliced, avoid visible displacement of face plane of adjacent members.
- E. Seismic Suspension System, Seismic Design Category C: Hang suspension system independent of walls, columns, ducts, pipes and conduit. Maintain a 3/8 inch (9 mm) clearance between grid ends and wall.
- F. Where ducts or other equipment prevent the regular spacing of hangers, reinforce the nearest affected hangers and related carrying channels to span the extra distance.
- G. Do not support components on main runners or cross runners if weight causes total dead load to exceed deflection capability.
- H. Support fixture loads using supplementary hangers located within 6 inches (152 mm) of each corner, or support components independently.
- I. Do not eccentrically load system or induce rotation of runners.

#### **3.04 INSTALLATION - ACOUSTICAL UNITS**

- A. Install acoustical units in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Fit acoustical units in place, free from damaged edges or other defects detrimental to appearance and function.
- C. Fit border trim neatly against abutting surfaces.
- D. Install acoustical units level, in uniform plane, and free from twist, warp, and dents.
- E. Cutting Acoustical Units:
  - 1. Cut to fit irregular grid and perimeter edge trim.
  - 2. Make field cut edges of same profile as factory edges.
  - 3. Double cut and field paint exposed reveal edges.
- F. Where round obstructions occur, provide preformed closures to match perimeter molding.
- G. Lay acoustical insulation for a distance of 48 inches (1219 mm) either side of acoustical partitions as indicated.
- H. Install wood veneer trim using aluminum L angle to attach to suspended grid system as required for application.

#### **3.05 TOLERANCES**

- A. Maximum Variation from Flat and Level Surface: 1/8 inch in 10 feet (3 mm in 3 m).
- B. Maximum Variation from Plumb of Grid Members Caused by Eccentric Loads: 2 degrees.

#### **3.06 CLEANING**

- A. See Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements for additional requirements.
- B. Clean surfaces.
- C. Replace damaged or abraded components.

**END OF SECTION 09 51 00**

This page intentionally left blank

**SECTION 09 54 26  
SUSPENDED WOOD CEILINGS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Wood veneer panels.
- B. Linear wood planks.
- C. Metal suspension system.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 09 51 00 - Acoustical Ceilings: Metal suspension systems.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ASTM C635/C635M - Standard Specification for Manufacture, Performance, and Testing of Metal Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and Lay-in Panel Ceilings 2022.
- B. ASTM C636/C636M - Standard Practice for Installation of Metal Ceiling Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and Lay-In Panels 2019.
- C. ASTM E580/E580M - Standard Practice for Installation of Ceiling Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and Lay-in Panels in Areas Subject to Earthquake Ground Motions 2022.
- D. CISCA (WC) - Wood Ceilings Technical Guidelines 2009.

**1.04 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Sequence work to ensure ceilings are not installed until building is enclosed, dust generating activities have terminated, and overhead work is completed.

**1.05 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements for submittal procedures.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate grid layout and related dimensioning, attachment of wood ceiling components to grid, accessory attachments, junctions with other ceiling finishes, and mechanical and electrical items installed in the ceiling.
- C. Product Data: Provide data on wood ceiling components and suspension system components.
- D. Samples: Submit two full size samples illustrating material and finish of wood ceiling components.
- E. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate special procedures and perimeter conditions requiring special attention.
- F. Maintenance Materials: Furnish the following for Owner's use in maintenance of project.
  - 1. See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements for additional provisions.

**1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Coordination with other trades and lighting must be completed. Any conflicts must be noted to the AOR for review and their input. Coordination to reflect on shop drawings.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section, with at least three years documented experience.
- C. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing work of the type specified and with at least three years documented experience.

**1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Deliver wood ceiling components to project site in original, unopened packages.
- B. Store in fully enclosed space, flat, level and off the floor.

**1.08 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Do not install suspended wood ceiling system until wet construction work is complete and permanent heat and air conditioning is installed and operating.

- B. Maintain room temperature between 60 degrees F (16 degrees C) and 75 degrees F (24 degrees C) and relative humidity between 35 to 55 percent before, during, and after installation.

## **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Suspended Wood Ceilings: See Materials and Finish List and Drawings.

### **2.02 SUSPENDED WOOD CEILING SYSTEM**

- A. Basis of Design: See Materials and Finish List and Drawings.
  - 1. 9 Wood; 2300 Continuous Linear: <https://www.9wood.com/our-products/2300-continuous-linear/>
  - 2. Armstrong WOODWORKS; grille veneered ceiling panels. [armstrongceilings.com](http://armstrongceilings.com).
  - 3. ASI Architectural; Linear Reveal: <https://www.asiarchitectural.com/products/linear/>
  - 4. CertainTeed Decoustics; Linear Wood Ceilings: <https://decoustics.com/products/linear-wood-grille/>
  - 5. Rulon; Linear Open Wood Ceilings: <https://rulonco.com/products/linear/>.
  - 6. Or, Equivalent product that will meet design intent.
- B. Performance Requirements:
  - 1. Design for maximum deflection of 1/360 of span.
- C. Wood-Based Materials: See Materials and Finish List and Drawings.
  - 1. Composite Wood Panels: Containing no urea-formaldehyde resin binders.
- D. Wood Veneer Planks: Composite wood core with wood veneer finish.
  - 1. Panel Size: 24 by 24 inch (610 by 610 mm).
  - 2. Plank Size: 3 1/4" by min. 96 inches (83 by 2438 mm).
  - 3. Veneer Species: See Material & Finish Schedule on drawings.
    - a. Veneer Matching: Random matched.
    - b. Factory Finish: Clear sealer.
  - 4. Acoustical Backer: Fiberglass, min 1/4 inch (6 mm) thick.
- E. Linear Wood Planks: . See Materials and Finish List and Drawings.
  - 1. Type: Pre-assembled module of linear planks with battens attached perpendicularly to back of planks.
- F. Metal Suspension System:
  - 1. General: Comply with ASTM C635/C635M; die cut and interlocking components, with perimeter moldings, hold down clips, stabilizer bars, clips, and splices as required.
  - 2. Concealed Ceiling Suspension System: Aluminum grid.
    - a. Description: Engineered grid, with slotted faces in main tees, cross tees, hangers, trim molding, load resisting struts, hinge assemblies, and other suspension components required to support ceiling and other ceiling supported construction. Panels installed from below by inserting torsion springs into slots in faces of main tees of ceiling grid.
    - b. Structural Classification: Intermediate-duty, when tested in accordance with ASTM C635/C635M.
    - c. Profile: Flat.
    - d. Finish: Powder coat.
    - e. Color: Black.
    - f. Products:
  - 3. Support Channels and Hangers: Galvanized steel; size and type to suit application, seismic requirements, and ceiling system flatness requirement.
- G. Accessories: Manufacturer's standard accessories for installation method indicated, seismic requirements and above-ceiling accessibility.

### **2.03 FABRICATION**

- A. Shop fabricate wood ceiling components to the greatest extent possible.

- B. Fabricate components to allow access to ceiling plenum as required.

### **PART 3 EXECUTION**

#### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify existing conditions before starting work.
- B. Do not install ceiling until after interior wet work is dry.

#### **3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Coordinate the location of hangers with other work.
- B. Layout wood ceiling components in pattern according to reflected ceiling plan and as shown on shop drawings.
- C. Acclimate wood ceiling materials by removing from packaging in installation area a minimum of 48 hours prior to installation.

#### **3.03 INSTALLATION**

- A. General: Install suspended wood ceiling system in accordance with CISCA (WC).
- B. Suspension System:
  - 1. Install suspension system in accordance with ASTM C636/C636M, ASTM E580/E580M, and manufacturer's instructions and as supplemented in this section.
  - 2. Rigidly secure system, including integral mechanical and electrical components, for maximum deflection of 1:360.
  - 3. Hang suspension system independent of walls, columns, ducts, pipes and conduit. Where carrying members are spliced, avoid visible displacement of face plane of adjacent members.
  - 4. Where ducts or other equipment prevent the regular spacing of hangers, reinforce the nearest affected hangers and related carrying channels to span the extra distance.
  - 5. Do not support components on main runners or cross runners if weight causes total dead load to exceed deflection capability.
  - 6. Do not eccentrically load system or induce rotation of runners.
- C. Perimeter Molding: Install at intersection of ceiling and vertical surfaces and at junctions with other interruptions.
- D. Wood Ceiling:
  - 1. Install wood ceilings in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
  - 2. Fit wood components in place, free from damaged edges or other defects detrimental to appearance and function.
  - 3. Install components in uniform plane, and free from twist, warp, and dents.
  - 4. Cut to fit irregular grid and perimeter edge trim.
  - 5. Make field cut edges of same profile as factory edges, seal and finish according to manufacturer.
  - 6. Install acoustical backer above wood ceiling components; fit tight between grid members.

#### **3.04 TOLERANCES**

- A. Maximum Variation from Flat and Level Surface: 1/8 inch in 10 feet (3 mm in 3 m).

#### **3.05 CLEANING**

- A. Clean and touch up minor finish damage. Remove and replace components that cannot be successfully cleaned and repaired.

**END OF SECTION 09 54 26**



This page intentionally left blank

**SECTION 09 65 00  
RESILIENT FLOORING**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Work Results:
- B. Resilient tile flooring.
- C. Resilient base.
- D. Installation accessories.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 03 30 00 - Cast-in-Place Concrete: Restrictions on curing compounds for concrete slabs and floors to receive adhesive-applied resilient flooring.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ASTM D6329 - Standard Guide for Developing Methodology for Evaluating the Ability of Indoor Materials to Support Microbial Growth Using Static Environmental Chambers 1998 (Reapproved 2023).
- B. ASTM E648 - Standard Test Method for Critical Radiant Flux of Floor-Covering Systems Using a Radiant Heat Energy Source 2019a, with Editorial Revision (2020).
- C. ASTM F1700 - Standard Specification for Solid Vinyl Floor Tile 2020.
- D. ASTM F1861 - Standard Specification for Resilient Wall Base 2021.
- E. RFCI (RWP) - Recommended Work Practices for Removal of Resilient Floor Coverings 2018.

**1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide data on specified products, describing physical and performance characteristics; including sizes, patterns and colors available; and installation instructions.
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate seaming plans and floor patterns.
- D. Verification Samples: Submit two samples, 12 by 12 inch (403 by 403 mm) in size illustrating color and pattern for each resilient flooring product specified.
  - 1. Resilient Base: 12 inch length of each product.
  - 2. Resilient Moldings: 12 inch length of each product.
- E. Manufacturer's Qualification Statement.
- F. Closeout Submittals
  - 1. Operation and Maintenance Data: For resilient flooring.

**1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing specified flooring with minimum three years documented experience.
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Independent firm specializing in performing concrete slab moisture testing and inspections of the type specified in this section.
- C. Field Samples: Construct field samples of each type of resilient floor 100 sq. ft.
  - 1. Approved samples establish work results standard.

**1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Upon receipt, immediately remove any shrink-wrap and check materials for damage and the correct style, color, quantity and run numbers.
- B. Store all materials off of the floor in an acclimatized, weather-tight space.
- C. Store resilient tile flooring on flat surfaces.

### 1.07 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Store materials for not less than 48 hours prior to installation in area of installation at a temperature of 70 degrees F (21 degrees C) to achieve temperature stability. Thereafter, maintain conditions above 55 degrees F (13 degrees C), OR:
  - 1. Building enclosed and environmental systems maintaining design conditions for Owner occupancy.
  - 2. Establish ambient conditions 48 hours, minimum before and maintain conditions during and 48 hours, minimum after installation.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.01 TILE FLOORING

- A. Vinyl Tile - Type RB-01: Printed film type, with transparent or translucent wear layer; acoustic interlayer or backing.
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Interface; Luxury Vinyl Tile: [www.shop.interface.tile](http://www.shop.interface.tile).
    - b. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.
  - 2. Minimum Requirements: Comply with ASTM F1700, Class III.
  - 3. Critical Radiant Flux (CRF): Minimum 0.45 watt per square centimeter, when tested in accordance with ASTM E648.
  - 4. Mold and Microbial Resistance: Highly resistant when tested in accordance with ASTM D6329.
  - 5. Plank Tile Size: See Material and Finish Schedule in Drawings.
  - 6. Total Thickness: 0.18 inch (4.5 mm).
  - 7. Tile Edge: Straight.
  - 8. Pattern: As indicated.
  - 9. Color: As indicated.

### 2.02 RESILIENT BASE

- A. Resilient Base - Type TV: ASTM F1861, Type TS, rubber, vulcanized thermoset; style as scheduled.
  - 1. Manufacturers: See Material and Finish List on Drawings.
  - 2. Height: 4 inches (100 mm).
  - 3. Thickness: 0.125 inch (3.2 mm).
  - 4. Finish: Satin.
  - 5. Length: Coils.
  - 6. Color: See Material and Finish List on Drawings..

### 2.03 ACCESSORIES

- A. Primers and Adhesives: Waterproof; types recommended by flooring manufacturer.
- B. Rubber Transition Strips:
  - 1. Manufacturers and Products: See Material and Finish List on Drawings.
    - a. Confirm with Architect if not seen on Drawings and Finish List.
  - 2. Color: See Material and Finish List on Drawings.
  - 3. Profiles: See Material and Finish List on Drawings.
- C. Vinyl Transition Strips:
  - 1. Manufacturers and Products: See Material and Finish List on Drawings.
    - a. Confirm with Architect if not seen on Drawings and Finish List.
  - 2. Color: See Material and Finish List on Drawings.
  - 3. Profiles: See Material and Finish List on Drawings.

### 2.04 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics:
  - 1. Class I per ASTM E648, Critical Radiant Flux Classification.

## **2.05 INSTALLATION MATERIALS**

- A. Patching and Leveling Materials: Flooring manufacturer recommended products for applicable substrates.
- B. Edge Strips: Rubber and Vinyl; profiles shown on Drawings.
  - 1. Colors: See Drawings.
- C. Adhesives: Flooring manufacturer recommended product.
- D. Floor Polish: Flooring manufacturer recommended product.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify that surfaces are flat to tolerances acceptable to flooring manufacturer, free of cracks that might telegraph through flooring, clean, dry, and free of curing compounds, surface hardeners, and other chemicals that might interfere with bonding of flooring to substrate.
- B. Verify that wall surfaces are smooth and flat within the tolerances specified for that type of work, are dust-free, and are ready to receive resilient base.
- C. Cementitious Subfloor Surfaces: Verify that substrates are ready for resilient flooring installation by testing for moisture and alkalinity (pH).
  - 1. Obtain instructions if test results are not within limits recommended by resilient flooring manufacturer and adhesive materials manufacturer.
- D. Verify that required floor-mounted utilities are in correct location.

### **3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Remove existing resilient flooring and flooring adhesives; follow the recommendations of RFCI (RWP).
- B. Prepare floor substrates as recommended by flooring and adhesive manufacturers.
- C. Remove subfloor ridges and bumps. Fill minor low spots, cracks, joints, holes, and other defects with subfloor filler to achieve smooth, flat, hard surface.
- D. Prohibit traffic until filler is fully cured.

### **3.03 INSTALLATION - GENERAL**

- A. Starting installation constitutes acceptance of subfloor conditions.
- B. Install in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.

### **3.04 INSTALLATION - TILE FLOORING**

- A. Mix tile from container to ensure shade variations are consistent when tile is placed, unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's installation instructions.

### **3.05 INSTALLATION - RESILIENT BASE**

- A. Fit joints tightly and make vertical. Maintain minimum dimension of 18 inches (45 mm) between joints.
- B. Install base on solid backing. Bond tightly to wall and floor surfaces.

### **3.06 CLEANING**

- A. Remove excess adhesive from floor, base, and wall surfaces without damage.
- B. Clean in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.

### **3.07 PROTECTION**

- A. Prohibit traffic on resilient flooring for 48 hours after installation.
- B. Provide surface protection during construction period.

**END OF SECTION 09 65 00**

This page intentionally left blank

**SECTION 09 68 13  
TILE CARPETING**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Carpet tile, fully adhered.
- B. Removal of existing carpet tile.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 09 05 61 - Common Work Results for Flooring Preparation: Removal of existing floor coverings, cleaning, and preparation.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ASTM D2859 - Standard Test Method for Ignition Characteristics of Finished Textile Floor Covering Materials 2016 (Reapproved 2021).
- B. ASTM E648 - Standard Test Method for Critical Radiant Flux of Floor-Covering Systems Using a Radiant Heat Energy Source 2019a, with Editorial Revision (2020).
- C. NFPA 253 - Standard Method of Test for Critical Radiant Flux of Floor Covering Systems Using a Radiant Heat Energy Source 2023.

**1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide data on specified products, describing physical and performance characteristics; sizes, patterns, colors available, and method of installation.
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate layout of joints.
- D. Samples: Submit two carpet tiles illustrating color and pattern design for each carpet color selected.
- E. Accessory Samples: Submit two 12 inch (403 mm) long samples of edge strip, and base cap.
- F. Concrete Subfloor Test Report: Submit a copy of the moisture and alkalinity (pH) test reports.
- G. Operation and Maintenance Data: Include maintenance procedures, recommended maintenance materials, and suggested schedule for cleaning.

**1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing specified carpet tile with minimum three years documented experience.

**1.06 FIELD CONDITIONS, DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Store materials in area of installation for minimum period of 24 hours prior to installation.
- B. Storage and Handling Requirements:
  - 1. Store products inside building.
- C. Do not start installation until painting and similar finish work are complete.
- D. Ambient Conditions:
  - 1. Building enclosed and environmental systems maintaining design conditions for Owner occupancy.

**1.07 WARRANTY**

- A. Manufacturer Warranty:
  - 1. Carpet Tile: Warrant against product failure, including:
    - a. Defective materials.
    - b. Excessive fading.
    - c. Loss of static control.
    - d. Edge raveling.
    - e. Runs.

- f. Loss of tuft bind strength.
  - g. Loss of face fiber.
  - h. Excessive wear.
2. Warranty Period: 10 years.

## **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Tile Carpeting:
  1. Manufacturers and Products: See Materials and Finish List on Drawings.

### **2.02 MATERIALS**

- A. Tile Carpeting, Type I: Tufted, manufactured in one color dye lot.
  1. Critical Radiant Flux: Minimum of 0.45 watts/sq cm, when tested in accordance with ASTM E648 or NFPA 253.
  2. Surface Flammability Ignition: Pass ASTM D2859 (the "pill test").

### **2.03 ACCESSORIES**

- A. Subfloor Filler: White premix latex; type recommended by flooring material manufacturer.
- B. Edge Strips: Embossed aluminum, \_\_\_\_\_ color.
- C. Edgings:
  1. Profiles and Materials: See Drawings.
- D. Carpet Tile Adhesive: Recommended by carpet tile manufacturer; releasable type.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify that subfloor surfaces are smooth and flat within tolerances specified for that type of work and are ready to receive carpet tile.
- B. Verify that wall surfaces are smooth and flat within the tolerances specified for that type of work, are dust-free, and are ready to receive carpet tile.
- C. Verify that subfloor surfaces are dust-free and free of substances that could impair bonding of adhesive materials to subfloor surfaces.
- D. Cementitious Subfloor Surfaces: Verify that substrates are ready for flooring installation by testing for moisture and alkalinity (pH).
  1. Obtain instructions if test results are not within limits recommended by flooring material manufacturer and adhesive materials manufacturer.

### **3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Remove existing carpet tile.
- B. Prepare floor substrates for installation of flooring in accordance with Section 09 05 61.
- C. Prepare floor substrates as recommended by flooring and adhesive manufacturers.
- D. Remove subfloor ridges and bumps. Fill minor or local low spots, cracks, joints, holes, and other defects with subfloor filler.
- E. Apply, trowel, and float filler to achieve smooth, flat, hard surface. Prohibit traffic until filler is cured.
- F. Vacuum clean substrate.

### **3.03 INSTALLATION**

- A. Starting installation constitutes acceptance of subfloor conditions.
- B. Install carpet tile in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Blend carpet from different cartons to ensure minimal variation in color match.
- D. Cut carpet tile clean. Fit carpet tight to intersection with vertical surfaces without gaps.

- E. Lay carpet tile in square pattern, with pile direction parallel to next unit, set parallel to building lines.
- F. Trim carpet tile neatly at walls and around interruptions.
- G. Complete installation of edge strips, concealing exposed edges.

**3.04 CLEANING**

- A. Remove excess adhesive without damage, from floor, base, and wall surfaces.
- B. Clean and vacuum carpet surfaces.

**3.05 PROTECTION**

- A. Protect carpet tile against soiling and wear during remaining construction period.
- B. Provide hardboard or other rigid panel protection where subject to wheeled or heavy foot traffic

**END OF SECTION 09 68 13**



This page intentionally left blank

**SECTION 09 84 30  
SOUND-ABSORBING WALL AND CEILING UNITS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Sound-absorbing panels.
- B. Sound-absorbing ceiling baffles.
- C. Mounting accessories.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 09 51 00 - Acoustical Ceilings: Ceiling suspension system.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ASTM C423 - Standard Test Method for Sound Absorption and Sound Absorption Coefficients by the Reverberation Room Method 2023.
- B. ASTM C636/C636M - Standard Practice for Installation of Metal Ceiling Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and Lay-In Panels 2019.
- C. ASTM E580/E580M - Standard Practice for Installation of Ceiling Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and Lay-in Panels in Areas Subject to Earthquake Ground Motions 2022.
- D. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials 2023b.
- E. ASTM E795 - Standard Practices for Mounting Test Specimens During Sound Absorption Tests 2023.

**1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Manufacturer's printed data sheets for products specified.
- C. Shop Drawings: Fabrication and installation details, panel layout, fabric orientation, and wood grain orientation.
- D. Selection Samples: Manufacturer's color charts for fabric covering, indicating full range of fabrics, colors, and patterns available.
- E. Verification Samples: Fabricated samples of each type of panel specified; 12 by 12 inch (305 by 305 mm), showing construction, edge details, and fabric covering.
- F. Test Reports: Certified test data from an independent test agency verifying that panels meet specified requirements for acoustical and fire performance.
- G. Manufacturer's qualification statement.

**1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing products of the type specified in this section, with at least three years of documented experience.

**1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Protect acoustical units from moisture during shipment, storage, and handling. Deliver in factory-wrapped bundles; do not open bundles until units are needed for installation.
- B. Store units flat, in dry, well-ventilated space; do not stand on end.
- C. Protect edges from damage.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 FABRIC-COVERED SOUND-ABSORBING UNITS**

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. See Materials and Finish List and Drawings.
- B. General:

1. Prefinished, factory assembled fabric-covered panels.
  2. Surface Burning Characteristics: Flame spread index of 25 or less and smoke developed index of 450 or less, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
- C. Fabric-Covered Acoustical Panels for Walls and Ceilings:
1. Panel Core: Manufacturer's standard rigid or semi-rigid fiberglass core.
    - a. Facing: 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) impact-resistant and tackable surface laminated to core.
    - b. Acoustic Interlayer: Mass loaded vinyl sheet.
  2. Panel Size: See Drawings.
  3. Panel Thickness: As required to meet required acoustical performance.
  4. Edges: Perimeter edges reinforced by a formulated resin hardener.
  5. Mounting Method: Direct applied with adhesive.
  6. Mounting Method: Spline-mounted, concealed.
  7. Mounting Method: Back-mounted with mechanical fasteners.
  8. Mounting Method: On furring strips.
  9. Mounting Method: Lay-in panel for suspended ceiling system, exposed grid.
    - a. Suspension System: See Section 09 51 00.
  10. Mounting Method: Horizontally suspended from ceiling.
- D. Fabric-Covered Acoustical Ceiling Baffles:
1. Baffle Core: Manufacturer's standard rigid or semi-rigid fiberglass core.
  2. Baffle Size: See Drawings.
  3. Baffle Thickness: As required to meet required acoustical performance.
  4. Edges: Perimeter edges reinforced by a formulated resin hardener.
  5. Color: As indicated.
  6. Mounting: Vertically suspended from ceiling or structure by one edge of panel.

## 2.02 WOOD VENEER SOUND-ABSORBING UNITS

- A. Manufacturers:
1. See Materials and Finish List and Drawings.
- B. Wood Veneer Acoustical Panels for Walls and Ceilings: Medium Density Fiberboard (MDF) core panels with prime grade, finished face veneer and nonwoven acoustical fabric adhered to back of panel.
1. Surface Burning Characteristics: Flame spread index of 25 or less and smoke developed index of 450 or less, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
  2. Acoustic Back-Up Material: Compressed fiberglass board, 1.5 lbs/cu ft (24 kgs/cu m) density, in sizes to fit furring applications.
    - a. Thickness: As required to comply with NRC requirements indicated.
  3. Provide MDF with no added urea formaldehyde (NAUF).
  4. Panel Weight: 1.29 psf (6.3 kgs/sq m).
  5. Surface Veneer Species: See Materials and Finish List and Drawings.
  6. Mounting: Use fixing clips to attach to wood furring strips anchored to wall substrate and ceiling substrate.
    - a. Edge Profile: Reveal.
  7. Mounting: Lay-in panel for suspended ceiling system, exposed grid.
    - a. Edge Profile: Reveal.
  8. Mounting: Use fixing clip to attach to face of tee profile suspended ceiling system, concealed grid.
    - a. Edge Profile: Tongue and groove.
  9. Suspension System: See Section 09 51 00.

## 2.03 FIBERGLASS SOUND-ABSORBING UNITS

- A. Manufacturers:
1. See Materials and Finish List and Drawings.

## **2.04 FABRICATION**

- A. Fabric Wrapped, General: Fabricate panels to sizes and configurations as indicated, with fabric facing installed without sagging, wrinkles, blisters, or visible seams.
- B. Tolerances: Fabricate to finished tolerance of plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) for thickness, overall length and width, and squareness from corner to corner.
- C. Factory-applied finishes on wood veneer panels to be uniform, smooth, and without blemishes.

## **2.05 ACCESSORIES**

- A. Spline-Mounting Accessories: Manufacturer's standard concealed connecting splines of extruded aluminum designed for screw attachment to walls, with coordinating moldings and trim for interior and exterior corners and miscellaneous conditions.
  - 1. Color of Exposed Trim: As selected from manufacturer's standards.
- B. Back-Mounting Accessories: Manufacturer's standard accessories for concealed support, designed to allow panel removal, and as follows:
- C. Ceiling-Suspended Accessories: Manufacturer's standard accessories at locations as indicated on each acoustical unit, sized appropriately for weight of acoustical unit.
- D. Fixing Clips: Manufacturer's standard for application as indicated.
- E. Furring Strips: Metal hat channel.
- F. Panel Adhesive: Acceptable to acoustical panel manufacturer for application as indicated.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine substrates for conditions detrimental to installation of acoustical units. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.02 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install acoustical units in locations as indicated, following manufacturer's installation instructions.
- B. Install mounting accessories and supports in accordance with shop drawings.
- C. Align panels accurately, with edges plumb and top edges level. Scribe to fit accurately at adjoining work and penetrations.
- D. Suspend ceiling baffles at locations and heights as indicated.
- E. Furring Mounted Wood Veneer Panels:
  - 1. For horizontal panel layout, attach furring strip vertically providing 1 inch (25.4 mm) clearance along length of strip from end walls.
  - 2. For vertical panel layout, attach furring strip horizontally providing 1 inch (25.4 mm) clearance along length of strip from floor and ceiling.
  - 3. Install furring strip along meeting edges of adjacent panels to ensure they are attached to same furring strip along abutted edge; 24 inch (610 mm) on center, maximum.
  - 4. Install acoustic back-up material between furring as required for application.
  - 5. Adhere first panel from edge to furring strip, and attach subsequent panels using fixing clips.
- F. Install acoustical units to construction tolerances of plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) for the following:
  - 1. Plumb and level.
  - 2. Flatness.

### **3.03 CLEANING**

- A. Clean sound-absorptive panels upon completion of installation from dust and other foreign materials, following manufacturer's instructions.

**3.04 PROTECTION**

- A. Provide protection of installed acoustical panels until Date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Replace panels that cannot be cleaned and repaired to satisfaction of the Architect.

**END OF SECTION 09 84 30**

**SECTION 09 91 23  
INTERIOR PAINTING**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Surface preparation.
- B. Field application of paints.
- C. Scope: Finish interior surfaces exposed to view, unless fully factory-finished and unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Interior Brick Mineral Stain.
- E. Do Not Paint or Finish the Following Items:
  - 1. Items factory-finished unless otherwise indicated; materials and products having factory-applied primers are not considered factory finished.
  - 2. Items indicated to receive other finishes.
  - 3. Items indicated to remain unfinished.
  - 4. Fire rating labels, equipment serial number and capacity labels, bar code labels, and operating parts of equipment.
  - 5. Floors, unless specifically indicated.
  - 6. Glass.
  - 7. Concealed pipes, ducts, and conduits.

**1.02 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Comply with ASTM D16 for interpretation of terms used in this section.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. 40 CFR 59, Subpart D - National Volatile Organic Compound Emission Standards for Architectural Coatings; U.S. Environmental Protection Agency current edition.
- B. ASTM D16 - Standard Terminology for Paint, Related Coatings, Materials, and Applications 2019.
- C. ASTM D4442 - Standard Test Methods for Direct Moisture Content Measurement of Wood and Wood-Based Materials 2020.
- D. MPI (APSM) - Master Painters Institute Architectural Painting Specification Manual Current Edition.
- E. SCAQMD 1113 - Architectural Coatings 1977, with Amendment (2016).
- F. SSPC-SP 1 - Solvent Cleaning 2015, with Editorial Revision (2016).
- G. SSPC-SP 2 - Hand Tool Cleaning 2018.
- H. SSPC-SP 6 - Commercial Blast Cleaning 2007.

**1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide complete list of products to be used, with the following information for each:
  - 1. Manufacturer's name, product name and/or catalog number, and general product category (e.g., "alkyd enamel"), technical data.
  - 2. MPI product number (e.g., MPI #47).
  - 3. Cross-reference to specified paint system products to be used in project; include description of each system.
- C. Samples: Submit three paper "draw down" samples, 8-1/2 by 11 inches (216 by 279 mm) in size, illustrating range of colors available for each finishing product specified.
  - 1. Where sheen is specified, submit samples in only that sheen.
  - 2. Where sheen is not specified, discuss sheen options with Architect before preparing samples, to eliminate sheens not required.

- D. Samples: Submit two paper chip samples, 12 inch (304 mm) in size illustrating range of colors and textures available for each surface finishing product scheduled.
- E. For Brick Stain
  - 1. Benchmark Samples (mockups): Provide up to five (5) color enhanced loose units that represent the over-all color range to determine closest approved sample matching to existing masonry. A field sample can be created on a 10 sq. ft. area to be determined by the owner or the architect on the actual surface of the building to be stained.
  - 2. Submit 10 jobs over 15 years
    - a. The date on which the work was completed
    - b. The precise location of the job including description of the structure or portion of the structure stained, street address, city, state and zip code
    - c. Name of Product used
    - d. Before and After Pictures
- F. Manufacturer's Instructions: Indicate special surface preparation procedures.
- G. Qualification Data: For Applicator
- H. Warranty example sheets.

#### **1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified, with minimum 10 years documented experience.
- B. Applicator Qualifications: Company specializing in performing the type of work specified with minimum 10 years experience and approved by manufacturer.

#### **1.06 MOCK-UP**

- A. See Section 01 40 00 - Quality Requirements, for general requirements for mock-up.
  - 1. Mock-up provided for Brick Stain only.
- B. Locate where directed by Architect.
- C. Mock-up may remain as part of the work if found to be acceptable.

#### **1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Deliver products to site in sealed and labeled containers; inspect to verify acceptability.
- B. Container Label: Include manufacturer's name, type of paint, brand name, lot number, brand code, coverage, surface preparation, drying time, cleanup requirements, color designation, and instructions for mixing and reducing.
- C. Paint Materials: Store at minimum ambient temperature of 45 degrees F (7 degrees C) and a maximum of 90 degrees F (32 degrees C), in ventilated area, and as required by manufacturer's instructions.

#### **1.08 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Do not apply materials when surface and ambient temperatures are outside the temperature ranges required by the paint product manufacturer.
- B. Follow manufacturer's recommended procedures for producing best results, including testing of substrates, moisture in substrates, and humidity and temperature limitations.
- C. Do not apply materials when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent, at temperatures less than 5 degrees F (3 degrees C) above the dew point, or to damp or wet surfaces.
- D. Minimum Application Temperatures for Paints: 50 degrees F (10 degrees C) for interiors unless required otherwise by manufacturer's instructions. Maximum temperatures for Brick Stain 100 degrees F (32 degrees C).
- E. Provide lighting level of 80 fc (860 lux) measured mid-height at substrate surface.

## **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Colors by Basis of Design Manufacturer Designations: See Materials and Finish List, and Drawings.
- B. Manufacturers: See Materials and Finish List, and Drawings for Basis of Design.
  - 1. Sherwin-Williams Company: [www.sherwin-williams.com/#sle](http://www.sherwin-williams.com/#sle).
  - 2. Behr Process Corporation: [www.behr.com/#sle](http://www.behr.com/#sle).
  - 3. PPG Paints: [www.ppgpaints.com/#sle](http://www.ppgpaints.com/#sle).
  - 4. Benjamin Moore.
  - 5. PermaTint. 100 Bradwick Drive, Concord ON, L4K 1K8 Canada 1-866-850-TINT (8468). <https://www.permatint.com/contact>
  - 6. Masonry Cosmetics, Inc. 3210 Sugar Maple Business Ct, South Bend, IN 46613. Toll free: 888-698-8705, Tel:574-234-1812, [info@masonrycosmetics.com](mailto:info@masonrycosmetics.com), [masonrycosmetics.com](http://masonrycosmetics.com), [architecturalmasonrystaining.com](http://architecturalmasonrystaining.com)

### **2.02 PAINTS AND FINISHES - GENERAL**

- A. Paints and Finishes: Ready-mixed, unless intended to be a field-catalyzed paint.
  - 1. Provide paints and finishes of a soft paste consistency, capable of being readily and uniformly dispersed to a homogeneous coating, with good flow and brushing properties, and capable of drying or curing free of streaks or sags.
  - 2. Supply each paint material in quantity required to complete entire project's work from a single production run.
  - 3. Do not reduce, thin, or dilute paint or finishes or add materials unless such procedure is specifically described in manufacturer's product instructions.
- B. Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Content:
  - 1. Provide paints and finishes that comply with the most stringent requirements specified in the following:
    - a. 40 CFR 59, Subpart D--National Volatile Organic Compound Emission Standards for Architectural Coatings.
  - 2. Determination of VOC Content: Testing and calculation in accordance with 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24), exclusive of colorants added to a tint base and water added at project site; or other method acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

### **2.03 UNIT MASONRY STAIN MATERIALS, GENERAL**

- A. Materials: (basis of design): Ceramic based stain shall contain a colored "talcum powder" consistency (80-100 mesh) pigment, identical to natural pigments used in brick manufacturing, a proprietary bonding chemical and water. The water shall act as a carrying agent to feed the pigment and bonding chemical into the
- B. pore structure of the masonry units. The bonding chemical changes from a liquid to a solid state during and after the drying process.
- C. Materials once applied should not leave a visible gloss, sheen or film on masonry unit.
- D. VOC Content is to be very low and have an estimated maximum value of 0.01 g/g.

### **2.04 ACCESSORY MATERIALS**

- A. Accessory Materials: Provide primers, sealers, cleaning agents, cleaning cloths, sanding materials, and clean-up materials as required for final completion of painted surfaces.
- B. Patching Material: Latex filler.
- C. Fastener Head Cover Material: Latex filler.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify that surfaces are ready to receive work as instructed by the product manufacturer.



- B. Examine surfaces scheduled to be finished prior to commencement of work. Report any condition that may potentially affect proper application.
- C. Test shop-applied primer for compatibility with subsequent cover materials.
- D. Preinstallation Testing: Measure moisture content of surfaces using an electronic moisture meter. Do not apply finishes unless moisture content of surfaces is below the following maximums:
  - 1. Gypsum Wallboard: 12 percent.
  - 2. Plaster and Stucco: 12 percent.
  - 3. Masonry, Concrete, and Concrete Masonry Units: 12 percent.
  - 4. Interior Wood: 15 percent, measured in accordance with ASTM D4442.
  - 5. Concrete Floors and Traffic Surfaces: 8 percent.
- E. Gypsum Board: Verify that finishing compound is dried and sanded smooth.
- F. Concrete and Masonry: Verify surface has cured at least 30 days and that the pH of the surface is between 6 and 9.

### 3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Clean surfaces thoroughly and correct defects prior to application.
- B. Prepare surfaces using the methods recommended by the manufacturer for achieving the best result for the substrate under the project conditions.
- C. Remove or mask surface appurtenances, including electrical plates, hardware, light fixture trim, escutcheons, and fittings, prior to preparing surfaces or finishing.
- D. Seal surfaces that might cause bleed through or staining of topcoat.
- E. Remove mildew from impervious surfaces by scrubbing with solution of tetra-sodium phosphate and bleach. Rinse with clean water and allow surface to dry.
- F. Concrete:
  - 1. Remove release agents, curing compounds, efflorescence, and chalk. Do not coat surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces to be coated exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.
- G. Masonry:
  - 1. Remove efflorescence and chalk. Do not coat surfaces if moisture content, alkalinity of surfaces, or if alkalinity of mortar joints exceed that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions. Allow to dry.
  - 2. Prepare surface as recommended by top coat manufacturer.
  - 3. Clean surfaces with pressurized water. Use pressure range of 600 to 1,500 psi (4,140 to 10,350 kPa) at 6 to 12 inches (150 to 300 mm). Allow to dry.
  - 4. General: Remove hardware, machined surfaces, lighting fixtures and similar items already installed that are not being stained. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size and weight of the item, provide surface- applied protection before surface preparation and staining.
    - a. After completing staining operations, reinstall items removed using workers skilled in trades involved.
  - 5. Surface Preparation: Clean and prepare surfaces to be stained according to manufacturer's written instructions for each particular substrate condition and as specified.
    - a. Remove surface dirt, oil or grease by washing with a detergent solution recommended by masonry manufacturer; rinse thoroughly with clean water and allow to dry.
    - b. Walls will need to be free of any acid or cleaning solution residue prior to any staining. Keeping the PH level on the wall as close to neutral as possible.
    - c. Ensure structurally sound surfaces that are dry, clean and free of the following: dirt, moisture, loose particles, oil, grease, asphalt, tar, paint, wax, rust, waterproofing, curing and parting compounds and other foreign matter.

- H. Concrete Floors and Traffic Surfaces: Remove contamination, acid etch and rinse floors with clear water. Verify required acid-alkali balance is achieved. Allow to dry.
- I. Gypsum Board: Fill minor defects with filler compound. Spot prime defects after repair.
- J. Plaster: Fill hairline cracks, small holes, and imperfections with latex patching plaster. Make smooth and flush with adjacent surfaces. Wash and neutralize high-alkali surfaces.
- K. Aluminum: Remove surface contamination and oils and wash with solvent according to SSPC-SP 1.
- L. Copper: Remove contamination by steam, high-pressure water, or solvent washing.
- M. Galvanized Surfaces:
  - 1. Prepare surface according to SSPC-SP 2.
- N. Ferrous Metal:
  - 1. Solvent clean according to SSPC-SP 1.
  - 2. Remove rust, loose mill scale, and other foreign substances using methods recommended in writing by paint manufacturer and blast cleaning according to SSPC-SP 6 Commercial Blast Cleaning. Protect from corrosion until coated.
- O. Wood Surfaces to Receive Opaque Finish: Wipe off dust and grit prior to priming. Seal knots, pitch streaks, and sappy sections with sealer. Fill nail holes and cracks after primer has dried; sand between coats. Back prime concealed surfaces before installation.
- P. Wood Doors to be Field-Finished: Seal wood door top and bottom edge surfaces with clear sealer.
- Q. Metal Doors to be Painted: Prime metal door top and bottom edge surfaces.

### 3.03 APPLICATION

- A. Apply products in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual".
- B. Where adjacent sealant is to be painted, do not apply finish coats until sealant is applied.
- C. Do not apply finishes to surfaces that are not dry. Allow applied coats to dry before next coat is applied.
- D. Apply each coat to uniform appearance in thicknesses specified by manufacturer.
- E. Sand wood and metal surfaces lightly between coats to achieve required finish.
- F. Vacuum clean surfaces of loose particles. Use tack cloth to remove dust and particles just prior to applying next coat.
- G. Reinstall electrical cover plates, hardware, light fixture trim, escutcheons, and fittings removed prior to finishing.
- H. Masonry / Brick Stain:
  - 1. Mixing: Mix and prepare stains according to the manufacturer's written instructions. Stir stain thoroughly before applying and frequently during application to maintain color consistency.
    - a. Maintain containers used in mixing and application in a clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
    - b. Stir mixture before application to insure all materials stay suspended. Stir as required during application.
  - 2. Minimum Application Rate: Apply stain to manufacturer's recommended required rate, measured by bricks stained per brush, to ensure proper penetration. Apply aqueous slurry (Proven Masonry Stain) with brush individually to each masonry unit, maintaining the integrity of the mortar (by artistic means).
    - a. Do not apply stain on surfaces that are not sufficiently dry. If succeeding application is needed, ensure that the surface is dry before re-applying.

### 3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. See Section 01 40 00 - Quality Requirements, for general requirements for field inspection.

- B. Architect/Owner shall review and approve “artistic” application of stain by Contractor in a test area, mock-up panel or loose samples, and as accepted for approved benchmark samples.
- C. Field Tests and Inspections: Engage inspectors to perform tests and inspections and prepare reports. Allow inspectors access to work areas.
  - 1. Failed Test Retest Cost: Contractor responsibility.
- D. Testing: Dry film thickness.
- E. Non-Conforming Work: Remove and replace or apply additional coats, and re-test.

### **3.05 CLEANING**

- A. Collect waste material that could constitute a fire hazard, place in closed metal containers, and remove daily from site.
- B. Remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials.
- C. Remove splattered paints. Protect adjacent surfaces from damage.
- D. Cleanup: At the end of each work day, remove empty cans, rags, rubbish and other discarded materials from the project site.
  - 1. After completing staining, clean window glass and other surfaces. Remove splattered stain by proper methods without scratching or damaging adjacent finished surfaces.
  - 2. Dispose of excess materials according to state, federal and local governmental regulations.

### **3.06 PROTECTION**

- A. Protect finishes until completion of project.
- B. Touch-up damaged finishes after Substantial Completion.
- C. Protect work of other trades as necessary, whether being stained or not, against damage from staining. Correct damage by cleaning, repairing and re-staining as approved by architect.

**END OF SECTION 09 91 23**

**SECTION 09 93 00  
STAINING AND TRANSPARENT FINISHING**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Field application of semi-transparent masonry stains.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 09 91 23 - Interior Painting: Stains and transparent finishes for concrete substrates.

**1.03 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide complete list of products to be used, with the following information for each:
  - 1. Manufacturer's name, product name and catalog number, and general product category.
  - 2. Manufacturer's installation instructions.
  - 3. If proposal of substitutions is allowed under submittal procedures, explanation of substitutions proposed.
- C. Samples: Two samples on brick veneer mockups, 16 inch by 16 inch (400 mm by 400 mm) in size, indicating selected colors and sheens for each system.
- D. Manufacturer's Instructions: Indicate special surface preparation procedures and substrate conditions requiring special attention.
- E. Manufacturer's project-specific product guidance: Contact the manufacturer to get guidance on the correct color and formulation of the stain to work with the color and composition of the existing brick to be stained, to achieve Architect's desired color and opacity.
- F. Maintenance Materials: Furnish the following for Owner's use in maintenance of project.
  - 1. See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements for additional provisions.
  - 2. Extra Stock Materials: Stain and transparent finish materials, 1 gal (4 L) of each color and type; store where directed.
    - a. Label each container with color and type in addition to the manufacturer's label.

**1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Applicator Qualifications: Company specializing in performing work of the type specified and with at least three years of documented experience.

**1.05 MOCKUPS**

- A. Prepare in-situ mockups of stain on existing brick wall on a brick area above the proposed ceiling line, at least 2 feet x 2 feet, with sufficient lighting to judge the stain effect on the existing brick. Repeat mockup samples until Architect's desired effect is achieved. Mockups may remain in place.

**1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Deliver products to site in sealed and labeled containers; inspect to verify acceptability.
- B. Container Label: Include manufacturer's name, type of stain or transparent finish, brand name, lot number, brand code, coverage, surface preparation, drying time, cleanup requirements, color designation, and instructions for mixing and reducing.
- C. Stain and Transparent Finish Materials: Store at minimum ambient temperature of 45 degrees F (7 degrees C) and a maximum of 90 degrees F (32 degrees C), in ventilated area, and as required by manufacturer's instructions.

**1.07 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Do not apply materials when surface and ambient temperatures are outside the temperature ranges required by manufacturer of stains and transparent finishes.

- B. Follow manufacturer's recommended procedures for producing best results, including testing of substrates, moisture in substrates, and humidity and temperature limitations.

## **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Provide finishes used in any individual system from the same manufacturer; no exceptions.
- B. Mineral Based Masonry Stains:
  - 1. Masonry Cosmetics, Inc: <https://www.masonrycosmetics.com/>
  - 2. Permatint Limited: <https://www.permatint.com/>
  - 3. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.

### **2.02 STAINS AND TRANSPARENT FINISHES - GENERAL**

### **2.03 INTERIOR STAIN AND TRANSPARENT FINISH SYSTEMS**

- A. Finish on Brick Masonry - Vertical Surfaces:
  - 1. Semi-transparent mineral-based pigment in water base.
  - 2. Products:
    - a. Masonry Cosmetics Permanent Brick Stain
    - b. Permatint Limited #1020 Silazur

### **2.04 ACCESSORY MATERIALS**

- A. Accessory Materials: Cleaning agents, cleaning cloths, sanding materials, and clean-up materials as required for final completion of finished surfaces.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Do not begin application of stains and finishes until substrates have been properly prepared.
- B. Verify that surfaces are ready to receive work as instructed by the product manufacturer.
- C. Examine surfaces scheduled to be finished prior to commencement of work. Report any condition that may potentially effect proper application.

### **3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Clean surfaces thoroughly and correct defects prior to application.
- B. Prepare surfaces using the methods recommended by the manufacturer for achieving the best result for the substrate under the project conditions.
- C. Remove existing finishes or coatings.
- D. Remove or mask surface appurtenances, including electrical plates, hardware, light fixture trim, escutcheons, and fittings, prior to preparing surfaces or finishing.

### **3.03 APPLICATION**

- A. Apply products in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Verify moisture content of brick surface is within manufacturer's recommendations.
- C. Apply each coat to uniform appearance in thicknesses specified by manufacturer.
- D. Reinstall items removed prior to finishing.

### **3.04 PROTECTION**

- A. Protect finishes until completion of project.
- B. Touch-up damaged finishes after Substantial Completion.

**END OF SECTION 09 93 00**

**SECTION 10 11 00  
VISUAL DISPLAY UNITS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Porcelain enamel steel markerboards.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 06 10 00 - Rough Carpentry: Blocking and supports.
- B. Section 09 21 16 - Gypsum Board Assemblies: Concealed supports in metal stud walls.
- C. Section 09 91 23 - Interior Painting: Finishing of wood frame and marker rail.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ANSI A208.1 - American National Standard for Particleboard 2022.
- B. ASTM A424/A424M - Standard Specification for Steel, Sheet, for Porcelain Enameling 2018.

**1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's data on porcelain enamel steel markerboard, trim, and accessories.
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate wall elevations, dimensions, joint locations , special anchor details.
- D. Samples: Color charts for selection of color and texture of porcelain enamel steel markerboard and trim.
- E. Test Reports: Show compliance to specified surface burning characteristics requirements.
- F. Manufacturer's printed installation instructions.
- G. Manufacturer's Qualification Statement.
- H. Maintenance Data: Include data on regular cleaning, stain removal , and \_\_\_\_\_.

**1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.

**1.06 WARRANTY**

- A. See Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.
- B. Provide five year warranty for chalkboard and markerboard to include warranty against discoloration due to cleaning, crazing or cracking, and staining.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 VISUAL DISPLAY UNITS**

- A. Porcelain Enamel Steel Markerboards:
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. AJW Architectural Products; \_\_\_\_: [www.ajw.com/#sle](http://www.ajw.com/#sle).
    - b. ASI Visual Display Products; \_\_\_\_: [www.asi-visualdisplayproducts.com/#sle](http://www.asi-visualdisplayproducts.com/#sle).
    - c. Claridge Products and Equipment, Inc; \_\_\_\_: [www.claridgeproducts.com/#sle](http://www.claridgeproducts.com/#sle).
  - 2. Color: White.
  - 3. Steel Face Sheet Thickness: 24 gauge, 0.0239 inch (0.61 mm).
  - 4. Core: Particleboard, manufacturer's standard thickness, laminated to face sheet.
  - 5. Backing: Aluminum foil, laminated to core.
  - 6. Size: As indicated on drawings.
  - 7. Frame: Extruded aluminum , with concealed fasteners.
  - 8. Frame Finish: Anodized, natural.
  - 9. Accessories: Provide marker tray.
  - 10. Products:

- a. Basis of Design: Claridge Series 200.

## **2.02 MATERIALS**

- A. Porcelain Enameled Steel Sheet: ASTM A424/A424M, Type I, Commercial Steel, with fired-on vitreous finish.
- B. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1; wood chips, set with waterproof resin binder, sanded faces.
- C. Foil Backing: Aluminum foil sheet, 0.005 inch thick (0.13 mm thick).

## **2.03 ACCESSORIES**

- A. Temporary Protective Cover: Sheet polyethylene, 8 mil (0.2 mm) thick.
- B. Cleaning Instruction Plate: Provide instructions for chalkboard cleaning on a metal plate fastened to perimeter frame near chalkrail.
- C. Marker Tray: Aluminum, manufacturer's standard profile, one piece full length of markerboard, molded ends, concealed fasteners, same finish as frame.
- D. Mounting Brackets: Concealed.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify that field measurements are as indicated.
- B. Verify that internal wall blocking is ready to receive work and positioning dimensions are as indicated on shop drawings.
- C. Verify flat wall surface for frameless adhesive-applied boards.

### **3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Acclimatize tackable wall panels by removing from packaging in installation area not less than 24 hours before application.
- B. Remove switchplates, wall plates, and surface-mounted fixtures where tackable wall paneling is applied. Reinstall items on completion of installation.
- C. Prepare surfaces using the methods recommended by the manufacturer for achieving the best result for the substrate under the project conditions.

### **3.03 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install boards in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install with top of marker tray at 30 inches (760 mm) above finished floor.
- C. Secure units level and plumb.
- D. Butt Joints: Install with tight hairline joints.
- E. Carefully cut holes in boards for thermostats.
- F. Install tackable wall panels in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations on specified substrates with concealed attachments.
  - 1. Fabricate re-wrapped edges where partial panels abut each other, or adjacent surfaces or trim.
  - 2. Re-wrap top, bottom or side edges for cutting panels around door or window openings, abutting trim, protruding objects, and at other openings, including x-cut at receptacles, light switches, and other openings.

### **3.04 CLEANING**

- A. Clean board surfaces in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Cover with protective cover, taped to frame.
- C. Remove temporary protective cover at Date of Substantial Completion.

**END OF SECTION 10 11 00**

**SECTION 10 14 19  
DIMENSIONAL LETTER SIGNAGE**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Dimensional letter signage.

**1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. 36 CFR 1191 - Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities; Architectural Barriers Act (ABA) Accessibility Guidelines current edition.
- B. ADA Standards - 2010 ADA Standards for Accessible Design 2010.
- C. ICC A117.1 - Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities 2017.

**1.03 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Manufacturer's product literature for each type of dimensional letter sign, indicating style, font, colors, locations, and overall dimensions of each sign.
- C. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Include dimensions, locations, elevations, materials, text and graphic layout, and attachment details.
  - 2. Show locations of electrical service connections.
  - 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
- D. Samples: Submit one sample of each type of dimensional letter sign of size similar to that required for project, indicating sign style, font, and method of attachment.
- E. Selection Samples: Where materials, colors, and finishes are not specified, submit two sets of selection charts or chips.
- F. Verification Samples: Submit samples showing colors and finishes specified.
- G. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Include installation templates and attachment devices.
- H. Manufacturer's qualification statement.

**1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section with minimum three years of documented experience.

**1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Package dimensional letter signs as required to prevent damage before installation.
- B. Store under cover and elevated above grade.
- C. Store tape adhesive at a normal room temperature of 68 to 72 degrees F (20 to 22 degrees C).

**1.06 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Do not install tape adhesive when ambient temperature is lower than recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Maintain minimum ambient temperature during and after installation.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Dimensional Letter Signs: Basis of Design, match existing signage unless noted otherwise.
  - 1. FASTSIGNS International, Inc; \_\_\_\_\_: [www.fastsigns.com/#sle](http://www.fastsigns.com/#sle).
  - 2. Inpro Corporation; \_\_\_\_\_: [www.inprocorp.com/#sle](http://www.inprocorp.com/#sle).
  - 3. Takeform; \_\_\_\_\_: [www.takeform.net/#sle](http://www.takeform.net/#sle).
  - 4. Or selection by owner..



## **2.02 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Accessibility Requirements: Comply with ADA Standards and ICC A117.1 and applicable building codes, unless otherwise indicated; in the event of conflicting requirements, comply with the most restrictive requirements.

## **2.03 DIMENSIONAL LETTERS**

- A. Applications: Building identification.
  - 1. Use individual plastic letters.
- B. Plastic Letters:
  - 1. Material: Injection molded plastic.
  - 2. Thickness: 1/8 inch minimum (3 mm).
  - 3. Letter Height: \_\_\_\_\_ inches (\_\_\_\_\_ mm).
  - 4. Text and Typeface:
    - a. Character Font: Helvetica, Arial, or other sans serif font.
  - 5. Finish: Semi-gloss.
  - 6. Color: As selected.
  - 7. Mounting: Concealed or exposed screws.

## **2.04 ACCESSORIES**

- A. Concealed Screws: Noncorroding metal; stainless steel, galvanized steel, chrome plated, or other.
- B. Exposed Screws: Stainless steel.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify that substrate surfaces are ready to receive work.
- B. Notify Architect if conditions are not suitable for installation of signs; do not proceed until conditions are satisfactory.

### **3.02 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install with horizontal edges level.
- C. Locate dimensional letter signs and mount at heights indicated on drawings and in accordance with ADA Standards and ICC A117.1.
- D. Protect from damage until mm-dd-yyyy; repair or replace damaged items.

**END OF SECTION 10 14 19**

**SECTION 10 23 10  
GLAZED INTERIOR WALL AND DOOR ASSEMBLIES**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SUMMARY**

- A. Work Results:
  - 1. Glazed interior wall and door assemblies internal to unit/ area of work.
- B. Section Includes:
  - 1. Frameless glazed interior wall and door assemblies.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 08 71 00 - Door Hardware.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. AAMA 2604 - Voluntary Specification, Performance Requirements and Test Procedures for High Performance Organic Coatings on Aluminum Extrusions and Panels (with Coil Coating Appendix) 2022.
- B. ASTM A276/A276M - Standard Specification for Stainless Steel Bars and Shapes 2023.
- C. ASTM A480/A480M - Standard Specification for General Requirements for Flat-Rolled Stainless and Heat-Resisting Steel Plate, Sheet, and Strip 2023.
- D. ASTM A666 - Standard Specification for Annealed or Cold-Worked Austenitic Stainless Steel Sheet, Strip, Plate, and Flat Bar 2023.
- E. ASTM B221 - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Profiles, and Tubes 2021.
- F. ASTM B221M - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Profiles, and Tubes (Metric) 2021.
- G. ASTM C920 - Standard Specification for Elastomeric Joint Sealants 2018.
- H. ASTM C1036 - Standard Specification for Flat Glass 2021.
- I. ASTM C1048 - Standard Specification for Heat-Strengthened and Fully Tempered Flat Glass 2018.
- J. ASTM E90 - Standard Test Method for Laboratory Measurement of Airborne Sound Transmission Loss of Building Partitions and Elements 2009 (Reapproved 2016).
- K. ASTM E413 - Classification for Rating Sound Insulation 2022.
- L. BHMA A156.3 - Exit Devices 2020.

**1.04 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Preinstallation Meeting: Convene at project site seven calendar days prior to scheduled beginning of construction activities of this section to review section requirements.
  - 1. Notify Architect four calendar days in advance of scheduled meeting date.

**1.05 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Manufacturer's descriptive literature for each component in partition assembly.
- C. Shop Drawings: Drawings showing layout, dimensions, identification of components, and interface with adjacent construction.
  - 1. Include field measurements of openings.
  - 2. Include Elevations Showing:
    - a. Locations and identification of manufacturer-supplied door hardware and fittings.
    - b. Locations and sizes of cut-outs and drilled holes for other door hardware.
  - 3. Include Details Showing:
    - a. Requirements for support and bracing of overhead track.

- b. Installation details.
- c. Appearance of manufacturer-supplied door hardware and fittings.
- D. Selection Samples: Two sets, representing manufacturer's full range of available metal materials and finishes.
- E. Verification Samples: Two samples, minimum size of 2 inch by 3 inch (51 mm by 76 mm), representing actual material and finish of exposed metal.
- F. Certificates: Contractor to certify that installer of partition assemblies meets specified qualifications.
- G. Operation and Maintenance Data: For manufacturer-supplied operating hardware.
- H. Warranty Documentation: Submit manufacturer warranty and ensure that forms have been completed in Owner's name and registered with manufacturer.
- I. Specimen Warranty.
- J. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Include complete preparation, installation, and cleaning requirements.
- K. Fabricator's Qualification Statement.
- L. Manufacturer's Qualification Statement.
- M. Installer's Qualification Statement.

#### **1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: Minimum three years of experience designing, assembling, and installing partition assemblies similar to those specified in this section.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing work of type specified and with at least three years of documented experience.

#### **1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Store products in manufacturer's unopened packaging until installation.
  - 1. Deliver products to project site and store in manufacturer's protective cartons until openings are ready for door installation.
- B. Protect finished surfaces with wrapping paper or strippable coating during installation. Do not use adhesive papers or sprayed coatings that bond to substrate when exposed to sunlight or weather.

#### **1.08 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Do not install sealants when ambient temperature is less than 40 degrees F (4.4 degrees C).
- B. Maintain this minimum temperature during and 24 hours after installation of sealants.

#### **1.09 WARRANTY**

- A. See Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.
- B. Correct defective Work within a one year period after Date of Substantial Completion.
- C. Provide five year manufacturer warranty against excessive degradation of metal finishes. Include provision for replacement of units with excessive fading, chalking, or flaking.

### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 BASIS OF DESIGN - FRAMELESS GLAZED INTERIOR WALL AND DOOR ASSEMBLIES**

- A. Basis of Design: AVANTI Systems USA, Solare™ acoustic, single-glazed partition system and Pivot Swing Door or Cloud Assisted Sliding Glass Doors (See Drawings).
  - 1. Avanti Systems USA: [www.avantisystemsusa.com/#sle](http://www.avantisystemsusa.com/#sle).
  - 2. Phone: Toll Free (877) AVANTI-3; (877) 282-6843.
- B. DORMA USA, Inc: [www.dorma.com/#sle](http://www.dorma.com/#sle).
- C. Dormakaba USA, Inc; [www.dormakaba.com](http://www.dormakaba.com)
- D. Nana Wall Systems, Inc..

## 2.02 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Acoustical Performance: Provide glass partitions and door assemblies tested by qualified testing agency, calculated in accordance with ASTM E413, tested in accordance with ASTM E90, and rated for not less than Sound Transmission Class (STC) indicated.

## 2.03 FRAMELESS GLAZED INTERIOR WALL AND DOOR ASSEMBLIES

- A. Framing Members: Manufacturer's extruded- or formed-aluminum framing members of thickness required and reinforced as required to support imposed loads.
1. Interior Vestibule Framing Construction: Nonthermal.
  2. Glazing System: Retained mechanically with gaskets on four sides.
  3. Glazing Plane: Center.
  4. Finish: See Materials and Finish List, and Drawings.
  5. Fabrication Method: Shop or field cut to length channel system.
  6. Aluminum: Alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated.
  7. Steel Reinforcement: As required by manufacturer.
- B. Pivoting Glass Doors: Dry glazed patch fittings.
1. Door Configuration and Finish: As indicated on drawings.
  2. Door Hardware: Refer to the Section 08 71 00.
  3. Provide accessories as required for complete installation.
  4. Sequence of Operation: Provide electrified door hardware function, sequence of operation, and interface with other building control systems indicated.
  5. Opening-Force Requirements:
    - a. Egress Doors: Not more than 15 lbf (67 N) to release the latch and not more than 30 lbf (133 N) to set the door in motion and not more than 15 lbf to open the door to its minimum required width.
    - b. Accessible Interior Doors: Not more than 5 lbf (22.2 N) to fully open door.
  6. Pivot Hinges: BHMA A156.4, Grade 1.
    - a. Offset-Pivot Hinges: Provide top and bottom offset pivots at each door leaf.

## 2.04 FITTINGS AND HARDWARE

- A. Glass Partition Door Hardware: Refer to the Section 08 71 00.
- B. Backer Plates: Manufacturer's standard, continuous backer plates for framing members, if not integral, where framing abuts adjacent construction.
- C. Brackets and Reinforcements: Manufacturer's standard high-strength aluminum with nonstaining, nonferrous shims for aligning system components.
- D. Pivot Hinges: BHMA A156.4, Grade 1,
  1. Offset-Pivot Hinges: Provide top, bottom, and intermediate offset pivots at each door leaf.
- E. Frameless Sliding Glazed Doors
1. Hardware and Fittings: Stainless steel, complying with ASTM A480/A480M, ASTM A276/A276M or ASTM A666, manufacturer's standard satin finish (unless noted otherwise).
  2. Framing Components: Fabricated from 3/4 inch (19 mm) to 1 inch (25 mm) diameter stock.
  3. Suspension System: Manufacturer's standard glass-hung supports that impose no loads on adjacent partitions.
  4. Magnetic Drive Door Operator: Located in header with door mounting components; Operator accessories and functions include automatic lock.
  5. Door Hangers: Exposed wheel type with ball bearing axles, Two door hangers per leaf.
  6. Stops: Rubber cushioned.
  7. Guides: Floor mounted.
  8. Pulls: Manufacturer's standard, U-shaped, 47-1/4 inch (1200 mm) by 1-1/4 inch (31mm), brushed-stainless steel stock handle.

9. Cylindrical locks as specified in Section 08 71 00.
10. Regulatory Requirements: Provide tempered or laminated safety glass for locations subject to human impact as required by applicable codes.
  - a. Accessibility: Comply with ADA Standards applicable to doors and hardware.
11. Fasteners: Comply with manufacturer's written recommendations.
12. Provide 3/4 inch (19 mm) anti-finger-trap space between doors and adjacent panels.

F. Acoustic Seals: Provide acoustic seals in accordance with project requirements.

## **2.05 MATERIALS**

- A. Glass: See Materials and Finish List, and Drawings for basis of design. Flat glass meeting requirements of ASTM C1036, Type I - Transparent Flat Glass, Class 1 - Clear, Quality Q3, fully tempered in accordance with ASTM C1048, Kind FT, and as follows:
  1. Thickness: As indicated on drawings.
  2. Temper glass materials horizontally; visible tong marks or tong mark distortions are not permitted.
- B. Extruded Structural Pipe and Tubes: ASTM B 429/B 429M.
- C. Sheet and Plate: ASTM B 209 .
- D. Aluminum Components: Complying with ASTM B221 (ASTM B221M), alloy 6063, T5 temper.
- E. Glazing Sealants: As recommended by manufacturer.
  1. Sealant: One-part silicone sealant, complying with ASTM C920, clear.

## **2.06 FINISHES**

- A. High Performance Organic Coatings: AAMA 2604; multiple coats, thermally cured fluoropolymer system.
- B. Color: See Materials and Finish List, and Drawings..

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify that field measurements are as indicated.
- B. Verify floor flatness of 1/8 inch in 10 feet (3 mm in 3 m), non-cumulative.
- C. Do not begin installation until supports and adjacent substrates have been properly prepared.
- D. If substrate preparation is the responsibility of another installer, notify Architect of unsatisfactory preparation before proceeding.

### **3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Clean substrates thoroughly prior to installation.
- B. Prepare substrates using the methods recommended by the manufacturer for achieving acceptable result for the substrate under the project conditions.

### **3.03 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install in accordance with glazed interior wall and door assembly manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and approved shop drawings.
- C. Install components plumb and level, in proper plane, free from warp and twist.
- D. Tolerances:
  1. Maximum Variation from Plumb or Level: 1/8 inch (3 mm) in 3 feet (0.9 m) or 1/4 inch (6 mm) in 10 feet (3.05 m)
- E. Install glass and accessories in accordance with GANA (GM) Glazing Manual.
- F. Fit and align glazed interior wall and door assembly level and plumb.

### **3.04 ADJUSTING**

- A. Adjust glazed interior wall and door assembly to operate smoothly from sliding or pivoting positions.

- B. Adjust doors to operate correctly, without binding to frame, sill or adjacent doors.
- C. Adjust swing door hardware for smooth operation.

**3.05 CLEANING**

- A. Remove protective film from exposed metal surfaces.
- B. Metal: Clean exposed metal finishes with potable water and mild detergent, in accordance with manufacturer recommendations; do not use abrasive materials or chemicals, detergents or other substances that may damage the material or finish.
- C. Glass and Glazing: Clean glazing surfaces; remove excess glazing sealant compounds, dirt, and other substances.
- D. Touch up minor scratches and abrasions to match original finish.

**3.06 CLOSEOUT ACTIVITIES**

- A. Demonstrate operation of glazed interior wall and door assembly and identify potential operational problems.

**3.07 PROTECTION**

- A. Protect installed products until Date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Touch-up, repair or replace damaged products before Date of Substantial Completion.

**END OF SECTION 10 23 10**

This page intentionally left blank

**SECTION 10 44 00  
FIRE PROTECTION SPECIALTIES**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Fire extinguishers.
- B. Fire extinguisher cabinets.
- C. Accessories.

**1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. FM (AG) - FM Approval Guide Current Edition.
- B. NFPA 10 - Standard for Portable Fire Extinguishers 2022.
- C. UL (DIR) - Online Certifications Directory Current Edition.

**1.03 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide extinguisher operational features.
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate locations of cabinets and cabinet physical dimensions.
- D. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate special criteria and wall opening coordination requirements.
- E. Manufacturer's Certificate: Certify that products meet or exceed specified requirements.
- F. Maintenance Data: Include test, refill or recharge schedules and re-certification requirements.

**1.04 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Do not install extinguishers when ambient temperature may cause freezing of extinguisher ingredients.

**1.05 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate type and capacity of fire extinguishers with fire-protection cabinets to ensure fit and function.

**1.06 WARRANTY**

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace fire extinguishers that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Failure of hydrostatic test according to NFPA 10.
    - b. Faulty operation of valves or release levers.
  - 2. Warranty Period: Six years from date of Substantial Completion.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Fire Extinguishers:
  - 1. Ansul, a Tyco Business: [www.ansul.com/#sle](http://www.ansul.com/#sle).
  - 2. Nystrom, Inc: [www.nystrom.com/#sle](http://www.nystrom.com/#sle).
  - 3. Amerex Corporation.
  - 4. [JL Industries, Inc.; a division of the Activar Construction Products Group.](#)
  - 5. [Larsens Manufacturing Company.](#)
- B. Fire Extinguisher Cabinets and Accessories:
  - 1. Larsen's Manufacturing Co: [www.larsensmfg.com/#sle](http://www.larsensmfg.com/#sle).
  - 2. Nystrom, Inc: [www.nystrom.com/#sle](http://www.nystrom.com/#sle).
  - 3. JL Industries, Inc.; a division of the Activar Construction Products Group..



## **2.02 FIRE EXTINGUISHERS**

- A. Fire Extinguishers - General: Comply with product requirements of NFPA 10 and applicable codes, whichever is more stringent.
  - 1. Provide extinguishers labeled by UL (DIR) or FM (AG) for purpose specified and as indicated.
- B. Multipurpose Dry Chemical Type Fire Extinguishers: Carbon steel tank, with pressure gauge.
  - 1. Class: A:B:C type.
  - 2. Temperature range: Minus 40 degrees F (Minus 40 degrees C) to 120 degrees F (49 degrees C).

## **2.03 FIRE EXTINGUISHER CABINETS**

- A. Cabinet Construction: Non-fire rated.
  - 1. Formed primed steel sheet; 0.036 inch (0.9 mm) thick base metal.
- B. Cabinet Configuration: Semi-recessed type.
  - 1. Size to accommodate accessories.
- C. Door: 0.036 inch (0.9 mm) metal thickness, reinforced for flatness and rigidity with nylon catch. Hinge doors for 180 degree opening with two butt hinges.
- D. Door Glazing: Acrylic plastic, clear, 1/8 inch (3 mm) thick, flat shape and set in resilient channel glazing gasket.
- E. Cabinet Mounting Hardware: Appropriate to cabinet, with pre-drilled holes for placement of anchors.
- F. Fabrication: Weld, fill, and grind components smooth.
- G. Finish of Cabinet Exterior Trim and Door: No.4 - Brushed stainless steel.

## **2.04 ACCESSORIES**

- A. Extinguisher Brackets: Formed steel, chrome-plated.
- B. Extinguisher Theft Alarm: Battery operated alarm, 10 second delay for disarming, activated by opening cabinet door.
- C. Graphic Identification: only as required by AHJs.
- D. Lettering: FIRE EXTINGUISHER decal, or vinyl self-adhering, pre-spaced black lettering in accordance with authorities having jurisdiction (AHJ).

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify existing conditions before starting work.
- B. Verify rough openings for cabinet are correctly sized and located.

### **3.02 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install cabinets plumb and level in wall openings at locations and mounting heights indicated.
- C. Secure rigidly in place.
- D. Place extinguishers in cabinets.

### **3.03 MAINTENANCE**

- A. Provide a separate maintenance contract for specified maintenance service.

### **3.04 MAINTENANCE - SELF-SERVICE FIRE EXTINGUISHERS**

- A. Monthly Inspections: Inspect self-service fire extinguishers on monthly basis in accordance with manufacturer's instructions, and requirements of the authorities having jurisdiction (AHJ).
- B. Annual Inspections: Inspect self-service fire extinguishers on annual basis in accordance with manufacturer's instructions, and requirements of the authorities having jurisdiction (AHJ).

- C. Inspection Certification Tag: Provide new tag indicating acceptable condition of fire extinguisher, date of inspection, and name of self-service inspector for each inspection.

**END OF SECTION 10 44 00**

This page intentionally left blank

**SECTION 10 51 29  
PHENOLIC LOCKERS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Phenolic lockers.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 06 10 00 - Rough Carpentry Wood base construction.
- B. Section 06 10 00 - Rough Carpentry Wood blocking and nailers.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ADA Standards - 2010 ADA Standards for Accessible Design 2010.
- B. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials 2023b.
- C. ICC A117.1 - Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities 2017.

**1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Manufacturer's published data on locker construction, sizes and accessories.
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate locker plan layout, numbering plan and combination lock code.
- D. Full Size Sample: One full-size locker of each construction specified for evaluation of construction.
- E. Samples: Submit two samples 12 by 12 inches (305 by 305 mm) in size, of each color scheduled.
- F. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate component installation assembly.

**1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Protect locker finish and adjacent surfaces from damage.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Phenolic Lockers:
  - 1. ASI Storage Solutions; \_\_\_\_\_: [www.asi-storage.com/#sle](http://www.asi-storage.com/#sle).
  - 2. Columbia Lockers, a division of PSiSC; Phenolic Lockers: [www.psisc.com/#sle](http://www.psisc.com/#sle).
  - 3. List Industries, Inc; \_\_\_\_: [www.listindustries.com/#sle](http://www.listindustries.com/#sle).

**2.02 LOCKER APPLICATIONS**

- A. Student Lockers: Phenolic lockers, recessed mounted.
  - 1. Accessibility: Comply with ICC A117.1 and ADA Standards.
  - 2. Width: 9 inches (229 mm).
  - 3. Width: 9 inches (229 mm).
  - 4. Depth: 12 inches (305 mm).
  - 5. Depth: 12 inches (305 mm).
  - 6. Height: 72 inches (1830 mm).
  - 7. Locker Configuration: Single tier.
  - 8. Fittings: Size and configuration as indicated on drawings.
    - a. Hooks: One double prong.
  - 9. Ventilation: By open space between the back of the door and locker body.
  - 10. Locking: Built-in combination locks.

**2.03 PHENOLIC LOCKERS**

- A. Lockers: Factory assembled, made of phenolic core panels with mortise and tenon joints and stainless steel mechanical joint fasteners; fully finished inside and out; each locker capable of

standing alone.

1. Doors: Full overlay, covering full width and height of locker body; square edges.
  2. Panel Core Exposed at Edges: Machine polished, without chips or tool marks; square edge unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Where locker ends or sides are exposed, finish the same as fronts or provide extra panels to match fronts.
  4. Provide filler strips where indicated, securely attached to lockers.
  5. Door Color: As selected by Architect; allow for 2 different colors.
  6. Body Color: Manufacturer's standard white or light color.
  7. Fasteners for Accessories and Locking Mechanisms: Tamperproof type.
- B. Component Thicknesses:
1. Doors: 1/2 inch (13 mm) minimum thickness.
  2. Locker Body: One of the following combinations:
    - a. Tops, bottoms, and shelves 3/8 inch (10 mm); sides and backs 5/16 inch (8 mm); minimum.
    - b. Tops, bottoms, and shelves 1/2 inch (13 mm); sides 3/8 inch (10 mm); backs 1/4 inch (6 mm); minimum.
  3. End Panels and Filler Panels: 1/2 inch (13 mm) minimum thickness.
  4. Toe Kick Plates: 1/2 inch (13 mm) minimum thickness.
- C. Phenolic Core Panels: Nonporous phenolic resin and paper core formed under high pressure, with natural colored finished edges, integral melamine surface, matte finish, and uniform surface appearance; glued laminated panels not acceptable.
1. Surface Burning Characteristics: Flame spread index of 75 or less, and smoke developed index of 450 or less; when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
- D. Hinges: Stainless steel, black powder coat finish; minimum of 180 degree opening; either exposed barrel 5-knuckle hinge attached to back of door and inside of body with tamperproof screws, or concealed cabinet style hinge attached with tamperproof screws.
- E. Coat Hooks: Stainless steel or reinforced nylon; attached with tamperproof screws.
- F. Number Plates: Manufacturer's standard, minimum 4-digit, permanently attached with adhesive; may be field installed.
- G. Locks: Locker manufacturer's standard type indicated above.
- H. Lock Strike: Stainless steel, or black high impact ABS plastic strike plate attached to locker body with throughbolts.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify that prepared bases are in correct position and configuration.
- B. Verify bases and embedded anchors are properly sized.

### **3.02 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Place and secure on prepared base.
- C. Install lockers plumb and square.
- D. Secure lockers with anchor devices to suit substrate materials. Minimum Pullout Force: 100 pounds (445 N).
- E. Bolt adjoining locker units together to provide rigid installation.
- F. Install end panels, filler panels, and sloped tops.
- G. Install accessories.
- H. Replace components that do not operate smoothly.

**3.03 CLEANING**

- A. Clean locker interiors and exterior surfaces.

**END OF SECTION 10 51 29**

This page intentionally left blank

**SECTION 11 30 13  
RESIDENTIAL APPLIANCES**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Kitchen appliances.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 22 10 05 - Plumbing Piping: Plumbing connections for appliances.
- B. Section 26 05 83 - Wiring Connections: Electrical connections for appliances.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. UL (DIR) - Online Certifications Directory Current Edition.

**1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Manufacturer's data indicating dimensions, capacity, and operating features of each piece of residential equipment specified.
- C. Copies of Warranties: Submit manufacturer warranty and ensure that forms have been completed in Owner's name and registered with manufacturer.

**1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing products specified in this section, with not less than three years of documented experience.
- B. Electric Appliances: Listed and labeled by UL (DIR) and complying with NEMA Standards (National Electrical Manufacturers Association).

**1.06 WARRANTY**

- A. See Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.
- B. Provide five (5) year manufacturer warranty on refrigeration system of refrigerators.
- C. Provide ten (10) year manufacturer warranty on magnetron tube of microwave ovens.
- D. Provide ten (10) year manufacturer warranty on tub and door liner of dishwashers.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 KITCHEN APPLIANCES**

- A. Provide Equipment Eligible for Energy Star Rating: Energy Star Rated.
- B. Refrigerator: Free-standing, bottom-mounted freezer, and frost-free.
  - 1. Capacity: Total minimum storage of 18 cubic ft (0.51 cu m); minimum 15 percent freezer capacity.
  - 2. Energy Usage: Minimum 20 percent more energy efficient than energy efficiency standards set by U.S. Department of Energy (DOE).
  - 3. Features: Include glass shelves.
  - 4. Exterior Finish: Stainless steel.
  - 5. Manufacturers:
    - a. Samsung Electronics America: [www.samsung.com](http://www.samsung.com)
    - b. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.

**PART 3 EXECUTION**

**3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify utility rough-ins are provided and correctly located.

**3.02 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Anchor built-in equipment in place.



**3.03 ADJUSTING**

- A. Adjust equipment to provide efficient operation.

**3.04 CLEANING**

- A. Remove packing materials from equipment and properly discard.
- B. Wash and clean equipment.

**END OF SECTION 11 30 13**

**SECTION 11 51 00  
LIBRARY EQUIPMENT**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Library equipment.

**1.02 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit under provisions of Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements.
- B. Product Data: Manufacturer's data sheets on each product to be used, including:
  - 1. Preparation instructions and recommendations.
  - 2. Storage and handling requirements and recommendations.
  - 3. Installation methods.

**1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Minimum 5 year experience manufacturing similar products.

**1.04 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Deliver and store products in manufacturer's unopened packaging bearing the brand name and manufacturer's identification until ready for installation.
- B. Handling: Handle materials to avoid damage.

**1.05 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Maintain environmental conditions (temperature, humidity, and ventilation) within limits recommended by manufacturer for optimum results. Do not install products under environmental conditions outside manufacturer's recommended limits.

**1.06 SEQUENCING**

- A. Ensure that products of this section are supplied to affected trades in time to prevent interruption of construction progress.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Acceptable Manufacturers: Kingsley Library Equipment.
- B. Requests for substitutions will be considered in accordance with provisions of Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.

**2.02 MATERIALS**

- A. Book Return Slot:
  - 1. Type: Lockable, Interior through wall style w/ anti-theft features
  - 2. ADA Compliant
  - 3. Label: Selection of standard wording options, milled into steel face frame and painted black
  - 4. Construction: Stainless steel faceplate with aluminum body
  - 5. Facing Frame and Door: Integral with unit.

**PART 3 EXECUTION**

**3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Do not begin installation until substrates have been properly prepared.
- B. If substrate preparation is the responsibility of another installer, notify Architect of unsatisfactory preparation before proceeding.

**3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Clean surfaces thoroughly prior to installation.
- B. Prepare surfaces using the methods recommended by the manufacturer for achieving the best result for the substrate under the project conditions.

**3.03 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and in proper relationship with adjacent construction. Test for proper operation and adjust until satisfactory results are obtained.

**3.04 PROTECTION**

- A. Protect installed products until completion of project.
- B. Touch-up, repair or replace damaged products before Substantial Completion.

**END OF SECTION 11 51 00**

**SECTION 12 24 00  
WINDOW SHADES**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Interior manual roller shades.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 06 10 00 - Rough Carpentry: Concealed wood blocking for attachment of headrail brackets.

**1.03 PRICE AND PAYMENT PROCEDURES**

- A. See Section 01 23 00 - Alternates, for product alternatives affecting this section.
  - 1. This section describes an alternative product; refer to Section \_\_\_\_\_ for the base bid product.
- B. See Section 01 22 00 - Unit Prices, for additional unit price requirements.

**1.04 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ASTM G21 - Standard Practice for Determining Resistance of Synthetic Polymeric Materials to Fungi 2015, with Editorial Revision (2021).
- B. NFPA 701 - Standard Methods of Fire Tests for Flame Propagation of Textiles and Films 2023, with Errata.
- C. UL 325 - Standard for Door, Drapery, Gate, Louver, and Window Operators and Systems Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- D. WCMA A100.1 - Standard for Safety of Window Covering Products 2022.

**1.05 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Preinstallation Meeting: Convene one week prior to commencing work related to products of this section; require attendance of affected installers.
- B. Sequencing:
  - 1. Do not fabricate shades until field dimensions for each opening have been taken with field conditions in place.
  - 2. Do not install shades until final surface finishes and painting are complete.

**1.06 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's standard catalog pages and data sheets, including materials, finishes, fabrication details, dimensions, profiles, mounting requirements, and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include shade schedule indicating size, location and keys to details, head, jamb and sill details, mounting dimension requirements for each product and condition, and operation direction.
- C. Selection Samples: Include fabric samples in full range of available colors and patterns.
- D. Verification Samples: Minimum size 6 inches (150 mm) square, representing actual materials, color and pattern.
- E. Operation and Maintenance Data: List of all components with part numbers, sources of supply, and operation and maintenance instructions; include copy of shop drawings.
- F. Warranty: Submit sample of manufacturer's warranty and documentation of final executed warranty completed in Owner's name and registered with manufacturer.

**1.07 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing products specified in this section, with not less than five years of experience.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing work of this type with minimum 5 years of experience with shading systems of similar size and type.

### **1.08 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Deliver shades in manufacturer's unopened packaging, labeled to identify each shade for each opening.
- B. Handle and store shades in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

### **1.09 FIELD CONDITIONS**

### **1.10 WARRANTY**

- A. Provide manufacturer's warranty from Date of Substantial Completion, covering the following:
  - 1. Shade Hardware: One year.
  - 2. Fabric: One year.

## **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Interior Manually Operated Roller Shades:
  - 1. Draper, Inc; Clutch Operated FlexShade: [www.draperinc.com/#sle](http://www.draperinc.com/#sle).
  - 2. Hunter Douglas Architectural; RB500 Manual Roller Shades: [www.hunterdouglasarchitectural.com/#sle](http://www.hunterdouglasarchitectural.com/#sle).
  - 3. Lutron Electronics Co., Inc; Contract Roller Manual Roller Shades: [www.lutron.com/#sle](http://www.lutron.com/#sle).
  - 4. MechoShade Systems LLC; Mecho/7 System: [www.mechoshade.com/#sle](http://www.mechoshade.com/#sle).

### **2.02 ROLLER SHADES**

- A. General:
  - 1. Provide shade system components that are easy to remove or adjust without removal of mounted shade brackets.
  - 2. Provide shade system that operates smoothly when shades are raised or lowered.
- B. Roller Shades:
  - 1. Description - Interior Roller Shades: Single roller, manually operated fabric window shade system complete with mounting brackets, roller tubes, hembars, hardware, and accessories.
    - a. Drop Position: Regular roll.
    - b. Roll Direction: Roll down, closed position is at window sill.
    - c. Mounting: Window jamb mounted - outside, on face of jambs.
  - 2. Brackets and Mounting Hardware: As recommended by manufacturer for mounting indicated and to accommodate shade fabric roll-up size and weight.
    - a. Material: Stamped steel.
  - 3. Roller Tubes: As required for type of shade operation.
    - a. Material: Extruded aluminum, clear anodized finish.
    - b. Size: As recommended by manufacturer; selected for suitability for installation conditions, span, and weight of shades.
    - c. Fabric Attachment: Utilize extruded channel in tube to accept vinyl spline welded to fabric edge.
  - 4. Hembars: Designed to maintain bottom of shade straight and flat.
  - 5. Manual Operation for Interior Shades:
    - a. Clutch Operator: Manufacturer's standard material and design, permanently lubricated.
    - b. Drive Chain: Continuous loop beaded ball chain, 95 lb (43 kg) minimum breaking strength. Provide upper and lower limit stops.
    - c. Chain Retainer:
      - 1) Manufacturer's standard clip.

### **2.03 SHADE FABRIC**

- A. Fabric: Nonflammable, color-fast, impervious to heat and moisture, and able to retain its shape under normal operation.
  - 1. Manufacturers:

- a. Lutron Electronics Co., Inc; E Screen THEIA - 1%: [www.lutron.com/#sle](http://www.lutron.com/#sle).
- b. MechoShade Systems LLC; Soho - 1100 Series (1% open):  
[www.mechoshade.com/#sle](http://www.mechoshade.com/#sle).
- c. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.
2. Performance Requirements:
  - a. Flammability: Pass NFPA 701 large and small tests.
  - b. Fungal Resistance: No growth when tested according to ASTM G21.
3. Openness Factor: Architect to determine after owner input.
4. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
5. Fabrication:
  - a. Fabric Orientation: Railroaded, fabric is turned 90 degrees off the roll.

#### **2.04 ROLLER SHADE FABRICATION**

- A. Field measure finished openings prior to ordering or fabrication.
- B. Dimensional Tolerances: Fabricate shades to fit openings within specified tolerances.
  1. Vertical Dimensions: Fill openings from head to sill with 1/2 inch (13 mm) space between bottom bar and window stool.
  2. Horizontal Dimensions - Outside Mounting: Cover window frames, trim, and casings completely.
- C. Dimensional Tolerances: As recommended in writing by manufacturer.
- D. At openings requiring continuous multiple shade units with separate rollers, locate roller joints at window mullion centers; butt rollers end-to-end.

### **PART 3 EXECUTION**

#### **3.01 PREPARATION**

- A. Prepare surfaces using methods recommended by manufacturer for achieving best result for substrate under the project conditions.
- B. Coordinate with window installation and placement of concealed blocking to support shades.

#### **3.02 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and approved shop drawings, using mounting devices as indicated.
- B. Replace shades that exceed specified dimensional tolerances at no extra cost to Owner.
- C. Adjust level, projection, and shade centering from mounting bracket. Verify there is no telescoping of shade fabric. Ensure smooth shade operation.

#### **3.03 CLEANING**

- A. Clean soiled shades and exposed components as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Replace shades that cannot be cleaned to "like new" condition.

#### **3.04 PROTECTION**

- A. Protect installed products from subsequent construction operations.

**END OF SECTION 12 24 00**

This page intentionally left blank

**SECTION 12 36 00  
COUNTERTOPS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Countertops for architectural cabinet work.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 06 41 00 - Architectural Wood Casework: Casework supporting countertops and other Plastic Laminate clad millwork countertops

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials 2023b.
- B. AWI/AWMAC/WI (AWS) - Architectural Woodwork Standards, 2nd Edition 2014, with Errata (2016).
- C. AWMAC/WI (NAAWS) - North American Architectural Woodwork Standards 2021, with Errata.
- D. ISFA 2-01 - Classification and Standards for Solid Surfacing Material 2013.
- E. ISFA 3-01 - Classification and Standards for Quartz Surfacing Material 2013.
- F. NEMA LD 3 - High-Pressure Decorative Laminates 2005.
- G. NSI (DSDM) - Dimensional Stone Design Manual, Version VIII 2016.

**1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Manufacturer's data sheets on each product to be used, including:
  - 1. Preparation instructions and recommendations.
  - 2. Storage and handling requirements and recommendations.
  - 3. Specimen warranty.
- C. Shop Drawings: Complete details of materials and installation ; combine with shop drawings of cabinets and casework specified in other sections.
- D. Selection Samples: For each finish product specified, color chips representing manufacturer's full range of available colors and patterns.
- E. Verification Samples: For each finish product specified, minimum size 6 inches (150 mm) square, representing actual product, color, and patterns.
- F. Sustainable Design Submittal: Documentation for sustainably harvested wood-based components.
- G. Test Reports: Chemical resistance testing, showing compliance with specified requirements.
- H. Certificate: Submit labels and certificates required by quality assurance and quality control programs.
- I. NSI Fabricator Qualification: Documentation of Natural Stone Institute Accreditation.
- J. Installer's qualification statement.
- K. Installation Instructions: Manufacturer's installation instructions and recommendations.
- L. Maintenance Data: Manufacturer's instructions and recommendations for maintenance and repair of countertop surfaces.

**1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: Natural Stone Institute (NSI) Accredited Natural Stone Fabricator; [www.naturalstoneinstitute.org/#sle](http://www.naturalstoneinstitute.org/#sle).
- B. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing work of the type specified in this section, with not less than three years of documented experience.



### 1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store products in manufacturer's unopened packaging until ready for installation.
- B. Store and dispose of solvent-based materials, and materials used with solvent-based materials, in accordance with requirements of local authorities having jurisdiction.

### 1.07 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain environmental conditions (temperature, humidity, and ventilation) within limits recommended by manufacturer for optimum results. Do not install products under environmental conditions outside manufacturer's absolute limits.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.01 COUNTERTOPS

- A. Quality Standard: Custom Grade, in accordance with AWI/AWMAAC/WI (AWS) or AWMAAC/WI (NAAWS), unless noted otherwise.
- B. Natural Quartz and Resin Composite Countertops: Sheet or slab of natural quartz and plastic resin over continuous substrate.
  - 1. Flat Sheet Thickness: 1-1/4 inch (32 mm), minimum.
  - 2. Natural Quartz and Resin Composite Sheets, Slabs and Castings: Complying with ISFA 3-01 and NEMA LD 3; orthophthalic polyester resin, mineral filler, and pigments; homogenous, non-porous and capable of being worked and repaired using standard stone fabrication tools; no surface coating; color and pattern consistent throughout thickness.
    - a. Manufacturers:
      - 1) Basis of Design: Dupont Corian Quartz; <https://www.corianquartz.com/>
      - 2) Or Equal.
    - b. Factory fabricate components to the greatest extent practical in sizes and shapes indicated; comply with NSI (DSDM).
    - c. Finish on Exposed Surfaces: Polished.
    - d. Color and Pattern: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full line.
  - 3. Other Components Thickness: 3/4 inch (19 mm), minimum.
  - 4. Back and End Splashes: Same sheet material, square top; minimum 4 inches (102 mm) high.
  - 5. Skirts: As indicated on drawings.
  - 6. Fabricate in accordance with AWI/AWMAAC/WI (AWS) or AWMAAC/WI (NAAWS), Section 11 - Countertops, Premium Grade.
- C. Natural Quartz and Resin Composite Wall Panels: Sheet or slab of natural quartz and plastic resin over continuous substrate.
  - 1. Flat Sheet Thickness: 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) thick.
  - 2. Natural Quartz and Resin Composite Sheets, Slabs and Castings: Complying with ISFA 3-01 and NEMA LD 3; orthophthalic polyester resin, mineral filler, and pigments; homogenous, non-porous and capable of being worked and repaired using standard stone fabrication tools; no surface coating; color and pattern consistent throughout thickness.
    - a. Factory fabricate components to the greatest extent practical in sizes and shapes indicated; comply with NSI (DSDM).
    - b. Surface Burning Characteristics: Flame spread index of 25, maximum; smoke developed index of 450, maximum; when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
    - c. Finish on Exposed Surfaces: Polished.
    - d. Color and Pattern: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full line.

### 2.02 MATERIALS

- A. Adhesives: Chemical resistant waterproof adhesive as recommended by manufacturer of materials being joined.
- B. Joint Sealant: Mildew-resistant silicone sealant, clear.
- C. Sealer: Stain and acid protection for natural stone counters.

- D. Structural Support: Support must be rigid and support load of counter material. It must be level and in-plane for quartz surface for flat support. There should be no gaps in support. Structural support must meet the maximum span requirements (check with quartz manufacturer's requirements).
1. The most common structural support are cabinets.
  2. Other structural support may be constructed from tube steel or angle iron.
  3. Wood or Plywood may be part of structural design, but only in vertical orientation.

### 2.03 ACCESSORIES

- A. Fixed Top-Mounted Countertop Support Brackets:
1. Material: Steel.
  2. Finish: Manufacturer's standard, factory-applied, textured powder coat.
  3. Color: Black. Unless otherwise noted by Architect.
  4. Products:
    - a. Federal Brace, Inc: various types- see drawings.
    - b. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.

### 2.04 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate tops and splashes in the largest sections practicable, with top surface of joints flush.
1. Join lengths of tops using best method recommended by manufacturer.
  2. Unless otherwise noted on drawings, fabricate to overhang fronts and ends of cabinets 1 inch (25 mm) except where top butts against cabinet or wall.
  3. Prepare all cutouts accurately to size; replace tops having improperly dimensioned or unnecessary cutouts or fixture holes.
- B. Provide back/end splash wherever counter edge abuts vertical surface unless otherwise indicated.
1. Secure to countertop with concealed fasteners and with contact surfaces set in waterproof glue.
  2. Height: 4 inches (102 mm), unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Wall-Mounted Counters: Provide skirts, aprons, brackets, and braces as indicated on drawings, finished to match.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Do not begin installation until substrates have been properly prepared.
- B. If substrate preparation is the responsibility of another installer, notify Architect of unsatisfactory preparation before proceeding.
- C. Verify that wall surfaces have been finished and mechanical and electrical services and outlets are installed in proper locations.

### 3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Clean surfaces thoroughly prior to installation.
- B. Prepare surfaces using the methods recommended by the manufacturer for achieving the best result for the substrate under the project conditions.

### 3.03 INSTALLATION

- A. Securely attach countertops to cabinets using concealed fasteners. Make flat surfaces level; shim where required.
- B. Seal joint between back/end splashes and vertical surfaces.

### 3.04 TOLERANCES

- A. Variation From Horizontal: 1/8 inch in 10 feet (3 mm in 3 m), maximum.
- B. Offset From Wall, Countertops: 1/8 inch (3 mm) maximum; 1/16 inch (1.5 mm) minimum.
- C. Field Joints: 1/8 inch (3 mm) wide, maximum.

**3.05 CLEANING**

- A. Clean countertops surfaces thoroughly.

**3.06 PROTECTION**

- A. Protect installed products until completion of project.
- B. Touch-up, repair or replace damaged products before Date of Substantial Completion.

**END OF SECTION 12 36 00**

**SECTION 14 24 00  
HYDRAULIC ELEVATORS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Complete hydraulic elevator systems.
  - 1. Passenger type.
- B. Elevator Maintenance Contract.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 03 30 00 - Cast-in-Place Concrete: Includes elevator pit and \_\_\_\_\_.
- B. Section 04 20 00 - Unit Masonry: Masonry hoistway enclosure; building-in and grouting hoistway door frames.
- C. Section 05 12 00 - Structural Steel Framing: Includes hoistway framing, overhead hoist beams, and \_\_\_\_\_.
- D. Section 07 84 00 - Firestopping: Fire rated sealant in hoistway.
- E. Section 09 21 16 - Gypsum Board Assemblies: Gypsum shaft walls.
- F. Section 09 65 00 - Resilient Flooring: Floor finish in car.
- G. Section 09 68 13 - Tile Carpeting: Floor finish in car.
- H. Section 21 13 00 - Fire-Suppression Sprinkler Systems: Sprinkler heads in hoistway.
- I. Section 22 30 00 - Plumbing Equipment: Pit drain.
- J. Section 26 05 33.13 - Conduit for Electrical Systems:
- K. Section 26 05 83 - Wiring Connections:
- L. Section 28 46 00 - Fire Detection and Alarm:
  - 1. Fire and smoke detectors and interconnecting devices.
  - 2. Fire alarm signal lines to elevator controller cabinet.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ADA Standards - 2010 ADA Standards for Accessible Design 2010.
- B. AISC 360 - Specification for Structural Steel Buildings 2022.
- C. ASME A17.1 - Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators Includes Requirements for Elevators, Escalators, Dumbwaiters, Moving Walks, Material Lifts, and Dumbwaiters with Automatic Transfer Devices 2019, with Errata (2021).
- D. ASME A17.2 - Guide for Inspection of Elevators, Escalators, and Moving Walks Includes Inspection Procedures for Electric Traction and Winding Drum Elevators, Hydraulic Elevators, Inclined Elevators, Limited-Use/Limited-Application Elevators, Private Residence Elevators, Escalators, Moving Walks, and Dumbwaiters 2020.
- E. ASTM A276/A276M - Standard Specification for Stainless Steel Bars and Shapes 2023.
- F. ASTM A666 - Standard Specification for Annealed or Cold-Worked Austenitic Stainless Steel Sheet, Strip, Plate, and Flat Bar 2023.
- G. AWS D1.1/D1.1M - Structural Welding Code - Steel 2020, with Errata (2023).
- H. NEMA MG 1 - Motors and Generators 2021.
- I. NFPA 13 - Standard for the Installation of Sprinkler Systems Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- J. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- K. NFPA 80 - Standard for Fire Doors and Other Opening Protectives 2022.

#### 1.04 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordination:
  - 1. Coordinate work with other installers to provide conduits necessary for installation of wiring including but not limited to:
    - a. Elevator equipment devices remote from elevator machine room or hoistway.
    - b. Elevator pit for lighting.
  - 2. Coordinate work with other installers for equipment provisions necessary for proper elevator operation, including but not limited to, the following:
- B. Preinstallation Meeting: Convene meeting at least one week prior to start of this work.
  - 1. Review schedule of installation, proper procedures and conditions, and coordination with related work.
- C. Construction Use of Elevator: Not permitted.

#### 1.05 SUMMARY

- A. This section specifies hydraulic elevators.
- B. Work Required
  - 1. The work required under this section consists of all labor, materials and services required for the complete installation (including operational verification) of all the equipment required for the elevator(s) as herein specified.
  - 2. All work shall be performed in a first class, safe and workmanlike manner.
  - 3. In all cases where a device or part of the equipment is herein referred to in the singular, it is intended that such reference shall apply to as many of such devices or parts as are required to make complete installation.

#### 1.06 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. The following sections contain requirements that relate to this section and are performed by trades other than the elevator manufacturer/installer.
  - 1. Section 01 50 00 – Temporary Facilities and Controls: protection of floor openings and personnel barriers; temporary power and lighting.
  - 2. Section 03 30 00 – Cast-In-Place Concrete: elevator pit, elevator motor and pump foundation, and grouting thresholds.
  - 3. Section 04 20 00 – Unit Masonry: masonry hoistway enclosure, building-in and grouting hoistway doorframes, and grouting of sills.
  - 4. Section 05 50 00 – Metal Fabrications: pit ladder, divider beams, supports for entrances and rails, and hoisting beam at top of elevator hoistway.
  - 5. Section 07 16 00 – Cementitious Waterproofing: waterproofing of elevator pit.
  - 6. Section 23 50 00 – Heat Generation Equipment: ventilation and temperature control of elevator equipment areas.
  - 7. Section 26 05 00 – Common Work Results for Electrical:
    - a. Main disconnects for each elevator.
    - b. Electrical power for elevator installation and testing.
    - c. Disconnecting device to elevator equipment prior to activation of sprinkler system.
    - d. The installation of dedicated GFCI receptacles in the pit and overhead.
    - e. Lighting in controller area, machine area and pit.
    - f. Wiring for telephone service to controller.
  - 8. Section 26 30 00 – Emergency (Standby) Power Supply Systems: emergency generator for elevator operation.
  - 9. Section 27 30 00 – Voice Communications: ADAAG-required emergency communications equipment.
  - 10. Section 28 31 00 – Fire Alarm Systems: fire and smoke detectors at required locations and interconnecting devices; fire alarm signal lines to contacts in the machine area.
  - 11. Section 31 10 00 – Site Clearing: excavation for cylinder well casing.

### 1.07 REFERENCES

- A. Comply with applicable building and elevator codes at the project site, including but not limited to the following:
  - 1. ASME A17.1/CSA B44, Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators.
  - 2. ASME A17.7/CSA B44, Performance-Based Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators.
  - 3. ADAAG, American Disabilities Act Accessibility Guidelines.
  - 4. ANSI A117.1, Building and Facilities, Providing Accessibility and Usability for Physically Handicapped People.
  - 5. ANSI/NFPA 70, (NEC) National Electrical Code.
  - 6. CAN/CSA C22.1, (CEC) Canadian Electrical Code.
  - 7. ANSI/UL 10B, Standard for Fire Test of Door Assemblies.
  - 8. CAN/ULC-S104-10, Standard Method for Fire Test of Door Assemblies.
  - 9. ANSI/NFPA 80, Standard for Fire Doors and Other Opening Protectives.
  - 10. Building Codes IBC or NBCC.
  - 11. All Local Jurisdictional applicable codes.

### 1.08 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Equipment Description: Hole-less Hydraulic elevator with a standard, adjacent machine room
- B. Equipment Control: Elevonic® Control System.
- C. Quantity of Elevators: 1
- D. Elevator Stop Designations: 1, 2
- E. Stops: 2
- F. Openings: Front and Rear
- G. Travel: 14'-0"
- H. Rated Capacity: 2100
- I. Rated Speed: 100 fpm
- J. Platform Size: 5'-9 1/2" W x 5'-6 1/8" D
- K. Clear Inside Dimensions: 5' 8 5/16" x 4' 4 1/8"
- L. Cab Height: 93"
- M. Clear Cab Height: 7'-4 5/16" (2243 mm)
- N. Entrance Type and Width: Single Slide - 3'0"
- O. Entrance Height: 84"
- P. Main Power Supply: 480 volts ± 5% of normal, three-phase, with a separate equipment grounding conductor.
- Q. Car Lighting Power Supply: 120 volts, single-phase, 15 amps, 60 Hz.
- R. Machine Location: Machine, tank and controller in an adjacent machine room.
- S. Signal Fixtures: Manufacturer's standard with metal button targets (excluding CA).
- T. Controller Location: In a machine space or closet
- U. Operation :**Simplex Collective Operation**: Using a microprocessor-based controller, operation shall be automatic by means of the car and hall buttons. If all calls in the system have been answered, the car shall park at the last landing served.
- V. Operation Features – Standard
  - 1. Full Collective Operation
  - 2. Anti- nuisance.
  - 3. Fan and Light Protection.
  - 4. Load Weighing Bypass.
  - 5. Independent Service.

6. Firefighters' Service Phase I and Phase II (USA only); or Special Emergency Service Phase I and II – Emergency Recall and In-Car Emergency Operation (Canada only).
  7. Top of Car Inspection.
- W. Operation Features – Optional
1. Zoned Access at Bottom Landing.
  2. Zoned Access at Upper Landing.
  3. Express Priority Service with key-switch(es)
  4. Emergency Hospital Service.
  5. Automatic Rescue Operation
  6. Automatic Standby Power Operation with Manual Override.
- X. Door Control Features
1. Door control to open doors automatically when car arrives at a landing in response to a normal hall or car call.
  2. Elevator doors shall be provided with a reopening device that will stop and reopen the car door(s) and hoistway door(s) automatically should the door(s) become obstructed by an object or person.
  3. Door protection shall consist of a two-dimensional, multi-beam array projecting across the car door opening.
  4. Door nudging operation to occur if doors are prevented from closing for an adjustable period of time.

#### 1.09 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Submit data on following items:
1. Signal and operating fixtures, operating panels, and indicators.
  2. Car design, dimensions, layout, and components.
  3. Car and hoistway door and frame details.
  4. Electrical characteristics and connection requirements.
  5. Expected heat dissipation of elevator equipment in hoistway (BTU).
  6. Color selection chart for Cab and Entrances.
  7. Electrical characteristics and connection requirements.
- C. Shop Drawings: Include appropriate plans, elevations, sections, diagrams, and details on following items:
1. Elevator Equipment and Machines: Size and location of driving machines, power units, controllers, governors, and other components.
  2. Hoistway Components: Size and location of car guide rails, buffers, jack unit and other components.
  3. Rail bracket spacing; maximum loads imposed on guide rails requiring load transfer to building structural framing.
  4. Clearances and over-travel of car.
  5. Locations in hoistway and machine room of traveling cables and connections for car lighting and telephone.
  6. Location and sizes of hoistway and car doors and frames.
  7. Electrical characteristics and connection requirements.
  8. Indicate arrangement of elevator equipment and allow for clear passage of equipment through access openings.
- D. Manufacturer's Qualification Statement.
- E. Installer's Qualification Statement.
- F. Testing Agency's Qualification Statement.
- G. Warranty Documentation: Submit manufacturer warranty and ensure that forms have been completed in Owner's name and registered with manufacturer.
- H. Initial Maintenance Contract.

- I. Maintenance Contract: Submit proposal to Owner for standard one year continuing maintenance contract agreement in accordance with ASME A17.1 and requirements as indicated, starting on date initial maintenance contract is scheduled to expire.
  1. Indicate in proposal the services, obligations, conditions, and terms for agreement period and for renewal options.
- J. Operation and Maintenance Data:
  1. Parts catalog with complete list of equipment replacement parts; identify each entry with equipment description and identifying code.
  2. Operation and maintenance manual.
  3. Schematic drawings of equipment and hydraulic piping, and wiring diagrams of installed electrical equipment with list of corresponding symbols to identify markings on machine room and hoistway apparatus.

#### **1.10 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Manufacturer: Elevator manufacturer shall be ISO 9001 certified.
- B. Designer Qualifications: Design guide rails, brackets, anchors, and machine anchors under direct supervision of a licensed Professional Structural Engineer experienced in design of this type of work and licensed in the State in which the Project is located.
- C. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section with minimum ten years documented experience.
- D. Installer Qualifications: Trained personnel and supervisor on staff of elevator equipment manufacturer.
- E. Testing Agency Qualifications: Independent firm specializing in performing testing and inspections of type specified in this section.
- F. Installer: Elevators shall be installed by the manufacturer.
- G. Permits, Inspections and Certificates: The Elevator Contractor shall obtain and pay for necessary Municipal or State Inspection and permit as required by the elevator inspection authority, and make such tests as are called for by the regulations of such authorities. These tests shall be made in the presence of such authorities or their authorized representatives.

#### **1.11 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Should the building or the site not be prepared to receive the elevator equipment at the agreed upon date, the General Contractor will be responsible to provide a proper and suitable storage area on or off the premises.
- B. Should the storage area be off-site, and the equipment not yet delivered, then the elevator contractor, upon notification from the General Contractor, will divert the elevator equipment to the storage area. If the equipment has already been delivered to the site, then the General Contractor shall transport the elevator equipment to the storage area. The cost of elevator equipment taken to storage by either party, storage, and redeliver to the job site shall not be at the expense of the elevator contractor.

#### **1.12 WARRANTY**

- A. See Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals for additional warranty requirements.
- B. Provide manufacturer's warranty for elevator operating equipment and devices for one year from Date of Substantial Completion.

#### **1.13 MAINTENANCE AND SERVICE**

- A. Maintenance service consisting of regular examinations and adjustments of the elevator equipment shall be provided by the elevator contractor for a period of 12 Months after the elevator has been turned over for the customer's use. This service shall not be subcontracted but shall be performed by the elevator contractor. All work shall be performed by competent employees during regular working hours of regular working days. This service shall not cover adjustments, repairs, or replacement of parts due to negligence, misuse, abuse or accidents caused by persons other than the elevator contractor. Only genuine parts and supplies as used



in the manufacture and installation of the original equipment shall be provided.

- B. The elevator control system must:
  - 1. Provide in the controller the necessary devices to run the elevator on inspection operation.
  - 2. Provide on top of the car the necessary devices to run the elevator in inspection operation.

## **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Hydraulic Elevator Manufacturers:
  - 1. Otis Elevator Company; \_\_\_\_\_: [www.otis.com/#sle](http://www.otis.com/#sle).
  - 2. Schindler Elevator Corporation; \_\_\_\_\_: [www.schindler.com/#sle](http://www.schindler.com/#sle).
  - 3. TK Elevator; \_\_\_\_\_: [www.tkelevator.com/#sle](http://www.tkelevator.com/#sle).
- B. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.
- C. Source Limitations: Provide elevator and associated equipment and components produced by the same manufacturer as the other elevator equipment used for this project and obtained from a single supplier.

### **2.02 HYDRAULIC ELEVATORS**

- A. Manufacturer:
  - 1. Basis of Design: Otis HydroFit Machine room elevator system.
- B. Hydraulic Passenger Elevator:
  - 1. Hydraulic Elevator Equipment:
    - a. Holeless hydraulic with cylinder mounted within hoistway.
  - 2. Service Control Types:
    - a. Standard service control.
    - b. Restricted Access service control.
  - 3. Interior Car Height: 93 inch (\_\_\_\_ mm).
  - 4. Electrical Power: 480 volts; alternating current (AC); three phase; 60 Hz.
  - 5. Rated Net Capacity: 2100 pounds (950 kgs).
  - 6. Minimum Rated Speed: 100 feet per minute (0.5 m per second).
  - 7. Hoistway Size: As indicated on drawings.
  - 8. Interior Car Platform Size: As indicated on drawings.
  - 9. Elevator Pit Depth: 48 inch (1219 mm).
  - 10. Overhead Clearance at Top Floor: 144 inch (3658 mm).
  - 11. Travel Distance: As indicated on drawings.
  - 12. Number of Stops: 2.
  - 13. Number of Openings: 1 Front; 1 Rear.
  - 14. Hydraulic Equipment Location: As indicated on drawings
- C. The controller and machine will be located in a machine room
- D. LED lighting standard in ceiling lights and elevator fixtures.
- E. Sleep mode operation for LED ceiling lights and car fan.

### **2.03 COMPONENTS**

- A. Elevator Equipment:
  - 1. Motors, Hydraulic Equipment, Controllers, Controls, Buttons, Wiring, Devices, and Indicators: Comply with NFPA 70; see Section 26 05 83.
  - 2. Guide Rails, Cables, Buffers, Attachment Brackets and Anchors: Design criteria for components includes safety factors in accordance with applicable requirements of Elevator Code, ASME A17.1.
  - 3. Buffers:
    - a. Spring type for elevators with speed less than or equal to 200 fpm (1 m/sec).
  - 4. Lubrication Equipment:
- B. Electrical Equipment:
  - 1. Motors: NEMA MG 1.

2. Boxes, Conduit, Wiring, and Devices: As required by NFPA 70; see Sections 26 05 33.13 and 26 05 83.

C. Machine components

1. The hydraulic system shall be of compact design suitable for operation under the required pressure. The power component shall be mounted in the hydraulic-fluid storage tank. The control valve shall control flow for up and down directions hydraulically and shall include an integral check valve. A control section including control solenoids shall direct the main valve and control: up and down starting, acceleration, transition from full speed to leveling speed, up and down stops, pressure relief and manual lowering. All of these functions shall be fully adjustable for maximum smoothness and to meet contract conditions. System to be provided with a low-pressure switch and a shut-off valve.
2. The entire hydraulic system with hydraulic-fluid storage tank, power component and valves shall be located in elevator machine room.
3. A microprocessor-based controller shall be provided, including necessary starting switches together with all relays, switches, solid-state components and hardware required for operation, including door operation, as described herein. A three (3) phase overload device shall be provided to protect the motor against overloading.
4. The controller shall be located together with the hydraulic system in the hoistway pit and be easily accessible for maintenance through the same access door that is also used for the hydraulic system. The controller will be located in the optional remote machine room if selected.
5. A manual lowering feature shall permit lowering the elevator at slow speed in the event of power failure or for adjusting purposes.
6. Pressure Switch
7. Tank Heater- Optional
8. Low-oil control (where required)

D. Hoistway Components

1. Plunger(s) and Cylinder(s): Each cylinder shall be constructed of steel pipe of sufficient thickness and suitable for the operating pressure. The top of each cylinder shall be equipped with a cylinder head with a drip ring to collect any oil seepage as well as an internal guide ring and self-adjusting packing. Each plunger shall be constructed of selected steel tubing or pipe of proper diameter machined true and smooth with a fine polished finish. Each plunger shall be provided with a stop ring electrically welded to it to prevent the plunger from leaving the cylinder. Each plunger and cylinder shall be installed plumb and shall operate freely with minimum friction.
2. Car Guide Rails: Tee-section steel rails with brackets and fasteners.

E.

1. Wiring: Wiring for hoistway electrical devices included in scope of the elevator system, hall panels, pit emergency stop switch, and the traveling cable for the elevator car
2. Spare Conductors: Provide ten percent in extra conductors and two pairs of shielded audio cables in traveling cables.
3. Include wiring and connections to elevator devices remote from hoistway and between elevator machine room. Provide additional components and wiring to suit machine room layout. See Section 26 05 83.

**2.04 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with ASME A17.1, applicable local codes, authorities having jurisdiction (AHJ), and \_\_\_\_\_.
- B. Accessibility Requirements: Comply with ADA Standards.
- C. Perform structural steel design, fabrication, and installation in accordance with AISC 360.
- D. Perform welding of steel in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- E. Fabricate and install door and frame assemblies in accordance with NFPA 80 and in compliance with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- F. Perform electrical work in accordance with NFPA 70.

- G. Comply with fire protection sprinkler system of hoistway design in accordance with NFPA 13 requirements and authorities having jurisdiction (AHJ). See Section 21 13 00.

## **2.05 OPERATION CONTROLS**

- A. Elevator Controls: Provide landing operating panels and landing indicator panels.
1. Landing Operating Panels: Metallic type, one for originating "Up" and one for originating "Down" calls, one button only at terminating landings; with illuminating indicators.
  2. Landing Indicator Panels: Illuminating.
  3. Comply with ADA Standards for elevator controls.
- B. Interconnect elevator control system with building security, fire alarm, smoke alarm, and building management control systems.
- C. Door Operation Controls:
1. Program door control to open doors automatically when car arrives at floor landing.
  2. Render "Door Close" button inoperative when car is standing at dispatch landing with doors open.
  3. Door Safety Devices: Moveable, retractable safety edges, quiet in operation; equipped with photo-electric light rays.
- D. Provide "Firefighter's Emergency Operation" in accordance with ASME A17.1, applicable building codes, and authorities having jurisdiction (AHJ).
1. Designated Landing: At 1st floor.

## **2.06 OPERATION CONTROL TYPE**

- A. Single Automatic (Push Button) Operation Control: Applies to car in single elevator shaft.
1. Refer to description provided in ASME A17.1.
  2. Set system operation so that momentary pressure of landing button dispatches car from other landing to that landing.
  3. Allow call registered by momentary pressure of landing button at any time to remain registered until car stops in response to that landing call.
  4. If elevator car door is not opened within predetermined period of time after car has stopped at terminal landing allow car to respond to call registered from other landing.

## **2.07 SERVICE CONTROL TYPE**

- A. Independent Service Control:
1. Provide key operated "Independent Service" on car operating panel. Key activation will remove that car from normal operation and cancel pre-registered car calls.
  2. Car will respond to selected floor. Car will not respond to any calls from landing call buttons. Car will only respond to calls placed on the car operating panel. Doors will remain open at last landing requested. Doors will close with a constant pressure on "Door Close" button.
  3. Key activation to normal operation will return car to normal operation.
- B. Restricted Access Service Control:
1. Keyed Lobby Lock-out: Provide a key operated switch in car operating panel that performs the following when activated:
    - a. Cancels registered car calls.
    - b. When activated, no new car calls will be registered, except at landing where lock-out feature is located.
    - c. Restricts car calls registered to specific floors only, except the main access floor and those floors enabled by lock-out switches.
    - d. Landing calls are answered in normal manner.
  2. Allow "Firefighter's Emergency Operation" to take control priority over "Restricted Access Service Control".

## **2.08 EMERGENCY POWER**

- A. Set-up elevator operation to run with building emergency power supply when the normal building power supply fails, and in compliance with ASME A17.1 requirements.

- B. Building Emergency Power Supply: Supplied by \_\_\_\_\_; provide elevator system components as required for emergency power characteristics with phase rotation the same as for normal power.
  - 1. Provide transfer switches and auxiliary contacts.
  - 2. Install connections to power feeders.
- C. Emergency Lighting: Comply with ASME A17.1 elevator lighting requirements.
- D. Provide operational control circuitry for adapting the change from normal to emergency power.
- E. Upon transfer to emergency power, advance one elevator at a time to a pre-selected landing, stop car, open doors, disable operating circuits, and hold in standby condition.

## 2.09 MATERIALS

- A. Stainless Steel Sheet: ASTM A666, Type 304; No. 4 Brushed finish unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Stainless Steel Bars, Shapes and Moldings: ASTM A276/A276M, Type 304.
- C. Resilient Flooring: Vinyl tile flooring and Resilient base, see Section 09 65 00, Type RF-03.

## 2.10 CAR AND HOISTWAY ENTRANCES

- A. Elevator, \_\_\_\_\_:
  - 1. Car and Hoistway Entrances, Main Elevator Lobby:
    - a. Framed Opening Finish and Material: Brushed stainless steel.
      - 1) Entrance frames shall be of bolted construction for complete one-piece unit assembly. All frames shall be securely fastened to fixing angles mounted in the hoistway and shall be of UL fire rated steel.
    - b. Car Door Material: Brushed Stainless steel, with rigid sandwich panel construction.
      - 1) Entrance doors shall be of metal construction with vertical channel reinforcements.
      - 2) Entrance and doors shall be UL fire rated for 1 hour.
    - c. Hoistway Door Material: Brushed Stainless steel, with rigid sandwich panel construction.
    - d. Door Operation: Side opening, two speed.
    - e. Entrance Marking Plates: Entrance jambs shall be marked with 4" x 4" (102 mm x 102 mm) plates having raised floor markings with Braille located adjacent to the floor marking. Marking plates shall be provided on both sides of the entrance.
    - f. Sight Guards: Sight guards will be furnished with all doors painted to match with painted doors, painted black for stainless steel doors.
  - 2. Car and Hoistway Entrances, Upper Floor Elevator Lobbies:
    - a. Hoistway Fire Rating: 1 Hour.
    - b. Elevator Door Fire Rating: 1 Hour.
    - c. Framed Opening Finish and Material: Brushed stainless steel.
      - 1) Entrance frames shall be of bolted construction for complete one-piece unit assembly. All frames shall be securely fastened to fixing angles mounted in the hoistway and shall be of UL fire rated steel.
    - d. Car Door Material: Brushed Stainless steel, with rigid sandwich panel construction.
      - 1) Entrance doors shall be of metal construction with vertical channel reinforcements.
      - 2) Entrance and doors shall be UL fire rated for 1 hour.
    - e. Hoistway Door Material: Brushed Stainless steel, with rigid sandwich panel construction.
    - f. Door Type: Double leaf.
    - g. Door Operation: Side opening, two speed.
    - h. Entrance Marking Plates: Entrance jambs shall be marked with 4" x 4" (102 mm x 102 mm) plates having raised floor markings with Braille located adjacent to the floor marking. Marking plates shall be provided on both sides of the entrance.

- i. Sight Guards: Sight guards will be furnished with all doors painted to match with painted doors, painted black for stainless steel doors.

## 2.11 CAR EQUIPMENT AND MATERIALS

### A. Elevator Car:

1. Car Operating Panel: Provide main; flush-mounted applied face plate, with illuminated call buttons corresponding to floors served with "Door Open" button, "Door Close" button, and alarm button.
  - a. Panel Material: Stainless steel; one per car.
  - b. Car Floor Position Indicator: Above door with illuminating position indicators.
  - c. Locate alarm button where it is unlikely to be accidentally actuated; not more than 54 inch (1.372 m) above car finished floor.
2. Fan: A one-speed 120 VAC fan will be mounted to the ceiling to facilitate in-car air circulation, meeting A17.1 code requirements. The fan shall be rubber mounted to prevent the transmission of structural vibration and will include a baffle to diffuse audible noise. A switch shall be provided in the car-operating panel to control the fan.
3. Flooring: Resilient vinyl tile.
4. Front Return Panel: Match material of side walls.
5. Cab: Steel Shell Cab with raised laminate wall panels Brushed Stainless Steel finished vertical trim pieces..
6. Hand Rail: Brushed Stainless steel, at all three sides. Provide open clearance space 1-1/2 inch (38 mm) wide to face of wall.
  - a. Stainless Steel Finish: No. 4 Brushed.
  - b. 3/8" x 2" flat tubular bar handrails shall be provided on the side walls.
7. Ceiling: Brushed Steel Finish .
8. Car Door Finish: Brushed Stainless Steel.
9. Emergency Car Lighting: An emergency power unit employing a 6-volt sealed rechargeable battery and totally static circuits shall be provided to illuminate the elevator car in the event of building power failure.
10. Threshold: Aluminum
11. Emergency Exit Contact: An electrical contact shall be provided on the car-top exit.
12. The LED ceiling lights, and the fan should automatically shut off when the system is not in use and be powered back up after a passenger calls the elevator and pushes a hall button.
13. *Note: Below are optional.*
14. Certificate frame: Provide a Certificate frame with a Brushed Stainless Steel finish.
15. Otis cab UVC light purification device
16. Otis cab air purifier

## 2.12 EQUIPMENT SIGNAL DEVICES AND FIXTURES

- A. The car operating panel shall be equipped with the following features:
  1. Raised markings and Braille to the left-hand side of each push-button.
  2. Car Position Indicator at the top of and integral to the car operating panel.
  3. Door open and door close buttons.
  4. Inspection key-switch.
  5. Elevator Data Plate marked with elevator capacity and car number.
  6. Help Button: The help button shall initiate two-way communication between the car and a location inside the building, switching over to another location if the call is unanswered, where personnel are available who can take the appropriate action. Visual indicators are provided for call initiation and call acknowledgement.
  7. Landing Passing Signal: A chime bell shall sound in the car to signal that the car is either stopping at or passing a floor served by the elevator.
  8. *Note: Below are Standard for USA and optional in Canada.*
  9. In car stop switch (toggle or key unless local code prohibits use)
  10. Firefighter's hat (standard USA)
  11. Firefighter's Phase II Key-switch (standard USA)

12. Call Cancel Button (standard USA)
  13. *Note: Below are optional.*
  14. Firefighter's Phase II Emergency In-Car Operating Instructions: worded according to A17.1 2000, Article 2.27.7.2.
  15. Please Exit Symbol: provided with emergency hospital service, or express priority in the hall.
- B. Car Position Indicator: A digital, LED car position indicator shall be integral to the car operating panel.
- C. Hall Fixtures: Hall fixtures shall be provided with necessary push buttons and key switches for elevator operation.
1. Integral Hall fixtures shall feature round stainless steel, mechanical buttons marked to correspond to the landings. Hall fixtures to be located in the entrance frame face. Buttons shall be in vertically mounted fixture. Fixture shall be Brushed Stainless Steel finish.
  2. Button: Flat flush mounted, Brushed Stainless Steel button with blue or white LED illuminating halo
  3. Car Lantern and Chime: A directional lantern visible from the corridor shall be provided in the car entrance. When the car stops and the doors are opening, the lantern shall indicate the direction in which the car is to travel, and a chime will sound.
- D. Access key-switch at top floor in entrance jamb.
- E. Access key-switch at lowest floor in entrance jamb.
- F. Card Reader Provision is Optional

## **2.13 FINISHES**

### **PART 3 EXECUTION**

#### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify existing conditions before starting this work.
- B. Verify that hoistway, pit, and machine room are ready for work of this section.
- C. Verify hoistway shaft and openings are of correct size and within tolerance.
- D. Verify location and size of machine foundation and position of machine foundation bolts.
- E. Verify that electrical power is available and of correct characteristics.

#### **3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Take field dimensions and examine conditions of substrates, supports, and other conditions under which this work is to be performed. Do not proceed with work until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected.

#### **3.03 INSTALLATION**

- A. Coordinate this work with installation of hoistway wall construction.
- B. Install system components, and connect equipment to building utilities.
- C. Provide conduit, electrical boxes, wiring, and accessories; see Sections 26 05 33.13 and 26 05 83.
- D. Install hydraulic piping between cylinder and pump unit.
- E. Mount machines, motors, and pumps on vibration and acoustic isolators.
  1. Place on structural supports and bearing plates.
  2. Securely fasten to building supports.
  3. Prevent lateral displacement.
- F. Install hoistway, elevator equipment, and components in accordance with approved shop drawings.
- G. Install guide rails to allow for thermal expansion and contraction movement of guide rails.
- H. Accurately machine and align guide rails, forming smooth joints with machined splice plates.

- I. Bolt or weld brackets directly to structural steel hoistway framing.
- J. Field Welds: Chip and clean away oxidation and residue with wire brush; spot prime surface with two coats.
- K. Install hoistway door sills, frames, and headers in hoistway walls; grout sills in place, set hoistway floor entrances in alignment with car openings, and align plumb with hoistway.
- L. Fill hoistway door frames solid with grout; see Section 04 20 00.
- M. Structural Metal Surfaces: Clean surfaces of rust, oil or grease; wipe clean with solvent; prime two coats.
- N. Wood Surfaces not Exposed to Public View: Finish with one coat primer; one coat enamel.
- O. Adjust equipment for smooth and quiet operation.

### **3.04 TOLERANCES**

- A. Guide Rail Alignment: Plumb and parallel to each other in accordance with ASME A17.1 and ASME A17.2.
- B. Car Movement on Aligned Guide Rails: Smooth movement, without any objectionable lateral or oscillating movement or vibration.

### **3.05 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. See Section 01 40 00 - Quality Requirements for additional requirements.
- B. Testing and inspection by regulatory agencies will be performed at their discretion.
  - 1. Schedule tests with agencies and notify Owner and Architect.
  - 2. Obtain permits as required to perform tests.
  - 3. Document regulatory agency tests and inspections in accordance with requirements.
  - 4. Perform tests required by regulatory agencies.
  - 5. Furnish test and approval certificates issued by authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Perform testing and inspection in accordance with requirements.
- D. Operational Tests:
  - 1. Perform operational tests in the presence of Owner.
  - 2. Test single elevator system by transporting at least 3 persons up from main floor to top floor landings during a five minute period.
  - 3. At an agreed time, and the building occupied with normal building traffic, conduct tests to verify performance.
    - a. Furnish event recording of each landing call registrations, time initiated, and response time throughout entire working day.
  - 4. Set period of time elevator takes to travel between typical floor landings at not more than 12 seconds.
    - a. Measure time from moment doors start to close until car has stopped level at next floor landing and doors are opening.

### **3.06 ADJUSTING**

- A. Adjust for smooth acceleration and deceleration of car to minimize passenger discomfort.
- B. Adjust with automatic floor leveling feature at each floor landing to reach 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) maximum from flush with sill.

### **3.07 CLEANING**

- A. See Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements for additional requirements.
- B. Remove protective coverings from finished surfaces.
- C. Clean surfaces and components in accordance with manufacturers written instructions.

### **3.08 CLOSEOUT ACTIVITIES**

- A. Demonstrate proper operation of equipment to Owner's designated representative.
- B. Demonstration: Demonstrate operation of system to Owner's personnel.

1. Use operation and maintenance data as reference during demonstration.
  2. Briefly describe function, operation, cleaning and maintenance of each component.
- C. Training: Train Owner's personnel on cleaning and operation and maintenance of system.
1. Use operation and maintenance manual as training reference, supplemented with additional training materials as required.
  2. Provide minimum of two hours of training.

### **3.09 PROTECTION**

- A. Do not permit construction traffic within car after cleaning.
- B. Protect installed products until Date of Substantial Completion.
- C. Touch-up, repair, or replace damaged products and materials prior to Date of Substantial Completion.

### **3.10 MAINTENANCE**

- A. Provide Initial Maintenance Contract of elevator system and components in accordance with ASME A17.1 and requirements as indicated for 6 months from Date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Submit proposal for continuation of Maintenance Contract in accordance with ASME A17.1 and requirements as indicated for installed elevator equipment.
- C. Perform maintenance contract services using competent and qualified personnel under the supervision and direct employ of the elevator manufacturer or original installer.
- D. Include systematic examination, adjustment, and lubrication of elevator equipment.
- E. Maintain and repair or replace parts, whenever required, using parts produced by original equipment manufacturer.
- F. Perform work without removing cars from use during peak traffic periods.
- G. Provide emergency call back service during regular working hours throughout period of this maintenance contract.

### **3.11 DEMONSTRATION**

- A. The elevator contractor shall make a final check of each elevator operation with the Owner or Owner's representative present prior to turning each elevator over for use. The elevator contractor shall determine that control systems and operating devices are functioning properly.
- B. Maintain an adequate stock of parts for replacement or emergency purposes, and have personnel available to ensure the fulfillment of this maintenance contract without unreasonable loss of time.

**END OF SECTION 14 24 00**



This page intentionally left blank

**SECTION 21 05 17**  
**SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Sleeves without waterstop.
  - 2. Sleeves with waterstop.
  - 3. Sleeve-seal systems.
  - 4. Grout.
  - 5. Silicone sealants.

**1.02 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

**1.03 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Field quality-control reports.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 SLEEVES WITHOUT WATERSTOP**

- A. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated of cast or ductile iron and equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends.
- B. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A53/A53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, hot-dip galvanized, with plain ends.
- C. Steel Sheet Sleeves: ASTM A653/A653M, 0.0239-inch (0.6-mm) minimum thickness; hot-dip galvanized, round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.

**2.02 SLEEVES WITH WATERSTOP**

- A. Description: Manufactured steel, sleeve-type, water stop assembly made for imbedding in concrete slab or wall.

**2.03 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS**

- A. Description: Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space between piping and sleeve.
  - 1. Designed to form a hydrostatic seal of 20 psig (137 kPa) minimum.
  - 2. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber, High-temperature-silicone, Nitrile (Buna N)] interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size.
  - 3. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel.
  - 4. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with ASTM B633 coating or Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

**2.04 GROUT**

- A. Description: Nonshrink, for interior and exterior sealing openings in non-fire-rated walls or floors.
- B. Standard: ASTM C1107/C1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- C. Design Mix: 5000 psi (34.5 MPa), 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

**2.05 SILICONE SEALANTS**

- A. Silicone, S, NS, 25, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant.
  - 1. Standard: ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.

- B. Silicone, S, P, T, NT: Single-component, 100/50, pourable, 100 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant.
  - 1. Standard: ASTM C920, Type S, Grade P, Class 100/50, Uses T and NT.

### **PART 3 EXECUTION/INSTALLATION OF SLEEVES - GENERAL**

#### **3.01 INSTALL SLEEVES FOR PIPING PASSING THROUGH PENETRATIONS IN FLOORS, PARTITIONS, ROOFS, AND WALLS.**

- A. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.
  - 1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- B. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.
  - 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
    - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level.
  - 2. Using grout or silicone sealant, seal space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without sleeve-seal system.
- C. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.
  - 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
  - 2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
  - 3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint.
- D. Fire-Resistance-Rated Penetrations, Horizontal Assembly Penetrations, and Smoke Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire or smoke rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with fire- and smoke-stop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping and fill materials specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

#### **3.02 INSTALLATION OF SLEEVES WITH WATERSTOP**

- A. Install sleeve with waterstop as new walls and slabs are constructed.
- B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.
- C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.
- D. Using grout or silicone sealant, seal space around outside of sleeves.

#### **3.03 INSTALLATION OF SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS**

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service piping entries into building, and passing through exterior walls.
- B. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Position piping in center of sleeve. Center piping in penetration, assemble sleeve-seal system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.

#### **3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
  - 1. Leak Test: After allowing for a full cure, test sleeves and sleeve seals for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
  - 2. Sleeves and sleeve seals will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- B. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### **3.05 SLEEVE SCHEDULE**

- A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:
1. Exterior Concrete Walls above and below Grade:
    - a. Sleeves with water stops.
      - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
  2. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade:
    - a. Sleeves with water stops.
      - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
  3. Concrete Slabs above Grade:
    - a. Sleeves with water stops.
  4. Interior Walls and Partitions:
    - a. Sleeves without water stops.

**END OF SECTION 21 05 17**

This page intentionally left blank

**SECTION 21 05 23**  
**GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR WATER-BASED FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Iron butterfly valves with indicators.
  - 2. Check valves.
  - 3. Iron OS&Y gate valves.
  - 4. NRS gate valves.
  - 5. Indicator posts.
  - 6. Trim and drain valves.

**1.02 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 SOURCE LIMITATIONS**

- A. Obtain each type of valve from single manufacturer.

**2.02 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. UL Listed: Valves shall be listed in UL's "Online Certifications Directory" under the headings listed below and shall bear UL mark:
  - 1. Fire Main Equipment: HAMV - Main Level.
    - a. Indicator Posts, Gate Valve: HCBZ - Level 1.
    - b. Ball Valves, System Control: HLUG - Level 3.
    - c. Butterfly Valves: HLXS - Level 3.
    - d. Check Valves: HMER - Level 3.
    - e. Gate Valves: HMRZ - Level 3.
  - 2. Sprinkler System and Water Spray System Devices: VDGT - Main Level.
    - a. Valves, Trim and Drain: VQGU - Level 1.
- B. FM Global Approved: Valves shall be listed in its "Approval Guide," under the headings listed below:
  - 1. Automated Sprinkler Systems:
    - a. Indicator posts.
    - b. Valves.
      - 1) Gate valves.
      - 2) Check valves
      - 3) Miscellaneous valves.
- C. ASME Compliance:
  - 1. ASME B1.20.1 for threads for threaded-end valves.
  - 2. ASME B16.1 for flanges on iron valves.
  - 3. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.
- D. AWWA Compliance: Comply with AWWA C606 for grooved-end connections.
- E. NFPA Compliance for valves:
  - 1. Comply with NFPA 13, NFPA 14, NFPA 20, and NFPA 24.
- F. Valve Pressure Ratings: Not less than the minimum pressure rating indicated or higher, as required by system pressures.
- G. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Valve Actuator Types:

1. Worm-gear actuator with handwheel for quarter-turn valves, except for trim and drain valves.
2. Handwheel: For other than quarter-turn trim and drain valves.
3. Handlever: For quarter-turn trim and drain valves NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller.

### **2.03 IRON BUTTERFLY VALVES WITH INDICATORS**

- A. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
1. Anvil International/Smith-Cooper International; Tailwind Capital, LLC;.
  2. Tyco Fire Products; brand of Johnson Controls International plc, Building Solutions North America;
  3. Victaulic Company;
- B. Description:
1. Standard: UL 1091 and FM Global standard for indicating valves, (butterfly or ball type), Class Number 112.
  2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1200 kPa).
  3. Body Material: Cast or ductile iron with nylon, EPDM, epoxy, or polyamide coating.
  4. Seat Material: EPDM.
  5. Stem: Stainless steel.
  6. Disc: Ductile iron, nickel plated and EPDM coated].
  7. Actuator: Worm gear.
  8. Supervisory Switch: Internal or external.
  9. Body Design: Lug or wafer, Grooved-end connections.

### **2.04 CHECK VALVES**

- A. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
1. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc. (The);
  2. Victaulic Company;
  3. Viking Group Inc.;
- B. Description:
1. Standard: UL 312 and FM Global standard for swing check valves, Class Number 1210.
  2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1200 kPa).
  3. Type: Single swing check.
  4. Body Material: Cast iron, ductile iron, or bronze.
  5. Clapper: Bronze, ductile iron, or stainless steel with elastomeric seal.
  6. Clapper Seat: Brass, bronze, or stainless steel.
  7. Hinge Shaft: Bronze or stainless steel.
  8. Hinge Spring: Stainless steel.
  9. End Connections: Flanged, grooved, or threaded.

### **2.05 IRON OS&Y GATE VALVES**

- A. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
1. Hammond Valve;
  2. Mueller Co. LLC; Mueller Water Products, Inc.;
  3. Victaulic Company;
- B. Description:
1. Standard: UL 262 and FM Global standard for fire-service water control valves (OS&Y- and NRS-type gate valves).
  2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1200 kPa).
  3. Body and Bonnet Material: Cast or ductile iron.
  4. Wedge: Cast or ductile iron, or bronze with elastomeric coating.
  5. Wedge Seat: Cast or ductile iron, or bronze with elastomeric coating.
  6. Stem: Brass or bronze.
  7. Packing: Non-asbestos PTFE.

8. Supervisory Switch: External.
9. End Connections: Flanged or Grooved.

## 2.06 NRS GATE VALVES

- A. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
  1. Victaulic Company;
- B. Description:
  1. Standard: UL 262 and FM Global standard for fire-service water control valves (OS&Y- and NRS-type gate valves).
  2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1200 kPa).
  3. Body and Bonnet Material: Cast or ductile iron.
  4. Wedge: Cast or ductile iron with elastomeric coating.
  5. Wedge Seat: Cast or ductile iron, or bronze with elastomeric coating.
  6. Stem: Brass or bronze.
  7. Packing: Non-asbestos PTFE.
  8. Supervisory Switch: External.
  9. End Connections: Flanged or Grooved.

## 2.07 TRIM AND DRAIN VALVES

- A. Ball Valves:
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Milwaukee Valve Company;
    - b. NIBCO INC.; G-595Y-66/KT-585-70-UL.
    - c. Victaulic Company;
  2. Description:
    - a. Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1200 kPa)
    - b. Body Design: Two piece.
    - c. Body Material: Forged brass or bronze.
    - d. Port size: Full or standard.
    - e. Seats: PTFE.
    - f. Stem: Bronze or stainless steel.
    - g. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
    - h. Actuator: Handlever.
    - i. End Connections for Valves NPS 1 (DN 25) through NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): Threaded ends.
    - j. End Connections for Valves NPS 1-1/4 and NPS 2-1/2 (DN 32 and DN 65): Grooved ends.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.01 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Comply with requirements in the following Sections for specific valve-installation requirements and applications:
  1. Section 211200 "Fire-Suppression Standpipes" for application of valves in fire-suppression standpipes.
  2. Section 211313 "Wet-Pipe Sprinkler Systems" for application of valves in wet-pipe, fire-suppression sprinkler systems.
  3. Section 211316 "Dry-Pipe Sprinkler Systems" for application of valves in dry-pipe, fire-suppression sprinkler systems.
  4. Section 211339 "Foam-Water Systems" for application of valves in AFFF piping.
  5. Section 331415 "Site Water Distribution Piping" for application of valves in fire-suppression water-service piping.
- B. Install listed fire-protection shutoff valves supervised-open, located to control sources of water supply, except from fire-department connections. Install permanent identification signs,



indicating portion of system controlled by each valve.

- C. Install double-check valve assembly in each fire-protection water-supply connection.
- D. Install valves having threaded connections with unions at each piece of equipment arranged to allow easy access, service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown. Provide separate support where necessary.
- E. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above the pipe center.
- F. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.
- G. Install valve tags. Comply with requirements in Section 210553 "Identification for Fire-Suppression Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules and signs on surfaces concealing valves; and the NFPA standard applying to the piping system in which valves are installed. Install permanent identification signs indicating the portion of system controlled by each valve.

**END OF SECTION 21 05 23**

**SECTION 21 05 29  
HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR FIRE SUPPRESSION PIPING AND EQUIPMENT**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
  - 2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
  - 3. Thermal hanger-shield inserts.
  - 4. Fastener systems.
  - 5. Equipment supports.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for structural-steel shapes and plates for trapeze hangers for pipe and equipment supports.
  - 2. Section 210516 "Expansion Fittings and Loops for Fire-Suppression Piping" for pipe guides and anchors.
  - 3. Section 210548.13 "Vibration Controls for Fire-Suppression Piping and Equipment" for vibration isolation devices and seismic restraints.

**1.02 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer. Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For trapeze hangers indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

**1.03 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Welding certificates.

**1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Structural-Steel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to "2015 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section IX."

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.
- B. Structural Performance: Hangers and supports for fire-suppression piping and equipment shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7.
  - 1. Design supports for multiple pipes, including pipe stands, capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.
  - 2. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.
  - 3. Design seismic-restraint hangers and supports for piping and equipment and obtain approval from authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 13, NFPA 14 and NFPA 20.
- D. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 203.

## **2.02 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS**

- A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:
  - 1. Description: Factory-fabricated components, NFPA approved, UL listed, or FM approved for fire-suppression piping support.
  - 2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pre galvanized or hot-dip galvanized.
  - 3. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel or stainless steel.

## **2.03 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS**

- A. Description: MSS SP-58, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly, made from structural-carbon-steel shapes, with NFPA-approved, UL-listed, or FM-approved carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

## **2.04 THERMAL HANGER-SHIELD INSERTS**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. CADDY; brand of nVent Electrical plc.
  - 2. National Pipe Hanger Corporation.
- B. Insulation-Insert Material: Water-repellent-treated, ASTM C533, Type I calcium silicate with 100-psi (688-kPa), ASTM C552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psi (688-kPa), ASTM C591, Type VI, Grade 1 polyisocyanurate with 125-psi (862-kPa) minimum compressive strength.
- C. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.
- D. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.
- E. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches (50 mm) beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

## **2.05 FASTENER SYSTEMS**

- A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: NFPA-approved, UL-listed, or FM-approved threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Cooper B-line; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.
    - b. Hilti, Inc.
    - c. MKT Fastening, LLC.
- B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: NFPA-approved, UL-listed, or FM-approved, insert-wedge-type anchors, for use in hardened portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Cooper B-line; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.
    - b. Hilti, Inc.
    - c. MKT Fastening, LLC.
  - 2. Indoor Applications: Zinc-coated or Stainless steel.
  - 3. Outdoor Applications: Stainless steel.

## **2.06 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS**

- A. Description: NFPA-approved, UL-listed, or FM-approved, welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support, made from structural-carbon-steel shapes.

## **2.07 MATERIALS**

- A. Aluminum: ASTM B221 (ASTM B221M).
- B. Carbon Steel: ASTM A1011/A1011M.

- C. Structural Steel: ASTM A36/A36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- D. Stainless Steel: ASTM A240/A240M.
- E. Grout: ASTM C1107/C1107M, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout, suitable for interior and exterior applications.
  - 1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
  - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.

### **PART 3 EXECUTION**

#### **3.01 APPLICATION**

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping materials and installation, for penetrations through fire-rated walls, ceilings, and assemblies.
- B. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components, so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus [200 lb (90 kg)] .

#### **3.02 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION**

- A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with installation requirements of approvals and listings. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from building structure.
- B. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-58. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.
  - 1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size, or install intermediate supports for smaller-diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
  - 2. Field fabricate from ASTM A36/A36M carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- C. Thermal Hanger-Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.
- D. Fastener System Installation:
  - 1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches (100 mm) thick in concrete, after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual. Install in accordance with approvals and listings.
  - 2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete, after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions. Install in accordance with approvals and listings.
- E. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
- F. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.
- G. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- H. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.
- I. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65)] and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.

- J. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports, so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- K. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.

### 3.03 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.
- B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment, and make bearing surface smooth.
- C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

### 3.04 METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for [trapeze pipe hangers] [and] [equipment supports].
- B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work.

### 3.05 ADJUSTING

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
- B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches (40 mm).

### 3.06 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
- B. Comply with NFPA requirements for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finishes.
- D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
- E. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports and metal trapeze pipe hangers and attachments for general service applications.
- F. Use stainless-steel pipe hangers and stainless-steel or corrosion-resistant attachments for hostile environment applications.
- G. Use thermal hanger-shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.
- H. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Comply with NFPA requirements. Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  - 1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30 (DN 15 to DN 750).
  - 2. Steel Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 4): For suspension of NPS 1/2 to NPS 24 (DN 15 to DN 600) if little or no insulation is required.
  - 3. Adjustable, Swivel-Ring Band Hangers (MSS Type 10): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8 (DN 15 to DN 200).
  - 4. Split Pipe Ring with or without Turnbuckle Hangers (MSS Type 11): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 8 (DN 10 to DN 200).
  - 5. Extension Hinged or Two-Bolt Split Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 12): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 3 (DN 10 to DN 80).

6. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30 (DN 15 to DN 750).
7. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36 (DN 100 to DN 900), with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate.
8. Pipe Stanchion Saddles (MSS Type 37): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36 (DN 100 to DN 900), with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate, and with U-bolt to retain pipe.
9. Adjustable Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 38): For stanchion-type support for pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 36 (DN 65 to DN 900) if vertical adjustment is required, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.
- I. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 (DN 24 to DN 600).
  2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 (DN 20 to DN 600) if longer ends are required for riser clamps.
- J. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Comply with NFPA requirements.
- K. Building Attachments: Comply with NFPA requirements. Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  1. Steel or Malleable-Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
  2. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
  3. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
- L. Saddles and Shields: Comply with NFPA requirements. Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
  2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
  3. Thermal Hanger-Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.
- M. Comply with NFPA requirements for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- N. Use powder-actuated fasteners or mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.

**END OF SECTION 21 05 29**

This page intentionally left blank

**SECTION 21 11 19  
FIRE DEPARTMENT CONNECTIONS**

**PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

**STANDARD-PRESSURE, FIRE-SUPPRESSION STANDPIPE SYSTEM COMPONENT: LISTED FOR 175-PSIG (1200-KPA) MINIMUM WORKING PRESSURE.**

**MINIMUM RESIDUAL PRESSURE AT EACH HOSE-CONNECTION OUTLET IS AS FOLLOWS:**

**3.01 NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) HOSE CONNECTIONS: 100 PSIG (690 KPA).**

**PIPING MATERIALS**

**BLACK STEEL PIPE: SCHEDULE 40/ SCHEDULE 10.**

**BLACK STEEL PIPE FITTINGS:**

**6.01 UNCOATED, STEEL COUPLINGS.**

**6.02 UNCOATED, GRAY-IRON THREADED FITTINGS.**

**6.03 MALLEABLE- OR DUCTILE-IRON UNIONS.**

**6.04 CAST-IRON FLANGES.**

**6.05 STEEL FLANGES AND FLANGED FITTINGS.**

**6.06 STEEL WELDING FITTINGS.**

**6.07 GROOVED-END-PIPE COUPLINGS FOR STEEL PIPING.**

**HOSE CONNECTIONS**

**BRASS OR BRONZE ADJUSTABLE-VALVE HOSE CONNECTIONS:**

**8.01 SIZE: NPS 2-1/2 (DN 40 OR DN 65), AS INDICATED.**

**8.02 PATTERN: ANGLE.**

**8.03 PRESSURE-CONTROL DEVICE TYPE: PRESSURE RESTRICTING.**

**8.04 FINISH: ROUGH BRASS OR BRONZE.**

**BRASS OR BRONZE NONADJUSTABLE-VALVE HOSE CONNECTIONS:**

**9.01 SIZE: NPS 2-1/2 (DN 40 OR DN 65), AS INDICATED.**

**9.02 PATTERN: ANGLE.**

**9.03 FINISH: ROUGH BRASS OR BRONZE.**

**PRESSURE GAUGES**

**DIAL SIZE: 3-1/2- TO 4-1/2-INCH (90- TO 115-MM) DIAMETER.**

**RANGE: 0- TO 250-PSIG (0- TO 1725-KPA) MINIMUM.**

**LABEL ON DIAL FACE: "WATER" OR "AIR/WATER."**

**AIR SYSTEM PIPING GAUGE: INCLUDE RETARD FEATURE AND "AIR" OR "AIR/WATER" LABEL ON DIAL FACE.**

**END OF SECTION 21 11 19**



This page intentionally left blank

**SECTION 21 13 13  
WET PIPE SPRINKER SYSTEMS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Steel pipe and fittings.
  - 2. Air vent.
  - 3. Sprinkler piping specialties.
  - 4. Specialty valves.
  - 5. Sprinklers.
  - 6. Manual control stations.
  - 7. Pressure gauges.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 211119 "Fire Department Connections" for exposed-, flush-, and yard-type fire department connections.
  - 2. Section 331415 "Site Water Distribution Piping" for fire water-service backflow prevention devices.

**1.02 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For wet-pipe sprinkler systems.
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
  - 2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Delegated Design Submittals: For wet-pipe sprinkler systems indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data, signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation. NICET certified-technician submittals are to include the following information on each drawing title block: technician's name, NICET certification number, and, NICET certification specialty area and level.]

**1.03 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Coordination Drawings: Sprinkler system plans and sections, or Building Information Model (BIM), drawn to scale, showing the items described in this Section and coordinated with all building trades.
- B. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer and professional engineer and NICET certified technician].
- C. Design Data: Approved sprinkler piping working plans, prepared according to NFPA 13, including documented approval by authorities having jurisdiction, and including hydraulic calculations if applicable.
- D. Field Test Reports: Indicate and interpret test results for compliance with performance requirements and as described in NFPA 13. Include "Contractor's Material and Test Certificate for Aboveground Piping."
- E. Field quality-control reports.

**1.04 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Operation and maintenance data.

**1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Installer Qualifications:
  - 1. Installer's responsibilities include designing, fabricating, and installing sprinkler systems and providing professional engineering services needed to assume engineering responsibility. Base calculations on results of fire-hydrant flow test.
    - a. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of working plans, calculations, and field test reports by qualified professional engineer. NICET Level III-certified technician,

"Water-Based Systems Layout."

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Sprinkler system equipment, specialties, accessories, installation, and testing to comply with NFPA 13.
- C. Standard-Pressure Piping System Component: Listed for 175-psig (1200-kPa) minimum working pressure.
- D. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design wet-pipe sprinkler systems.
  - 1. Margin of Safety for Available Water Flow and Pressure: 10 percent, including losses through water-service piping, valves, and backflow preventers.
  - 2. Sprinkler Occupancy Hazard Classifications: Refer to Hydraulic Design Criteria Schedule
  - 3. Minimum Density for Automatic-Sprinkler Piping Design:
    - a. Light-Hazard Occupancy: 0.10 gpm/sq. ft. over 1500 sq. ft. (4.1 mm/min. over 140 sq. m) area.
    - b. Ordinary-Hazard, Group 1 Occupancy: 0.15 gpm/sq. ft. over 1500 sq. ft. (6.1 mm/min. over 140 sq. m) area.
    - c. Ordinary-Hazard, Group 2 Occupancy: 0.20 gpm/sq. ft. over 1500 sq. ft. (8.2 mm/min. over 140 sq. m) area.
  - 4. Maximum protection area per sprinkler according to UL listing.
  - 5. Maximum Protection Area per Sprinkler:
    - a. Office Spaces: 225 sq. ft. (20.9 sq. m).
    - b. Storage Areas: 130 sq. ft. (12.1 sq. m).
    - c. Mechanical Equipment Rooms: 130 sq. ft. (12.1 sq. m).
    - d. Electrical Equipment Rooms: 130 sq. ft. (12.1 sq. m).
    - e. Other Areas: According to NFPA 13 recommendations unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Obtain documented approval of sprinkler system design from authorities having jurisdiction.
- F. Seismic Performance: Sprinkler piping to withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to NFPA 13 and ASCE/SEI 7. See Section 210548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Fire-Suppression Piping and Equipment."

**2.02 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS**

- A. Standard-Weight Steel Pipe: Schedule 40, black-steel pipe, ASTM A53/A53M, Type E, Grade B. Pipe ends may be factory or field formed to match joining method.
- B. Steel Pipe Nipples: black-steel pipe, ASTM A733, made of ASTM A53/A53M, standard-weight, seamless steel pipe with threaded ends.
- C. Steel Couplings: uncoated steel, ASTM A865/A865M, threaded.
- D. Gray-Iron Threaded Fittings: uncoated gray-iron threaded fittings, ASME B16.4, Class 125, standard pattern.
- E. Malleable- or Ductile-Iron Unions: UL 860.
- F. Cast-Iron Flanges: ASME 16.1, Class 125.
- G. Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, Class 150.
  - 1. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick, ASME B16.21, nonmetallic and asbestos-free or EPDM rubber gasket.
    - a. Class 125 and Class 250, Cast-Iron, Flat-Face Flanges: Full-face gaskets.
    - b. Class 150 and Class 300, Ductile-Iron or -Steel, Raised-Face Flanges: Ring-type gaskets.
- H. Grooved-Joint, Steel-Pipe Appurtenances:
  - 1. Viking and Victaulic

2. Pressure Rating: 175-psig (1200-kPa) minimum.
3. Grooved-End Fittings for Steel Piping: Uncoated grooved-end fittings, ASTM A47/A47M, malleable-iron casting or ASTM A536, ductile-iron casting, with dimensions matching steel pipe.
4. Grooved-End-Pipe Couplings for Steel Piping: AWWA C606 and UL 213 rigid pattern, unless otherwise indicated, for steel-pipe dimensions. Include ferrous housing sections, EPDM-rubber gasket, and bolts and nuts.
5. End Connections: Threaded.

### 2.03 AIR VENT

- A. Automatic Air Vent:
  1. Viking and Victaulic
  2. Description: Automatic air vent that automatically vents trapped air without human intervention.
  3. Standard: UL listed or FM Global approved for wet-pipe fire sprinkler systems.
  4. Vents oxygen continuously from system.
  5. Float valve to prevent water discharge.
  6. Minimum Water Working Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1207 kPa).
- B. Automatic Air Vent Assembly:
  1. Description: Automatic dual air vent assembly that automatically vents trapped air without human intervention, including Y-strainer and ball valve in a prepiped assembly.
  2. Standard: UL listed or FM Global approved for use in wet-pipe fire sprinkler system.
  3. Vents oxygen continuously from system.
  4. Float valve to prevent water discharge.
  5. Minimum Water Working Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1207 kPa).

### 2.04 SPRINKLER PIPING SPECIALTIES

- A. Branch Outlet Fittings:
  1. Standard: UL 213.
  2. Pressure Rating: 175-psig (1200-kPa) minimum.
  3. Body Material: Ductile-iron housing with EPDM seals and bolts and nuts.
  4. Type: Mechanical-tee and -cross fittings.
  5. Configurations: Snap-on and strapless, ductile-iron housing with branch outlets.
  6. Size: Of dimension to fit onto sprinkler main and with outlet connections as required to match connected branch piping.
  7. Branch Outlets: Grooved, plain-end pipe, or threaded.
- B. Flow Detection and Test Assemblies:
  1. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
  2. Pressure Rating: 175-psig (1200-kPa) minimum.
  3. Body Material: Cast- or ductile-iron housing with orifice, sight glass, and integral test valve.
  4. Size: Same as connected piping.
  5. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded or grooved.
- C. Branch Line Testers:
  1. Standard: UL 199.
  2. Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1200 kPa).
  3. Body Material: Brass.
  4. Size: Same as connected piping.
  5. Inlet: Threaded.
  6. Drain Outlet: Threaded and capped.
  7. Branch Outlet: Threaded, for sprinkler.
- D. Sprinkler Inspector's Test Fittings:
  1. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
  2. Pressure Rating: 175-psig (1200-kPa) minimum.

3. Body Material: Cast- or ductile-iron housing with sight glass.
4. Size: Same as connected piping.
5. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded.

E. Adjustable Drop Nipples:

1. Standard: UL 1474.
2. Pressure Rating: 250-psig (1725-kPa) minimum.
3. Body Material: Steel pipe with EPDM-rubber O-ring seals.
4. Size: Same as connected piping.
5. Length: Adjustable.
6. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded.

## 2.05 SPRINKLERS

- A. Listed in UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
- B. Pressure Rating for Residential Sprinklers: 175-psig (1200-kPa) maximum.
- C. Pressure Rating for Automatic Sprinklers: 175-psig (1200-kPa) minimum.
- D. Automatic Sprinklers with Heat-Responsive Element:
  1. Nonresidential Applications: UL 199.
  2. Characteristics: Nominal 1/2-inch (12.7-mm) orifice with Discharge Coefficient K of 5.6, and for "Ordinary" temperature classification rating unless otherwise indicated or required by application. For Window Sprinklers refer to manufacturers' installation requirements.
- E. Sprinkler Finishes: Chrome plated.
- F. Sprinkler Escutcheons: Materials, types, and finishes for the following sprinkler mounting applications. Escutcheons for concealed, flush, and recessed-type sprinklers are specified with sprinklers.
  1. Ceiling Mounting: Chrome-plated steel, one piece, flat
  2. Sidewall Mounting: Chrome-plated steel, one piece, flat.
- G. Sprinkler Guards:
  1. Standard: UL 199.
  2. Type: Wire cage with fastening device for attaching to sprinkler.

## 2.06 MANUAL CONTROL STATIONS

- A. Listed in UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide" for hydraulic operation, with union, NPS 1/2 (DN 15) pipe nipple, and bronze ball valve.
- B. Include metal enclosure labeled "MANUAL CONTROL STATION," with operating instructions and cover held closed by breakable strut to prevent accidental opening.

## 2.07 PRESSURE GAUGES

- A. Standard: UL 393.
- B. Dial Size: 3-1/2- to 4-1/2-inch (90- to 115-mm) diameter.
- C. Pressure Gauge Range: 0- to 250-psig (0- to 1725-kPa) minimum.
- D. Label: Include "WATER" label on dial face.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.01 SERVICE-ENTRANCE PIPING

- A. Connect sprinkler piping to water-service piping for service entrance to building. Comply with requirements for exterior piping in Section 331415 "Site Water Distribution Piping" for exterior piping.
- B. Install shutoff valve, backflow preventer, pressure gauge, drain, and other accessories indicated at connection to water-service piping. Comply with requirements for backflow preventers in Section 331415 "Site Water Distribution Piping."
- C. Install shutoff valve, check valve, pressure gauge, and drain at connection to water service.

### 3.02 WATER-SUPPLY CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect sprinkler piping to building's interior water-distribution piping. Comply with requirements for interior piping in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."
- B. Install shutoff valve, backflow preventer, pressure gauge, drain, and other accessories indicated at connection to water-distribution piping. Comply with requirements for backflow preventers in Section 331415 "Site Water Distribution Piping."
- C. Install shutoff valve, check valve, pressure gauge, and drain at connection to water supply.

### 3.03 INSTALLATION OF PIPING

- A. Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping. Install piping as indicated on approved working plans.
  - 1. Deviations from approved working plans for piping require written approval from authorities having jurisdiction. File written approval with Architect before deviating from approved working plans.
  - 2. Coordinate layout and installation of sprinklers with other construction that penetrates ceilings, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, and partition assemblies.
- B. Piping Standard: Comply with NFPA 13 requirements for installation of sprinkler piping.
- C. Install seismic restraints on piping. Comply with NFPA 13 requirements for seismic-restraint device materials and installation.
- D. Use listed fittings to make changes in direction, branch takeoffs from mains, and reductions in pipe sizes.
- E. Install unions adjacent to each valve in pipes NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller.
- F. Install flanges, flange adapters, or couplings for grooved-end piping on valves, apparatus, and equipment having NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger end connections.
- G. Install "Inspector's Test Connections" in sprinkler system piping, complete with shutoff valve, and sized and located according to NFPA 13.
- H. Install sprinkler piping with drains for complete system drainage.
- I. Install sprinkler control valves, test assemblies, and drain risers adjacent to standpipes when sprinkler piping is connected to standpipes.
- J. Install automatic (ball drip) drain valve at each check valve for fire-department connection, to drain piping between fire-department connection and check valve. Install drain piping to and spill over floor drain or to outside building.
- K. Install alarm devices in piping systems.
- L. Install hangers and supports for sprinkler system piping according to NFPA 13. Comply with requirements for hanger materials in NFPA 13. In seismic-rated areas, refer to Section 210548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Fire-Suppression Piping and Equipment."
- M. Install pressure gauges on riser or feed main, at each sprinkler test connection, and at top of each standpipe. Include pressure gauges with connection not less than NPS 1/4 (DN 8) and with soft-metal seated globe valve, arranged for draining pipe between gauge and valve. Install gauges to permit removal, and install where they are not subject to freezing.
- N. Fill sprinkler system piping with water.
- O. Install electric heating cables and pipe insulation on sprinkler piping in areas subject to freezing. Comply with requirements for heating cables in Section 210533 "Heat Tracing for Fire-Suppression Piping" and for piping insulation in Section 210700 "Fire-Suppression Systems Insulation."
- P. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 210517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Fire-Suppression Piping."
- Q. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 210517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Fire-

Suppression Piping."

- R. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 210518 "Escutcheons for Fire-Suppression Piping."

### **3.04 JOINT CONSTRUCTION**

- A. Install couplings, flanges, flanged fittings, unions, nipples, and transition and special fittings that have finish and pressure ratings same as or higher than system's pressure rating for aboveground applications unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Install unions adjacent to each valve in pipes NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller.
- C. Install flanges, flange adapters, or couplings for grooved-end piping on valves, apparatus, and equipment having NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger end connections.
- D. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- E. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.
- F. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material in size, type, and thickness suitable for water service. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9.
- G. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
  - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads.
  - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.
- H. Twist-Locked Joints: Insert plain end of steel pipe into plain-end-pipe fitting. Rotate retainer lugs one-quarter turn or tighten retainer pin.
- I. Steel-Piping, Cut-Grooved Joints: Cut square-edge groove in end of pipe according to AWWA C606. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join steel pipe and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for steel-pipe joints.
- J. Steel-Piping, Roll-Grooved Joints: Roll rounded-edge groove in end of pipe according to AWWA C606. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join steel pipe and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for steel-pipe grooved joints.

### **3.05 INSTALLATION OF COVER SYSTEM FOR SPRINKLER PIPING**

- A. Install cover system, brackets, and cover components for sprinkler piping according to manufacturer's "Installation Manual" and NFPA 13 or NFPA 13R for supports.

### **3.06 INSTALLATION OF VALVES AND SPECIALTIES**

- A. Install listed fire-protection valves, trim and drain valves, specialty valves and trim, controls, and specialties according to NFPA 13 and authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Install listed fire-protection shutoff valves supervised open, located to control sources of water supply except from fire-department connections. Install permanent identification signs indicating portion of system controlled by each valve.
- C. Install check valve in each water-supply connection. Install backflow preventers instead of check valves in potable-water-supply sources.
- D. Specialty Valves:
  - 1. Install valves in vertical position for proper direction of flow, in main supply to system.
  - 2. Install alarm valves with bypass check valve and retarding chamber drain-line connection.
  - 3. Install deluge valves in vertical position, in proper direction of flow, and in main supply to deluge system. Install trim sets for drain, priming level, alarm connections, ball drip valves, pressure gauges, priming chamber attachment, and fill-line attachment.
- E. Air Vent:

1. Provide at least one air vent in each wet pipe sprinkler system in accordance with NFPA 13 requirements. Connect vent into top of fire sprinkler piping.
2. Provide dielectric union for dissimilar metals, ball or globe valve, and strainer upstream of automatic air vent.
3. Pipe from outlet of air vent to drain.

### **3.07 INSTALLATION OF SPRINKLERS**

- A. Install sprinklers in suspended ceilings in center of narrow dimension of acoustical ceiling panels.
- B. Install dry-type sprinklers with water supply from heated space. Do not install pendent or sidewall, wet-type sprinklers in areas subject to freezing.
- C. Install sprinklers into flexible, sprinkler hose fittings, and install hose into bracket on ceiling grid.

### **3.08 IDENTIFICATION**

- A. Install labeling and pipe markers on equipment and piping according to requirements in NFPA 13.
- B. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

### **3.09 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
  1. Leak Test: After installation, charge systems and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
  2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
  3. Flush, test, and inspect sprinkler systems according to NFPA 13, "Systems Acceptance" Chapter.
  4. Energize circuits to electrical equipment and devices.
  5. Coordinate with fire-alarm tests. Operate as required.
  6. Coordinate with fire-pump tests. Operate as required.
  7. Verify that equipment hose threads are same as local fire department equipment.
- B. Sprinkler piping system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### **3.10 CLEANING**

- A. Clean dirt and debris from sprinklers.
- B. Only sprinklers with their original factory finish are acceptable. Remove and replace any sprinklers that are painted or have any other finish than their original factory finish.

### **3.11 PIPING SCHEDULE**

- A. Piping between Fire Department Connections and Check Valves: Galvanized, standard-weight steel pipe with threaded ends, cast-iron threaded fittings, and threaded joints.
- B. Sprinkler specialty fittings may be used, downstream of control valves, instead of specified fittings.
- C. Standard-Pressure, Wet-Pipe Sprinkler System, NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller, to Be One of the Following:
  1. Standard-weight Schedule 40, black-steel pipe with threaded ends; uncoated, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
  2. Standard-weight Schedule 40, galvanized-steel pipe with threaded ends; galvanized, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
- D. Standard-Pressure, Wet-Pipe Sprinkler System, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100), to Be One of the Following:



1. Standard-weight Schedule 40, black-steel pipe with threaded ends; uncoated, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
  2. Standard-weight Schedule 40, galvanized-steel pipe with threaded ends; galvanized, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
  3. grooved joints.
- E. Standard-Pressure, Wet-Pipe Sprinkler System, NPS 5 (DN 125) and Larger, to Be One of the Following:
1. Standard-weight Schedule 40, black-steel pipe with threaded ends; uncoated, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
  2. Standard-weight Schedule 40, galvanized-steel pipe with threaded ends; galvanized, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.

### **3.12 SPRINKLER SCHEDULE**

- A. Use sprinkler types in subparagraphs below for the following applications:
1. Rooms without Ceilings: Upright sprinklers.
  2. Rooms with Suspended Ceilings: Concealed sprinklers as indicated.
  3. Wall Mounting: Sidewall sprinklers.
  4. Special Applications: Pendent or sidewall window sprinklers.
- B. Provide sprinkler types in subparagraphs below with finishes indicated.
1. Concealed Sprinklers: Rough brass, with factory-painted white cover plate.
  2. Flush Sprinklers: Bright chrome, with painted white escutcheon.
  3. Recessed Sprinklers: Bright chrome, with bright chrome escutcheon.
  4. Residential Sprinklers: Dull chrome.
  5. Upright, Pendent, and Sidewall Sprinklers: Chrome plated in finished spaces exposed to view; rough bronze in unfinished spaces not exposed to view; wax coated where exposed to acids, chemicals, or other corrosive fumes.

**END OF SECTION 21 13 13**

**SECTION 22 05 17**  
**SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR PLUMBING PIPING**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Sleeves without waterstop.
  - 2. Sleeves with waterstop.
  - 3. Sleeve-seal systems.
  - 4. Grout.
  - 5. Silicone sealants.

**1.02 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

**1.03 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Field quality-control reports.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 SLEEVES WITHOUT WATERSTOP**

- A. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated of cast or ductile iron and equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends.
- B. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A53/A53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, hot-dip galvanized, with plain ends.
- C. Steel Sheet Sleeves: ASTM A653/A653M, 0.0239-inch (0.6-mm) minimum thickness; hot-dip galvanized, round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.

**2.02 SLEEVES WITH WATERSTOP**

- A. Description: Manufactured steel, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly made for imbedding in concrete slab or wall.
- B. Description: Manufactured, Dura-coated or Duco-coated cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange for use in waterproof floors and roofs. Include clamping ring, bolts, and nuts for membrane flashing.
  - 1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with setscrews.

**2.03 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS**

- A. Description: Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space between piping and sleeve.
  - 1. Designed to form a hydrostatic seal of 20 psig (137 kPa) minimum.
  - 2. Sealing Elements: Nitrile (Buna N) interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
  - 3. Pressure Plates: Stainless steel, Type 316.
  - 4. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with ASTM B633 coating or Stainless steel, Type 316 of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

**2.04 GROUT**

- A. Description: Nonshrink, for interior and exterior sealing openings in non-fire-rated walls or floors.
- B. Standard: ASTM C1107/C1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- C. Design Mix: 5000 psi (34.5 MPa), 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

## **2.05 SILICONE SEALANTS**

- A. Silicone, S, NS, 25, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant.
  - 1. Standard: ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.
- B. Silicone, S, P, T, NT: Single-component, 100/50, pourable, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant.
  - 1. Standard: ASTM C920, Type S, Grade P, Class 100/50, Uses T and NT.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 INSTALLATION OF SLEEVES - GENERAL**

- A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
- B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.
- C. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.
  - 1. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes in slabs formed by molded-PE or -PP sleeves.
  - 2. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
    - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level.
  - 3. Using grout or silicone sealant, seal the space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without sleeve-seal system.
- D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.
  - 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
  - 2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
  - 3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint.
- E. Fire-Resistance-Rated Penetrations, Horizontal Assembly Penetrations, and Smoke Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire or smoke rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with fire- and smoke-stop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping and fill materials specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

### **3.02 INSTALLATION OF SLEEVES WITH WATERSTOP**

- A. Install sleeve with waterstop as new walls and slabs are constructed.
- B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.
- C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.
- D. Using grout or silicone sealant seal the space around outside of sleeves.

### **3.03 INSTALLATION OF SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS**

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service piping entries into the building, and passing through exterior walls.
- B. Select the type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Position piping in center of sleeve. Center piping in penetration, assemble sleeve-seal system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.

### **3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Leak Test: After allowing for a full cure, test sleeves and sleeve seals for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
2. Sleeves and sleeve seals will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

B. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### **3.05 SLEEVE SCHEDULE**

- A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:
1. Exterior Concrete Walls above and below Grade:
    - a. Sleeves with waterstops.
      - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
  2. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade:
    - a. Sleeves with waterstops.
      - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
  3. Concrete Slabs above Grade:
    - a. Sleeves with waterstops.
  4. Interior Partitions:
    - a. Sleeves without waterstops.

**END OF SECTION 22 05 17**

This page intentionally left blank

**SECTION 22 05 19  
METERS AND GAGES FOR PLUMBING PIPING**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.01 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Bimetallic-actuated thermometers.
  - 2. Liquid-in-glass thermometers.
  - 3. Thermowells.
  - 4. Pressure gages.
  - 5. Gage attachments.

**1.02 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

**1.03 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Certificates: For each type of meter and gage.

**1.04 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For meters and gages to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

**PART 1 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 BIMETALLIC-ACTUATED THERMOMETERS**

- A. Standard: ASME B40.200.
- B. Case: Liquid-filled and sealed type(s); stainless steel with 3-inch (76-mm) > nominal diameter.
- C. Dial: Non-reflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings and scales in deg F and deg C.
- D. Connector Type(s): Union joint, rigid, back and rigid, bottom , with unified-inch screw threads.
- E. Connector Size: 1/2 inch (13 mm) , with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
- F. Stem: 0.25 or 0.375 inch (6.4 or 9.4 mm) in diameter; stainless steel.
- G. Window: Plain glass or plastic.
- H. Ring: Stainless steel.
- I. Element: Bimetal coil.
- J. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
- K. Accuracy: Plus or minus [1] [1.5] percent of scale range.

**2.02 LIQUID-IN-GLASS THERMOMETERS**

- A. Metal-Case, Compact-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:
  - 1.
  - 2. Standard: ASME B40.200.
  - 3. Case: [Cast aluminum] ; 6-inch (152-mm) nominal size.
  - 4. Case Form: [Back angle] [Straight] unless otherwise indicated.
  - 5. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue[ or red] organic liquid.
  - 6. Tube Background: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in [deg F (deg C)] [deg F and deg C].
  - 7. Window: Glass or plastic.
  - 8. Stem: Aluminum or brass and of length to suit installation.
    - a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
  - 9. Connector: 3/4 inch (19 mm), with ASME B1.1 screw threads.

10. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.
- B. Plastic-Case, Compact-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:
- 1.
  2. Standard: ASME B40.200.
  3. Case: [Plastic] ; 6-inch (152-mm) nominal size.
  4. Case Form: [Back angle] [Straight] unless otherwise indicated.
  5. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue[ or red] organic liquid.
  6. Tube Background: Nonreflective with permanently etched scale markings graduated in [deg F (deg C)] [deg F and deg C].
  7. Window: Glass or plastic.
  8. Stem: Aluminum or brass and of length to suit installation.
    - a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
  9. Connector: 3/4 inch (19 mm), with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
  10. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.
- C. Metal-Case, Industrial-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:
- 1.
  2. Standard: ASME B40.200.
  3. Case: [Cast aluminum] ; [7-inch (178-mm)] [9-inch (229-mm)] nominal size unless otherwise indicated.
  4. Case Form: [Adjustable angle] [Back angle] [Straight] unless otherwise indicated.
  5. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue[ or red] organic liquid.
  6. Tube Background: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in [deg F (deg C)] [deg F and deg C].
  7. Window: [Glass] [or] [plastic] .
  8. Stem: [Aluminum] and of length to suit installation.
    - a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
  9. Connector: 1-1/4 inches (32 mm), with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
  10. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.
- D. Plastic-Case, Industrial-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:
- 1.
  2. Standard: ASME B40.200.
  3. Case: [Plastic] ; [7-inch (178-mm)] [9-inch (229-mm)] nominal size unless otherwise indicated.
  4. Case Form: [Adjustable angle] [Back angle] [Straight] unless otherwise indicated.
  5. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue[ or red] organic liquid.
  6. Tube Background: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in [deg F (deg C)] [deg F and deg C].
  7. Window: [Glass] [or] [plastic] .
  8. Stem: [Aluminum] [Brass] [Stainless steel] [Aluminum, brass, or stainless steel] and of length to suit installation.
    - a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
  9. Connector: 1-1/4 inches (32 mm), with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
  10. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.

### 2.03 THERMOWELLS

- A. Thermowells:
1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
  2. Description: Pressure-tight, socket-type fitting made for insertion into piping tee fitting.

3. Material for Use with Copper Tubing: [CNR] [or] [CUNI] .
4. Material for Use with Steel Piping: [CRES] [CSA] .
5. Type: Stepped shank unless straight or tapered shank is indicated.
6. External Threads: NPS 1/2, NPS 3/4, or NPS 1 (DN 15, DN 20, or NPS 25), ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.
7. Internal Threads: 1/2, 3/4, and 1 inch (13, 19, and 25 mm), with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
8. Bore: Diameter required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
9. Insertion Length: Length required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
10. Lagging Extension: Include on thermowells for insulated piping and tubing.
11. Bushings: For converting size of thermowell's internal screw thread to size of thermometer connection.

B. Heat-Transfer Medium: [Mixture of graphite and glycerin] .

#### 2.04 PRESSURE GAGES

- A. Direct-Mounted, Metal-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:
- 1.
  2. Standard: ASME B40.100.
  3. Case: [Liquid-filled] [Sealed] [Open-front, pressure relief] [Solid-front, pressure relief] type(s); [cast aluminum or drawn steel] ; [4-1/2-inch (114-mm)] [6-inch (152-mm)] nominal diameter.
  4. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
  5. Pressure Connection: Brass, with [NPS 1/4 (DN 8)] [NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2 (DN 8 or DN 15)] [NPS 1/2 (DN 15)], ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
  6. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
  7. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in [psi (kPa)] [psi and kPa].
  8. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
  9. Window: [Glass] [or] [plastic] .
  10. Ring: [Metal] [Brass] [Stainless steel].
  11. Accuracy: [Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of] [Grade B, plus or minus 2 percent of middle half of] [Grade C, plus or minus 3 percent of middle half of] [Grade D, plus or minus 5 percent of whole] scale range.
- B. Direct-Mounted, Plastic-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:
- 1.
  2. Standard: ASME B40.100.
  3. Case: [Sealed] type; [plastic] ; [4-1/2-inch (114-mm)] [6-inch (152-mm)] nominal diameter.
  4. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
  5. Pressure Connection: Brass, with [NPS 1/4 (DN 8)] [NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2 (DN 8 or DN 15)] [NPS 1/2 (DN 15)], ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
  6. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
  7. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in [psi (kPa)] [psi and kPa].
  8. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
  9. Window: [Glass] [or] [plastic] .
  10. Accuracy: [Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of] [Grade B, plus or minus 2 percent of middle half of] [Grade C, plus or minus 3 percent of middle half of] [Grade D, plus or minus 5 percent of whole] scale range.
- C. Remote-Mounted, Metal-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:



- 1.
  2. Standard: ASME B40.100.
  3. Case: [Liquid-filled] [Sealed] type; [cast aluminum or drawn steel] [metal] ; [4-1/2-inch (114-mm)] [6-inch (152-mm)] nominal diameter with [back] [front] flange and holes for panel mounting.
  4. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
  5. Pressure Connection: Brass, with [NPS 1/4 (DN 8)] [NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2 (DN 8 or DN 15)] [NPS 1/2 (DN 15)], ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
  6. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
  7. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in [psi (kPa)] [psi and kPa].
  8. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
  9. Window: [Glass] [or] [plastic] .
  10. Ring: [Metal] [Stainless steel] .
  11. Accuracy: [Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of] [Grade B, plus or minus 2 percent of middle half of] [Grade C, plus or minus 3 percent of middle half of] [Grade D, plus or minus 5 percent of whole] scale range.
- D. Remote-Mounted, Plastic-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:
- 1.
  2. Standard: ASME B40.100.
  3. Case: [Sealed] type; [plastic] ; [4-1/2-inch (114-mm)] [6-inch (152-mm)] nominal diameter with [back] [front] flange and holes for panel mounting.
  4. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
  5. Pressure Connection: Brass, with [NPS 1/4 (DN 8)] [NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2 (DN 8 or DN 15)] [NPS 1/2 (DN 15)], ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
  6. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
  7. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in [psi (kPa)] [psi and kPa].
  8. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
  9. Window: [Glass] [or] [plastic] .
  10. Accuracy: [Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of] [Grade B, plus or minus 2 percent of middle half of] [Grade C, plus or minus 3 percent of middle half of] [Grade D, plus or minus 5 percent of whole] scale range.

## 2.05 GAGE ATTACHMENTS

- A. Snubbers: ASME B40.100, brass; with [NPS 1/4 (DN 8)] [NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2 (DN 8 or DN 15)] [NPS 1/2 (DN 15)], ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and [piston] [porous-metal]-type surge-dampening device. Include extension for use on insulated piping.
- B. Valves: [Brass ball] [Brass or stainless steel needle], with [NPS 1/4 (DN 8)] [NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2 (DN 8 or DN 15)] [NPS 1/2 (DN 15)], ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.

## PART 2 EXECUTION

### 3.01 INSTALLATION

- A. Install thermowells with socket extending [a minimum of 2 inches (51 mm) into fluid] [one-third of pipe diameter] [to center of pipe] and in vertical position in piping tees.
- B. Install thermowells of sizes required to match thermometer connectors. Include bushings if required to match sizes.
- C. Install thermowells with extension on insulated piping.
- D. Fill thermowells with heat-transfer medium.
- E. Install direct-mounted thermometers in thermowells and adjust vertical and tilted positions.

- F. Install remote-mounted thermometer bulbs in thermowells and install cases on panels; connect cases with tubing and support tubing to prevent kinks. Use minimum tubing length.
- G. Install direct-mounted pressure gages in piping tees with pressure gage located on pipe at the most readable position.
- H. Install remote-mounted pressure gages on panel.
- I. Install valve and snubber in piping for each pressure gage for fluids.
- J. Install thermometers in the following locations:
  - 1. Inlet and outlet of each water heater.
  - 2. Inlets and outlets of each domestic water heat exchanger.
  - 3. Inlet and outlet of each domestic hot-water storage tank.
  - 4. Inlet and outlet of each remote domestic water chiller.
  - 5. .
- K. Install pressure gages in the following locations:
  - 1. Building water service entrance into building.
  - 2. Inlet and outlet of each pressure-reducing valve.
  - 3. Suction and discharge of each domestic water pump.
  - 4. .
- L. Install meters and gages adjacent to machines and equipment to allow service and maintenance of meters, gages, machines, and equipment.
- M. Adjust faces of meters and gages to proper angle for best visibility.

### 3.02 THERMOMETER SCHEDULE

- A. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each domestic water heater shall be[ one of] the following:
  - 1. [Liquid-filled] [Sealed], bimetallic-actuated type.
  - 2. [Metal] [Plastic] case, [compact] [industrial]-style, liquid-in-glass type.
- B. Thermometers at inlets and outlets of each domestic water heat exchanger shall be[ one of] the following:
  - 1. [Liquid-filled] [Sealed], bimetallic-actuated type.
  - 2. [Metal] [Plastic] case, [compact] [industrial]-style, liquid-in-glass type.
- C. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each domestic hot-water storage tank shall be[ one of] the following:
  - 1. [Liquid-filled] [Sealed], bimetallic-actuated type.
  - 2. [Metal] [Plastic] case, [compact] [industrial]-style, liquid-in-glass type.
- D. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each remote domestic water chiller shall be[ one of] the following:
  - 1. [Liquid-filled] [Sealed], bimetallic-actuated type.
  - 2. [Metal] [Plastic] case, [compact] [industrial]-style, liquid-in-glass type.
- E. Thermometer stems shall be of length to match thermowell insertion length.

### 3.03 THERMOMETER SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

- A. Scale Range for Domestic Cold-Water Piping: [0 to 100 deg F (Minus 20 to plus 50 deg C)] [0 to 100 deg F and minus 20 to plus 50 deg C].
- B. Scale Range for Domestic Cold-Water Piping: [0 to 150 deg F (Minus 20 to plus 70 deg C)] [0 to 150 deg F and minus 20 to plus 70 deg C].
- C. Scale Range for Domestic Cold-Water Piping: [30 to 240 deg F (0 to plus 115 deg C)] [30 to 240 deg F and 0 to plus 115 deg C].
- D. Scale Range for Domestic Hot-Water Piping: [0 to 250 deg F (0 to 150 deg C)] [0 to 250 deg F and 0 to 150 deg C].
- E. Scale Range for Domestic Hot-Water Piping: [20 to 240 deg F (0 to 150 deg C)] [20 to 240 deg F and 0 to 150 deg C].

- F. Scale Range for Domestic Hot-Water Piping: [30 to 240 deg F (0 to plus 115 deg C)] [30 to 240 deg F and 0 to plus 115 deg C].
- G. Scale Range for Domestic Cooled-Water Piping: [0 to 100 deg F (Minus 20 to plus 50 deg C)] [0 to 100 deg F and minus 20 to plus 50 deg C].
- H. Scale Range for Domestic Cooled-Water Piping: [0 to 150 deg F (Minus 20 to plus 70 deg C)] [0 to 150 deg F and minus 20 to plus 70 deg C].

### 3.04 PRESSURE-GAGE SCHEDULE

- A. Pressure gages at discharge of each water service into building shall be[ one of] the following:
  - 1. [Liquid-filled] [Sealed] [Open-front, pressure-relief] [Solid-front, pressure-relief] , [direct] [remote]-mounted, metal case.
  - 2. [Sealed] , [direct] [remote]-mounted, plastic case.
- B. Pressure gages at inlet and outlet of each water pressure-reducing valve shall be[ one of] the following:
  - 1. [Liquid-filled] [Sealed] [Open-front, pressure-relief] [Solid-front, pressure-relief] , [direct] [remote]-mounted, metal case.
  - 2. [Sealed] , [direct] [remote]-mounted, plastic case.
  - 3. Test plug with [chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic] [EPDM] self-sealing rubber inserts.
- C. Pressure gages at suction and discharge of each domestic water pump shall be[ one of] the following:
  - 1. [Liquid-filled] [Sealed] [Open-front, pressure-relief] [Solid-front, pressure-relief] , [direct] [remote]-mounted, metal case.
  - 2. [Sealed] , [direct] [remote]-mounted, plastic case.
  - 3. Test plug with [chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic] [EPDM] self-sealing rubber inserts.

### 3.05 PRESSURE-GAGE SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

- A. Scale Range for Water Service Piping: [0 to 100 psi (0 to 600 kPa)] [0 to 100 psi and 0 to 600 kPa].
- B. Scale Range for Water Service Piping: [0 to 160 psi (0 to 1100 kPa)] [0 to 160 psi and 0 to 1100 kPa].
- C. Scale Range for Water Service Piping: [0 to 200 psi (0 to 1400 kPa)] [0 to 200 psi and 0 to 1400 kPa].
- D. Scale Range for Domestic Water Piping: [0 to 100 psi (0 to 600 kPa)] [0 to 100 psi and 0 to 600 kPa].
- E. Scale Range for Domestic Water Piping: [0 to 160 psi (0 to 1100 kPa)] [0 to 160 psi and 0 to 1100 kPa].
- F. Scale Range for Domestic Water Piping: [0 to 200 psi (0 to 1400 kPa)] [0 to 200 psi and 0 to 1400 kPa].
- G. Scale Range for Domestic Water Piping: [0 to 300 psi (0 to 2500 kPa)] [0 to 300 psi and 0 to 2500 kPa].

**END OF SECTION 22 05 19**

**SECTION 22 05 18**  
**ESCUTCHEONS FOR PLUMBING PIPING**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Escutcheons.
  - 2. Floor plates.

**1.02 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. BrassCraft Manufacturing Co.; a Masco company.
  - 2. Dearborn Brass.

**2.02 ESCUTCHEONS**

- A. One-Piece, Steel Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and setscrew fastener.
- B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped steel with polished, chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- C. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.

**2.03 FLOOR PLATES**

- A. Split Floor Plates: Cast brass with concealed hinge.

**PART 3 EXECUTION**

**3.01 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.
- B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
  - 1. Escutcheons for New Piping and Relocated Existing Piping:
    - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep pattern.
    - b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - c. Insulated Piping: One-piece steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - d. Insulated Piping: One-piece stamped steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - e. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - f. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece stamped steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - g. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - h. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece stamped steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
  - 2. Escutcheons for Existing Piping to Remain:
    - a. Chrome-Plated Piping: Split-casting, stamped steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - b. Insulated Piping: Split-plate, stamped steel with polished, chrome-plated finish
    - c. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-plate, stamped steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - d. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-plate, stamped steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.

- C. Install floor plates for piping penetrations of equipment-room floors.
- D. Install floor plates with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
  - 1. New Piping: Split floor plate.
  - 2. Existing Piping: Split floor plate.

**3.02 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Using new materials, replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates.

**END OF SECTION 22 05 18**

**SECTION 22 05 23.12**  
**BALL VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
1. Brass ball valves.
  2. Bronze ball valves.
  3. Stainless steel ball valves.

**1.02 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Standards:
1. Domestic water valves intended to convey or dispense water for human consumption must comply with the SDWA, requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, and NSF 61 and NSF 372, or must be certified to be in compliance with NSF 61 and NSF 372 (by an ANSI-accredited third-party certification body) that the weighted average lead content at wetted surfaces is less than or equal to 0.25 percent.
- B. ASME Compliance:
1. ASME B1.20.1 for threads for threaded end valves.
  2. ASME B16.1 for flanges on iron valves.
  3. ASME B16.5 for flanges on steel valves.
  4. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
  5. ASME B16.18 for cast copper solder-joint connections.
  6. ASME B16.22 for wrought copper and copper alloy solder-joint connections.
  7. ASME B16.34 for flanged and threaded end connections
  8. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.
- C. Provide bronze valves made with dezincification-resistant materials. Bronze valves made with copper alloy (brass) containing more than 15 percent zinc are not permitted.
- D. Valve Pressure-Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.
- E. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Valve Actuator Type:
1. Gear Actuator: For quarter-turn valves NPS 4 (DN 100) and larger.
  2. Hand Lever: For quarter-turn valves smaller than NPS 4 (DN 100).
- G. Valves in Insulated Piping:
1. Provide 2-inch (50-mm) extended neck stems.
  2. Extended operating handles with nonthermal-conductive covering material and protective sleeves that allow operation of valves without breaking vapor seals or disturbing insulation.
  3. Memory stops that are fully adjustable after insulation is applied.

**2.02 BRASS BALL VALVES**

- A. Brass Ball Valves, Two Piece with Full Port and Brass Trim, Threaded or Soldered Ends:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Apollo Valves; a part of Aalberts Integrated Piping Systems.
    - b. Jomar Valve.
    - c. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - d. .

2. Standard: MSS SP-110; MSS SP-145.
  3. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
  4. Body Design: Two piece.
  5. Body Material: Forged brass.
  6. Ends: Threaded or soldered.
  7. Seats: PTFE.
  8. Stem: Brass.
  9. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
  10. Port: Full.
- B. Brass Ball Valves, Two Piece with Regular Port and Brass Trim, Threaded or Soldered Ends:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Apollo Valves; a part of Aalberts Integrated Piping Systems.
    - b. Jomar Valve.
    - c. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  2. Standard: MSS SP-110; MSS SP-145.
  3. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
  4. Body Design: Two piece.
  5. Body Material: Forged brass.
  6. Ends: Threaded or soldered.
  7. Seats: PTFE.
  8. Stem: Brass.
  9. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
  10. Port: Regular.
- C. Bronze Ball Valves, Two Piece with Full Port, and Bronze or Brass Trim, Threaded or Soldered Ends:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Apollo Valves; a part of Aalberts Integrated Piping Systems.
    - b. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - c. NIBCO INC.
  2. Standard: MSS SP-110; MSS SP-145.
  3. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
  4. Body Design: Two piece.
  5. Body Material: Bronze.
  6. Ends: Threaded or soldered.
  7. Seats: PTFE.
  8. Stem: Bronze or brass.
  9. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
  10. Port: Full.
- D. Bronze Ball Valves, Two Piece with Full Port, and Bronze or Brass Trim, Press Ends:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
    - a. Viega LLC.
  2. Standard: MSS SP-110; MSS SP-145; IAPMO/ANSI Z1157.
  3. CWP Rating: Minimum 200 psig (1380 kPa).
  4. Body Design: Two piece.
  5. Body Material: Bronze.
  6. Ends: Press.
  7. Press-End Connections Rating: Minimum 200 psig (1380 kPa).
  8. Seats: PTFE or RTPFE.
  9. Stem: Bronze or brass.
  10. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.

11. Port: Full.
12. O-Ring Seal: EPDM or Buna-N.
- E. Bronze Ball Valves, Two Piece with Regular Port, and Bronze or Brass Trim, Threaded Ends:
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Apollo Valves; a part of Aalberts Integrated Piping Systems.
    - b. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - c. Viega LLC.
  2. Standard: MSS SP-110; MSS SP-145.
  3. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
  4. Body Design: Two piece.
  5. Body Material: Bronze.
  6. Ends: Threaded.
  7. Seats: PTFE.
  8. Stem: Bronze or brass.
  9. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
  10. Port: Regular.
- F. Bronze Ball Valves, Three Piece with Regular Port, and Stainless Steel Trim, Threaded or Soldered Ends:
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Apollo Valves; a part of Aalberts Integrated Piping Systems.
    - b. NIBCO INC.
  2. Standard: MSS SP-110; MSS SP-145.
  3. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
  4. Body Design: Three piece.
  5. Body Material: Bronze.
  6. Ends: Threaded or soldered.
  7. Seats: PTFE.
  8. Stem: Stainless steel.
  9. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
  10. Port: Regular.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.
- B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.
- C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.
- D. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.
- E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves. Remove defective valves from site.

### **3.02 INSTALLATION OF VALVES**

- A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow space for service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
- B. Provide support to piping adjacent to valves such that no force is imposed upon valves.
- C. Locate valves for easy access.



- D. For valves in horizontal piping, install valves with stem at or above center of pipe.
- E. Install valves in position to allow full valve actuation movement.
- F. Valve Tags: Comply with requirements in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules.
- G. Adhere to manufacturer's written installation instructions. When soldering or brazing valves, do not heat valves above maximum permitted temperature. Do not use solder with melting point temperature above valve manufacturer's recommended maximum.
- H. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service, but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves exhibiting leakage.

### **3.03 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS**

- A. If valves with specified CWP ratings are unavailable, provide the same types of valves with higher CWP ratings.
- B. Select valves with the following end connections:
  - 1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded ends except where solder-joint valve-end option or press-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
  - 2. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.

### **3.04 DOMESTIC HOT- AND COLD-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE**

- A. Pipe NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller:
  - 1. Brass ball valve, one piece. Provide with threaded solder or press-connection-joint ends.
  - 2. Bronze ball valve, one piece with stainless steel trim. Provide with threaded solder-joint ends.
  - 3. Brass ball valves, two piece with full port, and stainless steel trim. Provide with threaded solder or press-connection-joint ends.
  - 4. Bronze ball valves, two piece with full port, and stainless steel trim. Provide with threaded solder or press-connection-joint ends.
  - 5. Brass ball valves, three piece with full port, and stainless steel trim.
  - 6. Bronze ball valves, three piece with full port, and stainless steel trim.
- B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger:
  - 1. Steel ball valves, Class 150 with full port.
  - 2. Iron ball valves, Class 150.
  - 3. Stainless steel ball valves with flanged ends.

**END OF SECTION 22 05 23.12**

**SECTION 22 05 23.14**  
**CHECK VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
1. Bronze, swing check valves.
  2. Bronze, swing check valves, press ends.

**1.02 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product data.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 STANDARDS:**

1. Domestic water piping check valves intended to convey or dispense water for human consumption are to comply with the U.S. Safe Drinking Water Act (SDWA), requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, and NSF 61/NSF 372, or to be certified in compliance with NSF 61/NSF 372 by an American National Standards Institute (ANSI)-accredited third-party certification body that the weighted average lead content at wetted surfaces is less than or equal to 0.25 percent.
- B. ASME Compliance:
  1. ASME B1.20.1 for threads for threaded end valves.
  2. ASME B16.1 for flanges on iron valves.
  3. ASME B16.5 for flanges for metric standard piping.
  4. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
  5. ASME B16.18 for cast-copper solder joint.
  6. ASME B16.22 for wrought copper solder joint.
  7. ASME B16.51 for press joint.
  8. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.
- C. AWWA Compliance: Comply with AWWA C606 for groove-end connections.
- D. Provide bronze valves made with dezincification-resistant materials. Bronze valves made with copper alloy (brass) containing more than 15 percent zinc are unacceptable.
- E. Valve Pressure-Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.
- F. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Valve Bypass and Drain Connections: MSS SP-45.

**2.02 BRONZE SWING CHECK VALVES**

- A. Bronze, Swing Check Valves with Bronze Disc, Class 125:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Apollo Valves; a part of Aalberts Integrated Piping Systems.
    - b. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - c. NIBCO INC.
  2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 3.
    - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
    - c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
    - d. Body Material: ASTM B62, bronze.
    - e. Ends: Threaded or soldered. See valve schedule articles.
    - f. Disc: Bronze.
- B. Bronze, Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic Disc, Class 125:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Apollo Valves; a part of Aalberts Integrated Piping Systems.
    - b. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - c. NIBCO INC.
  2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 4.
    - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
    - c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
    - d. Body Material: ASTM B62, bronze.
    - e. Ends: Threaded or soldered. See valve schedule articles.
    - f. Disc: PTFE.
- C. Bronze, Swing Check Valves with Bronze Disc, Class 150:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Apollo Valves; a part of Aalberts Integrated Piping Systems.
    - b. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - c. NIBCO INC.
  2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 3.
    - b. CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
    - c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
    - d. Body Material: ASTM B62, bronze.
    - e. Ends: Threaded or soldered. See valve schedule articles.
    - f. Disc: Bronze.
- D. Bronze, Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic Disc, Class 150:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Crane Valves; a Crane Co. brand.
    - b. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - c. NIBCO INC.
  2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 4.
    - b. CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
    - c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
    - d. Body Material: ASTM B62, bronze.
    - e. Ends: Threaded or soldered. See valve schedule articles.
    - f. Disc: PTFE.
- E. Bronze, Swing Check Valves, Press Ends:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. NIBCO INC.
  2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-80 and MSS SP-139.
    - b. CWP Rating: Minimum 200 psig (1380 kPa).
    - c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
    - d. Body Material: ASTM B584, bronze.
    - e. Ends: Press.
    - f. Press Ends Connection Rating: Minimum 200 psig (1380 kPa).
    - g. Disc: Brass or bronze.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 INSTALLATION OF VALVES**

- A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
- B. Provide support of piping adjacent to valves such that no force is imposed upon valves.
- C. Locate valves for easy access and where not blocked by equipment, other piping, or building components.
- D. Install valves so that stems are horizontal or slope upward from centerline of pipe.
- E. Install valves in position that does not project into aisles or block access to other equipment.
- F. Install valves in position to allow full stem and manual operator movement.
- G. Verify that joints of each valve have been properly installed and sealed to assure there is no leakage or damage.
- H. Check Valves: Install check valves for proper direction of flow.
  - 1. Swing Check Valves: In horizontal position with hinge pin level.
- I. Install valve tags. Comply with requirements in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules.
- J. Adhere to manufacturer's installation instructions. When soldering or brazing valves, do not heat valves above maximum permitted temperature. Do not use solder with melting point temperature above valve manufacturer's recommended maximum.

### **3.02 ADJUSTING**

- A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

### **3.03 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS**

- A. If valve applications are not indicated, use the following:
  - 1. Pump-Discharge Check Valves:
    - a. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Bronze, swing check valves with bronze or nonmetallic disc.
    - b. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger for Domestic Water: Iron, swing check valves with lever and weight or spring; or iron, center-guided, resilient-seat check valves.
    - c. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger for Sanitary Waste and Storm Drainage: Iron, swing check valves with lever and weight or spring.
- B. End Connections:
  - 1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded, soldered, or press-end connections.
  - 2. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Flange or threaded.
  - 3. For Copper Tubing, NPS 5 (DN 125) and Larger: Flange.
  - 4. For Steel Piping, NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded.
  - 5. For Steel Piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Flange or threaded.
  - 6. For Steel Piping, NPS 5 (DN 125) and Larger: Flange.

### **3.04 DOMESTIC HOT- AND COLD-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE**

- A. Pipe NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller:
  - 1. Bronze, swing check valves with nonmetallic disc, Class 150, with [soldered] [or] [threaded] end connections.
  - 2. Bronze, swing check valves with press-end connections.
- B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger:
  - 1. Iron, swing check valves with nonmetallic-to-metal seats, Class 125, with flange end connections.

2. Iron, swing check valves with closure control lever and spring, Class 125, with [flange end connections.

**END OF SECTION 22 05 23.14**

**SECTION 22 05 29  
HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
  - 2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
  - 3. Thermal hanger-shield inserts.
  - 4. Fastener systems.
  - 5. Pipe-positioning systems.
  - 6. Equipment supports.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for structural-steel shapes and plates for trapeze hangers for pipe and equipment supports.
  - 2. Section 220516 "Expansion Fittings and Loops for Plumbing Piping" for pipe guides and anchors.
  - 3. Section 220548.13 "Vibration Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for vibration isolation devices.

**1.02 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer. Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations.

**1.03 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Welding certificates.

**1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Structural-Steel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to "2015 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section IX."

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.
- B. Structural Performance: Hangers and supports for plumbing piping and equipment shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7.
  - 1. Design supports for multiple pipes, including pipe stands, capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.
  - 2. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.
  - 3. Design seismic-restraint hangers and supports for piping and equipment and obtain approval from authorities having jurisdiction.

**2.02 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS**

- A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:
  - 1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
  - 2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized, hot-dip galvanized, or electro-galvanized.
  - 3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coated or epoxy powder coated.

4. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
  5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of stainless steel.
- B. Stainless-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:
1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
  2. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
  3. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of stainless steel.
- C. Copper Pipe and Tube Hangers:
1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, copper-coated-steel, factory-fabricated components.
  2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of copper-coated steel

### 2.03 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

- A. Description: MSS SP-58, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly, made from structural-carbon-steel shapes, with MSS SP-58 carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

### 2.04 THERMAL HANGER-SHIELD INSERTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. CADDY; brand of nVent Electrical plc.
  2. National Pipe Hanger Corporation.
  3. Pipe Shields Inc.
- B. Insulation-Insert Material for Cold Piping: ASTM C552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psig (688-kPa) or ASTM C591, Type VI, Grade 1 polyisocyanurate with 125-psig (862-kPa) minimum compressive strength and vapor barrier.
- C. Insulation-Insert Material for Hot Piping: Water-repellent-treated, ASTM C533, Type I calcium silicate with 100-psig (688-kPa) [ASTM C552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psig (688-kPa) or ASTM C591, Type VI, Grade 1 polyisocyanurate with 125-psig (862-kPa) minimum compressive strength.
- D. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.
- E. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.
- F. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches (50 mm) beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

### 2.05 FASTENER SYSTEMS

- A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
    - a. Hilti, Inc.
- B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type anchors, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Cooper B-line; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.
    - b. Hilti, Inc.
  2. Indoor Applications: Zinc-coated or stainless steel.
  3. Outdoor Applications: Stainless steel.

## 2.06 PIPE-POSITIONING SYSTEMS

- A. Description: IAPMO PS 42 positioning system composed of metal brackets, clips, and straps for positioning piping in pipe spaces; for plumbing fixtures in commercial applications.

## 2.07 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural-carbon-steel shapes.

## 2.08 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum: ASTM B221 (ASTM B221M).
- B. Carbon Steel: ASTM A1011/A1011M.
- C. Structural Steel: ASTM A36/A36M carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- D. Stainless Steel: ASTM A240/A240M.
- E. Grout: ASTM C1107/C1107M, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
  - 1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
  - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.01 APPLICATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping materials and installation, for penetrations through fire-rated walls, ceilings, and assemblies.
- B. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components, so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus [200 lb (90 kg)] .

### 3.02 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-58. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from building structure.
- B. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-58. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.
  - 1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size, or install intermediate supports for smaller-diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
  - 2. Field fabricate from ASTM A36/A36M carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- C. Thermal Hanger-Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.
- D. Fastener System Installation:
  - 1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches (100 mm) thick in concrete, after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual.
  - 2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete, after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Pipe-Positioning-System Installation: Install support devices to make rigid supply and waste piping connections to each plumbing fixture.
- F. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
- G. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.



- H. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- I. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.
- J. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, [NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65)] and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms, and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.
- K. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports, so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- L. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
- M. Insulated Piping:
  - 1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
    - a. Piping Operating Above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
    - b. Piping Operating Below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal hanger-shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
    - c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
  - 2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39 protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
    - a. Option: Thermal hanger-shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 (DN 100) and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
  - 3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40 protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.
    - a. Option: Thermal hanger-shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 (DN 100) and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
  - 4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
    - a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2 (DN 8 to DN 90): 12 inches (305 mm) long and 0.048 inch (1.22 mm) thick.
    - b. NPS 4 (DN 100): 12 inches (305 mm) long and 0.06 inch (1.52 mm) thick.
    - c. NPS 5 and NPS 6 (DN 125 and DN 150): 18 inches (457 mm) long and 0.06 inch (1.52 mm) thick.
    - d. NPS 8 to NPS 14 (DN 200 to DN 350): 24 inches (610 mm) long and 0.075 inch (1.91 mm) thick.
    - e. NPS 16 to NPS 24 (DN 400 to DN 600): 24 inches (610 mm) long and 0.105 inch (2.67 mm) thick.
  - 5. Pipes NPS 8 (DN 200) and Larger: Include wood or reinforced calcium-silicate-insulation inserts of length at least as long as protective shield.
  - 6. Thermal Hanger Shields: Install with insulation of same thickness as piping insulation.

### 3.03 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.
- B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment, and make bearing surface smooth.
- C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

### 3.04 METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for [trapeze pipe hangers] [and] [equipment supports].

- B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work.

### 3.05 ADJUSTING

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
- B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches (40 mm)

### 3.06 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
- B. Comply with MSS SP-58 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finishes.
- D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
- E. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports and metal trapeze pipe hangers and attachments for general service applications.
- F. Use stainless-steel pipe hangers and stainless-steel or corrosion-resistant attachments for hostile environment applications.
- G. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and copper or stainless-steel attachments for copper piping and tubing.
- H. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.
- I. Use thermal hanger-shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.
- J. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  - 1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30 (DN 15 to DN 750).
  - 2. Yoke-Type Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 2): For suspension of up to 1050 deg F (566 deg C) pipes NPS 4 to NPS 24 (DN 100 to DN 600), requiring up to 4 inches (100 mm) of insulation.
  - 3. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel, Double-Bolt Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 3): For suspension of pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 36 (DN 20 to DN 900), requiring clamp flexibility and up to 4 inches (100 mm) of insulation.
  - 4. Steel Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 4): For suspension of cold and hot pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 24 (DN 15 to DN 600) if little or no insulation is required.
  - 5. Pipe Hangers (MSS Type 5): For suspension of pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 15 to DN 100), to allow off-center closure for hanger installation before pipe erection.
  - 6. Adjustable, Swivel Split- or Solid-Ring Hangers (MSS Type 6): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 8 (DN 20 to DN 200).
  - 7. Adjustable, Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8 (DN 15 to DN 200).
  - 8. Adjustable Band Hangers (MSS Type 9): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8 (DN 15 to DN 200).
  - 9. Adjustable, Swivel-Ring Band Hangers (MSS Type 10): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8 (DN 15 to DN 200).
  - 10. Split Pipe Ring with or without Turnbuckle Hangers (MSS Type 11): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 8 (DN 10 to DN 200).

11. Extension Hinged or Two-Bolt Split Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 12): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 3 (DN 10 to DN 80).
  12. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30 (DN 15 to DN 750).
  13. Clips (MSS Type 26): For support of insulated pipes not subject to expansion or contraction.
  14. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36 (DN 100 to DN 900), with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate.
  15. Pipe Stanchion Saddles (MSS Type 37): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36 (DN 100 to DN 900), with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate, and with U-bolt to retain pipe.
  16. Adjustable Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 38): For stanchion-type support for pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 36 (DN 65 to DN 900) if vertical adjustment is required, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.
  17. Single-Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes NPS 1 to NPS 30 (DN 25 to DN 750), from two rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction occurs.
  18. Adjustable Roller Hangers (MSS Type 43): For suspension of pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 24 (DN 65 to DN 600), from single rod if horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction occurs.
  19. Complete Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 44): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 42 (DN 50 to DN 1050) if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction occurs but vertical adjustment is unnecessary.
  20. Pipe Roll and Plate Units (MSS Type 45): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 24 (DN 50 to DN 600) if small horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction occurs and vertical adjustment is unnecessary.
  21. Adjustable Pipe Roll and Base Units (MSS Type 46): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 30 (DN 50 to DN 750) if vertical and lateral adjustment during installation, in addition to expansion and contraction, is required.
- K. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 (DN 24 to DN 600).
  2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 (DN 20 to DN 600) if longer ends are required for riser clamps.
- L. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment of up to 6 inches (150 mm) for heavy loads.
  2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F (49 to 232 deg C) piping installations.
  3. Swivel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 15): For use with MSS Type 11 split pipe rings.
  4. Malleable-Iron Sockets (MSS Type 16): For attaching hanger rods to various types of building attachments.
  5. Steel Weldless Eye Nuts (MSS Type 17): For 120 to 450 deg F (49 to 232 deg C) piping installations.
- M. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel or Malleable-Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
  2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joint construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.

3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
  4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
  5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
  6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
  7. Top-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 25): For top of beams if hanger rod is required tangent to flange edge.
  8. Side-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 27): For bottom of steel I-beams.
  9. Steel-Beam Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 28): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads.
  10. Linked-Steel Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 29): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads, with link extensions.
  11. Malleable-Beam Clamps with Extension Pieces (MSS Type 30): For attaching to structural steel.
  12. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:
    - a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb (340 kg).
    - b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb (680 kg).
    - c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb (1360 kg).
  13. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
  14. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
  15. Horizontal Travelers (MSS Type 58): For supporting piping systems subject to linear horizontal movement where headroom is limited.
- N. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
  2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
  3. Thermal Hanger-Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.
- O. Spring Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Restraint-Control Devices (MSS Type 47): Where indicated to control piping movement.
  2. Spring Cushions (MSS Type 48): For light loads if vertical movement does not exceed 1-1/4 inches (32 mm).
  3. Spring-Cushion Roll Hangers (MSS Type 49): For equipping Type 41 roll hanger with springs.
  4. Spring Sway Braces (MSS Type 50): To retard sway, shock, vibration, or thermal expansion in piping systems.
  5. Variable-Spring Hangers (MSS Type 51): Preset to indicated load, and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from hanger.
  6. Variable-Spring Base Supports (MSS Type 52): Preset to indicated load, and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from base support.
  7. Variable-Spring Trapeze Hangers (MSS Type 53): Preset to indicated load, and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from trapeze support.
  8. Constant Supports: For critical piping stress and if necessary to avoid transfer of stress from one support to another support, critical terminal, or connected equipment. Include auxiliary stops for erection, hydrostatic test, and load-adjustment capability. These supports include the following types:
    - a. Horizontal (MSS Type 54): Mounted horizontally.

- b. Vertical (MSS Type 55): Mounted vertically.
- c. Trapeze (MSS Type 56): Two vertical-type supports and one trapeze member.
- P. Comply with MSS SP-58 for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- Q. Use powder-actuated fasteners or mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.
- R. Use pipe-positioning systems in pipe spaces behind plumbing fixtures to support supply and waste piping for plumbing fixtures.

**END OF SECTION 22 05 29**

**SECTION 22 05 53**  
**IDENTIFICATION FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Equipment labels.
  - 2. Pipe labels.

**1.02 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Samples: For color, letter style, and graphic representation required for each identification material and device.
- C. Equipment-Label Schedule: Include a listing of all equipment to be labeled with the proposed content for each label.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 EQUIPMENT LABELS**

- A. Metal Labels for Equipment:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Kolbi Pipe Marker Co.
    - b. Seton Identification Products; a Brady Corporation company.
    - c. emedco.
  - 2. Material and Thickness: Brass, 0.032-inch (0.8-mm) stainless steel, 0.025-inch (0.64-mm) thickness, with predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
  - 3. Letter and Background Color: As indicated for specific application under Part 3.
  - 4. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch (64 by 19 mm).
  - 5. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches (600 mm), 1/2 inch (13 mm) for viewing distances of up to 72 inches (1830 mm), and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
  - 6. Fasteners: Stainless steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
  - 7. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- B. Plastic Labels for Equipment:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Kolbi Pipe Marker Co.
    - b. Seton Identification Products; a Brady Corporation company.
    - c. emedco.
  - 2. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick, with predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
  - 3. Letter and Background Color: As indicated for specific application under Part 3.
  - 4. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures of up to 160 deg F (71 deg C).
  - 5. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch (64 by 19 mm).
  - 6. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches (600 mm), 1/2 inch (13 mm) for viewing distances of up to 72 inches (1830 mm), and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
  - 7. Fasteners: Stainless steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
  - 8. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

- C. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.

## **2.02 PIPE LABELS**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Kolbi Pipe Marker Co.
  - 2. Seton Identification Products; a Brady Corporation company.
  - 3. emedco.
- B. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color coded, with lettering indicating service and showing flow direction in accordance with ASME A13.1.
- C. Letter and Background Color: As indicated for specific application under Part 3.
- D. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to [partially cover] [cover full] circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.
- E. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.
- F. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings. Also include:
  - 1. Pipe size.
  - 2. Flow-Direction Arrows: Include flow-direction arrows on[ main] distribution piping. Arrows may be either integral with label or applied separately.
  - 3. Lettering Size: [Size letters in accordance with ASME A13.1 for piping At least 1/2 inch (13 mm) for viewing distances of up to 72 inches (1830 mm) and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 PREPARATION**

- A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants, as well as dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and other substances that could impair bond of identification devices.

### **3.02 INSTALLATION, GENERAL REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.
- C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.
- D. Locate identifying devices so that they are readily visible from the point of normal approach.

### **3.03 INSTALLATION OF EQUIPMENT LABELS, WARNING SIGNS, AND LABELS**

- A. Permanently fasten labels on each item of plumbing equipment.
- B. Sign and Label Colors.
  - 1. White letters on an ANSI Z535.1 safety-green background.
- C. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.
- D. Arc-Flash Warning Signs: Provide arc-flash warning signs on electrical disconnects and other equipment where are-flash hazard exists, as indicated on Drawings, and in accordance with requirements of OSHA and NFPA 70E, and other applicable codes and standards.

### **3.04 INSTALLATION OF PIPE LABELS**

- A. Install pipe labels showing service and flow direction with permanent adhesive on pipes.
- B. Pipe-Label Locations: Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels,

and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:

1. Within 3 ft. (1 m) of each valve and control device.
  2. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
  3. Within 3 ft. (1 m) of equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
  4. Spaced at maximum intervals of 25 ft. (8 m) along each run. Reduce intervals to 10 ft. (3 m) in areas of congested piping and equipment.
- C. Do not apply plastic pipe labels or plastic tapes directly to bare pipes conveying fluids at temperatures of 125 deg F (52 deg C) or higher. Where these pipes are to remain uninsulated, use a short section of insulation or use stenciled labels.
- D. Flow-Direction Flow Arrows: Use arrows, in compliance with ASME A13.1, to indicate direction of flow in pipes, including pipes where flow is allowed in both directions.
- E. Pipe-Label Color Schedule:
1. Domestic Cold-Water Piping: White letters on an ANSI Z535.1 safety-green background.
  2. Domestic Hot-Water Piping: White letters on an ANSI Z535.1 safety-green background.
  3. Domestic Hot-Water Return Piping White letters on an ANSI Z535.1 safety-green background.
  4. Sanitary Waste and Storm Drainage Piping: White letters on a black background.
  5. Nonpotable Cold Water: Black letters on an ANSI Z535.1 safety-yellow background.

**END OF SECTION 22 05 53**



This page intentionally left blank

**SECTION 22 05 93  
TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR PLUMBING**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. TAB of domestic water system.
  - 2. TAB of plumbing equipment:
    - a. Domestic water booster pumps.
    - b. Domestic hot-water in-line circulation pumps.
    - c. Sanitary sewage pumps.
    - d. Drainage pumps.
  - 3. Pipe-leakage test verification.
  - 4. Testing, adjusting, and balancing of existing plumbing systems and equipment.

**1.02 DEFINITIONS**

- A. NEBB: National Environmental Balancing Bureau.
- B. TAB: Testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- C. TABB: Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Bureau.
- D. TAB Specialist: An independent entity meeting qualifications to perform TAB work.
- E. TDH: Total dynamic head.

**1.03 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Qualification Data: Within 30 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit documentation that the TAB specialist and this Project's TAB team members meet the qualifications specified in "Quality Assurance" Article.
- B. Contract Documents Examination Report: Within 30 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit the Contract Documents review report, as specified in Part 3.
- C. Strategies and Procedures Plan: Within 30 > days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit TAB strategies and step-by-step procedures, as specified in "Preparation" Article.
- D. System Readiness Checklists: Within 30 of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit system readiness checklists, as specified in "Preparation" Article.
- E. Examination Report: Submit a summary report of the examination review required in "Examination" Article.
- F. Certified TAB reports.
- G. Sample report forms.
- H. Instrument calibration reports, to include the following:
  - 1. Instrument type and make.
  - 2. Serial number.
  - 3. Application.
  - 4. Dates of use.
  - 5. Dates of calibration.

**1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. TAB Specialists Qualifications, Certified by AABC:
  - 1. TAB Field Supervisor: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by AABC.
  - 2. TAB Technician: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by AABC.
- B. TAB Specialists Qualifications, Certified by NEBB or TABB:
  - 1. TAB Field Supervisor: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by NEBB or TABB.
  - 2. TAB Technician: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by NEBB or TABB.

- C. Instrumentation Type, Quantity, Accuracy, and Calibration: Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 111, Section 4, "Instrumentation."
- D. ASHRAE 188 Compliance: Comply with balancing and report requirements, Section 8.3 "Balancing."
- E. Code and Authorities Having Jurisdiction Compliance: TAB is required to comply with governing codes and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

#### **1.05 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Full Owner Occupancy: Owner will occupy the site and existing building during entire TAB period. Cooperate with Owner during TAB operations to minimize conflicts with Owner's operations.
- B. Partial Owner Occupancy: Owner may occupy completed areas of building before Substantial Completion. Cooperate with Owner during TAB operations to minimize conflicts with Owner's operations.

#### **PART 2 PRODUCTS (NOT APPLICABLE)**

#### **PART 3 EXECUTION**

##### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine the Contract Documents to become familiar with Project requirements and to discover conditions in systems designs that may preclude proper TAB of systems and equipment.
- B. Examine installed systems for balancing devices, such as test ports, gauge cocks, thermometer wells, flow-control devices, and balancing valves and fittings. Verify that locations of these balancing devices are applicable for intended purpose and are accessible.
- C. Examine approved submittals for plumbing systems and equipment.
- D. Examine design data, including plumbing system descriptions, statements of design assumptions for environmental conditions and systems output, and statements of philosophies and assumptions about plumbing system and equipment controls.
- E. Examine equipment performance data, including pump curves.
  - 1. Relate performance data to Project conditions and requirements, including pump system effects that can create undesired or unpredicted conditions that cause reduced capacities in all or part of a system.
  - 2. Calculate pump system-effect factors to reduce performance ratings of plumbing equipment when installed under conditions different from the conditions used to rate equipment performance. Compare results with the design data and installed conditions.
- F. Examine system and equipment installations, and verify that field quality-control testing, cleaning, and adjusting specified in individual Sections have been performed.
- G. Examine test reports specified in individual system and equipment Sections.
- H. Examine plumbing equipment and verify that bearings are greased, belts are aligned and tight, filters are clean, and equipment with functioning controls is ready for operation.
- I. Examine temporary and permanent strainers. Verify that temporary strainer screens used during system cleaning and flushing have been removed and permanent strainers are installed and clean.
- J. Examine control valves for proper installation for their intended function of isolating, throttling, diverting, or mixing fluid flows.
- K. Examine system pumps to ensure absence of entrained air in the suction piping.
- L. Examine operating safety interlocks and controls on plumbing equipment.
- M. Report deficiencies discovered before and during performance of TAB procedures. Observe and record system reactions to changes in conditions. Record default set points if different from indicated values.

### 3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare a TAB plan that includes the following:
  - 1. Equipment and systems to be tested.
  - 2. Strategies and step-by-step procedures for balancing the systems.
  - 3. Instrumentation to be used.
  - 4. Sample forms with specific identification for all equipment.
- B. Perform system-readiness checks of plumbing systems and equipment to verify system readiness for TAB work. Include, at a minimum, the following:
  - 1. Domestic Water System:
    - a. Verify leakage and pressure tests on water distribution systems have been satisfactorily completed in accordance with applicable code and authority having jurisdiction.
    - b. Water heaters are installed and functioning.
    - c. Piping is complete and all points of outlet are installed.
    - d. Water treatment is complete.
    - e. Systems are flushed, filled, and air purged.
    - f. Strainers are clean.
    - g. Control valves are functioning in accordance with the sequence of operation.
    - h. Shutoff and balance valves are 100 percent open.
    - i. [Booster-] [and] [hot-water circulating] pumps are operational and proper rotation is verified.
    - j. Pump gauge connections are installed directly at pump inlet and outlet flanges or in discharge and suction pipe prior to valves or strainers.
    - k. Variable-frequency controllers' startup is complete and safeties are verified.
    - l. Suitable access to balancing devices and equipment is provided.
  - 2. Sanitary Sewage/Drainage System:
    - a. Leakage and pressure tests on sanitary sewage/drainage systems have been completed in accordance with applicable code and authority having jurisdiction requirements.
    - b. Piping is complete.
    - c. Sanitary sewage pumps/drainage pumps are operational.
    - d. Control valves are functioning in accordance with the sequence of operation.
    - e. Shutoff valves are 100 percent open.
    - f. Suitable access to equipment is provided.

### 3.03 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR TESTING AND BALANCING

- A. Perform testing and balancing procedures on each system in accordance with the procedures contained in AABC's "National Standards for Total System Balance", ASHRAE 111, NEBB's "Procedural Standards for Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Environmental Systems" and in this Section.
- B. Cut insulation, pipes, and equipment casings for installation of test probes to the minimum extent necessary for TAB procedures.
  - 1. Where holes for probes are required in piping or equipment, install pressure and temperature test plugs to seal systems.
  - 2. Install and join new insulation that matches removed materials. Restore insulation, coverings, vapor barrier, and finish in accordance with Section 220716 "Plumbing Equipment Insulation" and Section 220719 "Plumbing Piping Insulation."
- C. Mark equipment and balancing devices, including valve position indicators and similar controls and devices, with paint or other suitable, permanent identification material to show final settings.
- D. Take and report testing and balancing measurements in inch-pound (IP) and metric (SI) units.

### **3.04 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR PLUMBING EQUIPMENT**

- A. Test, adjust, and balance plumbing equipment indicated on Drawings, including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Motors.
  - 2. Domestic water booster pumps.
  - 3. Domestic water in-line pumps.
  - 4. Domestic water heaters.
  - 5. Sanitary sewage pumps.
  - 6. Drainage pumps.

### **3.05 PROCEDURES FOR DOMESTIC WATER SYSTEMS**

- A. Prepare test reports for pumps and other equipment. Obtain approved submittals and manufacturer-recommended testing procedures. Crosscheck the summation of required equipment flow rates with system design flow rates.
- B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' Record drawings piping layouts.
- C. In addition to requirements in "Preparation" Article, prepare domestic water systems for testing and balancing as follows:
  - 1. Check expansion tank for proper setting.
  - 2. Check water heater for proper discharge temperature setting.
  - 3. Check remotest point of outlet for adequate pressure.
  - 4. Check flow-control valves for proper position.
  - 5. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor controllers.
  - 6. Verify that motor controllers are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.
  - 7. Check that air has been purged from the system.
- D. Measure and record upstream and downstream pressure of each piece of equipment.
- E. Measure and record upstream and downstream pressure of pressure-reducing valves.
- F. Check settings and operation of automatic temperature-control valves, self-contained control valves, and pressure-reducing valves. Record final settings.
- G. Check settings and operation of each safety valve. Record settings.

### **3.06 PROCEDURES FOR DOMESTIC WATER SYSTEM BOOSTER PUMPS**

- A. Adjust pumps to deliver total design flow.
  - 1. Measure total water flow.
    - a. Position valves for full flow through coils.
    - b. Measure flow by main flow meter, if installed.
    - c. If main flow meter is not installed, determine flow by pump TDH or known equipment pressure drop.
  - 2. Measure pump TDH as follows:
    - a. Measure discharge pressure directly at the pump outlet flange or in discharge pipe prior to any valves.
    - b. Measure inlet pressure directly at the pump inlet flange or in suction pipe prior to any valves or strainers.
    - c. Convert pressure to head and correct for differences in gauge heights.
    - d. Verify pump impeller size by measuring the TDH with the discharge valve closed. Note the point on manufacturer's pump curve at zero flow, and verify that the pump has the intended impeller size.
    - e. With valves open, read pump TDH. Adjust pump discharge valve until design water flow is achieved. If excessive throttling is required to achieve desired flow, recommend pump impellers be trimmed to reduce excess throttling.
  - 3. Monitor motor performance during procedures, and do not operate motor in an overloaded condition.
- B. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed in mains and branches to design water flows.

1. Measure flow in main and branch pipes.
  2. Adjust main and branch balance valves for design flow.
  3. Re-measure each main and branch after all have been adjusted.
- C. Verify final system conditions as follows:
1. Re-measure and confirm that total water flow is within design.
  2. Re-measure final pumps' operating data, TDH, volts, amps, and static profile.
  3. Mark final settings.
- D. Verify that memory stops have been set.

### **3.07 PROCEDURES FOR DOMESTIC HOT-WATER CIRCULATING INLINE PUMP**

- A. Balance system with manual or automatic balancing valves by setting at design flow.
1. Measure flow in main and branch pipes.
  2. Adjust main and branch balance valves for design flow.
  3. Re-measure each main and branch after all have been adjusted.
- B. Adjust pump to deliver total design flow.
1. Measure pump TDH as follows:
    - a. Measure discharge pressure directly at the pump outlet flange or in discharge pipe prior to any valves.
    - b. Measure inlet pressure directly at the pump inlet flange or in suction pipe prior to any valves or strainers.
    - c. Convert pressure to head and correct for differences in gauge heights.
    - d. Verify pump impeller size by measuring the TDH with the discharge valve closed. Note the point on manufacturer's pump curve at zero flow, and verify that the pump has the intended impeller size.
  2. Monitor motor performance during procedures, and do not operate motor in an overloaded condition.
  3. Mark final settings and verify that all memory stops have been set.
  4. Verify final system conditions as follows:
    - a. Re-measure and confirm that total flow is within design.
    - b. Re-measure final pumps' operating data, TDH, volts, amps, speed, and static profile.
    - c. Mark final settings.

### **3.08 PROCEDURES FOR WATER HEATERS**

- A. Gas- Water Heaters:
1. Measure and record entering- and leaving-water temperatures.
  2. Measure and record water flow.
  3. Measure and record pressure drop.
  4. Measure and Record relief valve(s) pressure setting.
  5. Capacity: Calculate in Btu/h (kW) of heating output.
  6. Fuel Consumption: If fuel supply is equipped with flow meter, measure and record consumption.
  7. Efficiency: Calculate operating efficiency for comparison to submitted equipment.
  8. Fan, motor, and motor controller operating data.

### **3.09 PROCEDURES FOR TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING EXISTING SYSTEMS**

- A. Perform a preconstruction inspection of existing equipment that is to remain and be reused.
1. Measure and record flows, temperatures, and pressures of each piece of equipment. Compare the values to design or nameplate information, where information is available.
  2. Measure motor voltage and amperage. Compare the values to motor nameplate information.
  3. Check the condition of filters.
  4. Check bearings and other lubricated parts for proper lubrication.
  5. Report on the operating condition of the equipment and the results of the measurements taken. Report deficiencies.

- B. TAB After Construction: Before performing testing and balancing of renovated existing systems, inspect existing equipment that is to remain and be reused to verify that existing equipment has been cleaned and refurbished in accordance with renovation scope indicated by Contract Documents. Verify the following:
  - 1. New filters are installed.
  - 2. Bearings and other parts are properly lubricated.
  - 3. Deficiencies noted in the preconstruction report are corrected.
- C. Perform testing and balancing of existing systems to the extent that existing systems are affected by the renovation work.
  - 1. Compare the indicated system flows of the renovated work to the measured flows, and determine the new pump speed.
  - 2. Verify that the indicated system flows of the renovated work result in velocities and pump speeds that are within the acceptable limits defined by equipment manufacturer.
  - 3. If calculations increase or decrease the system flow rates by more than [5] percent, make equipment adjustments to achieve the calculated rates. If increase or decrease is [5] percent or less, equipment adjustments are not required.

### 3.10 TOLERANCES

- A. Set plumbing system's flow rates within the following tolerances:
  - 1. Domestic Water Flow Rate: Plus or minus 5 percent . If design value is less than 10 gpm (0.63 L/s), within 10 percent.

### 3.11 PROGRESS REPORTING

- A. Initial Construction-Phase Report: Based on examination of the Contract Documents as specified in "Examination" Article, prepare a report on the adequacy of design for system-balancing devices. Recommend changes and additions to system-balancing devices, to facilitate proper performance measuring and balancing. Recommend changes and additions to plumbing systems and general construction to allow access for performance-measuring and -balancing devices.
- B. Status Reports: Prepare weekly progress reports to describe completed procedures, procedures in progress, and scheduled procedures. Include a list of deficiencies and problems found in systems being tested and balanced. Prepare a separate report for each system and each building floor for systems serving multiple floors.

### 3.12 FINAL REPORT

- A. General: Prepare a certified written report; tabulate and divide the report into separate sections for tested systems and balanced systems.
  - 1. Include a certification sheet at the front of the report's binder, signed and sealed by the certified testing and balancing engineer.
  - 2. Include a list of instruments used for procedures, along with proof of calibration.
  - 3. Certify validity and accuracy of field data.
- B. Final Report Contents: In addition to certified field-report data, include the following:
  - 1. Pump curves.
  - 2. Manufacturers' test data.
  - 3. Field test reports prepared by system and equipment installers.
  - 4. Other information relative to equipment performance; do not include Shop Drawings and Product Data.
- C. General Report Data: In addition to form titles and entries, include the following data:
  - 1. Title page.
  - 2. Name and address of the TAB specialist.
  - 3. Project name.
  - 4. Project location.
  - 5. Architect's name and address.
  - 6. Engineer's name and address.

7. Contractor's name and address.
  8. Report date.
  9. Signature of TAB supervisor who certifies the report.
  10. Table of Contents with the total number of pages defined for each section of the report. Number each page in the report.
  11. Summary of contents, including the following:
    - a. Indicated versus final performance.
    - b. Notable characteristics of systems.
    - c. Description of system operation sequence if it varies from the Contract Documents.
  12. Nomenclature sheets for each item of equipment.
  13. Notes to explain why certain final data in the body of reports vary from indicated values.
  14. Test conditions for pump performance forms, including the following:
    - a. Variable-frequency controller settings for variable-flow hydronic systems.
    - b. Settings for pressure controller(s).
    - c. Other system operating conditions that affect performance.
- D. System Diagrams: Include schematic layouts of distribution systems. Present each system with single-line diagram and include the following:
1. Flow rates.
  2. Pipe and valve sizes and locations.
  3. Balancing stations.
  4. Position of balancing devices.
- E. Gas- Water Heaters Test Reports: In addition to manufacturer's factory startup equipment reports, include the following:
1. Unit Data:
    - a. System identification.
    - b. Location.
    - c. Make and type.
    - d. Model number and unit size.
    - e. Manufacturer's serial number.
    - f. Fuel type in input data.
    - g. Output capacity in Btu/h (kW).
    - h. Ignition type.
    - i. Burner-control types.
    - j. Motor horsepower and speed.
    - k. Motor volts, phase, and hertz.
    - l. Motor full-load amperage and service factor.
    - m. Sheave make, size in inches (mm), and bore.
    - n. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches (mm).
  2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
    - a. Total airflow rate in cfm (L/s).
    - b. Entering-water temperature in deg F (deg C).
    - c. Leaving-water temperature in deg F (deg C).
    - d. Low-fire fuel input in Btu/h (kW).
    - e. High-fire fuel input in Btu/h (kW).
    - f. High-temperature-limit setting in deg F (deg C).
    - g. Operating set point in Btu/h (kW).
    - h. Heating value of fuel in Btu/h (kW).
- F. Pump Test Reports: Calculate impeller size by plotting the shutoff head on pump curves, and include the following:
1. Unit Data:
    - a. Unit identification.
    - b. Location.
    - c. Service.



- d. Make and size.
  - e. Model number and serial number.
  - f. Water flow rate in gpm (L/s).
  - g. Water-pressure differential in feet of head or psig (kPa).
  - h. Required net positive suction head in feet of head or psig (kPa).
  - i. Pump speed.
  - j. Impeller diameter in inches (mm).
  - k. Motor make and frame size.
  - l. Motor horsepower and rpm.
  - m. Voltage at each connection.
  - n. Amperage for each phase.
  - o. Full-load amperage and service factor.
  - p. Seal type.
2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
- a. Static head in feet of head or psig (kPa).
  - b. Pump shutoff pressure in feet of head or psig (kPa).
  - c. Actual impeller size in inches (mm).
  - d. Full-open flow rate in gpm (L/s).
  - e. Full-open pressure in feet of head or psig (kPa).
  - f. Final discharge pressure in feet of head or psig (kPa).
  - g. Final suction pressure in feet of head or psig (kPa).
  - h. Final total pressure in feet of head or psig (kPa).
  - i. Final water flow rate in gpm (L/s).
  - j. Voltage at each connection.
  - k. Amperage for each phase.
- G. Instrument Calibration Reports:
1. Report Data:
- a. Instrument type and make.
  - b. Serial number.
  - c. Application.
  - d. Dates of use.
  - e. Dates of calibration.

### 3.13 ADDITIONAL TESTS

- A. Within 90 days of completing TAB, perform additional TAB to verify that balanced conditions are being maintained throughout and to correct unusual conditions.

**END OF SECTION 22 05 93**

**SECTION 22 07 19  
PLUMBING PIPING INSULATION**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes insulating the following plumbing piping services:
  - 1. Domestic cold-water piping.
  - 2. Domestic hot-water piping.
  - 3. Domestic recirculating hot-water piping.
  - 4. Domestic chilled-water piping for drinking fountains.
  - 5. Sanitary waste piping exposed to freezing conditions.
  - 6. Storm-water piping exposed to freezing conditions.
  - 7. Roof drains and rainwater leaders.
  - 8. Supplies and drains for handicap-accessible lavatories and sinks.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Section 220716 "Plumbing Equipment Insulation" for equipment insulation.

**1.02 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - 1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
  - 2. Detail attachment and covering of heat tracing inside insulation.
  - 3. Detail insulation application at pipe expansion joints for each type of insulation.
  - 4. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each type of insulation.
  - 5. Detail removable insulation at piping specialties, equipment connections, and access panels.
  - 6. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
  - 7. Detail application at linkages of control devices.
- C. Samples: For each type of insulation and jacket indicated.

**1.03 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Material test reports.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

**1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for miscellaneous components:
  - 1. Supply and Drain Protective Shielding Guards: ICC A117.1.

**1.05 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application. Before preparing piping Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.

## 1.06 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products in accordance with ASTM E84, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation, jacket materials, adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - 1. All Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.

### 2.02 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- B. Products that come into contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested in accordance with ASTM C871.
- C. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable in accordance with ASTM C795.
- D. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- E. Cellular Glass: Inorganic, incombustible, foamed or cellulated glass with annealed, rigid, hermetically sealed cells. Comply with ASTM C552.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
    - a. Owens Corning.
  - 2. Preformed Pipe Insulation: Type II, Class 1, unfaced.
  - 3. Preformed Pipe Insulation: Type II, Class 2, with factory-applied ASJ ] jacket.
  - 4. Fabricated shapes in accordance with ASTM C450, ASTM C585, and ASTM C1639.
  - 5. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
- F. Glass-Fiber, Preformed Pipe: Glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin; suitable for maximum use temperature up to 850 deg F (454 deg C) in accordance with ASTM C411. Comply with ASTM C547.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
    - b. Knauf Insulation.
    - c. Owens Corning.
  - 2. Preformed Pipe Insulation: Type I, Grade A with factory-applied ASJ+ jacket]
  - 3. Fabricated shapes in accordance with ASTM C450 and ASTM C585.
  - 4. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
- G. Mineral Wool, Preformed Pipe: Mandrel-wound mineral wool fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin, unfaced; suitable for maximum use temperature up to 1200 deg F (650 deg C) in accordance with ASTM C447. Comply with ASTM C547.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
    - b. Owens Corning.
  - 2. Preformed Pipe Insulation: Type II, Grade A with factory-applied ASJ+ jacket.
  - 3. Fabricated shapes in accordance with ASTM C450 and ASTM C585.

### 2.03 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Cellular-Glass Adhesive: Two-component, thermosetting urethane adhesive containing no flammable solvents, with a service temperature range of minus 100 to plus 200 deg F (minus 73 to plus 93 deg C).
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
    - a. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller.
  - 2. Flame-spread index shall be 25 or less and smoke-developed index shall be 50 or less as tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
  - 3. Wet Flash Point: Below 0 deg F (minus 18 deg C).
  - 4. Service Temperature Range: 40 to 200 deg F (4 to plus 93 deg C).
  - 5. Color: Black.
- C. Glass-Fiber and Mineral Wool Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
    - a. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller.
- D. ASJ Adhesive and FSK Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A, for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
    - a. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller.
  - 2.
- E. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
    - b. Proto Corporation.

### 2.04 MASTICS AND COATINGS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
- B. Vapor-Retarder Mastic, Water Based: Suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller.
    - b. Knauf Insulation.
  - 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: Comply with ASTM E96/E96M or ASTM F1249.
  - 3. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F (Minus 18 to plus 82 deg C)
  - 4. Comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II, for permeance requirements, with supplier listing on DOD QPD - Qualified Products Database.
  - 5. Color: [White] .

### 2.05 SEALANTS

- A. Materials shall be as recommended by the insulation manufacturer and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
- B. Joint Sealants:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller.
    - b. Owens Corning.
  - 2. Permanently flexible, elastomeric sealant.
  - 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 58 to plus 176 deg F (Minus 50 to plus 80 deg C).

4. Color: White or gray.
- C. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
    - a. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller.
  2. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
  3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 121 deg C).
  4. Color: Aluminum.
- D. ASJ Flashing Sealants and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
    - a. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller.
  2. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
  3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 121 deg C).
  4. Color: White.

## 2.06 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
  1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C1136, Type I.
  2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C1136, Type I.
  3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C1136, Type II.
  4. ASJ+: Aluminum foil reinforced with glass scrim bonded to a kraft paper interleaving with an outer film leaving no paper exposed; complying with ASTM C1136, Types I, II, III, IV, and VII.
  5. PSK Jacket: Aluminum foil fiberglass reinforced scrim with polyethylene backing, complying with ASTM C1136, Type II.

## 2.07 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C1136, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil-face, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing.
- C. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
  1. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
  2. Color: White.
  3. Factory-fabricated fitting covers to match jacket if available; otherwise, field fabricate.
    - a. Shapes: 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows, tees, valves, flanges, unions, reducers, end caps, soil-pipe hubs, traps, mechanical joints, and P-trap and supply covers for lavatories.
- D. Metal Jacket:
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
    - a. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
  2. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B209 (ASTM B209M), Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.
    - a. Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing.
    - b. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
    - c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 1-mil- (0.025-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper or 3-mil- (0.075-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.

- d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil- (0.075-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
  - e. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:
    - 1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
    - 2) Preformed two-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
    - 3) Tee covers.
    - 4) Flange and union covers.
    - 5) End caps.
    - 6) Beveled collars.
    - 7) Valve covers.
    - 8) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.
- E. Self-Adhesive Indoor/Outdoor Jacket (Non-Asphaltic): Vapor barrier and waterproofing jacket for installation over insulation located aboveground outdoors or indoors. Specialized jacket has five layers of laminated aluminum and polyester film with low-temperature acrylic pressure-sensitive adhesive. Outer aluminum surface is coated with UV-resistant coating for protection from environmental contaminants.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. 3M.
    - b. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller.
  2. Permeance: 0.00 perm as tested in accordance with ASTM F1249.
  3. Flamespread/Smoke Developed: 25/50 as tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
  4. Aluminum Finish: Smooth.

## 2.08 FIELD-APPLIED FABRIC-REINFORCING MESH

- A. Woven Glass-Fiber Mesh: Approximately 2 oz./sq. yd. (68 g/sq. m) with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. in. (4 strands by 4 strands/sq. mm) for covering pipe and pipe fittings.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
    - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
- B. Woven Polyester Mesh: Approximately 1 oz./sq. yd. (34 g/sq. m) with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. in. (4 strands by 4 strands/sq. mm), in a Leno weave, for pipe.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
    - a. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller.

## 2.09 TAPES

- A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C1136.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. 3M Industrial Adhesives and Tapes Division.
    - b. Ideal Tape Co., Inc., an American Biltrite Company.
    - c. Knauf Insulation.
  2. Width: 3 inches (75 mm).
  3. Thickness: 11.5 mils (0.29 mm).
  4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch (1.0 N/mm) in width.
  5. Elongation: 2 percent.
  6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch (7.2 N/mm) in width.
  7. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.
- B. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C1136.
1. Width: 3 inches (75 mm).
  2. Thickness: 6.5 mils (0.16 mm).

3. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch (1.0 N/mm) in width.
  4. Elongation: 2 percent.
  5. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch (7.2 N/mm) in width.
  6. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.
- C. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive; suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
    - a. 3M Industrial Adhesives and Tapes Division.
  2. Width: 2 inches (50 mm).
  3. Thickness: 6 mils (0.15 mm).
  4. Adhesion: 64 ounces force/inch (0.7 N/mm) in width.
  5. Elongation: 500 percent.
  6. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch (3.3 N/mm) in width.
- D. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. 3M Industrial Adhesives and Tapes Division.
    - b. Knauf Insulation.
  2. Width: 2 inches (50 mm).
  3. Thickness: 3.7 mils (0.093 mm).
  4. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch (1.1 N/mm) in width.
  5. Elongation: 5 percent.
  6. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch (6.2 N/mm) in width.

### **PART 3 EXECUTION**

#### **3.01 PREPARATION**

- A. Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.
- B. Clean and prepare surfaces to be insulated. Before insulating, apply a corrosion coating to insulated surfaces as follows:
  1. Stainless Steel: Coat 300 series stainless steel with an epoxy primer 5 mils (0.127 mm) thick and an epoxy finish 5 mils (0.127 mm) thick if operating in a temperature range of between 140 and 300 deg F (60 and 149 deg C). Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
  2. Carbon Steel: Coat carbon steel operating at a service temperature of between 32 and 300 deg F (0 and 149 deg C) with an epoxy coating. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
- C. Coordinate insulation installation with the tradesman installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.
- D. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

#### **3.02 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping, including fittings, valves, and specialties.
- B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and of thicknesses required for each item of pipe system, as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, compress, or otherwise damage insulation or jacket.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom (12 o'clock and 6 o'clock positions) of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.

- F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
- G. Keep insulation materials dry during storage, application, and finishing. Replace insulation materials that get wet during storage or in the installation process before being properly covered and sealed in accordance with the contract documents[, unless otherwise approved by the engineer-of-record].
- H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
  - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends attached to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 3. Install insert materials and insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
  - 4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.
- K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
  - 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth, but not to the extent of creating wrinkles or areas of compression in the insulation.
  - 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- (75-mm-) wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward-clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches (100 mm) o.c.
  - 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm). Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward-clinching staples along edge at 4 inches (100 mm) o.c.
    - a. For below-ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
  - 4. Cover joints and seams with tape, in accordance with insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
  - 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to pipe flanges and fittings.
- M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation.
- N. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- O. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches (100 mm) beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches in similar fashion to butt joints.
- P. For above-ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
  - 1. Vibration-control devices.
  - 2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
  - 3. Nameplates and data plates.
  - 4. Cleanouts.

### 3.03 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
  - 1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.



2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
  3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches (50 mm) below top of roof flashing.
  4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Underground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Terminate insulation flush with sleeve seal. Seal terminations with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
  2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
  3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches (50 mm).
  4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- D. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- E. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.
1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.
- F. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
  2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

### **3.04 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION**

- A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials, except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles below.
- B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, Mechanical Couplings, and Unions:
1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, mechanical couplings, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation made from same material and density as that of adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
  3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation of same material and thickness as that used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
  4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation of same material, density, and thickness as that used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than 2 times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
  5. Insulate strainers using sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than 2 times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams,

- and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers, so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below-ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.
6. Insulate flanges, mechanical couplings, and unions, using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than 2 times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "union" matching size and color of pipe labels.
  7. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below-ambient services and a breather mastic for above-ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
  8. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket, except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing, using PVC tape.
- C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.
- D. Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation shall conform to the following:
1. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as that of adjoining pipe insulation.
  2. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flange or union at least 2 times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of flange or union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.
  3. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges, except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.
  4. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least 2 inches (50 mm) over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.
  5. Unless a PVC jacket is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules, finish exposed surfaces with a metal jacket.

### **3.05 INSTALLATION OF CELLULAR-GLASS INSULATION**

- A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
1. Secure each layer of insulation to pipe with wire or bands, and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
  2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
  3. For insulation with jackets on above-ambient services, secure laps with outward-clinched staples at 6 inches (150 mm) o.c.
  4. For insulation with jackets on below-ambient services, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive, as recommended by insulation material manufacturer, and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
1. Install prefabricated pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.

2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
  3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of cellular-glass block insulation of same thickness as that of pipe insulation. Where voids are difficult to fill with block insulation, fill the voids with a fibrous insulation material suitable for the specific operating temperature.
  4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch (25 mm), and seal joints with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
1. Install prefabricated sections of same material as that of straight segments of pipe insulation when available. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  2. When preformed sections of insulation are not available, install mitered or routed sections of cellular-glass insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.
- D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
1. Install prefabricated sections of cellular-glass insulation to valve body.
  2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
  3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

### **3.06 INSTALLATION OF GLASS-FIBER AND MINERAL WOOL INSULATION**

- A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands, and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
  2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
  3. For insulation with jackets on above-ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward-clinched staples at 6 inches (150 mm) o.c.
  4. For insulation with jackets on below-ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive, as recommended by insulation material manufacturer, and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
1. Install prefabricated pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
  2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
  3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with glass-fiber or mineral-wool blanket insulation.
  4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch (25 mm), and seal joints with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
1. Install prefabricated sections of same material as that of straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
  2. When prefabricated insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.
- D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
1. Install prefabricated sections of same material as that of straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
  2. When prefabricated sections are not available, install fabricated sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
  3. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
  4. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

### **3.07 INSTALLATION OF FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS**

- A. Where glass-cloth jackets are indicated, install directly over bare insulation or insulation with factory-applied jackets.
  - 1. Draw jacket smooth and tight to surface with 2-inch (50-mm) overlap at seams and joints.
  - 2. Embed glass cloth between two 0.062-inch- (1.6-mm-) thick coats of lagging adhesive.
  - 3. Completely encapsulate insulation with coating, leaving no exposed insulation.
- B. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:
  - 1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
  - 2. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
  - 3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
  - 4. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch- (75-mm-) wide joint strips at end joints.
  - 5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.
- C. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch (25-mm) overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
  - 1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.
- D. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch (50-mm) overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless steel bands 12 inches (300 mm) o.c. and at end joints.

### **3.08 FINISHES**

- A. Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."
- B. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless steel jackets.

### **3.09 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- C. Perform tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative.
- D. Tests and Inspections: Inspect pipe, fittings, strainers, and valves, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to three locations of straight pipe, three locations of threaded fittings, three locations of welded fittings, two locations of threaded strainers, two locations of welded strainers, three locations of threaded valves, and three locations of flanged valves for each pipe service defined in the "Piping Insulation Schedule, General" Article.
- E. All insulation applications will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### **3.10 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL**

- A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- B. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not install insulation on the following:
  - 1. Drainage piping located in crawl spaces.
  - 2. Underground piping.
  - 3. Chrome-plated pipes and fittings unless there is a potential for personnel injury.

### 3.11 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Domestic Cold Water:
  - 1. NPS 1 (DN 25) and Smaller: Insulation shall be one of the following:
    - a. Glass-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1/2 inch (13 mm) thick.
    - b. Mineral Wool, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type II: 1/2 inch (13 mm).
  - 2. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) and Larger: Insulation shall be one of the following:
    - a. Glass-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    - b. Mineral Wool, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type II: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
- B. Domestic Hot and Recirculated Hot Water:
  - 1. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32)] and Smaller: Insulation shall be one of the following:
    - a. Glass-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    - b. Mineral Wool, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type II: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
  - 2. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and Larger: Insulation shall be one of the following:
    - a. Flexible Elastomeric: [1 inch (25 mm)] thick.
    - b. Glass-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: [1 inch (25 mm)] thick.
    - c. Mineral Wool, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type II: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
- C. Stormwater and Overflow:
  - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
    - a. Glass-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    - b. Mineral Wool, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type II: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
- D. Roof Drain and Overflow Drain Bodies:
  - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
    - a. Glass-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    - b. Mineral Wool, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type II: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
- E. Exposed Sanitary Drains, Domestic Water, Domestic Hot Water, and Stops for Plumbing Fixtures for People with Disabilities:
  - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
    - a. Glass-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1/2 inch (13 mm) thick.
    - b. Mineral Wool, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type II: 1/2 inch (13 mm).

### 3.12 INDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- C. Piping, Concealed:
  - 1. PVC20 mils (0.5 mm) thick.
  - 2. Aluminum, Smooth 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) thick.
- D. Piping, Exposed:
  - 1. PVC20 mils (0.5 mm) thick.
  - 2. Aluminum, Smooth 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) thick.

**END OF SECTION 22 07 19**

**SECTION 22 09 00  
INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.01 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes control equipment for HVAC systems and components, including control components for terminal heating and cooling units not supplied with factory-wired controls.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Section 23 0519 "Meters and Gages for HVAC Piping" for measuring equipment that relates to this Section.

**1.02 DEFINITIONS**

- A. DDC: Direct digital control.
- B. I/O: Input/output.
- C. MS/TP: Master slave/token passing.
- D. PC: Personal computer.
- E. PID: Proportional plus integral plus derivative.
- F. RTD: Resistance temperature detector.

**1.03 SYSTEM PERFORMANCE**

- A. Comply with the following performance requirements:
  - 1. Graphic Display: Display graphic with minimum 20 dynamic points with current data within 10 seconds.
  - 2. Graphic Refresh: Update graphic with minimum 20 dynamic points with current data within 8 seconds.
  - 3. Object Command: Reaction time of less than two seconds between operator command of a binary object and device reaction.
  - 4. Object Scan: Transmit change of state and change of analog values to control units or workstation within six seconds.
  - 5. Alarm Response Time: Annunciate alarm at workstation within 45 seconds. Multiple workstations must receive alarms within five seconds of each other.
  - 6. Program Execution Frequency: Run capability of applications as often as five seconds but selected consistent with mechanical process under control.
  - 7. Performance: Programmable controllers shall execute DDC PID control loops, and scan and update process values and outputs at least once per second.
  - 8. Reporting Accuracy and Stability of Control: Report values and maintain measured
    - a. variables within tolerances as follows:
      - 1) Space Temperature: Plus or minus 1 deg F.
      - 2) Ducted Air Temperature: Plus or minus 1 deg F.
      - 3) Outside Air Temperature: Plus or minus 2 deg F.
      - 4) Dew Point Temperature: Plus or minus 3 deg F.
      - 5) Temperature Differential: Plus or minus 0.25 deg F.
      - 6) Relative Humidity: Plus or minus 5 percent.
      - 7) Airflow (Pressurized Spaces): Plus or minus 3 percent of full scale.
      - 8) Airflow (Measuring Stations): Plus or minus 5 percent of full scale.
      - 9) Air Pressure (Space): Plus or minus 0.01-inch wg.
      - 10) Air Pressure (Ducts): Plus or minus 0.1-inch wg.
      - 11) Carbon Dioxide: Plus or minus 50 ppm.
      - 12) Electrical: Plus or minus 5 percent of reading.

**1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: Include manufacturer's technical literature for each control device. Indicate dimensions, capacities, performance characteristics, electrical characteristics, finishes for

materials, and installation and startup instructions for each type of product indicated.

1. DDC System Hardware: Bill of materials of equipment indicating quantity, manufacturer, and model number. Include technical data for operator workstation equipment, interface equipment, control units, transducers/transmitters, sensors, actuators, valves, relays/switches, control panels, and operator interface equipment.
  2. Control System Software: Include technical data for operating system software, operator interface, color graphics, and other third-party applications.
  3. Controlled Systems: Instrumentation list with element name, type of device, manufacturer, model number, and product data. Include written description of sequence of operation including schematic diagram.
- B. Shop Drawings: Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
1. Bill of materials of equipment indicating quantity, manufacturer, and model number.
  2. Schematic flow diagrams showing fans, pumps, coils, dampers, valves, and control devices.
  3. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.
  4. Details of control panel faces, including controls, instruments, and labeling.
  5. Written description of sequence of operation.
  6. Schedule of dampers including size, leakage, and flow characteristics.
  7. Schedule of valves including flow characteristics.
  8. DDC System Hardware:
    - 1) Wiring diagrams for control units with termination numbers.
    - 2) Schematic diagrams and floor plans for field sensors and control hardware.
    - 3) Schematic diagrams for control, communication, and power wiring, showing trunk data conductors and wiring between operator workstation and control unit locations.
  9. Control System Software: List of color graphics indicating monitored systems, data a. (connected and calculated) point addresses, output schedule, and operator notations.
  10. Controlled Systems:
    - 1) Schematic diagrams of each controlled system with control points labeled and control elements graphically shown, with wiring.
    - 2) Scaled drawings showing mounting, routing, and wiring of elements including bases and special construction.
    - 3) Written description of sequence of operation including schematic diagram.
    - 4) Points list.

#### **1.05 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Data Communications Protocol Certificates: Certify that each proposed DDC system component complies with ASHRAE 135.
- B. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- C. Software Upgrade Kit: For Owner to use in modifying software to suit future systems revisions or monitoring and control revisions.
- D. Field quality-control test reports.

#### **1.06 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For HVAC instrumentation and control system to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Section 01 7823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
  1. Interconnection wiring diagrams with identified and numbered system components and devices.
  2. Keyboard illustrations and step-by-step procedures indexed for each operator function.
  3. Inspection period, cleaning methods, cleaning materials recommended, and calibration tolerances.

4. Calibration records and list of set points.
- B. Software and Firmware Operational Documentation: Include the following:
  1. Software operating and upgrade manuals.
  2. Program Software Backup: On a magnetic media or compact disc, complete with data files.
  3. Device address list.
  4. Printout of software application and graphic screens.
  5. Software license required by and installed for DDC workstations and control systems.

### **1.07 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Installer Qualifications: Automatic control system manufacturer's authorized representative who is trained and approved for installation of system components required for this Project.

### **1.08 COMMISSIONING**

- A. An independent third party Commissioning Agent will document completion of the building HVAC Systems. Refer to section 019113 Building Systems Commissioning for the project Commissioning requirements and roles and responsibilities of each member of the Commissioning Team.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
    - a. manufacturers specified.

### **2.02 CONTROL SYSTEM**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. Automated Logic Corporation.
  2. Distech Controls.
  3. Honeywell Building Solutions; Honeywell International, Inc.
  4. Johnson Controls, Inc.
  5. Siemens Building Technologies, Inc.
- B. Control system shall consist of sensors, indicators, actuators, final control elements, interface equipment, other apparatus, accessories, and software connected to distributed controllers operating in multiuser, multitasking environment on token-passing network and programmed to control mechanical systems. An operator workstation permits interface with the network via dynamic color graphics with each mechanical system, building floor plan, and control device depicted by point-and-click graphics.

### **2.03 DDC EQUIPMENT**

- A. Operator Workstation: One PC-based microcomputer(s) with minimum configuration as follows:
  1. Motherboard: With 8 integrated USB 3.0 ports, integrated Intel Pro 10/100 (Ethernet), integrated audio, bios, and hardware monitoring.
  2. Processor: Intel Core i7, 2.5 MHz, minimum.
  3. Random-Access Memory: 8 GB.
  4. Graphics: Video adapter, minimum 1920 x 1080 pixels, 512-MB video memory, with TV out.
  5. Monitor: 24 inches, LCD color.
  6. Keyboard: QWERTY, 105 keys in ergonomic shape.
  7. Solid-State Disk Drive: 256 GB.
  8. Hard Disk Drive: Two (2) 2 TB drives.
  9. Mouse: Three button, optical.
  10. Uninterruptible Power Supply: 2 kVa.



11. Operating System: Windows 10 Pro with high-speed Internet access.
  - 1) ASHRAE 135 Compliance: Workstation shall use ASHRAE 135 protocol and communicate using ISO 8802-3 (Ethernet) datalink/physical layer protocol.
12. Printer: Black-and-white, laser-jet type as follows:
  - 1) Print Head: 1200 x 1200 dpi resolution.
  - 2) Paper Handling: Minimum of 250 sheet trays.
  - 3) Print Speed: Minimum of 120 characters per second.
13. Application Software:
  - 1) I/O capability from operator station.
  - 2) System security for each operator via software password and access levels.
  - 3) Automatic system diagnostics; monitor system and report failures.
  - 4) Database creation and support.
  - 5) Automatic and manual database save and restore.
  - 6) Dynamic color graphic displays with up to 10 screen displays at once.
  - 7) Custom graphics generation and graphics library of HVAC equipment and symbols.
  - 8) Alarm processing, messages, and reactions.
  - 9) Trend logs retrievable in spreadsheets and database programs.
  - 10) Alarm and event processing.
  - 11) Object and property status and control.
  - 12) Automatic restart of field equipment on restoration of power.
  - 13) Data collection, reports, and logs. Include standard reports for the following:
    - (a) Current values of all objects.
    - (b) Current alarm summary.
    - (c) Disabled objects.
    - (d) Alarm lockout objects.
    - (e) Logs.
  - 14) Custom report development.
  - 15) Utility and weather reports.
  - 16) Workstation application editors for controllers and schedules.
  - 17) Maintenance management.
14. Custom Application Software:
  - 1) English language oriented.
  - 2) Full-screen character editor/programming environment.
  - 3) development of independently executing program modules with debugging/simulation capability.
  - 4) Support conditional statements.
  - 5) Support floating-point arithmetic with mathematic functions.
  - 6) Contains predefined time variables.
- B. Diagnostic Terminal Unit: Portable notebook-style, PC-based microcomputer terminal capable of accessing system data by connecting to system network with minimum configuration as follows:
  1. System: With three integrated USB 3.0 ports, integrated Intel Pro 10/100 (Ethernet), integrated audio, bios, and hardware monitoring.
  2. Processor: Intel i7, 2.5 MHz.
  3. Random-Access Memory: 8 GB.
  4. Graphics: Video adapter, minimum 1024 x 768 pixels, 256-MB video memory.
  5. Monitor: 17 inches, LCD color.
  6. Keyboard: QWERTY 105 keys in ergonomic shape.
  7. Hard-Disk Drive: 1 TB.
  8. CD-ROM Read/Write Drive: 48x24x48.
  9. Pointing Device: Touch pad or other internal device.
- C. Control Units: Modular, comprising processor board with programmable, nonvolatile, random-

1. access memory; local operator access and display panel; integral interface equipment; and backup power source.
  2. Units monitor or control each I/O point; process information; execute commands from other control units, devices, and operator stations; and download from or upload to operator workstation or diagnostic terminal unit.
  3. Stand-alone mode control functions operate regardless of network status. Functions include the following:
    - 1) Global communications.
    - 2) Discrete/digital, analog, and pulse I/O.
    - 3) Monitoring, controlling, or addressing data points.
    - 4) Software applications, scheduling, and alarm processing.
    - 5) Testing and developing control algorithms without disrupting field hardware and controlled environment.
  4. Standard Application Programs:
    - 1) Electric Control Programs: Demand limiting, duty cycling, automatic time scheduling, start/stop time optimization, night setback/setup, on-off control with differential sequencing, staggered start, antishort cycling, PID control, DDC with fine tuning, and trend logging.
    - 2) HVAC Control Programs: Optimal run time, supply-air reset, and enthalpy switchover.
    - 3) Programming Application Features: Include trend point; alarm processing and messaging; weekly, monthly, and annual scheduling; energy calculations; run-time totalization and security access.
    - 4) Remote communications.
    - 5) Maintenance management.
    - 6) Units of Measure: Inch-pound and SI (metric).
  5. Local operator interface provides for download from or upload to operator workstation or diagnostic terminal unit.
  6. ASHRAE 135 Compliance: Control units shall use ASHRAE 135 protocol and communicate using ISO 8802-3 (Ethernet) datalink/physical layer protocol.
- D. Local Control Units: Modular, comprising processor board with electronically programmable, nonvolatile, read-only memory; and backup power source.
1. Units monitor or control each I/O point, process information, and download from or upload to operator workstation or diagnostic terminal unit.
  2. Stand-alone mode control functions operate regardless of network status. Functions include the following:
    - 1) Global communications.
    - 2) Discrete/digital, analog, and pulse I/O.
    - 3) Monitoring, controlling, or addressing data points.
  3. Local operator interface provides for download from or upload to operator workstation or diagnostic terminal unit.
  4. ASHRAE 135 Compliance: Control units shall use ASHRAE 135 protocol and
    - a. communicate using ISO 8802-3 (Ethernet) datalink/physical layer protocol.
- E. I/O Interface: Hardwired inputs and outputs may tie into system through controllers. Protect points so that shorting will cause no damage to controllers.
1. Binary Inputs: Allow monitoring of on-off signals without external power.
  2. Pulse Accumulation Inputs: Accept up to 10 pulses per second.
  3. Analog Inputs: Allow monitoring of low-voltage (0- to 10-V dc), current (4 to 20 mA), or resistance signals.
  4. Binary Outputs: Provide on-off or pulsed low-voltage signal, selectable for normally open or normally closed operation.
  5. Analog Outputs: Provide modulating signal, either low voltage (0- to 10-V dc) or current (4 to 20 mA).

6. Tri-State Outputs: Provide two coordinated binary outputs for control of three-point, floating-type electronic actuators.
7. Universal I/Os: Provide software selectable binary or analog outputs.
- F. Power Supplies: Transformers with Class 2 current-limiting type or overcurrent protection; limit connected loads to 80 percent of rated capacity. DC power supply shall match output current and voltage requirements and be full-wave rectifier type with the following:
  1. Output ripple of 5.0 mV maximum peak to peak.
  2. Combined 1 percent line and load regulation with 100-mic.sec. response time for 50 percent load changes.
  3. Built-in overvoltage and overcurrent protection and be able to withstand 150 percent overload for at least 3 seconds without failure.
- G. Power Line Filtering: Internal or external transient voltage and surge suppression for workstations or controllers with the following:
  1. Minimum dielectric strength of 1000 V.
  2. Maximum response time of 10 nanoseconds.
  3. Minimum transverse-mode noise attenuation of 65 dB.
  4. Minimum common-mode noise attenuation of 150 dB at 40 to 100 Hz.

#### 2.04 UNITARY CONTROLLERS

- A. Unitized, capable of stand-alone operation with sufficient memory to support its operating system, database, and programming requirements, and with sufficient I/O capacity for the application.
  1. Configuration: Local keypad and display; diagnostic LEDs for power, communication, and processor; wiring termination to terminal strip or card connected with ribbon cable; memory with bios; and 72-hour battery backup.
  2. Operating System: Manage I/O communication to allow distributed controllers to share real and virtual object information and allow central monitoring and alarms. Perform automatic system diagnostics; monitor system and report failures.
  3. ASHRAE 135 Compliance: Communicate using read (execute and initiate) and write (execute and initiate) property services defined in ASHRAE 135. Reside on network
    - a. using MS/TP datalink/physical layer protocol and have service communication port for
    - b. connection to diagnostic terminal unit.
  4. Enclosure: Dustproof rated for operation at 32 to 120 deg F.
  5. Enclosure: Waterproof rated for operation at 40 to 150 deg F.

#### 2.05 ELECTRONIC SENSORS

- A. Description: Vibration and corrosion resistant; for wall, immersion, or duct mounting as required.
- B. Thermistor Temperature Sensors and Transmitters:
  1. Accuracy: Plus or minus 0.5 deg F at calibration point.
  2. Wire: Twisted, shielded-pair cable.
  3. Insertion Elements in Ducts: Single point, 8 inches long; use where not affected by temperature stratification or where ducts are smaller than 9 sq. ft..
  4. Averaging Elements in Ducts: 72 inches long, flexible; use where prone to temperature stratification or where ducts are larger than 10 sq. ft..
  5. Insertion Elements for Liquids: Brass or stainless-steel socket with minimum insertion length of 2-1/2 inches.
  6. Room Sensor Cover Construction: Manufacturer's standard locking covers.
    - 1) Set-Point Adjustment: Concealed.
    - 2) Set-Point Indication: Concealed.
  7. Outside-Air Sensors: Watertight inlet fitting, shielded from direct sunlight.
  8. Room Security Sensors: Stainless-steel cover plate with insulated back and security screws.

- C. RTDs and Transmitters:
1. Accuracy: Plus or minus 0.2 percent at calibration point.
  2. Wire: Twisted, shielded-pair cable.
  3. Insertion Elements in Ducts: Single point, 8 inches long; use where not affected by temperature stratification or where ducts are smaller than 9 sq. ft..
  4. Averaging Elements in Ducts: 48 inches long, rigid; use where prone to temperature stratification or where ducts are larger than 9 sq. ft.; length as required.
  5. Insertion Elements for Liquids: Brass socket with minimum insertion length of 2-1/2 inches.
  6. Room Sensor Cover Construction: Manufacturer's standard locking covers.
    - 1) Set-Point Adjustment: Concealed.
    - 2) Set-Point Indication: Concealed.
  7. Outside-Air Sensors: Watertight inlet fitting, shielded from direct sunlight.
  8. Room Security Sensors: Stainless-steel cover plate with insulated back and security screws.
- D. Humidity Sensors: Bulk polymer sensor element.
1. Manufacturers:
    - 1) MAMAC Systems, Inc.
    - 2) Vaisala.
  2. Accuracy: 2 percent full range with linear output.
  3. Room Sensor Range: 20 to 80 percent relative humidity.
  4. Room Sensor Cover Construction: Manufacturer's standard locking covers.
    - 1) Set-Point Adjustment: Concealed.
    - 2) Set-Point Indication: Concealed.
  5. Duct Sensor: 20 to 80 percent relative humidity range with element guard and mounting plate.
  6. Outside-Air Sensor: 20 to 80 percent relative humidity range with mounting enclosure, suitable for operation at outdoor temperatures of minus 22 to plus 185 deg F.
  7. Duct and Sensors: With element guard and mounting plate, range of 0 to 100 percent relative humidity.
- E. Pressure Transmitters/Transducers:
1. Static-Pressure Transmitter: Nondirectional sensor with suitable range for expected input, and temperature compensated.
    - 1) Accuracy: 2 percent of full scale with repeatability of 0.5 percent.
    - 2) Output: 4 to 20 mA.
    - 3) Building Static-Pressure Range: 0- to 0.25-inch wg.
    - 4) Duct Static-Pressure Range: 0- to 5-inch wg.
  2. Water Pressure Transducers: Stainless-steel diaphragm construction, suitable for service; minimum 150-psig operating pressure; linear output 4 to 20 mA.
  3. Water Differential-Pressure Transducers: Stainless-steel diaphragm construction, suitable for service; minimum 150-psig operating pressure and tested to 300-psig; linear output 4 to 20 mA.
  4. Differential-Pressure Switch (Air or Water): Snap acting, with pilot-duty rating and with suitable scale range and differential.
  5. Pressure Transmitters: Direct acting for gas, liquid, or steam service; range suitable for system; linear output 4 to 20 mA.
  6. Building Pressure Sensor: Sensor shall have four switch selectable ranges: 0.1, 0.25, 0.5, a. in. w.c. Sensor shall have provision for zeroing by pushbutton or digital input. Sensor shall have field selectable outputs of 0-5 Vdc, 0-10 Vdc, and 4-20 mA. Sensor shall have jumper to select unidirectional or 1-directional mode. Sensor shall have brass-barb fittings. Sensor shall operate from 12-30 Vdc or 24 VAC; power applies to operation in voltage mode only. Sensor shall have LCD display. Sensor accuracy shall be  $\pm 1\%$  FS selected range. Sensor overpressure rating shall be 3 PSID proof, and 5 PSID burst. Sensor shall be Honeywell P7640 or equivalent approved by

Architect in writing prior to acceptance of bids.

- F. Room sensor accessories include the following:
  - 1. Insulating Bases: For sensors located on exterior walls.
  - 2. Guards: Locking, solid metal, ventilated.
  - 3. Adjusting Key: As required for calibration and cover screws.

## 2.06 STATUS SENSORS

- A. Status Inputs for Fans: Differential-pressure switch with pilot-duty rating and with adjustable range of 0- to 5-inch wg.
- B. Status Inputs for Electric Motors: Comply with ISA 50.00.01, current-sensing fixed- or split- core transformers with self-powered transmitter, adjustable and suitable for 175 percent of rated motor current.
- C. Voltage Transmitter (100- to 600-V ac): Comply with ISA 50.00.01, single-loop, self-powered transmitter, adjustable, with suitable range and 1 percent full-scale accuracy.
- D. Power Monitor: 3-phase type with disconnect/shorting switch assembly, listed voltage and current transformers, with pulse kilowatt hour output and 4- to 20-mA kW output, with maximum 2 percent error at 1.0 power factor and 2.5 percent error at 0.5 power factor.
- E. Current Switches: Self-powered, solid-state with adjustable trip current, selected to match current and system output requirements.
- F. Electronic Valve/Damper Position Indicator: Visual scale indicating percent of travel and 2- to 10-V dc, feedback signal.

## 2.07 GAS DETECTION EQUIPMENT

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Bacharach Inc.
  - 2. Ebtron, Inc.
  - 3. Honeywell Building Solutions; Honeywell International, Inc.
  - 4. TSI Incorporated.
  - 5. Vaisala.
- B. Carbon Dioxide Sensor and Transmitter: Single detectors using solid-state infrared sensors; suitable over a temperature range of 23 to 130 deg F and calibrated for 0 to 2 percent, with continuous or averaged reading, 4- to 20-mA output; for wall mounting.
- C. Oxygen Sensor and Transmitter: Single detectors using solid-state zircon cell sensing; suitable over a temperature range of minus 32 to plus 1100 deg F and calibrated for 0 to 5 percent, with continuous or averaged reading, 4- to 20-mA output; for wall mounting.
- D. Occupancy Sensor: Passive infrared, with time delay, daylight sensor lockout, sensitivity control, and 180-degree field of view with vertical sensing adjustment; for flush mounting.
- E. Refrigerant Detector: Sensor shall be capable of detection of R-410a in the following ranges of 2,500 ppm, 5,000 ppm, 10,000 ppm. The unit shall be flush mount, white ABS and fit in 2-gang
  - 1. electrical back-box. The unit shall be NEMA 1. The unit shall be 120 VAC powered 4 Watts
  - 2. max. The unit shall be provided with two configurable (2) SPDT relays: low alarm and high alarm / fault, normal or fail-safe. Alarm Delay 0 to 15 minutes; configurable at 0, 5, 10 and 15 minutes. The unit shall utilize Modbus or Bacnet protocol. Contractor is responsible for providing all equipment to interface the BAS with Modbus protocol. Sensor life 2 year minimum life with recommended 6 month testing and/or recalibration. Provide with CE, UL/CSA/IEC/EN 61010-1 approvals.

## 2.08 FLOW MEASURING STATIONS

- A. Duct Airflow Station: Combination of air straightener and multiport, self-averaging pitot tube station.
  - 1. Manufacturers:

- 1) Air Monitor Corporation.
- 2) Wetmaster Co., Ltd.
- 3) Ebtron, Inc.
2. Casing: Galvanized-steel frame.
3. Flow Straightener: Aluminum honeycomb, 3/4-inch parallel cell, 3 inches deep.
4. Sensing Manifold: Copper manifold with bullet-nosed static pressure sensors positioned on equal area basis.

## 2.09 THERMOSTATS

- A. Combination Thermostat and Fan Switches: Line-voltage thermostat with push-button or lever-operated fan switch.
  1. Label switches "FAN HIGH-MED-LOW-OFF".
  2. Mount on single electric switch box.
- B. Electric, solid-state, microcomputer-based room thermostat with remote sensor.
  1. Automatic switching from heating to cooling.
  2. Preferential rate control to minimize overshoot and deviation from set point.
  3. Set up for four separate temperatures per day.
  4. Instant override of set point for continuous or timed period from 1 hour to 31 days.
  5. Short-cycle protection.
  6. Programming based on every day of week.
  7. Selection features include degree F or degree C display, 12- or 24-hour clock, keyboard disable, remote sensor, and fan on-auto.
  8. Battery replacement without program loss.
  9. Thermostat display features include the following:
    - 1) Time of day.
    - 2) Actual room temperature.
    - 3) Programmed temperature.
    - 4) Programmed time.
    - 5) Duration of timed override.
    - 6) Day of week.
    - 7) System mode indications include "heating," "off," "fan auto," and "fan on."
- C. Low-Voltage, On-Off Thermostats: NEMA DC 3, 24-V, bimetal-operated, mercury-switch type, with adjustable or fixed anticipation heater, concealed set-point adjustment, 55 to 85 deg F set-point range, and 2 deg F maximum differential.
- D. Line-Voltage, On-Off Thermostats: Bimetal-actuated, open contact or bellows-actuated, enclosed, snap-switch or equivalent solid-state type, with heat anticipator; listed for electrical rating; with concealed set-point adjustment, 55 to 85 deg F set-point range, and 2 deg F maximum differential.
  1. Electric Heating Thermostats: Equip with off position on dial wired to break ungrounded conductors.
  2. Selector Switch: Integral, manual on-off-auto.
- E. Remote-Bulb Thermostats: On-off or modulating type, liquid filled to compensate for changes in ambient temperature; with copper capillary and bulb, unless otherwise indicated.
  1. Bulbs in water lines with separate wells of same material as bulb.
  2. Bulbs in air ducts with flanges and shields.
  3. Averaging Elements: Copper tubing with either single- or multiple-unit elements, extended to cover full width of duct or unit; adequately supported.
  4. Scale settings and differential settings are clearly visible and adjustable from front of instrument.
  5. On-Off Thermostat: With precision snap switches and with electrical ratings required by application.
  6. Modulating Thermostats: Construct so complete potentiometer coil and wiper assembly is removable for inspection or replacement without disturbing calibration of instrument.

- F. Fire-Protection Thermostats: Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction; with fixed or adjustable settings to operate at not less than 75 deg F above normal maximum operating temperature, and the following:
  - 1. Reset: Manual.
  - 2. Reset: Automatic, with control circuit arranged to require manual reset at central control panel; with pilot light and reset switch on panel labeled to indicate operation.
- G. Immersion Thermostat: Remote-bulb or bimetal rod-and-tube type, proportioning action with adjustable throttling range and adjustable set point.
- H. Airstream Thermostats: Two-pipe, fully proportional, single-temperature type; with adjustable set point in middle of range, adjustable throttling range, plug-in test fitting or permanent pressure gage, remote bulb, bimetal rod and tube, or averaging element.
- I. Electric, Low-Limit Duct Thermostat: Snap-acting, single-pole, single-throw, manual-reset switch that trips if temperature sensed across any 12 inches of bulb length is equal to or below set point.
  - 1. Bulb Length: Minimum 20 feet.
  - 2. Quantity: One thermostat for every 20 sq. ft. of coil surface.
- J. Electric, High-Limit Duct Thermostat: Snap-acting, single-pole, single-throw, manual-reset switch that trips if temperature sensed across any 12 inches of bulb length is equal to or above set point.
  - 1. Bulb Length: Minimum 20 feet.
  - 2. Quantity: One thermostat for every 20 sq. ft. of coil surface.

## 2.10 ACTUATORS

- A. Electric Motors: Size to operate with sufficient reserve power to provide smooth modulating action or two-position action.
  - 1. Comply with requirements in Section 23 0513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
  - 2. Permanent Split-Capacitor or Shaded-Pole Type: Gear trains completely oil immersed and sealed. Equip spring-return motors with integral spiral-spring mechanism in housings designed for easy removal for service or adjustment of limit switches, auxiliary switches, or feedback potentiometer.
  - 3. Nonspring-Return Motors for Valves Larger Than NPS 2-1/2: Size for running torque of 150 in. x lbf and breakaway torque of 300 in. x lbf.
  - 4. Spring-Return Motors for Valves Larger Than NPS 2-1/2: Size for running and breakaway torque of 150 in. x lbf.
  - 5. Nonspring-Return Motors for Dampers Larger Than 25 Sq. Ft.: Size for running torque of 150 in. x lbf and breakaway torque of 300 in. x lbf.
  - 6. Spring-Return Motors for Dampers Larger Than 25 Sq. Ft.: Size for running and breakaway torque of 150 in. x lbf.
- B. Electronic Actuators: Direct-coupled type designed for minimum 60,000 full-stroke cycles at rated torque.
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - 1) Belimo Aircontrols (USA), Inc.
  - 2. Valves: Size for torque required for valve close off at maximum pump differential pressure.
  - 3. Dampers: Size for running torque calculated as follows:
    - 1) Parallel-Blade Damper with Edge Seals: 7 inch-lb/sq. ft. of damper.
    - 2) Opposed-Blade Damper with Edge Seals: 5 inch-lb/sq. ft. of damper.
    - 3) Parallel-Blade Damper without Edge Seals: 4 inch-lb/sq. ft. of damper.
    - 4) Opposed-Blade Damper without Edge Seals: 3 inch-lb/sq. ft. of damper.
    - 5) Dampers with 2- to 3-Inch wg of Pressure Drop or Face Velocities of 1000 to 2500 fpm: Increase running torque by 1.5.
    - 6) Dampers with 3- to 4-Inch wg of Pressure Drop or Face Velocities of 2500 to 3000 fpm: Increase running torque by 2.0.

4. Coupling: V-bolt and V-shaped, toothed cradle.
5. Overload Protection: Electronic overload or digital rotation-sensing circuitry.
6. Fail-Safe Operation: Mechanical, spring-return mechanism. Provide external, manual gear release on nonspring-return actuators.
7. Power Requirements (Two-Position Spring Return): -V ac.
8. Power Requirements (Modulating): Maximum 10 VA at 24-V ac or 8 W at 24-V dc.
9. Proportional Signal: 2- to 10-V dc or 4 to 20 mA, and 2- to 10-V dc position feedback signal.
10. Temperature Rating: Minus 22 to plus 122 deg F.
11. Temperature Rating (Smoke Dampers): Minus 22 to plus 250 deg F.
12. Run Time: 30 seconds.

## 2.11 DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. Air Balance; a division of MESTEK, Inc.
  2. TAMCO (T. A. Morrison & Co. Inc.).
- B. Dampers: AMCA-rated, opposed-blade design; 0.108-inch- minimum thick, galvanized-steel or 0.125-inch- minimum thick, extruded-aluminum frames with holes for duct mounting; damper blades shall not be less than 0.064-inch- thick galvanized steel with maximum blade width of 8 inches and length of 48 inches.
  1. Secure blades to 1/2-inch- diameter, zinc-plated axles using zinc-plated hardware, with oil-impregnated sintered bronze blade bearings, blade-linkage hardware of zinc-plated steel and brass, ends sealed against spring-stainless-steel blade bearings, and thrust bearings at each end of every blade.
  2. Operating Temperature Range: From minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.
  3. Edge Seals, Low-Leakage Applications: Use inflatable blade edging or replaceable rubber blade seals and spring-loaded stainless-steel side seals, rated for leakage at less than 10 cfm per sq. ft. of damper area, at differential pressure of 4-inch wg when damper is held by torque of 50 in. x lbf; when tested according to AMCA 500D.

## 2.12 CONTROL CABLE

- A. Electronic and fiber-optic cables for control wiring are specified in Section 27 1500 "Communications Horizontal Cabling."

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that power supply is available to control units and operator workstation.
- B. Verify that pneumatic piping and duct-, pipe-, and equipment-mounted devices are installed before proceeding with installation.

### 3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Install software in control units and operator workstation(s). Implement all features of programs to specified requirements and as appropriate to sequence of operation.
- B. Connect and configure equipment and software to achieve sequence of operation specified.
- C. Verify location of thermostats, humidistats, and other exposed control sensors with Drawings and room details before installation. Install devices at the same elevation as light switches and other devices above the floor.
  1. Install averaging elements in ducts and plenums in crossing or zigzag pattern.
- D. Install guards on thermostats in the following locations:
  1. Entrances.
  2. Public areas.
  3. Where indicated.
- E. Install automatic dampers according to Section 23 3300 "Air Duct Accessories."



- F. Install damper motors on outside of duct in warm areas, not in locations exposed to outdoor temperatures.
- G. Install labels and nameplates to identify control components according to Section 23 0553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- H. Install refrigerant instrument wells, valves, and other accessories according to Section 23 2300 "Refrigerant Piping."
- I. Install duct volume-control dampers according to Section 23 3113 "Metal Ducts" and Section 23 3116 "Nonmetal Ducts."
- J. Install electronic and fiber-optic cables according to Section 27 1500 "Communications Horizontal Cabling."

### **3.03 ELECTRICAL WIRING AND CONNECTION INSTALLATION**

- A. Install raceways, boxes, and cabinets according to Section 26 0533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
- B. Install building wire and cable according to Section 26 0519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- C. Install signal and communication cable according to Section 27 1500 "Communications Horizontal Cabling."
  - 1. Conceal cable, except in mechanical rooms and areas where other conduit and piping are exposed.
  - 2. Install exposed cable in raceway.
  - 3. Install concealed cable in raceway.
  - 4. Bundle and harness multiconductor instrument cable in place of single cables where
    - a. several cables follow a common path.
  - 5. Fasten flexible conductors, bridging cabinets and doors, along hinge side; protect against abrasion. Tie and support conductors.
  - 6. Number-code or color-code conductors for future identification and service of control system, except local individual room control cables.
  - 7. Install wire and cable with sufficient slack and flexible connections to allow for vibration of piping and equipment.
- D. Connect manual-reset limit controls independent of manual-control switch positions. Automatic duct heater resets may be connected in interlock circuit of power controllers.
- E. Connect hand-off-auto selector switches to override automatic interlock controls when switch is in hand position.

### **3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust field-assembled components and equipment installation, including connections, and to assist in field testing. Report results in writing.
- B. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
  - 1. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper unit operation. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest.
  - 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties.
  - 3. Test calibration of electronic controllers by disconnecting input sensors and stimulating operation with compatible signal generator.
  - 4. Test each point through its full operating range to verify that safety and operating control set points are as required.
  - 5. Test each control loop to verify stable mode of operation and compliance with sequence of operation. Adjust PID actions.
  - 6. Test each system for compliance with sequence of operation.
  - 7. Test software and hardware interlocks.
- C. DDC Verification:

1. Verify that instruments are installed before calibration, testing, and loop or leak checks.
2. Check instruments for proper location and accessibility.
3. Check instrument installation for direction of flow, elevation, orientation, insertion depth, and other applicable considerations.
4. Check instrument tubing for proper fittings, slope, material, and support.
5. Check flow instruments. Inspect tag number and line and bore size, and verify that inlet side is identified and that meters are installed correctly.
6. Check pressure instruments, piping slope, installation of valve manifold, and self-contained pressure regulators.
7. Check temperature instruments and material and length of sensing elements.
8. Check control valves. Verify that they are in correct direction.
9. Check air-operated dampers. Verify that pressure gages are provided and that proper blade alignment, either parallel or opposed, has been provided.
10. Check DDC system as follows:
  - 1) Verify that DDC controller power supply is from emergency power supply, if applicable.
  - 2) Verify that wires at control panels are tagged with their service designation and approved tagging system.
  - 3) Verify that spare I/O capacity has been provided.
  - 4) Verify that DDC controllers are protected from power supply surges.

D. Replace damaged or malfunctioning controls and equipment and repeat testing procedures.

### 3.05 ADJUSTING

#### A. Calibrating and Adjusting:

1. Calibrate instruments.
2. Make three-point calibration test for both linearity and accuracy for each analog instrument.
3. Calibrate equipment and procedures using manufacturer's written recommendations and instruction manuals. Use test equipment with accuracy at least double that of instrument being calibrated.
4. Control System Inputs and Outputs:
  - 1) Check analog inputs at 0, 50, and 100 percent of span.
  - 2) Check analog outputs using milliampere meter at 0, 50, and 100 percent output.
  - 3) Check digital inputs using jumper wire.
  - 4) Check digital outputs using ohmmeter to test for contact making or breaking.
  - 5) Check resistance temperature inputs at 0, 50, and 100 percent of span using a precision-resistant source.
5. Flow:
  - 1) Set differential pressure flow transmitters for 0 and 100 percent values with 3-point calibration accomplished at 50, 90, and 100 percent of span.
  - 2) Manually operate flow switches to verify that they make or break contact.
6. Pressure:
  - 1) Calibrate pressure transmitters at 0, 50, and 100 percent of span.
  - 2) Calibrate pressure switches to make or break contacts, with adjustable differential set at minimum.
7. Temperature:
  - 1) Calibrate resistance temperature transmitters at 0, 50, and 100 percent of span using a precision-resistance source.
  - 2) Calibrate temperature switches to make or break contacts.
8. Stroke and adjust control valves and dampers without positioners, following the a. manufacturer's recommended procedure, so that valve or damper is 100 percent open and closed.
9. Stroke and adjust control valves and dampers with positioners, following manufacturer's recommended procedure, so that valve and damper is 0, 50, and 100 percent closed.
10. Provide diagnostic and test instruments for calibration and adjustment of system.

11. Provide written description of procedures and equipment for calibrating each type of instrument. Submit procedures review and approval before initiating startup procedures.
- B. Adjust initial temperature and humidity set points.
- C. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to three visits to Project during other than normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

**3.06 DEMONSTRATION**

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain HVAC instrumentation and controls. Refer to Section 01 7900 "Demonstration and Training."

**END OF SECTION 22 09 00**

**SECTION 22 11 16  
DOMESTIC WATER PIPING**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Copper tube and fittings.
  - 2. Ductile-iron pipe and fittings.
  - 3. Piping joining materials.
  - 4. Dielectric fittings.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 331415 "Site Water Distribution Piping" for water-service piping outside the building from source to the point where water-service piping enters the building.

**1.02 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For transition fittings and dielectric fittings.

**1.03 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. System purging and disinfecting activities report.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

**1.04 PIPING MATERIALS**

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.
- B. Potable-water piping and components shall comply with NSF 14, NSF 61, and NSF 372. Include marking "NSF-pw" on piping.

**1.05 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS**

- A. Drawn-Temper Copper Tube: ASTM B88, Type L (ASTM B88M, Type B).
- B. Cast-Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.18, pressure fittings.
- C. Wrought-Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.22, pressure fittings.
- D. Bronze Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, with solder-joint ends.
- E. Cast Copper Unions: MSS SP-123, cast-copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body, with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces and solder-joint or threaded ends.
- F. Wrought Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.

**1.06 DUCTILE-IRON PIPE AND FITTINGS**

- A. Mechanical-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe:
  - 1. AWWA C151/A21.51, with mechanical-joint bell and plain spigot end unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
  - 2. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111/A21.11, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.
- B. , Mechanical-Joint Fittings:
  - 1. AWWA C110/A21.10, ductile or gray iron.
  - 2. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111/A21.11, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.
- C. Compact-Pattern, Mechanical-Joint Fittings:
  - 1. AWWA C153/A21.53, ductile iron.
  - 2. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111/A21.11, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.

**1.07 PIPING JOINING MATERIALS**

- A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials:

1. AWWA C110/A21.10, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick or ASME B16.21, nonmetallic and asbestos free unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Full-face or ring type unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Metal, Pipe-Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B32, lead-free alloys.
- D. Flux: ASTM B813, water flushable.

### 1.08 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
- B. Dielectric Unions:
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Jomar Valve; .
    - b. WATTS; LF3000 Series.
    - c. Zurn Industries, LLC; Model DUC.
  2. Standard: ASSE 1079.
  3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa) minimum at 180 deg F (82 deg C) >.
  4. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

## PART 2 EXECUTION

### 2.01 PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. Transition and special fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating may be used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Flanges and unions may be used for aboveground piping joints unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Under-building-slab, domestic water, building-service piping, NPS 4 to NPS 8 (DN 100 to DN 200) and larger, shall be one of the following:
1. Plain-end, ductile-iron pipe; grooved-joint, ductile-iron-pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.
  2. Plain-end, ductile-iron pipe; grooved-joint, ductile-iron-pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.
- D. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller shall be one of the following:
1. Hard copper tube, ASTM B88, Type L (ASTM B88M, Type B); cast or wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and soldered joints.
  2. Hard copper tube, ASTM B88, Type L (ASTM B88M, Type B) copper pressure-seal-joint fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
- E. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100) shall be one of the following:
1. Hard copper tube, ASTM B88, Type L (ASTM B88M, Type B; cast or wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and soldered joints.
  2. Hard copper tube, ASTM B88, Type L (ASTM B88M, Type B; copper pressure-seal-joint fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
  3. Hard copper tube, ASTM B88, Type L (ASTM B88M, Type B) grooved-joint, copper-tube appurtenances; and grooved joints.
- F. Aboveground, combined domestic water-service and fire-service-main piping, NPS 6 (DN 150), shall be one of the following:
1. Plain-end, ductile-iron pipe; grooved-joint, ductile-iron-pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.

### 2.02 EARTHWORK

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

### 2.03 INSTALLATION OF PIPING

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of domestic water piping. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.
- B. Install copper tubing under building slab according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- C. Install ductile-iron piping under building slab with restrained joints according to AWWA C600 and AWWA M41.
- D. Install valves according to the following:
  - 1. Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping."
  - 2. Section 220523.13 "Butterfly Valves for Plumbing Piping."
  - 3. Section 220523.14 "Check Valves for Plumbing Piping."
  - 4. Section 220523.15 "Gate Valves for Plumbing Piping."
- E. Install domestic water piping level without pitch and plumb.
- F. Rough-in domestic water piping for water-meter installation according to utility company's requirements.
- G. Install seismic restraints on piping. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices in Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- H. Install piping concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- I. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- J. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal, and coordinate with other services occupying that space.
- K. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- L. Install nipples, unions, special fittings, and valves with pressure ratings the same as or higher than the system pressure rating used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
- M. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- N. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- O. Install PEX tubing with loop at each change of direction of more than 90 degrees.
- P. Install unions in copper tubing at final connection to each piece of equipment, machine, and specialty.
- Q. Install pressure gauges on suction and discharge piping for each plumbing pump and packaged booster pump. Comply with requirements for pressure gauges in Section 220519 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."
- R. Install thermometers on inlet and outlet piping from each water heater. Comply with requirements for thermometers in Section 220519 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."
- S. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- T. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- U. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

### 2.04 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.

- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.
- C. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
  - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads.
  - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.
- D. Brazed Joints for Copper Tubing: Comply with CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," "Brazed Joints" chapter.
- E. Soldered Joints for Copper Tubing: Apply ASTM B813, water-flushable flux to end of tube. Join copper tube and fittings according to ASTM B828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- F. Pressure-Sealed Joints for Copper Tubing: Join copper tube and pressure-seal fittings with tools recommended by fitting manufacturer.
- G. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate asbestos-free, nonmetallic gasket material in size, type, and thickness suitable for domestic water service. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9.
- H. Joint Construction for Solvent-Cemented Plastic Piping: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
  - 1. Comply with ASTM F402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements. Apply primer.
- I. Joints for Dissimilar-Material Piping: Make joints using adapters compatible with materials of both piping systems.

## **2.05 INSTALLATION OF DIELECTRIC FITTINGS**

- A. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
- B. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Use dielectric couplings or nipples.

## **2.06 INSTALLATION OF HANGERS AND SUPPORTS**

- A. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices in Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Comply with requirements for hangers, supports, and anchor devices in Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- C. Install hangers for copper, ductile iron piping with maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters, to comply with MSS SP-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- D. Support horizontal piping within 12 inches (300 mm) of each fitting.
- E. Support vertical runs of copper piping to comply with MSS SP-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.

## **2.07 CONNECTIONS**

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. When installing piping adjacent to equipment and machines, allow space for service and maintenance.
- C. Connect domestic water piping to exterior water-service piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
- D. Connect domestic water piping to water-service piping with shutoff valve; extend and connect to the following:
  - 1. Domestic Water Booster Pumps: Cold-water suction and discharge piping.
  - 2. Water Heaters: Cold-water inlet and hot-water outlet piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than sizes of water heater connections.

3. Plumbing Fixtures: Cold- and hot-water-supply piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than that required by plumbing code.
4. Equipment: Cold- and hot-water-supply piping as indicated, but not smaller than equipment connections. Provide shutoff valve and union for each connection. Use flanges instead of unions for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.

## 2.08 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification materials and installation in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

## 2.09 ADJUSTING

- A. Perform the following adjustments before operation:
  1. Close drain valves, hydrants, and hose bibbs.
  2. Open shutoff valves to fully open position.
  3. Open throttling valves to proper setting.
  4. Adjust balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide adequate flow.
    - a. Manually adjust ball-type balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide hot-water flow in each branch.
    - b. Adjust calibrated balancing valves to flows indicated.
  5. Remove plugs used during testing of piping and for temporary sealing of piping during installation.
  6. Remove and clean strainer screens. Close drain valves and replace drain plugs.
  7. Remove filter cartridges from housings and verify that cartridges are as specified for application where used and are clean and ready for use.
  8. Check plumbing specialties and verify proper settings, adjustments, and operation.

## 2.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
  1. Piping Inspections:
    - a. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it has been inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
    - b. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least one day before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction:
      - 1) Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing in after roughing in and before setting fixtures.
      - 2) Final Inspection: Arrange for authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified in "Piping Tests" Subparagraph below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
    - c. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass tests or inspections, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
    - d. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
  2. Piping Tests:
    - a. Fill domestic water piping. Check components to determine that they are not air bound and that piping is full of water.
    - b. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit a separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
    - c. Leave new, altered, extended, or replaced domestic water piping uncovered and unconcealed until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
    - d. Cap and subject piping to static water pressure of 50 psig (345 kPa) above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow it to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.



- e. Repair leaks and defects with new materials, and retest piping or portion thereof until satisfactory results are obtained.
  - f. Prepare reports for tests and for corrective action required.
- B. Domestic water piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

#### **2.11 CLEANING**

- A. Clean and disinfect potable domestic water piping as follows:
- 1. Purge new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.
  - 2. Use purging and disinfecting procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction; if methods are not prescribed, use procedures described in either AWWA C651 or AWWA C652 or follow procedures described below:
    - a. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets.
    - b. Fill and isolate system according to either of the following:
      - 1) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 50 ppm (50 mg/L) of chlorine. Isolate with valves and allow to stand for 24 hours.
      - 2) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 200 ppm (200 mg/L) of chlorine. Isolate and allow to stand for three hours.
    - c. Flush system with clean, potable water until no chlorine is in water coming from system after the standing time.
    - d. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.
    - e. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Prepare and submit reports of purging and disinfecting activities. Include copies of water-sample approvals from authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Clean interior of domestic water piping system. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.

**END OF SECTION 22 11 16**

**SECTION 22 11 19  
DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SPECIALTIES**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Vacuum breakers.
  - 2. Backflow preventers.
  - 3. Balancing valves.
  - 4. Temperature-actuated, water mixing valves.
  - 5. Strainers for domestic water piping.
  - 6. Hose bibbs.
  - 7. Drain valves.
  - 8. Water-hammer arresters.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 220519 "Meters and Gauges for Plumbing Piping" for thermometers, pressure gauges, and flow meters in domestic water piping.
  - 2. Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping" for water meters.
  - 3. Section 223200 "Domestic Water Filtration Equipment" for water filters in domestic water piping.
  - 4. Section 224300 "Healthcare Plumbing Fixtures" for thermostatic mixing valves for sitz baths, thermostatic mixing-valve assemblies for hydrotherapy equipment, and outlet boxes for dialysis equipment.
  - 5. Section 224500 "Emergency Plumbing Fixtures" for water tempering equipment.
  - 6. Section 224716 "Pressure Water Coolers" for water filters for water coolers.
  - 7. Section 224723 "Remote Water Coolers" for water filters for water coolers.
  - 8. Section 230923.18 "Leak Detection Instruments" for leak detection devices related to HVAC applications.
  - 9. Section 331415 "Site Water Distribution Piping" for fire water-service backflow prevention devices.

**1.02 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For domestic water piping specialties.
  - 1. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

**1.03 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Test and inspection reports.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

**1.04 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Operation and maintenance data.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR PIPING SPECIALTIES**

- A. Domestic water piping specialties intended to convey or dispense water for human consumption are to comply with the SDWA, requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, and NSF 61 and NSF 372, or to be certified in compliance with NSF 61 and NSF 372 by an American National Standards Institute (ANSI)-accredited third-party certification body that the weighted average lead content at wetted surfaces is less than or equal to 0.25 percent.

**2.02 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Minimum Working Pressure for Domestic Water Piping Specialties: 35 psig (860 kPa) unless otherwise indicated.

### 2.03 VACUUM BREAKERS

- A. Pipe-Applied, Atmospheric-Type Vacuum Breakers
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Apollo Valves; a part of Aalberts Integrated Piping Systems;
    - b. FEBCO; A WATTS Brand;
    - c. WATTS; A Watts Water Technologies Company; LF Series.
  - 2. Standard: ASSE 1001.
  - 3. Size: NPS 1/4 to NPS 3 (DN 8 to DN 80), as required to match connected piping.
  - 4. Body: Bronze.
  - 5. Inlet and Outlet Connections: Threaded.
  - 6. Finish: Rough bronze.
- B. Hose-Connection Vacuum Breakers:
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. MIFAB, Inc; .
    - b. WATTS; A Watts Water Technologies Company; LF8 Series.
    - c. Woodford Manufacturing Company; .
  - 2. Standard: ASSE 1011.
  - 3. Body: Bronze, nonremovable, with manual drain.
  - 4. Outlet Connection: Garden-hose threaded complying with ASME B1.20.7.
  - 5. Finish: Chrome or nickel plated

### 2.04 BACKFLOW PREVENTERS

- A. Intermediate Atmospheric-Vent Backflow Preventers :
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Apollo Valves; a part of Aalberts Integrated Piping Systems.
    - b. WATTS; A Watts Water Technologies Company; .
  - 2. Standard: ASSE 1012.
  - 3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
  - 4. Size: NPS 1/2 (DN 15).
  - 5. Body: Bronze.
  - 6. End Connections: Union, solder joint.
  - 7. Finish: Rough bronze.
- B. Double-Check, Backflow-Prevention Assemblies:
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Apollo Valves; a part of Aalberts Integrated Piping Systems;
    - b. FEBCO; A WATTS Brand;
    - c. WATTS; A Watts Water Technologies Company;
  - 2. Standard: ASSE 1015.
  - 3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications unless otherwise indicated.
  - 4. Pressure Loss: 5 psig (35 kPa)] maximum, through middle third of flow range.
  - 5. Size: <4" and 6" NPS (DN)>.
  - 6. Design Flow Rate: TBD gpm (L/s)>.
  - 7. Selected Unit Flow Range Limits: TBD gpm (L/s)>.
  - 8. Pressure Loss at Design Flow Rate: 5 psig (kPa)> for sizes NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; 5 psig (kPa)> for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
  - 9. Body: ductile or cast iron with interior lining that complies with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved stainless steel for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
  - 10. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
  - 11. Configuration: Designed for horizontal, straight-through flow.
  - 12. Accessories:
    - a. Valves NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Ball type with threaded ends on inlet and outlet.

- b. Valves NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Outside-screw and yoke-gate type with flanged ends on inlet and outlet.

## 2.05 BALANCING VALVES

- A. Memory-Stop Balancing Valves:
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Apollo Valves; a part of Aalberts Integrated Piping Systems;.
    - b. Caleffi North America; Flo-Set™ 130 Series Static Fixed Orifice Balancing Valve
  2. Standard: MSS SP-110 for two-piece, copper-alloy ball valves.
  3. Pressure Rating: 400-psig (2760-kPa) minimum CWP.
  4. Size: NPS 2 (DN 50) or smaller.
  5. Body: Copper alloy.
  6. Port: Standard or full port.
  7. Ball: Chrome-plated brass or stainless steel.
  8. Seats and Seals: Replaceable.
  9. End Connections: Solder joint or threaded.
  10. Handle: Vinyl-covered steel with memory-setting device.

## 2.06 TEMPERATURE-ACTUATED, WATER MIXING VALVES

- A. Primary, Thermostatic, Water Mixing Valves:
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - a. POWERS; A WATTS Brand;
  2. Standard: ASSE 1017.
  3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa) minimum unless otherwise indicated.
  4. Type: [Exposed-mounted] [Cabinet-type], thermostatically controlled, water mixing valve.
  5. Material: Bronze body with corrosion-resistant interior components.
  6. Connections: Threaded union inlets and outlet.
  7. Accessories: Manual temperature control, check stops on hot- and cold-water supplies, and adjustable, temperature-control handle.
  8. Tempered-Water Setting: <120 deg F (deg C)>.
  9. Selected Valve Flow Rate at 68-psig (310-kPa) Pressure Drop: 2 gpm (L/s)>.
  10. Pressure Drop at Design Flow Rate: 10 psig (kPa)>.
  11. Valve Finish: bronze.
  12. Piping Finish: Copper.

## 2.07 STRAINERS FOR DOMESTIC WATER PIPING

- A. Y-Pattern Strainers :
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. WATTS; A Watts Water Technologies Company; LF777/LF777SI.
    - b. Zurn Industries, LLC; .
  2. Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa) minimum unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; cast iron[ with interior lining that complies with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved, epoxy coated and] for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
  4. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
  5. Screen: Stainless steel with round perforations unless otherwise indicated.
  6. Perforation Size:
    - a. Strainers NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: 0.020 inch (0.51 mm)
    - b. Strainers NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): 0.045 inch (1.14 mm).
  7. Drain: hose-end drain valve.

## 2.08 HOSE BIBBS

- A. Hose Bibbs:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
  - a. MIFAB, Inc; .
  - b. WATTS; A Watts Water Technologies Company; HB-1.
  - c. Woodford Manufacturing Company; .
2. Standard: ASME A112.18.1 for sediment faucets.
3. Body Material: Bronze.
4. Seat: Bronze, replaceable.
5. Supply Connections: NPS 1/2 or NPS 3/4 (DN 15 or DN 20) threaded or solder-joint inlet.
6. Outlet Connection: Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
7. Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa).
8. Vacuum Breaker: Integral nonremovable, drainable, hose-connection vacuum breaker complying with ASSE 1011.
9. Finish for Equipment Rooms: Rough bronze, or chrome or nickel plated.
10. Finish for Service Areas: Chrome or nickel plated.
11. Finish for Finished Rooms: Chrome or nickel plated.
12. Operation for Equipment Rooms: Wheel handles or operating key.
13. Operation for Service Areas: Wheel handle.
14. Operation for Finished Rooms: Operating key.
15. Include the operating key with each operating-key hose bibb.
16. Include integral wall flange with each chrome- or nickel-plated hose bibb.

**B. Nonfreeze Vacuum Breaker Wall Hydrants:**

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
  - a. WATTS; A Watts Water Technologies Company; Series LFFHB.
  - b. Woodford Manufacturing Company;
  - c. Zurn Industries, LLC;
2. Standard: ASSE 1019, Type A or Type B.
3. Type: Automatic draining with integral air-inlet valve.
4. Classification: Type B, for automatic draining with hose removed or with hose attached and nozzle closed.
5. Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa).
6. Operation: wheel handle.
7. Casing and Operating Rod: Of length required to match wall thickness. Include wall clamp.
8. Inlet: NPS 1/2 or NPS 3/4 (DN 15 or DN 20).
9. Outlet: Exposed with garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.

**2.09 DRAIN VALVES**

**A. Ball-Valve-Type, Hose-End Drain Valves:**

1. Standard: MSS SP-110 for standard-port, two-piece ball valves.
2. Pressure Rating: 400-psig (2760-kPa) minimum CWP.
3. Size: NPS 3/4 (DN 20).
4. Body: Copper alloy.
5. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
6. Seats and Seals: Replaceable.
7. Handle: Vinyl-covered steel.
8. Inlet: Threaded or solder joint.
9. Outlet: Threaded, short nipple with garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7 and cap with brass chain.

**2.10 WATER-HAMMER ARRESTERS**

**A. Water-Hammer Arresters :**

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
  - a. Precision Plumbing Products;
  - b. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.;
  - c. WATTS; A Watts Water Technologies Company; Series LF05 or Series LF15M2.

2. Standard: ASSE 1010 or PDI-WH 201.
3. Type: Diaphragm.
4. Size: ASSE 1010, Sizes AA and A through F, or PDI-WH 201, Sizes A through F.

### **PART 3 EXECUTION**

#### **3.01 INSTALLATION OF PIPING SPECIALTIES**

- A. Backflow Preventers: Install in each water supply to mechanical equipment and systems and to other equipment and water systems that may be sources of contamination. Comply with authorities having jurisdiction.
  1. Locate backflow preventers in same room as connected equipment or system.
  2. Install drain for backflow preventers with atmospheric-vent drain connection with air-gap fitting, fixed air-gap fitting, or equivalent positive pipe separation of at least two pipe diameters in drain piping and pipe-to-floor drain. Locate air-gap device attached to or under backflow preventer. Simple air breaks are unacceptable for this application.
  3. Do not install bypass piping around backflow preventers.
- B. Water Regulators: Install with inlet and outlet shutoff valves and bypass with memory-stop balancing valve]. Install pressure gauges on inlet and outlet.
- C. Balancing Valves: Install in locations where they can easily be adjusted. Set at indicated design flow rates.
- D. Temperature-Actuated, Water Mixing Valves: Install with check stops or shutoff valves on inlets and with shutoff valve on outlet.
  1. Install cabinet-type units recessed in or surface mounted on wall as specified.
- E. Y-Pattern Strainers: For water, install on supply side of each control valve pump].
- F. Water-Hammer Arresters: Install in water piping in accordance with PDI-WH 201.
- G. Supply-Type, Trap-Seal Primer Device: Install with outlet piping pitched down toward drain trap a minimum of 1 percent, and connect to floor-drain body, trap, or inlet fitting. Adjust valve for proper flow.
- H. Drainage-Type, Trap-Seal Primer Device: Install as lavatory trap with outlet piping pitched down toward drain trap a minimum of 1 percent, and connect to floor-drain body, trap, or inlet fitting.

#### **3.02 PIPING CONNECTIONS**

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. When installing piping specialties adjacent to equipment and machines, allow space for service and maintenance.

#### **3.03 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS**

- A. Connect wiring in accordance with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- B. Ground equipment in accordance with Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- C. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, in accordance with NFPA 70 and NECA 1.

#### **3.04 CONTROL CONNECTIONS**

- A. Connect control wiring in accordance with Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."

#### **3.05 IDENTIFICATION**

- A. Plastic Labels for Equipment: Install engraved plastic-laminate equipment nameplate or sign on or near each of the following:
  1. Vacuum breakers.
  2. Backflow preventers.
  3. Balancing valves.

4. Temperature-actuated, water mixing valves.
5. Wall hydrants.

- B. Distinguish among multiple units, inform operator of operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, and warn of hazards and improper operations, in addition to identifying unit. Nameplates and signs are specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

### **3.06 ADJUSTING**

- A. Set field-adjustable pressure set points of water pressure-reducing valves.
- B. Set field-adjustable flow set points of balancing valves.
- C. Set field-adjustable temperature set points of temperature-actuated, water mixing valves.
- D. Adjust each double-check, backflow-prevention assembly and double-check, detector-assembly backflow preventer in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions, authorities having jurisdiction and the device's reference standard.

### **3.07 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative.
  1. Test each double-check, backflow-prevention assembly and double-check, detector-assembly backflow preventer according to authorities having jurisdiction and the device's reference standard.
  2. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
  3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm unit operation.
  4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- C. Domestic water piping specialties will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

**END OF SECTION 22 11 19**

**SECTION 22 13 16  
SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings.
  - 2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings.
  - 3. Specialty pipe fittings.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 221313 "Facility Sanitary Sewers" for sanitary sewerage piping and structures outside the building.
  - 2. Section 221329 "Sanitary Sewerage Pumps" for effluent and sewage pumps.

**1.02 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Coordination Drawings: Plans and elevations, or Building Information Model (BIM) drawn to scale, showing items described in this Section and coordinated with all building trades.
- B. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For waste and vent piping, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

**1.03 WARRANTY**

- A. Listed manufacturers to provide labeling and warranty of their respective products.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Components and installation are capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Soil, Waste, and Vent Piping: 10 ft. head of water (30 kPa head of water).
- B. Seismic Performance: Soil, waste, and vent piping and support and installation to withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined in accordance with ASCE/SEI 7. See Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment":
  - 1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."
  - 2. Component Importance Factor: 1.0.

**2.02 PIPING MATERIALS**

- A. Piping materials to bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.

**2.03 HUB-AND-SPIGOT, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS**

- A. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
  - 1. Charlotte Pipe and Foundry Company;
  - 2. Tyler Pipe; a part of McWane family of companies;
- B. Pipe and Fittings:
  - 1. Marked with CISPI collective trademark.
  - 2. ASTM A74, service cast iron.
- C. Gaskets: ASTM C564, rubber.
- D. Caulking Materials: ASTM B29, pure lead and oakum or hemp fiber.

**2.04 HUBLESS, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS**

- A. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:



1. Charlotte Pipe and Foundry Company;
2. Tyler Pipe; a part of McWane family of companies;
- B. Pipe and Fittings:
  1. Marked with CISPI collective trademark.
  2. ASTM A888 or CISPI 301.
- C. Single-Stack Aerator Fittings: ASME B16.45, hubless, cast-iron aerator and deaerator drainage fittings.
- D. CISPI, Hubless-Piping Couplings:
  1. Anasco-Husky
  2. Mission Rubber Co.
  3. Standards: ASTM C1277 and CISPI 310.
  4. Description: Stainless steel corrugated shield with stainless steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.
- E. Heavy-Duty, Hubless-Piping Couplings:
  1. Anasco-Husky
  2. Mission Rubber Co.
  3. Standards: ASTM C1277 and ASTM C1540.
  4. Description: Stainless steel shield with stainless steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.

### **PART 3 EXECUTION**

#### **3.01 EARTH MOVING**

- A. Comply with requirements for excavating, trenching, and backfilling specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."

#### **3.02 PIPING INSTALLATION**

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems.
  1. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations.
  2. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.
- B. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- E. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- F. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- I. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- J. Make changes in direction for soil and waste drainage and vent piping using appropriate branches, bends, and long-sweep bends.
  1. Sanitary tees and short-sweep 1/4 bends may be used on vertical stacks if change in direction of flow is from horizontal to vertical.
  2. Use long-turn, double Y-branch, and 1/8-bend fittings if two fixtures are installed back to back or side by side with common drain pipe.
    - a. Straight tees, elbows, and crosses may be used on vent lines.
  3. Do not change direction of flow more than 90 degrees.

4. Use proper size of standard increasers and reducers if pipes of different sizes are connected.
  - a. Reducing size of waste piping in direction of flow is prohibited.
- K. Lay buried building waste piping beginning at low point of each system.
  1. Install true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Place hub ends of piping upstream.
  2. Install required gaskets according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements.
  3. Maintain swab in piping and pull past each joint as completed.
- L. Install soil and waste and vent piping at the following minimum slopes unless otherwise indicated:
  1. Building Sanitary Waste: Two percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 3 (DN 80) and smaller; 1 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 4 (DN 100) and larger.
  2. Horizontal Sanitary Waste Piping: Two percent downward in direction of flow.
  3. Vent Piping: One percent down toward vertical fixture vent or toward vent stack.
- M. Install cast-iron soil piping in accordance with CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook," Chapter IV, "Installation of Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings."
- N. Plumbing Specialties:
  1. Install backwater valves in sanitary waster gravity-flow piping.
    - a. Comply with requirements for backwater valves specified in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
  2. Install cleanouts at grade and extend to where building sanitary drains connect to building sanitary sewers in sanitary waste gravity-flow piping.
    - a. Install cleanout fitting with closure plug inside the building in sanitary drainage force-main piping.
    - b. Comply with requirements for cleanouts specified in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
  3. Install drains in sanitary waste gravity-flow piping.
    - a. Comply with requirements for drains specified in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
- O. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
- P. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.
  1. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- Q. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs.
  1. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- R. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.
  1. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

### 3.03 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Hub-and-Spigot, Cast-Iron Soil Piping Gasketed Joints: Join in accordance with CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for compression joints.
- B. Hub-and-Spigot, Cast-Iron Soil Piping Caulked Joints: Join in accordance with CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for lead-and-oakum caulked joints.
- C. Joint Restraints and Sway Bracing:
  1. Provide joint restraints and sway bracing for storm drainage piping joints to comply with the following conditions:

- a. Provide axial restraint for pipe and fittings 5 inches (125 mm) and larger, upstream and downstream of all changes in direction, branches, and changes in diameter greater than two pipe sizes.
- b. Provide rigid sway bracing for pipe and fittings 4 inches (100 mm) larger, upstream and downstream of all changes in direction 45 degrees and greater.
- c. Provide rigid sway bracing for pipe and fittings 5 inches (125 mm) and larger, upstream and downstream of all changes in direction and branch openings.

### 3.04 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. General valve installation requirements for general-duty valve installation are specified in the following Sections:
  1. Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping."
  2. Section 220523.13 "Butterfly Valves for Plumbing Piping."
  3. Section 220523.14 "Check Valves for Plumbing Piping."
  4. Section 220523.15 "Gate Valves for Plumbing Piping."
- B. Shutoff Valves:
  1. Install full-port ball valve for piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller.
  2. Install gate valve for piping NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
- C. Backwater Valves: Install backwater valves in piping subject to backflow.
  1. Horizontal Piping: Horizontal backwater valves.
  2. Floor Drains: Drain outlet backwater valves unless drain has integral backwater valve.
  3. Install backwater valves in accessible locations.
  4. Comply with requirements for backwater valve specified in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."

### 3.05 INSTALLATION OF HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Comply with requirements for pipe hanger and support devices and installation specified in Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" and Section 220548.13 "Vibration Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment".
  1. Install carbon-steel pipe hangers for horizontal piping in noncorrosive environments.
  2. Install stainless steel pipe hangers for horizontal piping in corrosive environments.
  3. Install carbon-steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in noncorrosive environments.
  4. Install stainless steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in corrosive environments.
  5. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or Type 42 clamps.
  6. Install individual, straight, horizontal piping runs:
    - a. 100 Ft. (30 m) and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
    - b. Longer Than 100 Ft. (30 m): MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
    - c. Longer Than 100 Ft. (30 m) if Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
  7. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Ft. (30 m) or Longer: MSS Type 44 pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
  8. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52 spring hangers.
- C. Install hangers for cast-iron soil piping, with maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters, to comply with MSS SP-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- D. Support horizontal piping and tubing within 12 inches (300 mm) of each fitting, valve, and coupling.
- E. Support vertical runs of cast-iron soil piping to comply with MSS SP-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.

### 3.06 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

- B. Connect soil and waste piping to exterior sanitary sewerage piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
- C. Connect waste and vent piping to the following:
  - 1. Plumbing Fixtures: Connect waste piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
  - 2. Plumbing Fixtures and Equipment: Connect atmospheric vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 3. Plumbing Specialties: Connect waste and vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
  - 4. Install test tees (wall cleanouts) in conductors near floor and floor cleanouts with cover flush with floor.
  - 5. Install horizontal backwater valves in pit with pit cover flush with floor.
  - 6. Comply with requirements for backwater valves, cleanouts, and, drains specified in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
  - 7. Equipment: Connect waste piping as indicated.
    - a. Provide shutoff valve if indicated and union for each connection.
    - b. Use flanges instead of unions for connections NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
- D. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance of equipment.
- E. Make connections in accordance with the following unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
  - 2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.

### 3.07 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify exposed sanitary waste and vent piping.
- B. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

### 3.08 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in and before setting fixtures.
  - 2. Final Inspection: Arrange for final inspection by authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
- B. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass test or inspection, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
- C. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Test sanitary waste and vent piping in accordance with procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:
  - 1. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired.
    - a. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
  - 2. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced waste and vent piping until it has been tested and approved.
    - a. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
  - 3. Roughing-in Plumbing Test Procedure: Test waste and vent piping except outside leaders on completion of roughing-in.
    - a. Close openings in piping system and fill with water to point of overflow, but not less than 10 ft. head of water (30 kPa head of water).

- b. From 15 minutes before inspection starts to completion of inspection, water level must not drop.
- c. Inspect joints for leaks.
4. Finished Plumbing Test Procedure: After plumbing fixtures have been set and traps filled with water, test connections and prove they are gastight and watertight.
  - a. Plug vent-stack openings on roof and building drains where they leave building. Introduce air into piping system equal to pressure of 1 inch wg (250 Pa).
  - b. Use U-tube or manometer inserted in trap of water closet to measure this pressure.
  - c. Air pressure must remain constant without introducing additional air throughout period of inspection.
  - d. Inspect plumbing fixture connections for gas and water leaks.
5. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
6. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.

### **3.09 CLEANING AND PROTECTION**

- A. Clean interior of piping. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.
- B. Protect sanitary waste and vent piping during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt and debris and to prevent damage from traffic and construction work.
- C. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of day and when work stops.
- D. Repair damage to adjacent materials caused by waste and vent piping installation.

### **3.10 PIPING SCHEDULE**

- A. Flanges and unions may be used on aboveground pressure piping unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Aboveground, soil and waste piping NPS 4 (DN 100) and smaller are to be any of the following:
  1. Service Class cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
- C. Aboveground, soil and waste piping NPS 5 (DN 125) and larger
  1. Service cast iron, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
- D. Aboveground, vent piping NPS 4 (DN 100) and smaller to be any of the following:
  1. Service cast iron, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
- E. Underground, soil, waste, and vent piping NPS 4 (DN 100) and smaller are to be any of the following:
  1. Service cast-iron soil piping; gasketed, caulking materials; and caulked joints.

**END OF SECTION 22 13 16**

**SECTION 22 13 19.13  
SANITARY DRAINS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Floor drains.
  - 2. Floor sinks.

**1.02 DEFINITIONS**

- A. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene styrene.
- B. FRP: Fiberglass-reinforced plastic.
- C. HDPE: High-density polyethylene.

**1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 DRAIN ASSEMBLIES**

- A. Sanitary drains shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. Comply with NSF 14 for plastic sanitary piping specialty components.

**2.02 FLOOR DRAINS**

- A. Cast-Iron Floor Drains :
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Jay R. Smith Mfg Co; a division of Morris Group International;
    - b. Josam Company; Cast-Iron Floor Drain 30000-A.
    - c. MIFAB, Inc;
    - d. Zurn Industries, LLC;
  - 2. Standard: ASME A112.6.3.
  - 3. Pattern: Floor drain.
  - 4. Body Material: Gray iron.
  - 5. Seepage Flange: Required.
  - 6. Anchor Flange: Required.
  - 7. Clamping Device: Not required.
  - 8. Outlet: Bottom.
  - 9. Coating on Interior and Exposed Exterior Surfaces: Not required.
  - 10. Sediment Bucket: Not required.
  - 11. Top or Strainer Material: Bronze, Gray iron, Nickel bronze, or Stainless steel.
  - 12. Top of Body and Strainer Finish: Nickel bronze or Polished bronze
  - 13. Top Shape: Round or Square.
  - 14. Dimensions of Top or Strainer: 5" or 6" diam..
  - 15. Top Loading Classification: Medium Duty.
  - 16. Funnel: Not required.
  - 17. Inlet Fitting: Not required and trap-seal primer valve connection].
  - 18. Trap Material: Cast iron.
  - 19. Trap Pattern: Deep-seal P-trap and Standard P-trap.
  - 20. Trap Features: Cleanout and trap-seal primer valve drain connection

**2.03 FLOOR SINKS**

**PART 3 EXECUTION**

**3.01 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install floor drains at low points of surface areas to be drained. Set grates of drains flush with finished floor, unless otherwise indicated.

1. Position floor drains for easy access and maintenance.
  2. Set floor drains below elevation of surrounding finished floor to allow floor drainage.
  3. Set with grates depressed according to the following drainage area radii:
    - a. Radius, 30 Inches (750 mm) or Less: Equivalent to 1 percent slope, but not less than 1/4-inch (6.35-mm) total depression.
    - b. Radius, 30 to 60 Inches (750 to 1500 mm): Equivalent to 1 percent slope.
    - c. Radius, 60 Inches (1500 mm) or Larger: Equivalent to 1 percent slope, but not greater than 1-inch (25-mm) total depression.
  4. Install floor-drain flashing collar or flange, so no leakage occurs between drain and adjoining flooring.
    - a. Maintain integrity of waterproof membranes where penetrated.
  5. Install individual traps for floor drains connected to sanitary building drain, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Install trench drains at low points of surface areas to be drained.
1. Set grates of drains flush with finished surface, unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Install on support devices, so that top will be flush with adjacent surface.
- C. Install open drain fittings with top of hub 2 inches (51 mm) above floor.

### **3.02 CONNECTIONS**

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping" for piping installation requirements. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Comply with requirements in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties" for backwater valves, air admittance devices and miscellaneous sanitary drainage piping specialties.
- C. Comply with requirements in Section 221323 "Sanitary Waste Interceptors" for grease interceptors, grease-removal devices, oil interceptors, sand interceptors, and solid interceptors.
- D. Install piping adjacent to equipment to allow service and maintenance.
- E. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- F. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

### **3.03 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING**

- A. Distinguish among multiple units, inform operator of operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, and warn of hazards and improper operations, in addition to identifying unit. Nameplates and signs are specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

### **3.04 PROTECTION**

- A. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt or debris and to prevent damage from traffic or construction work.
- B. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.

**END OF SECTION 22 13 19.13**

**SECTION 22 14 29  
SUMP PUMPS**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Submersible sump pumps.

**1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
  - 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - 3. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.
  - 4. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

**1.04 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For pumps and controls, to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

**1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Retain shipping flange protective covers and protective coatings during storage.
- B. Protect bearings and couplings against damage.
- C. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for handling.

**PART 1 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 778 for motor-operated water pumps.

**2.02 SUBMERSIBLE SUMP PUMPS**

- A. Submersible, Fixed-Position, Single-Seal Sump Pumps :
  - 1. Metropolitan Industries
  - 2. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested sump-pump unit.
  - 3. Pump Type: Submersible, end-suction, single-stage, close-coupled, overhung-impeller, centrifugal sump pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3.
  - 4. Pump Casing: Cast iron, with strainer inlet, legs that elevate pump to permit flow into impeller, and vertical discharge for piping connection.
  - 5. Impeller: Statically and dynamically balanced, ASTM A48/A48M, Class No. 25 A cast iron ASTM A532/A532M, abrasion-resistant cast iron and ASTM B584, cast bronze, semi-open design for clear wastewater handling, and keyed and secured to shaft.
  - 6. Pump and Motor Shaft: Stainless steel or steel, with factory-sealed, grease-lubricated ball bearings.
  - 7. Seal: Mechanical.



8. Motor: Hermetically sealed, capacitor-start type; with built-in overload protection; lifting eye or lug; and three-conductor, waterproof power cable of length required and with grounding plug and cable-sealing assembly for connection at pump.
  - a. Motor Housing Fluid: Air/Oil.
9. Controls:
  - a. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1/Type 4X.
  - b. Switch Type: Pedestal-mounted float switch with float rods and rod buttons.
10. Controls:
  - a. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1/Type 4X; wall mounted.
  - b. Switch Type: Mechanical-float/Mercury-float/Pressure type, in NEMA 250, Type 6 enclosures with mounting rod and electric cables.
  - c. Automatic Alternator: Start pumps on successive cycles and start multiple pumps if one cannot handle load.
  - d. High-Water Alarm: Rod-mounted, NEMA 250, Type 6 enclosure with mechanical-float, mercury-float, or pressure switch matching control and electric bell; 120 V ac, with transformer and contacts for remote alarm bell.
11. Control-Interface Features:
  - a. Remote Alarm Contacts: For remote alarm interface.
  - b. Building Automation System Interface: Auxiliary contacts in pump controls for interface to building automation system and capable of providing the following:
    - 1) On-off status of pump.
    - 2) Alarm status.
- B. Submersible, Fixed-Position, Double-Seal Sump Pumps SP-1:
  1. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested sump-pump unit.
  2. Pump Type: Submersible, end-suction, single-stage, close-coupled, overhung-impeller, centrifugal sump pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3.
  3. Pump Casing: Cast iron, with strainer inlet, legs that elevate pump to permit flow into impeller, and vertical discharge for piping connection.
  4. Impeller: Statically and dynamically balanced, ASTM A48/A48M, Class No. 25 A cast iron ASTM A532/A532M, abrasion-resistant cast iron and ASTM B584, cast bronze, semiopen > design for clear wastewater handling, and keyed and secured to shaft.
  5. Pump and Motor Shaft: Stainless steel or steel, with factory-sealed, grease-lubricated ball bearings.
  6. Seals: Mechanical.
  7. Moisture-Sensing Probe: Internal moisture sensor and moisture alarm.
  8. Motor: Hermetically sealed, capacitor-start type; with built-in overload protection; lifting eye or lug; and three-conductor, waterproof power cable of length required and with grounding plug and cable-sealing assembly for connection at pump.
    - a. Motor Housing Fluid: Air/Oil.
  9. Controls:
    - a. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1/Type 4X.
    - b. Switch Type: Pedestal-mounted float switch with float rods and rod buttons.
    - c. Automatic Alternator: Start pumps on successive cycles and start multiple pumps if one cannot handle load.
    - d. Float Guides: Pipe or other restraint for floats and rods in basins of depth greater than 60 inches (1500 mm).
    - e. High-Water Alarm: Cover-mounted, compression-probe alarm, with electric bell; 120 V ac, with transformer and contacts for remote alarm bell.
  10. Controls:
    - a. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1/Type 4X; wall mounted.
    - b. Switch Type: Mechanical-float/Mercury-float/Pressure type, in NEMA 250, Type 6 enclosures with mounting rod and electric cables.
    - c. High-Water Alarm: Rod-mounted, NEMA 250, Type 6 enclosure with mechanical-float, mercury-float, or pressure switch matching control and electric bell; 120 V ac, with transformer and contacts for remote alarm bell.

11. Control-Interface Features:
  - a. Remote Alarm Contacts: For remote alarm interface.
  - b. Building Automation System Interface: Auxiliary contacts in pump controls for interface to building automation system and capable of providing the following:
    - 1) On-off status of pump.
    - 2) Alarm status.

### **2.03 SUMP-PUMP CAPACITIES AND CHARACTERISTICS**

- A. Unit Capacity: 50 gpm (L/min.).
- B. Number of Pumps: One.
- C. Each Pump:
  1. Capacity: 50 gpm (L/min.).
  2. Total Dynamic Head: 20 feet (kPa).
  3. Speed: 1800/3500.
  4. Discharge Size: 2 NPS (DN).
  5. Electrical Characteristics:
    - a. Motor Horsepower: TBD hp.
    - b. Volts: 120/208 V ac.
    - c. Phases: Single.
    - d. Hertz: 60.
- D. Unit Electrical Characteristics:
  1. Full-Load Amperes: TBD A.
  2. Minimum Circuit Ampacity: TBD A.
  3. Maximum Overcurrent Protection: TBD A.

### **2.04 SUMP-PUMP BASINS AND BASIN COVERS**

- A. Basins: Factory-fabricated, watertight, cylindrical, basin sump with top flange and sidewall openings for pipe connections.
  1. Material: Cast iron/Fiberglass/Polyethylene.
  2. Reinforcement: Mounting plates for pumps, fittings, and accessories.
  3. Anchor Flange: Same material as or compatible with basin sump, cast in or attached to sump, in location and of size required to anchor basin in concrete slab.
- B. Basin Covers: Fabricate metal cover with openings having gaskets, seals, and bushings; for access to pumps, pump shafts, control rods, discharge piping, vent connections, and power cables.
  1. Reinforcement: Steel or cast iron, capable of supporting foot traffic for basins installed in foot-traffic areas.

### **2.05 MOTORS**

- A. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 220513 "Common Motor Requirements for Plumbing Equipment."
  1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
- B. Motors for submersible pumps shall be hermetically sealed.

## **PART 2 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EARTHWORK**

- A. Excavation and filling are specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."

### **3.02 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine roughing-in for plumbing piping to verify actual locations of storm drainage piping connections before sump pump installation.

**3.03 INSTALLATION**

- A. Pump Installation Standards: Comply with HI 1.4 for installation of sump pumps.

**3.04 CONNECTIONS**

- A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Section 221413 "Facility Storm Drainage Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance.

**3.05 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test, inspect, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform the following tests and inspections:
  - 1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection.
  - 2. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
  - 3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
  - 4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- C. Pumps and controls will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

**3.06 STARTUP SERVICE**

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
  - 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.

**3.07 ADJUSTING**

- A. Adjust pumps to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Adjust control set points.

**3.08 DEMONSTRATION**

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain controls and pumps.

**END OF SECTION 22 14 29**

**SECTION 23 05 13  
COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes general requirements for single-phase and polyphase, general-purpose, horizontal, small and medium, squirrel-cage induction motors for use on alternating-current power systems up to 600 V and installed at equipment manufacturer's factory or shipped separately by equipment manufacturer for field installation.

**1.03 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:
  - 1. Motor controllers.
  - 2. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
  - 3. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
  - 4. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 GENERAL MOTOR REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Comply with NEMA MG 1 unless otherwise indicated.

**2.02 MOTOR CHARACTERISTICS**

- A. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 40 deg C and at altitude of 3300 feet (1000 m) above sea level.
- B. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.

**2.03 POLYPHASE MOTORS**

- A. Description: NEMA MG 1, Design B, medium induction motor.
- B. Efficiency: Premium efficient, as defined in NEMA MG 1.
- C. Service Factor: 1.15.
- D. Multispeed Motors: Variable torque.
  - 1. For motors with 2:1 speed ratio, consequent pole, single winding.
  - 2. For motors with other than 2:1 speed ratio, separate winding for each speed.
- E. Multispeed Motors: Separate winding for each speed.
- F. Rotor: Random-wound, squirrel cage.
- G. Bearings: Regreasable, shielded, antifriction ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- H. Temperature Rise: Match insulation rating.
- I. Insulation: Class F.
- J. Code Letter Designation:
  - 1. Motors Smaller Than 15 HP: Manufacturer's standard starting characteristic.

**2.04 ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR POLYPHASE MOTORS**

- A. Motors Used with Reduced-Voltage and Multispeed Controllers: Match wiring connection requirements for controller with required motor leads. Provide terminals in motor terminal box, suited to control method.

- B. Motors Used with Variable-Frequency Controllers: Ratings, characteristics, and features coordinated with and approved by controller manufacturer.
  - 1. Windings: Copper magnet wire with moisture-resistant insulation varnish, designed and tested to resist transient spikes, high frequencies, and short time rise pulses produced by pulse-width-modulated inverters.
  - 2. Premium-Efficient Motors: Class B temperature rise; Class F insulation.
  - 3. Inverter-Duty Motors: Class F temperature rise; Class H insulation.
  - 4. Thermal Protection: Comply with NEMA MG 1 requirements for thermally protected motors.
- C. Severe-Duty Motors: Comply with IEEE 841, with 1.15 minimum service factor.

## **2.05 SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS**

- A. Motors larger than 1/20 hp shall be one of the following, to suit starting torque and requirements of specific motor application:
  - 1. Permanent-split capacitor.
  - 2. Split phase.
  - 3. Capacitor start, inductor run.
  - 4. Capacitor start, capacitor run.
- B. Multispeed Motors: Variable-torque, permanent-split-capacitor type.
- C. Bearings: Prelubricated, antifriction ball bearings or sleeve bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- D. Motors 1/20 HP and Smaller: Shaded-pole type.
- E. Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor insulation. Thermal-protection device shall automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal range.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION (NOT APPLICABLE)**

**END OF SECTION 23 05 13**

**SECTION 23 05 18**  
**ESCUTCHEONS FOR HVAC PIPING**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Escutcheons.
  - 2. Floor plates.

**1.03 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Existing Piping to Remain: Existing piping that is not to be removed and that is not otherwise indicated to be removed, removed and salvaged, or removed and reinstalled.

**1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 ESCUTCHEONS**

- A. One-Piece, Steel Type: With [polished, chrome-plated] [polished brass] finish and setscrew fastener.
- B. One-Piece, Stainless-Steel Type: With polished stainless-steel finish.
- C. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and setscrew fastener.
- D. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped steel with polished, chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- E. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- F. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish; concealed and exposed-rivet hinge; and spring-clip fasteners.

**2.02 FLOOR PLATES**

- A. Split Floor Plates: Steel with concealed hinge.

**PART 3 EXECUTION**

**3.01 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.
- B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
  - 1. Escutcheons for New Piping and Relocated Existing Piping:
    - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep pattern.
    - b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece steel or split-plate steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - c. Insulated Piping: One-piece steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - d. Insulated Piping: One-piece stainless steel with polished stainless-steel finish.
    - e. Insulated Piping: One-piece cast brass with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - f. Insulated Piping: One-piece stamped steel or split-plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - g. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - h. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece stainless steel with polished stainless-steel finish.

- i. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece cast brass with polished, chrome-plated finish.
  - j. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece stamped steel or split-plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
  - k. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
  - l. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece stainless steel with polished stainless-steel finish.
  - m. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece cast brass with polished, chrome-plated finish.
  - n. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece stamped steel or split-plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
  - o. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
  - p. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece cast brass with polished, chrome-plated finish.
  - q. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece stamped steel or split-plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
  - r. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
  - s. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece cast brass with polished, chrome-plated finish.
  - t. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece stamped steel or split-plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
2. Escutcheons for Existing Piping to Remain:
- a. Chrome-Plated Piping: Split-plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
  - b. Insulated Piping: Split-plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
  - c. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
  - d. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
  - e. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: Split-plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
  - f. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: Split-plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
- C. Install floor plates for piping penetrations of equipment-room floors.
- D. Install floor plates with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
1. New Piping and Relocated Existing Piping: Split floor plate.
  2. Existing Piping to Remain: Split floor plate.

### 3.02 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Using new materials, replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates.

**END OF SECTION 23 05 18**

**SECTION 23 05 29  
HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
  2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
  3. Fiberglass pipe hangers.
  4. Metal framing systems.
  5. Fiberglass strut systems.
  6. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
  7. Fastener systems.
  8. Pipe stands.
  9. Equipment stands.
  10. Equipment supports.
- B. Related Requirements:
1. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for structural-steel shapes and plates for trapeze hangers for pipe and equipment supports.
  2. Section 230516 "Expansion Fittings and Loops for HVAC Piping" for pipe guides and anchors.
  3. Section 233113 "Metal Ducts" for duct hangers and supports.

**1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer. Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following; include Product Data for components:
1. Trapeze pipe hangers.
  2. Metal framing systems.
  3. Fiberglass strut systems.
  4. Pipe stands.
  5. Equipment supports.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For trapeze hangers indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
1. Detail fabrication and assembly of trapeze hangers.
  2. Include design calculations for designing trapeze hangers.

**1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Welding certificates.

**1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Structural-Steel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section IX.



## **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.
- B. Structural Performance: Hangers and supports for HVAC piping and equipment shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7.
  - 1. Design supports for multiple pipes, including pipe stands, capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.
  - 2. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.

### **2.02 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS**

- A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:
  - 1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
  - 2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized, hot-dip galvanized, or electro-galvanized.
  - 3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coated, or epoxy powder-coated.
  - 4. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
  - 5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
- B. Stainless Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:
  - 1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
  - 2. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
  - 3. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of stainless steel.
- C. Copper Pipe and Tube Hangers:
  - 1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, copper-plated steel, factory-fabricated components.
  - 2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of stainless steel.

### **2.03 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS**

- A. Description: MSS SP-58, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made from structural carbon-steel shapes with MSS SP-58 carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

### **2.04 FIBERGLASS PIPE HANGERS**

- A. Clevis-Type, Fiberglass Pipe Hangers:
  - 1. Description: Similar to MSS SP-58, Type 1, factory-fabricated steel pipe hanger except hanger is made of fiberglass or fiberglass-reinforced resin.
  - 2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, washer, and nuts made of polyurethane or stainless steel.
  - 3. Flammability: ASTM D635, ASTM E84, and UL 94.
- B. Strap-Type, Fiberglass Pipe Hangers:
  - 1. Description: Similar to MSS SP-58, Type 9 or Type 10, steel pipe hanger except hanger is made of fiberglass-reinforced resin.
    - a. Flammability: ASTM D635, ASTM E84, and UL 94.
  - 2. Hanger Rod and Fittings: Continuous-thread rod, washer, and nuts made of stainless steel.

### **2.05 PLASTIC PIPE HANGERS**

- A. Description: Similar to MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated steel pipe hanger except hanger is made of plastic.
- B. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of galvanized steel.

- C. Flammability: ASTM D635, ASTM E84, and UL 94.

## 2.06 METAL FRAMING SYSTEMS

### A. MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:

1. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated, pipe-support assembly made of steel channels, accessories, fittings, and other components for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
2. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4 factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
3. Channels: Continuous slotted carbon-steel channel with inturned lips.
4. Channel Width: Selected for applicable load criteria.
5. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
6. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of galvanized steel.
7. Metallic Coating: No coating

### B. Non-MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:

1. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated, pipe-support assembly made of steel channels, accessories, fittings, and other components for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
2. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4 factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
3. Channels: Continuous slotted carbon-steel channel with inturned lips.
4. Channel Width: Select for applicable load criteria.
5. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
6. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of galvanized steel.
7. Metallic Coating: No coating.

## 2.07 FASTENER SYSTEMS

- A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
- B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type anchors for use in hardened portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
1. Indoor Applications: Zinc-coated or stainless steel.
  2. Outdoor Applications: Stainless steel.

## 2.08 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural carbon-steel shapes.

## 2.09 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum: ASTM B221 (ASTM B221M).
- B. Carbon Steel: ASTM A1011/A1011M.
- C. Structural Steel: ASTM A36/A36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; galvanized.
- D. Stainless Steel: ASTM A240/A240M.
- E. Threaded Rods: Continuously threaded. Zinc-plated or galvanized steel for indoor applications and stainless steel for outdoor applications. Mating nuts and washers of similar materials as rods.
- F. Grout: ASTM C1107/C1107M, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
  2. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 APPLICATION**

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping materials and installation for penetrations through fire-rated walls, ceilings, and assemblies.
- B. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus 200 lb (90 kg).

### **3.02 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION**

- A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-58. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from the building structure.
- B. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-58. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.
  - 1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
  - 2. Field fabricate from ASTM A36/A36M, carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- C. Metal Framing System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping, and support together on field-assembled strut systems.
- D. Thermal-Hanger Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.
- E. Fastener System Installation:
  - 1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches (100 mm) thick in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual.
  - 2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
- G. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.
- H. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- I. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.
- J. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.
- K. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- L. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
- M. Insulated Piping:
  - 1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
    - a. Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
    - b. Piping Operating below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
    - c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.

2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
  - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 (DN 100) and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.
  - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 (DN 100) and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
  - a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2 (DN 8 to DN 90): 12 inches (305 mm) long and 0.048 inch (1.22 mm) thick.
  - b. NPS 4 (DN 100): 12 inches (305 mm) long and 0.06 inch (1.52 mm) thick.
  - c. NPS 5 and NPS 6 (DN 125 and DN 150): 18 inches (457 mm) long and 0.06 inch (1.52 mm) thick.
5. Thermal-Hanger Shields: Install with insulation same thickness as piping insulation.

### **3.03 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS**

- A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.
- B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make bearing surface smooth.
- C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

### **3.04 METAL FABRICATIONS**

- A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.
- B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:
  1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  3. Remove welding flux immediately.
  4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

### **3.05 ADJUSTING**

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
- B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches (40 mm).

### **3.06 PAINTING**

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
  1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils (0.05 mm).
- B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A780/A780M.

### **3.07 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE**

- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.

- B. Comply with MSS SP-58 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.
- D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
- E. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports and metal framing systems and attachments for general service applications.
- F. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and copper or stainless steel attachments for copper piping and tubing.
- G. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.
- H. Use thermal-hanger shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.
- I. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  - 1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30 (DN 15 to DN 750).
  - 2. Yoke-Type Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 2): For suspension of up to 1050 deg F (566 deg C), pipes NPS 4 to NPS 24 (DN 100 to DN 600), requiring up to 4 inches (100 mm) of insulation.
  - 3. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel, Double-Bolt Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 3): For suspension of pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 36 (DN 20 to DN 900), requiring clamp flexibility and up to 4 inches (100 mm) of insulation.
  - 4. Steel Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 4): For suspension of cold and hot pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 24 (DN 15 to DN 600) if little or no insulation is required.
  - 5. Pipe Hangers (MSS Type 5): For suspension of pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 15 to DN 100), to allow off-center closure for hanger installation before pipe erection.
  - 6. Adjustable, Swivel Split- or Solid-Ring Hangers (MSS Type 6): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 8 (DN 20 to DN 200).
  - 7. Adjustable, Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8 (DN 15 to DN 200).
  - 8. Adjustable Band Hangers (MSS Type 9): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8 (DN 15 to DN 200).
  - 9. Adjustable, Swivel-Ring Band Hangers (MSS Type 10): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8 (DN 15 to DN 200).
  - 10. Split Pipe Ring with or without Turnbuckle Hangers (MSS Type 11): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 8 (DN 10 to DN 200).
  - 11. Extension Hinged or Two-Bolt Split Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 12): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 3 (DN 10 to DN 80).
  - 12. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30 (DN 15 to DN 750).
  - 13. Clips (MSS Type 26): For support of insulated pipes not subject to expansion or contraction.
  - 14. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36 (DN 100 to DN 900), with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate.
  - 15. Pipe Stanchion Saddles (MSS Type 37): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36 (DN 100 to DN 900), with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate, and with U-bolt to retain pipe.
  - 16. Adjustable Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 38): For stanchion-type support for pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 36 (DN 65 to DN 900) if vertical adjustment is required, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.
  - 17. Single-Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes NPS 1 to NPS 30 (DN 25 to DN 750), from two rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction

- might occur.
18. Adjustable Roller Hangers (MSS Type 43): For suspension of pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 24 (DN 65 to DN 600), from single rod if horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
  19. Complete Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 44): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 42 (DN 50 to DN 1050) if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur but vertical adjustment is unnecessary.
  20. Pipe Roll and Plate Units (MSS Type 45): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 24 (DN 50 to DN 600) if small horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur and vertical adjustment is unnecessary.
  21. Adjustable Pipe Roll and Base Units (MSS Type 46): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 30 (DN 50 to DN 750) if vertical and lateral adjustment during installation might be required in addition to expansion and contraction.
- J. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches (150 mm) for heavy loads.
  2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F (49 to 232 deg C) piping installations.
  3. Swivel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 15): For use with MSS Type 11, split pipe rings.
  4. Malleable-Iron Sockets (MSS Type 16): For attaching hanger rods to various types of building attachments.
  5. Steel Weldless Eye Nuts (MSS Type 17): For 120 to 450 deg F (49 to 232 deg C) piping installations.
- K. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
  2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joint construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.
  3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
  4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
  5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
  6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
  7. Top-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 25): For top of beams if hanger rod is required tangent to flange edge.
  8. Side-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 27): For bottom of steel I-beams.
  9. Steel-Beam Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 28): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads.
  10. Linked-Steel Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 29): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads, with link extensions.
  11. Malleable-Beam Clamps with Extension Pieces (MSS Type 30): For attaching to structural steel.
  12. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:
    - a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb (340 kg).
    - b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb (680 kg).
    - c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb (1360 kg).
  13. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
  14. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
  15. Horizontal Travelers (MSS Type 58): For supporting piping systems subject to linear horizontal movement where headroom is limited.

- L. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  - 1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
  - 2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
  - 3. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.
- M. Spring Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  - 1. Restraint-Control Devices (MSS Type 47): Where indicated to control piping movement.
  - 2. Spring Cushions (MSS Type 48): For light loads if vertical movement does not exceed 1-1/4 inches (32 mm).
  - 3. Spring-Cushion Roll Hangers (MSS Type 49): For equipping Type 41, roll hanger with springs.
  - 4. Spring Sway Braces (MSS Type 50): To retard sway, shock, vibration, or thermal expansion in piping systems.
  - 5. Variable-Spring Hangers (MSS Type 51): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from hanger.
  - 6. Variable-Spring Base Supports (MSS Type 52): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from base support.
  - 7. Variable-Spring Trapeze Hangers (MSS Type 53): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from trapeze support.
  - 8. Constant Supports: For critical piping stress and if necessary to avoid transfer of stress from one support to another support, critical terminal, or connected equipment. Include auxiliary stops for erection, hydrostatic test, and load-adjustment capability. These supports include the following types:
    - a. Horizontal (MSS Type 54): Mounted horizontally.
    - b. Vertical (MSS Type 55): Mounted vertically.
    - c. Trapeze (MSS Type 56): Two vertical-type supports and one trapeze member.
- N. Comply with MSS SP-58 for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- O. Comply with MFMA-103 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- P. Use powder-actuated fasteners or mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.

**END OF SECTION 23 05 29**

**SECTION 23 05 53**  
**IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Equipment labels.
  - 2. Duct labels.
  - 3. Stencils.

**1.02 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples: For color, letter style, and graphic representation required for each identification material and device.
- C. Equipment-Label Schedule: Include a listing of all equipment to be labeled with the proposed content for each label.
- D. Valve-numbering scheme.
- E. Valve Schedules: Provide for each piping system. Include in operation and maintenance manuals.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 EQUIPMENT LABELS**

- A. Metal Labels for Equipment:
  - 1. Material and Thickness: Brass, 0.032-inch (0.8-mm) minimum thickness, with predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
  - 2. Letter and Background Color: As indicated for specific application under Part 3.
  - 3. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch (64 by 19 mm).
  - 4. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches (600 mm), 1/2 inch (13 mm) for viewing distances of up to 72 inches (1830 mm), and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
  - 5. Fasteners: Stainless steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
  - 6. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- B. Plastic Labels for Equipment:
  - 1. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick, with predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
  - 2. Letter and Background Color: As indicated for specific application under Part 3.
  - 3. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures of up to 160 deg F (71 deg C).
  - 4. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch (64 by 19 mm).
  - 5. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches (600 mm), 1/2 inch (13 mm) for viewing distances of up to 72 inches (1830 mm), and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
  - 6. Fasteners: Stainless steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
  - 7. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- C. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.



## **2.02 DUCT LABELS**

- A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- B. Letter and Background Color: As indicated for specific application under Part 3.
- C. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F (71 deg C).
- D. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch (64 by 19 mm).
- E. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches (600 mm), 1/2 inch (13 mm) for viewing distances of up to 72 inches (1830 mm), and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
- F. Fasteners: Stainless steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
- G. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- H. Duct Label Contents: Include identification of duct service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings. Also include the following:
  - 1. Duct size.
  - 2. Flow-Direction Arrows: Include flow-direction arrows on main distribution ducts. Arrows may be either integral with label or may be applied separately.
  - 3. Lettering Size: Size letters in accordance with ASME A13.1 for piping.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 PREPARATION**

- A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants, as well as dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and other substances that could impair bond of identification devices.

### **3.02 INSTALLATION, GENERAL REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.
- C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.
- D. Locate identifying devices so that they are readily visible from the point of normal approach.

### **3.03 INSTALLATION OF EQUIPMENT LABELS, WARNING SIGNS, AND LABELS**

- A. Permanently fasten labels on each item of mechanical equipment.
- B. Sign and Label Colors:
  - 1. White letters on an ANSI Z535.1 safety-blue background.
- C. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.
- D. Arc-Flash Warning Signs: Provide arc-flash warning signs on electrical disconnects and other equipment where arc-flash hazard exists, as indicated on Drawings, and in accordance with requirements of OSHA and NFPA 70E.

### **3.04 INSTALLATION OF WARNING TAPE**

- A. Warning Tape Color and Pattern: Yellow background with black diagonal stripes.
- B. Install warning tape on pipes and ducts, with cross-designated walkways providing less than 6 ft. (2 m) of clearance.
- C. Locate tape so as to be readily visible from the point of normal approach.

### **3.05 INSTALLATION OF PIPE LABELS**

- A. Install pipe labels showing service and flow direction with permanent adhesive on pipes.

- B. Stenciled Pipe Label Option: Stenciled labels showing service and flow direction may be provided instead of manufactured pipe labels, at Installer's option. Install stenciled pipe labels, complying with ASME A13.1, with painted, color-coded bands or rectangles on each piping system.
  - 1. Identification Paint: Use for contrasting background.
  - 2. Stencil Paint: Use for pipe marking.
- C. Pipe-Label Locations: Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:
  - 1. Within 3 ft. (1 m) of each valve and control device.
  - 2. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
  - 3. Within 3 ft. (1 m) of equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
  - 4. Spaced at maximum intervals of 25 ft. (8 m) along each run. Reduce intervals to [10 ft. (3.0 m)] in areas of congested piping, ductwork, and equipment.
- D. Do not apply plastic pipe labels or plastic tapes directly to bare pipes conveying fluids at temperatures of 125 deg F (52 deg C) or higher. Where these pipes are to remain uninsulated, use a short section of insulation or use stenciled labels.
- E. Flow-Direction Arrows: Use arrows to indicate direction of flow in pipes, including pipes where flow is allowed in both directions.

### **3.06 INSTALLATION OF DUCT LABELS**

- A. Install self-adhesive duct labels showing service and flow direction with permanent adhesive on air ducts.
  - 1. Provide labels in the following color codes:
    - a. For air supply ducts: White letters on blue background.
    - b. For air return ducts: White letters on blue background.
    - c. For exhaust-, outside-, relief-, return-, and mixed-air ducts: White letters on blue background.
- B. Locate label near each point where ducts enter into and exit from concealed spaces and at maximum intervals of 20 ft. (6 m) where exposed or are concealed by removable ceiling system.

**END OF SECTION 23 05 53**

This page intentionally left blank

**SECTION 23 05 93  
TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Air Systems:
    - a. Variable-air-volume systems.
    - b. Multizone systems.
  - 2. Testing, adjusting, and balancing of equipment.
  - 3. Testing, adjusting, and balancing of existing HVAC systems and equipment.
  - 4. Sound tests.
  - 5. Duct leakage tests verification.
  - 6. Pipe leakage tests verification.
  - 7. UFAD plenum leakage tests verification.
  - 8. HVAC-control system verification.

**1.03 DEFINITIONS**

- A. AABC: Associated Air Balance Council.
- B. NEBB: National Environmental Balancing Bureau.
- C. TAB: Testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- D. TABB: Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Bureau.
- E. TAB Specialist: An independent entity meeting qualifications to perform TAB work.
- F. TDH: Total dynamic head.
- G. UFAD: Underfloor air distribution.

**1.04 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS**

- A. TAB Conference: Conduct a TAB conference at Project site after approval of the TAB strategies and procedures plan, to develop a mutual understanding of the details. Provide a minimum of 14 days' advance notice of scheduled meeting time and location.
  - 1. Minimum Agenda Items:
    - a. The Contract Documents examination report.
    - b. The TAB plan.
    - c. Needs for coordination and cooperation of trades and subcontractors.
    - d. Proposed procedures for documentation and communication flow.

**1.05 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

**1.06 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Qualification Data: Within 30 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit documentation that the TAB specialist and this Project's TAB team members meet the qualifications specified in "Quality Assurance" Article.
- B. Contract Documents Examination Report: Within 30 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit the Contract Documents review report, as specified in Part 3.
- C. Strategies and Procedures Plan: Within 30 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit TAB strategies and step-by-step procedures, as specified in "Preparation" Article.
- D. System Readiness Checklists: Within 30 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit system readiness checklists, as specified in "Preparation" Article.

- E. Examination Report: Submit a summary report of the examination review required in "Examination" Article.
- F. Certified TAB reports.
- G. Sample report forms.
- H. Instrument calibration reports, to include the following:
  - 1. Instrument type and make.
  - 2. Serial number.
  - 3. Application.
  - 4. Dates of use.
  - 5. Dates of calibration.

### **1.07 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. TAB Specialists Qualifications, Certified by AABC:
  - 1. TAB Field Supervisor: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by AABC.
  - 2. TAB Technician: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by AABC.
- B. TAB Specialists Qualifications, Certified by NEBB or TABB:
  - 1. TAB Field Supervisor: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by NEBB or TABB.
  - 2. TAB Technician: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by NEBB or TABB.
- C. Instrumentation Type, Quantity, Accuracy, and Calibration: Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 111, Section 4, "Instrumentation."
- D. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6.7.2.3 - "System Balancing."
- E. Code and AHJ Compliance: TAB is required to comply with governing codes and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

### **1.08 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Full Owner Occupancy: Owner will occupy the site and existing building during entire TAB period. Cooperate with Owner during TAB operations to minimize conflicts with Owner's operations.
- B. Partial Owner Occupancy: Owner may occupy completed areas of building before Substantial Completion. Cooperate with Owner during TAB operations to minimize conflicts with Owner's operations.

## **PART 2 PRODUCTS (NOT APPLICABLE)**

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine the Contract Documents to become familiar with Project requirements and to discover conditions in systems designs that may preclude proper TAB of systems and equipment.
- B. Examine installed systems for balancing devices, such as test ports, gauge cocks, thermometer wells, flow-control devices, balancing valves and fittings, and manual volume dampers. Verify that locations of these balancing devices are applicable for intended purpose and are accessible.
- C. Examine the approved submittals for HVAC systems and equipment.
- D. Examine design data, including HVAC system descriptions, statements of design assumptions for environmental conditions and systems output, and statements of philosophies and assumptions about HVAC system and equipment controls.
- E. Examine ceiling plenums and underfloor air plenums used for HVAC to verify that they are properly separated from adjacent areas and sealed.
- F. Examine equipment performance data, including fan and pump curves.
  - 1. Relate performance data to Project conditions and requirements, including system effects that can create undesired or unpredicted conditions that cause reduced capacities in all or

- part of a system.
- 2. Calculate system-effect factors to reduce performance ratings of HVAC equipment when installed under conditions different from the conditions used to rate equipment performance. To calculate system effects for air systems, use tables and charts found in AMCA 201, "Fans and Systems," or in SMACNA's "HVAC Systems - Duct Design." Compare results with the design data and installed conditions.
- G. Examine system and equipment installations and verify that field quality-control testing, cleaning, and adjusting specified in individual Sections have been performed.
- H. Examine test reports specified in individual system and equipment Sections.
- I. Examine HVAC equipment and verify that bearings are greased, belts are aligned and tight, filters are clean, and equipment with functioning controls is ready for operation.
- J. Examine terminal units, such as variable-air-volume boxes, and verify that they are accessible and their controls are connected and functioning.
- K. Examine operating safety interlocks and controls on HVAC equipment.
- L. Examine control dampers for proper installation for their intended function of isolating, throttling, diverting, or mixing air flows.
- M. Report deficiencies discovered before and during performance of TAB procedures. Observe and record system reactions to changes in conditions. Record default set points if different from indicated values.

### 3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare a TAB plan that includes the following:
  - 1. Equipment and systems to be tested.
  - 2. Strategies and step-by-step procedures for balancing the systems.
  - 3. Instrumentation to be used.
  - 4. Sample forms with specific identification for all equipment.
- B. Perform system-readiness checks of HVAC systems and equipment to verify system readiness for TAB work. Include, at a minimum, the following:
  - 1. Airside:
    - a. Verify that leakage and pressure tests on air distribution systems have been satisfactorily completed.
    - b. Duct systems are complete with terminals installed.
    - c. Volume, smoke, and fire dampers are open and functional.
    - d. Clean filters are installed.
    - e. Fans are operating, free of vibration, and rotating in correct direction.
    - f. Variable-frequency controllers' startup is complete and safeties are verified.
    - g. Automatic temperature-control systems are operational.
    - h. Ceilings are installed.
    - i. Windows and doors are installed.
    - j. Suitable access to balancing devices and equipment is provided.

### 3.03 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR TESTING AND BALANCING

- A. Perform testing and balancing procedures on each system in accordance with the procedures contained in AABC's "National Standards for Total System Balance" and in this Section.
- B. Cut insulation, ducts, pipes, and equipment casings for installation of test probes to the minimum extent necessary for TAB procedures.
  - 1. After testing and balancing, patch probe holes in ducts with same material and thickness as used to construct ducts.
  - 2. After testing and balancing, install test ports and duct access doors that comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
  - 3. Where holes for probes are required in piping or hydronic equipment, install pressure and temperature test plugs to seal systems.

4. Install and join new insulation that matches removed materials. Restore insulation, coverings, vapor barrier, and finish in accordance with Section 230713 "Duct Insulation," Section 230716 "HVAC Equipment Insulation," and Section 230719 "HVAC Piping Insulation."
- C. Mark equipment and balancing devices, including damper-control positions, valve position indicators, fan-speed-control levers, and similar controls and devices, with paint or other suitable, permanent identification material to show final settings.
- D. Take and report testing and balancing measurements in inch-pound (IP) units.

### **3.04 TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING OF HVAC EQUIPMENT**

- A. Test, adjust, and balance HVAC equipment indicated on Drawings, including, but not limited to, the following:
  1. Motors.
  2. Fans and ventilators.
  3. Terminal units.
  4. Air-handling units.
  5. Heating and ventilating units.
  6. Rooftop air-conditioning units.
  7. Packaged air conditioners.
  8. Self-contained air conditioners.
  9. Computer-room air conditioners.
  10. Split-system air conditioners.
  11. Fan coil units.
  12. Humidifiers.
  13. Dehumidification units.

### **3.05 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR BALANCING AIR SYSTEMS**

- A. Prepare test reports for both fans and outlets. Obtain manufacturer's outlet factors and recommended testing procedures. Crosscheck the summation of required outlet volumes with required fan volumes.
- B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' Record drawings duct layouts.
- C. For variable-air-volume systems, develop a plan to simulate diversity.
- D. Determine the best locations in main and branch ducts for accurate duct-airflow measurements.
- E. Check airflow patterns from the outdoor-air louvers and dampers and the return- and exhaust-air dampers through the supply-fan discharge and mixing dampers.
- F. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor starters.
- G. Verify that motor starters are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.
- H. Check dampers for proper position to achieve desired airflow path.
- I. Check for airflow blockages.
- J. Check condensate drains for proper connections and functioning.
- K. Check for proper sealing of air-handling-unit components.

### **3.06 PROCEDURES FOR VARIABLE-AIR-VOLUME SYSTEMS**

- A. Adjust the variable-air-volume systems as follows:
  1. Verify that the system static pressure sensor is located two-thirds of the distance down the duct from the fan discharge.
  2. Verify that the system is under static pressure control.
  3. Select the terminal unit that is most critical to the supply-fan airflow. Measure inlet static pressure, and adjust system static pressure control set point so the entering static pressure for the critical terminal unit is not less than the sum of the terminal-unit manufacturer's recommended minimum inlet static pressure plus the static pressure needed to overcome terminal-unit discharge system losses.

4. Calibrate and balance each terminal unit for maximum and minimum design airflow as follows:
  - a. Adjust controls so that terminal is calling for maximum airflow. Some controllers require starting with minimum airflow. Verify calibration procedure for specific project.
  - b. Measure airflow and adjust calibration factor as required for design maximum airflow. Record calibration factor.
  - c. When maximum airflow is correct, balance the air outlets downstream from terminal units.
  - d. Adjust controls so that terminal is calling for minimum airflow.
  - e. Measure airflow and adjust calibration factor as required for design minimum airflow. Record calibration factor. If no minimum calibration is available, note any deviation from design airflow.
  - f. On constant volume terminals, in critical areas where room pressure is to be maintained, verify that the airflow remains constant over the full range of full cooling to full heating. Note any deviation from design airflow or room pressure.
5. After terminals have been calibrated and balanced, test and adjust system for total airflow. Adjust fans to deliver total design airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.
  - a. Set outside-air, return-air, and relief-air dampers for proper position that simulates minimum outdoor-air conditions.
  - b. Set terminals for maximum airflow. If system design includes diversity, adjust terminals for maximum and minimum airflow, so that connected total matches fan selection and simulates actual load in the building.
  - c. Where duct conditions allow, measure airflow by main Pitot-tube traverse. If necessary, perform multiple Pitot-tube traverses close to the fan and prior to any outlets, to obtain total airflow.
  - d. Where duct conditions are unsuitable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, a coil traverse may be acceptable.
6. Measure fan static pressures as follows:
  - a. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
  - b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan inlet or through the flexible connection.
  - c. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up the air-handling system.
  - d. Report any artificial loading of filters at the time static pressures are measured.
7. Set final return and outside airflow to the fan while operating at maximum return airflow and minimum outdoor airflow.
  - a. Balance the return-air ducts and inlets.
  - b. Verify that terminal units are meeting design airflow under system maximum flow.
8. Re-measure the inlet static pressure at the most critical terminal unit, and adjust the system static pressure set point to the most energy-efficient set point to maintain the optimum system static pressure. Record set point and give to controls Contractor.
9. Verify final system conditions as follows:
  - a. Re-measure and confirm that minimum outdoor, return, and relief airflows are within design. Readjust to match design if necessary.
  - b. Re-measure and confirm that total airflow is within design.
  - c. Re-measure final fan operating data, speed, volts, amps, and static profile.
  - d. Mark final settings.
  - e. Test system in economizer mode. Verify proper operation and adjust if necessary. Measure and record all operating data.
  - f. Verify tracking between supply and return fans.

### 3.07 PROCEDURES FOR MOTORS

- A. Motors 1/2 HP and Larger: Test at final balanced conditions and record the following data:
  1. Manufacturer's name, model number, and serial number.
  2. Motor horsepower rating.



3. Motor rpm.
4. Phase and hertz.
5. Nameplate and measured voltage, each phase.
6. Nameplate and measured amperage, each phase.
7. Starter size and thermal-protection-element rating.
8. Service factor and frame size.

- B. Motors Driven by Variable-Frequency Controllers: Test manual bypass of controller to prove proper operation.

### **3.08 PROCEDURES FOR AIR-COOLED CONDENSING UNITS**

- A. Verify proper rotation of fan(s).
- B. Measure and record entering- and leaving-air temperatures.
- C. Measure and record entering and leaving refrigerant pressures.
- D. Measure and record operating data of compressor(s), fan(s), and motors.

### **3.09 DUCT LEAKAGE TESTS**

- A. Witness the duct leakage testing performed by Installer.
- B. Verify that proper test methods are used and that leakage rates are within specified limits.
- C. Report deficiencies observed.

### **3.10 HVAC CONTROLS VERIFICATION**

- A. In conjunction with system balancing, perform the following:
  1. Verify HVAC control system is operating within the design limitations.
  2. Confirm that the sequences of operation are in compliance with Contract Documents.
  3. Verify that controllers are calibrated and function as intended.
  4. Verify that controller set points are as indicated.
  5. Verify the operation of lockout or interlock systems.
  6. Verify the operation of valve and damper actuators.
  7. Verify that controlled devices are properly installed and connected to correct controller.
  8. Verify that controlled devices travel freely and are in position indicated by controller: open, closed, or modulating.
  9. Verify location and installation of sensors to ensure that they sense only intended temperature, humidity, or pressure.
- B. Reporting: Include a summary of verifications performed, remaining deficiencies, and variations from indicated conditions.

### **3.11 PROCEDURES FOR TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING EXISTING SYSTEMS**

- A. Perform a preconstruction inspection of existing equipment that is to remain and be reused.
  1. Measure and record the operating speed, airflow, and static pressure of each fan and equipment with fan(s).
  2. Measure and record flows, temperatures, and pressures of each piece of equipment in each hydronic system. Compare the values to design or nameplate information, where information is available.
  3. Measure motor voltage and amperage. Compare the values to motor nameplate information.
  4. Check the refrigerant charge.
  5. Check the condition of filters.
  6. Check the condition of coils.
  7. Check the operation of the drain pan and condensate-drain trap.
  8. Check bearings and other lubricated parts for proper lubrication.
  9. Report on the operating condition of the equipment and the results of the measurements taken. Report deficiencies.

- B. TAB After Construction: Before performing testing and balancing of renovated existing systems, inspect existing equipment that is to remain and be reused to verify that existing equipment has been cleaned and refurbished in accordance with renovation scope indicated by Contract Documents. Verify the following:
  - 1. New filters are installed.
  - 2. Coils are clean and fins combed.
  - 3. Drain pans are clean.
  - 4. Fans are clean.
  - 5. Bearings and other parts are properly lubricated.
  - 6. Deficiencies noted in the preconstruction report are corrected.
- C. Perform testing and balancing of existing systems to the extent that existing systems are affected by the renovation work.
  - 1. Compare the indicated airflow of the renovated work to the measured fan airflows, and determine the new fan speed and the face velocity of filters and coils.
  - 2. Verify that the indicated airflows of the renovated work result in filter and coil face velocities and fan speeds that are within the acceptable limits defined by equipment manufacturer.
  - 3. If calculations increase or decrease the airflow rates and water flow rates by more than 5 percent, make equipment adjustments to achieve the calculated rates. If increase or decrease is 5 percent or less, equipment adjustments are not required.
  - 4. Balance each air outlet.

### 3.12 TOLERANCES

- A. Set HVAC system's airflow rates and water flow rates within the following tolerances:
  - 1. Supply, Return, and Exhaust Fans and Equipment with Fans: Plus or minus 10 percent. If design value is less than 100 cfm (47 L/s), within 10 cfm (4.7 L/s).
  - 2. Air Outlets and Inlets: Plus or minus 10 percent. If design value is less than 100 cfm (47 L/s), within 10 cfm (4.7 L/s).
- B. Maintaining pressure relationships as designed shall have priority over the tolerances specified above.

### 3.13 PROGRESS REPORTING

- A. Initial Construction-Phase Report: Based on examination of the Contract Documents as specified in "Examination" Article, prepare a report on the adequacy of design for system-balancing devices. Recommend changes and additions to system-balancing devices, to facilitate proper performance measuring and balancing. Recommend changes and additions to HVAC systems and general construction to allow access for performance-measuring and -balancing devices.
- B. Status Reports: Prepare biweekly progress reports to describe completed procedures, procedures in progress, and scheduled procedures. Include a list of deficiencies and problems found in systems being tested and balanced. Prepare a separate report for each system and each building floor for systems serving multiple floors.

### 3.14 FINAL REPORT

- A. General: Prepare a certified written report; tabulate and divide the report into separate sections for tested systems and balanced systems.
  - 1. Include a certification sheet at the front of the report's binder, signed and sealed by the certified testing and balancing engineer.
  - 2. Include a list of instruments used for procedures, along with proof of calibration.
  - 3. Certify validity and accuracy of field data.
- B. Final Report Contents: In addition to certified field-report data, include the following:
  - 1. Pump curves.
  - 2. Fan curves.
  - 3. Manufacturers' test data.
  - 4. Field test reports prepared by system and equipment installers.

5. Other information relative to equipment performance; do not include Shop Drawings and Product Data.
- C. General Report Data: In addition to form titles and entries, include the following data:
  1. Title page.
  2. Name and address of the TAB specialist.
  3. Project name.
  4. Project location.
  5. Architect's name and address.
  6. Engineer's name and address.
  7. Contractor's name and address.
  8. Report date.
  9. Signature of TAB supervisor who certifies the report.
  10. Table of Contents with the total number of pages defined for each section of the report. Number each page in the report.
  11. Summary of contents, including the following:
    - a. Indicated versus final performance.
    - b. Notable characteristics of systems.
    - c. Description of system operation sequence if it varies from the Contract Documents.
  12. Nomenclature sheets for each item of equipment.
  13. Data for terminal units, including manufacturer's name, type, size, and fittings.
  14. Notes to explain why certain final data in the body of reports vary from indicated values.
  15. Test conditions for fans performance forms, including the following:
    - a. Settings for outdoor-, return-, and exhaust-air dampers.
    - b. Conditions of filters.
    - c. Cooling coil, wet- and dry-bulb conditions.
    - d. Heating coil, dry-bulb conditions.
    - e. Face and bypass damper settings at coils.
    - f. Fan drive settings, including settings and percentage of maximum pitch diameter.
    - g. Variable-frequency controller settings for variable-air-volume systems.
    - h. Settings for pressure controller(s).
    - i. Other system operating conditions that affect performance.
  16. Test conditions for pump performance forms, including the following:
    - a. Variable-frequency controller settings for variable-flow hydronic systems.
    - b. Settings for pressure controller(s).
    - c. Other system operating conditions that affect performance.
- D. System Diagrams: Include schematic layouts of air and hydronic distribution systems. Present each system with single-line diagram and include the following:
  1. Quantities of outdoor, supply, return, and exhaust airflows.
  2. Water and steam flow rates.
  3. Duct, outlet, and inlet sizes.
  4. Pipe and valve sizes and locations.
  5. Terminal units.
  6. Balancing stations.
  7. Position of balancing devices.
- E. Air-Handling-Unit Test Reports: For air-handling units, include the following:
  1. Unit Data:
    - a. Unit identification.
    - b. Location.
    - c. Make and type.
    - d. Model number and unit size.
    - e. Manufacturer's serial number.
    - f. Unit arrangement and class.
    - g. Discharge arrangement.

- h. Sheave make, size in inches (mm), and bore.
- i. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches (mm).
- j. Number, make, and size of belts.
- k. Number, type, and size of filters.
- 2. Motor Data:
  - a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
  - b. Horsepower and speed.
  - c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
  - d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
  - e. Sheave make, size in inches (mm), and bore.
  - f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches (mm).
- 3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
  - a. Total airflow rate in cfm (L/s).
  - b. Total system static pressure in inches wg (Pa).
  - c. Fan speed.
  - d. Inlet and discharge static pressure in inches wg (Pa).
  - e. For each filter bank, filter static-pressure differential in inches wg (Pa).
  - f. Preheat-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg (Pa).
  - g. Cooling-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg (Pa).
  - h. Heating-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg (Pa).
  - i. List for each internal component with pressure-drop, static-pressure differential in inches wg (Pa).
  - j. Outdoor airflow in cfm (L/s).
  - k. Return airflow in cfm (L/s).
  - l. Outdoor-air damper position.
  - m. Return-air damper position.
  - n. [Vortex damper position].
- F. Apparatus-Coil Test Reports:
  - 1. Coil Data:
    - a. System identification.
    - b. Location.
    - c. Coil type.
    - d. Number of rows.
    - e. Fin spacing in fins per inch (mm) o.c.
    - f. Make and model number.
    - g. Face area in sq. ft. (sq. m).
    - h. Tube size in NPS (DN).
    - i. Tube and fin materials.
    - j. Circuiting arrangement.
  - 2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
    - a. Airflow rate in cfm (L/s).
    - b. Average face velocity in fpm (m/s).
    - c. Air pressure drop in inches wg (Pa).
    - d. Outdoor-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F (deg C).
    - e. Return-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F (deg C).
    - f. Entering-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F (deg C).
    - g. Leaving-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F (deg C).
    - h. Refrigerant expansion valve and refrigerant types.
    - i. Refrigerant suction pressure in psig (kPa).
    - j. Refrigerant suction temperature in deg F (deg C).
- G. Electric-Coil Test Reports: For electric furnaces, duct coils, and electric coils installed in central-station air-handling units, include the following:
  - 1. Unit Data:

- a. System identification.
- b. Location.
- c. Coil identification.
- d. Capacity in Btu/h (kW).
- e. Number of stages.
- f. Connected volts, phase, and hertz.
- g. Rated amperage.
- h. Airflow rate in cfm (L/s).
- i. Face area in sq. ft. (sq. m).
- j. Minimum face velocity in fpm (m/s).
2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
  - a. Heat output in Btu/h (kW).
  - b. Airflow rate in cfm (L/s).
  - c. Air velocity in fpm (m/s).
  - d. Entering-air temperature in deg F (deg C).
  - e. Leaving-air temperature in deg F (deg C).
  - f. Voltage at each connection.
  - g. Amperage for each phase.
- H. Fan Test Reports: For supply, return, and exhaust fans, include the following:
  1. Fan Data:
    - a. System identification.
    - b. Location.
    - c. Make and type.
    - d. Model number and size.
    - e. Manufacturer's serial number.
    - f. Arrangement and class.
    - g. Sheave make, size in inches (mm), and bore.
    - h. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches (mm).
  2. Motor Data:
    - a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
    - b. Horsepower and speed.
    - c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
    - d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
    - e. Sheave make, size in inches (mm), and bore.
    - f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches (mm).
    - g. Number, make, and size of belts.
  3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
    - a. Total airflow rate in cfm (L/s).
    - b. Total system static pressure in inches wg (Pa).
    - c. Fan speed.
    - d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg (Pa).
    - e. Suction static pressure in inches wg (Pa).
- I. Round, Flat-Oval, and Rectangular Duct Traverse Reports: Include a diagram with a grid representing the duct cross-section and record the following:
  1. Report Data:
    - a. System fan and air-handling-unit number.
    - b. Location and zone.
    - c. Traverse air temperature in deg F (deg C).
    - d. Duct static pressure in inches wg (Pa).
    - e. Duct size in inches (mm).
    - f. Duct area in sq. ft. (sq. m).
    - g. Indicated airflow rate in cfm (L/s).
    - h. Indicated velocity in fpm (m/s).

- i. Actual airflow rate in cfm (L/s).
  - j. Actual average velocity in fpm (m/s).
  - k. Barometric pressure in psig (Pa).
- J. Air-Terminal-Device Reports:
- 1. Unit Data:
    - a. System and air-handling unit identification.
    - b. Location and zone.
    - c. Apparatus used for test.
    - d. Area served.
    - e. Make.
    - f. Number from system diagram.
    - g. Type and model number.
    - h. Size.
    - i. Effective area in sq. ft. (sq. m).
  - 2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
    - a. Airflow rate in cfm (L/s).
    - b. Air velocity in fpm (m/s).
    - c. Preliminary airflow rate as needed in cfm (L/s).
    - d. Preliminary velocity as needed in fpm (m/s).
    - e. Final airflow rate in cfm (L/s).
    - f. Final velocity in fpm (m/s).
    - g. Space temperature in deg F (deg C).
- K. System-Coil Reports: For reheat coils and water coils of terminal units, include the following:
- 1. Unit Data:
    - a. System and air-handling-unit identification.
    - b. Location and zone.
    - c. Room or riser served.
    - d. Coil make and size.
    - e. Flowmeter type.
  - 2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
    - a. Airflow rate in cfm (L/s).
    - b. Entering-water temperature in deg F (deg C).
    - c. Leaving-water temperature in deg F (deg C).
    - d. Water pressure drop in feet of head or psig (kPa).
    - e. Entering-air temperature in deg F (deg C).
    - f. Leaving-air temperature in deg F (deg C).
- L. Instrument Calibration Reports:
- 1. Report Data:
    - a. Instrument type and make.
    - b. Serial number.
    - c. Application.
    - d. Dates of use.
    - e. Dates of calibration.

### 3.15 VERIFICATION OF TAB REPORT

- A. The TAB specialist's test and balance engineer shall conduct the inspection in the presence of Owner.
- B. Owner shall randomly select measurements, documented in the final report, to be rechecked. Rechecking shall be limited to the lesser of either 10 percent of the total measurements recorded or the extent of measurements that can be accomplished in a normal 8-hour business day.
- C. If rechecks yield measurements that differ from the measurements documented in the final report by more than the tolerances allowed, the measurements shall be noted as "FAILED."

- D. If the number of "FAILED" measurements is greater than 10 percent of the total measurements checked during the final inspection, the TAB shall be considered incomplete and shall be rejected.
- E. If recheck measurements find the number of failed measurements noncompliant with requirements indicated, proceed as follows:
  - 1. TAB specialists shall recheck all measurements and make adjustments. Revise the final report and balancing device settings to include all changes; resubmit the final report and request a second final inspection. All changes shall be tracked to show changes made to previous report.
  - 2. If the second final inspection also fails, Owner may pursue others Contract options to complete TAB work.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

**3.16 ADDITIONAL TESTS**

- A. Within 90 days of completing TAB, perform additional TAB to verify that balanced conditions are being maintained throughout and to correct unusual conditions.
- B. Seasonal Periods: If initial TAB procedures were not performed during near-peak summer and winter conditions, perform additional TAB during near-peak summer and winter conditions.

**END OF SECTION 23 05 93**

**SECTION 23 07 13  
DUCT INSULATION**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes insulating the following duct services:
  - 1. Indoor, concealed supply and outdoor air.
  - 2. Indoor, exposed supply and outdoor air.
  - 3. Indoor, concealed return located in unconditioned space.
  - 4. Indoor, exposed return located in unconditioned space.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 230716 "HVAC Equipment Insulation."
  - 2. Section 230719 "HVAC Piping Insulation."
  - 3. Section 233113 "Metal Ducts" for duct liners.

**1.02 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory- and field-applied if any).
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - 1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
  - 2. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, dampers, specialties and flanges for each type of insulation.
  - 3. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
  - 4. Detail application at linkages of control devices.
- C. Samples: For each type of insulation and jacket indicated. Identify each Sample, describing product and intended use. Sample sizes are as follows:
  - 1. Sheet Form Insulation Materials: 12 inches (300 mm) square.
  - 2. Sheet Jacket Materials: 12 inches (300 mm) square.
  - 3. Manufacturer's Color Charts: For products where color is specified, show the full range of colors available for each type of finish material.

**1.03 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets, with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests and test methods employed.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

**1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or craft training program.

**1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Packaging: Insulation material containers are to be marked with the manufacturer's name, appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

**1.06 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with duct Installer for duct insulation application. Before preparing ductwork Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.



- C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

### **1.07 SCHEDULING**

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.

## **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products in accordance with ASTM E84, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation, jacket materials, adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - 1. All Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.

### **2.02 INSULATION MATERIALS**

- A. Comply with requirements in "Duct Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Duct and Plenum Insulation Schedule," and "Aboveground, Outdoor Duct and Plenum Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials are to be applied.
- B. Products do not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested in accordance with ASTM C871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel are qualified as acceptable in accordance with ASTM C795.
- E. Foam insulation materials do not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- F. Flexible Elastomeric: Closed-cell or expanded-rubber materials; suitable for maximum use temperature between minus 70 deg F (minus 57 deg C) and 220 deg F (104 deg C). Comply with ASTM C534, Type II for sheet materials.
- G. Glass-Fiber Blanket: Glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin; suitable for maximum use temperature up to 450 deg F (232 deg C) in accordance with ASTM C411. Comply with ASTM C553, Type II, and ASTM C1290, Type III with factory-applied FSK jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
- H. Mineral Wool Blanket: Basalt volcanic rock-derived fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin, unfaced; suitable for maximum use temperature up to 1200 deg F (650 deg C) in accordance with ASTM C447. Comply with ASTM C553.
- I. Glass-Fiber Board Insulation: Glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin; suitable for maximum use temperature between 35 deg F (1.7 deg C) and 250 deg F (121 deg C) for jacketed and between 35 deg F (1.7 deg C) and 450 deg F (232 deg C) for unfaced in accordance with ASTM C411. Comply with ASTM C612, Type IA or Type IB. For duct and plenum applications, provide insulation with factory-applied ASJ. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
- J. Mineral Wool Board: Basalt volcanic rock-derived fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin; suitable for maximum use temperature up to 1100 deg F (600 deg C) in accordance with ASTM C411. Comply with ASTM C612, Type III, unfaced.
- K. Glass-Fiber, Pipe and Tank: Glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin; suitable for maximum use temperature between 35 deg F (1.7 deg C) and 850 deg F (454 deg C), in accordance with ASTM C411. Comply with ASTM C1393.
  - 1. Semirigid board material with factory-applied ASJ jacket.
  - 2. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
- L. Mineral Wool, Pipe and Tank: Mineral wool fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin; suitable for maximum use temperature up to 1000 deg F (538 deg C), in accordance with ASTM C411.

Comply with ASTM C1393.

1. Semirigid board material with factory-applied ASJ jacket.
2. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

M. Polyolefin: Polyethylene thermal plastic insulation. Comply with ASTM C1427, Type I, Grade 1 for tubular materials and Type II, Grade 1 for sheet materials.

### 2.03 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials are compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.
- C. Glass-Fiber and Mineral Wool Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
- D. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
- E. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.

### 2.04 MASTICS AND COATINGS

- A. Materials are compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
- B. Vapor-Retarder Mastic, Water Based, Interior Use: Suitable for indoor use on below ambient services.
  1. Water-Vapor Permeance: Comply with ASTM C755, Section 7.2.2, Table 2, for insulation type and service conditions.
  2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 82 deg C).
  3. Comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II, for permeance requirements.
  4. Color: White.
- C. Vapor-Retarder Mastic, Solvent Based, Interior Use: Suitable for indoor use on below ambient services.
  1. Water-Vapor Permeance: Comply with ASTM C755, Section 7.2.2, Table 2, for insulation type and service conditions.
  2. Service Temperature Range: 0 to 180 deg F (Minus 18 to plus 82 deg C).
  3. Color: White.
- D. Vapor-Retarder Mastic, Solvent Based, Exterior Use: Suitable for outdoor use on below ambient services.
  1. Water-Vapor Permeance: Comply with ASTM C755, Section 7.2.2, Table 2, for insulation type and service conditions.
  2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 220 deg F (Minus 46 to plus 104 deg C).
  3. Color: White.
- E. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above ambient services.
  1. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E96/E96M, greater than 1.0 perm (0.66 metric perm) at manufacturer's recommended dry film thickness.
  2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 82 deg C).
  3. Color: White.

### 2.05 LAGGING ADHESIVES

- A. Description: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A and are compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
  1. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over duct insulation.
  2. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F (Minus 18 to plus 82 deg C).
  3. Color: White.

### 2.06 SEALANTS

- A. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:
  1. Materials are compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.

2. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 121 deg C).
4. Color: Aluminum.

B. ASJ Flashing Sealants, and Vinyl and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Materials are compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
2. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 121 deg C).
4. Color: White.

## 2.07 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:

1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C1136, Type I.
2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C1136, Type I.
3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C1136, Type II.
4. FSP Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with polyethylene backing; complying with ASTM C1136, Type II.
5. Vinyl Jacket: White vinyl with a permeance of 1.3 perms (0.86 metric perm) when tested in accordance with ASTM E96/E96M, Procedure A, and complying with NFPA 90A and NFPA 90B.
6. ASJ+: All-service jacket composed of aluminum foil reinforced with glass scrim bonded to a kraft paper interleaving with an outer film leaving no paper exposed; complying with ASTM C1136, Types I, II, III, IV, and VII.
7. PSK Jacket: Aluminum foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with polyethylene backing; complying with ASTM C1136, Type II.

## 2.08 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Field-applied jackets comply with ASTM C921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil-face, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing.
- C. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
  1. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
  2. Color: Color-code jackets based on system. Color as selected by Architect.
- D. Metal Jacket:
  1. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B209 (ASTM B209M), Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.
    - a. Factory cut and rolled to size.
    - b. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
    - c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 1-mil- (0.025-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
  2. Stainless Steel Jacket: ASTM A240/A240M.
    - a. Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing.
    - b. Material, finish, and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
    - c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 1-mil- (0.025-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
    - d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil- (0.075-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
- E. Self-Adhesive Outdoor Jacket (Asphaltic): 60-mil- (1.5-mm-) thick, laminated vapor barrier and waterproofing membrane for installation over insulation located aboveground outdoors; consisting of a rubberized bituminous resin on a crosslaminated polyethylene film covered with

white aluminum-foil facing.

- F. Self-Adhesive Indoor/Outdoor Jacket (Non-Asphaltic): Vapor barrier and waterproofing jacket for installation over insulation located aboveground outdoors or indoors. Specialized jacket has five layers of laminated aluminum and polyester film with low-temperature acrylic pressure-sensitive adhesive. Outer aluminum surface is coated with UV-resistant coating for protection from environmental contaminants.
1. Permeance: 0.00 perm as tested in accordance with ASTM F1249.
  2. Flamespread/Smoke Developed: 25/50 as tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
  3. Aluminum Finish: Smooth.

## 2.09 FIELD-APPLIED FABRIC-REINFORCING MESH

- A. Woven Glass-Fiber Mesh: Approximately 6 oz./sq. yd. (203 g/sq. m) with a thread count of 5 strands by 5 strands/sq. in. (2 strands by 2 strands/sq. mm) for covering ducts.
- B. Woven Polyester Mesh: Approximately 1 oz./sq. yd. (34 g/sq. m) with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. in. (4 strands by 4 strands/sq. mm), in a Leno weave, for ducts.

## 2.10 FIELD-APPLIED CLOTHS

- A. Woven Glass-Fiber Cloth: Comply with MIL-C-20079H, Type I, plain weave, and presized a minimum of 8 oz./sq. yd. (271 g/sq. m).

## 2.11 TAPES

- A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C1136.
1. Width: 3 inches (75 mm).
  2. Thickness: 11.5 mils (0.29 mm).
  3. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch (1.0 N/mm) in width.
  4. Elongation: 2 percent.
  5. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch (7.2 N/mm) in width.
  6. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.
- B. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C1136.
1. Width: 3 inches (75 mm).
  2. Thickness: 6.5 mils (0.16 mm).
  3. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch (1.0 N/mm) in width.
  4. Elongation: 2 percent.
  5. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch (7.2 N/mm) in width.
  6. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.
- C. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive; suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.
1. Width: 2 inches (50 mm).
  2. Thickness: 6 mils (0.15 mm).
  3. Adhesion: 64 ounces force/inch (0.7 N/mm) in width.
  4. Elongation: 500 percent.
  5. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch (3.3 N/mm) in width.
- D. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.
1. Width: 2 inches (50 mm).
  2. Thickness: 3.7 mils (0.093 mm).
  3. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch (1.1 N/mm) in width.
  4. Elongation: 5 percent.
  5. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch (6.2 N/mm) in width.

## 2.12 SECUREMENTS

- A. Bands:
1. Stainless Steel: ASTM A240/A240M, Type 304; 0.015 inch (0.38 mm) thick, 1/2 inch (13 mm) wide with wing seal or closed seal.

2. Aluminum: ASTM B209 (ASTM B209M), Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) thick, 1/2 inch (13 mm) wide with wing seal or closed seal.
  3. Springs: Twin spring set constructed of stainless steel with ends flat and slotted to accept metal bands. Spring size determined by manufacturer for application.
- B. Insulation Pins and Hangers:
1. Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch- (2.6-mm-) diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
  2. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch- (2.6-mm-) diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) galvanized carbon-steel washer.
  3. Metal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
    - a. Baseplate: Perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch (0.76 mm) thick by 2 inches (50 mm) square.
    - b. Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low-carbon steel, fully annealed, 0.106-inch- (2.6-mm-) diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
    - c. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.
  4. Nonmetal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate fastened to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
    - a. Baseplate: Perforated, nylon sheet, 0.030 inch (0.76 mm) thick by 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) in diameter.
    - b. Spindle: Nylon, 0.106-inch- (2.6-mm-) diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated, up to 2-1/2 inches (63 mm).
    - c. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.
  5. Self-Sticking-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
    - a. Baseplate: Galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch (0.76 mm) thick by 2 inches (50 mm) square.
    - b. Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low-carbon steel, fully annealed, 0.106-inch- (2.6-mm-) diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
    - c. Adhesive-backed base with a peel-off protective cover.
  6. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- (0.41-mm-) thick, galvanized-steel sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) in diameter.
    - a. Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to ensure permanent retention of cap in exposed locations.
  7. Nonmetal Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- (0.41-mm-) thick nylon sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) in diameter.
- C. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) wide, stainless steel or Monel.
- D. Wire: 0.062-inch (1.6-mm) soft-annealed, galvanized steel.

### **2.13 CORNER ANGLES**

- A. PVC Corner Angles: 30 mils (0.8 mm) thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch (25 by 25 mm), PVC in accordance with ASTM D1784, Class 16354-C. White or color-coded to match adjacent surface.
- B. Aluminum Corner Angles: 0.040 inch (1.0 mm) thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch (25 by 25 mm), aluminum in accordance with ASTM B209 (ASTM B209M), Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14.
- C. Stainless Steel Corner Angles: 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch (25 by 25 mm), stainless steel in accordance with ASTM A240/A240M, Type 304 or Type 316.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
  - 1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
  - 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

### **3.03 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of ducts and fittings.
- B. Install insulation materials, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of duct system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, compress, or otherwise damage insulation or jacket.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing. Replace insulation materials that get wet during storage or in the installation process before being properly covered and sealed in accordance with Contract Documents.
- G. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- H. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- I. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
  - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- J. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- K. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
  - 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth, but not to the extent of creating wrinkles or areas of compression in the insulation.

2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- (75-mm-) wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches (100 mm) o.c.
  3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm). Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 2 inches (50 mm) o.c.
    - a. For below ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
  4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
  5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to duct flanges and fittings.
- L. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation.
- M. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- N. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches (100 mm) beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

### 3.04 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
  2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
  3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches (50 mm) below top of roof flashing.
  4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
  2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
  3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches (50 mm).
  4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- D. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves for fire-rated wall and partition penetrations. Externally insulate damper sleeves to match adjacent insulation and overlap duct insulation at least 2 inches (50 mm).
1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."
- E. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
1. Duct: For penetrations through fire-rated assemblies, terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves and externally insulate damper sleeve beyond floor to match adjacent duct insulation. Overlap damper sleeve and duct insulation at least 2 inches (50 mm).
  2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.05 INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC AND POLYOLEFIN INSULATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions and ASTM C1710.

- B. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- C. Square and Rectangular Ducts and Plenums:
  - 1. Provide 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) more per side for a tight, compression fit.
  - 2. Cut sheet insulation with the following dimensions:
    - a. Width of duct plus 1/4 inch (6.4 mm), one piece.
    - b. Height of duct plus 1/4 inch (6.4 mm), plus thickness of insulation, two pieces.
    - c. Width of duct plus 1/4 inch (6.4 mm), plus two times the thickness of insulation, one piece.
  - 3. Insulate the bottom of the duct with the sheet from (a) above, then the sides with the two sheets from (b) above, and finally the top of the duct with the sheet from (c) above.
  - 4. Insulation without self-adhering backing:
    - a. Apply 100 percent coverage of manufacturer adhesive on the metal surface, then the insulation, except for the last 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) where sheets will butt together.
    - b. Roll sheet down into position.
    - c. Press two sheets together under compression and apply adhesive at the butt joint to seal the two sheets together.
  - 5. Insulation with self-adhering backing:
    - a. Peel back release paper in 6- to 8-inch (150- to 203-mm) increments and line up sheet.
    - b. Press firmly to activate adhesive.
    - c. Align material and continue to line up correctly, pressing firmly while slowly removing release paper.
    - d. Allow 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) overlap for compression at butt joints.
    - e. Apply adhesive at the butt joint to seal the two sheets together.
  - 6. Insulate duct brackets following manufacturer's written installation instructions.
- D. Circular Ducts:
  - 1. Determine the circumference of the duct, using a strip of insulation the same thickness as to be used.
  - 2. Cut the sheet to the required size.
  - 3. Apply 100 percent coverage of manufacturer adhesive on the metal surface then the insulation.
  - 4. Apply manufacturer adhesive to the cut surfaces along 100 percent of the longitudinal seam. Press together the seam at the ends and then the middle. Close the entire seam starting from the middle.

### **3.06 INSTALLATION OF GLASS-FIBER AND MINERAL-WOOL INSULATION**

- A. Blanket Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.
- B. Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions.
  - 1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 50 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
  - 2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
  - 3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:
    - a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches (450 mm) and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches (75 mm) maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches (400 mm) o.c.
    - b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches (450 mm), place pins 16 inches (400 mm) o.c. each way, and 3 inches (75 mm) maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
    - c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
    - d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.



- e. Impale insulation over pins and attach speed washers.
  - f. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches (50 mm) from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch (13-mm) outward-clinching staples, 1 inch (25 mm) o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.
    - a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
    - b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F (10 deg C) at 18-foot (5.5-m) intervals. Vapor stops consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches (75 mm).
  5. Overlap unfaced blankets a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) on longitudinal seams and end joints. At end joints, secure with steel bands spaced a maximum of 18 inches (450 mm) o.c.
  6. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
  7. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch- (150-mm-) wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches (150 mm) o.c.
- C. Board Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.
1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 50 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
  2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
  3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:
    - a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches (450 mm) and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches (75 mm) maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches (400 mm) o.c.
    - b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches (450 mm), space pins 16 inches (400 mm) o.c. each way, and 3 inches (75 mm) maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
    - c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
    - d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
    - e. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
  4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches (50 mm) from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch (13-mm) outward-clinching staples, 1 inch (25 mm) o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.
    - a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.

- b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F (10 deg C) at 18-foot (5.5-m) intervals. Vapor stops consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches (75 mm).
5. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Groove and score insulation to fit as closely as possible to outside and inside radius of elbows. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
6. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch- (150-mm-) wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches (150 mm) o.c.

### 3.07 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

- A. Where glass-cloth jackets are indicated, install directly over bare insulation or insulation with factory-applied jackets.
  1. Draw jacket smooth and tight to surface with 2-inch (50-mm) overlap at seams and joints.
  2. Embed glass cloth between two 0.062-inch- (1.6-mm-) thick coats of lagging adhesive.
  3. Completely encapsulate insulation with coating, leaving no exposed insulation.
- B. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:
  1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
  2. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
  3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
  4. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch- (75-mm-) wide joint strips at end joints.
  5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.
- C. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch (25-mm) overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints; for horizontal applications, install with longitudinal seams along top and bottom of tanks and vessels. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
  1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.
- D. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch (50-mm) overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless steel bands 12 inches (300 mm) o.c. and at end joints.

### 3.08 FINISHES

- A. Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."
  1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.
    - a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.
- C. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.
- D. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless steel jackets.

### 3.09 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:

1. Inspect ductwork, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection is limited to one location(s) for each duct system defined in the "Duct Insulation Schedule, General" Article.

- C. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

### **3.10 DUCT INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL**

- A. Plenums and Ducts Requiring Insulation:
1. Indoor, concealed supply and outdoor air.
  2. Indoor, exposed supply and outdoor air.
  3. Indoor, concealed return located in unconditioned space.
  4. Indoor, exposed return located in unconditioned space.
- B. Items Not Insulated:
1. Fibrous-glass ducts.
  2. Metal ducts with duct liner of sufficient thickness to comply with energy code and ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
  3. Factory-insulated flexible ducts.
  4. Factory-insulated plenums and casings.
  5. Flexible connectors.
  6. Vibration-control devices.
  7. Factory-insulated access panels and doors.

### **3.11 INDOOR DUCT AND PLENUM INSULATION SCHEDULE**

- A. Concealed, round and flat-oval, supply-air duct insulation is one of the following:
1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
  2. Glass-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick and 0.75 lb/cu. ft. (12 kg/cu. m) nominal density.
  3. Mineral Wool Blanket: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick and 4 lb/cu. ft. (64 kg/cu. m) nominal density.
  4. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
- B. Concealed, round and flat-oval, return-air duct insulation is[ one of] the following:
1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
  2. Glass-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick and 0.75 lb/cu. ft. (12 kg/cu. m) nominal density.
  3. Mineral Wool Blanket: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick and 4 lb/cu. ft. (64 kg/cu. m) nominal density.
  4. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
- C. Concealed, rectangular, supply-air duct insulation is one of the following:
1. Glass-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick and 0.75 lb/cu. ft. (12 kg/cu. m) nominal density.
  2. Glass-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick and 2 lb/cu. ft. (32 kg/cu. m) nominal density.
  3. Mineral Wool Blanket: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick and 4 lb/cu. ft. (64 kg/cu. m) nominal density.
  4. Mineral Wool Board: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick and 4 lb/cu. ft. (64 kg/cu. m) nominal density.
- D. Concealed, rectangular, return-air duct insulation is one of the following:
1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
  2. Glass-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick and 0.75 lb/cu. ft. (12 kg/cu. m) nominal density.
  3. Glass-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick and 2 lb/cu. ft. (32 kg/cu. m) nominal density.

4. Mineral Wool Blanket: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick and 4 lb/cu. ft. (64 kg/cu. m) nominal density.
  5. Mineral Wool Board: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick and 4 lb/cu. ft. (64 kg/cu. m) nominal density.
- E. Exposed, round and flat-oval, supply-air duct insulation is one of the following:
1. Glass-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick and 0.75 lb/cu. ft. (12 kg/cu. m) nominal density.
  2. Glass-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
  3. Mineral Wool Blanket: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick and 4 lb/cu. ft. (64 kg/cu. m) nominal density.
  4. Mineral Wool Pipe and Tank:[1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
- F. Exposed, round and flat-oval, return-air duct insulation is one of the following:
1. Glass-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick and 0.75 lb/cu. ft. (12 kg/cu. m) nominal density.
  2. Mineral Wool Blanket: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick and 4 lb/cu. ft. (64 kg/cu. m) nominal density.
- G. Exposed, round and flat-oval, outdoor-air duct insulation is one of the following:
1. Glass-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick and 0.75 lb/cu. ft. (12 kg/cu. m) nominal density.
  2. Glass-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
  3. Mineral Wool Blanket: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick and 4 lb/cu. ft. (64 kg/cu. m) nominal density.
- H. Exposed, rectangular, supply-air duct insulation is[ one of] the following:
1. Glass-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick and 0.75 lb/cu. ft. (12 kg/cu. m) nominal density.
  2. Glass-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick and 2 lb/cu. ft. (32 kg/cu. m)] nominal density.
  3. Mineral Wool Blanket: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick and 4 lb/cu. ft. (64 kg/cu. m) nominal density.
- I. Exposed, rectangular, return-air duct insulation is one of the following:
1. Glass-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick and[0.75 lb/cu. ft. (12 kg/cu. m) nominal density.
  2. Glass-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick and 2 lb/cu. ft. (32 kg/cu. m) nominal density.
  3. Mineral Wool Blanket: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick and 4 lb/cu. ft. (64 kg/cu. m) nominal density.
  4. Mineral Wool Board: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick and 4 lb/cu. ft. (64 kg/cu. m) nominal density.

**END OF SECTION 23 07 13**

This page intentionally left blank

**SECTION 23 31 13  
METAL DUCTS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Single-wall rectangular ducts and fittings.
  - 2. Double-wall rectangular ducts and fittings.
  - 3. Single-wall round and flat-oval ducts and fittings.
  - 4. Double-wall round and flat-oval ducts and fittings.
  - 5. Sheet metal materials.
  - 6. Duct liner.
  - 7. Sealants and gaskets.
  - 8. Hangers and supports.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC" for seismic restraint devices and installation.
  - 2. Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing requirements for metal ducts.
  - 3. Section 233116 "Nonmetal Ducts" for fibrous-glass ducts, thermoset fiber-reinforced plastic ducts, thermoplastic ducts, PVC ducts, and concrete ducts.
  - 4. Section 233119 "HVAC Casings" for factory- and field-fabricated casings for mechanical equipment.
  - 5. Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for dampers, sound-control devices, duct-mounting access doors and panels, turning vanes, and flexible ducts.

**1.02 DEFINITIONS**

- A. OSHPD: Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development (State of California).

**1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following products:
  - 1. Liners and adhesives.
  - 2. Sealants and gaskets.
  - 3. Seismic-restraint devices.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Fabrication, assembly, and installation, including plans, elevations, sections, components, and attachments to other work.
  - 2. Factory- and shop-fabricated ducts and fittings.
  - 3. Duct layout indicating sizes, configuration, liner material, and static-pressure classes.
  - 4. Elevation of top and bottom of ducts.
  - 5. Dimensions of all duct runs from building grid lines.
  - 6. Fittings.
  - 7. Reinforcement and spacing.
  - 8. Seam and joint construction.
  - 9. Penetrations through fire-rated and other partitions.
  - 10. Equipment installation based on equipment being used on Project.
  - 11. Locations for duct accessories, including dampers, turning vanes, and access doors and panels.
  - 12. Hangers and supports, including methods for duct and building attachment and vibration isolation.
- C. Delegated Design Submittals:
  - 1. Sheet metal thicknesses.
  - 2. Joint and seam construction and sealing.
  - 3. Reinforcement details and spacing.

4. Materials, fabrication, assembly, and spacing of hangers and supports.
5. Design Calculations: Calculations, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation for selecting hangers and supports and seismic restraints.

#### **1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Coordination Drawings: A single set of plans or BIM model, drawn to scale, showing the items described in this Section, and coordinated with all building trades.
- B. Welding certificates.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

#### **1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel in accordance with the following:
  1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel," for hangers and supports.
  2. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum," for aluminum supports.
  3. AWS D9.1/D9.1M, "Sheet Metal Welding Code," for duct joint and seam welding.

### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Delegated Duct Design: Duct construction, including sheet metal thicknesses, seam and joint construction, reinforcements, and hangers and supports, comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" and with performance requirements and design criteria indicated in "Duct Schedule" Article.
- B. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with airstream comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
- C. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment," and Section 7 - "Construction and System Startup."
- D. ASHRAE/IES Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6.4.4 - "HVAC System Construction and Insulation."
- E. Duct Dimensions: Unless otherwise indicated, all duct dimensions indicated on Drawings are inside clear dimensions and do not include insulation or duct wall thickness.

#### **2.02 SINGLE-WALL RECTANGULAR DUCTS AND FITTINGS**

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
  1. Construct ducts of galvanized sheet steel unless otherwise indicated.
  2. For ducts exposed to weather, construct of Type 304 stainless steel indicated by manufacturer to be suitable for outdoor installation.
- B. Transverse Joints: Fabricate joints in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-1, "Rectangular Duct/Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
  1. For ducts with longest side less than 36 inches (914 mm), select joint types in accordance with Figure 2-1.
  2. For ducts with longest side 36 inches (914 mm) or greater, use flange joint connector Type T-22, T-24, T-24A, T-25a, or T-25b. Factory-fabricated flanged duct connection system may be used if submitted and approved by engineer of record.
- C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Duct/Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible." All longitudinal seams are to be Pittsburgh lock seams unless otherwise specified for specific application.

- D. Elbows, Transitions, Offsets, Branch Connections, and Other Duct Construction: Select types and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Ch. 4, "Fittings and Other Construction," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

### **2.03 SINGLE-WALL ROUND AND FLAT-OVAL DUCTS AND FITTINGS**

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Ch. 3, "Round, Oval, and Flexible Duct," based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Construct ducts of galvanized sheet steel unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. For ducts exposed to weather, construct of Type 304 stainless steel indicated by manufacturer to be suitable for outdoor installation.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain single-wall round and flat oval ducts and fittings from single manufacturer.
- C. Flat-Oval Ducts: Indicated dimensions are the duct width (major dimension) and diameter of the round sides connecting the flat portions of the duct (minor dimension).
- D. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-1, "Round Duct Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
  - 1. Transverse Joints in Ducts Larger Than 60 (1524) Inches (mm) in Diameter: Flanged.
- E. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-2, "Round Duct Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
  - 1. Fabricate round ducts larger than 90 inches (2286 mm) in diameter with butt-welded longitudinal seams.
  - 2. Fabricate flat-oval ducts larger than 72 inches (1830 mm) in width (major dimension) with butt-welded longitudinal seams.
- F. Tees and Laterals: Select types and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

### **2.04 SHEET METAL MATERIALS**

- A. General Material Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials are to be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.
- B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A653/A653M.
  - 1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G90 (Z275).
  - 2. Finishes for Surfaces Exposed to View: Mill phosphatized.
- C. PVC-Coated, Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A653/A653M.
  - 1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G90 (Z275).
  - 2. Minimum Thickness for Factory-Applied PVC Coating: 4 mils (0.10 mm) thick on sheet metal surface of ducts and fittings exposed to corrosive conditions, and minimum 1 mil (0.025 mm) thick on opposite surface.
  - 3. Coating Materials: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for use on ducts listed and labeled by an NRTL for compliance with UL 181, Class 1.



- D. Carbon-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A1008/A1008M, with oiled, matte finish for exposed ducts.
- E. Stainless Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A480/A480M, Type 304 or 316, as indicated in "Duct Schedule" Article; cold rolled, annealed, sheet. Exposed surface finish is to be No. 2B, No. 2D, No. 3, or No. 4 as indicated in "Duct Schedule" Article.
- F. Aluminum Sheets: Comply with ASTM B209 (ASTM B209M) Alloy 3003, H14 temper; with mill finish for concealed ducts, and standard, one-side bright finish for duct surfaces exposed to view.
- G. Factory- or Shop-Applied Antimicrobial Coating:
  - 1. Apply to the surface of sheet metal that will form the interior surface of the duct. An untreated clear coating is to be applied to the exterior surface.
  - 2. Antimicrobial compound is to be tested for efficacy by an NRTL and registered by the EPA for use in HVAC systems.
  - 3. Coating containing the antimicrobial compound is to have a hardness of 2H, minimum, when tested in accordance with ASTM D3363.
  - 4. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame-spread index of 25 and maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
  - 5. Shop-Applied Coating Color: Black.
  - 6. Antimicrobial coating on sheet metal is not required for duct containing liner treated with antimicrobial coating.
- H. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: ASTM A36/A36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
  - 1. Where black- and galvanized-steel shapes and plates are used to reinforce aluminum ducts, isolate the different metals with butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM gasket materials.
- I. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch- (6-mm-) minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches (900 mm) or less; 3/8-inch- (10-mm-) minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches (900 mm).

## 2.05 DUCT LINER

- A. Fibrous-Glass Duct Liner: Comply with ASTM C1071, NFPA 90A, or NFPA 90B; and with NAIMA AH124, "Fibrous Glass Duct Liner Standard."
  - 1. Source Limitations: Obtain fibrous-glass duct liner from single manufacturer.
  - 2. Maximum Thermal Conductivity:
    - a. Type I, Flexible: 0.27 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F (0.039 W/m x K) at 75 deg F (24 deg C) mean temperature.
    - b. Type II, Rigid: 0.23 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F (0.033 W/m x K) at 75 deg F (24 deg C) mean temperature.
  - 3. Antimicrobial Erosion-Resistant Coating: Apply to the surface of the liner that will form the interior surface of the duct to act as a moisture repellent and erosion-resistant coating. Antimicrobial compound is to be tested for efficacy by an NRTL and registered by the EPA for use in HVAC systems.
  - 4. Solvent-Based Liner Adhesive: Comply with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B and with ASTM C916.
- B. Fibrous-Glass-Free, Natural-Fiber Duct Liner: Made from partially recycled cotton or polyester products and containing no fiberglass. Airstream surface overlaid with fire-resistant facing to prevent surface erosion by airstream, complying with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B. Treat natural-fiber products with antimicrobial coating.
  - 1. Source Limitations: Obtain fibrous-glass-free, natural-fiber duct liner from single manufacturer.
  - 2. Maximum Thermal Conductivity: 0.24 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F (0.034 W/m x K) at 75 deg F (24 deg C) mean temperature when tested in accordance with ASTM C518.
  - 3. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame-spread index of 25 and maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84; certified by an NRTL.

4. Liner Adhesive: As recommended by insulation manufacturer and complying with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
- C. Polyolefin Duct Liner: Cross-linked, partially open-cell polyolefin foam sheet or roll materials, with reinforced aluminum foil facing and adhesive backing, complying with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B; sheet (Type II) complying with ASTM C1427.
  1. Source Limitations: Obtain polyolefin duct liner from single manufacturer.
  2. Foam Core Density: 1.5 pcf (25 kg/cm).
  3. Maximum Thermal Conductivity: 0.25 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F (0.036 W/m x K) at 75 deg F (24 deg C) mean temperature when tested in accordance with ASTM C518.
  4. Minimum Noise Reduction Coefficient (NRC): 0.50 for 3/8-inch (10-mm) thickness, 0.45 for 5/8-inch (15-mm) thickness, 0.55 for 1-inch (24-mm) thickness, 0.55 for 2-1/8-inch (54-mm) thickness.
  5. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame-spread index of 25 and maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
  6. Liner Adhesive: As recommended by insulation manufacturer and complying with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
- D. Insulation Pins and Washers:
  1. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch- (2.6-mm-) diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) galvanized carbon-steel washer.
  2. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- (0.41-mm-) thick stainless steel; with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place, but not less than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) in diameter.
- E. Shop Application of Duct Liner: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 7-11, "Flexible Duct Liner Installation."
  1. Adhere a single layer of indicated thickness of duct liner with at least 90 percent adhesive coverage at liner contact surface area. Attaining indicated thickness with multiple layers of duct liner is prohibited.
  2. Apply adhesive to transverse edges of liner facing upstream that do not receive metal nosing.
  3. Butt transverse joints without gaps, and coat joint with adhesive.
  4. Fold and compress liner in corners of rectangular ducts or cut and fit to ensure butted-edge overlapping.
  5. Do not apply liner in rectangular ducts with longitudinal joints, except at corners of ducts, unless duct size and dimensions of standard liner make longitudinal joints necessary.
  6. Apply adhesive coating on longitudinal seams in ducts with air velocity of 2500 fpm (12.7 m/s) or greater.
  7. Secure liner with mechanical fasteners 4 inches (100 mm) from corners and at intervals not exceeding 12 inches (300 mm) transversely; at 3 inches (75 mm) from transverse joints and at intervals not exceeding 18 inches (450 mm) longitudinally.
  8. Secure transversely oriented liner edges facing the airstream with metal nosings that have either channel or "Z" profiles or are integrally formed from duct wall. Fabricate edge facings at the following locations:
    - a. Fan discharges.
    - b. Intervals of lined duct preceding unlined duct.
    - c. Upstream edges of transverse joints in ducts where air velocities are higher than 2500 fpm (12.7 m/s) or where indicated.
  9. Terminate inner ducts with buildouts attached to fire-damper sleeves, dampers, turning vane assemblies, or other devices. Fabricated buildouts (metal hat sections) or other buildout means are optional; when used, secure buildouts to duct walls with bolts, screws, rivets, or welds.

## 2.06 SEALANT AND GASKETS

- A. General Sealant and Gasket Requirements: Surface-burning characteristics for sealants and gaskets are to be a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
- B. Two-Part Tape Sealing System:
1. Tape: Woven cotton fiber impregnated with mineral gypsum and modified acrylic/silicone activator to react exothermically with tape to form hard, durable, airtight seal.
  2. Tape Width: 3 inches (76 mm).
  3. Sealant: Modified styrene acrylic.
  4. Water resistant.
  5. Mold and mildew resistant.
  6. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10 inch wg (2500 Pa), positive and negative.
  7. Service: Indoor and outdoor.
  8. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 93 deg C).
  9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum.
- C. Water-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:
1. Application Method: Brush on.
  2. Solids Content: Minimum 65 percent.
  3. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 20.
  4. Water resistant.
  5. Mold and mildew resistant.
  6. VOC: Maximum 75 g/L (less water).
  7. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10 inch wg (2500 Pa), positive and negative.
  8. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
  9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.
- D. Solvent-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:
1. Application Method: Brush on.
  2. Base: Synthetic rubber resin.
  3. Solvent: Toluene and heptane.
  4. Solids Content: Minimum 60 percent.
  5. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 60.
  6. Water resistant.
  7. Mold and mildew resistant.
  8. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg (2500 Pa), positive or negative.
  9. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
  10. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.
- E. Flanged Joint Sealant: Comply with ASTM C920.
1. General: Single-component, acid-curing, silicone, elastomeric.
  2. Type: S.
  3. Grade: NS.
  4. Class: 25.
  5. Use: O.
- F. Flange Gaskets: Butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM polymer with polyisobutylene plasticizer.
- G. Round Duct Joint O-Ring Seals:
1. Seal is to provide maximum leakage class of 3 cfm/100 sq. ft. at 1-inch wg (0.14 L/s per sq. m at 250 Pa) and is to be rated for 10-inch wg (2500-Pa) static-pressure class, positive or negative.
  2. EPDM O-ring to seal in concave bead in coupling or fitting spigot.

3. Double-lipped, EPDM O-ring seal, mechanically fastened to factory-fabricated couplings and fitting spigots.

## **2.07 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS**

- A. Hanger Rods for Noncorrosive Environments: Galvanized-steel rods and nuts.
- B. Hanger Rods for Corrosive Environments: Electro galvanized, all-thread rods or galvanized rods with threads painted with zinc-chromate primer after installation.
- C. Strap and Rod Sizes: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1 (Table 5-1M), "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct."
- D. Steel Cables for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel complying with ASTM A603.
- E. Steel Cables for Stainless Steel Ducts: Stainless steel complying with ASTM A492.
- F. Steel Cable End Connections: Galvanized-steel assemblies with brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for duct hanger service; with an automatic-locking and clamping device.
- G. Duct Attachments: Sheet metal screws, blind rivets, or self-tapping metal screws; compatible with duct materials.
- H. Trapeze and Riser Supports:
  1. Supports for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized-steel shapes and plates.
  2. Supports for Stainless Steel Ducts: Stainless steel shapes and plates.
  3. Supports for Aluminum Ducts: Aluminum or galvanized steel coated with zinc chromate.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 DUCT INSTALLATION**

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of duct system. Indicated duct locations, configurations, and arrangements were used to size ducts and calculate friction loss for air-handling equipment sizing and for other design considerations. Install duct systems as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings and coordination drawings.
- B. Install ducts in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install ducts in maximum practical lengths with fewest possible joints.
- D. Install factory- or shop-fabricated fittings for changes in direction, size, and shape and for branch connections.
- E. Unless otherwise indicated, install ducts vertically and horizontally, and parallel and perpendicular to building lines.
- F. Install ducts close to walls, overhead construction, columns, and other structural and permanent enclosure elements of building.
- G. Install ducts with a clearance of 1 inch (25 mm), plus allowance for insulation thickness.
- H. Route ducts to avoid passing through transformer vaults and electrical equipment rooms and enclosures.
- I. Where ducts pass through non-fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls and are exposed to view, cover the opening between the partition and duct or duct insulation with sheet metal flanges of same metal thickness as the duct. Overlap openings on four sides by at least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm).
- J. Install fire[, combination fire/smoke,] and smoke dampers where indicated on Drawings and as required by code, and by local authorities having jurisdiction. Comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers and specific installation requirements of the damper UL listing.
- K. Install heating coils, cooling coils, air filters, dampers, and all other duct-mounted accessories in air ducts where indicated on Drawings.

- L. Protect duct interiors from moisture, construction debris and dust, and other foreign materials both before and after installation. Comply with SMACNA's "IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction," Appendix G, "Duct Cleanliness for New Construction Guidelines."
- M. Elbows: Use long-radius elbows wherever they fit.
  - 1. Fabricate 90-degree rectangular mitered elbows to include turning vanes.
  - 2. Fabricate 90-degree round elbows with a minimum of three segments for 12 inches (300 mm) and smaller and a minimum of five segments for 14 inches (350 mm) and larger.
- N. Branch Connections: Use lateral or conical branch connections.

### **3.02 INSTALLATION OF EXPOSED DUCTWORK**

- A. Protect ducts exposed in finished spaces from being dented, scratched, or damaged.
- B. Trim duct sealants flush with metal. Create a smooth and uniform exposed bead. Do not use two-part tape sealing system.
- C. Grind welds to provide smooth surface free of burrs, sharp edges, and weld splatter. When welding stainless steel with a No. 3 or 4 finish, grind the welds flush, polish the exposed welds, and treat the welds to remove discoloration caused by welding.
- D. Maintain consistency, symmetry, and uniformity in arrangement and fabrication of fittings, hangers and supports, duct accessories, and air outlets.
- E. Repair or replace damaged sections and finished work that does not comply with these requirements.

### **3.03 DUCT SEALING**

- A. Seal ducts for duct static-pressure, seal classes, and leakage classes specified in "Duct Schedule" Article in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- B. Seal ducts at a minimum to the following seal classes in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible":
  - 1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
  - 2. Outdoor, Supply-Air Ducts: Seal Class A.
  - 3. Outdoor, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class C.
  - 4. Outdoor, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class C.
  - 5. Unconditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes 2-Inch wg (500 Pa) and Lower: Seal Class B.
  - 6. Unconditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes Higher Than 2-Inch wg (500 Pa): Seal Class A.
  - 7. Unconditioned Space, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class C.
  - 8. Unconditioned Space, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class B.
  - 9. Conditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes 2-Inch wg (500 Pa) and Lower: Seal Class C.
  - 10. Conditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes Higher Than 2-Inch wg (500 Pa): Seal Class B.
  - 11. Conditioned Space, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class B.
  - 12. Conditioned Space, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class C.

### **3.04 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION**

- A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 5, "Hangers and Supports."
- B. Building Attachments: Concrete inserts, powder-actuated fasteners, or structural-steel fasteners appropriate for construction materials to which hangers are being attached.
  - 1. Where practical, install concrete inserts before placing concrete.
  - 2. Install powder-actuated concrete fasteners after concrete is placed and completely cured.

3. Use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for standard-weight aggregate concretes or for slabs more than 4 inches (100 mm) thick.
  4. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for lightweight-aggregate concretes or for slabs less than 4 inches (100 mm) thick.
- C. Hanger Spacing: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1 (Table 5-1M), "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct," for maximum hanger spacing; install hangers and supports within 24 inches (610 mm) of each elbow and within 48 inches (1220 mm) of each branch intersection.
- D. Hangers Exposed to View: Threaded rod and angle or channel supports.
- E. Support vertical ducts with steel angles or channel secured to the sides of the duct with welds, bolts, sheet metal screws, or blind rivets; support at each floor and at a maximum intervals of 16 feet (5 m).
- F. Install upper attachments to structures. Select and size upper attachments with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

### 3.05 DUCTWORK CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections to equipment with flexible connectors complying with Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for branch, outlet and inlet, and terminal unit connections.

### 3.06 PAINTING

- A. Paint interior of metal ducts that are visible through registers and grilles and that do not have duct liner. Apply one coat of flat, black, latex paint over a compatible galvanized-steel primer. Paint materials and application requirements are specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."

### 3.07 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Leakage Tests:
  1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual." Submit a test report for each test.
  2. Test the following systems:
    - a. Ducts with a Pressure Class Higher Than 2-Inch wg (750 Pa): Test representative duct sections, selected by Architect from sections installed, totaling no less than 25 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
  3. Disassemble, reassemble, and seal segments of systems to accommodate leakage testing and for compliance with test requirements.
  4. Testing of each duct section is to be performed with access doors, coils, filters, dampers, and other duct-mounted devices in place as designed. No devices are to be removed or blanked off so as to reduce or prevent additional leakage.
  5. Test for leaks before applying external insulation.
  6. Conduct tests at static pressures equal to maximum design pressure of system or section being tested. If static-pressure classes are not indicated, test system at maximum system design pressure. Do not pressurize systems above maximum design operating pressure.
  7. Give seven days' advance notice for testing.
- C. Duct System Cleanliness Tests:
  1. Visually inspect duct system to ensure that no visible contaminants are present.
  2. Test sections of metal duct system, chosen randomly by Owner, for cleanliness in accordance with "Description of Method 3 - NADCA Vacuum Test" in NADCA ACR, "Assessment, Cleaning and Restoration of HVAC Systems."

- a. Acceptable Cleanliness Level: Net weight of debris collected on the filter media is to not exceed 0.75 mg/100 sq. cm.
- D. Duct system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.08 DUCT CLEANING

- A. Clean new duct system(s) before testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- B. For cleaning of existing ductwork, see Section 230130.52 "Existing HVAC Air Distribution System Cleaning."
- C. Use duct cleaning methodology as indicated in NADCA ACR.
- D. Use service openings for entry and inspection.
  - 1. Provide openings with access panels appropriate for duct static-pressure and leakage class at dampers, coils, and any other locations where required for inspection and cleaning access. Provide insulated panels for insulated or lined duct. Patch insulation and liner as recommended by duct liner manufacturer. Comply with Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for access panels and doors.
  - 2. Disconnect and reconnect flexible ducts as needed for cleaning and inspection.
  - 3. Remove and reinstall ceiling to gain access during the cleaning process.
- E. Particulate Collection and Odor Control:
  - 1. When venting vacuuming system inside the building, use HEPA filtration with 99.97 percent collection efficiency for 0.3-micron-size (or larger) particles.
  - 2. When venting vacuuming system to outdoors, use filter to collect debris removed from HVAC system, and locate exhaust downwind and away from air intakes and other points of entry into building.
- F. Clean the following components by removing surface contaminants and deposits:
  - 1. Air outlets and inlets (registers, grilles, and diffusers).
  - 2. Supply, return, and exhaust fans including fan housings, plenums (except ceiling supply and return plenums), scrolls, blades or vanes, shafts, baffles, dampers, and drive assemblies.
  - 3. Air-handling unit internal surfaces and components including mixing box, coil section, air wash systems, spray eliminators, condensate drain pans, humidifiers and dehumidifiers, filters and filter sections, and condensate collectors and drains.
  - 4. Coils and related components.
  - 5. Return-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes except in ceiling plenums and mechanical equipment rooms.
  - 6. Supply-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes.
  - 7. Dedicated exhaust and ventilation components and makeup air systems.
- G. Mechanical Cleaning Methodology:
  - 1. Clean metal duct systems using mechanical cleaning methods that extract contaminants from within duct systems and remove contaminants from building.
  - 2. Use vacuum-collection devices that are operated continuously during cleaning. Connect vacuum device to downstream end of duct sections so areas being cleaned are under negative pressure.
  - 3. Use mechanical agitation to dislodge debris adhered to interior duct surfaces without damaging integrity of metal ducts, duct liner, or duct accessories.
  - 4. Clean fibrous-glass duct liner with HEPA vacuuming equipment; do not permit duct liner to get wet. Replace fibrous-glass duct liner that is damaged, deteriorated, or delaminated or that has friable material, mold, or fungus growth.
  - 5. Clean coils and coil drain pans in accordance with NADCA ACR. Keep drain pan operational. Rinse coils with clean water to remove latent residues and cleaning materials; comb and straighten fins.
  - 6. Provide drainage and cleanup for wash-down procedures.

7. Antimicrobial Agents and Coatings: Apply EPA-registered antimicrobial agents if fungus is present. Apply antimicrobial agents in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions after removal of surface deposits and debris.

### 3.09 STARTUP

- A. Air Balance: Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC."

### 3.10 DUCT SCHEDULE

- A. Fabricate ducts with galvanized sheet steel except as otherwise indicated and as follows:
  1. Fabricate all ducts to achieve SMACNA pressure class, seal class, and leakage class as indicated below.
- B. Supply Ducts:
  1. Ducts Connected to Fan Coil Units, Furnaces, Heat Pumps, and Terminal Units:
    - a. Pressure Class: Positive 2- (500) inch wg (Pa).
    - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
    - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 2.
    - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 2.
  2. Ducts Connected to Variable-Air-Volume Air-Handling Units:
    - a. Pressure Class: Positive 3- (750) inch wg (Pa).
    - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
    - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 2.
    - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 2.
  3. Ducts Connected to Equipment Not Listed Above:
    - a. Pressure Class: Positive 2- (500) inch wg (Pa).
    - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
    - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 2.
    - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 2.
- C. Return Ducts:
  1. Ducts Connected to Fan Coil Units, Furnaces, Heat Pumps, and Terminal Units:
    - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2- (500) inch wg (Pa).
    - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
    - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 2.
    - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 2.
  2. Ducts Connected to Air-Handling Units:
    - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 3- (750) inch wg (Pa).
    - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
    - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 2.
    - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 2.
- D. Exhaust Ducts:
  1. Ducts Connected to Fans Exhausting (ASHRAE 62.1, Class 1 and 2) Air:
    - a. Pressure Class: Negative 2- (500) inch wg (Pa).
    - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A if negative pressure, and A if positive pressure.
    - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 2.
    - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 2.
- E. Intermediate Reinforcement:
  1. Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel.
  2. Stainless Steel Ducts:
    - a. Exposed to Airstream: Match duct material.
    - b. Not Exposed to Airstream: Match duct material.
  3. Aluminum Ducts: Aluminum.
- F. Liner:
  1. Supply-Air Ducts: Fibrous-glass-free, natural fiber, 1 (25) inch (mm) thick.



2. Return-Air Ducts: Fibrous glass, Type I, 1 (25) inch (mm) thick.
  3. Transfer Ducts: Fibrous glass, Type I, 1 (25) inch (mm) thick.
- G. Elbow Configuration:
1. Rectangular Duct - Requirements for Different Velocities: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-2, "Rectangular Elbows."
    - a. Velocity 1000 fpm (5 m/s) or Lower:
      - 1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
      - 2) Mitered Type RE 4 without vanes.
    - b. Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm (5 to 7.6 m/s):
      - 1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio.
      - 2) Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
      - 3) Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
    - c. Velocity 1500 fpm (7.6 m/s) or Higher:
      - 1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
      - 2) Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
      - 3) Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
  2. Rectangular Duct - Requirements for All Velocities: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-2, "Rectangular Elbows."
    - a. Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
    - b. Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
    - c. Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
  3. Round Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-4, "Round Duct Elbows."
    - a. Minimum Radius-to-Diameter Ratio and Elbow Segments: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 3-1, "Mitered Elbows." Elbows with less than 90-degree change of direction have proportionately fewer segments.
      - 1) Velocity 1000 fpm (5 m/s) or Lower: 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and three segments for 90-degree elbow.
      - 2) Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm (5 to 7.6 m/s): 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and four segments for 90-degree elbow.
      - 3) Velocity 1500 fpm (7.6 m/s) or Higher: 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and five segments for 90-degree elbow.
      - 4) Radius-to Diameter Ratio: 1.5.
    - b. Round Elbows, 12 (305) Inches (mm) and Smaller in Diameter: Stamped or pleated.
    - c. Round Elbows, 14 (356) Inches (mm) and Larger in Diameter: Standing seam.
- H. Branch Configuration:
1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-6, "Branch Connection."
    - a. Rectangular Main to Rectangular Branch: 45-degree entry.
    - b. Rectangular Main to Round Branch: Conical spin in.
  2. Round and Flat Oval: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees." Saddle taps are permitted in existing duct.
    - a. Velocity 1000 fpm (5 m/s) or Lower: 90-degree tap.
    - b. Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm (5 to 7.6 m/s): Conical tap.
    - c. Velocity 1500 fpm (7.6 m/s) or Higher: 45-degree lateral.

**END OF SECTION 23 31 13**

**SECTION 23 33 00  
AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
1. Backdraft and pressure relief dampers.
  2. Manual volume dampers.
  3. Control dampers.
  4. Fire dampers.
  5. Flange connectors.
  6. Turning vanes.
  7. Remote damper operators.
  8. Duct-mounted access doors.
  9. Duct access panel assemblies.
  10. Flexible connectors.
  11. Duct accessory hardware.
- B. Related Requirements:
1. Section 233346 "Flexible Ducts" for insulated and non-insulated flexible ducts.

**1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
1. For duct silencers, include pressure drop, dynamic insertion loss, and self-generated noise data. Include breakout noise calculations for high-transmission-loss casings.
- B. Shop Drawings: For duct accessories. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
1. Detail duct accessories' fabrication and installation in ducts and other construction. Include dimensions, weights, loads, and required clearances; and method of field assembly into duct systems and other construction. Include the following:
    - a. Special fittings.
    - b. Manual volume damper installations.
    - c. Control-damper installations.
    - d. Fire-damper, smoke-damper, combination fire- and smoke-damper, ceiling, and corridor-damper installations, including sleeves; and duct-mounted access doors and remote damper operators.

**1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, or BIM model, drawn to scale, on which ceiling-mounted access panels and access doors required for access to duct accessories are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved.
- B. Source quality-control reports.

**1.05 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air duct accessories to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

**1.06 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
1. Fusible Links: Furnish quantity equal to 10 percent of amount installed.

## **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Comply with NFPA 90A and NFPA 90B.
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.

### **2.02 MANUAL VOLUME DAMPERS**

- A. Standard, Steel, Manual Volume Dampers:
  - 1. Performance:
    - a. Leakage Rating Class III: Leakage not exceeding 40 cfm/sq. ft. (203 L/s per sq. m) against 1-inch wg (250-Pa) differential static pressure.
  - 2. Construction:
    - a. Linkage out of airstream.
    - b. Suitable for horizontal or vertical airflow applications.
  - 3. Frames:
    - a. Hat-shaped, 16-gauge- (1.6-mm-) thick, galvanized sheet steel.
    - b. Mitered and welded corners.
    - c. Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
  - 4. Blades:
    - a. Multiple or single blade.
    - b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
    - c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
    - d. Galvanized steel; 16 gauge (1.6 mm) thick.
  - 5. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel.
  - 6. Bearings:
    - a. Oil-impregnated bronze.
    - b. Dampers mounted with vertical blades to have thrust bearing at each end of every blade.
  - 7. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.
  - 8. Locking device to hold damper blades in a fixed position without vibration.
- B. Standard, Aluminum, Manual Volume Dampers:
  - 1. Performance:
    - a. Leakage Rating Class III: Leakage not exceeding 40 cfm/sq. ft. (203 L/s per sq. m) against 1-inch wg (250-Pa) differential static pressure.
  - 2. Construction:
    - a. Linkage out of airstream.
    - b. Suitable for horizontal or vertical airflow applications.
  - 3. Frames:
    - a. Hat-shaped, 0.10-inch- (2.5-mm-) thick, aluminum sheet channels.
    - b. Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
  - 4. Blades:
    - a. Multiple or single blade.
    - b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
    - c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
    - d. Roll-Formed Aluminum Blades: 0.10-inch- (2.5-mm-) thick aluminum sheet.
    - e. Extruded-Aluminum Blades: 0.050-inch- (1.2-mm-) thick extruded aluminum.
  - 5. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel.
  - 6. Bearings:
    - a. Oil-impregnated bronze.
    - b. Dampers mounted with vertical blades to have thrust bearing at each end of every blade.

7. Tie Bars and Brackets: Aluminum.
8. Locking device to hold damper blades in a fixed position without vibration.
- C. Low-Leakage, Steel, Manual Volume Dampers:
  1. Performance:
    - a. Leakage:
      - 1) Class IA: Leakage shall not exceed 3 cfm/sq. ft. (15.2 L/s per sq. m) against 1-inch wg (250-Pa) differential static pressure.
      - 2) Class I: Leakage shall not exceed 4 cfm/sq. ft. (20 L/s per sq. m) against 1-inch wg (250-Pa) differential static pressure.
      - 3) Class II: Leakage shall not exceed 10 cfm/sq. ft. (51 L/s per sq. m) against 1-inch wg (250-Pa) differential static pressure.
  2. Construction:
    - a. Linkage: Out of airstream.
    - b. Suitable for horizontal or vertical airflow applications.
  3. Frames:
    - a. Hat, U, or angle shaped.
    - b. Thickness: 16-gauge (1.6-mm) galvanized sheet steel
    - c. Mitered and welded corners.
    - d. Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
  4. Blades:
    - a. Multiple or single blade.
    - b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
    - c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
    - d. Galvanized, roll-formed steel; 16 gauge (1.6 mm) thick.
  5. Blade Edging Seals:
    - a. Inflatable seal blade edging or replaceable rubber seals.
  6. Blade Jamb Seals: Neoprene.
  7. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel.
  8. Bearings:
    - a. Oil-impregnated bronze.
    - b. Dampers mounted with vertical blades to have thrust bearing at each end of every blade.
  9. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.
  10. Locking device to hold damper blades in a fixed position without vibration.
- D. Low-Leakage, Aluminum, Manual Volume Dampers:
  1. Performance:
    - a. AMCA Certification: Test and rate in accordance with AMCA 511
    - b. Leakage:
      - 1) Class IA: Leakage shall not exceed 3 cfm/sq. ft. (15.2 L/s per sq. m) against 1-inch wg (250-Pa) differential static pressure.
      - 2) Class I: Leakage shall not exceed 4 cfm/sq. ft. (20 L/s per sq. m) against 1-inch wg (250-Pa) differential static pressure.
      - 3) Class II: Leakage shall not exceed 10 cfm/sq. ft. (51 L/s per sq. m) against 1-inch wg (250-Pa) differential static pressure.
  2. Construction:
    - a. Linkage out of airstream.
    - b. Suitable for horizontal or vertical airflow applications.
  3. Frames:
    - a. Hat, U, or angle shaped.
    - b. Thickness: 0.08-inch (2.0-mm) aluminum sheet channels.
    - c. Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
  4. Blades:
    - a. Multiple or single blade.
    - b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.

- c. Extruded-Aluminum Blades: 0.050-inch- (1.2-mm-) thick extruded aluminum.
5. Blade Edging Seals:
  - a. Inflatable seal blade edging or replaceable rubber seals.
6. Blade Jamb Seals: Neoprene.
7. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel.
8. Bearings:
  - a. Oil-impregnated bronze.
  - b. Dampers mounted with vertical blades to have thrust bearings at each end of every blade.
9. Tie Bars and Brackets: Aluminum.
10. Locking device to hold damper blades in a fixed position without vibration.
- E. Jackshaft:
  1. Size: 0.5-inch (13-mm) diameter.
  2. Material: Galvanized-steel pipe rotating within pipe-bearing assembly mounted on supports at each mullion and at each end of multiple-damper assemblies.
  3. Length and Number of Mountings: As required to connect linkage of each damper in multiple-damper assembly.
- F. Damper Hardware:
  1. Zinc-plated, die-cast core with dial and handle, made of 3/32-inch- (2.4-mm-) thick zinc-plated steel, and a 3/4-inch (19-mm) hexagon locking nut.
  2. Include center hole to suit damper operating-rod size.
  3. Include elevated platform for insulated duct mounting.

### 2.03 FIRE DAMPERS

- A. Type: Static and dynamic; rated and labeled in accordance with UL 555 by an NRTL.
- B. Closing rating in ducts up to 4-inch wg (1-kPa) static pressure class and minimum 2000 fpm (1 m/s) velocity.
- C. Fire Rating: 1-1/2 hours.
- D. Frame: Curtain type with blades outside airstream; fabricated with roll-formed galvanized steel; with mitered and interlocking corners; gauge in accordance with UL listing.
- E. Mounting Sleeve: Factory- or field-installed, galvanized sheet steel; gauge in accordance with UL listing.
- F. Mounting Orientation: Vertical or horizontal as indicated.
- G. Blades: Roll-formed galvanized sheet steel. Material gauge is to be in accordance with UL listing.
- H. Horizontal Dampers: Include blade lock and stainless steel closure spring.
- I. Heat-Responsive Device:
  1. Replaceable, 165 deg F (74 deg C) rated, fusible links.

### 2.04 TURNING VANES

- A. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Metal Ducts: Fabricate curved blades of galvanized sheet steel; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.
  1. Acoustic Turning Vanes: Fabricate airfoil-shaped aluminum extrusions with perforated faces and fibrous-glass fill.
- B. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Nonmetal Ducts: Fabricate curved blades of resin-bonded fiberglass with acrylic polymer coating; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.
- C. General Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
- D. Vane Construction:

1. Single wall for ducts up to 48 inches (1200 mm) wide and double wall for larger dimensions.

## 2.05 DUCT-MOUNTED ACCESS DOORS

- A. Duct-Mounted Access Doors: Fabricate access panels in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figure 7-2 (7-2M), "Duct Access Doors and Panels," and Figure 7-3, "Access Doors - Round Duct."
  1. Door:
    - a. Double wall, rectangular.
    - b. Galvanized sheet metal with insulation fill and thickness as indicated for duct pressure class.
    - c. 24-gauge- (0.70-mm-) thick galvanized steel door panel.
    - d. Vision panel.
    - e. Hinges and Latches: 1-by-1-inch (25-by-25-mm) butt or piano hinge and cam latches.
    - f. Fabricate doors airtight and suitable for duct pressure class.
  2. Frame: Galvanized sheet steel, with bend-over tabs and foam gaskets.
    - a. 24-gauge- (0.70-mm-) thick galvanized steel or 0.032-inch- (0.81-mm-) thick aluminum frame.
  3. Number of Hinges and Locks:
    - a. Access Doors Less Than 12 Inches (300 mm) Square: No hinges and two sash locks.
    - b. Access Doors up to 18 Inches (460 mm) Square: Continuous and two sash locks.
    - c. Access Doors up to 24 by 48 Inches (600 by 1200 mm): Continuous and two compression latches with outside and inside handles.

## 2.06 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

- A. Fire-Performance Characteristics: Adhesives, sealants, fabric materials, and accessory materials shall have flame-spread index not exceeding 25 and smoke-developed index not exceeding 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
- B. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
- C. Materials: Flame-retardant or noncombustible fabrics.
- D. Coatings and Adhesives: Comply with UL 181, Class 1.
- E. Metal-Edged Connectors: Factory fabricated with a fabric strip 3-1/2 inches (89 mm) wide attached to two strips of 2-3/4-inch- (70-mm-) wide, 0.028-inch- (0.7-mm-) thick, galvanized sheet steel or 0.032-inch- (0.8-mm-) thick aluminum sheets. Provide metal compatible with connected ducts.
- F. Indoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with neoprene.
  1. Minimum Weight: 26 oz./sq. yd. (880 g/sq. m).
  2. Tensile Strength: 480 lbf/inch (84 N/mm) in the warp and 360 lbf/inch (63 N/mm) in the filling.
  3. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 93 deg C).
- G. Thrust Limits: Combination coil spring and elastomeric insert with spring and insert in compression, and with a load stop. Include rod and angle-iron brackets for attaching to fan discharge and duct.
  1. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
  2. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
  3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
  4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
  5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
  6. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene.

7. Coil Spring: Factory set and field adjustable for a maximum of 1/4-inch (6-mm) movement at start and stop.

## 2.07 MATERIALS

- A. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A653/A653M.
  1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G90 (Z275).
  2. Exposed-Surface Finish: Mill phosphatized.
- B. Aluminum Sheets: Comply with ASTM B209 (ASTM B209M), Alloy 3003, Temper H14; with mill finish for concealed ducts and standard, one-side bright finish for exposed ducts.
- C. Extruded Aluminum: Comply with ASTM B221 (ASTM B221M), Alloy 6063, Temper T6.
- D. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: Galvanized-steel reinforcement where installed on galvanized sheet metal ducts; compatible materials for aluminum and stainless steel ducts.
- E. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch (6-mm) minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches (900 mm) or less; 3/8-inch (10-mm) minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches (900 mm).

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.01 INSTALLATION

- A. Install duct accessories in accordance with applicable details in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts and in NAIMA AH116 for fibrous-glass ducts.
- B. Install duct accessories of materials suited to duct materials; use galvanized-steel accessories in galvanized-steel and fibrous-glass ducts, stainless steel accessories in stainless steel ducts, and aluminum accessories in aluminum ducts.
- C. Where multiple damper sections are necessary to achieve required dimensions, provide reinforcement to fully support damper assembly when fully closed at full system design static pressure.
- D. Install volume dampers at points on supply, return, and exhaust systems where branches extend from larger ducts. Where dampers are installed in ducts having duct liner, install dampers with hat channels of same depth as liner, and terminate liner with nosing at hat channel.
  1. Install steel volume dampers in steel ducts.
  2. Install aluminum volume dampers in aluminum ducts.
- E. Set dampers to fully open position before testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- F. Install test holes at fan inlets and outlets and elsewhere as indicated and as needed for testing and balancing.
- G. Install fire dampers in accordance with UL listing.
- H. Install duct access doors on sides of ducts to allow for inspecting, adjusting, and maintaining accessories and equipment at the following locations:
  1. On both sides of duct coils.
  2. At outdoor-air intakes and mixed-air plenums.
  3. At drain pans and seals.
  4. Downstream from manual volume dampers, control dampers, backdraft dampers, and equipment.
  5. Adjacent to and close enough to fire or smoke dampers, to reset or reinstall fusible links. Access doors for access to fire or smoke dampers having fusible links shall be pressure relief access doors and shall be outward operation for access doors installed upstream from dampers and inward operation for access doors installed downstream from dampers.
- I. Install access doors with swing against duct static pressure.
- J. Access Door Sizes:
  1. One-Hand or Inspection Access: 8 by 5 inches (200 by 125 mm).
  2. Two-Hand Access: 12 by 6 inches (300 by 150 mm).

3. Head and Hand Access: 18 by 10 inches (460 by 250 mm).
  4. Head and Shoulders Access: 21 by 14 inches (530 by 355 mm).
  5. Body Access: 25 by 14 inches (635 by 355 mm).
  6. Body plus Ladder Access: 25 by 17 inches (635 by 430 mm).
- K. Label access doors according to Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" to indicate the purpose of access door.
- L. Install flexible connectors to connect ducts to equipment.
- M. For fans developing static pressures of 5 inches wg (1250 Pa) and more, cover flexible connectors with loaded vinyl sheet held in place with metal straps.
- N. Install duct test holes where required for testing and balancing purposes.
- O. Install thrust limits at centerline of thrust, symmetrical on both sides of equipment. Attach thrust limits at centerline of thrust and adjust to a maximum of 1/4-inch (6-mm) movement during start and stop of fans.

### **3.02 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Tests and Inspections:
1. Operate dampers to verify full range of movement.
  2. Inspect locations of access doors, and verify that size and location of access doors are adequate to perform required operation.
  3. Operate fire, smoke, and combination fire and smoke dampers to verify full range of movement and that proper heat-response device is installed.
  4. Inspect turning vanes for proper and secure installation, and verify that vanes do not move or rattle.
  5. Operate remote damper operators to verify full range of movement of operator and damper.

**END OF SECTION 23 33 00**



This page intentionally left blank

**SECTION 23 33 46  
FLEXIBLE DUCTS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Non-insulated flexible ducts.
  - 2. Insulated flexible ducts.

**1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For flexible ducts.
  - 1. Include plans showing locations and mounting and attachment details.

**1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which ceiling-mounted access panels and access doors required for access to duct accessories are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTION**

- A. Comply with NFPA 90A, "Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems," and with NFPA 90B, "Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems."
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.
- C. Comply with the Air Diffusion Council's "ADC Flexible Air Duct Test Code FD 72-R1."
- D. Comply with ASTM E96/E96M, "Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials."

**2.02 NON-INSULATED FLEXIBLE DUCTS**

- A. Non-Insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, two-ply vinyl film supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire.
  - 1. Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg (2500 Pa) positive and 1.0-inch wg (250 Pa) negative.
  - 2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm (20 m/s).
  - 3. Temperature Range: Minus 10 to plus 160 deg F (Minus 23 to plus 71 deg C).
- B. Non-Insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, black polymer film supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire.
  - 1. Pressure Rating: 4-inch wg (1000 Pa) positive and 0.5-inch wg (125 Pa) negative.
  - 2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm (20 m/s).
  - 3. Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 175 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 79 deg C).
- C. Non-Insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, multiple layers of aluminum laminate supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire.
  - 1. Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg (2500 Pa) positive and 1.0-inch wg (250 Pa) negative.
  - 2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm (20 m/s).
  - 3. Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 210 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 99 deg C).
- D. Non-Insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, aluminum laminate and polyester film with latex adhesive supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire.
  - 1. Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg (2500 Pa) positive and 1.0-inch wg (250 Pa) negative.
  - 2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm (20 m/s).

3. Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 210 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 99 deg C).
- E. Non-Insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 0, interlocking spiral of aluminum foil.
  1. Pressure Rating: 8-inch wg (2280 Pa) positive or negative.
  2. Maximum Air Velocity: 5000 fpm (25 m/s).
  3. Temperature Range: Minus 100 to plus 435 deg F (Minus 73 to plus 224 deg C).

### **2.03 INSULATED FLEXIBLE DUCTS**

- A. Insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, two-ply vinyl film supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire; fibrous-glass insulation; polyethylene vapor-barrier film.
  1. Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg (2500 Pa) positive and 1.0-inch wg (250 Pa) negative.
  2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm (20 m/s).
  3. Temperature Range: Minus 10 to plus 160 deg F (Minus 23 to plus 71 deg C).
  4. Insulation R-Value: Comply with ASHRAE/IES 90.1.
- B. Insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, black polymer film supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire; fibrous-glass insulation; polyethylene vapor-barrier film.
  1. Pressure Rating: 4-inch wg (1000 Pa) positive and 0.5-inch wg (125 Pa) negative.
  2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm (20 m/s).
  3. Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 175 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 79 deg C).
  4. Insulation R-Value: Comply with ASHRAE/IES 90.1.
- C. Insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, multiple layers of aluminum laminate supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire; fibrous-glass insulation; polyethylene vapor-barrier film.
  1. Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg (2500 Pa) positive and 1.0-inch wg (250 Pa) negative.
  2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm (20 m/s).
  3. Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 210 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 99 deg C).
  4. Insulation R-Value: Comply with ASHRAE/IES 90.1.
- D. Insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, aluminum laminate and polyester film with latex adhesive supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire; fibrous-glass insulation; polyethylene vapor-barrier film.
  1. Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg (2500 Pa) positive and 1.0-inch wg (250 Pa) negative.
  2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm (20 m/s).
  3. Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 210 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 99 deg C).
  4. Insulation R-Value: Comply with ASHRAE/IES 90.1.
- E. Insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 0, interlocking spiral of aluminum foil; fibrous-glass insulation; polyethylene vapor-barrier film.
  1. Pressure Rating: 8-inch wg (2280 Pa) positive or negative.
  2. Maximum Air Velocity: 5000 fpm (25 m/s).
  3. Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 250 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 121 deg C).
  4. Insulation R-Value: Comply with ASHRAE/IES 90.1.

### **2.04 FLEXIBLE DUCT CONNECTORS**

- A. Clamps: Stainless-steel band with cadmium-plated hex screw to tighten band with a worm-gear action in sizes 3 through 18 inches (75 through 460 mm), to suit duct size.
- B. Non-Clamp Connectors: Adhesive.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install flexible ducts according to applicable details in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts and in NAIMA AH116, "Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards," for fibrous-glass ducts.
- B. Install in indoor applications only. Flexible ductwork should not be exposed to UV lighting.
- C. Connect terminal units to supply ducts[ directly or] with maximum 12-inch (300-mm) lengths of flexible duct. Do not use flexible ducts to change directions.

- D. Connect diffusers or light troffer boots to ducts directly or with maximum 60-inch (1500-mm) lengths of flexible duct clamped or strapped in place.
- E. Connect flexible ducts to metal ducts with adhesive plus sheet metal screws.
- F. Install duct test holes where required for testing and balancing purposes.
- G. Installation:
  - 1. Install ducts fully extended.
  - 2. Do not bend ducts across sharp corners.
  - 3. Bends of flexible ducting shall not exceed a minimum of one duct diameter.
  - 4. Avoid contact with metal fixtures, water lines, pipes, or conduits.
  - 5. Install flexible ducts in a direct line, without sags, twists, or turns.
- H. Supporting Flexible Ducts:
  - 1. Suspend flexible ducts with bands 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) wide or wider and spaced a maximum of 48 inches (1200 mm) apart. Maximum centerline sag between supports shall not exceed 1/2 inch (13 mm) per 12 inches (300 mm).
  - 2. Install extra supports at bends placed approximately one duct diameter from center line of the bend.
  - 3. Ducts may rest on ceiling joists or truss supports. Spacing between supports shall not exceed the maximum spacing per manufacturer's written installation instructions.
  - 4. Vertically installed ducts shall be stabilized by support straps at a maximum of 72 inches (1800 mm) o.c.

**END OF SECTION 23 33 46**

This page intentionally left blank

**SECTION 23 36 00  
AIR TERMINAL UNITS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Modulating, single-duct air terminal units.
  - 2. Series fan-powered air terminal units.
  - 3. Balancing terminal units.
  - 4. Pressure-control terminal units.
  - 5. Casing liner.

**1.02 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of air terminal unit.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for air terminal units.
  - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: For air terminal units.
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.
  - 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
  - 4. Hangers and supports, including methods for duct and building attachment and vibration isolation.
- C. Delegated Design Submittal: For vibration isolation and supports, indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
  - 1. Materials, fabrication, assembly, and spacing of hangers and supports.
  - 2. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting vibration isolators.

**1.03 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Coordination Drawings: Floor plans and other details, or BIM model, drawn to scale, indicating the items described in this Section, and coordinated with all building trades.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

**1.04 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air terminal units to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
  - 1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
    - a. Instructions for resetting minimum and maximum air volumes.
    - b. Instructions for adjusting software set points.

**1.05 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Fan-Powered-Unit Filters: Furnish one spare filter(s) for each filter installed.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a Qualified Electrical Testing Laboratory, and marked for intended location and application.

- B. ASHRAE 62.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment," and Section 7 - "Construction and System Start-up."
- C. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, "Section 6 - Heating, Ventilating, and Air Conditioning."

## **2.02 MODULATING, SINGLE-DUCT AIR TERMINAL UNITS**

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Price Industries, Inc.
  - 2. Nailor Industries
  - 3. Titus
  - 4. Krueger
- B. Description: Volume-damper assembly inside unit casing with control components inside a protective metal shroud.
- C. Casing: Minimum 20-gauge thick galvanized steel.
  - 1. Casing Liner: Comply with requirements in "Casing Liner" Article below for "Casing Liner, Fibrous Glass" Paragraph.
  - 2. Air Inlet: Round stub connection or S-slip and drive connections for duct attachment.
  - 3. Air Outlet: S-slip and drive connections, size matching inlet size.
  - 4. Access: Removable panels for access to parts requiring service, adjustment, or maintenance; with airtight gasket.
- D. Volume Damper: Galvanized steel with peripheral gasket and self-lubricating bearings.
  - 1. Maximum Damper Leakage: AHRI 880 rated, 2 percent of nominal airflow at 3-inch wg (750-Pa) inlet static pressure.
- E. Velocity Sensors: Multipoint array with velocity inlet sensors.
- F. Electric-Resistance Heating Coils: Nickel-chromium heating wire, free of expansion noise and hum, mounted in ceramic inserts in a galvanized-steel housing; with primary automatic, and secondary manual, reset thermal cutouts. Terminate elements in stainless steel, machine-staked terminals secured with stainless steel hardware. Provide electric-resistance heating coils for air terminal units scheduled on Drawings.
  - 1. SCR controlled.
  - 2. Access door interlocked disconnect switch.
  - 3. Downstream air temperature sensor with local connection to override discharge-air temperature to not exceed a maximum temperature set point (adjustable).
  - 4. Nickel chrome 80/20 heating elements.
  - 5. Airflow switch for proof of airflow.
  - 6. Fan interlock contacts.
  - 7. Fuses in terminal box for overcurrent protection (for coils of more than 48 A).
  - 8. Magnetic contactor for each step of control (for three-phase coils).
- G. Electric Controls:
  - 1. Electric Damper Actuator: 24 V, fail in last position.
  - 2. Electric Thermostat: Wall-mounted electronic type with clock display, temperature display in Fahrenheit and Celsius, and space temperature set point.
  - 3. Air Volume Controls: Pressure-dependent volume controls with field-adjustable minimum and maximum position stops.
- H. Electronic Controls:
  - 1. Electronic Damper Actuator: 24 V, fail in last position.
  - 2. Electronic Thermostat: Wall-mounted electronic type with temperature set-point display in Fahrenheit and Celsius.
  - 3. Electronic Air Volume Controller: Pressure-independent analog electronic controller, factory calibrated and field adjustable to minimum and maximum air volumes; provides consistent airflow to the space in response to electronic thermostat signal while compensating for inlet static-pressure variations of up to 4 inches wg (1000 Pa); includes a multipoint velocity sensor at air inlet.

- I. Direct Digital Controls:
  1. Terminal Unit Controller: Pressure-independent, VAV controller and integrated actuator, and electronic airflow transducer with multipoint velocity sensor at air inlet, factory calibrated to minimum and maximum air volumes.
    - a. Occupied and unoccupied operating mode.
    - b. Remote reset of airflow or temperature set points.
    - c. Adjusting and monitoring with portable terminal.
    - d. Communication with temperature-control system specified in Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC."
  2. Room Sensor: Wall mounted with temperature set-point adjustment and access for connection of portable operator terminal.
  3. Terminal Unit Controller, Section 230923: Controller is to be factory mounted and wired by air terminal manufacturer; unit controllers, integrated actuators, and room sensors to be furnished under Section 230923 "Direct Digital Controls (DDC) for HVAC."

### 2.03 SERIES FAN-POWERED AIR TERMINAL UNITS

- A. Manufacturers:
  1. Price Industries, Inc.
  2. Nailor Industries
  3. Titus
  4. Krueger
- B. Description: Volume-damper assembly and centrifugal fan in series arrangement inside unit casing with control components inside a protective metal shroud.
  1. Designed for quiet operation.
  2. Low-profile design.
- C. Casing: Minimum 20-gauge thick galvanized steel.
  1. Casing Liner: Comply with requirements in "Casing Liner" Article below for "Casing Liner, Fibrous Glass" Paragraph.
  2. Air Inlets: Round stub connections or S-slip and drive connections for duct attachment.
  3. Air Outlet: S-slip and drive connections.
  4. Access: Removable panels for access to parts requiring service, adjustment, or maintenance; with airtight gasket and quarter-turn latches.
  5. Fan: Forward-curved centrifugal.
- D. Volume Damper: Galvanized steel with flow-sensing ring and peripheral gasket and self-lubricating bearings.
  1. Maximum Damper Leakage: AHRI 880 rated, 2 percent of nominal airflow at 3-inch wg (750-Pa) inlet static pressure.
- E. Velocity Sensors: Multipoint array with velocity sensors in air inlet.
- F. Fan Motor:
  1. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
  2. Type: Electronically commutated motor.
  3. Fan-Motor Assembly Isolation: Rubber isolators.
  4. Enclosure: Totally enclosed, fan cooled.
  5. Enclosure Materials: Cast iron.
  6. Efficiency: Premium efficient as defined by NEMA MG-1.
  7. Motor Speed: Variable speed.
    - a. Speed Control: Infinitely adjustable with pneumatic-electric and electronic controls.
- G. Filters:
  1. Pleated Glass Fiber: Factory-fabricated, self-supported disposable air filter with holding frames. Provide MERV 8 filters with minimum efficiency reporting value is to be in accordance with ASHRAE 522.



- H. Electric-Resistance Heating Coils: Nickel-chromium heating wire, free of expansion noise and hum, mounted in ceramic inserts in a galvanized-steel housing; with primary automatic, and secondary manual, reset thermal cutouts. Terminate elements in stainless steel, machine-staked terminals secured with stainless steel hardware. Locate coil in discharge outlet airstream. Provide electric-resistance heating coils for air terminal units scheduled on Drawings.
  - 1. SCR controlled.
  - 2. Access door interlocked disconnect switch.
  - 3. Downstream air temperature sensor with local connection to override discharge-air temperature to not exceed a maximum temperature set point (adjustable).
  - 4. Nickel chrome 80/20 heating elements.
  - 5. Airflow switch for proof of airflow.
  - 6. Fan interlock contacts.
  - 7. Fuses in terminal box for overcurrent protection (for coils of more than 48 A).
  - 8. Magnetic contactor for each step of control (for three-phase coils).
- I. Factory-Mounted and -Wired Controls: Electrical components mounted in control box with removable cover. Incorporate single-point electrical connection to power source.
  - 1. Control Transformer: Factory mounted for control voltage on electric and electronic control units with terminal strip in control box for field wiring of thermostat and power source.
  - 2. Wiring Terminations: Fan and controls to terminal strip. Terminal lugs to match quantities, sizes, and materials of branch-circuit conductors. Enclose terminal lugs in terminal box that is sized in accordance with NFPA 70.
  - 3. Disconnect Switch: Factory-mounted fuse type.
- J. Control Panel Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1, with access panel sealed from airflow and mounted on side of unit.
- K. Electronic Controls:
  - 1. Electronic Damper Actuator: 24 V, fail in last position.
  - 2. Electronic Thermostat: Wall-mounted electronic type with temperature display in Fahrenheit and Celsius.
  - 3. Electronic Air Volume Controller: Pressure-independent analog electronic controller, factory calibrated and field adjustable to minimum and maximum air volumes; provides consistent airflow to the space in response to electronic thermostat signal while compensating for inlet static-pressure variations of up to 4 inches wg (1000 Pa); includes a multipoint velocity sensor at air inlet.
- L. Direct Digital Controls:
  - 1. Terminal Unit Controller: Pressure-independent, VAV controller and integrated actuator, and electronic airflow transducer with multipoint velocity sensor at air inlet, factory calibrated to minimum and maximum air volumes.
    - a. Occupied and unoccupied operating mode.
    - b. Remote reset of airflow or temperature set points.
    - c. Adjusting and monitoring with portable terminal.
    - d. Communication with temperature-control system specified in Section 230923 "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC."
  - 2. Room Sensor: Wall mounted with temperature set-point adjustment and access for connection of portable operator terminal.
  - 3. Terminal Unit Controller, Section 230923: Controller is to be factory mounted and wired by air terminal unit manufacturer; unit controller, actuators, and room sensors are to be furnished under Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) for HVAC".

#### 2.04 CASING LINER

- A. Casing Liner, Fibrous Glass: Fibrous-glass duct liner, complying with ASTM C1071, NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B, and with NAIMA AH124.
  - 1. Minimum Thickness: 3/4 inch (19 mm).
    - a. Maximum Thermal Conductivity:

- 1) Type II, Rigid: 0.23 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F (0.033 W/m x K) at 75 deg F (24 deg C) mean temperature.
  2. Foil-Faced Liner: Minimum 0.001-inch (0.03-mm) reinforced, nonporous aluminum foil applied to matted insulation airstream face.
  3. Solid Metal Liner: Solid galvanized sheet metal encapsulating matted insulation face from airstream.
  4. Perforated Metal Liner: Perforated galvanized sheet metal encapsulating matted insulation face from airstream.
  5. Solvent-Based Liner Adhesive: Comply with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B and with ASTM C916.
- B. Casing Liner, Flexible Elastomeric: Flexible elastomeric duct liner fabricated of preformed, cellular, closed-cell, sheet materials complying with ASTM C534/C534M, Type II, Grade 1; and with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
1. Minimum Thickness: 1/2 inch (13 mm).
  2. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame-spread index of 25 and maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
  3. Liner Adhesive: As recommended by insulation manufacturer and complying with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.

## **2.05 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. AHRI 880 Certification: Test, rate, and label assembled air terminal units in accordance with AHRI 880.
- B. AHRI 880: Test and rate assembled air terminal units in accordance with AHRI 880.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 INSTALLATION, GENERAL**

- A. Comply with Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment" and Section 233113 "Metal Ducts" for hangers and supports.
- B. Install air terminal units according to NFPA 90A.
- C. Install air terminal units level and plumb. Maintain sufficient clearance for normal service and maintenance.
- D. Install wall-mounted thermostats.

### **3.02 DUCTWORK CONNECTIONS**

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts" for connecting ducts to air terminal units.
- B. Make connections to air terminal units with flexible connectors complying with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."

### **3.03 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS**

- A. Install field power to each air terminal unit electrical power connection. Coordinate with air terminal unit manufacturer and installers.
- B. Connect wiring in accordance with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- C. Ground equipment in accordance with Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- D. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, in accordance with NFPA 70 and NECA 1.
- E. Install nameplate for each electrical connection, indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection.
  1. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs, as specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

2. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs with a black background and engraved white letters at least 1/2 inch (13 mm) high.

#### **3.04 CONTROL CONNECTIONS**

- A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.
- B. Connect control wiring in accordance with Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."

#### **3.05 IDENTIFICATION**

- A. Label each air terminal unit with drawing designation, nominal airflow, maximum and minimum factory-set airflows, and coil type. Comply with requirements in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for equipment labels and warning signs and labels.

#### **3.06 STARTUP SERVICE**

- A. Perform startup service.
  1. Complete installation and startup checks in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
  2. Verify that inlet duct connections are as recommended by air terminal unit manufacturer to achieve proper performance.
  3. Verify that controls and control enclosure are accessible.
  4. Verify that control connections are complete.
  5. Verify that nameplate and identification tag are visible.
  6. Verify that controls respond to inputs as specified.

#### **3.07 ADJUSTING**

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for air terminal unit testing, adjusting, and balancing.

#### **3.08 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Testing Agency: Contractor will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- C. Perform the following tests and inspections:
  1. After installing air terminal units and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
  2. Leak Test: After installation, fill water coils and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
  3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
  4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- D. Air terminal unit will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

#### **3.09 DEMONSTRATION**

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain air terminal units.

**END OF SECTION 23 36 00**

**SECTION 23 37 13.13  
AIR DIFFUSERS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
1. Round ceiling diffusers.
  2. Rectangular and square ceiling diffusers.
  3. Perforated diffusers.
  4. Louver face diffusers.
  5. Linear bar diffusers.
  6. Linear slot diffusers.
  7. Ceiling-integral continuous slot diffusers.
- B. Related Requirements:
1. Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers and volume-control dampers not integral to diffusers.
  2. Section 233713.23 "Air Registers and Grilles" for adjustable-bar register and grilles, fixed-face registers and grilles, and linear bar grilles.
  3. Section 233713.43 "Security Registers and Grilles" for security registers and security grilles.
  4. Section 233716 "Fabric Air-Diffusion Devices" for continuous tubular diffusers.

**1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
1. Data Sheet: Indicate materials of construction, finish, and mounting details; and performance data including throw and drop, static-pressure drop, and noise ratings.
  2. Diffuser Schedule: Indicate drawing designation, room location, quantity, model number, size, and accessories furnished.
- B. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified. Actual size of smallest diffuser indicated.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For diffusers with factory-applied color finishes. Actual size of smallest diffuser indicated.
- D. Samples for Verification: For diffusers, in manufacturer's standard sizes to verify color selected. Actual size of smallest diffuser indicated.

**1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
1. Ceiling suspension assembly members.
  2. Method of attaching hangers to building structure.
  3. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
  4. Ceiling-mounted items including lighting fixtures, diffusers, grilles, speakers, sprinklers, access panels, and special moldings.
  5. Duct access panels.
- B. Source quality-control reports.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 ROUND CEILING DIFFUSERS**

- A. MANUFACTURERS
1. Price Industries: [www.price-hvac.com](http://www.price-hvac.com).

2. Titus: [www.titus-hvac.com](http://www.titus-hvac.com).
3. Tuttle and Bailey: [www.tuttleandbailey.com/sle](http://www.tuttleandbailey.com/sle).
4. Nailor

- B. Devices shall be specifically designed for variable-air-volume flows.
- C. Finish: Baked enamel, color selected by Architect.
- D. Mounting: Duct connection.
- E. Pattern: Fully adjustable.
- F. Accessories:
  1. Equalizing grid.
  2. Plaster ring.
  3. Safety chain.
  4. Wire guard.
  5. Sectorizing baffles.
  6. Operating rod extension.

## **2.02 RECTANGULAR AND SQUARE CEILING DIFFUSERS**

### **A. MANUFACTURERS**

1. Price Industries: [www.price-hvac.com](http://www.price-hvac.com).
2. Titus: [www.titus-hvac.com](http://www.titus-hvac.com).
3. Tuttle and Bailey: [www.tuttleandbailey.com/sle](http://www.tuttleandbailey.com/sle).
4. Nailor

- B. Devices shall be specifically designed for variable-air-volume flows.
- C. Finish: Baked enamel, color selected by Architect.
- D. Accessories:
  1. Equalizing grid.
  2. Plaster ring.
  3. Safety chain.
  4. Wire guard.
  5. Sectorizing baffles.
  6. Operating rod extension.

## **2.03 PERFORATED DIFFUSERS**

### **A. MANUFACTURERS**

1. Price Industries: [www.price-hvac.com](http://www.price-hvac.com).
2. Titus: [www.titus-hvac.com](http://www.titus-hvac.com).
3. Tuttle and Bailey: [www.tuttleandbailey.com/sle](http://www.tuttleandbailey.com/sle).
4. Nailor

- B. Devices shall be specifically designed for variable-air-volume flows.
- C. Material: Steel backpan and pattern controllers, with steel face.
- D. Finish: Baked enamel, color selected by Architect.
- E. Accessories:
  1. Equalizing grid.
  2. Plaster ring.
  3. Safety chain.
  4. Wire guard.
  5. Sectorizing baffles.
  6. Operating rod extension.

## **2.04 LOUVER FACE DIFFUSERS**

### **A. MANUFACTURERS**

1. Price Industries: [www.price-hvac.com](http://www.price-hvac.com).

2. Titus: [www.titus-hvac.com](http://www.titus-hvac.com).
3. Tuttle and Bailey: [www.tuttleandbailey.com/sle](http://www.tuttleandbailey.com/sle).
4. Nailor

B. Devices shall be specifically designed for variable-air-volume flows.

C. Finish: Baked enamel, color selected by Architect.

D. Accessories:

1. Square to round neck adaptor.
2. Adjustable pattern vanes.
3. Throw reducing vanes.
4. Equalizing grid.
5. Plaster ring.
6. Safety chain.
7. Wire guard.
8. Sectorizing baffles.
9. Operating rod extension.

## **2.05 LINEAR BAR DIFFUSERS**

A. MANUFACTURERS

1. Price Industries: [www.price-hvac.com](http://www.price-hvac.com).
2. Titus: [www.titus-hvac.com](http://www.titus-hvac.com).
3. Tuttle and Bailey: [www.tuttleandbailey.com/sle](http://www.tuttleandbailey.com/sle).
4. Nailor

B. Devices shall be specifically designed for variable-air-volume flows.

## **2.06 LINEAR SLOT DIFFUSERS**

A. MANUFACTURERS

1. Price Industries: [www.price-hvac.com](http://www.price-hvac.com).
2. Titus: [www.titus-hvac.com](http://www.titus-hvac.com).
3. Tuttle and Bailey: [www.tuttleandbailey.com/sle](http://www.tuttleandbailey.com/sle).
4. Nailor

B. Devices shall be specifically designed for variable-air-volume flows.

C. Finish - Tees: Baked enamel, color selected by Architect.

## **2.07 CEILING-INTEGRAL CONTINUOUS DIFFUSERS**

A. MANUFACTURERS

1. Price Industries: [www.price-hvac.com](http://www.price-hvac.com).
2. Titus: [www.titus-hvac.com](http://www.titus-hvac.com).
3. Tuttle and Bailey: [www.tuttleandbailey.com/sle](http://www.tuttleandbailey.com/sle).
4. Nailor

B. Straight and curved sections as required to accommodate layout.

C. Mitered tees and corners.

D. Material: Aluminum, extruded, heavy wall.

E. Finishes:

1. Exterior: Standard white.
2. Interior: Standard black.

F. Other Features:

1. Painted interior.
2. Blank-offs.

## **2.08 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL**

A. Verification of Performance: Rate diffusers according to ASHRAE 70, "Method of Testing for Rating the Performance of Air Outlets and Inlets."

**PART 3 EXECUTION**

**3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine areas where diffusers are installed for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of equipment.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

**3.02 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install diffusers level and plumb.
- B. Ceiling-Mounted Outlets and Inlets: Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts, fittings, and accessories. Air outlet and inlet locations have been indicated to achieve design requirements for air volume, noise criteria, airflow pattern, throw, and pressure drop. Make final locations where indicated, as much as practical. For units installed in lay-in ceiling panels, locate units in the center of panel. Where architectural features or other items conflict with installation, notify Architect for a determination of final location.
- C. Install diffusers with airtight connections to ducts and to allow service and maintenance of dampers, air extractors, and fire dampers.

**3.03 ADJUSTING**

- A. After installation, adjust diffusers to air patterns indicated, or as directed, before starting air balancing.

**END OF SECTION 23 37 13.13**

**SECTION 23 37 13.23  
REGISTERS AND GRILLES**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
1. Adjustable blade face registers and grilles.
  2. Fixed face registers and grilles.
  3. Linear bar grilles.
- B. Related Requirements:
1. Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers and volume-control dampers not integral to registers and grilles.
  2. Section 233713.13 "Air Diffusers" for various types of air diffusers.

**1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
1. Data Sheet: Indicate materials of construction, finish, and mounting details; and performance data including throw and drop, static-pressure drop, and noise ratings.
  2. Register and Grille Schedule: Indicate drawing designation, room location, quantity, model number, size, and accessories furnished.

**1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
1. Ceiling suspension assembly members.
  2. Method of attaching hangers to building structure.
  3. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
  4. Ceiling-mounted items including lighting fixtures, diffusers, grilles, speakers, sprinklers, access panels, and special moldings.
  5. Duct access panels.
- B. Source quality-control reports.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 REGISTERS**

- A. MANUFACTURERS
1. Price Industries: [www.price-hvac.com](http://www.price-hvac.com).
  2. Titus: [www.titus-hvac.com](http://www.titus-hvac.com).
  3. Tuttle and Bailey: [www.tuttleandbailey.com/sle](http://www.tuttleandbailey.com/sle).
  4. Nailor
- B. Adjustable Blade Face Register:
1. Finish: Baked enamel, color selected by Architect.
- C. Fixed Face Register:
1. Finish: Baked enamel, color selected by Architect.

**2.02 GRILLES**

- A. MANUFACTURERS
1. Price Industries: [www.price-hvac.com](http://www.price-hvac.com).
  2. Titus: [www.titus-hvac.com](http://www.titus-hvac.com).
  3. Tuttle and Bailey: [www.tuttleandbailey.com/sle](http://www.tuttleandbailey.com/sle).
  4. Nailor



- B. Adjustable Blade Face Grille:
  - 1. Finish: Baked enamel, color selected by Architect.
- C. Fixed Face Grille:
  - 1. Finish: Baked enamel, color selected by Architect.
- D. Linear Bar Grilles
  - 1. Finish: Baked enamel, color selected by Architect.

### **2.03 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Verification of Performance: Rate registers and grilles according to ASHRAE 70, "Method of Testing for Rating the Performance of Air Outlets and Inlets."

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine areas where registers and grilles are installed for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of equipment.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.02 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install registers and grilles level and plumb.
- B. Outlets and Inlets Locations: Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts, fittings, and accessories. Air outlet and inlet locations have been indicated to achieve design requirements for air volume, noise criteria, airflow pattern, throw, and pressure drop. Make final locations where indicated, as much as practical. For units installed in lay-in ceiling panels, locate units in the center of panel. Where architectural features or other items conflict with installation, notify Architect for a determination of final location.
- C. Install registers and grilles with airtight connections to ducts and to allow service and maintenance of dampers, air extractors, and fire dampers.

### **3.03 ADJUSTING**

- A. After installation, adjust registers and grilles to air patterns indicated, or as directed, before starting air balancing.

**END OF SECTION 23 37 13.23**

**SECTION 26 00 10**  
**SUPPLEMENTAL REQUIREMENTS FOR ELECTRICAL**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Supplemental requirements applicable to Work specified in Division 26.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 260011 "Facility Performance Requirements for Electrical" for seismic-load, wind-load, acoustical, and other field conditions applicable to Work specified in this Section.

**1.02 REFERENCES**

- A. Abbreviations and Acronyms for Electrical Terms and Units of Measure:
  - 1. 8PSJ or 8P8C: Miniature 8-position series jack, also called an 8-position 8-contact modular jack for some applications.
  - 2. A: Ampere, unit of electrical current.
  - 3. AC or ac: Alternating current.
  - 4. AFCI: Arc-fault circuit interrupter.
  - 5. AIC: Ampere interrupting capacity.
  - 6. AL, Al, or ALUM: Aluminum.
  - 7. ASD: Adjustable-speed drive.
  - 8. ATS: Automatic transfer switch.
  - 9. AWG: American wire gauge; see ASTM B258.
  - 10. BAS: Building automation system.
  - 11. BIL: Basic impulse insulation level.
  - 12. BIM: Building information modeling.
  - 13. CAD: Computer-aided design or drafting.
  - 14. CATV: Community antenna television.
  - 15. CB: Circuit breaker.
  - 16. CO/ALR: Copper-aluminum, revised.
  - 17. COPS: Critical operations power system.
  - 18. CU or Cu: Copper.
  - 19. CU-AL or AL-CU: Copper-aluminum.
  - 20. dB: Decibel, a unitless logarithmic ratio of two electrical, acoustical, or optical power values.
  - 21. dB(A-weighted) or dB(A): Decibel acoustical sound pressure level with A-weighting applied in accordance with IEC 61672-1.
  - 22. dB(adjusted) or dBa: Decibel weighted absolute noise power with respect to 3.16 pW (minus 85 dBm).
  - 23. dBm: Decibel absolute power with respect to 1 mW.
  - 24. DC or dc: Direct current.
  - 25. DCOA: Designated critical operations area.
  - 26. DDC: Direct digital control (HVAC).
  - 27. EGC: Equipment grounding conductor.
  - 28. EMF: Electromotive force.
  - 29. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.
  - 30. EPM: Electrical preventive maintenance.
  - 31. EPS: Emergency power supply.
  - 32. EPSS: Emergency power supply system.
  - 33. ESS: Energy storage system.
  - 34. EV: Electric vehicle.
  - 35. EVPE: Electric vehicle power export equipment.
  - 36. EVSE: Electric vehicle supply equipment.

37. fc: Footcandle, a unit of illuminance equal to one lumen per square foot.
38. FLC: Full-load current.
39. ft: Foot.
40. GEC: Grounding electrode conductor.
41. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.
42. GFPE: Ground-fault protection of equipment.
43. GND: Ground.
44. HACR: Heating, air conditioning, and refrigeration.
45. HDPE: High-density polyethylene.
46. HID: High-intensity discharge.
47. HP or hp: Horsepower.
48. HVAC: Heating, ventilating, and air conditioning.
49. Hz: Hertz.
50. IBT: Intersystem bonding termination.
51. inch: Inch. To avoid confusion, the abbreviation "in." is not used.
52. IP: Ingress protection rating (enclosures); Internet protocol (communications).
53. IR: Infrared.
54. IS: Intrinsically safe.
55. IT&R: Inspecting, testing, and repair.
56. ITE: Information technology equipment.
57. kAIC: Kiloampere interrupting capacity.
58. kcmil or MCM: One thousand circular mils.
59. kV: Kilovolt.
60. kVA: Kilovolt-ampere.
61. kVA<sub>r</sub> or kVAR: Kilovolt-ampere reactive.
62. kW: Kilowatt.
63. kWh: Kilowatt-hour.
64. LAN: Local area network.
65. lb: Pound (weight).
66. LCD: Liquid-crystal display.
67. LCDI: Leakage-current detector-interrupter.
68. LED: Light-emitting diode.
69. LNG: Liquefied natural gas.
70. LP-Gas: Liquefied petroleum gas.
71. LRC: Locked-rotor current.
72. MCC: Motor-control center.
73. MDC: Modular data center.
74. MG set: Motor-generator set.
75. MIDI: Musical instrument digital interface.
76. MLO: Main lugs only.
77. MVA: Megavolt-ampere.
78. mW: Milliwatt.
79. MW: Megawatt.
80. MWh: Megawatt-hour.
81. NC: Normally closed.
82. NiCd: Nickel cadmium.
83. NIU: Network interface unit.
84. NO: Normally open.
85. NPT: National (American) standard pipe taper.
86. OCPD: Overcurrent protective device.
87. ONT: Optical network terminal.
88. PC: Personal computer.

89. PCS: Power conversion system.
  90. PCU: Power-conditioning unit.
  91. PF or pf: Power factor.
  92. PHEV: Plug-in hybrid electric vehicle.
  93. PLC: Programmable logic controller.
  94. PLFA: Power-limited fire alarm.
  95. PoE: Power over Ethernet.
  96. PV: Photovoltaic.
  97. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride.
  98. pW: Picowatt.
  99. RFI: Radio-frequency interference (electrical); Request for interpretation (contract).
  100. RMS or rms: Root-mean-square.
  101. RPM or rpm: Revolutions per minute.
  102. SCADA: Supervisory control and data acquisition.
  103. SCR: Silicon-controlled rectifier.
  104. SPD: Surge protective device.
  105. sq.: Square.
  106. SWD: Switching duty.
  107. TCP/IP: Transmission control protocol/Internet protocol.
  108. TEFC: Totally enclosed fan-cooled.
  109. TR: Tamper resistant.
  110. TVSS: Transient voltage surge suppressor.
  111. UL: Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (standards) or UL LLC (services).
  112. UL CCN: UL Category Control Number.
  113. UPS: Uninterruptible power supply.
  114. USB: Universal serial bus.
  115. UV: Ultraviolet.
  116. V: Volt, unit of electromotive force.
  117. V(ac): Volt, alternating current.
  118. V(dc): Volt, direct current.
  119. VA: Volt-ampere, unit of complex electrical power.
  120. VAR: Volt-ampere reactive, unit of reactive electrical power.
  121. VFC: Variable-frequency controller.
  122. VOM: Volt-ohm-multimeter.
  123. VPN: Virtual private network.
  124. VRLA: Valve-regulated lead acid.
  125. W: Watt, unit of real electrical power.
  126. Wh: Watt-hour, unit of electrical energy usage.
  127. WPT: Wireless power transfer.
  128. WPTE: Wireless power transfer equipment.
  129. WR: Weather resistant.
- B. Abbreviations and Acronyms for Electrical Raceway Types:
1. EMT: Electrical metallic tubing.
  2. EMT-A: Aluminum electrical metallic tubing.
  3. EMT-S: Steel electrical metallic tubing.
  4. EMT-SS: Stainless steel electrical metallic tubing.
  5. ENT: Electrical nonmetallic tubing.
  6. EPEC: Electrical HDPE underground conduit.
  7. EPEC-40: Schedule 40 electrical HDPE underground conduit.
  8. EPEC-80: Schedule 80 electrical HDPE underground conduit.
  9. EPEC-A: Type A electrical HDPE underground conduit.
  10. EPEC-B: Type B electrical HDPE underground conduit.

11. ERMC: Electrical rigid metal conduit.
  12. ERMC-A: Aluminum electrical rigid metal conduit.
  13. ERMC-S: Steel electrical rigid metal conduit.
  14. ERMC-S-G: Galvanized-steel electrical rigid metal conduit.
  15. ERMC-S-PVC: PVC-coated-steel electrical rigid metal conduit.
  16. ERMC-SS: Stainless steel electrical rigid metal conduit.
  17. FMC: Flexible metal conduit.
  18. FMC-A: Aluminum flexible metal conduit.
  19. FMC-S: Steel flexible metal conduit.
  20. FMT: Steel flexible metallic tubing.
  21. FNMC: Flexible nonmetallic conduit. See LFNC.
  22. HDPE: See EPEC.
  23. IMC: Steel electrical intermediate metal conduit.
  24. LFMC: Liquidtight flexible metal conduit.
  25. LFMC-A: Aluminum liquidtight flexible metal conduit.
  26. LFMC-S: Steel liquidtight flexible metal conduit.
  27. LFMC-SS: Stainless steel liquidtight flexible metal conduit.
  28. LFNC: Liquidtight flexible nonmetallic conduit.
  29. LFNC-A: Layered (Type A) liquidtight flexible nonmetallic conduit.
  30. LFNC-B: Integral (Type B) liquidtight flexible nonmetallic conduit.
  31. LFNC-C: Corrugated (Type C) liquidtight flexible nonmetallic conduit.
  32. PVC: Rigid PVC conduit.
  33. PVC-40: Schedule 40 rigid PVC conduit.
  34. PVC-80: Schedule 80 rigid PVC Conduit.
  35. PVC-A: Type A rigid PVC concrete-encased conduit.
  36. PVC-EB: Type EB rigid PVC concrete-encased underground conduit.
  37. RGS: See ERMC-S-G.
  38. RMC: See ERMC.
  39. RTRC: Reinforced thermosetting resin conduit.
  40. RTRC-AG: Low-halogen, aboveground reinforced thermosetting resin conduit.
  41. RTRC-AG-HW: Heavy wall, low-halogen, aboveground reinforced thermosetting resin conduit.
  42. RTRC-AG-SW: Standard wall, low-halogen, aboveground reinforced thermosetting resin conduit.
  43. RTRC-AG-XW: Extra heavy wall, low-halogen, aboveground reinforced thermosetting resin conduit.
  44. RTRC-BG: Low-halogen, belowground reinforced thermosetting resin conduit.
- C. Abbreviations and Acronyms for Electrical Cable Types:
1. AC: Armored cable.
  2. CATV: Coaxial general-purpose cable.
  3. CATVP: Coaxial plenum cable.
  4. CATVR: Coaxial riser cable.
  5. CI: Circuit integrity cable.
  6. CL2: Class 2 cable.
  7. CL2P: Class 2 plenum cable.
  8. CL2R: Class 2 riser cable.
  9. CL2X: Class 2 cable, limited use.
  10. CL3: Class 3 cable.
  11. CL3P: Class 3 plenum cable.
  12. CL3R: Class 3 riser cable.
  13. CL3X: Class 3 cable, limited use.
  14. CM: Communications general-purpose cable.

15. CMG: Communications general-purpose cable.
16. CMP: Communications plenum cable.
17. CMR: Communications riser cable.
18. CMUC: Under-carpet communications wire and cable.
19. CMX: Communications cable, limited use.
20. DG: Distributed generation cable.
21. FC: Flat cable.
22. FCC: Flat conductor cable.
23. FPL: Power-limited fire-alarm cable.
24. FPLP: Power-limited fire-alarm plenum cable.
25. FPLR: Power-limited fire-alarm riser cable.
26. IGS: Integrated gas spacer cable.
27. ITC: Instrumentation tray cable.
28. ITC-ER: Instrumentation tray cable, exposed run.
29. MC: Metal-clad cable.
30. MC-HL: Metal-clad cable, hazardous location.
31. MI: Mineral-insulated, metal-sheathed cable.
32. MTW: Moisture-, heat-, and oil-resistant thermoplastic cable (machine tool wiring).
33. MV: Medium-voltage cable.
34. NM: Nonmetallic sheathed cable.
35. NMC: Nonmetallic sheathed cable with corrosion-resistant nonmetallic jacket.
36. NMS: Nonmetallic sheathed cable with signaling, data, and communications conductors, plus power or control conductors.
37. NPLF: Non-power-limited fire-alarm circuit cable.
38. NPLFP: Non-power-limited fire-alarm circuit cable for environmental air spaces.
39. NPLFR: Non-power-limited fire-alarm circuit riser cable.
40. NUCC: Nonmetallic underground conduit with conductors.
41. OFC: Conductive optical fiber general-purpose cable.
42. OFCG: Conductive optical fiber general-purpose cable.
43. OFCP: Conductive optical fiber plenum cable.
44. OFCR: Conductive optical fiber riser cable.
45. OFN: Nonconductive optical fiber general-purpose cable.
46. OFNG: Nonconductive optical fiber general-purpose cable.
47. OFNP: Nonconductive optical fiber plenum cable.
48. OFNR: Nonconductive optical fiber riser cable.
49. P: Marine shipboard cable.
50. PLTC: Power-limited tray cable.
51. PLTC-ER: Power-limited tray cable, exposed run.
52. PV: Photovoltaic cable.
53. RHH: Thermoset rubber, heat-resistant cable (high heat).
54. RHW: Thermoset rubber, moisture-resistant cable.
55. SA: Silicone rubber cable.
56. SE: Service-entrance cable.
57. SER: Service-entrance cable, round.
58. SEU: Service-entrance cable, flat.
59. SIS: Thermoset cable for switchboard and switchgear wiring.
60. TBS: Thermoplastic cable with outer braid.
61. TC: Tray cable.
62. TC-ER: Tray cable, exposed run.
63. TC-ER-HL: Tray cable, exposed run, hazardous location.
64. THW: Thermoplastic, heat- and moisture-resistant cable.
65. THHN: Thermoplastic, heat-resistant cable with nylon jacket outer sheath.
66. THHW: Thermoplastic, heat- and moisture-resistant cable.

67. THWN: Thermoplastic, moisture- and heat-resistant cable with nylon jacket outer sheath.
68. TW: Thermoplastic, moisture-resistant cable.
69. UF: Underground feeder and branch-circuit cable.
70. USE: Underground service-entrance cable.
71. XHH: Cross-linked polyethylene, heat-resistant cable.
72. XHHW: Cross-linked polyethylene, heat- and moisture-resistant cable.

D. Definitions:

1. Basic Impulse Insulation Level: Reference insulation level expressed in impulse crest voltage with a standard wave not longer than 1.5 times 50 microseconds and 1.5 times 40 microseconds.
2. Communications Jack: A fixed connecting device designed for insertion of a communications cable plug.
3. Communications Outlet: One or more communications jacks, or cables and plugs, mounted in a box or ring, with a suitable protective cover.
4. Designated Seismic System: A system component that requires design in accordance with ASCE/SEI 7, Ch. 13 and for which the Component Importance Factor is greater than 1.0.
5. Direct Buried: Installed underground without encasement in concrete or other protective material.
6. Enclosure: The case or housing of an apparatus, or the fence or wall(s) surrounding an installation, to prevent personnel from accidentally contacting energized parts or to protect the equipment from physical damage. Types of enclosures and enclosures covers include the following:
  - a. Cabinet: An enclosure that is designed for either surface mounting or flush mounting and is provided with a frame, mat, or trim in which a swinging door or doors are or can be hung.
  - b. Concrete Box: A box intended for use in poured concrete.
  - c. Conduit Body: A means for providing access to the interior of a conduit or tubing system through one or more removable covers at a junction or terminal point. In the United States, conduit bodies are listed in accordance with outlet box requirements.
  - d. Conduit Box: A box having threaded openings or knockouts for conduit, EMT, or fittings.
  - e. Cutout Box: An enclosure designed for surface mounting that has swinging doors or covers secured directly to and telescoping with the walls of the enclosure.
  - f. Device Box: A box with provisions for mounting a wiring device directly to the box.
  - g. Extension Ring: A ring intended to extend the sides of an outlet box or device box to increase the box depth, volume, or both.
  - h. Floor Box: A box mounted in the floor intended for use with a floor box cover and other components to complete the floor box enclosure.
  - i. Floor-Mounted Enclosure: A floor box and floor box cover assembly with means to mount in the floor that is sealed against the entrance of scrub water at the floor level.
  - j. Floor Nozzle: An enclosure used on a wiring system, intended primarily as a housing for a receptacle, provided with a means, such as a collar, for surface-mounting on a floor, which may or may not include a stem to support it above the floor level, and is sealed against the entrance of scrub water at the floor level.
  - k. Junction Box: A box with a blank cover that joins different runs of raceway or cable and provides space for connection and branching of the enclosed conductors.
  - l. Outlet Box: A box that provides access to a wiring system having pryout openings, knockouts, threaded entries, or hubs in either the sides or the back, or both, for the entrance of conduit, conduit or cable fittings, or cables, with provisions for mounting an outlet box cover, but without provisions for mounting a wiring device directly to the box.
  - m. Pedestal Floor Box Cover: A floor box cover that, when installed as intended, provides a means for typically vertical or near-vertical mounting of receptacle outlets above the floor's finished surface.

- n. Pull Box: A box with a blank cover that joins different runs of raceway and provides access for pulling or replacing the enclosed cables or conductors.
  - o. Raised-Floor Box: A floor box intended for use in raised floors.
  - p. Recessed Access Floor Box: A floor box with provisions for mounting wiring devices below the floor surface.
  - q. Recessed Access Floor Box Cover: A floor box cover with provisions for passage of cords to recessed wiring devices mounted within a recessed floor box.
  - r. Ring: A sleeve, which is not necessarily round, used for positioning a recessed wiring device flush with the plaster, concrete, drywall, or other wall surface.
  - s. Ring Cover: A box cover, with raised center portion to accommodate a specific wall or ceiling thickness, for mounting wiring devices or luminaires flush with the surface.
  - t. Termination Box: An enclosure designed for installation of termination base assemblies consisting of bus bars, terminal strips, or terminal blocks with provision for wire connectors to accommodate incoming or outgoing conductors, or both.
7. Emergency Systems: Those systems legally required and classed as emergency by municipal, state, federal, or other codes, or by any governmental agency having jurisdiction that are designed to ensure continuity of lighting, electrical power, or both, to designated areas and equipment in the event of failure of the normal supply for safety to human life.
8. Essential Electrical Systems: Those systems designed to ensure continuity of electrical power to designated areas and functions of a healthcare facility during disruption of normal power sources, and also to minimize disruption within the internal wiring system. (healthcare facilities)
9. Jacket: A continuous nonmetallic outer covering for conductors or cables.
10. Luminaire: A complete lighting unit consisting of a light source such as a lamp, together with the parts designed to position the light source and connect it to the power supply. It may also include parts to protect the light source or the ballast or to distribute the light.
11. Miniature 8-Position Series Jack (8PSJ): Also called an 8-position 8-contact (8P8C) modular jack. An unkeyed jack with up to eight contacts commonly used to terminate twisted-pair and multiconductor Ethernet cable. Shape and dimensions are specified by TIA-1096.
- a. Caution: An 8PSJ is not the same thing as an FCC "registered jack" RJ45S, now called a miniature 8-position keyed jack (8PKJ). Ethernet cable plugs do not have rejection keys. Many manufacturers and suppliers incorrectly use "RJ45" as a generic term to describe any 8-position series plug or jack whether it has a rejection key or not.
12. Mode: The terms "Active Mode," "Off Mode," and "Standby Mode" are used as defined in the Energy Independence and Security Act (EISA) of 2007.
13. Multi-Outlet Assembly: A type of surface, flush, or freestanding raceway designed to hold conductors, receptacles, and switches, assembled in the field or at the factory.
14. Plenum: A compartment or chamber to which one or more air ducts are connected and that forms part of the air distribution system.
15. Receptacle: A fixed connecting device arranged for insertion of a power cord plug. Also called a power jack.
16. Receptacle Outlet: One or more receptacles mounted in a box with a suitable protective cover.
17. Sheath: A continuous metallic covering for conductors or cables.
18. UL Category Control Number: An alphabetic or alphanumeric code used to identify product categories covered by UL's Listing, Classification, and Recognition Services.
19. Voltage Class: For specified circuits and equipment, voltage classes are defined as follows:
- a. Control Voltage: Having electromotive force between any two conductors, or between a single conductor and ground, that is supplied from a battery or other Class 2 or Class 3 power-limited source.



- b. Line Voltage: (1) (controls) Designed to operate using the supplied low-voltage power without transformation. (2) (transmission lines, transformers, SPDs) The line-to-line voltage of the supplying power system.
- c. Extra-Low Voltage: Not having electromotive force between any two conductors, or between a single conductor and ground, exceeding 30 V(ac rms), 42 V(ac peak), or 60 V(dc).
- d. Low Voltage: Having electromotive force between any two conductors, or between a single conductor and ground, that is rated above 30 V but not exceeding 1000 V.
- e. Medium Voltage: Having electromotive force between any two conductors, or between a single conductor and ground, that is rated about 1 kV but not exceeding 69 kV.
- f. High Voltage: (1) (circuits) Having electromotive force between any two conductors, or between a single conductor and ground, that is rated above 69 kV but not exceeding 230 kV. (2) (safety) Having sufficient electromotive force to inflict bodily harm or injury.

### 1.03 COORDINATION

- A. Interruption of Existing Electrical Service: Do not interrupt electrical service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions:
  - 1. Notify Architect no fewer than seven days in advance of proposed interruption of electrical service.
  - 2. Do not proceed with interruption of electrical service without Architect's written permission.
  - 3. Coordinate interruption with systems impacted by outage including, but not limited to, the following:
    - a. Exercising generators.
    - b. Emergency lighting.
    - c. Elevators.
    - d. Fire alarm systems.
- B. Arrange to provide temporary electrical service or power in accordance with requirements specified in Division 01.

### 1.04 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Electrical Preconstruction Conference: Schedule conference with Architect and Owner, not later than 10 days after notice to proceed. Agenda topics include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Electrical installation schedule.
  - 2. Status of power system studies.
  - 3. Value analysis proposals and requests for substitution of electrical equipment.
  - 4. Utility work coordination and class of service requests.
  - 5. Commissioning activities.
  - 6. Sustainability activities, including Measurement and Verification Plan.

### 1.05 SEQUENCING

- A. Conduct and submit results of power system studies before submitting Product Data and Shop Drawings for electrical equipment.

### 1.06 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings for Structural Supports: Show coordination of structural supports for equipment and devices, including restraints and bracing for control of seismic and wind loads, with other systems, equipment, and structural supports in the vicinity.
- B. Coordination Drawings for Ceiling Areas: Where indicated on drawings, provide reflected ceiling plan(s), supplemented by sections and other details, drawn to scale, in accordance with Section 013100 "Project Management and Coordination," on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
  - 1. Suspended ceiling components.

2. Structural members to which equipment and suspension systems will be attached.
  3. Size and location of access panels on ceilings.
  4. Elevation, size, and route of sprinkler piping.
  5. Elevation, size, and route of plumbing piping.
  6. Elevation, size, and route of ductwork.
  7. Elevation, size, and route of cable tray.
  8. Elevation, size, and route of conduit.
  9. Elevation and size of wall-mounted and ceiling-mounted equipment.
  10. Access panels.
  11. Sprinklers.
  12. Air inlets and outlets.
  13. Control modules.
  14. Luminaires.
  15. Communications devices.
  16. Speakers.
  17. Security devices.
  18. Fire-alarm devices.
  19. Indicate clear dimensions for maintenance access in front of equipment.
  20. Indicate dimensions of fully-open access doors.
- C. Coordination Drawings for Cable Tray Routing: Reflected ceiling plan(s), supplemented by sections and other details, drawn to scale, in accordance with Section 013100 "Project Management and Coordination," on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
1. Elevation, size, and route of cable trays.
  2. Relationships between components and adjacent structural, electrical, and mechanical elements.
  3. Vertical and horizontal offsets and transitions.
  4. Elevation and size of sleeves for wall, ceiling, and floor cable penetrations.
  5. Elevation of ceilings and size of ceiling tiles.
  6. Locations of access panels on ceilings.
  7. Locations where cable tray crosses or parallels sprinkler piping.
  8. Locations where cable tray crosses plumbing piping.
  9. Locations where cable tray crosses or parallels ductwork.
  10. Locations of access panels on ductwork.
  11. Locations where cable tray crosses conduit.
  12. Items blocking access around cable trays, including the following:
    - a. Light fixtures.
    - b. Speakers.
    - c. Fire-alarm devices.
    - d. Power outlets.
    - e. Wall-mounted equipment.
    - f. Equipment racks.
    - g. Furniture.
    - h. Door swings.
    - i. Building features.
  13. Indicate clear dimension between cable tray and walls or obstructions that are closer than 10 ft (3 m).
  14. Highlight locations where cable tray is greater than 3 ft (1 m) above ceilings. Explain how personnel access will be accommodated for cable tray maintenance.
- D. Coordination Drawings for Conduit Routing: Conduit routing plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of items involved:

1. Structural members in paths of conduit groups with common supports.
  2. HVAC and plumbing items and architectural features in paths of conduit groups with common supports.
- E. Coordination Drawings for Bus Assembly Routing: Floor plans and sections, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of items involved:
1. Scaled bus-assembly layouts and relationships between components and adjacent structural, mechanical, and electrical elements.
  2. Vertical and horizontal enclosed bus-assembly runs, offsets, and transitions.
  3. Clearances for access above and to the side of enclosed bus assemblies.
  4. Vertical elevation of enclosed bus assemblies above the floor or bottom of structure.
  5. Support locations, type of support, and weight on each support.
  6. Location of adjacent construction elements including luminaires, HVAC and plumbing equipment, fire sprinklers and piping, signal and control devices, and other equipment.
- F. Coordination Drawings for Large Equipment Indoor Installations:
1. Location plan, drawn to scale, showing heavy equipment or truck access paths to loading dock or other freight access into building. Indicate available width and height of doors or openings.
  2. Floor plan for entry floor and floor where equipment is located, drawn to scale, showing heavy equipment access paths for maintenance and replacement, with the following items shown and coordinated with each other, based on input from installers of the items involved:
    - a. Dimensioned concrete bases, outlines of equipment, conduit entries, and grounding equipment locations.
    - b. If freight elevator must be used, indicate width and height of door and depth of car. Indicate if large equipment must be tipped to use elevator.
    - c. Dimensioned working clearances and dedicated areas below and around electrical equipment where obstructions and tripping hazards are prohibited.
  3. Reflected ceiling plans for entry floor and floor where equipment is located, drawn to scale, on which the following items shown and coordinated with each other, based on input from installers of the items involved:
    - a. Support locations, type of support, and weight on each support. Locate structural supports for structure-supported raceways.
    - b. Location of lighting fixtures, sprinkler piping and sprinklers, ducts and diffusers, and other obstructions, indicating available overhead clearance.
    - c. Dimensioned working clearances and dedicated areas above and around electrical equipment where foreign systems and equipment are prohibited.
- G. Coordination Drawings for Large Equipment Outdoor Installations:
1. Utilities site plan, drawn to scale, showing heavy equipment or truck access paths for maintenance and replacement, with the following items shown and coordinated with each other, based on input from installers of the items involved:
    - a. Fences and walls, dimensioned concrete bases, outlines of equipment, conduit entries, and grounding and bonding locations.
    - b. Indicate clear dimensions for fence gates and wall openings.
    - c. Indicate depth and type of ground cover, and locations of trees, shrubbery, and other obstructions in access path.
    - d. Indicate clear height below tree branches, overhead lines, bridges, and other overhead obstructions in access path, or where cranes and hoists will be needed to handle large electrical equipment.
    - e. Support locations, type of support, and weight on each support. Locate structural supports for structure-supported raceways.
    - f. Dimensioned working clearances and dedicated areas around electrical equipment.
- H. Coordination Drawings for Duct Banks: Signed and sealed by qualified professional engineer.

1. Show duct profiles and coordination with other utilities and underground structures.
2. Include plans and sections, drawn to scale, and show bends and locations of expansion fittings.

#### **1.07 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Electrical Installation Schedule: At preconstruction meeting, and periodically thereafter as dates change, provide schedule for electrical installation Work to Owner and Architect including, but not limited to, milestone dates for the following activities:
1. Submission of power system studies.
  2. Submission of specified coordination drawings.
  3. Submission of action submittals specified in Division 26.
  4. Orders placed for major electrical equipment.
  5. Arrival of major electrical equipment on-site.
  6. Preinstallation meetings specified in Division 26.
  7. Utility service outages.
  8. Utility service inspection and activation.
  9. Mockup reviews.
  10. Closing of walls and ceilings containing electrical Work.
  11. System startup, testing, and commissioning activities for major electrical equipment.
  12. System startup, testing, and commissioning activities for emergency lighting.
  13. System startup, testing, and commissioning activities for automation systems (SCADA, BMS, lighting, HVAC, fire alarm, fire pump, etc.).
  14. Pouring of concrete housekeeping pads for electrical equipment and testing of concrete samples.
  15. Requests for special inspections.
  16. Requests for inspections by authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Delegated Design Drawings for Structural Masonry Wall Penetrations: Where indicated on Drawings, provide reflected ceiling plan(s), supplemented by elevations, sections, and other details, drawn to scale, signed and sealed by a qualified structural professional engineer, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
1. Location and dimensions of structural members supporting wall.
  2. Location and dimensions of columns near penetrations.
  3. Location and dimension of headers and lintels.
  4. Doors and windows near penetrations.
  5. Location and dimensions of penetrating cuts.
  6. Sprinkler piping and sleeves.
  7. Plumbing piping and sleeves.
  8. Ductwork and sleeves.
  9. Cable tray and sleeves.
  10. Conduit and sleeves.
  11. Firestopping assemblies for rated penetrations.
  12. Structural supports for piping, ductwork, and conduit on both sides of wall.
- C. Certificates:
1. Welding certificates.
- D. Qualification Statements:
1. For qualified regional manufacturer.
  2. For structural professional engineer.
  3. For electrical professional engineer.
  4. For lighting professional engineer.
  5. For EPM specialist.
  6. For welder.
  7. For ERMC-S-PVC raceway Installer.

8. For medium-voltage cable Installer.
9. For medium-voltage duct Installer.
10. For medium-voltage equipment Installer.
11. For electrical power monitoring Installer.
12. For switchboard Installer.
13. For EVSE Installer.
14. For generator set Installer.
15. For lightning protection system Installer.
16. For theatrical lighting Installer.
17. For exterior athletic lighting Installer.
18. For power quality specialist.
19. For low-voltage electrical testing agency and on-site electrical testing supervisor.
20. For control-voltage electrical testing agency and on-site control-voltage testing supervisor.
21. For structural testing and inspecting agency.
22. For outdoor pole testing and inspecting agency.
23. For luminaire photometric testing laboratory.
24. For lighting testing and inspecting agency.

#### 1.08 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Facility EPM Program Binders:
  1. Complete Set: On approved online or cloud solution and USB media that is clearly and permanently labeled with attached placard on lanyard to prevent misplacement.
  2. Volumes 2 and 8: Reproducible hardcopy on archival quality, 28 lb (105 GSM), acid-free, bond paper.
- B. Operation and Maintenance Data:
  1. Include the following information:
    - a. Manufacturer's operating specifications.
    - b. User's guides for software and hardware.
    - c. Schedule of maintenance material items recommended to be stored at Project site.
    - d. Detailed instructions covering operation under both normal and abnormal conditions.
    - e. Time-current curves for overcurrent protective devices and manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting their settings.
    - f. List of load-current and overload-relay heaters with related motor nameplate data.
    - g. List of lamp types and photoelectric relays used on Project, with ANSI and manufacturers' codes.
    - h. Manufacturer's instructions for setting field-adjustable components.
    - i. Manufacturer's instructions for testing, adjusting, and reprogramming microprocessor controls.
    - j. EPSS: Manufacturer's system checklists, maintenance schedule, and maintenance log sheets in accordance with NFPA 110.
    - k. Exterior pole inspection and repair procedures.
- C. Software and Firmware Operational Documentation: Provide software and firmware operational documentation in Facility EPM Program Binders, including the following:
  1. Software operating and upgrade manuals.
  2. Names, versions, and website addresses for locations of installed software.
  3. Device address list.
  4. Printout of software application and graphic screens.
  5. Testing and adjusting of panic and emergency power features.
  6. For lighting controls include the following:
    - a. Adjustments of scene preset controls, adjustable fade rates, and fade overrides.
    - b. Operation of adjustable zone controls.
- D. Software:

**REVISE "PROGRAM SOFTWARE BACKUP" SUBPARAGRAPH BELOW TO COMPLY WITH OWNER'S FACILITY-SPECIFIC REQUIREMENTS FOR SUBMITTING PROJECT'S SOFTWARE. THE ATTACHED PLACARD ON LANYARD IS INTENDED TO BE SIMILAR TO WHAT MANY OFFICES USE TO PREVENT MISPLACEMENT OF BATHROOM KEYS.**

1. Program Software Backup: Provide username and password for approved online or cloud solution and USB media that is clearly and permanently labeled with attached placard on lanyard to prevent misplacement.
2. Provide to Owner upgrades and unrestricted licenses for installed and backup software, including operating systems and programming tools required for operation and maintenance.

**2.02 QUALIFICATIONS**

- A. Structural Professional Engineer: Professional engineer possessing active qualifications specified in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," with expertise in structural engineering.
- B. Electrical Professional Engineer: Professional engineer possessing active qualifications specified in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," with expertise in electrical engineering, including electrical power system modeling and analysis of electrical safety in accordance with NFPA 70E.
- C. Lighting Professional Engineer: Professional engineer possessing active qualifications in accordance with Section 014000 "Quality Requirements" and the following:
  1. Expertise in electrical engineering, lighting design, and structural requirements for exterior poles and standards.
  2. Lighting Certified (LC) Professional by the National Council on Qualifications for the Lighting Professions (NCQLP).
- D. EPM Specialist: Recognized experts possessing the following qualifications in accordance with Section 014000 "Quality Requirements" and NFPA 70B:
  1. Technical Competence: Person should, by education, training, and experience, be well-rounded in all aspects of electrical maintenance.
  2. Administrative and Supervisory Skills: Person should be skilled in planning and development of long-range objectives to achieve specific results and should be able to command respect and solicit cooperation of persons involved in EPM Program development.
- E. Welder: Installer possessing active qualifications specified in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," with training and certification in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M and AWS D1.2/D1.2M.
- F. ERMC-S-PVC Installers: Installer possessing active qualifications specified in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," and able to present unexpired certified Installer credentials issued by ERMC-S-PVC manufacturer prior to starting installation.
- G. EVSE Installers: Installer possessing active qualifications specified in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," and able to present unexpired certified Installer credentials issued by EVSE manufacturer prior to starting installation.
- H. Generator Set Installers: Installer possessing active qualifications specified in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," and able to present unexpired certified Installer credentials issued by generator set manufacturer prior to starting installation.
- I. Lightning Protection System Installers: Installer possessing active qualifications specified in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," and able to present unexpired UL-Listed Installer, UL Category Control Number OWAY, credentials or unexpired LPI Master Installer credentials prior to starting installation.
- J. Theatrical Lighting Installers: Installer possessing active qualifications specified in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," and able to present unexpired certified Installer credentials issued by theatrical lighting manufacturers prior to starting installation.

- K. Exterior Athletic Lighting Installers: Installer possessing active qualifications specified in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," and able to present unexpired certified Installer credentials issued by exterior athletic lighting manufacturer prior to starting installation.
- L. Power Quality Specialist: Recognized experts possessing active credentials from a qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and able to present unexpired NICET Level 4 credentials with documented experience in power quality testing for installations similar in complexity to this Project.
- M. Low-Voltage Electrical Testing and Inspecting Agency: Entities possessing active credentials from a qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. On-site electrical testing supervisors must have documented certification and experience with testing electrical equipment in accordance with NETA testing standards.
- N. Control-Voltage Electrical Testing Agency: Entity possessing active credentials from a qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. On-site control-voltage testing supervisor must have BICSI Registered Communications Distribution Designer certification and documented training and experience with testing control-voltage equipment in accordance with NETA testing standards.
- O. Structural Testing and Inspecting Agency: Entity possessing active qualifications specified in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements" with documented training and experience with testing structural concrete, seismic controls, and wind-load controls.
- P. Outdoor Pole Testing and Inspecting Agency: Entity possessing active qualifications specified in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements" with documented training and experience in accordance with ASTM C1093 for foundation testing and inspections.
- Q. Luminaire Photometric Testing Laboratory: Entity possessing active qualifications specified in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements" accredited under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products, and complying with applicable IES testing standards.
- R. Lighting Testing and Inspecting Agency: Entity possessing active qualifications specified in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements" with documented training and experience with testing and inspecting lighting installations in accordance with IES LM-5.

### **2.03 MOCKUPS**

- A. Simple Mockups for Coordinating Accessibility of Electrical Devices around Fixed Furnishings and Equipment.
- B. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Owner specifically approves such deviations by Change Order.

### **2.04 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Modeling, analysis, product selection, installation, and quality control for Work specified in Division 26 must comply with requirements specified in Section 260011 "Facility Performance Requirements for Electrical."

## **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

### **3.01 SUBSTITUTION LIMITATIONS FOR ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT**

- A. Substitution requests for electrical equipment will be entertained under the following conditions:
  - 1. Substitution requests may be submitted for consideration prior to the Electrical Preconstruction Conference if accompanied by value analysis data indicating that substitution will comply with Project performance requirements while significantly increasing value for Owner throughout life of facility.
  - 2. Substitution requests may be submitted for consideration concurrently with submission of power system study reports when those reports indicate that substitution is necessary for safety of maintenance personnel and facility occupants.
  - 3. Contractor is responsible for sequencing and scheduling power system studies and electrical equipment procurement. After the Electrical Preconstruction Conference,

insufficient lead time for electrical equipment delivery will not be considered a valid reason for substitution.

### 3.02 FACILITY ELECTRICAL PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE (EPM) PROGRAM BINDERS

- A. Description: Set of binders containing operation and maintenance data for facility's electrical equipment that was compiled during analysis of installed electrical Work for Facility EPM Program development.
- B. Applicable Standards:
  - 1. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with recommendations in NFPA 70B.
  - 2. General Characteristics:
    - a. Volume 1 - Introduction:
      - 1) Summarize how Facility EPM Program Analysis was performed, how data were collected, and how volumes are organized.
      - 2) Describe Facility EPM Program and provide recommended policies and procedures for implementing the program and keeping it current.
      - 3) Provide place for Owner to identify contact information for employees responsible for implementing and maintaining Facility EPM Program.
    - b. Volume 2 - Facility Safety, Hazards Awareness, and Emergency Procedures:
      - 1) Include training requirements for employees and contractors.
      - 2) Include list of known facility hazards impacting IT&R activities.
      - 3) Include approval and permitting procedures for IT&R activities.
      - 4) Include incident emergency response procedures.
      - 5) Include emergency shutdown procedures.
      - 6) Include electrical disaster recovery procedures.
    - c. Volume 3 - Operating Procedures for Electrical Equipment and Controls:
      - 1) N/A
    - d. Volume 4 - Facility Diagrams and Schedules:
      - 1) Include single-line diagrams.
      - 2) Include grounding and bonding diagrams.
      - 3) Include essential wiring diagrams.
      - 4) Include system automation diagrams (SCADA, BMS, lighting, HVAC, etc.).
      - 5) Include records of switchgear, switchboard, and panelboard schedules.
      - 6) Include time-current curves for overcurrent protective devices.
      - 7) Include list of load-current and overload-relay heaters with related motor nameplate data.
    - e. Volume 5 - Inventory of Facility Equipment Using Electrical Power:
      - 1) Include simplified floor plans showing equipment locations.
      - 2) Identify critical equipment (electrical or otherwise).
      - 3) Include identifying designations and nameplate data.
      - 4) Include warranty and maintenance contract information.
    - f. Volume 6 - Inventory of Facility Tools, Supplies, and Personnel Protective Equipment:
      - 1) Include schedules of maintenance material items recommended to be stored at facility.
      - 2) Include list of lamp types and photoelectric relays used in facility with ANSI and manufacturers' codes.
      - 3) Include calibration and servicing data for each item.
    - g. Volume 7 - Inspection, Testing, and Repair (IT&R) Plan:
      - 1) Include tables showing frequency of activities for each item.
      - 2) Include annual schedule with activities mapped to specific days of the year.
      - 3) Include exterior pole inspection and repair procedures.
    - h. Volume 8 - Inspection, Testing, and Repair (IT&R) Forms:
      - 1) N/A



- i. Volume 9 - Inspection, Testing, and Repair (IT&R) Procedures:
  - 1) N/A
- j. Volume 10 - Spare Parts List:
  - 1) Include list of all parts required to perform IT&R procedures.
  - 2) Identify quantities of which parts are recommended to be stored on-site.
  - 3) Include source contact information and budget cost for each item.
- k. Volume 11 - Construction Project Closeout Record Documentation:
  - 1) Include records of power system studies and photometric studies.
  - 2) Include records of risk assessment studies.
  - 3) Include records of electrical system startup and commissioning activities.
  - 4) Include records of baseline inspections and tests.
  - 5) Include records of baseline infrared photographs with normal light photographs showing the location, direction, angle, and conditions necessary for reproducing each infrared photograph.
  - 6) Include records of baseline settings for adjustable equipment and devices.

### **PART 3 EXECUTION**

#### **4.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verification of Conditions.
- B. Preinstallation Testing.
- C. Evaluation and Assessment.

#### **4.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Protection of In-Place Conditions.

#### **4.03 DEVELOPMENT OF FACILITY EPM PROGRAM**

- A. Facility EPM Program must be developed by qualified EPM specialist.
- B. Conduct Facility EPM Program analysis in accordance with NFPA 70B recommendations.
  - 1. Renovation Projects:
    - a. Facility diagrams must include connected existing equipment for entire facility where known. Areas of uncertainty should be clearly indicated.
    - b. Obtain copies of existing operation and maintenance data and existing Facility EPM Program information from Owner.
    - c. Facility EPM Program analysis should identify existing equipment that does not have available operation and maintenance data and should explain the Owner's risks because this equipment is not included in Facility EPM Program.
    - d. Data for existing equipment outside scope of Project may be inserted in Facility EPM Program Binders without analysis.
    - e. Data for existing equipment impacted by scope of Project should be analyzed and documented similar to Project's new equipment data as much as possible.
- C. Compile operation and maintenance data from Facility EPM Program analysis and submit updated Facility EPM Program Binders.

#### **4.04 INSTALLATION OF ELECTRICAL WORK**

- A. Unless more stringent requirements are specified in the Contract Documents or manufacturers' written instructions, comply with NFPA 70 and NECA NEIS 1 for installation of Work specified in Division 26. Consult Architect for resolution of conflicting requirements.

#### **4.05 SYSTEM STARTUP**

- A. Commissioning Activities.

#### **4.06 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Administrant for Low-Voltage Electrical Tests and Inspections:

1. Administer and perform tests and inspections with assistance of factory-authorized service representative.
- B. Administrant for Control-Voltage Electrical Tests and Inspections:
  1. Administer and perform tests and inspections with assistance of factory-authorized service representative.
- C. Administrant for Field Tests and Inspections of Lighting Installations:
  1. Administer and perform tests and inspections with assistance of factory-authorized service representative.

#### **4.07 CLEANING**

- A. Waste Management.

#### **4.08 CLOSEOUT ACTIVITIES**

- A. Demonstration:
  1. Demonstrate to Owner's maintenance and clerical personnel and building occupants how to operate the following systems and equipment:
    - a. Lighting control devices specified in Section 260923 "Lighting Control Devices."
  2. Allow Owner to record demonstrations.
- B. Training:
  1. Train Owner's maintenance personnel on the following topics:
    - a. How to implement Facility EPM Program.
    - b. How to adjust, operate, and maintain devices specified in Section 260923 "Lighting Control Devices."
    - c. How to adjust, operate, and maintain hardware and software specified in Section 260936 "Modular Dimming Controls".
  2. Allow Owner to record training sessions.

**END OF SECTION 26 00 10**

This page intentionally left blank

**SECTION 26 05 19**  
**LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Copper building wire.
  - 2. Aluminum building wire.
  - 3. Nonmetallic underground conduit with conductors, Type NUCC.
  - 4. Metal-clad cable, Type MC.
  - 5. Armored cable, Type AC.
  - 6. Photovoltaic cable, Type PV.
  - 7. Mineral-insulated cable, Type MI.
  - 8. Tray cable, Type TC.
  - 9. Fire-alarm wire and cable.
  - 10. Connectors and splices.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 260010 "Supplemental Requirements for Electrical" for additional abbreviations, definitions, submittals, qualifications, testing agencies, and other Project requirements applicable to Work specified in this Section.
  - 2. Section 260011 "Facility Performance Requirements for Electrical" for seismic-load, wind-load, acoustical, and other field conditions applicable to Work specified in this Section.
  - 3. Section 271313 "Communications Copper Backbone Cabling" for twisted pair cabling used for data circuits.
  - 4. Section 271513 "Communications Copper Horizontal Cabling" for twisted pair cabling used for data circuits.

**1.02 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Product Schedule: Indicate type, use, location, and termination locations.

**1.03 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Field quality-control reports.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 COPPER BUILDING WIRE**

- A. Description: Flexible, insulated and uninsulated, drawn copper current-carrying conductor with an overall insulation layer or jacket, or both, rated 600 V or less.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Alpha Wire Company.
  - 2. Belden Inc.
  - 3. Encore Wire Corporation.
  - 4. Southwire Company.
- C. Standards:
  - 1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
  - 2. Conductor and Cable Marking: Comply with wire and cable marking according to UL's "Wire and Cable Marking and Application Guide."
- D. Conductors: Copper, complying with ASTM B3 for bare annealed copper and with ASTM B8 for stranded conductors.
- E. Conductor Insulation:

1. Type RHW-2: Comply with UL 44.
2. Type TC-ER: Comply with NEMA WC 70/ICEA S-95-658 and UL 1277.
3. Type THHN and Type THWN-2: Comply with UL 83.
4. Type UF: Comply with UL 83 and UL 493.
5. Type XHHW-2: Comply with UL 44.

F. Shield:

## 2.02 FIRE-ALARM WIRE AND CABLE

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. Allied Wire & Cable Inc.
  2. CommScope, Inc.
  3. Genesis Cable Products; Honeywell International, Inc.
  4. Superior Essex Inc.
  5. West Penn Wire.
- B. General Wire and Cable Requirements: NRTL listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, Article 760.
- C. Signaling Line Circuits: Twisted, shielded pair, not less than No. 14 AWG.
  1. Circuit Integrity Cable: Twisted shielded pair, NFPA 70, Article 760, Classification CI, for power-limited fire-alarm signal service Type FPL. NRTL listed and labeled as complying with UL 1424 and UL 2196 for a two-hour rating.
- D. Non-Power-Limited Circuits: Solid-copper conductors with 600 V rated, 75 deg C, color-coded insulation, and complying with requirements in UL 2196 for a two-hour rating.
  1. Low-Voltage Circuits: No. 14 AWG, minimum, in pathway.
  2. Line-Voltage Circuits: No. 12 AWG, minimum, in pathway.

## 2.03 CONNECTORS AND SPLICES

- A. Description: Factory-fabricated connectors, splices, and lugs of size, ampacity rating, material, type, and class for application and service indicated; listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
- B. Jacketed Cable Connectors: For steel and aluminum jacketed cables, zinc die-cast with set screws, designed to connect conductors specified in this Section.
- C. Lugs: One piece, seamless, designed to terminate conductors specified in this Section.
  1. Material: Copper.
  2. Type: One hole with standard barrels.
  3. Termination: Compression.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.01 CONDUCTOR MATERIAL APPLICATIONS

- A. Feeders:
  1. Copper; solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.
  2. Copper for feeders smaller than No. 4 AWG; copper or aluminum for feeders No. 4 AWG and larger. Conductors must be solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.
- B. Branch Circuits:
  1. Copper. Solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.
  2. Copper. Solid for No. 12 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 10 AWG and larger.
- C. ASD Output Circuits Cable: Extra-flexible stranded for all sizes.
- D. Power-Limited Fire Alarm and Control: Solid for No. 12 AWG and smaller.

### **3.02 CONDUCTOR INSULATION AND MULTICONDUCTOR CABLE APPLICATIONS AND WIRING METHODS**

- A. Exposed Feeders and Branch Circuits: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- B. Feeders and Branch Circuits Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, Partitions, and Crawlspace: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- C. Branch Circuits Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, and Partitions: [Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway] [Armored cable, Type AC] [Metal-clad cable, Type MC] [Mineral-insulated, metal-sheathed cable, Type MI] [Nonmetallic-sheathed cable, Type NM].

### **3.03 INSTALLATION, GENERAL**

- A. Conceal cables in finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Complete raceway installation between conductor and cable termination points according to Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" prior to pulling conductors and cables.
- C. Use manufacturer-approved pulling compound or lubricant where necessary; compound used must not deteriorate conductor or insulation. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended maximum pulling tensions and sidewall pressure values.
- D. Use pulling means, including fish tape, cable, rope, and basket-weave wire/cable grips, that will not damage cables or raceway.
- E. Install exposed cables parallel and perpendicular to surfaces of exposed structural members, and follow surface contours where possible.
- F. Support cables according to Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."
- G. Complete cable tray systems installation according to Section 260536 "Cable Trays for Electrical Systems" prior to installing conductors and cables.

### **3.04 INSTALLATION OF FIRE-ALARM WIRE AND CABLE**

- A. Comply with NFPA 72.
- B. Wiring Method: Install wiring in metal pathway according to Section 270528.29 "Hangers and Supports for Communications Systems."
  - 1. Install plenum cable in environmental airspaces, including plenum ceilings.
  - 2. Fire-alarm circuits and equipment control wiring associated with fire-alarm system must be installed in a dedicated pathway system.
    - a. Cables and pathways used for fire-alarm circuits, and equipment control wiring associated with fire-alarm system, may not contain any other wire or cable.
  - 3. Fire-Rated Cables: Use of two-hour, fire-rated fire-alarm cables, NFPA 70, Types MI and CI, is not permitted.
  - 4. Signaling Line Circuits: Power-limited fire-alarm cables must not be installed in the same cable or pathway as signaling line circuits.
- C. Wiring within Enclosures: Separate power-limited and non-power-limited conductors as recommended by manufacturer. Install conductors parallel with or at right angles to sides and back of the enclosure. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess. Connect conductors that are terminated, spliced, or interrupted in any enclosure associated with fire-alarm system to terminal blocks. Mark each terminal according to system's wiring diagrams. Make all connections with approved crimp-on terminal spade lugs, pressure-type terminal blocks, or plug connectors.
- D. Cable Taps: Use numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes; cabinets; or equipment enclosures where circuit connections are made.
- E. Color-Coding: Color-code fire-alarm conductors differently from the normal building power wiring. Use one color-code for alarm circuit wiring and another for supervisory circuits. Color-code audible alarm-indicating circuits differently from alarm-initiating circuits. Use different colors for visible alarm-indicating devices. Paint fire-alarm system junction boxes and covers

red.

- F. Wiring to Remote Alarm Transmitting Device: 1 inch (25 mm) conduit between the fire-alarm control panel and the transmitter. Install number of conductors and electrical supervision for connecting wiring as needed to suit monitoring function.

### 3.05 CONNECTIONS

- A. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A-486B.
- B. Make splices, terminations, and taps that are compatible with conductor material and that possess equivalent or better mechanical strength and insulation ratings than unspliced conductors.
- C. Wiring at Outlets: Install conductor at each outlet, with at least 6 inch (150 mm) of slack.
- D. Comply with requirements in Section 284621.11 "Addressable Fire-Alarm Systems" for connecting, terminating, and identifying wires and cables.

### 3.06 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify and color-code conductors and cables according to Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Identify each spare conductor at each end with identity number and location of other end of conductor, and identify as spare conductor.

### 3.07 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 260544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling."

### 3.08 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Apply firestopping to electrical penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly according to Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.09 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. After installing conductors and cables and before electrical circuitry has been energized, test service entrance and feeder conductors for compliance with requirements.
  - 2. Perform each of the following visual and electrical tests:
    - a. Inspect exposed sections of conductor and cable for physical damage and correct connection according to the single-line diagram.
    - b. Test bolted connections for high resistance using one of the following:
      - 1) A low-resistance ohmmeter.
      - 2) Calibrated torque wrench.
      - 3) Thermographic survey.
    - c. Inspect compression-applied connectors for correct cable match and indentation.
    - d. Inspect for correct identification.
    - e. Inspect cable jacket and condition.
    - f. Insulation-resistance test on each conductor for ground and adjacent conductors. Apply a potential of 500 V(dc) for 300 V rated cable and 1000 V(dc) for 600 V rated cable for a one-minute duration.
    - g. Continuity test on each conductor and cable.
    - h. Uniform resistance of parallel conductors.
  - 3. Initial Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but before Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each splice in conductors No. 3 AWG and larger. Remove box and equipment covers so splices are accessible to portable scanner. Correct deficiencies

determined during the scan.

- a. Instrument: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
  - b. Record of Infrared Scanning: Prepare a certified report that identifies switches checked and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.
4. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each switch 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Cables will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports to record the following:
1. Procedures used.
  2. Results that comply with requirements.
  3. Results that do not comply with requirements, and corrective action taken to achieve compliance with requirements.

**END OF SECTION 26 05 19**



This page intentionally left blank

**SECTION 26 05 26**  
**GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes grounding and bonding systems and equipment.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 260010 "Supplemental Requirements for Electrical" for additional abbreviations, definitions, submittals, qualifications, testing agencies, and other Project requirements applicable to Work specified in this Section.

**1.02 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

**1.03 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Coordination Drawings: Plans showing dimensioned locations of grounding features specified in "Field Quality Control" Article, including the following:
  - 1. Test wells.
  - 2. Ground rods.
  - 3. Ground rings.
  - 4. Grounding arrangements and connections for separately derived systems.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

**1.04 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For grounding to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
  - 1. In addition to items specified in Section 260010 "Supplemental Requirements for Electrical," include the following:
    - a. Plans showing as-built, dimensioned locations of system described in "Field Quality Control" Article, including the following:
      - 1) Test wells.
      - 2) Ground rods.
      - 3) Ground rings.
      - 4) Grounding arrangements and connections for separately derived systems.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION**

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with UL 467 for grounding and bonding materials and equipment.

**2.02 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1. ABB, Electrification Business.
  - 2. Burndy; Hubbell Incorporated, Construction and Energy.
  - 3. ERICO; nVent.
  - 4. O-Z/Gedney; Emerson Electric Co., Automation Solutions, Appleton Group.
  - 5. Siemens Industry, Inc., Energy Management Division.

**2.03 CONDUCTORS**

- A. Insulated Conductors: Copper wire or cable insulated for 600 V unless otherwise required by applicable Code or authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Grounding Bus: Predrilled rectangular bars of annealed copper, 1/4 by 4 inch (6.3 by 100 mm)] in cross section, with 9/32 inch (7.14 mm) holes spaced 1-1/8 inch (28 mm) apart. Stand-off

insulators for mounting must comply with UL 891 for use in switchboards, 600 V and must be Lexan or PVC, impulse tested at 5000 V.

#### **2.04 CONNECTORS**

- A. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for applications in which used and for specific types, sizes, and combinations of conductors and other items connected.
- B. Welded Connectors: Exothermic-welding kits of types recommended by kit manufacturer for materials being joined and installation conditions.
- C. Mechanical-Type Bus-Bar Connectors: Cast silicon bronze, solderless exothermic-type wire terminals, and long-barrel, two-bolt connection to ground bus bar.
- D. Beam Clamps: Mechanical type, terminal, ground wire access from four directions, with dual, tin-plated or silicon bronze bolts.
- E. Cable-to-Cable Connectors: Compression type, copper or copper alloy.
- F. Cable Tray Ground Clamp: Mechanical type, zinc-plated malleable iron.
- G. Conduit Hubs: Mechanical type, terminal with threaded hub.
- H. Ground Rod Clamps: Mechanical type, copper or copper alloy, terminal with hex head bolt.
- I. Ground Rod Clamps: Mechanical type, copper or copper alloy, terminal with hex head bolt.
- J. Lay-in Lug Connector: Mechanical type, copper rated for direct burial terminal with set screw.
- K. Service Post Connectors: Mechanical type, bronze alloy terminal, in short- and long-stud lengths, capable of single and double conductor connections.
- L. Signal Reference Grid Clamp: Mechanical type, stamped-steel terminal with hex head screw.
- M. Straps: Solid copper, cast-bronze clamp. Rated for 600 A.
- N. Tower Ground Clamps: Mechanical type, copper or copper alloy, terminal one-piece clamp.
- O. U-Bolt Clamps: Mechanical type, copper or copper alloy, terminal listed for direct burial.

#### **2.05 GROUNDING ELECTRODES**

- A. Ground Rods: Copper-clad steel, sectional type; 3/4 inch by 10 ft. (19 mm by 3 m).
  - 1. .
- B. Ground Plates: 1/4 inch (6 mm) thick, hot-dip galvanized.

### **PART 3 EXECUTION**

#### **3.01 APPLICATIONS**

- A. Conductors: Install solid conductor for No. 8 AWG and smaller, and stranded conductors for No. 6 AWG and larger unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Grounding Conductors: Green-colored insulation with continuous yellow stripe.
- C. Isolated Grounding Conductors: Green-colored insulation with more than one continuous yellow stripe. On feeders with isolated ground, identify grounding conductor where visible to normal inspection, with alternating bands of green and yellow tape, with at least three bands of green and two bands of yellow.
- D. Grounding Bus: Install in electrical equipment rooms, in rooms housing service equipment, and elsewhere as indicated.
  - 1. Install bus horizontally, on insulated spacers 2 inch (50 mm) minimum from wall, 6 inch (150 mm) above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Where indicated on both sides of doorways, route bus up to top of door frame, across top of doorway, and down; connect to horizontal bus.
- E. Conductor Terminations and Connections:
  - 1. Pipe and Equipment Grounding Conductor Terminations: Bolted connectors.
  - 2. Underground Connections: Welded connectors except at test wells and as otherwise indicated.

3. Connections to Ground Rods at Test Wells: Bolted connectors.
4. Connections to Structural Steel: Welded connectors.

### 3.02 EQUIPMENT GROUNDING

- A. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with all feeders and branch circuits.
- B. Air-Duct Equipment Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor to duct-mounted electrical devices operating at 120 V and more, including air cleaners, heaters, dampers, humidifiers, and other duct electrical equipment. Bond conductor to each unit and to air duct and connected metallic piping.
- C. Water Heater, Heat-Tracing, and Antifrost Heating Cables: Install a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor to each electric water heater and heat-tracing cable. Bond conductor to heater units, piping, connected equipment, and components.
- D. Isolated Equipment Enclosure Circuits: For designated equipment supplied by a branch circuit or feeder, isolate equipment enclosure from supply circuit raceway with a nonmetallic raceway fitting listed for the purpose. Install fitting where raceway enters enclosure, and install a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor. Isolate conductor from raceway and from panelboard grounding terminals. Terminate at equipment grounding conductor terminal of the applicable derived system or service unless otherwise indicated.

### 3.03 INSTALLATION

- A. Grounding Conductors: Route along shortest and straightest paths possible unless otherwise indicated or required by Code. Avoid obstructing access or placing conductors where they may be subjected to strain, impact, or damage.
- B. Ground Bonding Common with Lightning Protection System: Comply with NFPA 780 and UL 96 when interconnecting with lightning protection system. Bond electrical power system ground directly to lightning protection system grounding conductor at closest point to electrical service grounding electrode. Use bonding conductor sized same as system grounding electrode conductor, and install in conduit.
- C. Ground Rods: Drive rods until tops are 2 inch (50 mm) below finished floor or final grade unless otherwise indicated.
  1. Interconnect ground rods with grounding electrode conductor below grade and as otherwise indicated. Make connections without exposing steel or damaging coating if any.
  2. Use exothermic welds for all below-grade connections.
  3. For grounding electrode system, install at least three rods spaced at least one-rod length from each other and located at least the same distance from other grounding electrodes, and connect to the service grounding electrode conductor.
- D. Bonding Straps and Jumpers: Install in locations accessible for inspection and maintenance except where routed through short lengths of conduit.
  1. Bonding to Structure: Bond straps directly to basic structure, taking care not to penetrate any adjacent parts.
  2. Bonding to Equipment Mounted on Vibration Isolation Hangers and Supports: Install bonding so vibration is not transmitted to rigidly mounted equipment.
  3. Use exothermic-welded connectors for outdoor locations; if a disconnect-type connection is required, use a bolted clamp.
- E. Grounding and Bonding for Piping:
  1. Metal Water Service Pipe: Install insulated copper grounding conductors, in conduit, from building's main service equipment, or grounding bus, to main metal water service entrances to building. Connect grounding conductors to main metal water service pipes; use a bolted clamp connector or bolt a lug-type connector to a pipe flange by using one of the lug bolts of the flange. Where a dielectric main water fitting is installed, connect grounding conductor on street side of fitting. Bond metal grounding conductor conduit or sleeve to conductor at each end.
  2. Water Meter Piping: Use braided-type bonding jumpers to electrically bypass water meters. Connect to pipe with a bolted connector.

3. Bond each aboveground portion of gas piping system downstream from equipment shutoff valve.
- F. Bonding Interior Metal Ducts: Bond metal air ducts to equipment grounding conductors of associated fans, blowers, electric heaters, and air cleaners. Install bonding jumper to bond across flexible duct connections to achieve continuity.
- G. Connections: Make connections so possibility of galvanic action or electrolysis is minimized. Select connectors, connection hardware, conductors, and connection methods so metals in direct contact are galvanically compatible.
  1. Use electroplated or hot-tin-coated materials to ensure high conductivity and to make contact points closer in order of galvanic series.
  2. Make connections with clean, bare metal at points of contact.
  3. Make aluminum-to-steel connections with stainless steel separators and mechanical clamps.
  4. Make aluminum-to-galvanized-steel connections with tin-plated copper jumpers and mechanical clamps.
  5. Coat and seal connections having dissimilar metals with inert material to prevent future penetration of moisture to contact surfaces.

### 3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Tests and Inspections:
  1. After installing grounding system but before permanent electrical circuits have been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
  2. Inspect physical and mechanical condition. Verify tightness of accessible, bolted, electrical connections with a calibrated torque wrench according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  3. Test completed grounding system at each location where a maximum ground-resistance level is specified, at service disconnect enclosure grounding terminal. Make tests at ground rods before any conductors are connected.
    - a. Measure ground resistance no fewer than two full days after last trace of precipitation and without soil being moistened by any means other than natural drainage or seepage and without chemical treatment or other artificial means of reducing natural ground resistance.
    - b. Perform tests by fall-of-potential method according to IEEE 81.
- B. Grounding system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- D. Report measured ground resistances that exceed the following values:
  1. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity of 500 kVA and Less: 10 ohms.
  2. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity of 500 to 1000 kVA: 5 ohms.
  3. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity More Than 1000 kVA: 3 ohms.
- E. Excessive Ground Resistance: If resistance to ground exceeds specified values, notify Architect promptly and include recommendations to reduce ground resistance.

**END OF SECTION 26 05 26**

**SECTION 26 05 29  
HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Support, anchorage, and attachment components.
  - 2. Fabricated metal equipment support assemblies.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 260010 "Supplemental Requirements for Electrical" for additional abbreviations, definitions, submittals, qualifications, testing agencies, and other Project requirements applicable to Work specified in this Section.

**1.02 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for the following:
    - a. Slotted support systems, hardware, and accessories.
    - b. Clamps.
    - c. Hangers.
    - d. Sockets.
    - e. Eye nuts.
    - f. Fasteners.
    - g. Anchors.
    - h. Saddles.
    - i. Brackets.
  - 2. Include rated capacities and furnished specialties and accessories.
  - 3. Hangers. Include product data for components.
  - 4. Slotted support systems.
  - 5. Equipment supports.
  - 6. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.
- B. Delegated Design Submittal: For hangers and supports for electrical systems.
  - 1. Include design calculations and details of hangers.

**1.03 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Welding certificates.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified structural professional engineer to design hanger and support system.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - 1. Flame Rating: Class 1.
  - 2. Self-extinguishing according to ASTM D635.

**2.02 SUPPORT, ANCHORAGE, AND ATTACHMENT COMPONENTS**

- A. Steel Slotted Support Systems: Preformed steel channels and angles with minimum 13/32 inch (10 mm) diameter holes at a maximum of 8 inch (200 mm) on center in at least one surface.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

- a. ABB, Electrification Business.
  - b. Allied Tube & Conduit; Atkore International.
  - c. B-line; Eaton, Electrical Sector.
  - d. Unistrut; Atkore International.
  2. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4 factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
  3. Material for Channel, Fittings, and Accessories: Galvanized steel.
  4. Channel Width: Selected for applicable load criteria.
  5. Metallic Coatings: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and applied according to MFMA-4.
  6. Nonmetallic Coatings: Manufacturer's standard PVC, polyurethane, or polyester coating applied according to MFMA-4.
  7. Painted Coatings: Manufacturer's standard painted coating applied according to MFMA-4.
  8. Protect finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Conduit and Cable Support Devices: Stainless steel hangers, clamps, and associated fittings, designed for types and sizes of raceway or cable to be supported.
- C. Support for Conductors in Vertical Conduit: Factory-fabricated assembly consisting of threaded body and insulating wedging plug or plugs for nonarmored electrical conductors or cables in riser conduits. Plugs must have number, size, and shape of conductor gripping pieces as required to suit individual conductors or cables supported. Body must be made of malleable iron.
- D. Structural Steel for Fabricated Supports and Restraints: ASTM A36/A36M steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- E. Mounting, Anchoring, and Attachment Components: Items for fastening electrical items or their supports to building surfaces include the following:
1. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, steel, or wood, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
  2. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, [zinc-coated] [stainless] steel, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
  3. Concrete Inserts: Steel or malleable-iron, slotted support system units are similar to MSS Type 18 units and comply with MFMA-4 or MSS SP-58.
  4. Clamps for Attachment to Steel Structural Elements: MSS SP-58 units are suitable for attached structural element.
  5. Through Bolts: Structural type, hex head, and high strength. Comply with ASTM F3125/F3125M, Grade A325 (Grade A325M).
  6. Toggle Bolts: Stainless steel springhead type.
  7. Hanger Rods: Threaded steel.

### **2.03 FABRICATED METAL EQUIPMENT SUPPORT ASSEMBLIES**

- A. Description: Welded or bolted structural-steel shapes, shop or field fabricated to fit dimensions of supported equipment.
- B. Materials: Comply with requirements in Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for steel shapes and plates.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 SELECTION**

- A. Comply with the following standards for selection and installation of hangers and supports, except where requirements on Drawings or in this Section are stricter:
  1. NECA NEIS 101
- B. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping materials and installation for penetrations through fire-rated walls, ceilings, and assemblies.

- C. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Section 260533 "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
- D. Maximum Support Spacing and Minimum Hanger Rod Size for Raceways: Space supports for EMT, IMC, and ERMC as scheduled in NECA NEIS 1, where its Table 1 lists maximum spacings that are less than those stated in NFPA 70. Minimum rod size must be 1/4 inch (6 mm) in diameter.
- E. Multiple Raceways or Cables: Install trapeze-type supports fabricated with steel slotted or other support system, sized so capacity can be increased by at least 25 percent in future without exceeding specified design load limits.
  - 1. Secure raceways and cables to these supports with two-bolt conduit clamps.
- F. Spring-steel clamps designed for supporting single conduits without bolts may be used for 1-1/2 inch (38 mm) and smaller raceways serving branch circuits and communication systems above suspended ceilings, and for fastening raceways to trapeze supports.

### 3.02 INSTALLATION OF SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with NECA NEIS 101 for installation requirements except as specified in this article.
- B. Raceway Support Methods: In addition to methods described in NECA NEIS 1, EMT may be supported by openings through structure members, in accordance with NFPA 70.
- C. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination must be weight of supported components plus 200 lb (90 kg).
- D. Mounting and Anchorage of Surface-Mounted Equipment and Components: Anchor and fasten electrical items and their supports to building structural elements by the following methods unless otherwise indicated by code:
  - 1. To Wood: Fasten with lag screws or through bolts.
  - 2. To New Concrete: Bolt to concrete inserts.
  - 3. To Masonry: Approved toggle-type bolts on hollow masonry units and expansion anchor fasteners on solid masonry units.
  - 4. To Existing Concrete: Expansion anchor fasteners.
  - 5. Instead of expansion anchors, powder-actuated driven threaded studs provided with lock washers and nuts may be used in existing standard-weight concrete 4 inch (100 mm) thick or greater. Do not use for anchorage to lightweight-aggregate concrete or for slabs less than 4 inch (100 mm) thick.
  - 6. To Steel: Welded threaded studs complying with AWS D1.1/D1.1M, with lock washers and nuts.
  - 7. To Light Steel: Sheet metal screws.
  - 8. Items Mounted on Hollow Walls and Nonstructural Building Surfaces: Mount cabinets, panelboards, disconnect switches, control enclosures, pull and junction boxes, transformers, and other devices on slotted-channel racks attached to substrate.
- E. Drill holes for expansion anchors in concrete at locations and to depths that avoid the need for reinforcing bars.

### 3.03 INSTALLATION OF FABRICATED METAL SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with installation requirements in Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for site-fabricated metal supports.
- B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor electrical materials and equipment.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M. Submit welding certificates.

### 3.04 CONCRETE BASES

- A. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated, but not less than 4 inch (100 mm) larger in both directions than supported unit, and so anchors will be a minimum of 10 bolt diameters from



edge of the base.

- B. Use [3000 psi (20.7 MPa), 28-day compressive-strength concrete. Concrete materials, reinforcement, and placement requirements are specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- C. Anchor equipment to concrete base as follows:
  - 1. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  - 2. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
  - 3. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.

### **3.05 PAINTING**

- A. Touchup:
  - 1. Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
    - a. Apply paint with a brush or spray to provide minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils (0.05 mm).
- B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A780.

**END OF SECTION 26 05 29**

**SECTION 26 05 33**  
**RACEWAY AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
1. Type EMT-A and Type EMT-SS raceways and elbows.
  2. Type EMT-S raceways and elbows.
  3. Type ERMC-A and Type ERMC-SS raceways, elbows, couplings, and nipples.
  4. Type ERMC-S raceways, elbows, couplings, and nipples.
  5. Type FMC-S and Type FMC-A raceways.
  6. Type FMT raceways.
  7. Type IMC raceways.
  8. Type LFMC raceways.
  9. Fittings for conduit, tubing, and cable.
  10. Threaded metal joint compound.
  11. Solvent cements.
  12. Surface metal raceways and fittings.
  13. Surface nonmetallic raceways.
  14. Strut-type channel raceways and fittings.
  15. Wireways and auxiliary gutters.
  16. Metallic outlet boxes, device boxes, rings, and covers.
  17. Nonmetallic outlet boxes, device boxes, rings, and covers.
  18. Termination boxes.
  19. Cabinets, cutout boxes, junction boxes, pull boxes, and miscellaneous enclosures.
  20. Cover plates for device boxes.
  21. Hoods for outlet boxes.
- B. Related Requirements:
1. Section 260010 "Supplemental Requirements for Electrical" for additional abbreviations, definitions, submittals, qualifications, testing agencies, and other Project requirements applicable to Work specified in this Section.
  2. Section 260519 "Low-Voltage for Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" for nonmetallic underground conduit with conductors (Type NUCC).
  3. Section 270528 "Pathways for Communications Systems" for conduits, wireways, surface pathways, innerduct, boxes, faceplate adapters, enclosures, cabinets, and handholes serving communications systems.

**1.02 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For the following:
1. Wireways and auxiliary gutters.
  2. Surface metal raceways.
  3. Surface nonmetallic raceways.
  4. Floor boxes.
  5. Cabinets, cutout boxes, and miscellaneous enclosures.
- B. Shop Drawings: For custom enclosures and cabinets. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details. Show that floor boxes are located to avoid interferences and are structurally allowable. Indicate floor thickness at location where boxes are embedded in concrete floors and underfloor clearances where boxes are installed in raised floors.
- C. Samples: For wireways, for colors and textures specified, 12 inch (300 mm) long.

**1.03 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Manufacturers' Instructions:
1. For Type ERMC-S-PVC.

## **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 GENERAL CRITERIA**

- A. Performance Criteria:
  - 1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.
  - 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Allied Tube & Conduit; Atkore International.
    - b. Calconduit; Atkore International.
    - c. Emerson Electric Co.
    - d. Western Tube; Zekelman Industries.
    - e. Wheatland Tube; Zekelman Industries.
  - 3. Options:
    - a. Minimum Trade Size: Metric designator 21 (trade size 3/4).
    - b. Colors: As indicated on Drawings or elsewhere in specifications.

### **2.02 TYPE EMT-A AND TYPE EMT-SS RACEWAYS AND ELBOWS**

- A. Performance Criteria:
  - 1. General Characteristics: UL 797A and UL Category Control Number FJMX.
- B. Stainless Steel Electrical Metal Tubing (EMT-SS) and Elbows:
  - 1. Material: Stainless steel.

### **2.03 TYPE EMT-S RACEWAYS AND ELBOWS**

- A. Performance Criteria:
  - 1. General Characteristics: UL 797 and UL Category Control Number FJMX.
- B. Steel Electrical Metal Tubing (EMT-S) and Elbows:
  - 1. Material: Steel.
  - 2. Options:
    - a. Exterior Coating: Zinc.
    - b. Interior Coating: Organic coating.

### **2.04 TYPE ERMC-A AND TYPE ERMC-SS RACEWAYS, ELBOWS, COUPLINGS, AND NIPPLES**

- A. Performance Criteria:
  - 1. General Characteristics: UL 6A and UL Category Control Number DYWV.
- B. Stainless Steel Electrical Rigid Metal Conduit (ERMC-SS), Elbows, Couplings, and Nipples:
  - 1. Material: Stainless steel.

### **2.05 TYPE ERMC-S RACEWAYS, ELBOWS, COUPLINGS, AND NIPPLES**

- A. Performance Criteria:
  - 1. General Characteristics: UL 6 and UL Category Control Number DYIX.
- B. Galvanized-Steel Electrical Rigid Metal Conduit (ERMC-S-G), Elbows, Couplings, and Nipples:
  - 1. Exterior Coating: Zinc.
  - 2. Options:
    - a. Interior Coating: Organic coating.

### **2.06 TYPE FMC-S AND TYPE FMC-A RACEWAYS**

- A. Performance Criteria:
  - 1. General Characteristics: UL 1 and UL Category Control Number DXUZ.
- B. Steel Flexible Metal Conduit (FMC-S):
  - 1. Material: Steel.

### **2.07 TYPE IMC RACEWAYS**

- A. Performance Criteria:

1. General Characteristics: UL 1242 and UL Category Control Number DYBY.
- B. Steel Electrical Intermediate Metal Conduit (IMC):
  1. Options:
    - a. Exterior Coating: Zinc.
    - b. Interior Coating: Organic coating.

## **2.08 TYPE LFMC RACEWAYS**

- A. Performance Criteria:
  1. General Characteristics: UL 360 and UL Category Control Number DXHR.
- B. Steel Liquidtight Flexible Metal Conduit (LFMC-S):
  1. Material: Steel.
- C. Stainless Steel Liquidtight Flexible Metal Conduit (LFMC-SS):
  1. Material: Stainless steel.

## **2.09 FITTINGS FOR CONDUIT, TUBING, AND CABLE**

- A. Performance Criteria:
  1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.
- B. Fittings for Type ERM, Type IMC, Type PVC, Type EPEC, and Type RTRC Raceways:
  1. General Characteristics: UL 514B and UL Category Control Number DWTT.
  2. Options:
    - a. Material: Steel.
    - b. Coupling Method: Compression coupling.
    - c. Conduit Fittings for Hazardous (Classified) Locations: UL 1203.
    - d. Expansion and Deflection Fittings: UL 651 with flexible external bonding jumper.
- C. Fittings for Type EMT Raceways:
  1. General Characteristics: UL 514B and UL Category Control Number FKA.
  2. Options:
    - a. Material: Steel.
    - b. Coupling Method: Compression coupling.
    - c. Conduit Fittings for Hazardous (Classified) Locations: UL 1203.
    - d. Expansion and Deflection Fittings: UL 651 with flexible external bonding jumper.
- D. Fittings for Type FMC Raceways:
  1. General Characteristics: UL 514B and UL Category Control Number ILNR.
- E. Fittings for Type LFMC Raceways:
  1. General Characteristics: UL 514B and UL Category Control Number DXAS.

## **2.10 ELECTRICALLY CONDUCTIVE CORROSION-RESISTANT COMPOUNDS FOR THREADED CONDUIT**

- A. Performance Criteria:
  1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.
  2. General Characteristics: UL 2419 and UL Category Control Number FOIZ.

## **2.11 SOLVENT CEMENTS**

- A. Performance Criteria:
  1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.
  2. General Characteristics: As recommended by conduit manufacturer in accordance with UL 514B and UL Category Control Number DWTT.
  3. Sustainability Characteristics:

## **2.12 SURFACE METAL RACEWAYS AND FITTINGS**

- A. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.
  2. General Characteristics: UL 5 and UL Category Control Number RJBT.
- B. Surface Metal Raceways and Fittings with Metal Covers:
1. Options:
    - a. Galvanized steel base with snap-on covers.
    - b. Prime coated, ready for field painting.
    - c. Wiring Channels: Dual. Multiple channels must be capable of housing a standard 20 to 30 A NEMA device flush within the raceway.

### **2.13 WIREWAYS AND AUXILIARY GUTTERS**

- A. Performance Criteria:
1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.
  2. General Characteristics: UL 870 and UL Category Control Number ZOYX.
- B. Metal Wireways and Auxiliary Gutters:
1. Additional Characteristics:
    - a. Fittings and Accessories: Include covers, couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings to match and mate with wireways as required for complete system.
    - b. Finish: Manufacturer's standard enamel finish.
  2. Options:
    - a. Degree of Protection: Type 3R unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Wireway Covers: Flanged-and-gasketed type unless otherwise indicated.

### **2.14 METALLIC OUTLET BOXES, DEVICE BOXES, RINGS, AND COVERS**

- A. Performance Criteria:
1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.
  2. General Characteristics: UL 514A and UL Category Control Number QCIT.
- B. Metallic Outlet Boxes:
1. Description: Box having pryout openings, knockouts, threaded entries, or hubs in either the sides of the back, or both, for entrance of conduit, conduit or cable fittings, or cables, with provisions for mounting outlet box cover, but without provisions for mounting wiring device directly to box.
  2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. ABB, Electrification Business.
    - b. Crouse-Hinds; Eaton, Electrical Sector.
    - c. EGS; Emerson Electric Co., Automation Solutions, Appleton Group.
    - d. Hubbell Premise Wiring; Hubbell Incorporated, Commercial and Industrial.
    - e. Pass & Seymour; Legrand North America, LLC.
    - f. Wiremold; Legrand North America, LLC.
  3. Options:
    - a. Material: Sheet metal.
    - b. Sheet Metal Depth: Minimum 2 inch (50 mm).
    - c. Luminaire Outlet Boxes and Covers: Nonadjustable, listed and labeled for attachment of luminaire weighing up to 50 lb (23 kg).
- C. Metallic Conduit Bodies:
1. Description: Means for providing access to interior of conduit or tubing system through one or more removable covers at junction or terminal point. In the United States, conduit bodies are listed in accordance with outlet box requirements.

2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. ABB, Electrification Business.
  - b. Crouse-Hinds; Eaton, Electrical Sector.
  - c. EGS; Emerson Electric Co., Automation Solutions, Appleton Group.
  - d. Killark; Hubbell Incorporated, Construction and Energy.
  - e. Pass & Seymour; Legrand North America, LLC.
- D. Metallic Device Boxes:
  1. Description: Box with provisions for mounting wiring device directly to box.
  2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. ABB, Electrification Business.
    - b. Crouse-Hinds; Eaton, Electrical Sector.
    - c. EGS; Emerson Electric Co., Automation Solutions, Appleton Group.
    - d. Hubbell Premise Wiring; Hubbell Incorporated, Commercial and Industrial.
    - e. O-Z/Gedney; Emerson Electric Co., Automation Solutions, Appleton Group.
  3. Options:
    - a. Material: Sheet steel.
    - b. Sheet Metal Depth: minimum 2 inch (50 mm).
- E. Metallic Extension Rings:
  1. Description: Ring intended to extend sides of outlet box or device box to increase box depth, volume, or both.
- F. Metallic Floor Boxes and Floor Box Covers:
  1. Description: Box mounted in floor with floor box cover and other components to complete floor box enclosure.
- G. Metallic Raised-Floor Boxes and Floor Box Covers:
  1. Description: Box mounted in raised-floor with floor box cover and other components to complete floor box enclosure.
- H. Metallic Recessed Access-Floor Boxes and Recessed Floor Box Covers:
  1. Description: Floor box with provisions for mounting wiring devices below floor surface and floor box cover with provisions for passage of cords to recessed wiring devices mounted within floor box.
- I. Metallic Concrete Boxes and Covers:
  1. Description: Box intended for use in poured concrete.

**2.15 CABINETS, CUTOUT BOXES, JUNCTION BOXES, PULL BOXES, AND MISCELLANEOUS ENCLOSURES**

- A. Performance Criteria:
  1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.
  2. General Characteristics:
    - a. Non-Environmental Characteristics: UL 50.
    - b. Environmental Characteristics: UL 50E.
- B. Indoor Sheet Metal Cabinets:
  1. Description: Enclosure provided with frame, mat, or trim in which swinging door or doors are or can be hung.
  2. Additional Characteristics: UL Category Control Number CYIV.
- C. Indoor Sheet Metal Cutout Boxes:
  1. Description: Enclosure that has swinging doors or covers secured directly to and telescoping with walls of enclosure.

2. Additional Characteristics: UL Category Control Number CYIV.
- D. Indoor Sheet Metal Junction and Pull Boxes:
  1. Description: Box with a blank cover that serves the purpose of joining different runs of raceway or cable.
  2. Additional Characteristics: UL Category Control Number BGUIZ.
- E. Indoor Cast-Metal Junction and Pull Boxes:
  1. Description: Box with a blank cover that serves the purpose of joining different runs of raceway or cable.
  2. Additional Characteristics: UL Category Control Number BGUIZ.
- F. Indoor Polymeric Junction and Pull Boxes:
  1. Description: Box with a blank cover that serves the purpose of joining different runs of raceway or cable.
  2. Additional Characteristics: UL Category Control Number BGUIZ.
- G. Indoor Sheet Metal Miscellaneous Enclosures:
  1. Additional Characteristics: UL 1773 and UL Category Control Number XCKT.
- H. Outdoor Sheet Metal Cabinets:
  1. Description: Enclosure provided with frame, mat, or trim in which swinging door or doors are or can be hung.
  2. Additional Characteristics: UL Category Control Number CYIV.
- I. Outdoor Sheet Metal Cutout Boxes:
  1. Description: Enclosure that has swinging doors or covers secured directly to and telescoping with walls of enclosure.
  2. Additional Characteristics: UL Category Control Number CYIV.
- J. Outdoor Sheet Metal Junction and Pull Boxes:
  1. Description: Box with a blank cover that serves the purpose of joining different runs of raceway or cable.
  2. Additional Characteristics: UL Category Control Number BGUIZ.
- K. Outdoor Sheet Metal Miscellaneous Enclosures:
  1. Additional Characteristics: UL 1773 and UL Category Control Number XCKT.

## **2.16 COVER PLATES FOR DEVICES BOXES**

- A. Performance Criteria:
  1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.
  2. General Characteristics:
    - a. Reference Standards: UL 514D and UL Category Control Numbers QCIT and QCMZ.
    - b. Wallplate-Securing Screws: Metal with head color to match wallplate finish.
- B. Metallic Cover Plates for Device Boxes:
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. ABB, Electrification Business.
    - b. Crouse-Hinds; Eaton, Electrical Sector.
    - c. Hubbell Premise Wiring; Hubbell Incorporated, Commercial and Industrial.
    - d. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
    - e. Wiremold; Legrand North America, LLC.
  2. Options:
    - a. Damp and Wet Locations: Listed, labeled, and marked for location and use. Provide gaskets and accessories necessary for compliance with listing.
    - b. Wallplate Material: Steel with white baked enamel, suitable for field painting.

## 2.17 HOODS FOR OUTLET BOXES

- A. Performance Criteria:
  - 1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.
  - 2. General Characteristics:
    - a. Reference Standards:
      - 1) UL 514D and UL Category Control Numbers QCIT and QCMZ.
      - 2) Receptacle, hood, cover plate, gaskets, and seals comply with UL 498 Supplement SA when mated with box or enclosure complying with UL 514A, UL 514C, or UL 50E.
    - b. Mounts to box using fasteners different from wiring device.
- B. Retractable or Reattachable Hoods for Outlet Boxes:
  - 1. Options:
    - a. Provides clear, weatherproof, "while-in-use" cover.
    - b. device box with hood as extra-duty rated assembly.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.01 SELECTION OF RACEWAYS

- A. Unless more stringent requirements are specified in Contract Documents or manufacturers' written instructions, comply with NFPA 70 for selection of raceways. Consult Architect for resolution of conflicting requirements.
- B. Outdoors:
  - 1. Exposed and Subject to Severe Physical Damage: IMC.
  - 2. Exposed and Subject to Physical Damage: IMC.
    - a. Locations less than 2.5 m (8 ft) above finished floor.
  - 3. Exposed and Not Subject to Physical Damage: IMC.
  - 4. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): LFMC.
- C. Indoors:
  - 1. Hazardous Classified Locations: IMC.
  - 2. Exposed and Subject to Severe Physical Damage: IMC. Subject to severe physical damage includes the following locations:
    - a. Loading docks.
    - b. Corridors used for traffic of mechanized carts, forklifts, and pallet-handling units.
    - c. Mechanical rooms.
    - d. Gymnasiums.
  - 3. Exposed and Subject to Physical Damage: IMC. Subject to physical damage includes the following locations:
    - a. Locations less than 2.5 m (8 ft) above finished floor.
    - b. Stub-ups to above suspended ceilings.
  - 4. Exposed and Not Subject to Physical Damage: EMT.
  - 5. Concealed in Ceilings and Interior Walls and Partitions: EMT.
  - 6. Damp or Wet Locations: Corrosion-resistant EMT.
  - 7. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): LFMC.
- D. Raceway Fittings: Select fittings in accordance with NEMA FB 2.10 guidelines.
  - 1. IMC: Provide threaded type fittings unless otherwise indicated.

### 3.02 SELECTION OF BOXES AND ENCLOSURES

- A. Unless more stringent requirements are specified in Contract Documents or manufacturers' written instructions, comply with NFPA 70 for selection of boxes and enclosures. Consult Architect for resolution of conflicting requirements.
- B. Degree of Protection:



1. Outdoors:
  - a. Type 3R unless otherwise indicated.
2. Indoors:
  - a. Type 1 unless otherwise indicated.
  - b. Damp or Dusty Locations: Type 2.
  - c. Surface Mounted in Kitchens and Other Locations Exposed to Oil or Coolants: Type 12.
  - d. Flush Mounted in Kitchens and Other Locations Exposed to Oil or Coolants: Type 12.
  - e. Locations Exposed to Airborne Dust, Lint, Fibers, or Flyings: Type 4.
  - f. Locations Exposed to Hosedown: Type 4.
  - g. Locations Exposed to Brief Submersion: Type 6.
  - h. Locations Exposed to Prolonged Submersion: Type 6P.
  - i. Locations Exposed to Corrosive Agents: Type 4X.
  - j. Locations Exposed to Spraying Oil or Coolants: Type 13.
- C. Exposed Boxes Installed Less Than 2.5 m (8 ft) Above Floor:
  1. Boxes with knockouts or unprotected openings are prohibited.
  2. Provide exposed cover. Flat covers with angled mounting slots or knockouts are prohibited.

### 3.03 INSTALLATION OF RACEWAYS

- A. Installation Standards:
  1. Unless more stringent requirements are specified in Contract Documents or manufacturers' written instructions, comply with NFPA 70 for installation of raceways. Consult Architect for resolution of conflicting requirements.
  2. Comply with NFPA 70 limitations for types of raceways allowed in specific occupancies and number of floors.
  3. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for hangers and supports.
  4. Comply with NECA NEIS 101 for installation of steel raceways.
  5. Comply with NECA NEIS 102 for installation of aluminum raceways.
  6. Comply with NECA NEIS 111 for installation of nonmetallic raceways.
  7. Install raceways square to the enclosure and terminate at enclosures without hubs with locknuts on both sides of enclosure wall. Install locknuts hand tight, plus one-quarter turn more.
  8. Terminate threaded conduits into threaded hubs or with locknuts on inside and outside of boxes or cabinets. Install bushings on conduits up to metric designator 35 (trade size 1-1/4) and insulated throat metal bushings on metric designator 41 (trade size 1-1/2) and larger conduits terminated with locknuts.
  9. Raceway Terminations at Locations Subject to Moisture or Vibration:
    - a. Provide insulating bushings to protect conductors, including conductors smaller than No. 4 AWG.
- B. General Requirements for Installation of Raceways:
  1. Complete raceway installation before starting conductor installation.
  2. Provide stub-ups through floors with coupling threaded inside for plugs, set flush with finished floor. Plug coupling until conduit is extended above floor to final destination or a minimum of 2 ft (0.6 m) above finished floor.
  3. Install no more than equivalent of three 90-degree bends in conduit run except for control wiring conduits, for which no more than equivalent of two 90-degree fewer bends are permitted. Support within 12 inch (300 mm) of changes in direction.
  4. Make bends in raceway using large-radius preformed ells except for parallel bends. Field bending must be in accordance with NFPA 70 minimum radii requirements. Provide only equipment specifically designed for material and size involved.
  5. Conceal conduit within finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated. Install conduits parallel or perpendicular to building lines.
  6. Support conduit within 12 inch (300 mm) of enclosures to which attached.

7. Install raceway sealing fittings at accessible locations in accordance with NFPA 70 and fill them with listed sealing compound. For concealed raceways, install fitting in flush steel box with blank cover plate having finish similar to that of adjacent plates or surfaces. Install raceway sealing fittings in accordance with NFPA 70.
  8. Install devices to seal raceway interiors at accessible locations. Locate seals so no fittings or boxes are between the seal and the following changes of environments. Seal interior of raceways at the following points:
    - a. Where conduits pass from warm to cold locations, such as boundaries of refrigerated spaces.
    - b. Where an underground service raceway enters a building or structure.
    - c. Conduit extending from interior to exterior of building.
    - d. Conduit extending into pressurized duct and equipment.
    - e. Conduit extending into pressurized zones that are automatically controlled to maintain different pressure set points.
    - f. Where otherwise required by NFPA 70.
  9. Do not install conduits within 2 inch (50 mm) of the bottom side of a metal deck roof.
  10. Keep raceways at least 6 inch (150 mm) away from parallel runs of flues and steam or hot-water pipes. Install horizontal raceway runs above water and steam piping.
  11. Cut conduit perpendicular to the length. For conduits metric designator 53 (trade size 2) and larger, use roll cutter or a guide to make cut straight and perpendicular to the length. Ream inside of conduit to remove burrs.
  12. Install pull wires in empty raceways. Provide polypropylene or monofilament plastic line with not less than 200 lb (90 kg) tensile strength. Leave at least 12 inch (300 mm) of slack at both ends of pull wire. Cap underground raceways designated as spare above grade alongside raceways in use.
- C. Requirements for Installation of Specific Raceway Types:
1. Type IMC:
    - a. Threaded Conduit Joints, Exposed to Wet, Damp, Corrosive, or Outdoor Conditions: Apply listed compound that maintains electrical conductivity to threads of raceway and fittings before making up joints. Follow compound manufacturer's written instructions.
  2. Types FMC, LFMC:
    - a. Comply with NEMA RV 3. Provide a maximum of 36 inch (915 mm) of flexible conduit for recessed and semirecessed luminaires, equipment subject to vibration, noise transmission, or movement; and for transformers and motors.
- D. Stub-ups to Above Recessed Ceilings:
1. Provide EMT or IMC, for raceways.
  2. Provide a conduit bushing or insulated fitting to terminate stub-ups not terminated in hubs or in an enclosure.
- E. Raceway Fittings: Install fittings in accordance with NEMA FB 2.10 guidelines.
1. EMT: Provide compression fittings. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
  2. Flexible Conduit: Provide only fittings listed for use with flexible conduit type. Comply with NEMA FB 2.20.
- F. Expansion-Joint Fittings:
1. Install type and quantity of fittings that accommodate temperature change listed for the following locations:
    - a. Outdoor Locations Not Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 125 deg F (70 deg C) temperature change.
    - b. Outdoor Locations Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 155 deg F (86 deg C) temperature change.
    - c. Indoor Spaces Connected with Outdoors without Physical Separation: 125 deg F (70 deg C) temperature change.
  2. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.00041 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F (0.06 mm per meter of length of straight run per deg C) of

temperature change for PVC conduits. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.000078 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F (0.0115 mm per meter of length of straight run per deg C) of temperature change for metal conduits.

3. Install expansion fittings at locations where conduits cross building or structure expansion joints.
  4. Install expansion-joint fitting with position, mounting, and piston setting selected in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions for conditions at specific location at time of installation. Install conduit supports to allow for expansion movement.
- G. Raceways Penetrating Rooms or Walls with Acoustical Requirements:
1. Seal raceway openings on both sides of rooms or walls with acoustically rated putty or firestopping.

### **3.04 INSTALLATION OF SURFACE RACEWAYS**

- A. Install surface raceways only where indicated on Drawings.
- B. Install surface raceway with a minimum 2 inch (50 mm) radius control at bend points.
- C. Secure surface raceway with screws or other anchor-type devices at intervals not exceeding 48 inch (1200 mm) and with no less than two supports per straight raceway section. Support surface raceway in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions. Tape and glue are unacceptable support methods.

### **3.05 INSTALLATION OF BOXES AND ENCLOSURES**

- A. Provide boxes in wiring and raceway systems wherever required for pulling of wires, making connections, and mounting of devices or fixtures.
- B. Mount boxes at heights indicated on Drawings. If mounting heights of boxes are not individually indicated, give priority to ADA requirements. Install boxes with height measured to center of box unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Recessed Boxes in Masonry Walls: Saw-cut opening for box in center of cell of masonry block, and install box flush with surface of wall. Prepare block surfaces to provide a flat surface for a raintight connection between box and cover plate or supported equipment and box, whether installed indoors or outdoors.
- D. Horizontally separate boxes mounted on opposite sides of walls so they are not in the same vertical channel.
- E. Locate boxes so that cover or plate will not span different building finishes.
- F. Support boxes in recessed ceilings independent of ceiling tiles and ceiling grid.
- G. Support boxes of three gangs or more from more than one side by spanning two framing members or mounting on brackets specifically designed for purpose.
- H. Fasten junction and pull boxes to, or support from, building structure. Do not support boxes by conduits.
- I. Set metal floor boxes level and flush with finished floor surface.
- J. Set nonmetallic floor boxes level. Trim after installation to fit flush with finished floor surface.
- K. Do not install aluminum boxes, enclosures, or fittings in contact with concrete or earth.
- L. Do not rely on locknuts to penetrate nonconductive coatings on enclosures. Remove coatings in the locknut area prior to assembling conduit to enclosure to ensure a continuous ground path.
- M. Boxes and Enclosures in Areas or Walls with Acoustical Requirements:
  1. Seal openings and knockouts in back and sides of boxes and enclosures with acoustically rated putty.
  2. Provide gaskets for wallplates and covers.

**3.06 FIRESTOPPING**

- A. Install firestopping at penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

**3.07 PROTECTION**

- A. Protect coatings, finishes, and cabinets from damage and deterioration.
  - 1. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer.
  - 2. Repair damage to PVC coatings or paint finishes with matching touchup coating recommended by manufacturer.

**3.08 CLEANING**

- A. Boxes: Remove construction dust and debris from device boxes, outlet boxes, and floor-mounted enclosures before installing wallplates, covers, and hoods.

**END OF SECTION 26 05 33**

This page intentionally left blank

**SECTION 26 05 44**  
**SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR ELECTRICAL RACEWAYS AND CABLING**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Round sleeves.
  - 2. Rectangular sleeves.
  - 3. Sleeve seal systems.
  - 4. Grout.
  - 5. Pourable sealants.
  - 6. Foam sealants.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 260010 "Supplemental Requirements for Electrical" for additional abbreviations, definitions, submittals, qualifications, testing agencies, and other Project requirements applicable to Work specified in this Section.
  - 2. Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for penetration firestopping installed in fire-resistance-rated walls, horizontal assemblies, and smoke barriers, with and without penetrating items.

**1.02 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 ROUND SLEEVES**

- A. Wall Sleeves, Steel:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Advance Products & Systems, LLC.
    - b. CCI Piping Systems.
    - c. Flexicraft Industries.
    - d. GPT; an EnPro Industries company.
  - 2. Description: ASTM A53/A53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, plain ends and integral waterstop.
- B. Pipe Sleeves, PVC:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. CCI Piping Systems.
    - b. GPT; an EnPro Industries company.
    - c. Metraflex Company (The).
  - 2. Description: ASTM D1785, Schedule 40.

**2.02 SLEEVE SEAL SYSTEMS**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
  - 2. BWM Company.
  - 3. CALPICO, Inc.
  - 4. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
- B. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable or between raceway and cable.

1. Sealing Elements: EPDM rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
2. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel.
3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

### **2.03 GROUT**

- A. Description: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior sealing openings in non-fire-rated walls or floors.
1. Standard: ASTM C1107/C1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
  2. Design Mix: 5000 psi (34.5 MPa), 28-day compressive strength.
  3. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

### **2.04 POURABLE SEALANTS**

- A. Description: Single-component, neutral-curing elastomeric sealants of grade indicated below.
1. Grade: Pourable (self-leveling) formulation for openings in floors and other horizontal surfaces that are not fire rated.

### **2.05 FOAM SEALANTS**

- A. Description: Multicomponent, liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and cure in place to produce a flexible, nonshrinking foam. Foam expansion must not damage cables or crack penetrated structure.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 INSTALLATION OF SLEEVES FOR NON-FIRE-RATED ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS**

- A. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Above-Grade, Non-Fire-Rated, Concrete and Masonry-Unit Floors and Walls:
1. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors:
    - a. Seal space outside of sleeves with mortar or grout. Pack sealing material solidly between sleeve and wall or floor so no voids remain. Tool exposed surfaces smooth; protect material while curing.
    - b. Seal annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
  2. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
  3. Install sleeves for wall penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of walls. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls. Deburr after cutting.
  4. Install sleeves for floor penetrations. Extend sleeves installed in floors 2 inch (50 mm) above finished floor level. Install sleeves during erection of floors.
- B. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Non-Fire-Rated Wall Assemblies:
1. Use circular metal sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
  2. Seal space outside of sleeves with approved joint compound for wall assemblies.
- C. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual raceways and cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.
- D. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using steel pipe sleeves and mechanical sleeve seal systems. Size sleeves to allow for 1 inch (25 mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

### **3.02 INSTALLATION OF SLEEVE SEAL SYSTEMS**

- A. Install sleeve seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at raceway entries into building.

- B. Install type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for raceway or cable material and size. Position raceway or cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between raceway or cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

**END OF SECTION 26 05 44**



This page intentionally left blank

**SECTION 26 05 53**  
**IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Labels.
  - 2. Bands and tubes.
  - 3. Tapes and stencils.
  - 4. Tags.
  - 5. Signs.
  - 6. Cable ties.
  - 7. Miscellaneous identification products.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 260010 "Supplemental Requirements for Electrical" for additional abbreviations, definitions, submittals, qualifications, testing agencies, and other Project requirements applicable to Work specified in this Section.

**1.02 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data:
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for electrical identification products.
- B. Samples: For each type of label and sign to illustrate composition, size, colors, lettering style, mounting provisions, and graphic features of identification products.
- C. Identification Schedule: For each piece of electrical equipment and electrical system components to be index of nomenclature for electrical equipment and system components used in identification signs and labels. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Comply with ASME A13.1.
- B. Comply with 29 CFR 1910.144 for color identification of hazards; 29 CFR 1910.145 for danger, caution, warning, and safety instruction signs and tags; and the following:
  - 1. Fire-protection and fire-alarm equipment, including raceways, must be finished, painted, or suitably marked safety red.
  - 2. Ceiling-mounted hangers, supports, cable trays, and raceways must be finished, painted, or suitably marked safety yellow where less than 7.7 ft (2.3 m) above finished floor.
- C. Signs, labels, and tags required for personnel safety must comply with the following standards:
  - 1. Safety Colors: NEMA Z535.1.
  - 2. Facility Safety Signs: NEMA Z535.2.
  - 3. Safety Symbols: NEMA Z535.3.
  - 4. Product Safety Signs and Labels: NEMA Z535.4.
  - 5. Safety Tags and Barricade Tapes for Temporary Hazards: NEMA Z535.5.
- D. Adhesive-attached labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers, must comply with UL 969.
- E. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes.
  - 1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.

**2.02 COLOR AND LEGEND REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Color-Coding for Phase- and Voltage-Level Identification, 1000 V or Less: Use colors listed below for ungrounded conductors.

1. Color must be factory applied or field applied for sizes larger than 8 AWG if authorities having jurisdiction permit.
  2. Colors for 208Y/120 V Circuits:
    - a. Phase A: Black.
    - b. Phase B: Red.
    - c. Phase C: Blue.
  3. Color for Neutral: White.
  4. Color for Equipment Grounds: Green.
  5. Colors for Isolated Grounds: Green with two or more yellow stripes.
- B. Warning Label Colors:
1. Identify system voltage with black letters on orange background.
- C. Warning labels and signs must include, but are not limited to, the following legends:
1. Multiple Power Source Warning: "DANGER - ELECTRICAL SHOCK HAZARD - EQUIPMENT HAS MULTIPLE POWER SOURCES."
  2. Workspace Clearance Warning: "WARNING - OSHA REGULATION - AREA IN FRONT OF ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT MUST BE KEPT CLEAR FOR 3 FEET MINIMUM."
- D. Equipment Identification Labels:
1. Black letters on white field.

### 2.03 LABELS

- A. Vinyl Wraparound Labels: Preprinted, flexible labels laminated with clear, weather- and chemical-resistant coating and matching wraparound clear adhesive tape for securing label ends.
- B. Snap-Around Labels: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, preprinted, color-coded acrylic sleeves, with diameters sized to suit diameters and that stay in place by gripping action.
- C. Self-Adhesive Wraparound Labels: Preprinted, 3 mil (0.08 mm) thick, vinyl flexible label with acrylic pressure-sensitive adhesive.
1. Self-Lamination: Clear; UV-, weather- and chemical-resistant; self-laminating, protective shield over legend. Labels sized such that clear shield overlaps entire printed legend.
  2. Marker for Labels:
    - a. Machine-printed, permanent, waterproof, black ink recommended by printer manufacturer.
- D. Self-Adhesive Labels: Vinyl, thermal, transfer-printed, 3 mil (0.08 mm) thick, multicolor, weather- and UV-resistant, pressure-sensitive adhesive labels, configured for intended use and location.

### 2.04 BANDS AND TUBES

- A. Snap-Around, Color-Coding Bands: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, solid-colored acrylic sleeves, 2 inch (50 mm) long, with diameters sized to suit diameters and that stay in place by gripping action.
- B. Heat-Shrink Preprinted Tubes: Flame-retardant polyolefin tubes with machine-printed identification labels, sized to suit diameter and shrunk to fit firmly. Full shrink recovery occurs at maximum of 200 deg F (93 deg C). Comply with UL 224.

### 2.05 TAPES AND STENCILS

- A. Marker Tapes: Vinyl or vinyl-cloth, self-adhesive wraparound type, with circuit identification legend machine printed by thermal transfer or equivalent process.
- B. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Tape: Colored, heavy duty, waterproof, fade resistant; not less than 3 mil (0.08 mm) thick by 1 to 2 inch (25 to 50 mm) wide; compounded for outdoor use.
- C. Tape and Stencil: 4 inch (100 mm) wide black stripes on 10 inch (250 mm) centers placed diagonally over orange background and are 12 inch (300 mm) wide. Stop stripes at legends.
- D. Floor Marking Tape: 2 inch (50 mm) wide, 5 mil (0.125 mm) pressure-sensitive vinyl tape, with black and white stripes and clear vinyl overlay.

- E. Stenciled Legend: In nonfading, waterproof, black ink or paint. Minimum letter height must be 1 inch (25 mm).

## 2.06 TAGS

- A. Metal Tags: Brass or aluminum, 2 by 2 by 0.05 inch (50 by 50 by 1.3 mm), with stamped legend, punched for use with self-locking cable tie fastener.
- B. Nonmetallic Preprinted Tags: Polyethylene tags, 0.015 inch (0.38 mm) thick, color-coded for phase and voltage level, with factory printed permanent designations; punched for use with self-locking cable tie fastener.
- C. Write-on Tags:
  - 1. Polyester Tags: 0.010 inch (0.25 mm) thick, with corrosion-resistant grommet and cable tie for attachment.
  - 2. Marker for Tags:
    - a. Permanent, waterproof, black ink marker recommended by tag manufacturer.
    - b. Machine-printed, permanent, waterproof, black ink marker recommended by printer manufacturer.

## 2.07 SIGNS

- A. Baked-Enamel Signs:
  - 1. Preprinted aluminum signs, punched or drilled for fasteners, with colors, legend, and size required for application.
  - 2. 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) grommets in corners for mounting.
  - 3. Nominal Size: 7 by 10 inch (180 by 250 mm).
- B. Metal-Backed Butyrate Signs:
  - 1. Weather-resistant, nonfading, preprinted, cellulose-acetate butyrate signs, with 0.0396 inch (1 mm) galvanized-steel backing, punched and drilled for fasteners, and with colors, legend, and size required for application.
  - 2. 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) grommets in corners for mounting.
  - 3. Nominal Size: 10 by 14 inch (250 by 360 mm).
- C. Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Plastic Signs:
  - 1. Engraved legend.
  - 2. Thickness:
    - a. For signs up to 20 sq. inch (129 sq. cm), minimum 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick.
    - b. For signs larger than 20 sq. inch (129 sq. cm), 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick.
    - c. Engraved legend with black letters on white face.
    - d. Punched or drilled for mechanical fasteners with 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) grommets in corners for mounting.
    - e. Framed with mitered acrylic molding and arranged for attachment at applicable equipment.

## 2.08 CABLE TIES

- A. General-Purpose Cable Ties: Fungus inert, self-extinguishing, one piece, self-locking, and Type 6/6 nylon.
  - 1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch (5 mm).
  - 2. Tensile Strength at 73 deg F (23 deg C) in accordance with ASTM D638: 12,000 psi (82.7 MPa).
  - 3. Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 85 deg C).
  - 4. Color: Black, except where used for color-coding.
- B. UV-Stabilized Cable Ties: Fungus inert, designed for continuous exposure to exterior sunlight, self-extinguishing, one piece, self-locking, and Type 6/6 nylon.
  - 1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch (5 mm).
  - 2. Tensile Strength at 73 deg F (23 deg C) in accordance with ASTM D638: 12,000 psi (82.7 MPa).
  - 3. Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 85 deg C).

4. Color: Black.
- C. Plenum-Rated Cable Ties: Self-extinguishing, UV stabilized, one piece, and self-locking.
  1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch (5 mm).
  2. Tensile Strength at 73 deg F (23 deg C) in accordance with ASTM D638: 7000 psi (48.2 MPa).
  3. UL 94 Flame Rating: 94V-0.
  4. Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 284 deg F (Minus 46 to plus 140 deg C).
  5. Color: Black.

## **2.09 MISCELLANEOUS IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS**

- A. Paint: Comply with requirements in painting Sections for paint materials and application requirements. Retain paint system applicable for surface material and location (exterior or interior).
- B. Fasteners for Labels and Signs: Self-tapping, stainless steel screws or stainless steel machine screws with nuts and flat and lock washers.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 PREPARATION**

- A. Self-Adhesive Identification Products: Before applying electrical identification products, clean substrates of substances that could impair bond, using materials and methods recommended by manufacturer of identification product.

### **3.02 INSTALLATION**

- A. Verify and coordinate identification names, abbreviations, colors, and other features with requirements in other Sections requiring identification applications, Drawings, Shop Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and operation and maintenance manual. Use consistent designations throughout Project.
- B. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.
- C. Verify identity of item before installing identification products.
- D. Coordinate identification with Project Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and operation and maintenance manual.
- E. Apply identification devices to surfaces that require finish after completing finish work.
- F. Install signs with approved legend to facilitate proper identification, operation, and maintenance of electrical systems and connected items.
- G. System Identification for Raceways and Cables under 1000 V: Identification must completely encircle cable or conduit. Place identification of two-color markings in contact, side by side.
  1. Secure tight to surface of conductor, cable, or raceway.
- H. Auxiliary Electrical Systems Conductor Identification: Identify field-installed alarm, control, and signal connections.
- I. Elevated Components: Increase sizes of labels, signs, and letters to those appropriate for viewing from floor.
- J. Vinyl Wraparound Labels:
  1. Secure tight to surface of raceway or cable at location with high visibility and accessibility.
  2. Attach labels that are not self-adhesive type with clear vinyl tape, with adhesive appropriate to location and substrate.
- K. Snap-Around Labels: Secure tight to surface at location with high visibility and accessibility.
- L. Self-Adhesive Wraparound Labels: Secure tight to surface at location with high visibility and accessibility.
- M. Self-Adhesive Labels:
  1. Install unique designation label that is consistent with wiring diagrams, schedules, and operation and maintenance manual.

2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide single line of text with 1/2 inch (13 mm) high letters on 1-1/2 inch (38 mm) high label; where two lines of text are required, use labels 2 inch (50 mm) high.
- N. Snap-Around Color-Coding Bands: Secure tight to surface at location with high visibility and accessibility.
- O. Heat-Shrink, Preprinted Tubes: Secure tight to surface at location with high visibility and accessibility.
- P. Marker Tapes: Secure tight to surface at location with high visibility and accessibility.
- Q. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Tape: Secure tight to surface at location with high visibility and accessibility.
  1. Field-Applied, Color-Coding Conductor Tape: Apply in half-lapped turns for minimum distance of 6 inch (150 mm) where splices or taps are made. Apply last two turns of tape with no tension to prevent possible unwinding.
- R. Tape and Stencil: Comply with requirements in painting Sections for surface preparation and paint application.
- S. Floor Marking Tape: Apply stripes to finished surfaces following manufacturer's instructions.
- T. Metal Tags:
  1. Place in location with high visibility and accessibility.
  2. Secure using [general-purpose] [UV-stabilized] [plenum-rated] cable ties.
- U. Nonmetallic Preprinted Tags:
  1. Place in location with high visibility and accessibility.
  2. Secure using [general-purpose] [UV-stabilized] [plenum-rated] cable ties.
- V. Write-on Tags:
  1. Place in location with high visibility and accessibility.
  2. Secure using [general-purpose] [UV-stabilized] [plenum-rated] cable ties.
- W. Baked-Enamel Signs:
  1. Attach signs that are not self-adhesive type with mechanical fasteners appropriate to location and substrate.
  2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide single line of text with 1/2 inch (13 mm) high letters on minimum 1-1/2 inch (38 mm) high sign; where two lines of text are required, use signs minimum 2 inch (50 mm) high.
- X. Metal-Backed Butyrate Signs:
  1. Attach signs that are not self-adhesive type with mechanical fasteners appropriate to location and substrate.
  2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide single line of text with 1/2 inch (13 mm) high letters on 1-1/2 inch (38 mm) high sign; where two lines of text are required, use labels 2 inch (50 mm) high.
- Y. Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Plastic Signs:
  1. Attach signs that are not self-adhesive type with mechanical fasteners appropriate to location and substrate.
  2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide single line of text with 1/2 inch (13 mm) high letters on 1-1/2 inch (38 mm) high sign; where two lines of text are required, use labels 2 inch (50 mm) high.
- Z. Cable Ties: General purpose, for attaching tags, except as listed below:
  1. Outdoors: UV-stabilized nylon.
  2. In Spaces Handling Environmental Air: Plenum rated.

### 3.03 IDENTIFICATION SCHEDULE

- A. Install identification materials and devices at locations for most convenient viewing without interference with operation and maintenance of equipment. Install access doors or panels to provide view of identifying devices.

- B. Identify conductors, cables, and terminals in enclosures and at junctions, terminals, pull points, and locations of high visibility. Identify by system and circuit designation.
- C. Accessible Fittings for Raceways and Cables within Buildings: Identify cover of junction and pull box of the following systems with self-adhesive labels containing wiring system legend and system voltage. System legends must be as follows:
  - 1. "EMERGENCY POWER."
  - 2. "POWER."
  - 3. "UPS."
  - 4. .
- D. Control-Circuit Conductor Identification: For conductors and cables in pull and junction boxes, manholes, and handholes, use [write-on tags] [self-adhesive labels] with conductor or cable designation, origin, and destination.
- E. Control-Circuit Conductor Termination Identification: For identification at terminations, provide heat-shrink preprinted tubes with conductor designation.
- F. Conductors to Be Extended in Future: Attach marker tape to conductors and list source.
- G. Auxiliary Electrical Systems Conductor Identification: Self-adhesive vinyl tape that is uniform and consistent with system used by manufacturer for factory-installed connections.
  - 1. Identify conductors, cables, and terminals in enclosures and at junctions, terminals, and pull points. Identify by system and circuit designation.
- H. Locations of Underground Lines: Underground-line warning tape for power, lighting, communication, and control wiring and optical-fiber cable.
- I. Concealed Raceways and Duct Banks, More Than 1000 V, within Buildings: Apply floor marking tape to the following finished surfaces:
  - 1. Floor surface directly above conduits running beneath and within 12 inch (300 mm) of floor that is in contact with earth or is framed above unexcavated space.
  - 2. Wall surfaces directly external to raceways concealed within wall.
  - 3. Accessible surfaces of concrete envelope around raceways in vertical shafts, exposed in building, or concealed above suspended ceilings.
- J. Workspace Indication: Apply floor marking tape or tape and stencil to finished surfaces. Show working clearances in direction of access to live parts. Workspace must comply with NFPA 70 and 29 CFR 1926.403 unless otherwise indicated. Do not install at flush-mounted panelboards and similar equipment in finished spaces.
- K. Instructional Signs: Self-adhesive labels, including color code for grounded and ungrounded conductors.
- L. Warning Labels for Indoor Cabinets, Boxes, and Enclosures for Power and Lighting: Baked-enamel warning signs.
  - 1. Apply to exterior of door, cover, or other access.
  - 2. For equipment with multiple power or control sources, apply to door or cover of equipment, including, but not limited to, the following:
    - a. Power-transfer switches.
    - b. Controls with external control power connections.
- M. Operating Instruction Signs: Baked-enamel warning signs.
- N. Emergency Operating Instruction Signs: Baked-enamel warning signs with white legend on red background with minimum 3/8 inch (10 mm) high letters for emergency instructions at equipment used for load shedding.
- O. Equipment Identification Labels:
  - 1. Indoor Equipment: Baked-enamel signs.
  - 2. Outdoor Equipment: Laminated acrylic or melamine sign.
  - 3. Equipment to Be Labeled:

- a. Panelboards: Typewritten directory of circuits in location provided by panelboard manufacturer. Panelboard identification must be in form of engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine label.
- b. Enclosures and electrical cabinets.
- c. Access doors and panels for concealed electrical items.
- d. Switchgear.
- e. Switchboards.
- f. Transformers: Label that includes tag designation indicated on Drawings for transformer, feeder, and panelboards or equipment supplied by secondary.
- g. Substations.
- h. Emergency system boxes and enclosures.
- i. Motor-control centers.
- j. Enclosed switches.
- k. Enclosed circuit breakers.
- l. Enclosed controllers.
- m. Variable-speed controllers.
- n. Push-button stations.
- o. Power-transfer equipment.
- p. Contactors.
- q. Remote-controlled switches, dimmer modules, and control devices.
- r. Battery-inverter units.
- s. Battery racks.
- t. Power-generating units.
- u. Monitoring and control equipment.

**END OF SECTION 26 05 53**



This page intentionally left blank

**SECTION 26 09 23  
LIGHTING CONTROL DEVICES**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Indoor occupancy and vacancy sensors.
  - 2. Switchbox-mounted occupancy sensors.
  - 3. Lighting contactors.
  - 4. Conductors and cables.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 260010 "Supplemental Requirements for Electrical" for additional abbreviations, definitions, submittals, qualifications, testing agencies, and other Project requirements applicable to Work specified in this Section.
  - 2. Section 262726 "Wiring Devices" for wall-box dimmers, non-networkable wall-switch occupancy sensors, and manual light switches.

**1.02 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data:
  - 1. For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Show installation details for the following:
    - a. Occupancy sensors.
    - b. Vacancy sensors.
  - 2. Interconnection diagrams showing field-installed wiring.
  - 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

**1.03 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's warranties.

**1.04 WARRANTY**

- A. Special Extended Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer warrant that installed lighting control devices perform in accordance with specified requirements and agree to repair or replace, including labor, materials, and equipment, devices that fail to perform as specified within extended warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Faulty operation of lighting control software.
    - b. Faulty operation of lighting control devices.
  - 2. Extended Warranty Period: Two year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 INDOOR OCCUPANCY AND VACANCY SENSORS**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1. Cooper Industries, Inc.
  - 2. Hubbell Control Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated, Lighting.
  - 3. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
  - 4. Lithonia Lighting; Acuity Brands Lighting, Inc.
  - 5. Lutron Electronics Co., Inc.
  - 6. Sensor Switch, Inc.
  - 7. WattStopper; Legrand North America, LLC.
- B. General Requirements for Sensors:
  - 1. Solid-state indoor occupancy and vacancy sensors.

2. Dual technology.
  3. Integrated power pack.
  4. Hardwired connection to switch.
  5. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by a qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
  6. Operation:
    - a. Occupancy Sensor: Unless otherwise indicated, turn lights on when coverage area is occupied, and turn them off when unoccupied; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 15 minutes.
    - b. Vacancy Sensor: Unless otherwise indicated, lights are manually turned on and sensor turns lights off when the room is unoccupied; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 15 minutes.
    - c. Combination Sensor: Unless otherwise indicated, sensor must be programmed to turn lights on when coverage area is occupied and turn them off when unoccupied, or to turn off lights that have been manually turned on; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 15 minutes.
  7. Sensor Output: Sensor is powered from the power pack.
  8. Power: Line voltage.
  9. Power Pack: Dry contacts rated for 20 A ballast or LED load at 120 and 277 V(ac), for 13 A tungsten at 120 V(ac), and for 1 hp at 120 V(ac). Sensor has 24 V(dc), 150 mA, Class 2 power source.
  10. Mounting:
    - a. Sensor: Suitable for mounting in any position in a standard device box or outlet box.
    - b. Relay: Externally mounted through a 1/2 inch (13 mm) knockout in a standard electrical enclosure.
    - c. Time-Delay and Sensitivity Adjustments: Recessed and concealed behind hinged door.
  11. Indicator: Digital display, to show when motion is detected during testing and normal operation of sensor.
  12. Bypass Switch: Override the "on" function in case of sensor failure.
  13. Automatic Light-Level Sensor: Adjustable from 2 to 200 fc (21.5 to 2152 lx); turn lights off when selected lighting level is present.
- C. Dual-Technology Type: detect occupants in coverage area using PIR and ultrasonic detection methods. The particular technology or combination of technologies that control on-off functions is selectable in the field by operating controls on unit.
1. Sensitivity Adjustment: Separate for each sensing technology.
  2. Detector Sensitivity: Detect occurrences of 6 inch (150 mm) minimum movement of any portion of a human body that presents a target of not less than 36 sq. inch (23 200 sq. mm), and detect a person of average size and weight moving not less than 12 inch (305 mm) in either a horizontal or a vertical manner at an approximate speed of 12 inch/s (305 mm/s).
  3. Detection Coverage (Standard Room): Detect occupancy anywhere within a circular area of 1000 sq. ft. (93 sq. m) when mounted on a 96 inch (2440 mm) high ceiling.
  4. Detection Coverage (Room, Wall Mounted): Detect occupancy anywhere within a 180-degree pattern centered on the sensor over an area of [1000 sq. ft. (110 sq. m)] [2000 sq. ft. (220 sq. m)] [3000 sq. ft. (330 sq. m)] when mounted 48 inch (1200 mm) above finished floor.

## 2.02 SWITCHBOX-MOUNTED OCCUPANCY SENSORS

- A. General Requirements for Sensors: Automatic-wall-switch occupancy sensor with manual on-off switch, suitable for mounting in a single gang switchbox.
  1. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by a qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.

2. Occupancy Sensor Operation: Unless otherwise indicated, turn lights on when coverage area is occupied, and turn lights off when unoccupied; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 15 minutes.
3. Operating Ambient Conditions: Dry interior conditions, 32 to 120 deg F (0 to 49 deg C).
4. Switch Rating: Not less than 800 VA ballast or LED load at 120 V, 1200 VA ballast or LED load at 277 V, and 800 W incandescent.

### **2.03 LIGHTING CONTACTORS**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  1. ABB, Electrification Business.
  2. Allen-Bradley/Rockwell Automation.
  3. Eaton.
  4. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
- B. Description: Electrically operated and mechanically held, combination-type lighting contactors with nonfused disconnect, complying with NEMA ICS 2 and UL 508.
  1. Current Rating for Switching: Listing or rating consistent with type of load served, including tungsten filament, inductive, and high-inrush ballast (ballast with 15 percent or less THD of normal load current).
  2. Fault Current Withstand Rating: Equal to or exceeding the available fault current at the point of installation.
  3. Enclosure: Comply with NEMA 250.

### **2.04 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES**

- A. Power Wiring to Supply Side of Remote-Control Power Sources: Not smaller than No. 12 AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- B. Classes 2 and 3 Control Cable: Multiconductor cable with stranded-copper conductors not smaller than No. 18 AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- C. Class 1 Control Cable: Multiconductor cable with stranded-copper conductors not smaller than No. 14 AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine lighting control devices before installation. Reject lighting control devices that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
- B. Examine walls and ceilings for suitable conditions where lighting control devices will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.02 INSTALLATION OF SENSORS**

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of ceiling-mounted devices with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, smoke detectors, fire-suppression systems, and partition assemblies.
- B. Install and aim sensors in locations to achieve not less than 90 percent coverage of areas indicated. Do not exceed coverage limits specified in manufacturer's instructions.

### **3.03 INSTALLATION OF CONTACTORS**

- A. Mount electrically held lighting contactors with elastomeric isolator pads to eliminate structure-borne vibration unless contactors are installed in an enclosure with factory-installed vibration isolators.

### **3.04 INSTALLATION OF WIRING**

- A. Wiring Method: Comply with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables." Minimum conduit size is 3/4 inch (13 mm).
- B. Wiring within Enclosures: Separate power-limited and nonpower-limited conductors in accordance with conductor manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Size conductors in accordance with lighting control device manufacturer's instructions unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Splices, Taps, and Terminations: Make connections only on numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, device, and outlet boxes; terminal cabinets; and equipment enclosures.

### **3.05 IDENTIFICATION**

- A. Identify components and power and control wiring in accordance with Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
  - 1. Identify controlled circuits in lighting contactors.
  - 2. Identify circuits or luminaires controlled by photoelectric and occupancy sensors at each sensor.
- B. Label time switches and contactors with a unique designation.

### **3.06 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Operational Test: After installing time switches and sensors, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper unit operation.
  - 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- B. Nonconforming Work:
  - 1. Lighting control devices will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
  - 2. Remove and replace defective units and retest.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### **3.07 ADJUSTING**

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting lighting control devices to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.
  - 1. For occupancy and motion sensors, verify operation at outer limits of detector range. Set time delay to suit Owner's operations.
  - 2. For daylighting controls, adjust set points and deadband controls to suit Owner's operations.
  - 3. Align high-bay occupancy sensors using manufacturer's laser aiming tool.

### **3.08 MAINTENANCE**

- A. Software and Firmware Service Agreement:
  - 1. Technical Support: Beginning at Substantial Completion, verify that software and firmware service agreement includes software support for two years.
  - 2. Upgrade Service: At Substantial Completion, update software and firmware to latest version. Install and program software upgrades that become available within two years from date of Substantial Completion. Verify upgrading software includes operating system and new or revised licenses for using software.
    - a. Upgrade Notice: No fewer than 30 days to allow Owner to schedule and access the system and to upgrade computer equipment if necessary.
  - 3. Upgrade Reports: Prepare written report after each update, documenting upgrades installed.

**END OF SECTION 26 09 23**

**SECTION 26 09 36  
MODULAR DIMMING CONTROLS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Wall-box multiscene dimming controls.
  - 2. Multipreset modular dimming controls.
  - 3. Conductors and cables.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 260010 "Supplemental Requirements for Electrical" for additional abbreviations, definitions, submittals, qualifications, testing agencies, and other Project requirements applicable to Work specified in this Section.

**1.02 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Fade Rate: The time it takes each zone to arrive at the next scene, dependent on the degree of change in lighting level.
- B. Scene: The lighting effect created by adjusting several zones of lighting to the desired intensity.
- C. SCR: Silicon-controlled rectifier.
- D. Zone: A luminaire or group of luminaires controlled simultaneously as a single entity. Also known as a "channel."

**1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data:
  - 1. For modular dimming controls; include elevation, dimensions, features, characteristics, ratings, and labels.
  - 2. Device cover plates and plate color and material.
  - 3. Ballast and lamp combinations compatible with dimmers.
  - 4. Sound data including results of operational tests of central dimming controls.
  - 5. Operational documentation for software and firmware.
- B. Shop Drawings: Detail assemblies of standard components, custom assembled for specific application on Project. Indicate dimensions, weights, arrangement of components, and clearance and access requirements.
  - 1. Include elevation views of front panels of control and indicating devices and control stations.
  - 2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
  - 3. Address Drawing: Reflected ceiling plan and floor plans, showing connected luminaires, address for each luminaire, and luminaire groups. Base plans on construction plans, using the same legend, symbols, and schedules.
  - 4. Point List and Data Bus Load: Summary list of control devices, sensors, ballasts, and other loads. Include percentage of rated connected load and device addresses.
  - 5. Wire Termination Diagrams and Schedules: Coordinate nomenclature and presentation with Drawings and block diagram. Differentiate between manufacturer-installed and field-installed wiring.
  - 6. Block Diagram: Show interconnections between components specified in this Section and devices furnished with power distribution system components. Indicate data communication paths and identify networks, data buses, data gateways, concentrators, and other devices used. Describe characteristics of network and other data communication lines.
- C. Samples for Verification: For master- and remote-control stations, and cover plates with factory-applied color finishes and technical features.
- D. Field Quality-Control Submittals:
  - 1. Field quality-control reports.

#### **1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

#### **1.05 WARRANTY**

- A. Special Manufacturer Extended Warranty: Manufacturer warrants that components of modular dimming controls perform in accordance with specified requirements and agrees to provide repair or replacement of components that fail to perform as specified within extended warranty period.
  - 1. Initial Extended Warranty Period: Two year(s) from date of Substantial Completion, for labor, materials, and equipment.
  - 2. Follow-on Extended Warranty Period: Eight year(s) from date of Substantial Completion, for materials that failed because of transient voltage surges only, f.o.b. the nearest shipping point to Project site.

### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1. Douglas Lighting Controls.
  - 2. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
  - 3. Lutron Electronics Co., Inc.
  - 4. Signify North America Corporation (formerly Philips Lighting).

#### **2.02 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION**

- A. Compatibility:
  - 1. Dimming control components must be compatible with luminaires, ballasts, and transformers.
- B. Dimmers and Dimmer Modules: Comply with UL 508.
  - 1. Audible Noise and RFI Suppression: Solid-state dimmers must operate smoothly over their operating ranges without audible lamp or dimmer noise or RFI. Modules must include integral or external filters to suppress audible noise and RFI.
  - 2. Dimmer or Dimmer-Module Rating: Not less than 125 percent of connected load unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Capacities: Unit must be rated for 2400 W at 240 V(ac) and 2000 W at 120 V(ac) for up to 100 devices or zones.
- D. Surge Protection: Withstand supply power surges without impairment to performance.
  - 1. Panels: 6000 V, 3000 A, complying with IEEE C62.41.1 and IEEE C62.41.2.
  - 2. Other System Devices: 6000 V, 3000 A, complying with IEEE C62.41.1 and IEEE C62.41.2.
- E. Off Control Position: User-selected off position of any control point must disconnect the load from line supply.
- F. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction and marked for intended location and application.

#### **2.03 WALL-BOX MULTISCENE DIMMING CONTROLS**

- A. Description: Factory-fabricated equipment providing manual dimming consisting of a wall-box-mounted master controller and indicated number of wall-box zone stations. Controls and dimmers must be integrated for mounting in multigang wall box under a single wall plate. Each zone must be adjustable to indicated number of scenes, which must reside in the memory of zone controller.
- B. Dimmers:
  - 1. Regulate voltages to maintain a constant light level, with no visible flicker, when the source voltage varies plus or minus 2 percent of RMS voltage.

- C. Memory:
  - 1. Retain preset scenes and fade rates through momentary (up to 3 s) power interruptions.
  - 2. Retain preset scenes through power failures for at least seven days.
- D. Device Cover Plates: Style, material, and color must comply with Section 260533 "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems." Master-control cover plate must be one piece.
- E. Master controller must include the following:
  - 1. Cover-mounted switches, including master off, all bright, and selectors for each scene.
  - 2. Cover-mounted LED indicator lights, one associated with each scene switch, and one for the master off switch.
  - 3. Concealed switches and indicators for specified function.
  - 4. A raise/lower switch for each zone for temporary adjustments of the zone, without altering scene values stored in memory.
  - 5. Fade time indicated by digital display for current scene while fading.
  - 6. Cover-mounted infrared receiver.
- F. Infrared Transmitters: Wireless remote control for recalling each of the presets. Operate up to 50 ft. (15 m) within line of sight of the master controller.

#### **2.04 MULTIPRESET MODULAR DIMMING CONTROLS**

- A. Description: Factory-fabricated equipment providing manual dimming consisting of the following:
  - 1. Master controller.
  - 2. Dimmer panels, and indicated number of zone stations.
  - 3. Controls and dimmers must be integrated for mounting in a multigang wall box under a single wall plate.
  - 4. Each zone must be adjustable to indicated number of scenes, which must reside in the memory of zone controller.
- B. Dimmers:
  - 1. Regulate voltages to maintain a constant light level, with no visible flicker, when the source voltage varies plus or minus 2 percent of RMS voltage.
- C. Memory: Retain preset scenes and fade settings through power failures by retaining physical settings of controls.
- D. Device Cover Plates: Style, material, and color must comply with Section 260533 "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems." Master-control cover plate must be one piece.
- E. Master controller must include the following:
  - 1. Wall-box style, single cover plate supplied by manufacturer.
  - 2. Cover-mounted switches, including master off, all bright, and selectors for each scene.
  - 3. Cover-mounted LED indicator lights, one associated with each scene switch, and one for the master off switch.
  - 4. Concealed switches and indicators for specified function.
  - 5. A raise/lower switch for each zone for temporary adjustments of the zone, without altering scene values stored in memory.
  - 6. Fade time indicated by digital display for current scene while fading.
  - 7. Cover-mounted infrared receiver.
- F. Infrared Remote-Control Station: Same functions as for standard remote-control station except that functions are input by a hand-held infrared transmitter. Operate up to 50 ft. (15 m) within line of sight of the master controller.
- G. Dimmer Panels: Modular, plug-in type, complying with UL 508.
  - 1. Integrated Short-Circuit Rating: 10 kA at 120 V.
  - 2. Dimmers:
    - a. Dimming Circuit: Two SCR dimmers, in inverse parallel configuration.
    - b. Dimming Curve: Modified square law as specified in "The Lighting Handbook" from IES; control voltage is zero to 10 V(dc).



- c. Dimming Range: Zero to 100 percent, full output voltage not less than 98 percent of line voltage.
- d. Voltage Regulation: Dimmer must maintain a constant light level, with no visible flicker, when the source voltage varies plus or minus 2 percent of RMS voltage.

H. Circuit Breakers: Complying with UL 489 and classified as switch duty.

## **2.05 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES**

- A. Wiring to Supply Side of Remote-Control Power Sources: Not smaller than No. 12 AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- B. Class 2 Control Cable: Multiconductor cable with stranded-copper conductors not smaller than No. 18 AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 INSTALLATION OF WIRING**

- A. Wiring Method: Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables." Minimum conduit size must be 3/4 inch (13 mm).
- B. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points. Separate power-limited and nonpower-limited conductors in accordance with conductor manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Size conductors in accordance with lighting control device manufacturer's instructions unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Splices, Taps, and Terminations: Make connections only on numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, device, and outlet boxes; terminal cabinets; and equipment enclosures.

### **3.02 IDENTIFICATION**

- A. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Label each dimmer module with a unique designation.
- C. Label each scene control button with approved scene description.

### **3.03 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Continuity tests of circuits.
  - 2. Operational Test: Set and operate controls to demonstrate their functions and capabilities in a methodical sequence that cues and reproduces actual operating functions.
    - a. Include testing of modular dimming control equipment under conditions that simulate actual operational conditions. Record control settings, operations, cues, and functional observations.
- B. Nonconforming Work:
  - 1. Dimming control components will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
  - 2. Remove and replace defective units and retest.
- C. Test Labeling: After satisfactory completion of tests and inspections, apply a label to tested components indicating test results, date, and responsible agency and representative.
- D. Reports: Prepare written reports of tests and observations. Record defective materials and workmanship and unsatisfactory test results. Record repairs and adjustments.

**END OF SECTION 26 09 36**

**SECTION 26 27 26  
WIRING DEVICES**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Wall switches.
- B. Wall dimmers.
- C. Receptacles.
  - 1. GFCI Devices
  - 2. Isolated Ground Devices
  - 3. Surge Protective Devices
- D. Wall plates.
- E. Poke-through assemblies.
- F. Multi-outlet assemblies.
- G. Cord and plug set.
- H. Pendant cord connector devices.

**1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. FS W-C-596 - Connector, Electrical, Power, General Specification for; Revision H, 2014.
- B. NECA 1 - Standard for Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction; 2015.
- C. NECA 130 - Standard for Installing and Maintaining Wiring Devices; 2010.
- D. NEMA 250 - Enclosures for Electrical Equipment (1000 Volts Maximum); 2014.
- E. NEMA WD 1 - General Color Requirements for Wiring Devices; 1999 (Reaffirmed 2015).
- F. NEMA WD 6 - Wiring Devices - Dimensional Specifications; 2016.
- G. NFPA 101 - Life Safety Code; 2017.
- H. UL 20 - General-Use Snap Switches; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- I. UL 498 - Attachment Plugs and Receptacles; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- J. UL 514D - Cover Plates for Flush-Mounted Wiring Devices; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- K. UL 943 - Ground-Fault Circuit-Interrupters; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- L. UL 1310 - Class 2 Power Units; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- M. UL 1449 - Standard for Surge Protective Devices; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- N. UL 1472 - Solid-State Dimming Controls; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- O. UL 1917 - Solid-State Fan Speed Controls; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

**1.03 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Coordination:
  - 1. Coordinate the placement of outlet boxes with millwork, furniture, equipment, etc. installed under other sections or by others.
  - 2. Coordinate wiring device ratings and configurations with the electrical requirements of actual equipment to be installed.
  - 3. Coordinate the placement of outlet boxes for wall switches with actual installed door swings.
  - 4. Coordinate the installation and preparation of uneven surfaces, such as split face block, to provide suitable surface for installation of wiring devices.
  - 5. Coordinate the core drilling of holes for poke-through assemblies with the work covered under other sections.

6. Notify Architect/Engineer of Record of any conflicts or deviations from the contract documents to obtain direction prior to proceeding with work.
- B. Sequencing:
  1. Do not install wiring devices until final surface finishes and painting are complete.

#### **1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. See Section 01 33 29 - LEED Sustainable Design Reporting, when required.
- C. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's catalog information showing dimensions, colors, and configurations.
  1. Wall Dimmers: Include derating information for ganged multiple devices.
  2. Surge Protection Receptacles: Include surge current rating, voltage protection rating (VPR) for each protection mode, and diagnostics information.
- D. Shop Drawings: List of legends and description of materials and process used for pre-marking wall plates.
- E. Certificates for Surge Protection Receptacles: Manufacturer's documentation of listing for compliance with UL 1449, 3rd Edition.
- F. Field Quality Control Test Reports.
- G. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate application conditions and limitations of use stipulated by product testing agency. Include instructions for storage, handling, protection, examination, preparation, and installation of product.
- H. Operation and Maintenance Data:
  1. GFCI Receptacles: Include information on status indicators.
  2. Surge Protection Receptacles: Include information on status indicators.
  3. Acceptable cleaners and recommended cleaning practices for all wiring devices.
  4. Replacement parts list for all wiring devices.
  5. Manufacturer's service department contact information.
- I. Project Record Documents: Record actual installed locations of wiring devices.
- J. Maintenance Materials: Furnish the following for Board's Representative's use in maintenance of project.
  1. See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements, for additional provisions.
  2. Extra Keys for Locking Switches: Two (2) of each type.
  3. Extra Surge Protection Receptacles: Two (2) of each type.
  4. Extra Wall Plates: One (1) of each style, size, and finish.
  5. Extra Flush Floor Service Fittings: One (1) for every ten, but not less than one (1) of each type.
  6. Extra Poke-Through Core Hole Closure Plugs: One (1) for every ten, but not less than two (2) for each core size.

#### **1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Conform to NFPA 101.
- B. Comply with the City of Chicago Electrical Code.
- C. Maintain at the project site a copy of each referenced document that prescribes execution requirements.
- D. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.
- E. Products: Listed and labeled as suitable for the purpose intended.
- F. Product Listing Organization Qualifications: An organization recognized by OSHA as a Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL) and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

- G. Source Limitations: Obtain all wiring devices and associated wall plates from a single manufacturer and one source if available. Obtain each type of wiring device and associated wall plate through one source from a single manufacturer if not all wiring devices are available from a single source.

#### **1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND PROTECTION**

- A. Store in a clean, dry space in original manufacturer's packaging until ready for installation.

### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 WIRING DEVICE APPLICATIONS**

- A. Provide wiring devices suitable for intended use and with ratings adequate for load served.
- B. For single receptacles installed on an individual branch circuit, provide receptacle with ampere rating not less than that of the branch circuit.
- C. Provide weather resistant GFCI receptacles with specified weatherproof covers for receptacles installed outdoors or in damp or wet locations.
- D. Provide GFCI protection for receptacles installed within 6 feet of sinks.
- E. Provide GFCI protection for receptacles installed in kitchens.
- F. Provide GFCI protection for receptacles serving electric drinking fountains.
- G. Provide GFCI protection for receptacles serving vending machines.
- H. Provide isolated ground receptacles for receptacles serving computers and electronic cash registers and as requested by AV consultants.
- I. Unless noted otherwise, do not use combination switch/receptacle devices.
- J. For flush floor service fittings, use tile rings for installations in tile floors.
- K. For flush floor service fittings, use carpet flanges for installations in carpeted floors.

#### **2.02 WIRING DEVICE FINISHES**

- A. Provide wiring device finishes as described below unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Wiring Devices, Unless Otherwise Indicated: Ivory with satin-finished stainless steel wall plate.
  - 2. Wiring Devices Installed in Finished Spaces: Ivory with satin-finished stainless steel wall plate.
  - 3. Wiring Devices Installed in Unfinished Spaces: Gray with galvanized steel wall plate.
  - 4. Wiring Devices Installed Damp Locations: White with cast aluminum with spring-loaded lift cover, and listed and labeled for use in "wet location".
  - 5. Isolated Ground Convenience Receptacles: Orange.
  - 6. Surge Protection Receptacles: Blue.
  - 7. Wiring Devices Connected to Emergency Power: Red with red nylon wall plate.
  - 8. Flush Floor Box Service Fittings: Gray wiring devices with aluminum cover and ring/flange.
  - 9. Flush Poke-Through Service Fittings: Gray wiring devices with aluminum cover and aluminum flange.
  - 10. Wet-Location, Weatherproof Cover Plates: NEMA 250, complying with type 3R weather-resistant, die-cast aluminum with lockable cover.

#### **2.03 WALL SWITCHES**

- A. Manufacturers subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following manufacturers:
  - 1. Hubbell Incorporated: [www.hubbell-wiring.com](http://www.hubbell-wiring.com).
  - 2. Leviton Manufacturing Company, Inc: [www.leviton.com](http://www.leviton.com).
  - 3. Pass & Seymour, a brand of Legrand North America, Inc: [www.legrand.us](http://www.legrand.us)
  - 4. Cooper Wiring Devices, a division of Cooper Industries, Inc.; <http://www.cooperindustries.com>.

- B. Wall Switches - General Requirements: AC only, quiet operating, general-use snap switches with silver alloy contacts, complying with NEMA WD 1 and NEMA WD 6, and listed as complying with UL 20; types as indicated on the drawings.
  - 1. Wiring Provisions: Terminal screws for side wiring and screw actuated binding clamp for back wiring with separate ground terminal screw.
- C. Standard Wall Switches: Heavy Duty specification grade, 20 A, 120/277 V with standard toggle type switch actuator and maintained contacts; single pole single throw, double pole single throw, three way, or four way as indicated on the drawings.
- D. Lighted Wall Switches: Heavy Duty specification grade, 20 A, 120/277 V with illuminated standard toggle type switch actuator and maintained contacts; illuminated with load off; single pole single throw, double pole single throw, three way, or four way as indicated on the drawings.
- E. Pilot Light Wall Switches: Heavy Duty specification grade, 20 A, 120/277 V with red illuminated standard toggle type switch actuator and maintained contacts; illuminated with load on; single pole single throw, double pole single throw, three way, or four way as indicated on the drawings.
- F. Locking Wall Switches: Heavy Duty specification grade, 20 A, 120/277 V with lever type keyed switch actuator and maintained contacts; switches keyed alike; single pole single throw, double pole single throw, three way, or four way as indicated on the drawings.
- G. Momentary Contact Wall Switches: Heavy Duty specification grade, 20 A, 120/277 V with toggle type three position switch actuator and momentary contacts; single pole double throw, off with switch actuator in center position.
- H. Locking Momentary Contact Wall Switches: Heavy Duty specification grade, 20 A, 120/277 V with lever type keyed three position switch actuator and momentary contacts; switches keyed alike; single pole double throw, off with switch actuator in center position.

#### 2.04 WALL DIMMERS

- A. Manufacturers subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following manufacturers:
  - 1. Leviton Manufacturing Company, Inc: [www.leviton.com](http://www.leviton.com).
  - 2. Lutron Electronics Company, Inc: [www.lutron.com/#sle](http://www.lutron.com/#sle).
  - 3. Pass & Seymour, a brand of Legrand North America, Inc: [www.legrand.us](http://www.legrand.us).
  - 4. Cooper Wiring Devices, a division of Cooper Industries, Inc.; <http://www.cooperindustries.com>.
  - 5. Hubbell Incorporated: [www.hubbell-wiring.com](http://www.hubbell-wiring.com).
- B. Wall Dimmers - General Requirements: Solid-state with continuous full-range even control following square law dimming curve, integral radio frequency interference filtering, power failure preset memory, air gap switch accessible without removing wall plate, complying with NEMA WD 1 and NEMA WD 6, and listed as complying with UL 1472; types and ratings suitable for load controlled as indicated on the drawings.
- C. Control: Continuously adjustable slide control type with separate on/off switch..
- D. Power Rating, Unless Otherwise Indicated or Required to Control the Load Indicated on the Drawings:
  - 1. Incandescent: 600 W.
  - 2. Magnetic Low-Voltage: 600 VA.
  - 3. Electronic Low-Voltage: 400 VA.
  - 4. Fluorescent: 600 VA.
  - 5. LED: 600 VA
- E. Provide locator light, illuminated with load off.
- F. Provide accessory wall switches to match dimmer appearance when installed adjacent to each other.
- G. 600W dimmers shall require no derating when ganged with other devices.

- H. Florescent Lamp Dimmer Switches: Modular; compatible with dimmer ballasts; trim potentiometer to adjust low-end dimming; dimmer-ballast combination capable of consistent dimming with low end not greater than 20 percent of full brightness.

## 2.05 RECEPTACLES

- A. Manufacturers subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following manufacturers:
  - 1. Hubbell Incorporated: [www.hubbell-wiring.com](http://www.hubbell-wiring.com).
  - 2. Leviton Manufacturing Company, Inc: [www.leviton.com](http://www.leviton.com).
  - 3. Pass & Seymour, a brand of Legrand North America, Inc: [www.legrand.us](http://www.legrand.us).
  - 4. Cooper Wiring Devices, a division of Cooper Industries, Inc.; <http://www.cooperindustries.com>.
  - 5. Source Limitations: Where wall controls are furnished as part of lighting control system, provide accessory matching receptacles and wallplates by the same manufacturer.
- B. Receptacles - General Requirements: Self-grounding, complying with NEMA WD 1 and NEMA WD 6, and listed as complying with UL 498, and where applicable, FS W-C-596; types as indicated on the drawings.
  - 1. Wiring Provisions: Terminal screws for side wiring or screw actuated binding clamp for back wiring with separate ground terminal screw.
  - 2. NEMA configurations specified are according to NEMA WD 6.
- C. Convenience Receptacles:
  - 1. Standard Convenience Receptacles: Heavy duty specification grade, 20A, 125V, NEMA 5-20R; single or duplex as indicated on the drawings.
  - 2. Automatically Controlled Convenience Receptacles: Heavy duty specification grade 20A, 125V, NEMA 5-20R; controlled receptacle marking on device face per the City of Chicago Electrical Code; single or duplex as indicated on the drawings. Permanent power control signage affixed to face plate.
  - 3. Isolated Ground Convenience Receptacles: Heavy duty specification grade, 20A, 125V, NEMA 5-20R, with ground contacts isolated from mounting strap; isolated ground triangle mark on device face; single or duplex as indicated on the drawings.
    - a. Isolation shall be integral to receptacle construction and not dependent on removable parts.
  - 4. Weather Resistant Convenience Receptacles: Heavy duty specification grade, 20A, 125V, NEMA 5-20R, listed and labeled as weather resistant type complying with UL 498 Supplement SE suitable for installation in damp or wet locations; single or duplex as indicated on the drawings.
  - 5. Illuminated Convenience Receptacles: Heavy duty specification grade 20A, 125V, NEMA 5-20R; illuminated face or indicator light to indicate power is being supplied to receptacle; single or duplex as indicated on the drawings.
- D. GFCI Receptacles:
  - 1. GFCI Receptacles - General Requirements: Self-testing, non-feed-through type with light to indicate ground fault tripped condition and loss of protection; listed as complying with UL 943, class A.
    - a. Provide test and reset buttons of same color as device.
  - 2. Standard GFCI Receptacles: Heavy duty specification grade, duplex, 20A, 125V, NEMA 5-20R, rectangular decorator style.
  - 3. Weather Resistant GFCI Receptacles: Heavy duty specification grade, duplex, 20A, 125V, NEMA 5-20R, rectangular decorator style, listed and labeled as weather resistant type complying with UL 498 Supplement SE suitable for installation in damp or wet locations.
- E. Surge Protection Receptacles:
  - 1. Surge Protection Receptacles - General Requirements: Listed and labeled as complying with UL 498 and UL 1449, Type 2 or 3.
    - a. Energy Dissipation: Not less than 240 J per mode.

- b. Protected Modes: L-N, L-G, N-G.
  - c. UL 1449 Voltage Protection Rating (VPR): Not more than 700 V for L-N, L-G modes and 1200 V for N-G mode.
  - d. Diagnostics:
    - 1) Visual Notification: Provide indicator light to report functional status of surge protection.
    - 2) Audible Notification: Provide audible alarm to report that surge protection is not functional.
  - e. Multiple metal-oxide varistors; with a nominal clamp-level rating of 400 volts.
2. Standard Surge Protection Receptacles: Heavy duty specification grade, duplex, 20A, 125V, NEMA 5-20R, rectangular decorator style.
  3. Isolated Ground Surge Protection Receptacles: Heavy duty specification grade, duplex, 20A, 125V, NEMA 5-20R, rectangular decorator style, with ground contacts isolated from mounting strap. Isolation shall be integral to receptacle construction and not dependent on removable parts.

## 2.06 WALL PLATES

- A. Manufacturers:
  1. Hubbell Incorporated: [www.hubbell-wiring.com](http://www.hubbell-wiring.com).
  2. Leviton Manufacturing Company, Inc: [www.leviton.com](http://www.leviton.com).
  3. Pass & Seymour, a brand of Legrand North America, Inc: [www.legrand.us](http://www.legrand.us)
  4. Cooper Wiring Devices, a division of Cooper Industries, Inc.; <http://www.cooperindustries.com>.
  5. Source Limitations: Where wall controls are furnished as part of lighting control system, provide accessory matching receptacles and wallplates by the same manufacturer.
- B. Wall Plates: Comply with UL 514D.
  1. Configuration: One piece cover as required for quantity and types of corresponding wiring devices.
  2. Size: Standard.
  3. Screws: Metal with slotted heads finished to match wall plate finish.
  4. Provide screwless wallplates with concealed mounting hardware where indicated.
- C. Finish Spaces shall use Stainless Steel Wall Plates: Brushed satin finish, Type 302 stainless steel.
- D. Aluminum Wall Plates: Smooth satin finish, clear anodized, factory-coated to inhibit oxidation.
- E. Unfinished Spaces shall use Galvanized Steel Wall Plates: Rounded corners and edges, with corrosion resistant screws.
- F. Weatherproof Covers for Damp Locations: Gasketed, cast aluminum, with self-closing hinged cover and corrosion-resistant screws; listed as suitable for use in wet locations with cover closed.
- G. Weatherproof Covers for Wet Locations: Gasketed, cast aluminum, with hinged lockable cover and corrosion-resistant screws; listed as suitable for use in wet locations while in use with attachment plugs connected and identified as extra-duty type.
  1. NEMA 250, flush-type, units suitable for wiring method used. Die-cast aluminum with satin finish.

## 2.07 POKE-THROUGH ASSEMBLIES

- A. Manufacturers:
  1. Hubbell Incorporated: [www.hubbell-wiring.com](http://www.hubbell-wiring.com).
  2. Pass & Seymour, a brand of Legrand North America, Inc.: [www.legrand.us](http://www.legrand.us)
  3. Wiremold, a brand of Legrand North America, Inc: [www.legrand.us](http://www.legrand.us)
- B. Description: Assembly comprising floor service fitting, poke-through component, fire stops and smoke barriers, and junction box for conduit termination; fire rating listed to match fire rating of floor and suitable for floor thickness where installed.

- C. Wiring Raceways and Compartments: Sized for a minimum of four (4) No. 12 AWG conductors and a minimum of four (4) 4-pair Category 6 UTP communication cables. Comply with requirements of Section 27 15 00 - Data Communications Horizontal Cabling for Category 6 UTP components.
- D. Flush Floor Service Fittings:
  - 1. Single Service Flush Convenience Receptacles:
    - a. Configuration: One standard convenience duplex receptacle(s) with duplex flap opening(s).
  - 2. Single Service Flush Communications Outlets:
    - a. Configuration: As indicated on drawings.
    - b. Voice and Data Jacks: As specified in Section 27 15 00 - Data Communications Horizontal Cabling.
  - 3. Single Service Flush Furniture Feed:
    - a. Configuration: One 2 inch by 1-1/4 inch combination threaded opening(s).
  - 4. Dual Service Flush Combination Outlets:
    - a. Cover: Hinged door(s).
    - b. Configuration:
      - 1) Power: One standard convenience duplex receptacle(s).
      - 2) Communications: As indicated on drawings.
      - 3) Voice and Data Jacks: As specified in Section 27 15 00 - Data Communications Horizontal Cabling.
  - 5. Dual Service Flush Furniture Feed:
    - a. Configuration:
      - 1) Power: One 3/4 inch threaded opening(s).
      - 2) Communications: One 1-1/4" threaded opening(s).
  - 6. Accessories:
    - a. Closure Plugs: Size and fire rating as required to seal unused core hole and maintain fire rating of floor.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify that field measurements are as indicated.
- B. Verify that outlet boxes are installed in proper locations and at proper mounting heights and are properly sized to accommodate devices and conductors in accordance with the City of Chicago Electrical Code.
- C. Verify that wall openings are neatly cut and will be completely covered by wall plates.
- D. Verify that final surface finishes are complete, including painting.
- E. Verify that floor boxes are adjusted properly.
- F. Verify that branch circuit wiring installation is completed, tested, and ready for connection to wiring devices.
- G. Verify that core drilled holes for poke-through assemblies are in proper locations.
- H. Verify that conditions are satisfactory for installation prior to starting work.

### **3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Provide extension rings to bring outlet boxes flush with finished surface.
- B. Clean dirt, debris, plaster, and other foreign materials from outlet boxes.

### **3.03 INSTALLATION**

- A. Perform work in accordance with NECA 1 (general workmanship) and, where applicable, NECA 130, including mounting heights specified in those standards unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Coordinate locations of outlet boxes provided under Section 26 05 33.16 - Boxes for Electrical Systems as required for installation of wiring devices provided under this section.



1. Mounting Heights: Unless otherwise indicated, as follows:
    - a. Wall Switches: 48 inches above finished floor.
    - b. Wall Dimmers: 48 inches above finished floor.
    - c. Receptacles: 18 inches above finished floor or 6 inches above counter.
  2. Orient outlet boxes for vertical installation of wiring devices unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Where multiple receptacles, wall switches, or wall dimmers are installed at the same location and at the same mounting height, gang devices together under a common wall plate.
  4. Locate wall switches on strike side of door with edge of wall plate 3 inches from edge of door frame. Where locations are indicated otherwise, notify Architect/Engineer of Record to obtain direction prior to proceeding with work.
  5. Locate receptacles for electric drinking fountains concealed behind drinking fountain according to manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Install wiring devices in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- D. Install permanent barrier between ganged wiring devices when voltage between adjacent devices exceeds 300 V.
- E. Conductors:
1. Where required, connect wiring devices using pigtails not less than 6 inches long. Do not connect more than one conductor to wiring device terminals.
  2. The length of free conductors at outlets for devices shall meet provision of the City of Chicago Electrical Code, without pigtails.
  3. When conductors larger than No. 12 AWG are installed on 15- or 20-A circuits, splice No. 12 AWG pigtails for device connections.
  4. Do not strip insulation from conductors until just before they are spliced or terminated on devices.
  5. Strip insulation evenly around conductors using tooler designed for the purpose. Avoid scoring or nicking of solid wire or cutting strands from stranded wire.
  6. Pigtailing existing conductors is permitted provided the outlet box is large enough.
  7. Damaged existing conductors shall be removed and replaced.
- F. Connect wiring devices by wrapping conductor clockwise 3/4 turn around screw terminal and tightening to proper torque specified by the manufacturer. Where present, do not use push-in pressure terminals that do not rely on screw-actuated binding.
- G. Unless otherwise indicated, connect wiring device grounding terminal to branch circuit equipment grounding conductor and to outlet box with bonding jumper.
- H. For isolated ground receptacles, connect wiring device grounding terminal only to identified branch circuit isolated equipment grounding conductor. Do not connect grounding terminal to outlet box or normal branch circuit equipment grounding conductor.
- I. Provide GFCI receptacles with integral GFCI protection at each location indicated. Do not use feed-through wiring to protect downstream devices.
- J. Where split-wired duplex receptacles are indicated, remove tabs connecting top and bottom receptacles.
- K. Install wiring devices plumb and level with mounting yoke held rigidly in place.
- L. Install wall switches with OFF position down.
- M. Install wall dimmers to achieve full rating specified and indicated after derating for ganging as instructed by manufacturer.
1. Install dimmers with terms of their listings.
  2. Verify that dimmers used for fan speed are listed for that application.
  3. Install unsharded neutral conductors on line and load side of dimmers according to manufacturers' device listing conditions in the written instructions.
- N. Do not share neutral conductor on branch circuits utilizing wall dimmers.

- O. Install vertically mounted receptacles with grounding pole on top and horizontally mounted receptacles with grounding pole on left.
- P. Install wall plates to fit completely flush to wall with no gaps and rough opening completely covered without strain on wall plate. Repair or reinstall improperly installed outlet boxes or improperly sized rough openings. Do not use oversized wall plates in lieu of meeting this requirement.
- Q. Install blank wall plates on junction boxes and on outlet boxes with no wiring devices installed or designated for future use.
- R. Adjust locations of floor service outlets and service poles to suit arrangement of partitions and furnishings. Isolated Ground Receptacles: Connect to isolated grounding conductor routed to designated isolated equipment ground terminal of electrical system.
- S. Identify wiring devices in accordance with Section 26 05 53 - Identification for Electrical Systems.
  - 1. Receptacles: Identify panelboard and circuit number from which served. Use hot, stamped or engraved machine printing with black-filled lettering on face of plate, and durable wire markers or tags inside outlet boxes.
  - 2. Switches: Where three or more switches are ganged, and elsewhere where indicated, identify each switch with approved legend engraved with black-filled lettering on face of wall plate.
- T. Install poke-through closure plugs in each unused core holes to maintain fire rating of floor.
- U. Do not used oversized or extra-deep plates. Repair wall finishes and remount outlet boxes when standard device plates do not fit flush or do not cover rough wall opening.
- V. Pendant Cord-Connector Devices:
  - 1. Matching, locking-type plug and receptacle body connector; NEMA WD 6 configurations L5-20P and L5-20R, heavy-duty grade.
    - a. Body: Nylon with screw-open cable-gripping jaws and provision for attaching external cable grip.
    - b. External Cable Grip: Woven wire-mesh type made of high-strength galvanized-steel wire strand, matched to cable diameter, and with attachment provision designed for corresponding connector.
- W. Comply with Section 26 05 53 - Identification for Electrical Systems for labeling of wiring devices.
  - 1. Receptacles: Identify panelboard and circuit number from which served. Use hot stamped or engraved machine printing with black-filled lettering on face plate, and durable wire markers or tags inside of outlet boxes.
  - 2. Switches: Where 3 or more switches are ganged, and elsewhere where indicated, identify each switch with approved legend engraved with black-filled lettering on face of wall plate.

### 3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. See Section 01 40 00 - Quality Requirements, for additional requirements.
- B. Inspect each wiring device for damage and defects.
- C. Operate each wall switch, wall dimmer, and fan speed controller with circuit energized to verify proper operation.
- D. Test each receptacle to verify operation and proper polarity.
  - 1. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
    - a. Test Instruments: Use instruments that comply with UL 1436.
    - b. Test Instrument for Convenience Receptacles: Digital wiring analyzer with digital readout or illuminated LED indicators of measurement.
    - c. Test Wiring Devices: Test wiring devices for proper polarity and ground continuity. Operate each operable device at least 6 times.
  - 2. Tests for Convenience Receptacles:
    - a. Line Voltage: Acceptable range is 105 to 132 V.

- b. Percent Voltage Drop under 15-A Load: A value of 6 percent or higher is not acceptable.
  - c. Ground Impedance: Values of up to 2 ohms are acceptable.
  - d. GFCI Trip: Test for tripping values specified in UL 1436 and UL 943.
  - e. Using the test plug, verify that the device and its outlet box are securely mounted.
  - f. The tests shall be diagnostic, indicating damaged conductors, high resistance at the circuit breaker, poor connections, inadequate fault current path, defective devices, or similar problems. Correct circuit conditions, remove malfunctioning units and replace with new ones, and retest as specified above.
- E. Inspect each surge protection receptacle to verify surge protection is active.
  - F. Correct wiring deficiencies and replace damaged or defective wiring devices.
  - G. Contactor Startup and Reporting:
    - 1. Contractor shall prepare and submit a complete set of record drawings, test reports, operation and maintenance data and certificates as outlined in this Section.
  - H. Commissioning and Demonstration:
    - 1. After system checkout and adjustment, the Contractor shall operate the system for the review of the Board and Architect/Engineer of Record. Necessary adjustments or modifications shall be made as required by the Board or Architect/Engineer of Record.

### **3.05 ADJUSTING**

- A. Adjust devices and wall plates to be flush and level.
- B. Adjust presets for wall dimmers according to manufacturer's instructions as directed by Architect/Engineer of Record.

### **3.06 CLEANING**

- A. Clean exposed surfaces to remove dirt, paint, or other foreign material and restore to match original factory finish.
- B. Keep outlet boxes free of plaster, drywall joint compound, mortar, cement, concrete, dust, paint, and other material that may contaminate the raceway system, conductors, and cables.

**END OF SECTION 26 27 26**

**SECTION 26 28 16**  
**ENCLOSED SWITCHES AND CIRCUIT BREAKERS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Fusible switches.
  - 2. Nonfusible switches.
  - 3. Molded-case circuit breakers (MCCBs).
  - 4. Enclosures.

**1.03 DEFINITIONS**

- A. NC: Normally closed.
- B. NO: Normally open.
- C. SPDT: Single pole, double throw.

**1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of enclosed switch, circuit breaker, accessory, and component indicated. Include nameplate ratings, dimensioned elevations, sections, weights, and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, accessories, and finishes.
  - 1. Enclosure types and details for types other than NEMA 250, Type 1.
  - 2. Current and voltage ratings.
  - 3. Short-circuit current ratings (interrupting and withstand, as appropriate).
  - 4. Include evidence of a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) listing for series rating of installed devices.
  - 5. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices, accessories, and auxiliary components.
- B. Shop Drawings: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers.
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - 2. Include wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

**1.05 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified testing agency.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

**1.06 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
  - 1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
    - a. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting enclosed switches and circuit breakers.

**1.07 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Fuses: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than three of each size and type.
  - 2. Fuse Pullers: Two for each size and type.

### 1.08 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Accredited by NETA.
  - 1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

### 1.09 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Ambient Temperature: Not less than minus 22 deg F (minus 30 deg C) and not exceeding 104 deg F (40 deg C).
  - 2. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet (2010 m).

### 1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period: One year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.01 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain enclosed switches and circuit breakers, overcurrent protective devices, components, and accessories, within same product category, from single manufacturer.
- B. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for enclosed switches and circuit breakers, including clearances between enclosures, and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for intended location and application.
- D. Comply with NFPA 70.

### 2.02 FUSIBLE SWITCHES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Eaton.
  - 2. Siemens Industry, Inc., Energy Management Division.
  - 3. Square D; Schneider Electric USA.
- B. Type HD, Heavy Duty:
  - 1. Double throw.
  - 2. Three pole.
  - 3. 240-V ac.
  - 4. 200 A and smaller.
  - 5. UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, with clips or bolt pads to accommodate specified fuses.
  - 6. Lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.
- C. Accessories:
  - 1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
  - 2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
  - 3. Isolated Ground Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
  - 4. Class R Fuse Kit: Provides rejection of other fuse types when Class R fuses are specified.
  - 5. Auxiliary Contact Kit: Two NO/NC (Form "C") auxiliary contact(s), arranged to activate before switch blades open. Contact rating - 24-V ac.

6. Hookstick Handle: Allows use of a hookstick to operate the handle.
7. Lugs: Compression type, suitable for number, size, and conductor material.
8. Service-Rated Switches: Labeled for use as service equipment.

### 2.03 NONFUSIBLE SWITCHES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. Eaton.
  2. Siemens Industry, Inc., Energy Management Division.
  3. Square D; Schneider Electric USA.
- B. Type GD, General Duty, Three Pole, Single Throw, 240-V ac, 600 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept two padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.
- C. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Three Pole, Single Throw, 240-V ac, 1200 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.
- D. Accessories:
  1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
  2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
  3. Isolated Ground Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
  4. Class R Fuse Kit: Provides rejection of other fuse types when Class R fuses are specified.
  5. Auxiliary Contact Kit: Two NO/NC (Form "C") auxiliary contact(s), arranged to activate before switch blades open. Contact rating - 24-V ac.
  6. Hookstick Handle: Allows use of a hookstick to operate the handle.
  7. Lugs: Compression type, suitable for number, size, and conductor material.
  8. Service-Rated Switches: Labeled for use as service equipment.

### 2.04 MOLDED-CASE CIRCUIT BREAKERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. Eaton.
  2. Siemens Industry, Inc., Energy Management Division.
  3. Square D; Schneider Electric USA.
- B. Circuit breakers shall be constructed using glass-reinforced insulating material. Current carrying components shall be completely isolated from the handle and the accessory mounting area.
- C. Circuit breakers shall have a toggle operating mechanism with common tripping of all poles, which provides quick-make, quick-break contact action. The circuit-breaker handle shall be over center, be trip free, and reside in a tripped position between on and off to provide local trip indication. Circuit-breaker escutcheon shall be clearly marked on and off in addition to providing international I/O markings. Equip circuit breaker with a push-to-trip button, located on the face of the circuit breaker to mechanically operate the circuit-breaker tripping mechanism for maintenance and testing purposes.
- D. The maximum ampere rating and UL, IEC, or other certification standards with applicable voltage systems and corresponding interrupting ratings shall be clearly marked on face of circuit breaker. Circuit breakers shall be 100 percent rated.
- E. MCCBs shall be equipped with a device for locking in the isolated position.
- F. Lugs shall be suitable for 167 deg F (75 deg C) rated wire.
- G. Standard: Comply with UL 489 with interrupting capacity to comply with available fault currents.
- H. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current thermal element for low-level overloads and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip

setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.

- I. Adjustable, Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.
- J. Electronic Trip Circuit Breakers: Field-replaceable rating plug, rms sensing, with the following field-adjustable settings:
  1. Instantaneous trip.
  2. Long- and short-time pickup levels.
  3. Long- and short-time time adjustments.
  4. Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and I-squared t response.
- K. Current-Limiting Circuit Breakers: Frame sizes 400 A and smaller, and let-through ratings less than NEMA FU 1, RK-5.
- L. Integrally Fused Circuit Breakers: Thermal-magnetic trip element with integral limiter-style fuse listed for use with circuit breaker and trip activation on fuse opening or on opening of fuse compartment door.
- M. Ground-Fault Circuit-Interrupter (GFCI) Circuit Breakers: Single- and two-pole configurations with Class A ground-fault protection (6-mA trip).
- N. Ground-Fault Equipment-Protection (GFEP) Circuit Breakers: With Class B ground-fault protection (30-mA trip).
- O. Features and Accessories:
  1. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
  2. Lugs: Compression type, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor material.
  3. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HID for feeding fluorescent and high-intensity discharge lighting circuits.
  4. Ground-Fault Protection: Comply with UL 1053; integrally mounted, self-powered type with mechanical ground-fault indicator; relay with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, internal memory, and shunt trip unit; and three-phase, zero-sequence current transformer/sensor.
  5. Communication Capability: Circuit-breaker-mounted communication module with functions and features compatible with power monitoring and control system, specified in Section 260913 "Electrical Power Monitoring and Control."
  6. Shunt Trip: Trip coil energized from separate circuit, with coil-clearing contact.
  7. Undervoltage Trip: Set to operate at 35 to 75 percent of rated voltage without intentional time delay.
  8. Auxiliary Contacts: Two SPDT switches with "a" and "b" contacts; "a" contacts mimic circuit-breaker contacts, "b" contacts operate in reverse of circuit-breaker contacts.
  9. Alarm Switch: One NO contact that operates only when circuit breaker has tripped.
  10. Key Interlock Kit: Externally mounted to prohibit circuit-breaker operation; key shall be removable only when circuit breaker is in off position.
  11. Electrical Operator: Provide remote control for on, off, and reset operations.
  12. Accessory Control Power Voltage: Integrally mounted, self-powered.

## 2.05 ENCLOSURES

- A. Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers: UL 489, NEMA KS 1, NEMA 250, and UL 50, to comply with environmental conditions at installed location.
- B. Enclosure Finish: The enclosure shall be gray baked enamel paint, electrodeposited on cleaned, phosphatized steel (NEMA 250 Type 1).
- C. Conduit Entry: NEMA 250 Types 4, 4X, and 12 enclosures shall contain no knockouts. NEMA 250 Types 7 and 9 enclosures shall be provided with threaded conduit openings in both endwalls.
- D. Operating Mechanism: The circuit-breaker operating handle shall be externally operable with the operating mechanism being an integral part of the box, not the cover. The cover interlock

mechanism shall have an externally operated override. The override shall not permanently disable the interlock mechanism, which shall return to the locked position once the override is released. The tool used to override the cover interlock mechanism shall not be required to enter the enclosure in order to override the interlock.

- E. Enclosures designated as NEMA 250 Type 4, 4X stainless steel, 12, or 12K shall have a dual cover interlock mechanism to prevent unintentional opening of the enclosure cover when the circuit breaker is ON and to prevent turning the circuit breaker ON when the enclosure cover is open.
- F. NEMA 250 Type 7/9 enclosures shall be furnished with a breather and drain kit to allow their use in outdoor and wet location applications.

### **PART 3 EXECUTION**

#### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine elements and surfaces to receive enclosed switches and circuit breakers for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
  - 1. Commencement of work shall indicate Installer's acceptance of the areas and conditions as satisfactory.

#### **3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Interruption of Existing Electric Service: Do not interrupt electric service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electric service according to requirements indicated:
  - 1. Notify Owner no fewer than seven days in advance of proposed interruption of electric service.
  - 2. Indicate method of providing temporary electric service.
  - 3. Do not proceed with interruption of electric service without Owner's written permission.
  - 4. Comply with NFPA 70E.

#### **3.03 ENCLOSURE ENVIRONMENTAL RATING APPLICATIONS**

- A. Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers: Provide enclosures at installed locations with the following environmental ratings.
  - 1. Indoor, Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1.
  - 2. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R.
  - 3. Wash-Down Areas: NEMA 250, Type 4X, stainless steel.
  - 4. Other Wet or Damp, Indoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 4.
  - 5. Indoor Locations Subject to Dust, Falling Dirt, and Dripping Noncorrosive Liquids: NEMA 250, Type 12.

#### **3.04 INSTALLATION**

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of switches, circuit breakers, and components with equipment served and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.
- B. Install individual wall-mounted switches and circuit breakers with tops at uniform height unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting of eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from enclosures and components.
- D. Install fuses in fusible devices.
- E. Comply with NFPA 70 and NECA 1.

#### **3.05 IDENTIFICATION**

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
  - 1. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs.



2. Label each enclosure with engraved metal or laminated-plastic nameplate.

### 3.06 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections for Switches:
  1. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:
    - a. Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
    - b. Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and clearances.
    - c. Verify that the unit is clean.
    - d. Verify blade alignment, blade penetration, travel stops, and mechanical operation.
    - e. Verify that fuse sizes and types match the Specifications and Drawings.
    - f. Verify that each fuse has adequate mechanical support and contact integrity.
    - g. Inspect bolted electrical connections for high resistance using one of the two following methods:
      - 1) Use a low-resistance ohmmeter.
        - (a) Compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from those of similar bolted connections by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
      - 2) Verify tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque-wrench method in accordance with manufacturer's published data or NETA ATS Table 100.12.
        - (a) Bolt-torque levels shall be in accordance with manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, use NETA ATS Table 100.12.
    - h. Verify that operation and sequencing of interlocking systems is as described in the Specifications and shown on the Drawings.
    - i. Verify correct phase barrier installation.
    - j. Verify lubrication of moving current-carrying parts and moving and sliding surfaces.
  2. Electrical Tests:
    - a. Perform resistance measurements through bolted connections with a low-resistance ohmmeter. Compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from adjacent poles or similar switches by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
    - b. Measure contact resistance across each switchblade fuseholder. Drop values shall not exceed the high level of the manufacturer's published data. If manufacturer's published data are not available, investigate values that deviate from adjacent poles or similar switches by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
    - c. Perform insulation-resistance tests for one minute on each pole, phase-to-phase and phase-to-ground with switch closed, and across each open pole. Apply voltage in accordance with manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, use Table 100.1 from the NETA ATS. Investigate values of insulation resistance less than those published in Table 100.1 or as recommended in manufacturer's published data.
    - d. Measure fuse resistance. Investigate fuse-resistance values that deviate from each other by more than 15 percent.
    - e. Perform ground fault test according to NETA ATS 7.14 "Ground Fault Protection Systems, Low-Voltage."
- C. Tests and Inspections for Molded Case Circuit Breakers:
  1. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:
    - a. Verify that equipment nameplate data are as described in the Specifications and shown on the Drawings.
    - b. Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
    - c. Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and clearances.
    - d. Verify that the unit is clean.
    - e. Operate the circuit breaker to ensure smooth operation.

- f. Inspect bolted electrical connections for high resistance using one of the two following methods:
    - 1) Use a low-resistance ohmmeter.
      - (a) Compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from those of similar bolted connections by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
    - 2) Verify tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque-wrench method in accordance with manufacturer's published data or NETA ATS Table 100.12.
      - (a) Bolt-torque levels shall be in accordance with manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, use NETA ATS Table 100.12.
  - g. Inspect operating mechanism, contacts, and chutes in unsealed units.
  - h. Perform adjustments for final protective device settings in accordance with the coordination study.
2. Electrical Tests:
- a. Perform resistance measurements through bolted connections with a low-resistance ohmmeter. Compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from adjacent poles or similar switches by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
  - b. Perform insulation-resistance tests for one minute on each pole, phase-to-phase and phase-to-ground with circuit breaker closed, and across each open pole. Apply voltage in accordance with manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, use Table 100.1 from the NETA ATS. Investigate values of insulation resistance less than those published in Table 100.1 or as recommended in manufacturer's published data.
  - c. Perform a contact/pole resistance test. Drop values shall not exceed the high level of the manufacturer's published data. If manufacturer's published data are not available, investigate values that deviate from adjacent poles or similar switches by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
  - d. Perform insulation resistance tests on all control wiring with respect to ground. Applied potential shall be 500-V dc for 300-V rated cable and 1000-V dc for 600-V rated cable. Test duration shall be one minute. For units with solid state components, follow manufacturer's recommendation. Insulation resistance values shall be no less than two megohms.
  - e. Determine the following by primary current injection:
    - 1) Long-time pickup and delay. Pickup values shall be as specified. Trip characteristics shall not exceed manufacturer's published time-current characteristic tolerance band, including adjustment factors.
    - 2) Short-time pickup and delay. Short-time pickup values shall be as specified. Trip characteristics shall not exceed manufacturer's published time-current characteristic tolerance band, including adjustment factors.
    - 3) Ground-fault pickup and time delay. Ground-fault pickup values shall be as specified. Trip characteristics shall not exceed manufacturer's published time-current characteristic tolerance band, including adjustment factors.
    - 4) Instantaneous pickup. Instantaneous pickup values shall be as specified and within manufacturer's published tolerances.
  - f. Test functionality of the trip unit by means of primary current injection. Pickup values and trip characteristics shall be as specified and within manufacturer's published tolerances.
  - g. Perform minimum pickup voltage tests on shunt trip and close coils in accordance with manufacturer's published data. Minimum pickup voltage of the shunt trip and close coils shall be as indicated by manufacturer.
  - h. Verify correct operation of auxiliary features such as trip and pickup indicators; zone interlocking; electrical close and trip operation; trip-free, anti-pump function; and trip unit battery condition. Reset all trip logs and indicators. Investigate units that do not

- function as designed.
- i. Verify operation of charging mechanism. Investigate units that do not function as designed.
- 3. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
- 4. Perform the following infrared scan tests and inspections and prepare reports:
  - a. Initial Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each enclosed switch and circuit breaker. Remove front panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
  - b. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each enclosed switch and circuit breaker 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
  - c. Instruments and Equipment: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
- 5. Test and adjust controls, remote monitoring, and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- D. Enclosed switches and circuit breakers will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.
  - 1. Test procedures used.
  - 2. Include identification of each enclosed switch and circuit breaker tested and describe test results.
  - 3. List deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

### **3.07 ADJUSTING**

- A. Adjust moving parts and operable components to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Set field-adjustable circuit-breaker trip ranges.

**END OF SECTION 26 28 16**

**SECTION 26 51 19  
LED INTERIOR LIGHTING**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Downlight.
  - 2. Recessed, linear.
  - 3. Strip light.
  - 4. Surface mount, linear.
  - 5. Suspended, linear.
  - 6. Materials.
  - 7. Luminaire support.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 260923 "Lighting Control Devices" for automatic control of lighting, including time switches, photoelectric relays, occupancy sensors, and multipole lighting relays and contactors.

**1.03 DEFINITIONS**

- A. CCT: Correlated color temperature.
- B. CRI: Color Rendering Index.
- C. Fixture: See "Luminaire."
- D. IP: International Protection or Ingress Protection Rating.
- E. LED: Light-emitting diode.
- F. Lumen: Measured output of lamp and luminaire, or both.
- G. Luminaire: Complete lighting unit, including lamp, reflector, and housing.

**1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Arrange in order of luminaire designation.
  - 2. Include data on features, accessories, and finishes.
  - 3. Include physical description and dimensions of luminaires.
  - 4. Include emergency lighting units, including batteries and chargers.
  - 5. Include life, output (lumens, CCT, and CRI), and energy-efficiency data.
  - 6. Photometric data and adjustment factors based on laboratory tests, complying with IES "Lighting Measurements Testing and Calculation Guides" for each luminaire type. The adjustment factors shall be for lamps and accessories identical to those indicated for the luminaire as applied in this Project.
    - a. Manufacturers' Certified Data: Photometric data certified by manufacturer's laboratory with a current accreditation under the National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
    - b. Testing Agency Certified Data: For indicated luminaires, photometric data certified by a qualified independent testing agency. Photometric data for remaining luminaires shall be certified by manufacturer.
- B. Shop Drawings: For nonstandard or custom luminaires.
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting and attachment details.
  - 2. Include details of luminaire assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.

3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Samples: For each luminaire and for each color and texture with standard factory-applied finish.
- D. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of luminaire with custom factory-applied finishes.
  1. Include Samples of luminaires and accessories involving color and finish selection.
- E. Samples for Verification: For each type of luminaire.
  1. Include Samples of luminaires and accessories to verify finish selection.
- F. Product Schedule: For luminaires and lamps.

#### **1.05 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plan(s) and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
  1. Luminaires.
  2. Suspended ceiling components.
  3. Partitions and millwork that penetrate the ceiling or extend to within 12 inches (300 mm) of the plane of the luminaires.
  4. Structural members to which equipment and or luminaires will be attached.
  5. Initial access modules for acoustical tile, including size and locations.
  6. Items penetrating finished ceiling, including the following:
    - a. Other luminaires.
    - b. Air outlets and inlets.
    - c. Speakers.
    - d. Sprinklers.
    - e. Access panels.
    - f. Ceiling-mounted projectors.
  7. Moldings.
- B. Qualification Data: For testing laboratory providing photometric data for luminaires.
- C. Product Certificates: For each type of luminaire.
- D. Product Test Reports: For each type of luminaire, for tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency.
- E. Sample warranty.

#### **1.06 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For luminaires and lighting systems to include in operation and maintenance manuals.
  1. Provide a list of all lamp types used on Project; use ANSI and manufacturers' codes.

#### **1.07 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  1. Lamps: Ten for every 100 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
  2. Diffusers and Lenses: One for every 100 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
  3. Globes and Guards: One for every 20 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.

#### **1.08 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications:
  1. Luminaire manufacturer's laboratory that is accredited under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
  2. Provided by an independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is an NRTL as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, accredited under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products, and complying with the

applicable IES testing standards.

- B. Provide luminaires from a single manufacturer for each luminaire type.
- C. Each luminaire type shall be binned within a three-step MacAdam Ellipse to ensure color consistency among luminaires.
- D. Mockups: For interior luminaires in room or module mockups, complete with power and control connections.
  - 1. Obtain Architect's approval of luminaires in mockups before starting installations.
  - 2. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
  - 3. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
  - 4. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

#### **1.09 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Protect finishes of exposed surfaces by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

#### **1.10 WARRANTY**

- A. Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components of luminaires that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
- B. Warranty Period: Five year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 LUMINAIRE TYPES**

- A. Furnish products as indicated in luminaire schedule included on the drawings.

#### **2.02 LUMINAIRES**

- A. Provide products that are listed and labeled as complying with UL 1598, where applicable. Where LER is specified, test according to NEMA LE 5 and NEMA LE 5A as applicable.
- B. Provide products listed, classified, and labeled as suitable for the purpose intended.
- C. Provide products complying with Federal Energy Management Program (FEMP) requirements.
- D. Unless otherwise indicated, provide complete luminaires including lamp(s) and all sockets, ballasts, reflectors, lenses, housings and other components required to position, energize and protect the lamp and distribute the light.
- E. Unless specifically indicated to be excluded, provide all required conduit, boxes, wiring, connectors, hardware, supports, trims, accessories, etc. as necessary for a complete operating system.
- F. Provide products suitable to withstand normal handling, installation, and service without any damage, distortion, corrosion, fading, discoloring, etc.
- G. Luminaire Coatings and Finishes:
  - 1. Luminaire surfaces, components, trim, and housing shall be factory pre-treated, rustproof, primed and otherwise prepared to inhibit rust and corrosion. Exposed luminaire surfaces shall be factory pre-treated, primed and finish coated with a suitable rust and corrosion inhibiting product.
  - 2. Reflecting surfaces shall have minimum reflectance as follows, unless otherwise indicated:
    - a. White Surfaces: 85 percent.
    - b. Specular Surfaces: 83 percent.
    - c. Diffusing Specular Surfaces: 75 percent.
    - d. Laminated Silver Metallized Film: 90 percent.

3. Luminaires shall receive manufacturer's standard finish, unless otherwise indicated. Color shall be as indicated or, if not indicated, as selected by Architect/Engineer of Record from manufacturer's standard range.
  4. Exposed finish shall be free of streaks, runs, holidays, stains, blisters, and similar defects.
  5. Metal Parts: Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.
  6. Sheet Metal Components: Steel, unless otherwise indicated. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.
  7. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.
- H. Diffusers and Globes:
1. Acrylic Lighting Diffusers: 100 percent virgin acrylic plastic. High resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
    - a. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125 inch minimum unless otherwise is indicated.
    - b. UV stabilized.
  2. Glass globes, diffusers and lenses shall be fabricated from annealed crystal glass, or tempered glass, unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Destaticize all panels at the factory prior to shipping.
- I. Louvers:
1. Provide louvers or baffles fabricated from aluminum reflector sheet free of marks including mars and indentations caused by fabrication and assembly techniques. No rivets, springs, or other hardware shall be visible after installation. Plastic louvers are not permitted.
  2. Provide non-iridescent type louvers for fixtures using fluorescent lamps.
  3. Provide louvers and baffles of first-quality polished, buffed, and anodized. Anodized finish shall be Alzak.
- J. Reflectors and Trims:
1. Attach non-permanently affixed reflectors to housing by means of safety chains or spring clips, to prevent reflectors from falling. No part of the clip or chain shall be visible after installation, when viewed from any angle up to 45 degrees from horizontal.
  2. Aluminum Reflectors:
    - a. Provide reflectors and reflecting cones fabricated from aluminum reflector sheet free of marks including spinning lines, mars, and indentations caused by fabrication and assembly techniques. No rivets, springs, or other hardware shall be visible after installation. Provide only reflectors free from blemishes, scratches, or indentations.
    - b. Provide reflectors of first-quality polished, buffed, and anodized. Anodized finish shall be Alzak.
    - c. Provide non-iridescent type louvers for fixtures using fluorescent lamps.
    - d. Provide polished self-flanged trim cones, color finish shall match that of the cone.
  3. Painted Reflectors: Completely formed before application of primer and paint. Minimum of 87 percent reflectance white.
- K. Recessed Luminaires:
1. Ceiling Compatibility: Comply with NEMA LE 4.
  2. Luminaires Recessed in Insulated Ceilings: Listed and labeled as IC-rated, suitable for direct contact with insulation and combustible materials.
  3. Luminaires Recessed in Sloped Ceilings: Provide suitable sloped ceiling adapters.
  4. Air-Handling Recessed Fluorescent Luminaires: Suitable for air supply/return, heat removal, or combination as indicated.
    - a. Luminaires for Air Supply/Return: Provide air control blades where indicated.
    - b. Luminaires for Heat Removal: Provide heat removal dampers where indicated.
- L. LED Luminaires:
1. Components: UL 8750 recognized or listed as applicable.
  2. Tested in accordance with IES LM-79 and IES LM-80.

3. LED Estimated Useful Life: Minimum of 50,000 hours at 70 percent lumen maintenance, calculated based on IES LM-80 test data.
  4. Shall be provided with a U.S. Department of Energy (DOE) "Lighting Facts" label indicating their specific performance characteristics, tested and reported in accordance with the requirements of the most current version of IES LM-79.
  5. Chromaticity ranges for "white light" products, with various correlated color temperatures, shall be provided in accordance with ANSI/NEMA -C78.377.
  6. Drivers and power supplies shall be provided in accordance with the requirements of ANSI/NEMA-C82.SSL1 and their maximum allowable harmonic emission limits shall be in accordance with ANSI/NEMA-C82.77.
- M. Luminaires Mounted in Continuous Rows: Provide quantity of units required for length indicated, with all accessories required for joining and aligning.
- N. Product Description: Provide complete luminaire assemblies with features, options and accessories as scheduled and required for complete assembly, whether specified or not.
- O. Provide fixtures constructed, wired, and installed in compliance with appropriate UL standards and applicable codes. Provide fixtures that are listed by UL for the applications and locations where they are shown. Provide all products with UL label.
- P. Verify and provide luminaires that are appropriate for the mounting conditions and in accordance with the Chicago Electrical Code.
- Q. All fixture components must operate within the temperature limits of their design.
- R. Fixture Support Components: Comply with Section 26 05 29 - Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems.
1. Single-Stem Hangers: 1/2-inch steel tubing with swivel ball fitting and ceiling canopy. Finish shall be the same as the fixture.
  2. Twin-Stem Hangers: Two, 1/2-inch steel tubes with single canopy arranged to mount a single fixture. Finish shall be the same as the fixture.
  3. Rod Hangers: 3/16-inch minimum diameter, cadmium-plated, threaded steel rod.
  4. Hook Hanger: Integrated assembly matched to fixture and line voltage and equipped with threaded attachment, cord and locking-type plug.
- S. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.
- T. Sheet Metal Components: Steel, unless otherwise indicated. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging. Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.

### 2.03 BALLASTS AND DRIVERS

- A. Manufacturers:
1. Where a specific manufacturer or model is indicated elsewhere in the luminaire schedule or on the drawings, substitutions are not permitted unless explicitly indicated.
- B. Ballasts/Drivers - General Requirements:
1. Minimum Efficiency/Efficacy: Provide ballasts complying with all current applicable federal and state ballast efficiency/efficacy standards.
  2. Electronic Ballasts/Drivers: Inrush currents not exceeding peak currents specified in NEMA 410.
  3. Drivers and power supplies shall be provided in accordance with the requirements of ANSI/NEMA-C82.SSL1 and their maximum allowable harmonic emission limits shall be in accordance with ANSI/NEMA-C82.77.
  4. Provide individual fusing of all ballasts to protect each fixture against overloads or short circuits. Each fixture shall be capable of being readily disconnected from the circuit.
  5. Provide ballasts having the lowest sound rating available for the lamps specified. Replace ballasts found by Architect/Engineer of Record to be too noisy without charge, prior to Final Acceptance.



6. Provide UL listed and labeled ballasts. Provide ballasts with temperature ratings appropriate to the installation.
    - a. Match ballast and lamp operating characteristics for a fully compatible, optimized lighting system. Provide ballasts matched to utilization voltage of system circuit. Provide high power factor ballasts where available.
  7. Ballasts shall not attenuate clock system carrier control signals nor cause interference with other electronic systems in the building.
  8. Ballasts and capacitors shall not contain any toxic substances. Provide products that do not contain polychlorinated biphenyls (PCBs) and are labeled "NO PCBs".
  9. Fixtures intended to be dimmed shall have dimming ballasts and transformers compatible with the specified dimmer controls.
- C. LED Drivers:
1. Dimming Range: Continuous dimming from 100 percent to five percent relative light output unless dimming capability to lower level is indicated, without flicker.
  2. Control Compatibility: Fully compatible with the dimming controls to be installed.
    - a. Wall Dimmers: See Section 26 27 26 - Wiring Devices - Lutron.
  3. LED drivers shall be factory provided by the respective luminaire manufacturers, and shall be suitable for their intended use, to operate the designated LED modules listed in the Luminaire Schedule, and as specified herein, to their full light output.
  4. Comply with the requirements of the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) rules and regulations, Title 47 CFR Part 18, Non-Consumer (Class A) for EMI/RFI (conducted and radiated).
  5. Provide identical drivers within each luminaire type.
  6. Provide UL listed and labeled drivers. Provide drivers with temperature ratings appropriate to the installation.
  7. Provide complete connection to LED type luminaires through both integrally installed and remote electronic drivers.
  8. Drivers shall be totally enclosed within a metallic enclosure, and shall be provided with integral leads color coded per ANSI C82.11, or with poke-in style wire retaining connectors.
  9. Fixtures intended to be dimmed shall have dimming driver compatible with the specified dimmer controls.
  10. Surge Tolerance: Capable of withstanding characteristic surges, 10,000 aic minimum.
  11. Remote Drivers:
    - a. Remote drivers are specifically not shown on the drawings. Contractor shall install remote drivers in a readily accessible, dry, indoor, concealed location, in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
    - b. Provide ventilated metal enclosures for remote drivers furnished as loose equipment. All wiring to/from remote drivers and their associated LED luminaires shall be installed in conduit.
    - c. Verify and comply with remote distance limitations specified by the luminaire/driver manufacturer.

#### 2.04 ACCESSORIES

- A. Stems for Suspended Luminaires: Steel tubing, minimum 1/2 inch size, factory finished to match luminaire or field-painted as directed.
- B. Threaded Rods for Suspended Luminaires: Zinc-plated steel, minimum 1/4 inch size, field-painted as directed.
- C. Provide accessory plaster frames for luminaires recessed in plaster ceilings.
- D. Tube Guards for Linear Fluorescent Lamps: Provide clear virgin polycarbonate sleeves with endcaps where indicated.
- E. Lenses:
  1. Source Limitations: Fixture lenses shall be provided by the light fixture manufacturer.

2. Construct acrylic lenses, diffusers, covers, and globes of 100 percent virgin acrylic injection-molded plastic complying with ASTM D 788. Polystyrene lenses are not acceptable.
3. All plastic shall be highly resistant to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat and ultraviolet radiation.
4. Destaticize all panels at the factory prior to shipping.
5. Lens Patterns:
  - a. Pattern 12 Lens: Pattern 12 lens shall be not less than 0.125-inch thick (overall panel thickness), with inverted conical prisms, in straight flat-sided prism shape, configured on 45-degree axis layout across the entire panel.
  - b. Pattern 19 Lens: Pattern 19 lens shall be not less than 0.156-inch thick (overall panel thickness), with inverted conical prisms, in straight flat-sided prism shape, configured on parallel/perpendicular 90-degree axis layout across the entire panel. Provide pattern 19 lenses in kitchens, serveries, locker rooms, and toilet rooms.

## **2.05 LIGHTING FIXTURE SUPPORT COMPONENTS**

- A. Comply with Section 26 05 29 - Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems for channel-supports.
- B. Single-Stem Hangers: 1/2-inch steel tubing with swivel ball fittings and ceiling canopy. Finish same as fixture.
- C. Wires: ASTM A 641, Class 3, soft temper, zinc-coated steel, 0.0808-inch (12 gage) minimum diameter.
- D. Rod Hangers: 3/16-inch minimum diameter, cadmium-plated, threaded steel rod.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for luminaire to verify actual locations of luminaire and electrical connections before luminaire installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.02 TEMPORARY LIGHTING**

- A. If approved by the Architect, use selected permanent luminaires for temporary lighting. When construction is sufficiently complete, clean luminaires used for temporary lighting and install new lamps.

### **3.03 INSTALLATION**

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Install luminaires level, plumb, and square with ceilings and walls unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install lamps in each luminaire.
- D. Supports:
  1. Sized and rated for luminaire weight.
  2. Able to maintain luminaire position after cleaning and relamping.
  3. Provide support for luminaire without causing deflection of ceiling or wall.
  4. Luminaire-mounting devices shall be capable of supporting a horizontal force of 100 percent of luminaire weight and a vertical force of 400 percent of luminaire weight.
- E. Flush-Mounted Luminaires:
  1. Secured to outlet box.
  2. Attached to ceiling structural members at four points equally spaced around circumference of luminaire.
  3. Trim ring flush with finished surface.
- F. Wall-Mounted Luminaires:

1. Attached to structural members in walls.
  2. Do not attach luminaires directly to gypsum board.
- G. Suspended Luminaires:
1. Ceiling Mount:
    - a. Two 5/32-inch- (4-mm-) diameter aircraft cable supports adjustable to 10 feet (3 m) in length.
    - b. Pendant mount with 5/32-inch- (4-mm-) diameter aircraft cable supports adjustable to 10 feet (3 m) in length.
    - c. Hook mount.
  2. Pendants and Rods: Where longer than 48 inches (1200 mm), brace to limit swinging.
  3. Stem-Mounted, Single-Unit Luminaires: Suspend with twin-stem hangers. Support with approved outlet box and accessories that hold stem and provide damping of luminaire oscillations. Support outlet box vertically to building structure using approved devices.
  4. Continuous Rows of Luminaires: Use tubing or stem for wiring at one point and wire support for suspension for each unit length of luminaire chassis, including one at each end.
  5. Do not use ceiling grid as support for pendant luminaires. Connect support wires or rods to building structure.
- H. Ceiling-Grid-Mounted Luminaires:
1. Secure to any required outlet box.
  2. Secure luminaire to the luminaire opening using approved fasteners in a minimum of four locations, spaced near corners of luminaire.
  3. Use approved devices and support components to connect luminaire to ceiling grid and building structure in a minimum of four locations, spaced near corners of luminaire.
- I. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" for wiring connections.

### **3.04 IDENTIFICATION**

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

### **3.05 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
1. Operational Test: After installing luminaires, switches, and accessories, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units to confirm proper operation.
  2. Test for Emergency Lighting: Interrupt power supply to demonstrate proper operation. Verify transfer from normal power to battery power and retransfer to normal.
- B. Luminaire will be considered defective if it does not pass operation tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### **3.06 ADJUSTING**

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting the direction of aim of luminaires to suit occupied conditions. Make up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal hours for this purpose. Some of this work may be required during hours of darkness.
1. During adjustment visits, inspect all luminaires. Replace lamps or luminaires that are defective.
  2. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.
  3. Adjust the aim of luminaires in the presence of the Architect.

**END OF SECTION 26 51 19**

**SECTION 26 52 13  
EMERGENCY AND EXIT LIGHTING**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Emergency lighting.
  - 2. Exit signs.
  - 3. Materials.
  - 4. Luminaire support components.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 260010 "Supplemental Requirements for Electrical" for additional abbreviations, definitions, submittals, qualifications, testing agencies, and other Project requirements applicable to Work specified in this Section.

**1.02 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Correlated Color Temperature (CCT): The absolute temperature, measured in kelvins, of a blackbody whose chromaticity most nearly resembles that of the light source.
- B. Color Rendering Index (CRI): Measure of the degree of color shift that objects undergo when illuminated by the light source as compared with the color of those same objects when illuminated by a reference source.
- C. Emergency Lighting Unit: A lighting unit with internal or external emergency battery powered supply and the means for controlling and charging the battery and unit operation.
- D. Lumen (lm): The SI derived unit of luminous flux equal to the luminous flux emitted within a unit solid angle by a unit point source (1 lm = 1 cd-sr).

**1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data:
  - 1. For each type of emergency lighting unit, exit sign, and emergency lighting support.
    - a. Include data on features, accessories, and finishes.
    - b. Include physical description of unit and dimensions.
    - c. Battery and charger for light units.
    - d. Include life, output of luminaire (lumens, CCT, and CRI), and energy-efficiency data.
    - e. Include photometric data and adjustment factors based on laboratory tests by, or under supervision of, qualified luminaire photometric testing laboratory, for each luminaire type.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. For nonstandard or custom luminaires.
    - a. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting and attachment details.
    - b. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
    - c. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Samples: For each product and for each color and texture specified.
- D. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of luminaire with factory-applied finishes.
- E. Samples for Verification: For each type of luminaire.
  - 1. Include Samples of luminaires and accessories to verify finish selection.
- F. Product Schedule:
  - 1. For emergency lighting units. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.
  - 2. For exit signs. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

**1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Certificates: For each type of luminaire.

- B. Product Test Reports: For each luminaire for tests performed by, or under supervision of, qualified luminaire photometric testing laboratory.
- C. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's special warranty.

#### **1.05 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Lamps: 10 for every 100 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
  - 2. Luminaire-mounted, emergency battery pack: One for every 20 emergency lighting units. Furnish at least one of each type.
  - 3. Diffusers and Lenses: One for every 100 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
  - 4. Globes and Guards: One for every 20 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.

#### **1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. FM Global Compliance: Luminaires for hazardous locations must be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by FM Global.
- B. Mockups: For interior luminaires in room or module mockups, complete with power and control connections.
  - 1. Obtain Architect's approval of luminaires and signs in mockups before starting installations.
  - 2. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging completed Work.
  - 3. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
  - 4. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

#### **1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Protect finishes of exposed surfaces by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

#### **1.08 WARRANTY**

- A. Special Installer Extended Warranty for Emergency and Exit Lighting: Installer warrants that fabricated and installed emergency luminaires and exit signs, including batteries, perform in accordance with specified requirements and agrees to repair or replace components and assemblies that fail to perform as specified within extended warranty period.
  - 1. Extended Warranty Period: Two year(s) from date of Substantial Completion; full coverage for labor, materials, and equipment.
- B. Special Manufacturer Extended Warranty for Batteries for Emergency and Exit Lighting: Manufacturer warrants that batteries for emergency luminaires and exit signs perform in accordance with specified requirements and agrees to provide repair or replacement of batteries that fail to perform as specified within extended warranty period.
  - 1. Extended Warranty Period: Five year(s) from date of Substantial Completion; prorated coverage for labor, materials, and equipment.

### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Provide products as indicated on drawings.

#### **2.02 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR EMERGENCY LIGHTING**

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and UL 924, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having

jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.

- B. Comply with NFPA 101.
- C. Comply with NEMA LE 4 for recessed luminaires.
- D. Lamp Base: Comply with ANSI C81.61.
- E. Bulb Shape: Complying with ANSI C79.1.
- F. Internal Type Emergency Power Unit: Self-contained, modular, battery-inverter unit, factory mounted within luminaire body and compatible with ballast.
  - 1. Emergency Connection: Operate one lamp(s) continuously at an output of 1100 lumens each upon loss of normal power. Connect unswitched circuit to battery-inverter unit and switched circuit to luminaire ballast.
  - 2. Operation: Relay automatically turns lamp on when power-supply circuit voltage drops to 80 percent of nominal voltage or below. Lamp automatically disconnects from battery when voltage approaches deep-discharge level. When normal voltage is restored, relay disconnects lamps from battery, and battery is automatically recharged and floated on charger.
  - 3. Nightlight Connection: Operate lamp continuously at 40 percent of rated light output.
  - 4. Test Push-Button and Indicator Light: Visible and accessible without opening luminaire or entering ceiling space.
    - a. Push Button: Push-to-test type, in unit housing, simulates loss of normal power and demonstrates unit operability.
    - b. Indicator Light: LED indicates normal power on. Normal glow indicates trickle charge; bright glow indicates charging at end of discharge cycle.
  - 5. Battery: Sealed, maintenance-free, nickel-cadmium type.
  - 6. Charger: Fully automatic, solid-state, constant-current type with sealed power transfer relay.
  - 7. Integral Self-Test: Factory-installed electronic device automatically initiates code-required test of unit emergency operation at required intervals. Test failure is annunciated by an integral audible alarm and a flashing red LED.

### 2.03 EMERGENCY LIGHTING

- A. General Characteristics: Self-contained units.
- B. Emergency Luminaire
  - 1. Options:
    - a. Operating at nominal voltage of 120 V(ac).
    - b. Internal emergency power unit.
    - c. Rated for installation in damp locations, and for sealed and gasketed luminaires in wet locations.
    - d. UL 94 5VA flame rating.
- C. Emergency Lighting Unit
  - 1. Options:
    - a. Operating at nominal voltage of 120 V(ac).
    - b. Wall with universal junction box adaptor.
    - c. UV stable thermoplastic housing, rated for damp locations.
    - d. Two LED lamp heads.
    - e. Internal emergency power unit.

### 2.04 EXIT SIGNS

- A. General Characteristics: Comply with UL 924; for sign colors, visibility, luminance, and lettering size, comply with authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Internally Lighted Sign :
  - 1. Options:
    - a. Operating at nominal voltage of 120 V(ac).
    - b. Lamps for AC Operation:

- 1) LEDs; 50,000 hours minimum rated lamp life.

## **2.05 MATERIALS**

- A. Metal Parts:
  1. Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.
  2. Sheet metal components must be steel unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.
- B. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access:
  1. Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions.
  2. Designed to permit relamping without use of tools.
  3. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.
- C. Diffusers and Globes:
  1. Tempered Fresnel glass.
  2. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch (3.175 mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Housings:
  1. Extruded aluminum housing and heat sink.
  2. Clear anodized finish.
- E. Conduit: EMT, minimum metric designator 21 (trade size 3/4).

## **2.06 METAL FINISHES**

- A. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## **2.07 LUMINAIRE SUPPORT COMPONENTS**

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for channel and angle iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.
- B. Support Wires: ASTM A641/A641M, Class 3, soft temper, zinc-coated steel, 0.106 inch (2.69 mm).

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for conditions affecting performance of luminaires.
- B. Examine roughing-in for luminaire to verify actual locations of luminaire and electrical connections before luminaire installation.
- C. Examine walls, floors, roofs, and ceilings for suitable conditions where emergency lighting luminaires will be installed.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.02 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install luminaires level, plumb, and square with ceilings and walls unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Install lamps in each luminaire.
- C. Supports:
  1. Sized and rated for luminaire and emergency power unit weight.
  2. Able to maintain luminaire position when testing emergency power unit.
  3. Provide support for luminaire and emergency power unit without causing deflection of ceiling or wall.
  4. Luminaire-mounting devices must be capable of supporting a horizontal force of 100 percent of luminaire and emergency power unit weight and vertical force of 400 percent of luminaire weight.

- D. Wall-Mounted Luminaire Support:
  - 1. Attached to structural members in walls.
  - 2. Do not attach luminaires directly to gypsum board.
- E. Suspended Luminaire Support:
  - 1. Pendants and Rods: Where longer than 48 inch (1200 mm), brace to limit swinging.
  - 2. Stem-Mounted, Single-Unit Luminaires: Suspend with twin-stem hangers. Support with approved outlet box and accessories that hold stem and provide damping of luminaire oscillations. Support outlet box vertically to building structure using approved devices.
  - 3. Continuous Rows of Luminaires: Use tubing or stem for wiring at one point and wire support for suspension for each unit length of luminaire chassis, including one at each end.
  - 4. Do not use ceiling grid as support for pendant luminaires. Connect support wires or rods to building structure.
- F. Ceiling Grid Mounted Luminaires:
  - 1. Secure to outlet box, if provided.
  - 2. Secure emergency power unit using approved fasteners in a minimum of four locations, spaced near corners of emergency power unit.
  - 3. Use approved devices and support components to connect luminaire to ceiling grid and building structure in a minimum of four locations, spaced near corners of luminaire.

### 3.03 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

### 3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Test for Emergency Lighting: Interrupt power supply to demonstrate proper operation. Verify transfer from normal power to battery power and retransfer to normal.
- B. Nonconforming Work:
  - 1. Luminaire will be considered defective if it does not pass operation tests and inspections.
  - 2. Remove and replace defective units and retest.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.05 SYSTEM STARTUP

- A. Perform startup service:
  - 1. Charge emergency power units and batteries minimum of one hour and depress switch to conduct short-duration test.
  - 2. Charge emergency power units and batteries minimum of 24 hours and conduct one-hour discharge test.

### 3.06 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjustments: Within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site visit to do the following:
  - 1. Inspect luminaires. Replace lamps, emergency power units, batteries, exit signs, and luminaires that are defective.
    - a. Parts and supplies must be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.
  - 2. Conduct short-duration tests on all emergency lighting.

### 3.07 PROTECTION

- A. Remove and replace luminaires and exit signs that are damaged or caused to be unfit for use by construction activities.

**END OF SECTION 26 52 13**



This page intentionally left blank

**SECTION 27 05 26  
GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Grounding conductors.
  - 2. Grounding connectors.
  - 3. Grounding busbars.
  - 4. Grounding rods.
  - 5. Grounding labeling.

**1.03 DEFINITIONS**

- A. BCT: Bonding conductor for telecommunications.
- B. TGB: Telecommunications grounding busbar.
- C. TMGB: Telecommunications main grounding busbar.
- D. Service Provider: The operator of a service that provides telecommunications transmission delivered over access provider facilities.

**1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For communications equipment room signal reference grid. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

**1.05 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. As-Built Data: Plans showing as-built locations of grounding and bonding infrastructure, including the following:
  - 1. Ground rods.
  - 2. BCT, TMGB, TGBs, and routing of their bonding conductors.
- B. Qualification Data: For Installer, installation supervisor, and field inspector.
- C. Qualification Data: For testing agency and testing agency's field supervisor.
- D. Field quality-control reports.

**1.06 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For grounding to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
  - 1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
    - a. Result of the ground-resistance test, measured at the point of BCT connection.
    - b. Result of the bonding-resistance test at each TGB and its nearest grounding electrode.

**1.07 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Installer Qualifications: Cabling Installer must have personnel certified by BICSI on staff.
  - 1. Installation Supervision: Installation shall be under the direct supervision of ITS Level 2 Installer, who shall be present at all times when Work of this Section is performed at Project site.
  - 2. Field Inspector: Currently registered by BICSI as a designer RCDD to perform the on-site inspection.

## **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION**

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with UL 467 for grounding and bonding materials and equipment.
- C. Comply with TIA-607-B.

### **2.02 CONDUCTORS**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1. Harger Lightning & Grounding.
  - 2. Panduit Corp.
  - 3. TE Connectivity Ltd.
- B. Comply with UL 486A-486B.
- C. Insulated Conductors: Stranded copper wire, green or green with yellow stripe insulation, insulated for 600 V, and complying with UL 83.
  - 1. Ground wire for custom-length equipment ground jumpers shall be No. 6 AWG, 19-strand, UL-listed, Type THHN wire.
- D. Bare Copper Conductors:
  - 1. Solid Conductors: ASTM B3.
  - 2. Stranded Conductors: ASTM B8.
  - 3. Tinned Conductors: ASTM B33.
  - 4. Bonding Cable: 28 kmils (14.2 sq. mm), 14 strands of No. 17 AWG conductor, and 1/4 inch (6.3 mm) in diameter.
  - 5. Bonding Conductor: No. 4 or No. 6 AWG, stranded conductor.
  - 6. Bonding Jumper: Tinned-copper tape, braided conductors terminated with two-hole copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches (41 mm) wide and 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick.

### **2.03 CONNECTORS**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1. Burndy; Hubbell Incorporated, Construction and Energy.
  - 2. Panduit Corp.
  - 3. TE Connectivity Ltd.
- B. Irreversible connectors listed for the purpose. Listed by an NRTL as complying with NFPA 70 for specific types, sizes, and combinations of conductors and other items connected. Comply with UL 486A-486B.
- C. Compression Wire Connectors: Crimp-and-compress connectors that bond to the conductor when the connector is compressed around the conductor. Comply with UL 467.
  - 1. Electroplated tinned copper, C and H shaped.
- D. Signal Reference Grid Connectors: Combination of compression wire connectors, access floor grounding clamps, bronze U-bolt grounding clamps, and copper split-bolt connectors, designed for the purpose.
- E. Busbar Connectors: Cast silicon bronze, solderless exothermic-type, mechanical connector; with a long barrel and two holes spaced on 5/8- or 1-inch (15.8- or 25.4-mm) centers for a two-bolt connection to the busbar.
- F. Welded Connectors: Exothermic-welding kits of types recommended by kit manufacturer for materials being joined and installation conditions.

## 2.04 GROUNDING BUSBARS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1. Chatsworth Products, Inc.
  - 2. Harger Lightning & Grounding.
  - 3. Panduit Corp.
- B. TMGB: Predrilled, wall-mounted, rectangular bars of hard-drawn solid copper, 1/4 by 4 inches (6.3 by 100 mm) in cross section, length as indicated on Drawings. The busbar shall be NRTL listed for use as TMGB and shall comply with TIA-607-B.
  - 1. Predrilling shall be with holes for use with lugs specified in this Section.
  - 2. Mounting Hardware: Stand-off brackets that provide a 4-inch (100-mm) clearance to access the rear of the busbar. Brackets and bolts shall be stainless steel.
  - 3. Stand-off insulators for mounting shall be Lexan or PVC. Comply with UL 891 for use in 600-V switchboards, impulse tested at 5000 V.
- C. TGB: Predrilled rectangular bars of hard-drawn solid copper, 1/4 by 2 inches (6.3 by 50 mm) in cross section, length as indicated on Drawings. The busbar shall be for wall mounting, shall be NRTL listed as complying with UL 467, and shall comply with TIA-607-B.
  - 1. Predrilling shall be with holes for use with lugs specified in this Section.
  - 2. Mounting Hardware: Stand-off brackets that provide at least a 2-inch (50-mm) clearance to access the rear of the busbar. Brackets and bolts shall be stainless steel.
  - 3. Stand-off insulators for mounting shall be Lexan or PVC. Comply with UL 891 for use in 600-V switchboards, impulse tested at 5000 V.
- D. Rack and Cabinet Grounding Busbars: Rectangular bars of hard-drawn solid copper, accepting conductors ranging from No. 14 to No. 2/0 AWG, NRTL listed as complying with UL 467, and complying with TIA-607-B. Predrilling shall be with holes for use with lugs specified in this Section.
  - 1. Cabinet-Mounted Busbar: Terminal block, with stainless-steel or copper-plated hardware for attachment to the cabinet.
  - 2. Rack-Mounted Horizontal Busbar: Designed for mounting in 19- or 23-inch (483- or 584-mm) equipment racks. Include a copper splice bar for transitioning to an adjoining rack, and stainless-steel or copper-plated hardware for attachment to the rack.
  - 3. Rack-Mounted Vertical Busbar: 72 or 36 inches (1827 or 914 mm) long, with stainless-steel or copper-plated hardware for attachment to the rack.

## 2.05 GROUND RODS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1. Harger Lightning & Grounding.
  - 2. TE Connectivity Ltd.
- B. Ground Rods: Stainless- steel, sectional type; 3/4 inch by 10 feet (19 mm by 3 m) in diameter.

## 2.06 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with requirements for identification products in Section 270553 "Identification for Communications Systems."

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine the ac grounding electrode system and equipment grounding for compliance with requirements for maximum ground-resistance level and other conditions affecting performance of grounding and bonding of the electrical system.
- B. Inspect the test results of the ac grounding system measured at the point of BCT connection.

- C. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
- D. Proceed with connection of the BCT only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.02 INSTALLATION**

- A. Bonding shall include the ac utility power service entrance, the communications cable entrance, and the grounding electrode system. The bonding of these elements shall form a loop so that each element is connected to at least two others.
- B. Comply with NECA 1.
- C. Comply with TIA-607-B.

### **3.03 APPLICATION**

- A. Conductors: Install solid conductor for No. 8 AWG and smaller and stranded conductors for No. 6 AWG and larger unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. The bonding conductors between the TGB and structural steel of steel-frame buildings shall not be smaller than No. 6 AWG.
  - 2. The bonding conductors between the TMGB and structural steel of steel-frame buildings shall not be smaller than No. 6 AWG.
- B. Conductor Terminations and Connections:
  - 1. Pipe and Equipment Grounding Conductor Terminations: Bolted connectors.
  - 2. Underground Connections: Welded connectors except at test wells and as otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Connections to Ground Rods at Test Wells: Bolted connectors.
  - 4. Connections to Structural Steel: Welded connectors.
- C. Conductor Support:
  - 1. Secure grounding and bonding conductors at intervals of not less than 36 inches (900 mm).
- D. Grounding and Bonding Conductors:
  - 1. Install in the straightest and shortest route between the origination and termination point, and no longer than required. The bend radius shall not be smaller than eight times the diameter of the conductor. No one bend may exceed 90 degrees.
  - 2. Install without splices.
  - 3. Support at not more than 36-inch (900-mm) intervals.
  - 4. Install grounding and bonding conductors in 3/4-inch (21-mm) PVC conduit until conduit enters a telecommunications room. The grounding and bonding conductor pathway through a plenum shall be in EMT. Conductors shall not be installed in EMT unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. If a grounding and bonding conductor is installed in ferrous metallic conduit, bond the conductor to the conduit using a grounding bushing that complies with requirements in Section 270528 "Pathways for Communications Systems," and bond both ends of the conduit to a TGB.

### **3.04 GROUNDING ELECTRODE SYSTEM**

- A. The BCT between the TMGB and the ac service equipment ground shall not be smaller than No. 1/0 AWG.

### **3.05 GROUNDING BUSBARS**

- A. Indicate locations of grounding busbars on Drawings. Install busbars horizontally, on insulated spacers 2 inches (50 mm) minimum from wall, 12 inches (300 mm) above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Where indicated on both sides of doorways, route bus up to top of door frame, across top of doorway, and down; connect to horizontal bus.

### 3.06 CONNECTIONS

- A. Bond metallic equipment in a telecommunications equipment room to the grounding busbar in that room, using equipment grounding conductors not smaller than No. 6 AWG.
- B. Stacking of conductors under a single bolt is not permitted when connecting to busbars.
- C. Assemble the wire connector to the conductor, complying with manufacturer's written instructions and as follows:
  - 1. Use crimping tool and the die specific to the connector.
  - 2. Pretwist the conductor.
  - 3. Apply an antioxidant compound to all bolted and compression connections.
- D. Primary Protector: Bond to the TMGB with insulated bonding conductor.
- E. Interconnections: Interconnect all TGBs with the TMGB with the telecommunications backbone conductor. If more than one TMGB is installed, interconnect TMGBs using the grounding equalizer conductor. The telecommunications backbone conductor and grounding equalizer conductor size shall not be less than 2 kcmils/linear foot (1 sq. mm/linear meter) of conductor length, up to a maximum size of No. 3/0 AWG unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Telecommunications Enclosures and Equipment Racks: Bond metallic components of enclosures to the telecommunications bonding and grounding system. Install top-mounted rack grounding busbar unless the enclosure and rack are manufactured with the busbar. Bond the equipment grounding busbar to the TGB No. 2 AWG bonding conductors.
- G. Structural Steel: Where the structural steel of a steel frame building is readily accessible within the room or space, bond each TGB and TMGB to the vertical steel of the building frame.
- H. Electrical Power Panelboards: Where an electrical panelboard for telecommunications equipment is located in the same room or space, bond each TGB to the ground bar of the panelboard.
- I. Shielded Cable: Bond the shield of shielded cable to the TGB in communications rooms and spaces. Comply with TIA-568-C.1 and TIA-568-C.2 when grounding shielded balanced twisted-pair cables.
- J. Rack- and Cabinet-Mounted Equipment: Bond powered equipment chassis to the cabinet or rack grounding bar. Power connection shall comply with NFPA 70; the equipment grounding conductor in the power cord of cord- and plug-connected equipment shall be considered as a supplement to bonding requirements in this Section.
- K. Access Floors: Bond all metal parts of access floors to the TGB.

### 3.07 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Labels shall be preprinted or computer-printed type.
  - 1. Label TMGB(s) with "fs-TMGB," where "fs" is the telecommunications space identifier for the space containing the TMGB.
  - 2. Label TGB(s) with "fs-TGB," where "fs" is the telecommunications space identifier for the space containing the TGB.
  - 3. Label the BCT and each telecommunications backbone conductor at its attachment point: "WARNING! TELECOMMUNICATIONS BONDING CONDUCTOR. DO NOT REMOVE OR DISCONNECT!"

### 3.08 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Inspect physical and mechanical condition. Verify tightness of accessible, bolted, electrical connections with a calibrated torque wrench according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 2. Test the bonding connections of the system using an ac earth ground-resistance tester, taking two-point bonding measurements in each telecommunications equipment room

containing a TMGB and a TGB and using the process recommended by BICSI TDMM. Conduct tests with the facility in operation.

- a. Measure the resistance between the busbar and the nearest available grounding electrode. The maximum acceptable value of this bonding resistance is 100 milliohms.
3. Test for ground loop currents using a digital clamp-on ammeter, with a full-scale of not more than 10 A, displaying current in increments of 0.01 A at an accuracy of plus/minus 2.0 percent.
    - a. With the grounding infrastructure completed and the communications system electronics operating, measure the current in every conductor connected to the TMGB and in each TGB. Maximum acceptable ac current level is 1 A.
- C. Excessive Ground Resistance: If resistance to ground at the BCT exceeds 5 ohms, notify Architect promptly and include recommendations to reduce ground resistance.
  - D. Grounding system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
  - E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

**END OF SECTION 27 05 26**

**SECTION 27 05 28  
PATHWAYS FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Metal conduits and fittings.
  - 2. Nonmetallic conduits and fittings.
  - 3. Optical-fiber-cable pathways and fittings.
  - 4. Metal wireways and auxiliary gutters.
  - 5. Nonmetallic wireways and auxiliary gutters.
  - 6. Metallic surface pathways.
  - 7. Nonmetallic surface pathways.
  - 8. Tele-power poles.
  - 9. Hooks.
  - 10. Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets.
  - 11. Polymer-concrete handholes and boxes for exterior underground cabling.
  - 12. Fiberglass handholes and boxes for exterior underground cabling.

**1.03 DEFINITIONS**

- A. ARC: Aluminum rigid conduit.
- B. GRC: Galvanized rigid conduit.
- C. IMC: Intermediate metal conduit.
- D. RTRC: Reinforced thermosetting resin conduit.

**1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product data for the following:
  - 1. Surface pathways
  - 2. Wireways and fittings.
  - 3. Tele-power poles.
  - 4. Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets.
  - 5. Underground handholes and boxes.

**1.05 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Coordination Drawings: Pathway routing plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of items involved:
  - 1. Structural members in paths of pathway groups with common supports.
  - 2. HVAC and plumbing items and architectural features in paths of conduit groups with common supports.
  - 3. Underground ducts, piping, and structures in location of underground enclosures and handholes.
- B. Qualification Data: For professional engineer.
- C. Source quality-control reports.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 METAL CONDUITS AND FITTINGS**

- A. Description: Metal raceway of circular cross section with manufacturer-fabricated fittings.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1. AFC Cable Systems; Atkore International.



2. Allied Tube & Conduit; Atkore International.
  3. Southwire Company.
  4. Wheatland Tube; Zekelman Industries.
- C. General Requirements for Metal Conduits and Fittings:
1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a nationally recognized testing laboratory, and marked for intended location and application.
  2. Comply with TIA-569-D.
- D. GRC: Comply with ANSI C80.1 and UL 6.
- E. ARC: Comply with ANSI C80.5 and UL 6A.
- F. IMC: Comply with ANSI C80.6 and UL 1242.
- G. PVC-Coated Steel Conduit: PVC-coated IMC.
1. Comply with NEMA RN 1.
  2. Coating Thickness: 0.040 inch (1 mm), minimum.
- H. EMT: Comply with ANSI C80.3 and UL 797.
- I. Fittings for Metal Conduit: Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 514B.
1. Conduit Fittings for Hazardous (Classified) Locations: Comply with UL 1203 and NFPA 70.
  2. Fittings for EMT:
    - a. Material: Steel.
    - b. Type: compression.
  3. Expansion Fittings: PVC or steel to match conduit type, complying with UL-467, rated for environmental conditions where installed, and including flexible external bonding jumper.
  4. Coating for Fittings for PVC-Coated Conduit: Minimum thickness of 0.040 inch (1 mm), with overlapping sleeves protecting threaded joints.
- J. Joint Compound for IMC, GRC, or ARC: Approved, as defined in NFPA 70, by authorities having jurisdiction for use in conduit assemblies, and compounded for use to lubricate and protect threaded conduit joints from corrosion and to enhance their conductivity.

## **2.02 OPTICAL-FIBER-CABLE PATHWAYS AND FITTINGS**

- A. Description: Comply with UL 2024; flexible-type pathway with a circular cross section, approved for plenum installation unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
1. Alpha Wire.
  2. Dura-Line.
  3. Endot Industries Inc.
- C. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for intended location and application.
- D. Comply with TIA-569-D.

## **2.03 METAL WIREWAYS AND AUXILIARY GUTTERS**

- A. Description: Sheet metal trough of rectangular cross section fabricated to required size and shape, without holes or knockouts, and with hinged or removable covers.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
1. B-line; Eaton, Electrical Sector.
  2. Hoffman; nVent.
  3. MonoSystems, Inc.
  4. Square D; Schneider Electric USA.
- C. General Requirements for Metal Wireways and Auxiliary Gutters:
1. Comply with UL 870 and NEMA 250, Type 1 unless otherwise indicated, and sized according to NFPA 70.

2. Metal wireways installed outdoors shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for intended location and application.
3. Comply with TIA-569-D.
- D. Fittings and Accessories: Include covers, couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings to match and mate with wireways as required for complete system.
- E. Wireway Covers: Hinged type unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Finish: Manufacturer's standard enamel finish.

#### **2.04 SURFACE METAL PATHWAYS**

- A. Description: Galvanized steel with snap-on covers, complying with UL 5.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  1. MonoSystems, Inc.
  2. Niedax Inc.
  3. Panduit Corp.
  4. Wiremold; Legrand North America, LLC.
- C. Finish: Prime coated, ready for field painting.
- D. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for intended location and application.
- E. Comply with TIA-569-D.

#### **2.05 BOXES, ENCLOSURES, AND CABINETS**

- A. Description: Enclosures for communications.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  1. Crouse-Hinds; Eaton, Electrical Sector.
  2. Erickson Electrical Equipment Company.
  3. MonoSystems, Inc.
  4. Wiremold; Legrand North America, LLC.
- C. General Requirements for Boxes, Enclosures, and Cabinets:
  1. Comply with TIA-569-D.
  2. Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets installed in wet locations shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for use in wet locations.
  3. Box extensions used to accommodate new building finishes shall be of same material as recessed box.
  4. Device Box Dimensions: 4 inches square by 2-1/8 inches deep (100 mm square by 60 mm deep).
  5. Gangable boxes are allowed.
- D. Sheet Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 1 and UL 514A.
- E. Cast-Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1, ferrous alloy, Type FD, with gasketed cover.
- F. Metal Floor Boxes:
  1. Material: Cast metal or sheet metal.
  2. Type: Fully adjustable.
  3. Shape: Rectangular.
  4. Metal floor boxes shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- G. Small Sheet Metal Pull and Junction Boxes: NEMA OS 1.
- H. Cast-Metal Access, Pull, and Junction Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 1773, cast aluminum with gasketed cover.

- I. Hinged-Cover Enclosures: Comply with UL 50 and NEMA 250, Type 1, with continuous-hinge cover with flush latch unless otherwise indicated.
  1. Metal Enclosures: Steel, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
  2. Interior Panels: Steel; all sides finished with manufacturer's standard enamel.
- J. Cabinets:
  1. NEMA 250, Type 1 galvanized-steel box with removable interior panel and removable front, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
  2. Hinged door in front cover with flush latch and concealed hinge.
  3. Key latch to match panelboards.
  4. Metal barriers to separate wiring of different systems and voltage.
  5. Accessory feet where required for freestanding equipment.
  6. Nonmetallic cabinets shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 PATHWAY APPLICATION**

- A. Indoors: Apply pathway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated:
  1. Exposed, Not Subject to Physical Damage: EMT.
  2. Exposed, Not Subject to Severe Physical Damage: EMT.
  3. Exposed and Subject to Severe Physical Damage: IMC. Pathway locations include the following:
    - a. Loading dock.
    - b. Corridors used for traffic of mechanized carts, forklifts, and pallet-handling units.
    - c. Mechanical rooms.
    - d. Gymnasiums
  4. Concealed in Ceilings and Interior Walls and Partitions: EMT.
  5. Damp or Wet Locations: IMC.
  6. Pathways for Optical-Fiber or Communications Cable in Spaces Used for Environmental Air: EMT.
  7. Pathways for Optical-Fiber or Communications-Cable Risers in Vertical Shafts: EMT.
  8. Pathways for Concealed General-Purpose Distribution of Optical-Fiber or Communications Cable: EMT.
  9. Boxes and Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1, except use NEMA 250, Type 4 stainless steel units in institutional and commercial kitchens and damp or wet locations.
- B. Minimum Pathway Size: 3/4-inch (21-mm) trade size for copper and aluminum cables, and 1 inch (25 mm) for optical-fiber cables.
- C. Pathway Fittings: Compatible with pathways and suitable for use and location.
  1. Rigid and Intermediate Steel Conduit: Use threaded rigid steel conduit fittings unless otherwise indicated. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
  2. PVC Externally Coated, Rigid Steel Conduits: Use only fittings listed for use with this type of conduit. Patch and seal all joints, nicks, and scrapes in PVC coating after installing conduits and fittings. Use sealant recommended by fitting manufacturer and apply in thickness and number of coats recommended by manufacturer.
  3. EMT: Use compression, steel fittings. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
- D. Do not install aluminum conduits, boxes, or fittings in contact with concrete or earth.

### **3.02 INSTALLATION**

- A. Comply with the following standards for installation requirements except where requirements on Drawings or in this Section are stricter:
  1. NECA 1.
  2. NECA/BICSI 568.
  3. TIA-569-D.
  4. NECA 101

5. NECA 102.
  6. NECA 105.
  7. NECA 111.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70 limitations for types of pathways allowed in specific occupancies and number of floors.
  - C. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping materials and installation for penetrations through fire-rated walls, ceilings, and assemblies.
  - D. Comply with requirements in Section 270529 "Hangers and Supports for Communications Systems" for hangers and supports.
  - E. Comply with requirements in Section 270544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Communications Pathways and Cabling" for sleeves and sleeve seals for communications.
  - F. Keep pathways at least 6 inches (150 mm) away from parallel runs of flues and steam or hot-water pipes. Install horizontal pathway runs above water and steam piping.
  - G. Complete pathway installation before starting conductor installation.
  - H. Arrange stub-ups so curved portions of bends are not visible above finished slab.
  - I. Install no more than the equivalent of two 90-degree bends in any pathway run. Support within 12 inches (300 mm) of changes in direction. Utilize long radius ells for all optical-fiber cables.
  - J. Conceal rigid conduit within finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated. Install conduits parallel or perpendicular to building lines.
  - K. Support conduit within 12 inches (300 mm) of enclosures to which attached.
  - L. Stub-ups to Above Recessed Ceilings:
    1. Use EMT, IMC, or RMC for pathways.
    2. Use a conduit bushing or insulated fitting to terminate stub-ups not terminated in hubs or in an enclosure.
  - M. Threaded Conduit Joints, Exposed to Wet, Damp, Corrosive, or Outdoor Conditions: Apply listed compound to threads of pathway and fittings before making up joints. Follow compound manufacturer's written instructions.
  - N. Coat field-cut threads on PVC-coated pathway with a corrosion-preventing conductive compound prior to assembly.
  - O. Terminate threaded conduits into threaded hubs or with locknuts on inside and outside of boxes or cabinets. Install insulated bushings on conduits terminated with locknuts.
  - P. Install pathways square to the enclosure and terminate at enclosures with locknuts. Install locknuts hand tight plus one additional quarter-turn.
  - Q. Do not rely on locknuts to penetrate nonconductive coatings on enclosures. Remove coatings in the locknut area prior to assembling conduit to enclosure, to assure a continuous ground path.
  - R. Cut conduit perpendicular to the length. For conduits of 2-inch (50-mm) trade size and larger, use roll cutter or a guide to ensure cut is straight and perpendicular to the length.
  - S. Install pull wires in empty pathways. Use polypropylene or monofilament plastic line with not less than 200-lb (90-kg) tensile strength. Leave at least 12 inches (300 mm) of slack at each end of pull wire. Secure pull wire, so it cannot fall into conduit. Cap pathways designated as spare alongside pathways in use.
  - T. Surface Pathways:
    1. Install surface pathway for surface telecommunications outlet boxes only where indicated on Drawings.
    2. Install surface pathway with a minimum 2-inch (50-mm) radius control at bend points.
    3. Secure surface pathway with screws or other anchor-type devices at intervals not exceeding 48 inches (1200 mm) and with no less than two supports per straight pathway section. Support surface pathway according to manufacturer's written instructions. Tape

and glue are not acceptable support methods.

- U. Pathways for Optical-Fiber and Communications Cable: Install pathways, metal and nonmetallic, rigid and flexible, as follows:
  - 1. 3/4-Inch (21-mm) Trade Size and Smaller: Install pathways in maximum lengths of 50 feet (15 m).
  - 2. 1-Inch (25-mm) Trade Size and Larger: Install pathways in maximum lengths of 75 feet (23 m).
  - 3. Install with a maximum of two 90-degree bends or equivalent for each length of pathway unless Drawings show stricter requirements. Separate lengths with pull or junction boxes or terminations at distribution frames or cabinets where necessary to comply with these requirements.
- V. Install pathway-sealing fittings at accessible locations according to NFPA 70 and fill them with listed sealing compound. For concealed pathways, install each fitting in a flush steel box with a blank cover plate having a finish similar to that of adjacent plates or surfaces. Install pathway-sealing fittings according to NFPA 70.
- W. Install devices to seal pathway interiors at accessible locations. Locate seals, so no fittings or boxes are between the seal and the following changes of environments. Seal the interior of all pathways at the following points:
  - 1. Where conduits pass from warm to cold locations, such as boundaries of refrigerated spaces.
  - 2. Where an underground service pathway enters a building or structure.
  - 3. Where otherwise required by NFPA 70.
- X. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for solvent welding PVC conduit and fittings.
- Y. Expansion-Joint Fittings:
  - 1. Install in each run of aboveground RNC that is located where environmental temperature change may exceed 30 deg F (17 deg C), and that has straight-run length that exceeds 25 feet (7.6 m). Install in each run of aboveground RMC and EMT that is located where environmental temperature change may exceed 100 deg F (55 deg C), and that has straight-run length that exceeds 100 feet (30 m).
  - 2. Install type and quantity of fittings that accommodate temperature change listed for each of the following locations:
    - a. Outdoor Locations Not Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 125 deg F (70 deg C) temperature change.
    - b. Outdoor Locations Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 155 deg F (86 deg C) temperature change.
    - c. Indoor Spaces Connected with Outdoors without Physical Separation: 125 deg F (70 deg C) temperature change.
    - d. Attics: 135 deg F (75 deg C) temperature change.
  - 3. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.00041 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F (0.06 mm per meter of length of straight run per deg C) of temperature change for PVC conduits. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.00078 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F (0.0115 mm per meter of length of straight run per deg C) of temperature change for metal conduits.
  - 4. Install expansion fittings at all locations where conduits cross building or structure expansion joints.
  - 5. Install each expansion-joint fitting with position, mounting, and piston setting selected according to manufacturer's written instructions for conditions at specific location at time of installation. Install conduit supports to allow for expansion movement.
- Z. Hooks:
  - 1. Size to allow a minimum of 25 percent future capacity without exceeding design capacity limits.
  - 2. Shall be supported by dedicated support wires. Do not use ceiling grid support wire or support rods.

3. Hook spacing shall allow no more than 6 inches (150 mm) of slack. The lowest point of the cables shall be no less than 6 inches (150 mm) adjacent to ceilings, mechanical ductwork and fittings, luminaires, power conduits, power and telecommunications outlets, and other electrical and communications equipment.
  4. Space hooks no more than 5 feet (1.5 m) o.c.
  5. Provide a hook at each change in direction.
- AA. Mount boxes at heights indicated on Drawings. If mounting heights of boxes are not individually indicated, give priority to ADA requirements. Install boxes with height measured to center of box unless otherwise indicated.
- BB. Recessed Boxes in Masonry Walls: Saw-cut opening for box in center of cell of masonry block, and install box flush with surface of wall. Prepare block surface to provide a flat surface for a raintight connection between box and cover plate or supported equipment and box.
- CC. Horizontally separate boxes mounted on opposite sides of walls, so they are not in the same vertical channel.
- DD. Support boxes of three gangs or more from more than one side by spanning two framing members or mounting on brackets specifically designed for the purpose.
- EE. Fasten junction and pull boxes to or support from building structure. Do not support boxes by conduits.
- FF. Set metal floor boxes level and flush with finished floor surface.
- GG. Set nonmetallic floor boxes level. Trim after installation to fit flush with finished floor surface.

### **3.03 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION FOR COMMUNICATIONS PENETRATIONS**

- A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 270544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Communications Pathways and Cabling."

### **3.04 FIRESTOPPING**

- A. Install firestopping at penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

### **3.05 PROTECTION**

- A. Protect coatings, finishes, and cabinets from damage or deterioration.
  1. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer.
  2. Repair damage to PVC coatings or paint finishes with matching touchup coating recommended by manufacturer.

**END OF SECTION 27 05 28**

This page intentionally left blank

**SECTION 27 05 29  
HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
1. Steel slotted support systems for communication raceways.
  2. Aluminum slotted support systems for communication raceways.
  3. Nonmetallic slotted support systems for communication raceways.
  4. Conduit and cable support devices.
  5. Support for conductors in vertical conduit.
  6. Structural steel for fabricated supports and restraints.
  7. Mounting, anchoring, and attachment components, including powder-actuated fasteners, mechanical expansion anchors, concrete inserts, clamps, through bolts, toggle bolts, and hanger rods.
  8. Fabricated metal equipment support assemblies.

**1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for the following:
    - a. Slotted support systems, hardware, and accessories.
    - b. Clamps.
    - c. Hangers.
    - d. Sockets.
    - e. Eye nuts.
    - f. Fasteners.
    - g. Anchors.
    - h. Saddles.
    - i. Brackets.
  2. Include rated capacities and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: For fabrication and installation details for communications hangers and support systems.
1. Trapeze hangers. Include product data for components.
  2. Steel slotted-channel systems.
  3. Aluminum slotted-channel systems.
  4. Nonmetallic slotted-channel systems.
  5. Equipment supports.
  6. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication, including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For hangers and supports for communications systems.
1. Include design calculations and details of trapeze hangers.

**1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plan(s) and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
1. Suspended ceiling components.
  2. Ductwork, piping, fittings, and supports.
  3. Structural members to which hangers and supports will be attached.



4. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
5. Items penetrating finished ceiling, including the following:
  - a. Luminaires.
  - b. Air outlets and inlets.
  - c. Speakers.
  - d. Sprinklers.
  - e. Access panels.
  - f. Projectors.

B. Welding certificates.

### **1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
  2. AWS D1.2/D1.2M.

### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design hanger and support system.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
1. Flame Rating: Class 1.
  2. Self-extinguishing according to ASTM D635.

#### **2.02 SUPPORT, ANCHORAGE, AND ATTACHMENT COMPONENTS**

- A. Steel Slotted Support Systems: Preformed steel channels and angles with minimum 13/32-inch- (10-mm-) diameter holes at a maximum of 8 inches (200 mm) o.c. in at least one surface.
1. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4 factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
  2. Material for Channel, Fittings, and Accessories: Galvanized steel.
  3. Channel Width: Selected for applicable load criteria.
  4. Metallic Coatings: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and applied according to MFMA-4.
  5. Nonmetallic Coatings: Manufacturer's standard PVC, polyurethane, or polyester coating applied according to MFMA-4.
  6. Painted Coatings: Manufacturer's standard painted coating applied according to MFMA-4.
  7. Protect finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
  8. Channel Dimensions: Selected for applicable load criteria.
- B. Aluminum Slotted Support Systems: Extruded aluminum channels and angles with minimum 13/32-inch- (10-mm-) diameter holes at a maximum of 8 inches (200 mm) o.c. in at least one surface.
1. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4 factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
  2. Channel Material: 6063-T6 aluminum alloy.
  3. Fittings and Accessories Material: 5052-H32 aluminum alloy.
  4. Channel Width: Selected for applicable load criteria.
  5. Nonmetallic Coatings: Manufacturer's standard PVC, polyurethane, or polyester coating applied according to MFMA-4.
  6. Painted Coatings: Manufacturer's standard painted coating applied according to MFMA-4.
  7. Protect finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
  8. Channel Dimensions: Selected for applicable load criteria.
- C. Conduit and Cable Support Devices: Steel clamps, hangers, and associated fittings, designed for types and sizes of raceway or cable to be supported.
- D. Support for Conductors in Vertical Conduit: Factory-fabricated assembly consisting of threaded body and insulating wedging plug or plugs for nonarmored communications conductors or

cables in riser conduits. Plugs shall have number, size, and shape of conductor gripping pieces as required to suit individual conductors or cables supported. Body shall be made of malleable iron.

- E. Structural Steel for Fabricated Supports and Restraints: ASTM A36/A36M steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- F. Mounting, Anchoring, and Attachment Components: Items for fastening electrical items or their supports to building surfaces include the following:
  - 1. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud for use in hardened portland cement concrete, steel, or wood, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
  - 2. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type [zinc-coated steel] [stainless steel] for use in hardened portland cement concrete, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
  - 3. Concrete Inserts: Steel or malleable-iron, slotted support system units are similar to MSS Type 18 units and comply with MFMA-4 or MSS SP-58.
  - 4. Clamps for Attachment to Steel Structural Elements: MSS SP-58 units are suitable for attached structural element.
  - 5. Through Bolts: Structural type, hex head, and high strength. Comply with ASTM F3125/F3125M, Grade A325 (Grade A325M).
  - 6. Toggle Bolts: All-steel springhead type.
  - 7. Hanger Rods: Threaded steel.

### 2.03 FABRICATED METAL EQUIPMENT SUPPORT ASSEMBLIES

- A. Description: Welded or bolted structural-steel shapes, shop or field fabricated to fit dimensions of supported equipment.
- B. Materials: Comply with requirements in Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for steel shapes and plates.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.01 APPLICATION

- A. Comply with the following standards for application and installation requirements of hangers and supports, except where requirements on Drawings or in this Section are stricter:
  - 1. NECA 1.
  - 2. NECA/BICSI 568.
  - 3. TIA-569-D.
  - 4. NECA 101.
  - 5. NECA 102.
- B. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping materials and installation for penetrations through fire-rated walls, ceilings, and assemblies.
- C. Comply with requirements for pathways specified in Section 270528 "Pathways for Communications Systems."
- D. Maximum Support Spacing and Minimum Hanger Rod Size for Raceway: Space supports for EMTs, IMCs, and RMCs as required by NFPA 70. Minimum rod size shall be 1/4 inch (6 mm) in diameter.
- E. Multiple Raceways or Cables: Install trapeze-type supports fabricated with steel slotted or other support system, sized so capacity can be increased by at least 25 percent in future without exceeding specified design load limits.
  - 1. Secure raceways and cables to these supports with two-bolt conduit clamps.
- F. Spring-steel clamps designed for supporting single conduits without bolts may be used for 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) and smaller raceways serving branch circuits and communication systems above suspended ceilings and for fastening raceways to trapeze supports.

### **3.02 SUPPORT INSTALLATION**

- A. Raceway Support Methods: In addition to methods described in NECA 1, EMT may be supported by openings through structure members, according to NFPA 70.
- B. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components, so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus 200 lb (90 kg).
- C. Mounting and Anchorage of Surface-Mounted Equipment and Components: Anchor and fasten communications items and their supports to building structural elements by the following methods unless otherwise indicated by code:
  - 1. To Wood: Fasten with lag screws or through bolts.
  - 2. To New Concrete: Bolt to concrete inserts.
  - 3. To Masonry: Use approved toggle-type bolts on hollow masonry units and expansion anchor fasteners on solid masonry units.
  - 4. To Existing Concrete: Use expansion anchor fasteners.
  - 5. Instead of expansion anchors, powder-actuated-driven threaded studs, provided with lock washers and nuts, may be used in existing standard-weight concrete 4 inches (100 mm) thick or greater. Do not use for anchorage to lightweight-aggregate concrete or for slabs less than 4 inches (100 mm) thick.
  - 6. To Steel: Welded threaded studs complying with AWS D1.1/D1.1M, with lock washers and nuts.
  - 7. To Light Steel: Sheet metal screws.
  - 8. Items Mounted on Hollow Walls and Nonstructural Building Surfaces: Mount cabinets, panelboards, disconnect switches, control enclosures, pull and junction boxes, transformers, and other devices on slotted-channel racks attached to substrate.
- D. Drill holes for expansion anchors in concrete at locations and to depths that avoid the need for reinforcing bars.

### **3.03 INSTALLATION OF FABRICATED METAL SUPPORTS**

- A. Comply with installation requirements in Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for site-fabricated metal supports.
- B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor communications materials and equipment.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

### **3.04 PAINTING**

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
  - 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils (0.05 mm).
- B. Touchup: Comply with requirements in Section 099123 "Interior Painting" for cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal.
- C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas, and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A780.

**END OF SECTION 27 05 29**

**SECTION 27 05 53  
IDENTIFICATION FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS**

**RELATED DOCUMENTS**

**1.01 DRAWINGS AND GENERAL PROVISIONS OF THE CONTRACT, INCLUDING GENERAL AND SUPPLEMENTARY CONDITIONS AND DIVISION 01 SPECIFICATION SECTIONS, APPLY TO THIS SECTION.**

**SUMMARY**

**2.01 SECTION INCLUDES:**

- A. Underground-line warning tape.
- B. Signs.
- C. Bands and tubes.
- D. Cable ties.
- E. Miscellaneous identification products.
- F. Labels.

**ACTION SUBMITTALS**

**3.01 PRODUCT DATA: FOR EACH TYPE OF PRODUCT.**

- A. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for communications identification products.

**3.02 SAMPLES: FOR EACH TYPE OF LABEL AND SIGN TO ILLUSTRATE COMPOSITION, SIZE, COLORS, LETTERING STYLE, MOUNTING PROVISIONS, AND GRAPHIC FEATURES OF IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS.**

**3.03 IDENTIFICATION SCHEDULE:**

- A. Outlets: Scaled drawings indicating location and proposed designation.
- B. Backbone Cabling: Riser diagram showing each communications room, backbone cable, and proposed backbone cable designation.
- C. Racks: Scaled drawings indicating location and proposed designation.
- D. Patch Panels: Enlarged scaled drawings showing rack row, number, and proposed designations.

**PART 1 PRODUCTS**

**4.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

**4.02 COMPLY WITH NFPA 70 AND TIA 606-B.**

**4.03 COMPLY WITH ANSI Z535.4 FOR SAFETY SIGNS AND LABELS.**

**4.04 ADHESIVE-ATTACHED LABELING MATERIALS, INCLUDING LABEL STOCKS, LAMINATING ADHESIVES, AND INKS USED BY LABEL PRINTERS, SHALL COMPLY WITH UL 969.**

**4.05 THERMAL MOVEMENTS: ALLOW FOR THERMAL MOVEMENTS FROM AMBIENT AND SURFACE TEMPERATURE CHANGES.**

- A. Temperature Change: 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.

**COLOR AND LEGEND REQUIREMENTS**

**5.01 EQUIPMENT IDENTIFICATION LABELS:**

- A. Black letters on a white field.

## **LABELS**

**6.01 VINYL WRAPAROUND LABELS: PREPRINTED, FLEXIBLE LABELS LAMINATED WITH A CLEAR, WEATHER- AND CHEMICAL-RESISTANT COATING AND MATCHING WRAPAROUND CLEAR ADHESIVE TAPE FOR SECURING LABEL ENDS.**

**6.02 SNAP-AROUND LABELS: SLIT, PRETENSIONED, FLEXIBLE, PREPRINTED, COLOR-CODED ACRYLIC SLEEVES, WITH DIAMETERS SIZED TO SUIT DIAMETERS OF RACEWAY OR CABLE THEY IDENTIFY, THAT STAY IN PLACE BY GRIPPING ACTION.**

**6.03 SELF-ADHESIVE WRAPAROUND LABELS: PREPRINTED, 3-MIL- (0.08-MM-) THICK, VINYL FLEXIBLE LABELS WITH ACRYLIC PRESSURE-SENSITIVE ADHESIVE.**

A. Self-Lamination: Clear; UV-, weather- and chemical-resistant; self-laminating protective shields over the legend. Labels sized such that the clear shield overlaps the entire printed legend.

B. Marker for Labels:

1. Machine-printed, permanent, waterproof black ink recommended by printer manufacturer.

**6.04 SELF-ADHESIVE LABELS: VINYL, THERMAL, TRANSFER-PRINTED, 3-MIL- (0.08-MM-) THICK, MULTICOLOR, WEATHER- AND UV-RESISTANT, PRESSURE-SENSITIVE ADHESIVE LABELS, CONFIGURED FOR INTENDED USE AND LOCATION.**

A. Minimum Nominal Size:

1. 1-1/2 by 6 inches (37 by 150 mm) for raceway and conductors.
2. 3-1/2 by 5 inches (76 by 127 mm) for equipment.
3. As required by authorities having jurisdiction.

## **BANDS AND TUBES**

**7.01 SNAP-AROUND, COLOR-CODING BANDS: SLIT, PRETENSIONED, FLEXIBLE, SOLID-COLORED ACRYLIC SLEEVES, 2 INCHES (50 MM) LONG, WITH DIAMETERS SIZED TO SUIT DIAMETERS OF RACEWAY OR CABLE THEY IDENTIFY, THAT STAY IN PLACE BY GRIPPING ACTION.**

## **SIGNS**

### **8.01 BAKED-ENAMEL SIGNS:**

A. Preprinted aluminum signs, high-intensity reflective, punched or drilled for fasteners, with colors, legend, and size required for application.

B. 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) grommets in corners for mounting.

C. Nominal Size: 7 by 10 inches (180 by 250 mm).

### **8.02 METAL-BACKED BUTYRATE SIGNS:**

A. Weather-resistant, nonfading, preprinted, cellulose-acetate butyrate signs, with 0.0396-inch (1-mm) galvanized-steel backing, punched and drilled for fasteners, and with colors, legend, and size required for application.

B. 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) grommets in corners for mounting.

C. Nominal Size: 10 by 14 inches (250 by 360 mm).

### **8.03 LAMINATED-ACRYLIC OR MELAMINE-PLASTIC SIGNS:**

A. Engraved legend.

B. Thickness:

1. For signs up to 20 sq. in. (129 sq. cm), minimum 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick.
2. For signs larger than 20 sq. in. (129 sq. cm), 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick.
3. Engraved legend with black letters on white face.
4. Punched or drilled for mechanical fasteners with 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) grommets in corners for mounting.
5. Framed with mitered acrylic molding and arranged for attachment at applicable equipment.

**CABLE TIES**

**9.01 GENERAL-PURPOSE CABLE TIES: FUNGUS INERT, SELF-EXTINGUISHING, ONE PIECE, SELF-LOCKING, AND TYPE 6/6 NYLON.**

- A. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch (5 mm).
- B. Tensile Strength at 73 deg F (23 deg C) according to ASTM D638: 12,000 psi (82.7 MPa).
- C. Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 85 deg C).
- D. Color: Black, except where used for color-coding.

**9.02 UV-STABILIZED CABLE TIES: FUNGUS INERT, DESIGNED FOR CONTINUOUS EXPOSURE TO EXTERIOR SUNLIGHT, SELF-EXTINGUISHING, ONE PIECE, SELF-LOCKING, AND TYPE 6/6 NYLON.**

- A. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch (5 mm).
- B. Tensile Strength at 73 deg F (23 deg C) according to ASTM D638: 12,000 psi (82.7 MPa).
- C. Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 85 deg C).
- D. Color: Black.

**9.03 PLENUM-RATED CABLE TIES: SELF-EXTINGUISHING, UV STABILIZED, ONE PIECE, AND SELF-LOCKING.**

- A. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch (5 mm).
- B. Tensile Strength at 73 deg F (23 deg C) according to ASTM D638: 7000 psi (48.2 MPa).
- C. UL 94 Flame Rating: 94V-0.
- D. Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 284 deg F (Minus 46 to plus 140 deg C).
- E. Color: Black.

## **MISCELLANEOUS IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS**

**10.01 PAINT: COMPLY WITH REQUIREMENTS IN PAINTING SECTIONS FOR PAINT MATERIALS AND APPLICATION REQUIREMENTS. RETAIN PAINT SYSTEM APPLICABLE FOR SURFACE MATERIAL AND LOCATION (EXTERIOR OR INTERIOR).**

**10.02 FASTENERS FOR LABELS AND SIGNS: SELF-TAPPING, STAINLESS-STEEL SCREWS OR STAINLESS-STEEL MACHINE SCREWS WITH NUTS AND FLAT AND LOCK WASHERS.**

## **PART 2 EXECUTION**

### **11.01 PREPARATION**

**11.02 SELF-ADHESIVE IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS: BEFORE APPLYING COMMUNICATIONS IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS, CLEAN SUBSTRATES OF SUBSTANCES THAT COULD IMPAIR BOND, USING MATERIALS AND METHODS RECOMMENDED BY MANUFACTURER OF IDENTIFICATION PRODUCT.**

## **INSTALLATION**

**12.01 VERIFY AND COORDINATE IDENTIFICATION NAMES, ABBREVIATIONS, COLORS, AND OTHER FEATURES WITH REQUIREMENTS IN OTHER SECTIONS REQUIRING IDENTIFICATION APPLICATIONS, DRAWINGS, SHOP DRAWINGS, MANUFACTURER'S WIRING DIAGRAMS, AND OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL. USE CONSISTENT DESIGNATIONS THROUGHOUT PROJECT.**

**12.02 INSTALL IDENTIFYING DEVICES BEFORE INSTALLING ACOUSTICAL CEILINGS AND SIMILAR CONCEALMENT.**

**12.03 VERIFY IDENTITY OF EACH ITEM BEFORE INSTALLING IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS.**

**12.04 COORDINATE IDENTIFICATION WITH PROJECT DRAWINGS, MANUFACTURER'S WIRING DIAGRAMS, AND OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL.**

**12.05 APPLY IDENTIFICATION DEVICES TO SURFACES THAT REQUIRE FINISH AFTER COMPLETING FINISH WORK.**

**12.06 INSTALL SIGNS WITH APPROVED LEGEND TO FACILITATE PROPER IDENTIFICATION, OPERATION, AND MAINTENANCE OF COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS AND CONNECTED ITEMS.**

**12.07 ELEVATED COMPONENTS: INCREASE SIZES OF LABELS, SIGNS, AND LETTERS TO THOSE APPROPRIATE FOR VIEWING FROM THE FLOOR.**

### **12.08 VINYL WRAPAROUND LABELS:**

- A. Secure tight to surface of raceway or cable at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
- B. Attach labels that are not self-adhesive type with clear vinyl tape, with adhesive appropriate to the location and substrate.
- C. Provide label 6 inches (150 mm) from cable end.

### **12.09 SNAP-AROUND LABELS:**

- A. Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
- B. Provide label 6 inches (150 mm) from cable end.

### **12.10 SELF-ADHESIVE WRAPAROUND LABELS:**

- A. Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
- B. Provide label 6 inches (150 mm) from cable end.

### **12.11 SELF-ADHESIVE LABELS:**

- A. On each item, install unique designation label that is consistent with wiring diagrams, schedules, and operation and maintenance manual.
- B. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) high letters on 1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-) high label; where two lines of text are required, use labels 2 inches (50 mm) high.

**12.12 SNAP-AROUND, COLOR-CODING BANDS: SECURE TIGHT TO SURFACE AT A LOCATION WITH HIGH VISIBILITY AND ACCESSIBILITY.**

**12.13 UNDERGROUND-LINE WARNING TAPE:**

- A. During backfilling of trenches, install continuous underground-line warning tape directly above cable or raceway at 6 to 8 inches (150 to 200 mm) below finished grade. Use multiple tapes where width of multiple lines installed in a common trench exceeds 16 inches (400 mm) overall.
- B. Limit use of underground-line warning tape to direct-buried cables.
- C. Install underground-line warning tape for direct-buried cables and cables in raceways.

**12.14 CABLE TIES: GENERAL PURPOSE, EXCEPT AS LISTED BELOW:**

- A. Outdoors: UV-stabilized nylon.
- B. In Spaces Handling Environmental Air: Plenum rated.

**IDENTIFICATION SCHEDULE**

**13.01 INSTALL IDENTIFICATION MATERIALS AND DEVICES AT LOCATIONS FOR MOST CONVENIENT VIEWING WITHOUT INTERFERENCE WITH OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE OF EQUIPMENT. INSTALL ACCESS DOORS OR PANELS TO PROVIDE VIEW OF IDENTIFYING DEVICES.**

**13.02 IDENTIFY CONDUCTORS, CABLES, AND TERMINALS IN ENCLOSURES AND AT JUNCTIONS, TERMINALS, PULL POINTS, AND LOCATIONS WITH HIGH VISIBILITY. IDENTIFY BY SYSTEM AND CIRCUIT DESIGNATION.**

**13.03 ACCESSIBLE FITTINGS FOR RACEWAYS AND CABLES WITHIN BUILDINGS: IDENTIFY COVERS OF EACH JUNCTION AND PULL BOX WITH SELF-ADHESIVE LABELS CONTAINING WIRING SYSTEM LEGEND.**

- A. System legends shall be as follows:
  - 1. Telecommunications.

**13.04 FACEPLATES: LABEL INDIVIDUAL FACEPLATES WITH SELF-ADHESIVE LABELS. PLACE LABEL AT TOP OF FACEPLATE. EACH FACEPLATE SHALL BE LABELED WITH ITS INDIVIDUAL, SEQUENTIAL DESIGNATION, NUMBERED CLOCKWISE WHEN ENTERING ROOM FROM PRIMARY EGRESS, COMPOSED OF THE FOLLOWING, IN THE ORDER LISTED:**

- A. Wiring closet designation.
- B. Colon.
- C. Faceplate number.

**13.05 EQUIPMENT ROOM LABELING:**

- A. Racks, Frames, and Enclosures: Identify front and rear of each with self-adhesive labels containing equipment designation.
- B. Patch Panels: Label individual rows in each rack, starting at top and working down, with self-adhesive labels.
- C. Data Outlets: Label each outlet with a self-adhesive label indicating the following, in the order listed:
  - 1. Room number being served.
  - 2. Colon.
  - 3. Faceplate number.



**13.06 BACKBONE CABLES: LABEL EACH CABLE WITH A VINYL-WRAPAROUND LABEL INDICATING THE LOCATION OF THE FAR OR OTHER END OF THE BACKBONE CABLE. PATCH PANEL OR PUNCH DOWN BLOCK WHERE CABLE IS TERMINATED SHOULD BE LABELED IDENTICALLY.**

**13.07 HORIZONTAL CABLES: LABEL EACH CABLE WITH A VINYL-WRAPAROUND LABEL INDICATING THE FOLLOWING, IN THE ORDER LISTED:**

- A. Room number.
- B. Colon.
- C. Faceplate number.

**13.08 LOCATIONS OF UNDERGROUND LINES: UNDERGROUND-LINE WARNING TAPE FOR COPPER, COAXIAL, HYBRID COPPER/FIBER, AND OPTICAL-FIBER CABLE.**

**13.09 INSTRUCTIONAL SIGNS: SELF-ADHESIVE LABELS.**

**13.10 WARNING LABELS FOR INDOOR CABINETS, BOXES, AND ENCLOSURES: BAKED-ENAMEL WARNING SIGNS.**

- A. Apply to exterior of door, cover, or other access.

**13.11 EQUIPMENT IDENTIFICATION LABELS:**

- A. Indoor Equipment: Baked-enamel signs.
- B. Outdoor Equipment: Laminated-acrylic or melamine-plastic sign.
- C. Equipment to Be Labeled:
  - 1. Communications cabinets.
  - 2. Uninterruptible power supplies.
  - 3. Computer room air conditioners.
  - 4. Fire-alarm and suppression equipment.
  - 5. Egress points.
  - 6. Power distribution components.

**END OF SECTION 27 05 53**

**SECTION 27 11 00  
COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT ROOM FITTINGS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Backboards.
  - 2. Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets.
  - 3. Power strips.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 271313 "Communications Copper Backbone Cabling" for copper data cabling associated with system panels and devices.
  - 2. Section 271513 "Communications Copper Horizontal Cabling" for copper data cabling associated with system panels and devices.

**1.03 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Access Provider: An operator that provides a circuit path or facility between the service provider and user. An access provider can also be a service provider.
- B. BICSI: Building Industry Consulting Service International.
- C. RCDD: Registered communications distribution designer.
- D. Service Provider: The operator of a telecommunications transmission service delivered through access provider facilities.
- E. TGB: Telecommunications grounding bus bar.
- F. TMGB: Telecommunications main grounding bus bar.

**1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for equipment racks and cabinets.
  - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: For communications equipment room fittings. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - 1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - 2. Equipment Racks and Cabinets: Include workspace requirements and access for cable connections.
  - 3. Grounding: Indicate location of grounding bus bar and its mounting detail showing standoff insulators and wall mounting brackets.

**1.05 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer, qualified layout technician, installation supervisor, and field inspector.

**1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Installer Qualifications: Cabling installer must have personnel certified by BICSI on staff.
  - 1. Layout Responsibility: Preparation of Shop Drawings shall be under direct supervision of RCDD.

2. Installation Supervision: Installation shall be under direct supervision of Installer 2, Copper or Fiber, who shall be present at all times when Work of this Section is performed at Project site.
3. Field Inspector: Currently registered by BICSI as RCDD to perform the on-site inspection.

## **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 BACKBOARDS**

- A. Backboards: Plywood, fire-retardant treated, 3/4 by 48 by 96 inches (19 by 1220 by 2440 mm).
- B. Backboard Paint: Light-colored fire-retardant paint.

### **2.02 BOXES, ENCLOSURES, AND CABINETS**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  1. Erickson Electrical Equipment Company.
  2. Wiremold; Legrand North America, LLC.
  3. Wiring Device-Kellems; Hubbell Incorporated, Commercial and Industrial.
- B. General Requirements for Boxes, Enclosures, and Cabinets: Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets shall be listed and labeled for intended location and use.
- C. Sheet Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 1 and UL 514A.
- D. Cast-Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1, Type FD, ferrous alloy, with gasketed cover.
- E. Small Sheet Metal Pull and Junction Boxes: NEMA OS 1.
- F. Cast-Metal Access, Pull, and Junction Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 1773, cast aluminum with gasketed cover.
- G. Box extensions used to accommodate new building finishes shall be of same material as recessed box.
- H. Device Box Dimensions: 4 inches square by 2-1/8 inches deep (100 mm square by 60 mm deep).
- I. Hinged-Cover Enclosures: Comply with UL 50 and NEMA 250, Type 1 with continuous-hinge cover with flush latch unless otherwise indicated.
  1. Metal Enclosures: Steel, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
  2. Interior Panels: Steel; all sides finished with manufacturer's standard enamel.
- J. Cabinets:
  1. NEMA 250, Type 1 galvanized-steel box with removable interior panel and removable front, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
  2. Hinged door in front cover with flush latch and concealed hinge.
  3. Key latch to match panelboards.
  4. Metal barriers to separate wiring of different systems and voltage.
  5. Accessory feet where required for freestanding equipment.
  6. Nonmetallic cabinets shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

### **2.03 POWER STRIPS**

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 271116 "Communications Racks, Frames, and Enclosures."
- B. Power Strips: Comply with UL 1363.
  1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
  2. Rack mounting, with detachable flanges.
  3. Height: 1 RU.
  4. Housing: Metal.
  5. Front-facing receptacles.

6. LED indicator lights for power and protection status.
7. LED indicator lights for reverse polarity and open outlet ground.
8. Circuit Breaker and Thermal Fusing: When protection is lost, circuit opens and cannot be reset.
9. Circuit Breaker and Thermal Fusing: Unit continues to supply power if protection is lost.
10. Cord connected with 15-foot (4.5-m) line cord.
11. Rocker-type on-off switch, illuminated when in on position.
12. Surge Protection: UL 1449, Type 3.
  - a. Maximum Surge Current, Line to Neutral: 27 kA.
  - b. Protection modes shall be line to neutral, line to ground, and neutral to ground.
  - c. UL 1449 Voltage Protection Rating for line to neutral and line to ground shall be 600 V and 500 V for neutral to ground.

### **PART 3 EXECUTION**

#### **3.01 ENTRANCE FACILITIES**

- A. Contact telecommunications service provider and arrange for installation of demarcation point, protected entrance terminals, and a housing when so directed by service provider.

#### **3.02 INSTALLATION**

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Comply with BICSI's "Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual" for layout of communications equipment spaces.
- C. Comply with BICSI's "Information Technology Systems Installation Methods Manual" for installation of equipment in communications equipment spaces.
- D. Bundle, lace, and train conductors and cables to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.
- E. Coordinate layout and installation of communications equipment in tracks and in room. Coordinate service entrance configuration with service provider.
  1. Meet jointly with systems providers, equipment suppliers, and Owner to exchange information and agree on details of equipment configurations and installation interfaces.
  2. Record agreements reached in meetings and distribute them to other participants.
  3. Adjust configurations and locations of distribution frames, cross-connects, and patch panels in equipment rooms to accommodate and optimize configurations and space requirements of communications equipment.
  4. Adjust configurations and locations of equipment with distribution frames, cross-connects, and patch panels of cabling systems of other communications, electronic safety and security, and related systems that share space in equipment room.
- F. Coordinate location of power raceways and receptacles with locations of communications equipment requiring electrical power to operate.
- G. Backboards:
  1. Install from 6 inches (150 mm) to 8 feet, 6 inches (2588 mm) above finished floor. If plywood is fire rated, ensure that fire-rating stamp is visible after installation.
  2. Paint all sides of backboard with two coats of paint, leaving fire rating stamp visible.
  3. Comply with requirements for backboard installation in BICSI's "Information Technology Systems Installation Methods Manual" and TIA-569-D.

#### **3.03 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE SEAL INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS**

- A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 270544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Communications Pathways and Cabling."

#### **3.04 FIRESTOPPING**

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."
- B. Comply with TIA-569-D, Annex A, "Firestopping."

- C. Comply with BICSI's "Information Technology Systems Installation Methods Manual,"  
"Firestopping Practices" Ch.

**END OF SECTION 27 11 00**

**SECTION 27 11 16**  
**COMMUNICATIONS RACKS, FRAMES, AND ENCLOSURES**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
1. 19-inch equipment racks.
  2. Open Rack equipment racks.
  3. Power strips.
  4. Grounding.
  5. Labeling.
- B. Related Requirements:
1. Section 271110 "Communications Equipment Room Fittings" for backboards and accessories.
  2. Section 270526 "Grounding and Bonding for Telecommunications Equipment" for TMGBs and TGBs.
  3. Section 271313 "Communications Copper Backbone Cabling" for copper data cabling associated with system panels and devices.
  4. Section 271513 "Communications Copper Horizontal Cabling" for copper data cabling associated with system panels and devices.

**1.03 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Access Provider: An operator that provides a circuit path or facility between the service provider and user. An access provider can also be a service provider.
- B. BICSI: Building Industry Consulting Service International.
- C. LAN: Local area network.
- D. RCDD: Registered communications distribution designer.
- E. Service Provider: The operator of a telecommunications transmission service delivered through access provider facilities.
- F. TGB: Telecommunications grounding bus bar.
- G. TMGB: Telecommunications main grounding bus bar.

**1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for equipment racks and cabinets.
  2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, certifications, standards compliance, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: For communications racks, frames, and enclosures. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  2. Equipment Racks and Cabinets: Include workspace requirements and access for cable connections.
  3. Grounding: Indicate location of TGB and its mounting detail showing standoff insulators and wall-mounting brackets.

### 1.05 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer, qualified layout technician, installation supervisor, and field inspector.

### 1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Cabling installer must have personnel certified by BICSI on staff.
  - 1. Layout Responsibility: Preparation of Shop Drawings shall be under direct supervision of RCDD.
  - 2. Installation Supervision: Installation shall be under direct supervision of Installer 2, Copper or Fiber, who shall be present at all times when Work of this Section is performed at Project site.
  - 3. Field Inspector: Currently registered by BICSI as RCDD to perform on-site inspection.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.01 UL LISTED.

- A. RoHS compliant.
- B. Compliant with requirements of the Payment Card Industry Data Security Standard.

### 2.02 BACKBOARDS

- A. Backboards: Plywood, fire-retardant treated, 3/4 by 48 by 96 inches (19 by 1220 by 2440 mm). Comply with requirements for plywood backing panels specified in Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry."

### 2.03 19-INCH EQUIPMENT RACKS

- A. Description: Two- post racks with threaded rails designed for mounting telecommunications equipment. Width is compatible with EIA/ECIA 310-E, 19-inch (482.6-mm) equipment mounting with an opening of 17.72-inches (450-mm) between rails.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1. Belden Inc.
  - 2. CommScope, Inc.
  - 3. Emerson Network Power Connectivity Solutions.
  - 4. Panduit Corp.
- C. General Requirements:
  - 1. Frames: Modular units designed for telecommunications terminal support and coordinated with dimensions of units to be supported.
  - 2. Material: Extruded steel.
  - 3. Finish: Manufacturer's standard, baked-polyester powder coat.
  - 4. Color: Black.
- D. Floor-Mounted Racks:
  - 1. Overall Height: 72 inches (1828.8 mm).
  - 2. Overall Depth: 23 inches (584.2 mm).
  - 3. Upright Depth: 3 inches (76.2 mm).
  - 4. Two-Post Load Rating: 200 lb (91 kg).
  - 5. Number of Rack Units per Rack: 45.
    - a. Numbering: Every rack units, on interior of rack.
  - 6. Threads: Universal square.
  - 7. Vertical and horizontal cable management channels, top and bottom cable troughs, grounding lug, and a power strip.
  - 8. Base shall have a minimum of four mounting holes for permanent attachment to floor.
  - 9. Top shall have provisions for attaching to cable tray or ceiling.
  - 10. Self-leveling.
- E. Wall-Mounted Racks:

1. Height: 18 inches (457.2 mm).
2. Depth: 23 inches (584.2 mm).
3. Load Rating: 150 lb (65 kg).
4. Number of Rack Units per Rack: 12.
5. Threads: 12-24.
6. Wall Attachment: Four mounting holes.
7. Equipment Access: Integral swing.

F. Cable Management:

1. Metal, with integral wire retaining fingers.
2. Baked-polyester powder coat finish.
3. Vertical cable management panels shall have front and rear channels, with covers.
4. Provide horizontal crossover cable manager at the top of each relay rack, with a minimum height of two rack units each.

## 2.04 OPEN RACK EQUIPMENT RACKS

- A. Description: Four-post racks with integral bus bars, equipment support, and dimensions meeting Open Rack Standard v1.2.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
1. Penguin Computing.
  2. Quanta Cloud Technology.
- C. General Requirements:
1. Frames: Four vertical columns, with perforated top and bottom.
  2. Support Shelves: Designed to support equipment 1 OpenU (48 mm) in height.
  3. Material:
    - a. Frames and Shelves: Extruded steel.
    - b. Bus Bars: Nickel plated copper, with silver over-plating.
  4. Finish:
    - a. Frames: Manufacturer's standard, baked-polyester powder coat.
    - b. Shelves: Hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A653/A653M.
  5. Color: Black.
  6. Height: 2100 mm.
  7. Width: 600 mm.
  8. Depth: 1607 mm.
  9. Base shall have a minimum of four mounting holes for permanent attachment to floor, and four casters to allow easy repositioning of rack.
  10. Top shall have provisions for attaching to cable tray or ceiling.
  11. Self-leveling.

## 2.05 POWER STRIPS

- A. Power Strips: Comply with UL 1363.
1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
  2. Rack mounting.
  3. 20-A, 120-V ac, NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R receptacles.
  4. LED indicator lights for power and protection status.
  5. LED indicator lights for reverse polarity and open outlet ground.
  6. Circuit Breaker and Thermal Fusing: When protection is lost, circuit opens and cannot be reset.
  7. Circuit Breaker and Thermal Fusing: Unit continues to supply power if protection is lost.
  8. Cord connected with 15-foot (4.5-m) line cord.
  9. Rocker-type on-off switch, illuminated when in on position.
  10. Peak Single-Impulse Surge Current Rating: 33 kA per phase.



11. Protection modes shall be line to neutral, line to ground, and neutral to ground. UL 1449 clamping voltage for all three modes shall be not more than 330 V.

## **2.06 GROUNDING**

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 270526 "Grounding and Bonding for Communications Systems" for grounding conductors and connectors.
- B. Rack and Cabinet TGBs: Rectangular bars of hard-drawn solid copper, accepting conductors ranging from No. 14 to No. 2/0 AWG, NRTL listed as complying with UL 467, and complying with TIA-606-B. Predrilling shall be with holes for use with lugs specified in this Section.
  1. Cabinet-Mounted TGB: Terminal block, with stainless-steel or copper-plated hardware for attachment to cabinet.
  2. Rack-Mounted Horizontal TGB: Designed for mounting in 19- or 23-inch (482.6- or 584.2- mm) equipment racks. Include a copper splice bar for transitioning to an adjoining rack, and stainless-steel or copper-plated hardware for attachment to the rack.
  3. Rack-Mounted Vertical TGB: 72 or 36 inches (1828.8 or 914.4 mm) long, with stainless-steel or copper-plated hardware for attachment to rack.

## **2.07 LABELING**

- A. Comply with TIA-606-B and UL 969 for a system of labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 INSTALLATION**

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Comply with BICSI TDMM for layout of communications equipment spaces.
- C. Comply with BICSI ITSIMM for installation of communications equipment spaces.
- D. Bundle, lace, and train conductors and cables to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.
- E. Coordinate layout and installation of communications equipment in racks and room. Coordinate service entrance configuration with service provider.
  1. Meet jointly with system providers, equipment suppliers, and Owner to exchange information and agree on details of equipment configurations and installation interfaces.
  2. Record agreements reached in meetings and distribute them to other participants.
  3. Adjust configurations and locations of distribution frames, cross-connects, and patch panels in equipment spaces to accommodate and optimize configuration and space requirements of telecommunications equipment.
  4. Adjust configurations and locations of equipment with distribution frames, cross-connects, and patch panels of cabling systems of other communications, electronic safety and security, and related systems that share space in equipment room.
- F. Coordinate location of power raceways and receptacles with locations of communications equipment requiring electrical power to operate.

### **3.02 GROUNDING**

- A. Comply with NECA/BICSI 607.
- B. Install grounding according to BICSI ITSIMM, "Bonding, Grounding (Earthing) and Electrical Protection" Ch.
- C. Locate TGB to minimize length of bonding conductors. Fasten to wall, allowing at least 2 inches (50 mm) of clearance behind TGB. Connect TGB with a minimum No. 4 AWG grounding electrode conductor from TGB to suitable electrical building ground. Connect rack TGB to near TGB or the TMGB.
  1. Bond the shield of shielded cable to patch panel, and bond patch panel to TGB or TMGB.

**3.03 IDENTIFICATION**

- A. Coordinate system components, wiring, and cabling complying with TIA-606-B. Comply with requirements in Section 270553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Comply with requirements in Section 099123 "Interior Painting" for painting backboards. For fire-resistant plywood, do not paint over manufacturer's label.
- C. Paint and label colors for equipment identification shall comply with TIA-606-B for Class 2 level of administration, including optional identification requirements of this standard.
- D. Labels shall be machine printed. Type shall be 1/8 inch (3 mm) in height.

**END OF SECTION 27 11 16**

This page intentionally left blank

**SECTION 27 13 13  
COMMUNICATIONS COPPER BACKBONE CABLING**

**RELATED DOCUMENTS**

**1.01 DRAWINGS AND GENERAL PROVISIONS OF THE CONTRACT, INCLUDING GENERAL AND SUPPLEMENTARY CONDITIONS AND DIVISION 01 SPECIFICATION SECTIONS, APPLY TO THIS SECTION.**

**SUMMARY**

**2.01 SECTION INCLUDES:**

- A. High-count Category 6 twisted pair cable.
- B. Category 6 twisted pair cable.
- C. Twisted pair cable hardware, including plugs, jacks, patch panels, and cross-connects.
- D. Grounding provisions for twisted pair cable.
- E. Cabling identification.
- F. Source quality control requirements for twisted pair cable.

**2.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS:**

- A. Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" for data cabling associated with system panels and devices.

**DEFINITIONS**

**3.01 CROSS-CONNECT: A FACILITY ENABLING THE TERMINATION OF CABLE ELEMENTS AND THEIR INTERCONNECTION OR CROSS-CONNECTION.**

**3.02 EMI: ELECTROMAGNETIC INTERFERENCE.**

**3.03 F/FTP: OVERALL FOIL SCREENED CABLE WITH FOIL SCREENED TWISTED PAIR.**

- 3.04 FTP: SHIELDED TWISTED PAIR.**
- 3.05 F/UTP: OVERALL FOIL SCREENED CABLE WITH UNSCREENED TWISTED PAIR.**
- 3.06 IDC: INSULATION DISPLACEMENT CONNECTOR.**
- 3.07 JACK: ALSO COMMONLY CALLED AN "OUTLET," IT IS THE FIXED, FEMALE CONNECTOR.**
- 3.08 LAN: LOCAL AREA NETWORK.**
- 3.09 PLUG: ALSO COMMONLY CALLED A "CONNECTOR," IT IS THE REMOVABLE, MALE TELECOMMUNICATIONS CONNECTOR.**
- 3.10 RCDD: REGISTERED COMMUNICATIONS DISTRIBUTION DESIGNER.**
- 3.11 SCREEN: A METALLIC LAYER, EITHER A FOIL OR BRAID, PLACED AROUND A PAIR OR GROUP OF CONDUCTORS.**
- 3.12 S/FTP: OVERALL BRAID SCREENED CABLE WITH FOIL SCREENED TWISTED PAIR.**
- 3.13 SHIELD: A METALLIC LAYER, EITHER A FOIL OR BRAID, PLACED AROUND A PAIR OR GROUP OF CONDUCTORS.**
- 3.14 S/UTP: OVERALL BRAID SCREENED CABLE WITH UNSCREENED TWISTED PAIRS.**
- 3.15 UTP: UNSCREENED (UNSHIELDED) TWISTED PAIR.**

#### **COPPER BACKBONE CABLING DESCRIPTION**

- 4.01 COPPER BACKBONE CABLING SYSTEM SHALL PROVIDE INTERCONNECTIONS BETWEEN COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT ROOMS, MAIN TERMINAL SPACE, AND ENTRANCE FACILITIES IN THE TELECOMMUNICATIONS CABLING SYSTEM STRUCTURE. CABLING SYSTEM CONSISTS OF BACKBONE CABLES, INTERMEDIATE AND MAIN CROSS-CONNECTS, MECHANICAL TERMINATIONS, AND PATCH CORDS OR JUMPERS USED FOR BACKBONE-TO-BACKBONE CROSS-CONNECTION.**
- 4.02 BACKBONE CABLING CROSS-CONNECTS MAY BE LOCATED IN COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT ROOMS OR AT ENTRANCE FACILITIES. BRIDGED TAPS AND SPLITTERS SHALL NOT BE USED AS PART OF BACKBONE CABLING.**

#### **ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 5.01 PRODUCT DATA: FOR EACH TYPE OF PRODUCT.**
- 5.02 SHOP DRAWINGS: REVIEWED AND STAMPED BY RCDD.**
  - A. System Labeling Schedules: Electronic copy of labeling schedules, in software and format selected by Owner.
  - B. System Labeling Schedules: Electronic copy of labeling schedules that are part of the cabling and asset identification system of the software.
  - C. Cabling administration Drawings and printouts.
  - D. Wiring diagrams to show typical wiring schematics, including the following:
    - 1. Telecommunications rooms plans and elevations.
    - 2. Telecommunications pathways.
    - 3. Telecommunications system access points.
    - 4. Telecommunications grounding system
    - 5. Cross-connects.
    - 6. Patch panels.
    - 7. Patch cords.
  - E. Cross-Connects and Patch Panels: Detail mounting assemblies, and show elevations and physical relationship between the installed components.

**5.03 TWISTED PAIR CABLE TESTING PLAN.**

**INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

**COORDINATE "QUALIFICATION DATA" PARAGRAPH BELOW WITH QUALIFICATION REQUIREMENTS IN SECTION 014000 "QUALITY REQUIREMENTS" AND AS MAY BE SUPPLEMENTED IN "QUALITY ASSURANCE" ARTICLE.**

**7.01 QUALIFICATION DATA: FOR INSTALLER, INSTALLATION SUPERVISOR, AND FIELD INSPECTOR.**

**7.02 SOURCE QUALITY-CONTROL REPORTS.**

**7.03 PRODUCT CERTIFICATES: FOR EACH TYPE OF PRODUCT.**

**7.04 FIELD QUALITY-CONTROL REPORTS.**

**CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

**8.01 MAINTENANCE DATA: FOR SPLICES AND CONNECTORS TO INCLUDE IN MAINTENANCE MANUALS.**

**8.02 SOFTWARE AND FIRMWARE OPERATIONAL DOCUMENTATION:**

- A. Software operating and upgrade manuals.
- B. Program Software Backup: On USB media or compact disk, complete with data files.
- C. Device address list.
- D. Printout of software application and graphic screens.

**MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS**

**9.01 FURNISH EXTRA MATERIALS THAT MATCH PRODUCTS INSTALLED AND THAT ARE PACKAGED WITH PROTECTIVE COVERING FOR STORAGE AND IDENTIFIED WITH LABELS DESCRIBING CONTENTS.**

- A. Connecting Blocks: One of each type.
- B. Patch-Panel Units: One of each type.
- C. Plugs: Ten of each type.
- D. Jacks: Ten of each type.

**QUALITY ASSURANCE**

**10.01 INSTALLER QUALIFICATIONS: CABLING INSTALLER MUST HAVE PERSONNEL CERTIFIED BY BICSI ON STAFF.**

- A. Layout Responsibility: Preparation of Shop Drawings, cabling administration Drawings, and field testing program development by an RCDD.
- B. Installation Supervision: Installation shall be under the direct supervision of Level 2 Installer, who shall be present at all times when Work of this Section is performed at Project site.
- C. Testing Supervisor: Currently certified by BICSI as an RCDD to supervise on-site testing.

**10.02 TESTING AGENCY QUALIFICATIONS: TESTING AGENCY MUST HAVE PERSONNEL CERTIFIED BY BICSI ON STAFF.**

- A. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by BICSI as an RCDD.

**DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

**11.01 TEST CABLES UPON RECEIPT AT PROJECT SITE.**

- A. Test each pair of twisted pair cable for open and short circuits.

## **PROJECT CONDITIONS**

**12.01 ENVIRONMENTAL LIMITATIONS: DO NOT DELIVER OR INSTALL CABLES AND CONNECTING MATERIALS UNTIL WET WORK IN SPACES IS COMPLETE AND DRY, AND TEMPORARY HVAC SYSTEM IS OPERATING AND MAINTAINING AMBIENT TEMPERATURE AND HUMIDITY CONDITIONS AT OCCUPANCY LEVELS DURING THE REMAINDER OF THE CONSTRUCTION PERIOD.**

## **COORDINATION**

**13.01 COORDINATE LAYOUT AND INSTALLATION OF TELECOMMUNICATIONS PATHWAYS AND CABLING WITH OWNER'S TELECOMMUNICATIONS AND LAN EQUIPMENT AND SERVICE SUPPLIERS.**

## **SOFTWARE SERVICE AGREEMENT**

**14.01 TECHNICAL SUPPORT: BEGINNING WITH SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION, PROVIDE SOFTWARE SUPPORT FOR TWO YEARS.**

**14.02 UPGRADE SERVICE: UPDATE SOFTWARE TO LATEST VERSION AT PROJECT COMPLETION. INSTALL AND PROGRAM SOFTWARE UPGRADES THAT BECOME AVAILABLE WITHIN TWO YEARS FROM DATE OF SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION. UPGRADING SOFTWARE SHALL INCLUDE OPERATING SYSTEM. UPGRADE SHALL INCLUDE NEW OR REVISED LICENSES FOR USE OF SOFTWARE.**

- A. Provide 30 days' notice to Owner to allow scheduling and access to system and to allow Owner to upgrade computer equipment if necessary.

## **PART 1 PRODUCTS**

### **15.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

**15.02 GENERAL PERFORMANCE: BACKBONE CABLING SYSTEM SHALL COMPLY WITH TRANSMISSION STANDARDS IN TIA-568-C.1, WHEN TESTED ACCORDING TO TEST PROCEDURES OF THIS STANDARD.**

**15.03 SURFACE-BURNING CHARACTERISTICS: AS DETERMINED BY TESTING IDENTICAL PRODUCTS ACCORDING TO ASTM E84 BY A QUALIFIED TESTING AGENCY. IDENTIFY PRODUCTS WITH APPROPRIATE MARKINGS OF APPLICABLE TESTING AGENCY.**

- A. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
- B. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.

**15.04 TELECOMMUNICATIONS PATHWAYS AND SPACES: COMPLY WITH TIA-569-D.**

**15.05 GROUNDING: COMPLY WITH TIA-607-B.**

## **GENERAL CABLE CHARACTERISTICS**

**16.01 LISTED AND LABELED BY AN NRTL ACCEPTABLE TO AUTHORITIES HAVING JURISDICTION AS COMPLYING WITH THE APPLICABLE STANDARD AND NFPA 70 FOR THE FOLLOWING TYPES:**

- A. Communications, Plenum Rated: Type CMP complying with UL 1685 or Type CMP in listed cable routing assembly.
- B. Communications, Plenum Rated: Type CM, Type CMG, Type CMP, Type CMR, or Type CMX in metallic conduit installed according to NFPA 70, Article 300.22, "Wiring in Ducts, Plenums, and Other Air-Handling Spaces."
- C. Communications, Riser Rated: Type CMP or Type CMR in listed plenum or riser communications raceway.
- D. Communications, Riser Rated: Type CMP or Type CMR in metallic conduit installed according to NFPA 70, Article 300.22, "Wiring in Ducts, Plenums, and Other Air-Handling Spaces."

**16.02 SURFACE-BURNING CHARACTERISTICS: COMPLY WITH ASTM E84; TESTING BY A QUALIFIED TESTING AGENCY. IDENTIFY PRODUCTS WITH APPROPRIATE MARKINGS OF APPLICABLE TESTING AGENCY.**

- A. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
- B. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.

**16.03 ROHS COMPLIANT.**

**HIGH-COUNT CATEGORY 6 TWISTED PAIR CABLE**

**17.01 DESCRIPTION: 24-PAIR, BALANCED-TWISTED PAIR CABLE, WITH INTERNAL SPLINE, CERTIFIED TO MEET TRANSMISSION CHARACTERISTICS OF CATEGORY 6 CABLE AT FREQUENCIES UP TO 250MHZ.**

**17.02 MANUFACTURERS: SUBJECT TO COMPLIANCE WITH REQUIREMENTS, AVAILABLE MANUFACTURERS OFFERING PRODUCTS THAT MAY BE INCORPORATED INTO THE WORK INCLUDE, BUT ARE NOT LIMITED TO THE FOLLOWING:**

- A. Hitachi Cable America Inc.
- B. Mohawk; a division of Belden Networking, Inc.

**17.03 STANDARD: COMPLY WITH NEMA WC 66/ICEA S-116-732 AND TIA-568-C.2 FOR CATEGORY 6 CABLES.**

**17.04 CONDUCTORS: 100-OHM, 23 AWG SOLID COPPER.**

**17.05 SHIELDING/SCREENING: UNSHIELDED BALANCED TWISTED PAIRS (UTP).**

**17.06 CABLE RATING: PLENUM.**

**17.07 JACKET: BLUE THERMOPLASTIC.**

**CATEGORY 6 TWISTED PAIR CABLE**

**18.01 DESCRIPTION: FOUR-PAIR, BALANCED-TWISTED PAIR CABLE, WITH INTERNAL SPLINE, CERTIFIED TO MEET TRANSMISSION CHARACTERISTICS OF CATEGORY 6 CABLE AT FREQUENCIES UP TO 250MHZ.**

**18.02 MANUFACTURERS: SUBJECT TO COMPLIANCE WITH REQUIREMENTS, AVAILABLE MANUFACTURERS OFFERING PRODUCTS THAT MAY BE INCORPORATED INTO THE WORK INCLUDE, BUT ARE NOT LIMITED TO THE FOLLOWING:**

- A. 3M.
- B. CommScope, Inc.
- C. Hitachi Cable America Inc.
- D. Superior Essex Inc.

**18.03 STANDARD: COMPLY WITH NEMA WC 66/ICEA S-116-732 AND TIA-568-C.2 FOR CATEGORY 6 CABLES.**

**18.04 CONDUCTORS: 100-OHM, 23 AWG SOLID COPPER.**

**18.05 SHIELDING/SCREENING: UNSHIELDED BALANCED TWISTED PAIRS (UTP).**

**18.06 CABLE RATING: PLENUM.**

**18.07 JACKET: BLUE THERMOPLASTIC.**

**TWISTED PAIR CABLE HARDWARE**

**19.01 DESCRIPTION: HARDWARE DESIGNED TO CONNECT, SPLICE, AND TERMINATE TWISTED PAIR COPPER COMMUNICATIONS CABLE.**

**19.02 MANUFACTURERS: SUBJECT TO COMPLIANCE WITH REQUIREMENTS, AVAILABLE MANUFACTURERS OFFERING PRODUCTS THAT MAY BE INCORPORATED INTO THE WORK INCLUDE, BUT ARE NOT LIMITED TO THE FOLLOWING:**

- A. 3M.



- B. CommScope, Inc.
- C. Panduit Corp.
- D. Superior Essex Inc.

**19.03 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR CABLE CONNECTING HARDWARE:**

- A. Twisted pair cable hardware shall meet the performance requirements of Category 6.
- B. Comply with TIA-568-C.2, IDC type, with modules designed for punch-down caps or tools.
- C. Cables shall be terminated with connecting hardware of same category or higher.
- D. Source Limitations: Obtain twisted pair cable hardware from single source from single manufacturer.

**19.04 CONNECTING BLOCKS: 110-STYLE IDC FOR CATEGORY 6. PROVIDE BLOCKS FOR THE NUMBER OF CABLES TERMINATED ON THE BLOCK, PLUS 25 PERCENT SPARE, INTEGRAL WITH CONNECTOR BODIES, INCLUDING PLUGS AND JACKS WHERE INDICATED.**

**19.05 CROSS-CONNECT: MODULAR ARRAY OF CONNECTING BLOCKS ARRANGED TO TERMINATE BUILDING CABLES AND PERMIT INTERCONNECTION BETWEEN CABLES.**

- A. Number of Terminals per Field: One for each conductor in assigned cables.

**19.06 PATCH PANEL: MODULAR PANELS HOUSING NUMBERED JACK UNITS WITH IDC-TYPE CONNECTORS AT EACH JACK FOR PERMANENT TERMINATION OF PAIR GROUPS OF INSTALLED CABLES.**

- A. Features:
  - 1. Universal T568A and T568B wiring labels.
  - 2. Labeling areas adjacent to conductors.
  - 3. Replaceable connectors.
  - 4. 24 or 48 ports.
- B. Construction: 16-gauge steel and mountable on 19-inch (483 mm) equipment racks.
- C. Number of Jacks per Field: One for each four-pair conductor group of indicated cables, plus spares and blank positions adequate to suit specified expansion criteria.

**19.07 PLUGS AND PLUG ASSEMBLIES:**

- A. Male; eight position (8P8C); color-coded modular telecommunications connector designed for termination of a single four-pair 100-ohm unshielded or shielded twisted pair cable.
- B. Standard: Comply with TIA-568-C.2.
- C. Marked to indicate transmission performance.

**19.08 JACKS AND JACK ASSEMBLIES:**

- A. Female; eight position; modular; fixed telecommunications connector designed for termination of a single four-pair 100-ohm unshielded or shielded twisted pair cable.
- B. Designed to snap-in to a patch panel or faceplate.
- C. Standard: Comply with TIA-568-C.2.
- D. Marked to indicate transmission performance.

**19.09 PATCH CORDS: FACTORY-MADE, FOUR-PAIR CABLES IN 36-INCH (900-MM) LENGTHS; TERMINATED WITH AN EIGHT-POSITION MODULAR PLUG AT EACH END.**

- A. Patch cords shall have bend-relief-compliant boots and color-coded icons to ensure Category 6 performance. Patch cords shall have latch guards to protect against snagging.

**19.10 FACEPLATES:**

- A. Four port, vertical single gang faceplates designed to mount to single gang wall boxes.
- B. Eight port, vertical double gang faceplates designed to mount to double gang wall boxes.

- C. Metal Faceplate: Stainless steel, complying with requirements in Section 262726 "Wiring Devices."
- D. For use with snap-in jacks accommodating any combination of twisted pair, optical-fiber, and coaxial work-area cords.
  - 1. Flush-mount jacks, positioning the cord at a 45-degree angle.

**19.11 LEGEND:**

- A. Factory labeled by silk-screening or engraving for stainless steel faceplates.
- B. Machine printed, in the field, using adhesive-tape label.
- C. Snap-in, clear-label covers and machine-printed paper inserts.

**CABLING IDENTIFICATION**

**20.01 COMPLY WITH TIA-606-B AND UL 969 FOR A SYSTEM OF LABELING MATERIALS, INCLUDING LABEL STOCKS, LAMINATING ADHESIVES, AND INKS USED BY LABEL PRINTERS.**

**GROUNDING**

**21.01 COMPLY WITH REQUIREMENTS IN SECTION 270526 "GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS" FOR GROUNDING CONDUCTORS AND CONNECTORS.**

**21.02 COMPLY WITH TIA-607-B.**

**SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL**

**22.01 TESTING AGENCY: ENGAGE A QUALIFIED TESTING AGENCY TO EVALUATE CABLES.**

**22.02 FACTORY TEST CABLES ON REELS ACCORDING TO TIA-568-C.1.**

**22.03 FACTORY TEST CABLES ACCORDING TO TIA-568-C.2.**

**22.04 CABLE WILL BE CONSIDERED DEFECTIVE IF IT DOES NOT PASS TESTS AND INSPECTIONS.**

**22.05 PREPARE TEST AND INSPECTION REPORTS.**

**PART 2 EXECUTION**

**23.01 ENTRANCE FACILITIES**

**23.02 COORDINATE BACKBONE CABLING WITH THE PROTECTORS AND DEMARCATION POINT PROVIDED BY COMMUNICATIONS SERVICE PROVIDER.**

**WIRING METHODS**

**24.01 WIRING METHOD: INSTALL CABLES IN RACEWAYS, EXCEPT WITHIN CONSOLES, CABINETS, DESKS, AND COUNTERS . CONCEAL RACEWAY AND CABLES, EXCEPT IN UNFINISHED SPACES.**

- A. Install plenum cable in environmental air spaces, including plenum ceilings.
- B. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Section 270528 "Pathways for Communications Systems."

**24.02 WIRING METHOD: CONCEAL CONDUCTORS AND CABLES IN ACCESSIBLE CEILINGS, WALLS, AND FLOORS WHERE POSSIBLE.**

**24.03 WIRING WITHIN ENCLOSURES: BUNDLE, LACE, AND TRAIN CABLES WITHIN ENCLOSURES. CONNECT TO TERMINAL POINTS WITH NO EXCESS AND WITHOUT EXCEEDING MANUFACTURER'S LIMITATIONS ON BENDING RADII. PROVIDE AND USE LACING BARS AND DISTRIBUTION SPOOLS. INSTALL CABLES PARALLEL WITH OR AT RIGHT ANGLES TO SIDES AND BACK OF ENCLOSURE.**

**INSTALLATION OF PATHWAYS**

**25.01 COMPLY WITH REQUIREMENTS FOR DEMARCATION POINT, CABINETS, AND RACKS SPECIFIED IN SECTION 271100 "COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT ROOM FITTINGS."**

**25.02 COMPLY WITH SECTION 270528 "PATHWAYS FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS."**

**25.03 COMPLY WITH SECTION 270529 "HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS."**

**25.04 DRAWINGS INDICATE GENERAL ARRANGEMENT OF PATHWAYS AND FITTINGS.**

**INSTALLATION OF COPPER BACKBONE CABLES**

**26.01 COMPLY WITH NECA 1 AND NECA/BICSI 568.**

**26.02 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR CABLING:**

- A. Comply with TIA-568-C.0, TIA-568-C.1, and TIA-568-C.2.
- B. Comply with BICSI's "Information Transport Systems Installation Methods Manual (ITSIMM)," Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems," "Cable Termination Practices" Section.
- C. Install 110-style IDC termination hardware unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Do not untwist twisted pair cables more than 1/2 inch (12 mm) from the point of termination to maintain cable geometry.
- E. Terminate all conductors; no cable shall contain unterminated elements. Make terminations only at indicated outlets, terminals, cross-connects, and patch panels.
- F. Cables may not be spliced. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding 30 inches (760 mm) and not more than 6 inches (150 mm) from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.
- G. Install lacing bars to restrain cables, prevent straining connections, and prevent bending cables to smaller radii than minimums recommended by manufacturer.
- H. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii, but not less than radii specified in BICSI ITSIMM, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems," "Cable Termination Practices" Section Use lacing bars and distribution spools.
- I. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Do not splice cable between termination, tap, or junction points. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation, and replace it with new cable.
- J. Cold-Weather Installation: Bring cable to room temperature before dereeling. Heat lamps shall not be used for heating.
- K. In the communications equipment room, install a 10-foot- (3-m-) long service loop on each end of cable.
- L. Pulling Cable: Comply with BICSI ITSIMM, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems," "Pulling and Installing Cable" Section. Monitor cable pull tensions.

**26.03 OPEN-CABLE INSTALLATION:**

- A. Install cabling with horizontal and vertical cable guides in telecommunications spaces with terminating hardware and interconnection equipment.

- B. Suspend twisted pair cabling, not in a wireway or pathway, a minimum of 8 inches (200 mm) above ceilings by cable supports not more than 60 inches (1524 mm) apart.
- C. Cable shall not be run through structural members or in contact with pipes, ducts, or other potentially damaging items.

**26.04 INSTALLATION OF CABLE ROUTED EXPOSED UNDER RAISED FLOORS:**

- A. Install plenum-rated cable only.
- B. Install cabling after the flooring system has been installed in raised floor areas.
- C. Coil cable 6 feet (1800 mm) long not less than 12 inches (300 mm) in diameter below each feed point.

**26.05 GROUP CONNECTING HARDWARE FOR CABLES INTO SEPARATE LOGICAL FIELDS.**

**26.06 SEPARATION FROM EMI SOURCES:**

- A. Comply with recommendations from BICSI's "Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual" and TIA-569-D for separating unshielded copper communication cable from potential EMI sources, including electrical power lines and equipment.
- B. Separation between open communications cables or cables in nonmetallic raceways and unshielded power conductors and electrical equipment shall be as follows:
  - 1. Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of 5 inches (127 mm).
  - 2. Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 12 inches (300 mm).
  - 3. Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 24 inches (600 mm).
- C. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways and unshielded power lines or electrical equipment shall be as follows:
  - 1. Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of 2-1/2 inches (64 mm).
  - 2. Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 6 inches (150 mm).
  - 3. Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 12 inches (300 mm).
- D. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways, power lines, and electrical equipment located in grounded metallic conduits or enclosures shall be as follows:
  - 1. Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: No requirement.
  - 2. Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 3 inches (76 mm).
  - 3. Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 6 inches (150 mm).
- E. Separation between Communications Cables and Electrical Motors and Transformers, 5 kVA or HP and Larger: A minimum of 48 inches (1200 mm).
- F. Separation between Communications Cables and Fluorescent Fixtures: A minimum of 5 inches (127 mm).

## **FIRESTOPPING**

**27.01 COMPLY WITH REQUIREMENTS IN SECTION 078413 "PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING."**

**27.02 COMPLY WITH TIA-569-D, ANNEX A, "FIRESTOPPING."**

**27.03 COMPLY WITH "FIRESTOPPING SYSTEMS" ARTICLE IN BICSI'S "TELECOMMUNICATIONS DISTRIBUTION METHODS MANUAL."**

## **GROUNDING**

**28.01 INSTALL GROUNDING ACCORDING TO THE "GROUNDING, BONDING, AND ELECTRICAL PROTECTION" CHAPTER IN BICSI'S "TELECOMMUNICATIONS DISTRIBUTION METHODS MANUAL."**

**28.02 COMPLY WITH TIA-607-B AND NECA/BICSI-607.**

**28.03 LOCATE GROUNDING BUS BAR TO MINIMIZE THE LENGTH OF BONDING CONDUCTORS. FASTEN TO WALL, ALLOWING AT LEAST A 2-INCH (50-MM) CLEARANCE BEHIND THE GROUNDING BUS BAR. CONNECT GROUNDING BUS BAR TO SUITABLE ELECTRICAL BUILDING GROUND, USING A MINIMUM NO. 4 AWG GROUNDING ELECTRODE CONDUCTOR.**

**28.04 BOND METALLIC EQUIPMENT TO THE GROUNDING BUS BAR, USING NOT SMALLER THAN A NO. 6 AWG EQUIPMENT GROUNDING CONDUCTOR.**

## **IDENTIFICATION**

**29.01 IDENTIFY SYSTEM COMPONENTS, WIRING, AND CABLING COMPLYING WITH TIA-606-B. COMPLY WITH REQUIREMENTS FOR IDENTIFICATION SPECIFIED IN SECTION 270553 "IDENTIFICATION FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS."**

- A. Administration Class: 2.
- B. Color-code cross-connect fields and apply colors to voice and data service backboards, connections, covers, and labels.

**29.02 PAINT AND LABEL COLORS FOR EQUIPMENT IDENTIFICATION SHALL COMPLY WITH TIA-606-B FOR CLASS 2 LEVEL OF ADMINISTRATION, INCLUDING OPTIONAL IDENTIFICATION REQUIREMENTS OF THIS STANDARD.**

**29.03 COMPLY WITH REQUIREMENTS IN SECTION 271513 "COMMUNICATIONS COPPER HORIZONTAL CABLING" FOR CABLE AND ASSET MANAGEMENT SOFTWARE.**

**29.04 CABLE SCHEDULE: INSTALL IN A PROMINENT LOCATION IN EACH EQUIPMENT ROOM AND WIRING CLOSET. LIST INCOMING AND OUTGOING CABLES AND THEIR DESIGNATIONS, ORIGINS, AND DESTINATIONS. PROTECT WITH RIGID FRAME AND CLEAR PLASTIC COVER. FURNISH AN ELECTRONIC COPY OF FINAL COMPREHENSIVE SCHEDULES FOR PROJECT.**

**29.05 CABLING ADMINISTRATION DRAWINGS: SHOW BUILDING FLOOR PLANS WITH CABLING ADMINISTRATION-POINT LABELING. IDENTIFY LABELING CONVENTION AND SHOW LABELS FOR TELECOMMUNICATIONS CLOSETS, BACKBONE PATHWAYS AND CABLES, ENTRANCE PATHWAYS AND CABLES, TERMINAL HARDWARE AND POSITIONS, HORIZONTAL CABLES, WORK AREAS AND WORKSTATION TERMINAL POSITIONS, GROUNDING BUSES AND PATHWAYS, AND EQUIPMENT GROUNDING CONDUCTORS.**

**29.06 CABLE AND WIRE IDENTIFICATION:**

- A. Label each cable within 4 inches (100 mm) of each termination and tap, where it is accessible in a cabinet or junction or outlet box, and elsewhere as indicated.
- B. Each wire connected to building-mounted devices is not required to be numbered at the device if wire color is consistent with associated wire connected and numbered within panel or cabinet.
- C. Exposed Cables and Cables in Cable Trays and Wire Troughs: Label each cable at intervals not exceeding 15 feet (4.5 m).
- D. Label each terminal strip, and screw terminal in each cabinet, rack, or panel.

1. Individually number wiring conductors connected to terminal strips, and identify each cable or wiring group, extended from a panel or cabinet to a building-mounted device, with the name and number of a particular device.
  2. Label each unit and field within distribution racks and frames.
- E. Identification within Connector Fields in Equipment Rooms and Wiring Closets: Label each connector and each discrete unit of cable-terminating and -connecting hardware. Where similar jacks and plugs are used for both voice and data communication cabling, use a different color for jacks and plugs of each service.

**29.07 LABELS SHALL BE PREPRINTED OR COMPUTER-PRINTED TYPE, WITH A PRINTING AREA AND FONT COLOR THAT CONTRAST WITH CABLE JACKET COLOR BUT STILL COMPLY WITH TIA-606-B REQUIREMENTS FOR THE FOLLOWING:**

- A. Cables use flexible vinyl or polyester that flexes as cables are bent.

**FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

**30.01 PERFORM TESTS AND INSPECTIONS.**

**30.02 TESTS AND INSPECTIONS:**

- A. Visually inspect jacket materials for NRTL certification markings. Inspect cabling terminations in communications equipment rooms for compliance with color-coding for pin assignments, and inspect cabling connections for compliance with TIA-568-C.1.
- B. Visually inspect cable placement, cable termination, grounding and bonding, equipment and patch cords, and labeling of all components.
- C. Test cabling for DC loop resistance, shorts, opens, intermittent faults, and polarity between conductors. Test operation of shorting bars in connection blocks. Test cables after termination but not cross-connection.
  1. Test instruments shall meet or exceed applicable requirements in TIA-568-C.2. Perform tests with a tester that complies with performance requirements in "Test Instruments (Normative)" Annex, complying with measurement accuracy specified in "Measurement Accuracy (Informative)" Annex. Use only test cords and adapters that are qualified by test equipment manufacturer for channel or link test configuration.

**30.03 DATA FOR EACH MEASUREMENT SHALL BE DOCUMENTED. DATA FOR SUBMITTALS SHALL BE PRINTED IN A SUMMARY REPORT THAT IS FORMATTED SIMILARLY TO TABLE 10.1 IN BICSI'S "TELECOMMUNICATIONS DISTRIBUTION METHODS MANUAL," OR SHALL BE TRANSFERRED FROM THE INSTRUMENT TO THE COMPUTER, SAVED AS TEXT FILES, PRINTED, AND SUBMITTED.**

**30.04 REMOVE AND REPLACE CABLING WHERE TEST RESULTS INDICATE THAT THEY DO NOT COMPLY WITH SPECIFIED REQUIREMENTS.**

**30.05 END-TO-END CABLING WILL BE CONSIDERED DEFECTIVE IF IT DOES NOT PASS TESTS AND INSPECTIONS.**

**30.06 PREPARE TEST AND INSPECTION REPORTS.**

**END OF SECTION 27 13 13**

This page intentionally left blank

**SECTION 27 15 13  
COMMUNICATIONS COPPER HORIZONTAL CABLING**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Category 6 twisted pair cable.
  - 2. Twisted pair cable hardware, including plugs and jacks.
  - 3. Multiuser telecommunications outlet assembly.
  - 4. Cable management system.
  - 5. Cabling identification products.
  - 6. Grounding provisions for twisted pair cable.
  - 7. Source quality control requirements for twisted pair cable.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 270513 "Conductors and Cables for Communications Systems" for data cabling associated with system panels and devices.

**1.02 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Cross-Connect: A facility enabling the termination of cable elements and their interconnection or cross-connection.
- B. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.
- C. FTP: Shielded twisted pair.
- D. F/FTP: Overall foil screened cable with foil screened twisted pair.
- E. F/UTP: Overall foil screened cable with unshielded twisted pair.
- F. IDC: Insulation displacement connector.
- G. LAN: Local area network.
- H. Jack: Also commonly called an "outlet," it is the fixed, female connector.
- I. Plug: Also commonly called a "connector," it is the removable, male telecommunications connector.
- J. RCDD: Registered Communications Distribution Designer.
- K. Screen: A metallic layer, either a foil or braid, placed around a pair or group of conductors.
- L. Shield: A metallic layer, either a foil or braid, placed around a pair or group of conductors.
- M. S/FTP: Overall braid screened cable with foil screened twisted pair.
- N. S/UTP: Overall braid screened cable with unshielded twisted pairs.
- O. UTP: Unshielded (unshielded) twisted pair.

**1.03 COPPER HORIZONTAL CABLING DESCRIPTION**

- A. Horizontal cable cabling system shall provide interconnections between Distributor A, Distributor B, or Distributor C, and the equipment outlet, otherwise known as "Cabling Subsystem 1," in the telecommunications cabling system structure. Cabling system consists of horizontal cables, intermediate and main cross-connects, mechanical terminations, and patch cords or jumpers used for horizontal-to-horizontal cross-connection.
  - 1. TIA-568-C.1 requires that a minimum of two equipment outlets be installed for each work area.
  - 2. Horizontal cabling shall contain no more than one transition point or consolidation point between the horizontal cross-connect and the telecommunications equipment outlet.
  - 3. Bridged taps and splices shall not be installed in the horizontal cabling.
- B. A work area is approximately 100 sq. ft. (9.3 sq. m), and includes the components that extend from the equipment outlets to the station equipment.



- C. The maximum allowable horizontal cable length is 295 feet (90 m). This maximum allowable length does not include an allowance for the length of 16 feet (4.9 m) to the workstation equipment or in the horizontal cross-connect.

#### **1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: Reviewed and stamped by RCDD.
  - 1. System Labeling Schedules:
    - a. Electronic copy of labeling schedules, in software and format selected by Owner.
    - b. Electronic copy of labeling schedules that are part of cabling and asset identification system of software.
  - 2. Cabling administration Drawings and printouts.
  - 3. Wiring diagrams and installation details of telecommunications equipment, to show location and layout of telecommunications equipment, including the following:
    - a. Telecommunications rooms plans and elevations.
    - b. Telecommunications pathways.
    - c. Telecommunications system access points.
    - d. Telecommunications grounding system.
    - e. Telecommunications conductor drop locations.
    - f. Typical telecommunications details.
    - g. Mechanical, electrical, and plumbing systems.
- C. Twisted pair cable testing plan.
- D. Field Quality-Control Submittals:
  - 1. Field quality-control reports.

#### **1.05 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer, installation supervisor, and field inspector.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of product.
- C. Source quality-control reports.

#### **1.06 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Maintenance Data: For splices and connectors to include in maintenance manuals.
- B. Software and Firmware Operational Documentation:
  - 1. Software operating and upgrade manuals.
  - 2. Program Software Backup: On USB media or compact disk, complete with data files.
  - 3. Device address list.
  - 4. Printout of software application and graphic screens.

#### **1.07 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Connecting Blocks: One of each type.
  - 2. Cover Plates: One of each type.
  - 3. Jacks: Ten of each type.
  - 4. Multiuser Telecommunications Outlet Assemblies: One of each type.
  - 5. Patch-Panel Units: One of each type.
  - 6. Plugs: Ten of each type.

#### **1.08 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Installer Qualifications: Cabling Installer must have personnel certified by BICSI on staff.
  - 1. Layout Responsibility: Preparation of Shop Drawings and cabling administration Drawings by an RCDD.
  - 2. Installation Supervision: Installation shall be under the direct supervision of Level 2 Installer, who shall be present at all times when Work of this Section is performed at

Project site.

3. Testing Supervisor: Currently certified by BICSI as an RCDD to supervise on-site testing.
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Testing agency must have personnel certified by BICSI on staff.
  1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by BICSI as an RCDD.

### **1.09 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Test cables upon receipt at Project site.
  1. Test each pair of twisted pair cable for open and short circuits.

### **1.10 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install cables and connecting materials until wet work in spaces is complete and dry, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.

### **1.11 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of telecommunications pathways and cabling with Owner's telecommunications and LAN equipment and service suppliers.

## **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. General Performance: Horizontal cabling system shall comply with transmission standards in TIA-568-C.1, when tested according to test procedures of this standard.
- B. Telecommunications Pathways and Spaces: Comply with TIA-569-D.
- C. Grounding: Comply with TIA-607-B.

### **2.02 GENERAL CABLE CHARACTERISTICS**

- A. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with the applicable standard and NFPA 70 for the following types:
  1. Communications, Plenum Rated:
    - a. Type CMP complying with UL 1685 or Type CMP in listed plenum communications raceway or Type CMP in listed cable routing assembly.
    - b. Type CM, Type CMG, Type CMP, Type CMR, or Type CMX in metallic conduit installed according to NFPA 70, Article 300.22, "Wiring in Ducts, Plenums, and Other Air-Handling Spaces."
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  1. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
  2. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.
- C. RoHS compliant.

### **2.03 CATEGORY 6 TWISTED PAIR CABLE**

- A. Description: Four-pair, balanced-twisted pair cable, with internal spline, certified to meet transmission characteristics of Category 6 cable at frequencies up to 250 MHz.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  1. 3M.
  2. Belden, Inc.
  3. CommScope, Inc.
  4. Superior Essex Inc.
- C. Standard: Comply with NEMA WC 66/ICEA S-116-732 and TIA-568-C.2 for Category 6 cables.
- D. Conductors: 100-ohm, 23 AWG solid copper.
- E. Shielding/Screening: Unshielded twisted pairs (UTP).

- F. Cable Rating: Riser.
- G. Jacket: Blue thermoplastic.

#### **2.04 TWISTED PAIR CABLE HARDWARE**

- A. Description: Hardware designed to connect, splice, and terminate twisted pair copper communications cable.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1. 3M.
  - 2. Belden, Inc.
  - 3. CommScope, Inc.
  - 4. Superior Essex Inc.
- C. General Requirements for Twisted Pair Cable Hardware:
  - 1. Comply with the performance requirements of Category 6.
  - 2. Comply with TIA-568-C.2, IDC type, with modules designed for punch-down caps or tools.
  - 3. Cables shall be terminated with connecting hardware of same category or higher.
- D. Source Limitations: Obtain twisted pair cable hardware from same manufacturer as twisted pair cable, from single source.
- E. Connecting Blocks:
  - 1. 110-style IDC for Category 5e.
  - 2. 66-style IDC for Category 5e.
  - 3. 110-style IDC for Category 6.
  - 4. 110-style IDC for Category 6a.
  - 5. Provide blocks for the number of cables terminated on the block, plus 25 percent spare, integral with connector bodies, including plugs and jacks where indicated.
- F. Cross-Connect: Modular array of connecting blocks arranged to terminate building cables and permit interconnection between cables.
  - 1. Number of Terminals per Field: One for each conductor in assigned cables.
- G. Patch Panel: Modular panels housing numbered jack units with IDC-type connectors at each jack location for permanent termination of pair groups of installed cables.
  - 1. Features:
    - a. Universal T568A and T568B wiring labels.
    - b. Labeling areas adjacent to conductors.
    - c. Replaceable connectors.
    - d. 24 or 48 ports.
  - 2. Construction: 16-gauge steel and mountable on 19-inch (483 mm) equipment racks.
  - 3. Number of Jacks per Field: One for each four-pair cable indicated.
- H. Patch Cords: Factory-made, four-pair cables in 36-inch (900-mm) lengths; terminated with an eight-position modular plug at each end.
  - 1. Patch cords shall have bend-relief-compliant boots and color-coded icons to ensure performance. Patch cords shall have latch guards to protect against snagging.
- I. Plugs and Plug Assemblies:
  - 1. Male; eight position; color-coded modular telecommunications connector designed for termination of a single four-pair, 100-ohm, unshielded or shielded twisted pair cable.
  - 2. Standard: Comply with TIA-568-C.2.
  - 3. Marked to indicate transmission performance.
- J. Jacks and Jack Assemblies:
  - 1. Female; eight position; modular; fixed telecommunications connector designed for termination of a single four-pair, 100-ohm, unshielded or shielded twisted pair cable.
  - 2. Designed to snap-in to a patch panel or cover plate.
  - 3. Standard: Comply with TIA-568-C.2.

4. Marked to indicate transmission performance.
- K. Cover Plate:
  1. Four port, vertical single gang cover plates designed to mount to single gang wall boxes.
  2. Eight port, vertical double gang cover plates designed to mount to double gang wall boxes.
  3. Metal Cover Plate: Stainless steel, complying with requirements in Section 260533 "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
  4. For use with snap-in jacks accommodating any combination of twisted pair, optical fiber, and coaxial work area cords.
    - a. Flush mounting jacks, positioning the cord at a 45-degree angle.
- L. Legend:
  1. Machine printed, in the field, using adhesive-tape label.
  2. Snap-in, clear-label covers and machine-printed paper inserts.

## **2.05 CABLE MANAGEMENT SYSTEM**

- A. Description: Computer-based cable management system, with integrated database and graphic capabilities.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  1. iTRACS Corporation.
  2. Telsolt Solutions.
- C. Document physical characteristics by recording the network, TIA details, and connections between equipment and cable.
- D. Information shall be presented in database view, schematic plans, or technical drawings.
  1. Microsoft Visio Professional or AutoCAD drawing software shall be used as drawing and schematic plans software.
- E. System shall interface with the following testing and recording devices:
  1. Direct upload tests from circuit testing instrument into the personal computer.
  2. Direct download circuit labeling into labeling printer.

## **2.06 IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS**

- A. Comply with TIA-606-B and UL 969 for a system of labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers.

## **2.07 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to evaluate cables.
- B. Factory test cables on reels according to TIA-568-C.1.
- C. Factory test twisted pair cables according to TIA-568-C.2.
- D. Cable will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 WIRING METHODS**

- A. Routing:
  1. Install cables in raceways and cable trays, except within consoles, cabinets, desks, and counters. Conceal raceway and cables, except in unfinished spaces.
    - a. Install plenum cable in environmental air spaces, including plenum ceilings.
    - b. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Section 270528 "Pathways for Communications Systems."
  2. Conceal conductors and cables in accessible ceilings, walls, and floors where possible.
- B. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train cables within enclosures. Connect to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii.

Provide and use lacing bars and distribution spools. Install conductors parallel with or at right angles to sides and back of enclosure.

### 3.02 INSTALLATION OF PATHWAYS

- A. Comply with requirements for demarcation point, cabinets, and racks specified in Section 271100 "Communications Equipment Room Fittings."
- B. Comply with Section 270528 "Pathways for Communications Systems."
- C. Comply with Section 270529 "Hangers and Supports for Communications Systems."
- D. Comply with Section 270536 "Cable Trays for Communications Systems."
- E. Drawings indicate general arrangement of pathways and fittings.

### 3.03 INSTALLATION OF TWISTED-PAIR HORIZONTAL CABLES

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA/BICSI 568.
- B. General Requirements for Cabling:
  - 1. Comply with TIA-568-C.0, TIA-568-C.1, and TIA-568-C.2.
  - 2. Comply with BICSI's "Information Transport Systems Installation Methods Manual (ITSIMM), Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems," "Cable Termination Practices" Section.
  - 3. Install 110-style IDC termination hardware unless otherwise indicated.
  - 4. Do not untwist twisted pair cables more than 1/2 inch (12 mm) from the point of termination to maintain cable geometry.
  - 5. Terminate all conductors; no cable shall contain unterminated elements. Make terminations only at indicated outlets, terminals, cross-connects, and patch panels.
  - 6. MUTOA shall not be used as a cross-connect point.
  - 7. Consolidation points may be used only for making a direct connection to equipment outlets:
    - a. Do not use consolidation point as a cross-connect point, as a patch connection, or for direct connection to workstation equipment.
    - b. Locate consolidation points for twisted-pair cables at least 49 feet (15 m) from communications equipment room.
  - 8. Cables may not be spliced. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding 30 inches (760 mm) and not more than 6 inches (150 mm) from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.
  - 9. Install lacing bars to restrain cables, prevent straining connections, and prevent bending cables to smaller radii than minimums recommended by manufacturer.
  - 10. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii, but not less than radii specified in BICSI Information Transport Systems Installation Methods Manual, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems," "Cable Termination Practices" Section. Use lacing bars and distribution spools.
  - 11. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Do not splice cable between termination, tap, or junction points. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation, and replace it with new cable.
  - 12. Cold-Weather Installation: Bring cable to room temperature before dereeling. Heat lamps shall not be used for heating.
  - 13. In the communications equipment room, install a 10-foot- (3-m-) long service loop on each end of cable.
  - 14. Pulling Cable: Comply with BICSI Information Transport Systems Installation Methods Manual, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems," "Pulling and Installing Cable" Section. Monitor cable pull tensions.
- C. Open-Cable Installation:
  - 1. Install cabling with horizontal and vertical cable guides in telecommunications spaces with terminating hardware and interconnection equipment.
  - 2. Suspend twisted pair cabling, not in a wireway or pathway, a minimum of 8 inches (200 mm) above ceilings by cable supports not more than [60 inches (1524 mm)]

- apart.
3. Cable shall not be run through structural members or in contact with pipes, ducts, or other potentially damaging items.
- D. Installation of Cable Routed Exposed under Raised Floors:
1. Install plenum-rated cable only.
  2. Install cabling after the flooring system has been installed in raised floor areas.
  3. Coil cable [6 feet (1800 mm)] long not less than [12 inches (300 mm)] in diameter below each feed point.
- E. Group connecting hardware for cables into separate logical fields.
- F. Separation from EMI Sources:
1. Comply with recommendations from BICSI's "Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual" and TIA-569-D for separating unshielded copper communication cable from potential EMI sources, including electrical power lines and equipment.
  2. Separation between open communications cables or cables in nonmetallic raceways and unshielded power conductors and electrical equipment shall be as follows:
    - a. Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of 5 inches (127 mm).
    - b. Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 12 inches (300 mm).
    - c. Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 24 inches (600 mm).
  3. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways and unshielded power lines or electrical equipment shall be as follows:
    - a. Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of 2-1/2 inches (64 mm).
    - b. Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 6 inches (150 mm).
    - c. Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 12 inches (300 mm).
  4. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways, power lines, and electrical equipment located in grounded metallic conduits or enclosures shall be as follows:
    - a. Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: No requirement.
    - b. Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 3 inches (76 mm).
    - c. Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 6 inches (150 mm).
  5. Separation between Communications Cables and Electrical Motors and Transformers, 5 kVA or HP and Larger: A minimum of 48 inches (1200 mm).
  6. Separation between Communications Cables and Fluorescent Fixtures: A minimum of 5 inches (127 mm).

### 3.04 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."
- B. Comply with TIA-569-D, Annex A, "Firestopping."
- C. Comply with "Firestopping Systems" Article in BICSI's "Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual."

### 3.05 GROUNDING

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 270526 "Grounding and Bonding for Communications Systems" for grounding conductors and connectors.
- B. Install grounding according to the "Grounding, Bonding, and Electrical Protection" chapter in BICSI's "Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual."
- C. Comply with TIA-607-B and NECA/BICSI-607.
- D. Locate grounding bus bar to minimize the length of bonding conductors. Fasten to wall, allowing at least a 2-inch (50-mm) clearance behind the grounding bus bar. Connect grounding bus bar to suitable electrical building ground, using a minimum No. 4 AWG grounding electrode conductor.

- E. Bond metallic equipment to the grounding bus bar, using not smaller than a No. 6 AWG equipment grounding conductor.

### 3.06 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, and cabling complying with TIA-606-B. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 270553 "Identification for Communications Systems."
  - 1. Administration Class: Class 2.
  - 2. Color-code cross-connect fields and apply colors to voice and data service backboards, connections, covers, and labels.
- B. Paint and label colors for equipment identification shall comply with TIA-606-B for Class 2 level of administration, including optional identification requirements of this standard.
- C. Cable Schedule: Install in a prominent location in each equipment room and wiring closet. List incoming and outgoing cables and their designations, origins, and destinations. Protect with rigid frame and clear plastic cover. Furnish an electronic copy of final comprehensive schedules for Project.
- D. Cabling Administration Drawings: Show building floor plans with cabling administration-point labeling. Identify labeling convention and show labels for telecommunications closets, terminal hardware and positions, horizontal cables, work areas and workstation terminal positions, grounding buses and pathways, and equipment grounding conductors.
- E. Cable and Wire Identification:
  - 1. Label each cable within 4 inches (100 mm) of each termination and tap, where it is accessible in a cabinet or junction or outlet box, and elsewhere as indicated.
  - 2. Each wire connected to building-mounted devices is not required to be numbered at the device if wire color is consistent with associated wire connected and numbered within panel or cabinet.
  - 3. Exposed Cables and Cables in Cable Trays and Wire Troughs: Label each cable at intervals not exceeding 15 feet (4.5 m).
  - 4. Label each terminal strip, and screw terminal in each cabinet, rack, or panel.
    - a. Individually number wiring conductors connected to terminal strips, and identify each cable or wiring group, extended from a panel or cabinet to a building-mounted device, with the name and number of a particular device.
    - b. Label each unit and field within distribution racks and frames.
  - 5. Identification within Connector Fields in Equipment Rooms and Wiring Closets: Label each connector and each discrete unit of cable-terminating and -connecting hardware. Where similar jacks and plugs are used for both voice and data communication cabling, use a different color for jacks and plugs of each service.
- F. Labels shall be preprinted or computer-printed type, with a printing area and font color that contrast with cable jacket color but still comply with TIA-606-B requirements for the following:
  - 1. Cables use flexible vinyl or polyester that flexes as cables are bent.

### 3.07 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Visually inspect jacket materials for NRTL certification markings. Inspect cabling terminations in communications equipment rooms for compliance with color-coding for pin assignments, and inspect cabling connections for compliance with TIA-568-C.1.
  - 2. Visually inspect cable placement, cable termination, grounding and bonding, equipment and patch cords, and labeling of all components.
  - 3. Test twisted pair cabling for DC loop resistance, shorts, opens, intermittent faults, and polarity between conductors. Test operation of shorting bars in connection blocks. Test cables after termination but not cross-connection.
    - a. Test instruments shall meet or exceed applicable requirements in TIA-568-C.2. Perform tests with a tester that complies with performance requirements in "Test Instruments (Normative)" Annex, complying with measurement accuracy specified in

"Measurement Accuracy (Informative)" Annex. Use only test cords and adapters that are qualified by test equipment manufacturer for channel or link test configuration.

- B. Data for each measurement shall be documented. Data for submittals shall be printed in a summary report that is formatted similarly to Table 10.1 in BICSI's "Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual," or shall be transferred from the instrument to the computer, saved as text files, printed, and submitted.
- C. Nonconforming Work:
  - 1. End-to-end cabling will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
  - 2. Remove and replace cabling where test results indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
- D. Collect, assemble, and submit test and inspection reports.

### **3.08 MAINTENANCE**

- A. Software Service Agreement:
  - 1. Technical Support: Beginning at Substantial Completion, verify that software service agreement includes software support for two years.
  - 2. Upgrade Service: At Substantial Completion, update software to latest version. Install and program software upgrades that become available within two years from date of Substantial Completion. Verify that upgrading software includes operating system and new or revised licenses for using software.
    - a. Upgrade Notice: No fewer than 30 days to allow Owner to schedule and access the system and to upgrade computer equipment if necessary.
  - 3. Upgrade Reports: Prepare report after each update, documenting upgrades installed.

**END OF SECTION 27 15 13**



This page intentionally left blank

**SECTION 28 20 00  
VIDEO SURVEILLANCE**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes a video surveillance system consisting of cameras, digital video recorder, data transmission wiring, and a control station with its associated equipment.

**1.02 DEFINITIONS**

- A. AGC: Automatic gain control.
- B. BNC: Bayonet Neill-Concelman - type of connector.
- C. B/W: Black and white.
- D. CCD: Charge-coupled device.
- E. FTP: File transfer protocol.
- F. IP: Internet protocol.
- G. LAN: Local area network.
- H. MPEG: Moving picture experts group.
- I. NTSC: National Television System Committee.
- J. PC: Personal computer.
- K. PTZ: Pan-tilt-zoom.
- L. RAID: Redundant array of independent disks.
- M. TCP: Transmission control protocol - connects hosts on the Internet.
- N. UPS: Uninterruptible power supply.
- O. WAN: Wide area network.

**1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include dimensions and data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For video surveillance. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - 1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - 2. Functional Block Diagram: Show single-line interconnections between components for signal transmission and control. Show cable types and sizes.
  - 3. Dimensioned plan and elevations of equipment racks, control panels, and consoles. Show access and workspace requirements.
  - 4. UPS: Sizing calculations.
  - 5. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Design Data: Include an equipment list consisting of every piece of equipment by model number, manufacturer, serial number, location, and date of original installation. Add pretesting record of each piece of equipment, listing name of person testing, date of test, set points of adjustments, name and description of the view of preset positions, description of alarms, and description of unit output responses to an alarm.

**1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Field quality-control reports.
- B. Product Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

### 1.05 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For cameras, power supplies, infrared illuminators, monitors, videotape recorders, digital video recorders, video switches, and control-station components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
1. Lists of spare parts and replacement components recommended to be stored at the site for ready access.

### 1.06 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Conditions: Capable of withstanding the following environmental conditions without mechanical or electrical damage or degradation of operating capability:
1. Control Station: Rated for continuous operation in ambient temperatures of 60 to 85 deg F and a relative humidity of 20 to 80 percent, noncondensing.
  2. Interior, Controlled Environment: System components, except central-station control unit, installed in air-conditioned interior environments shall be rated for continuous operation in ambient temperatures of 36 to 122 deg F dry bulb and 20 to 90 percent relative humidity, noncondensing. Use NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosures.
  3. Interior, Uncontrolled Environment: System components installed in non-temperature-controlled interior environments shall be rated for continuous operation in ambient temperatures of 0 to 122 deg F dry bulb and 20 to 90 percent relative humidity, noncondensing. Use NEMA 250, Type 3R enclosures.

### 1.07 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of cameras, equipment related to camera operation, and control-station equipment that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
1. Warranty Period: Three years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.01 SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

- A. Video-signal format shall comply with NTSC standard, composite interlaced video. Composite video-signal termination shall be 75 ohms.
- B. Surge Protection: Protect components from voltage surges originating external to equipment housing and entering through power, communication, signal, control, or sensing leads. Include surge protection for external wiring of each conductor's entry connection to components.
1. Minimum Protection for Power Connections 120 V and More: Auxiliary panel suppressors complying with requirements in Section 264313 "Surge Protection for Low-Voltage Electrical Power Circuits."
  2. Minimum Protection for Communication, Signal, Control, and Low-Voltage Power Connections: Comply with requirements in Section 264313 "Surge Protection for Low-Voltage Electrical Power Circuits" as recommended by manufacturer for type of line being protected.
- C. Tamper Protection: Tamper switches on enclosures, control units, pull boxes, junction boxes, cabinets, and other system components shall initiate a tamper-alarm signal when unit is opened or partially disassembled. Control-station, control-unit alarm display shall identify tamper alarms and indicate locations.

### 2.02 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with NECA 1.
- C. Comply with NFPA 70.
- D. Electronic data exchange between video surveillance system with an access-control system shall comply with SIA TVAC.

### 2.03 STANDARD CAMERAS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, :
1. Axis Communications
  2. Bosch Security Systems, Inc
  3. Honeywell Commercial Security; Honeywell International, Inc.
  4. Panasonic Corporation of North America
  5. Tyco Security Products; brand of Johnson Controls International plc, Building Solutions North America
- B. Color Camera:
1. Comply with UL 639.
  2. Pickup Device: CCD interline transfer, 380,000 771(H) by 492(V) pixels.
  3. Horizontal Resolution: 480 lines.
  4. Signal-to-Noise Ratio: Not less than 50 dB, with camera AGC off.
  5. With AGC, manually selectable on or off.
  6. Sensitivity:
    - a. Peak-to-peak signal strength: Deliver 1-V peak-to-peak video signal at the minimum specified light level. Illumination for the test shall be with lamps rated at approximately 2200-K color temperature, and with camera AGC off.
  7. Manually selectable modes for backlight compensation or normal lighting.
  8. Scanning Synchronization: Determined by external synch over the coaxial cable. Camera shall revert to internally generated synchronization on loss of external synch signal.
  9. White Balance: Auto-tracing white balance, with manually settable fixed balance option.
  10. Motion Detector: Built-in digital.
- C. Automatic Color Dome Camera: Assembled and tested as a manufactured unit, containing dome assembly, color camera, motorized pan and tilt, zoom lens, and receiver/driver.
1. Comply with UL 639.
  2. Pickup Device: CCD interline transfer, 380,000 768(H) by 494(V) pixels.
  3. Horizontal Resolution: 480 lines.
  4. Signal-to-Noise Ratio: Not less than 50 dB, with camera AGC off.
  5. With AGC, manually selectable on or off.
  6. Sensitivity:
    - a. Peak-to-peak signal strength: Deliver 1-V peak-to-peak video signal at the minimum specified light level. Illumination for the test shall be with lamps rated at approximately 2200-K color temperature, and with camera AGC off.
  7. Manually selectable modes for backlight compensation or normal lighting.
  8. Pan and Tilt: Direct-drive motor, 360-degree rotation angle, and 180-degree tilt angle. Pan-and-tilt speed shall be controlled by operator. Movement from preset positions shall be not less than 300 degrees per second.
  9. Preset Positioning: Eight user-definable scenes, each allowing 16-character titles. Controls shall include the following:
    - a. In "sequence mode," camera shall continuously sequence through preset positions, with dwell time and sequencing under operator control.
    - b. Motion detection shall be available at each camera position.
    - c. Up to four preset positions may be selected to be activated by an alarm. Each of the alarm positions may be programmed to output a response signal.
  10. Scanning Synchronization: Determined by external synch over the coaxial cable. Camera shall revert to internally generated synchronization on loss of external synch signal.
  11. White Balance: Auto-tracing white balance, with manually settable fixed balance option.
  12. Motion Detector: Built-in digital.
  13. Dome shall support multiplexed control communications using coaxial cable recommended by manufacturer.

## 2.04 LENSES

- A. Description: Optical-quality coated lens, designed specifically for video-surveillance applications and matched to specified camera. Provide color-corrected lenses with color cameras.
1. Auto-Iris Lens: Electrically controlled iris with circuit set to maintain a constant video level in varying lighting conditions.
  2. Fixed Lens: With calibrated focus ring.
  3. Zoom Lens: Motorized, remote-controlled unit, rated as "quiet operating." Features include the following:
    - a. Electrical Leads: Filtered to minimize video signal interference.
    - b. Motor Speed: Variable.
    - c. Lens shall be available with preset positioning capability to recall the position of specific scenes.

## 2.05 POWER SUPPLIES

- A. Low-voltage power supplies matched for voltage and current requirements of cameras and accessories, and of type as recommended by manufacturer of camera[, infrared illuminator,] and lens.
1. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1.

## 2.06 CAMERA-SUPPORTING EQUIPMENT

- A. Minimum Load Rating: Rated for load in excess of the total weight supported times a minimum safety factor of two.
- B. Pan Units: Motorized automatic-scanning units arranged to provide remote-controlled manual and automatic camera panning action, and equipped with matching mounting brackets.
1. Scanning Operation: Silent, smooth, and positive.
  2. Stops: Adjustable without disassembly, to limit the scanning arc.
- C. Pan-and-Tilt Units: Motorized units arranged to provide remote-controlled aiming of cameras with smooth and silent operation, and equipped with matching mounting brackets.
1. Panning Rotation: 0 to 355 degrees, with adjustable stops.
  2. Tilt Movement: 90 degrees, plus or minus 5 degrees, with adjustable stops.
  3. Speed: 12 degrees per second in both horizontal and vertical planes.
  4. Wiring: Factory prewired for camera and zoom lens functions and pan-and-tilt power and control.
  5. Built-in encoders or potentiometers for position feedback.
  6. Pan-and-tilt unit shall be available with preset positioning capability to recall the position of a specific scene.
- D. Mounting Brackets for Fixed Cameras: Type matched to items supported and mounting conditions. Include manual pan-and-tilt adjustment.
- E. Protective Housings for Fixed and Movable Cameras: Steel or 6061 T6 aluminum enclosures with internal camera mounting and connecting provisions that are matched to camera/lens combination and mounting and installing arrangement of camera to be housed.
1. Camera Viewing Window: Polycarbonate window, aligned with camera lens.
  2. Duplex Receptacle: Internally mounted.
  3. Alignment Provisions: Camera mounting shall provide for field aiming of camera and permit removal and reinstallation of camera lens without disturbing camera alignment.
  4. Built-in, thermostat-activated units. Units shall be automatically controlled so the environmental limits of the camera equipment are not exceeded.
  5. Sun shield shall not interfere with normal airflow around the housing.
  6. Mounting bracket and hardware for wall or ceiling mounting of the housing. Bracket shall be of same material as the housing; mounting hardware shall be stainless steel.
  7. Finish: Housing and mounting bracket shall be factory finished using manufacturer's standard finishing process suitable for the environment.

## 2.07 MONITORS

- A. Color:
1. Metal cabinet units designed for continuous operation.
  2. Horizontal Resolution: 300 lines.
  3. Minimum Front Panel Devices and Controls: Power switch; power-on indicator; and brightness, contrast, color, and tint controls.
  4. Degaussing: Automatic.
  5. Mounting: Single, 14-inch, vertical, EIA 19-inch electronic equipment rack or cabinet complying with CEA 310-E.
  6. Electrical: 120-V ac, 60 Hz.

## 2.08 NETWORK VIDEO RECORDERS

- A. External storage or internal 250-1, 500-GB hard disk drive.
1. Video and audio recording over TCP/IP network.
  2. Video recording of MPEG-2 and MPEG-4 streams.
  3. Video recording up to 48 Mbps for internal storage and up to 100 Mbps for external storage.
  4. Duplex Operation: Simultaneous recording and playback.
  5. Continuous and alarm-based recording.
  6. Full-Featured Search Capabilities: Search based on camera, time, or date.
  7. Automatic data replenishment to ensure recording even if network is down.
  8. Digital certification by watermarking.
  9. Internal RAID storage or non-RAID storage of up to 1500 GB.
  10. Capable of adding external RAID storage up to 7000 GB for models with no internal storage.
  11. Full integration with LAN, Intranet, or Internet through standard Web browser or video management software.
  12. Integrated Web server FTP server functionality.
  13. Supports up to 16, 32, or 64 devices.

## 2.09 IP VIDEO SYSTEMS

- A. Description:
1. System shall provide high-quality delivery and processing of IP-based video, audio, and control data using standard Ethernet-based networks.
  2. System shall have seamless integration of all video surveillance and control functions.
  3. Graphical user interface software shall manage all IP-based video matrix switching and camera control functions, two-way audio communication, alarm monitoring and control, and recording and archive/retrieval management. IP system shall also be capable of integrating into larger system environments.
  4. System design shall include all necessary compression software for high-performance, dual-stream, MPEG-2/MPEG-4 video. Unit shall provide connections for all video cameras, camera PTZ control data, bidirectional audio, discreet sensor inputs, and control system outputs.
  5. All camera signals shall be compressed, encoded, and delivered onto the network for processing and control by the IP video-management software.
  6. Camera system units shall be ruggedly built and designed for extreme adverse environments, complying with NEMA Type environmental standards.
  7. Encoder/decoder combinations shall place video, audio, and data network stream that can be managed from multiple workstations on the user's LAN or WAN.
  8. All system interconnect cables, workstation PCs, PTZ joysticks, and network intermediate devices shall be provided for full performance of specified system.

## 2.10 SIGNAL TRANSMISSION COMPONENTS

- A. Cable: Coaxial cable elements have 75-ohm nominal impedance. Comply with requirements in Section 26519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

- B. Video Surveillance Coaxial Cable Connectors: BNC type, 75 ohms. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

### **PART 3 EXECUTION**

#### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine pathway elements intended for cables. Check raceways and other elements for compliance with space allocations, installation tolerance, hazards to camera installation, and other conditions affecting installation.
- B. Examine roughing-in for LAN, WAN, and IP network before device installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### **3.02 WIRING**

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 270528 "Pathways for Communications Systems."
- B. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Except raceways are not required in accessible indoor ceiling spaces and attics.
  - 2. Except raceways are not required in hollow gypsum board partitions.
  - 3. Conceal raceways and wiring except in unfinished spaces.
- C. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Provide and use lacing bars and distribution spools.
- D. Splices, Taps, and Terminations: For power and control wiring, use numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes; terminal cabinets; and equipment enclosures. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A-486B.
- E. For communication wiring, comply with the following:
  - 1. Section 271313 "Communications Copper Backbone Cabling."
  - 2. Section 271323 "Communications Optical Fiber Backbone Cabling."
  - 3. Section 271333 "Communications Coaxial Backbone Cabling."
  - 4. Section 271513 "Communications Copper Horizontal Cabling."
  - 5. Section 271523 "Communications Optical Fiber Horizontal Cabling."
  - 6. Section 271533 "Communications Coaxial Horizontal Cabling."
- F. Grounding: Provide independent-signal circuit grounding recommended in writing by manufacturer.

#### **3.03 VIDEO SURVEILLANCE SYSTEM INSTALLATION**

- A. Install cameras and infrared illuminators level and plumb.
- B. Install cameras with 84-inch- minimum clear space below cameras and their mountings. Change type of mounting to achieve required clearance.
- C. Set pan unit and pan-and-tilt unit stops to suit final camera position and to obtain the field of view required for camera. Connect all controls and alarms, and adjust.
- D. Install power supplies and other auxiliary components at control stations unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Avoid ground loops by making ground connections only at the control station.
  - 1. For 12- and 24-V dc cameras, connect the coaxial cable shields only at the monitor end.
- F. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals according to Section 270553 "Identification for Communications Systems."

#### **3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

- C. Perform tests and inspections.
  - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service with Test Assistance: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
- D. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Inspection: Verify that units and controls are properly installed, connected, and labeled, and that interconnecting wires and terminals are identified.
  - 2. Pretesting: Align and adjust system and pretest components, wiring, and functions to verify that they comply with specified requirements. Conduct tests at varying lighting levels, including day and night scenes as applicable. Prepare video-surveillance equipment for acceptance and operational testing as follows:
    - a. Prepare equipment list described in "Informational Submittals" Article.
    - b. Verify operation of auto-iris lenses.
    - c. Set back-focus of fixed focal length lenses. At focus set to infinity, simulate nighttime lighting conditions by using a dark glass filter of a density that produces a clear image. Adjust until image is in focus with and without the filter.
    - d. Set back-focus of zoom lenses. At focus set to infinity, simulate nighttime lighting conditions by using a dark glass filter of a density that produces a clear image. Additionally, set zoom to full wide angle and aim camera at an object 50 to 75 feet away. Adjust until image is in focus from full wide angle to full telephoto, with the filter in place.
    - e. Set and name all preset positions; consult Owner's personnel.
    - f. Set sensitivity of motion detection.
    - g. Connect and verify responses to alarms.
    - h. Verify operation of control-station equipment.
  - 3. Test Schedule: Schedule tests after pretesting has been successfully completed and system has been in normal functional operation for at least 14 days. Provide a minimum of 10 days' notice of test schedule.
  - 4. Operational Tests: Perform operational system tests to verify that system complies with Specifications. Include all modes of system operation. Test equipment for proper operation in all functional modes.
- E. Video surveillance system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### **3.05 ADJUSTING**

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose. Tasks shall include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Check cable connections.
  - 2. Check proper operation of cameras and lenses. Verify operation of auto-iris lenses and adjust back-focus as needed.
  - 3. Adjust all preset positions; consult Owner's personnel.
  - 4. Recommend changes to cameras, lenses, and associated equipment to improve Owner's use of video surveillance system.
  - 5. Provide a written report of adjustments and recommendations.

### **3.06 CLEANING**

- A. Clean installed items using methods and materials recommended in writing by manufacturer.
- B. Clean video-surveillance-system components, including camera-housing windows, lenses, and monitor screens.



**3.07 DEMONSTRATION**

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain video-surveillance equipment.

**END OF SECTION 28 20 00**

**SECTION 28 46 21.11  
ADDRESSABLE FIRE-ALARM SYSTEMS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Existing fire-alarm system to be modified.
  - 2. Addressable fire-alarm system.
  - 3. Fire-alarm control unit (FACU).
  - 4. Manual fire-alarm boxes.
  - 5. System smoke detectors.
  - 6. Duct smoke detectors.
  - 7. Fire-alarm notification appliances.
  - 8. Emergency responder radio coverage system.

**1.02 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Approved Permit Submittal: Submittals must be approved by authorities having jurisdiction prior to submitting them to Architect.
- B. Delegated Design Submittal: For notification appliances and smoke and heat detectors, in addition to submittals listed above, indicate compliance with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

**1.03 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fire-alarm systems and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals and deliver copies to authorities having jurisdiction.

**1.04 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Extra Stock Material: Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

**1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Installer Qualifications:
  - 1. Personnel must be trained and certified by manufacturer for installation of units required for this Project.
  - 2. Installation must be by personnel certified by NICET as fire-alarm Level III technician.
  - 3. Obtain certification by NRTL in accordance with NFPA 72.
  - 4. Licensed or certified by authorities having jurisdiction.

**1.06 WARRANTY**

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace fire-alarm system equipment and components that fail because of defects in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 EXISTING FIRE ALARM SYSTEM TO BE MODIFIED**

- A. Description:
  - 1. Existing system is an addressable system from Simplex. Scope of work under this project includes adding, removing, and relocating of initiating and notification devices to the first floor. Existing infrastructure is to remain otherwise. All new devices shall be similar to existing from same manufacturer.
- B. Manual Fire-Alarm Boxes:
  - 1. General Requirements for Manual Fire-Alarm Boxes: Comply with UL 38. Boxes must be finished in red with molded, raised-letter operating instructions in contrasting color; must

show visible indication of operation; and must be mounted on recessed outlet box. If indicated as surface mounted, provide manufacturer's surface back box.

- a. Double-action mechanism requiring two actions to initiate alarm, breaking-glass or plastic-rod pull-lever type; with integral addressable module arranged to communicate manual-station status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to FACU.

C. System Smoke Detectors:

1. Photoelectric Smoke Detectors:

a. Performance Criteria:

- 1) Regulatory Requirements:
  - (a) NFPA 72.
  - (b) UL 268.
- 2) Detectors must be two-wire type.
- 3) Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to FACU.
- 4) Base Mounting: Detector and associated electronic components must be mounted in twist-lock module that connects to fixed base. Provide terminals in fixed base for connection to building wiring.
- 5) Integral Visual-Indicating Light: LED type, indicating detector has operated and power-on status.
- 6) Detector must have functional humidity range within 10 to 90 percent relative humidity.
- 7) Color: White.
- 8) Rate-of-rise temperature characteristic of combination smoke- and heat-detection units must be selectable at FACU for 15 or 20 deg F per minute.
- 9) Fixed-temperature sensing characteristic of combination smoke- and heat-detection units must be independent of rate-of-rise sensing and must be settable at FACU to operate at 135 or 155 deg F.

D. Duct Smoke Detectors:

1. Description: Photoelectric-type, duct-mounted smoke detector.

2. Performance Criteria:

- a. Regulatory Requirements:
  - 1) NFPA 72.
  - 2) UL 268A.
- b. Detectors must be two-wire type.
- c. Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to FACU.
- d. Self-Restoring: Detectors do not require resetting or readjustment after actuation to restore them to normal operation.
- e. Integral Visual-Indicating Light: LED type, indicating detector has operated and power-on status.
- f. Relay Fan Shutdown: Fully programmable relay rated to interrupt fan motor-control circuit.

E. Fire-Alarm Notification Appliances:

1. Fire-Alarm Audible Notification Appliances:

- a. Description: Horns, bells, or other notification devices that cannot output voice messages.
- b. Performance Criteria:
  - 1) Regulatory Requirements:
    - (a) NFPA 72.
  - 2) Individually addressed, connected to signaling-line circuit, equipped for mounting as indicated, and with screw terminals for system connections.
  - 3) Sounders, High Volume 24 V(dc): Less than 6 mA of alarm current.
  - 4) Sounders, Low Volume 24 V(dc): Less than 4 mA of alarm current.

- 5) Audible notification appliances must have functional humidity range of 10 to 95 percent relative humidity.
  - 6) ISO Temporal 3 Evacuation Tone: 90 plus or minus 4 dB(A-weighted) at 24 V.
  - 7) ISO Temporal 3 Alert Tone: 5 plus or minus 5 dB(A-weighted) at 24 V.
  - 8) AS2220 Evacuation Tone: 93 plus or minus 4 dB(A-weighted) at 24 V.
  - 9) AS2220 Alert Tone: 93 plus or minus 5 dB(A-weighted) at 24 V.
  - 10) Combination Devices: Factory-integrated audible and visible devices in single-mounting assembly, equipped for mounting as indicated, and with screw terminals for system connections.
2. Fire-Alarm Voice/Tone Notification Appliances:
    - a. Description: Notification appliances capable of outputting voice evacuation messages.
    - b. Performance Criteria:
      - 1) Regulatory Requirements:
        - (a) NFPA 72.
        - (b) UL 1480.
      - 2) Mounting: Flush, semi-recessed, or surface mounted and bidirectional.
      - 3) Combination Devices: Factory-integrated audible and visible devices in single-mounting assembly, equipped for mounting as indicated, and with screw terminals for system connections.
  3. Fire-Alarm Visible Notification Appliances:
    - a. Performance Criteria:
      - 1) Regulatory Requirements:
        - (a) NFPA 72.
        - (b) UL 1971.
      - 2) Rated Light Output:
        - (a) 15/30/75/110 cd, selectable in field.
      - 3) Mounting Faceplate: Factory finished, red.

### **PART 3 EXECUTION**

#### **3.01 PREPARATION:**

- A. Interruption of Existing Fire-Alarm Service: Do not interrupt fire-alarm service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary guard service in accordance with requirements indicated:
  1. Notify Owner no fewer than seven days in advance of proposed interruption of fire-alarm service. Do not proceed with interruption of fire-alarm service without Owner's written permission.

#### **3.02 INSTALLATION OF EQUIPMENT:**

- A. Connecting to Existing Equipment: Verify that existing fire-alarm system is operational before making changes or connections.
  1. Expand, modify, and supplement existing control equipment as necessary to extend existing control functions to new points. New components must be capable of merging with existing configuration without degrading performance of either system.
- B. Smoke- and Heat-Detector Spacing:
  1. Smooth ceiling spacing must not exceed 30 ft. (9 m).
  2. Spacing of detectors for irregular areas, for irregular ceiling construction, and for high ceiling areas must be determined in accordance with Annex A or Annex B in NFPA 72.

#### **3.03 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS:**

- A. Install nameplate for each electrical connection, indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection.
  1. Nameplate must be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs with black background and engraved white letters at least 1/2 inch high.

**3.04 PATHWAYS:**

- A. Pathways must be installed in EMT.
- B. Exposed EMT must be painted red enamel in utility spaces, and painted to match architecture in public spaces.
- C. Connections:

**3.05 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL:**

- A. Field tests must be witnessed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Administrant for Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Administer and perform tests and inspections with assistance of factory-authorized service representative.
- C. Tests and Inspections:

**3.06 MAINTENANCE:**

- A. Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, maintenance service must include 12 months' full maintenance by skilled employees of manufacturer's designated service organization.

**END OF SECTION 28 46 21.11**



# ECS Midwest, LLC

Geotechnical Engineering Report

**Proposed OCC Skokie Campus Elevator**

7701 Lincoln Avenue  
Skokie, Illinois 60077

ECS Project Number 16:9836-I

August 18, 2023





August 18, 2023

Ms. Jamie Boller  
Senior Project Manager  
**Cotter Consulting**  
100 South Wacker Drive, Suite 100  
Chicago, Illinois 60606  
Email: [j.boller@cotterconsulting.com](mailto:j.boller@cotterconsulting.com)

ECS Project No. 16:9836-I

Reference: Geotechnical Engineering Report  
**Proposed OCC Skokie Campus Elevator**  
7701 Lincoln Avenue  
Skokie, Illinois 60077

Dear Ms. Boller:

ECS Midwest, LLC (ECS) has completed the subsurface exploration, laboratory testing, and geotechnical engineering analyses for the above-referenced project. The geotechnical services were performed in general accordance with the agreed upon scope of services. This report presents our understanding of the geotechnical aspects of the project along with the results of the field exploration and laboratory testing conducted, and our design and construction recommendations.

It has been our pleasure to be of service to Cotter Consulting during the design phase of this project. ECS would appreciate the opportunity to remain involved during the continuation of the design phase and provide our services during construction phase operations to verify subsurface conditions anticipated for this report. Should you have questions concerning the information contained in this report, or if ECS can be of further assistance to you, please contact us.

Respectfully submitted,

**ECS MIDWEST, LLC**

*Trevor Meinholz, E.I.T.*  
Geotechnical Staff Project Manager  
[TMeinholz@ecslimited.com](mailto:TMeinholz@ecslimited.com)

*Mark J. Carlson, RPG, D.GE, P.E., F. ASCE*  
Sr. Principal/ Chief Engineer  
[MCarlson@ecslimited.com](mailto:MCarlson@ecslimited.com)  
Renews 11/30/2023

[https://ecslimited365.sharepoint.com/Sites/16Chicago/16 GEO Rept 09/Job 9500 - 9999/9836-I - OCC Skokie Campus Elevator/Report/9836-I - OCC Skokie Campus Elevator Geotechnical Report.Docx](https://ecslimited365.sharepoint.com/Sites/16Chicago/16_GEO_Rept_09/Job_9500_-_9999/9836-I_-_OCC_Skokie_Campus_Elevator/Report/9836-I_-_OCC_Skokie_Campus_Elevator_Geotechnical_Report.Docx)

---

**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

**EXECUTIVE SUMMARY .....1**

**1.0 INTRODUCTION .....2**

**2.0 PROJECT INFORMATION .....3**

    2.1 Project Location And Current Site Use ..... 3

    2.2 Proposed Construction ..... 3

**3.0 FIELD EXPLORATION AND LABORATORY TESTING .....5**

    3.1 Field Exploration ..... 5

    3.2 Subsurface Characterization..... 5

    3.3 Groundwater Observations ..... 5

    3.4 Laboratory Services ..... 6

**4.0 DESIGN RECOMMENDATIONS.....7**

    4.1 Foundations ..... 7

    4.2 Seismic Design Considerations ..... 10

**5.0 SITE CONSTRUCTION RECOMMENDATIONS.....11**

    5.1 Subgrade Preparation..... 11

        5.1.1 Stripping and Grubbing..... 11

        5.1.2 Proofrolling ..... 11

        5.1.3 Site Temporary Dewatering..... 11

    5.2 Earthwork Operations ..... 13

        5.2.1 Engineered Fill Materials ..... 13

        5.2.2 Compaction ..... 14

    5.3 Foundation and Slab Observations ..... 17

    5.4 Utility Installations..... 18

    5.5 General Construction Considerations ..... 18

**6.0 CLOSING.....20**



## **APPENDICES**

### **Appendix A – Drawings & Reports**

- Site Location Diagram
- Boring Location Diagram

### **Appendix B – Field Operations**

- Reference Notes for Boring Logs
- Subsurface Exploration Procedure: Standard Penetration Testing (SPT)
- Boring Log B-01

### **Appendix C – Laboratory Operations**

- Laboratory Testing Procedures: Index Testing
- Plasticity Chart(s)

### **Appendix D – Supplemental Report Documents**

- Important Information about This Geotechnical-Engineering Report

## EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

This Executive Summary is intended as a very brief overview of the primary geotechnical conditions that are expected to affect design and construction. Information gleaned from this Executive Summary should not be utilized in lieu of reading the entire geotechnical report.

- The proposed elevator may be supported by a mat foundation bearing on competent native soils or new engineered fill overlying competent native soils proportioned for a maximum net allowable bearing pressure of 3,000 psf.
- Shoring or underpinning of adjacent footings or structures will be necessary should those existing structural elements be undermined or are situated within the zone-of-influence of the elevator pit excavation.

---

## 1.0 INTRODUCTION

The purpose of this study was to provide geotechnical information for the design of foundations and for the proposed elevator addition to the Oakton Community College library to be constructed in Skokie, Illinois. The recommendations developed for this report are based on project information supplied by Ms. Jamie Boller with Cotter Consulting.

ECS provided its services in accordance with ECS Proposal No. 16:23187-GPR, dated July 11, 2023 and authorized by Mr. Kunal Patel with Cotter Consulting on July 19, 2023 which includes our Terms and Conditions of Service.

This report contains the procedures and results of our subsurface exploration and laboratory testing programs, review of existing site conditions, engineering analyses, and recommendations for the design and construction of the project.

The report includes the following items:

- A brief review and description of our field and laboratory test procedures and the results of the testing conducted.
- A review of surface topographical features and site conditions.
- A review of subsurface soil stratigraphy with pertinent physical properties.
- Records of the subsurface exploration (test boring logs).
- Recommendations for site preparation and construction of compacted fills, including an evaluation of on-site soils for use as compacted fills and identification of potentially unsuitable soils and/or soils exhibiting excessive moisture at the time of sampling.
- Recommendations for shallow foundations for the proposed elevator pit including recommended maximum allowable soil bearing pressure and settlement estimates.
- Seismic Site Classification in accordance with International Building Code provisions based on the weighted average SPT 'N' blow counts (no liquefaction analysis).
- An evaluation of the on-site soil characteristics encountered in the soil borings and suitability of the on-site materials for reuse as engineered fill to support pavements and slabs on-grade, including compaction recommendations and suitable material guidelines.
- Considerations relative to groundwater control.

## 2.0 PROJECT INFORMATION

### 2.1 PROJECT LOCATION AND CURRENT SITE USE

Oakton Community College's Skokie Campus is located at 7701 Lincoln Avenue in Skokie, Illinois and is bounded to the north by Mulford Street, to the east by Skokie Boulevard and to the south and west by Lincoln Ave and West Howard Street. Of specific interest to this project is the basement level situated below the library on the north side of the College Building where the elevator structure will be constructed. Based on our and Cotter Consulting's review of previous site civil drawings, the basement floor is located approximately 18 feet below the first floor at an elevation of EL. 593.77 feet NAVD88. The site location is shown below, and on the Site Location Diagram in Appendix A:



Site Location Map (Site outlined in RED)

***Site grade elevations determined without a professional site survey are approximate and may not be appropriate for final design.***

According to available information on Oakton Community College's website, the Skokie Campus was opened in 1980 in a former high school, although the existing Campus was constructed in 1995.

### 2.2 PROPOSED CONSTRUCTION

Based on the available information, ECS understands that the proposed development will include the construction of a new elevator. The elevator will be supported below the basement level of Oakton Community College's library situated on the north side of the building. The proposed elevator will reportedly service the first and second floors of that building. The following information explains our understanding of the planned improvements:

ELEVATOR DESIGN INFORMATION		
Subject	Design Information / Assumptions	
Usage	Elevator servicing the first and second floors of the library on the north side of the building	R
Elevator Foundation Loads	Up to 30 kips	R
Settlement Tolerance	1-inch total and ½-inch differential	B
Finished Floor Elevation	Reported EL. 18 feet below finished floor elevation of the First Floor. Top of elevator pit mat at approximately EL. 593.77 Feet NAVD88	R

*R: Reported by client and/or Design Team*

*B: Based on ECS' estimate in absence of information from Client and/or Design Team*

***If ECS' understanding of the project is not correct, especially if the structural loads or elevations are different, please contact ECS so that we may review these changes and revise our recommendations, as appropriate.***

### 3.0 FIELD EXPLORATION AND LABORATORY TESTING

#### 3.1 FIELD EXPLORATION

The exploration procedures are explained in greater detail in Appendix B including the insert titled *Subsurface Exploration Procedures: SPT*. Our scope of services included advancing one (1) SPT soil boring with a hand auger team. Our borings were located with a handheld GPS unit and their approximate locations are shown on the Boring Location Diagram in Appendix A. Ground surface elevations listed on the boring logs were determined using topographic information provided by Cotter Consulting who has access to previous site civil plans.

The ECS hand auger crew backfilled the boreholes at completion of drilling and patched the slab surface. Settlement of borehole backfill can occur over time resulting in a hazard. Monitoring the boreholes after initial drilling activities is not within our scope but should be done by the client or property owner.

#### 3.2 SUBSURFACE CHARACTERIZATION

The subsurface conditions encountered were generally consistent with published geological mapping, excluding the undocumented fill. Listed in the following Table is a generalized characterization of the soil strata encountered at the boring locations during the subsurface exploration. For subsurface information at a specific location, refer to the Boring Logs in Appendix B.

GENERALIZED SUBSURFACE STRATIGRAPHY						
Approximate Depth Range (feet)	Approximate Elevation Range (feet, NAV88)	Stratum No.	Material Description	Calibrated Penetrometer Resistance Q <sub>p</sub> (tsf)	Natural Moisture Content (%)	SPT <sup>(1)</sup> N-values (bpf)
0 to 1 Surface cover	593.77 to 592.77	N/A	<b>Asphalt:</b> 2 inches +/- Over <b>Gravel:</b> 8 inches +/-	N/A	N/A	N/A
1 to 3	592.77 to 590.77	I	<b>(SP) MEDIUM-COARSE SAND,</b> brown, very loose	N/A	N/A	4
3 to 15	590.77 to 578.77	II	<b>(CL) LEAN CLAY,</b> gray, very stiff	2 to 3¼	14 to 18	8 to 13

Notes: (1) Standard Penetration Test  
 (2) SPT N-Values in fill or possible fill may not be representative of actual in situ conditions.

Because the split-spoon sampler has a 1¾-inch inside diameter, the soil classifications noted on the boring logs may not be representative of the entire soil matrix. Material larger than the 1¾-inch inside diameter of the split-spoon sampler cannot be collected and observed directly but may be present given the relatively high blow counts in portions of the profile.

#### 3.3 GROUNDWATER OBSERVATIONS

The drillers observed the boreholes for the presence of measurable free groundwater during drilling and at the completion of drilling. Groundwater was encountered during drilling and at completion of drilling at boring HA-01 at a depth of about 14 feet below the existing basement floor (i.e., approximately EL. 579.77 feet above MSL). However, significant perched or trapped ground water and may be present in the backfill around the basement wall periphery (in particular if the basement level backfill is granular). Additional test borings and/or the installation of a standpipe piezometer would be necessary to establish

---

the free ground water conditions (in the vicinity of the basement level) since this exploration was performed solely below the floor.

Please note that the boreholes are open for a very short period of time and stabilized groundwater readings may not be possible in fine-grained soils and may take several days. Soils in the Midwest frequently oxidize from gray to brown above the long-term groundwater level. The change to gray was not identified in this subsurface exploration.

Variations in the groundwater table aquifer can occur because of changes in precipitation, evaporation, surface water runoff, construction activities, and other factors. The highest groundwater observations are normally encountered in late winter and early spring and our current groundwater observations are not expected to be at the seasonal maximum water table. Perched water conditions may also develop and/or exist at shallower depths seasonally, particularly within more permeable soil underlain by less permeable soil.

### **3.4 LABORATORY SERVICES**

The laboratory services performed by ECS for this project included select tests performed on samples retained from the field exploration operations. Classification and index property tests were performed on representative soil samples.

- Natural Moisture Content (ASTM D2216)
- Calibrated Penetrometer Resistance
- Atterberg Limits (ASTM D4318-10)

Each sample was visually classified on the basis of texture and plasticity in accordance with ASTM D2488 Standard Practice for Description and Identification of Soils (Visual-Manual Procedures) and including USCS classification symbols. After classification, the samples were grouped in the major zones noted on the boring logs in Appendix B. The group symbols for each soil type are indicated in parentheses along with the soil descriptions. The stratification lines between strata on the logs are approximate; in situ, the transitions may be gradual.

The soil samples will be retained in our laboratory for a period of 60 days, after which, they will be discarded, unless other instructions are received as to their disposal.

## 4.0 DESIGN RECOMMENDATIONS

### 4.1 FOUNDATIONS

Provided subgrades and new engineered fills are prepared as discussed herein, the proposed elevator structure can be supported by a mat foundation element. Based on the results of our subsurface exploration, the parameters in the Table below could be used for the proposed elevator pit mat foundation design:

SHALLOW FOUNDATION DESIGN PARAMETERS	
Design Parameter	Mat Foundation Element
Maximum Net Allowable Bearing Pressure <sup>(1)</sup>	3,000 psf
Acceptable Bearing Soil Material <sup>(2)</sup>	Very stiff LEAN CLAY (CL) - Stratum II
Minimum Width	16 inches
Minimum Interior Embedment Depth (below slab or finished grade) <sup>(3)</sup>	18 inches
Minimum Exterior Frost Depth (below final exterior grade)	42 inches
Estimated Total Settlement <sup>(3)</sup>	Less than 1 inch
Differential Total Settlement <sup>(4)</sup>	Less than ½ inch

Notes:

- (1) Net allowable bearing pressure is the applied pressure in excess of the surrounding overburden soils above the base of the foundation.
- (2) For bearing considerations. Deeper frost embedment should be utilized for interior foundations not in continuously heated areas.
- (3) Based on estimated structural loads. If final loads are different, ECS must be contacted to update foundation recommendations and settlement estimates.
- (4) Based on estimated loads and variability among the borings. Differential settlements can be re-evaluated once the loads are known and foundation plans are complete.

**Undercuts:** Undocumented fill material was encountered at the boring location. The undocumented fill extended to an approximate depth of 3 feet below the ground surface. Test pits may be prudent to further evaluate the extent and composition of the undocumented fill materials.

Adequate bearing soils for direct foundation support or as the subgrade for well-graded crushed aggregate engineered compacted backfill and indirect foundation support, where encountered at the building boring locations at the approximate depths below the ground surface, are listed in the following Table:

ANTICIPATED DEPTHS TO ADEQUATE FOUNDATION BEARING SOIL		
Test Boring	Approximate Depth Below Existing Basement Floor (feet)	Approximate Bearing Elevation (Feet, NAVD88)
HA-01	3	590.77

Undercuts should be backfilled with engineered fill or controlled low-strength material (CLSM with  $f'_c \approx 100$  psi at 28 days), or lean concrete up to the original design bottom of footing elevation; the original footing shall be constructed on top of the new engineered fill or CLSM or lean concrete. Clay and silt soils encountered at many of the boring locations at or near the anticipated bearing elevations are sensitive



to disturbance when exposed, especially when wet. The contractor should exercise care and limit traffic and potential disturbance of the soils. If disturbed, the exposed surfaces should be compacted with a plate compacter or jumping jack prior to the placement of reinforcing steel and concrete.

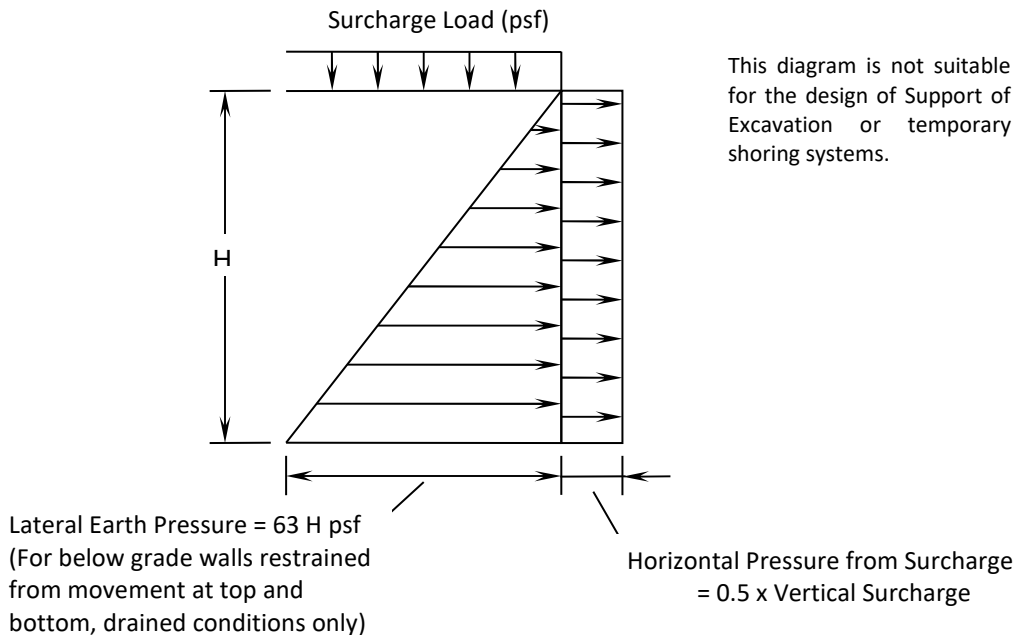
**Lateral Loadings for Shallow Foundations:** The shallow foundations maybe be subjected to lateral forces. Lateral load resistance will be developed by a combination of sliding friction acting at the base of foundations and the passive earth pressure developed by the footings below-grade. In no case should the lateral sliding resistance exceed half the dead load. The lateral load resistance for shallow foundations is recommended to utilize the following parameters:

FOUNDATION LATERAL LOADING RESISTANCE PARAMETERS	
Soil Parameter	Estimated Value
Coefficient of Passive Earth Pressure ( $K_p$ )	2.0
Soil Moist Unit Weight ( $\gamma$ )	120 pcf
Cohesion [ <i>Foundations bearing on clay</i> ] ( $C$ ) <sup>(1)</sup>	1,500 psf
Interface Friction Angle [ <i>Poured concrete on granular soil</i> ] ( $\phi_f$ )	21°
Sliding Friction Coefficient [ <i>Poured concrete on granular soil</i> ] ( $\mu$ )	0.38
Passive Equivalent Fluid Pressure <sup>(2)</sup>	240H (psf/ft)

1. Cohesion may be used for lateral sliding resistance on the clay soil, but in no case should the lateral sliding resistance exceed half the dead load.
2. Neglect the passive resistance in the frost zone due to loss of strength seasonally and strain required to mobilize.

Design of the foundation for lateral loads should be based on a minimum factor of safety against sliding of 1.5 and overturning of 2. If the resultant force of the maximum vertical force does not act within the middle one-third (kern) of the footing, a smaller effective bearing area will occur and thereby result in a higher effective bearing pressure. If the soil to provide passive resistance against the side of the foundation may not be present during the life of the structure (e.g., the soil could be excavated or be subject to erosion) then passive pressure should be ignored.

**Lateral Pressures:** The below-grade walls for the elevator pit should be designed to resist lateral pressures from the adjacent soil, water, and applicable surface or other surcharges. The walls are recommended to be designed as restrained retaining walls based on at-rest earth pressures. Based on the borings, it is expected cohesive soils will be retained by the walls. Walls that are restrained from movement at the top are recommended to be designed for a linearly increasing lateral earth pressure. The figure below depicts our recommended at-rest lateral earth pressure condition for a “drained below-grade wall” restrained at the top.



Below-grade walls that are not designed to resist the actual pressures will be prone to lateral movement and potential distress. Lower equivalent fluid pressures are possible if a sloped excavation bank extending outside the active pressure zone and granular backfill are used. Where not fully drained, the walls both inside and out may be subject to moisture and/or water problems. Surcharge loads imposed within a 45-degree slope of the base of the wall should be considered in the below grade wall design.

**Adjacent Existing Foundations:** Care must be taken to protect the existing structures and underground utilities. Excavations must be done to not undermine the existing construction, or otherwise adversely affect the structural integrity of the existing building and underground utilities. Excavations should not extend below adjacent existing foundation unless underpinning or other forms of support are provided. The mat foundations for the elevator pit will bear beneath the bearing elevation of nearby existing foundations. A structural engineer should evaluate the stresses to be imposed on the lower foundation system and confirm that the structural integrity of the existing structure and new addition will be maintained.

If load will be added directly to existing foundations or to the support soil within the influence zone of the existing foundations, contact ECS. Load added directly to the existing footings or indirectly to the support soil of existing footing will result in some additional settlement. The amount of settlement will depend on the added load, the existing load, size of the existing footings, and strength and settlement characteristics of the support soil. Test pits in the presence of ECS are recommended to help determine the characteristics of the existing foundation bearing material, and to help evaluate the degree to which load on the existing foundations may be increased, if needed.

**Foundation Uplift:** Resistance to uplift forces will be developed by the dead weight of the structure plus the weight of the soil backfill above the foundation. A backfill unit weight of 120 pounds per cubic foot (pcf) above the water table and a unit weight of 58 pcf below the water table is preliminarily recommended. Higher values may be feasible depending on the actual material used. It is recommended the backfill be compacted to at least 95 percent of the maximum dry density determined by Modified

Proctor test (ASTM D1557). The final design of the foundation for uplift should be based on a minimum factor of safety against uplift of 2.0.

#### 4.2 SEISMIC DESIGN CONSIDERATIONS

**Seismic Site Class:** The International Building Code (IBC) requires the site be classified as Site Class A, B, C, D, E or F in accordance with Chapter 20 of ASCE 7 based on the site soil properties. The three parameters used to classify sites are shear wave velocity ( $v_s$ ); undrained shear strength ( $su$ ); and Standard Penetration Test (SPT) resistance (N-value). The seismic Site Class definitions for the weighted average of shear wave velocity, shear strength or SPT N-value in the upper 100 feet of the soil profile are listed below.

SEISMIC SITE CLASS				
Site Class	Soil Profile Name	Shear Wave Velocity, $V_s$ , (ft./s)	N-Value (bpf)	$S_u$ Value (psf)
A	Hard Rock	$V_s > 5,000$ fps	N/A	N/A
B	Rock	$2,500 < V_s \leq 5,000$ fps	N/A	N/A
C	Very dense soil and soft rock	$1,200 < V_s \leq 2,500$ fps	$>50$	$\geq 2,000$
D	Stiff Soil Profile	$600 \leq V_s \leq 1,200$ fps	15 to 50	1,000 to 2,000
E	Soft Soil Profile	$V_s < 600$ fps	$<15$	$\leq 1,000$

The maximum explored depth in the present subsurface exploration was 50 feet below current site grade. It is our opinion, based on the subsurface conditions encountered and our knowledge of the area geology, the site soils can be characterized as Site Class D.

**Ground Motion Parameters:** In addition to the seismic site classification noted above, ECS has determined the design spectral response acceleration parameters following the ASCE7-16 methodology. The Mapped Responses were estimated from the OSHPD Seismic Design Map website (<http://seismicmaps.org/>). The design responses for the short (0.2-sec,  $S_{DS}$ ) and 1-second period ( $S_{D1}$ ) are noted at the far-right end of the following Table:

GROUND MOTION PARAMETERS [ASCE7-16 Method]								
Period (sec)	Mapped Spectral Response Accelerations (g)		Values of Site Coefficient for Site Class		Maximum Spectral Response Acceleration Adjusted for Site Class (g)		Design Spectral Response Acceleration (g)	
0.2	$S_s$	0.113	$F_a$	1.6	$S_{MS} = F_a S_s$	0.182	$S_{DS} = \frac{2}{3} S_{MS}$	<b>0.121</b>
1.0	$S_1$	0.061	$F_v$	2.4	$S_{M1} = F_v S_1$	0.147	$S_{D1} = \frac{2}{3} S_{M1}$	<b>0.098</b>

The Site Class definition should not be confused with the Seismic Design Category designation which the Structural Engineer typically assesses.

---

## 5.0 SITE CONSTRUCTION RECOMMENDATIONS

### 5.1 SUBGRADE PREPARATION

#### 5.1.1 Stripping and Grubbing

The subgrade preparation should consist of stripping vegetation, rootmat, topsoil, slab materials, and any soft or unsuitable materials from the 10-foot expanded tower foundation and 5-foot expanded pavement limits, and 5 feet beyond the toe of engineered fills. The boring disclosed 2 inches of topsoil. Deeper topsoil or organic laden soils may be present outside the boring location. ECS should be retained to observe and document that topsoil and unsuitable surficial materials have been removed prior to the placement of engineered fill or construction of structures.

#### 5.1.2 Proofrolling

Prior to fill placement or other construction on subgrades, the subgrades should be evaluated by ECS. The exposed subgrade is recommended to be thoroughly proofrolled with construction equipment having a minimum axle load of 10 tons (e.g., fully loaded tandem-axle dump truck for clayey soils or a large vibratory smooth drum roller for sandy soils). The subgrade should be traversed with the proofroll equipment in two perpendicular (orthogonal) directions with overlapping passes of the vehicle. This procedure is intended to assist identification of yielding subgrade materials.

Unstable or pumping subgrade areas identified during the proofroll should be repaired prior to the placement of subsequent engineered fill or other construction materials. Unstable subgrade repair methods, such as undercutting, or moisture conditioning and recompaction, or chemical stabilization, should be discussed with ECS to evaluate appropriate procedures to repair the existing conditions causing the instability. Test pits may be excavated in unstable areas to explore the shallow subsurface materials and to help determine the appropriate remedial action to stabilize the subgrade.

Seasonal reduction of the near surface soil strength can occur during wet times of the year (such as during the spring and fall months) or immediately following extended periods of rain. This may result in additional unstable or pumping subgrade areas. Some undercutting or repair of unstable subgrade soils should be anticipated during slab and pavement subgrade preparation. The method of subgrade repair or improvement chosen may be influenced by several factors such as weather and schedule, area, depth, and nature of the unstable subgrade soils. Depending on these and other factors the actual depth of subgrade undercut and/or stabilization method should be determined at the time of construction.

#### 5.1.3 Site Temporary Dewatering

**Excavation Dewatering:** The excavation/foundation contractor should be prepared to dewater during construction. ECS anticipates the removal of accumulated water can be achieved utilizing drainage trenches and a sump and pump system.

The contractor shall make their own assessment of temporary dewatering needs based upon the limited subsurface groundwater information presented in this report. Soil sampling is not continuous, and thus soil and groundwater conditions may vary between sampling intervals (typically about 5 feet). If the contractor believes additional subsurface information is needed to assess dewatering needs, they should obtain such information at their own expense. ECS makes no warranties or guarantees regarding the

adequacy of the provided information to determine dewatering requirements; such recommendations are beyond our scope of services.

Dewatering systems are a critical component of many construction projects. Dewatering systems must be selected, designed, and maintained by a qualified and experienced (specialty or other) contractor familiar with the geotechnical and other aspects of the project. The failure to properly design and maintain a dewatering system for a given project can result in delayed construction, unnecessary undercuts, detrimental phenomena such as ‘running sand’ conditions, heaved subgrades, internal erosion (i.e., ‘piping’), the migration of ‘fines’ down-gradient towards the dewatering system, localized settlement of nearby infrastructure, foundations, slabs-on-grade and pavements, etc. Water discharged from site dewatering systems is recommended to be discharged in accordance with applicable local, state, and federal requirements.

**Surface Water:** Since construction will solely take place in the basement, surface water will not be encountered during construction.

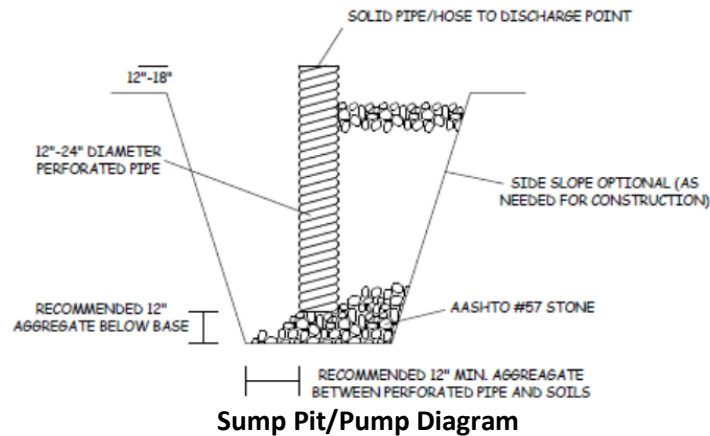
**Subsurface Water:** Groundwater observations are described in the **Groundwater Observations** section of this report. The hydrostatic groundwater level at this site may be located above the bottom depth of the basement. Excavations for new conventional shallow foundations may extend below the long-term groundwater level. Strategies for addressing long-term groundwater levels, accumulated runoff water and perched water are discussed below:

**Strategies for Addressing Long-Term Groundwater Levels:** Where water control cannot be maintained with sump pumps, or where excavations extend more than 2 feet below the groundwater level, dewatering likely will require installation of a more specialized dewatering system, possibly in conjunction with tight sheeting to help cut off water bearing seams/layers. Excavation to anticipated subgrade levels is expected to encounter the long-term water level, which can adversely affect construction below-grade. We recommend that groundwater be lowered to at least 3 feet below planned subgrades to reduce the potential development of an unstable subgrade. Techniques for lowering groundwater commonly include pumping from deep wells with down-hole submersible pumps, vacuum system dewatering (i.e., well points) and possibly eductor wells. These techniques are more complex than pumping from sumps or drains and require engineered design. Lowering the static groundwater level can adversely affect nearby structures, utilities and other construction. We recommend a delegated design for dewatering and hiring a contractor specialized in design, installation, and management of dewatering systems. ECS should be retained to review the delegated design before it is implemented. Dewatering should continue until earthwork operations and backfilling have extended sufficiently above the water table.

The stabilized pumping rate for the temporary dewatering system is recommended to be established by calculation submitted in the delegated design. The actual dewatering flow rates should be measured during construction to confirm the adequacy of the delegated design.

As is often the case, a saturated subgrade can exist even after the implementation of the strategies mentioned above. In these instances, adding supplemental dewatering such as French drains and sump pumping (described in the **Strategies for Addressing Perched Groundwater** subsection below) are often required.

**Strategies for Addressing Perched Groundwater:** The typical strategy for addressing perched groundwater seepage into excavations is pumping from trench (or French) drains and sump pits with sump pumps. A typical sump pump drain (found in a sump pit or along a French drain) is depicted below. The inlet of the sump pump is placed at the bottom of the corrugated pipe and the discharge end of the sump is directed to an appropriate stormwater drain.



A typical French drain consists of an 18 to 24-inch wide by 18- to 24-inch-deep bed of AASHTO No. 57 aggregate (or similar open graded aggregate) wrapped in a medium duty, non-woven geotextile and (sometimes) containing a 6-inch diameter, Schedule 40 PVC perforated or slotted pipe. Actual dimensions should be determined during construction. After installation, the geotextile should be wrapped over the top of the aggregate and pipe followed by placement of backfill. The top of the drain should be positioned at least 3½ feet below the design subgrade elevations. Drains should not be routed within the expanded building limits.

## 5.2 EARTHWORK OPERATIONS

### 5.2.1 Engineered Fill Materials

Prior to placement of Engineered Fill, representative bulk samples (about 50 pounds) of on-site and/or off-site borrow should be submitted to ECS for laboratory testing, which will typically include Atterberg limits, natural moisture content, grain-size distribution, and moisture-density relationships (i.e., Proctors) for compaction. Imported materials should be tested prior to being hauled to the site to determine if they meet project specifications. Alternatively, Proctor data from other accredited laboratories can be submitted if the test results are within the last 90 days.

**Satisfactory Engineered Fill Materials:** Materials satisfactory for use as Engineered Fill must be free of frozen matter, deleterious materials, over-sized material (maximum 3-inch particle diameter), or chemicals that may result in the material being classified as “contaminated.” Materials satisfactory for use as Engineered Fill should consist of inorganic soils with the following engineering properties and compaction requirements.

ENGINEERED FILL INDEX PROPERTIES		
Subject		Property
Plasticity	Upper 4 feet in Building Areas and Upper 2 feet in Pavement Areas	LL ≤ 40, PI ≤ 15
	Below 4 feet in Building Areas and Below 2 feet in Pavement Areas	LL ≤ 50, PI ≤ 20
Max. Particle Size		3 inches
Max. Organic Content		5 percent

Open-graded materials, such as coarser sands, and gravels (SP and GP), which contain increased void space in their mass may need to be encapsulated within a filter geotextile. If the fill is to provide low-frost susceptible characteristics, it must be classified as a clean GP or GW (or clean coarser SW or SP) per Unified Soil Classification System (ASTM D-2487) and must be properly drained.

**Satisfactory Retaining Wall Backfill:** Materials used as backfill within the critical zone behind retaining walls should have USCS classifications of sand or gravel with a maximum of 15 percent fines, and minimum angle of internal friction of 32 degrees when compacted to a minimum of 95 percent of its maximum dry density per Modified Proctor (ASTM D 1557). Material not meeting these criteria should be removed from the Critical Zone behind the walls.

**Unsatisfactory Materials:** Unsatisfactory engineered fill materials, which do not satisfy the requirements for suitable materials, include topsoil and organic materials (PT, OH, OL), silt (ML) within the frost zone, and high plasticity soils elastic silt (MH) and fat clay (CH).

Pea gravel is not recommended to be used as engineered fill. Pea gravel has round/smooth characteristics, no fines and does not interlock when compacted, which makes it more susceptible to future movement and instability resulting in excessive and variable settlement.

**On-Site Borrow Suitability:** The on-site soil may be feasible to use as engineered fill but should be further evaluated by ECS prior to its use. On-site soil used as engineered fill must not contain more than 5 percent organic matter as determined by ASTM D2974, and must be free of frozen matter, deleterious materials, over-sized material (maximum 3-inch particle diameter), or chemicals that may result in the material being classified as “contaminated.” Based on the testing performed the soils moisture content is wetter than the recommended range for compaction. Therefore, drying of on-site soils reused as engineered fill is expected to be needed. Some conditions at the time of construction, such as wet or freezing weather, may preclude the use of the moisture sensitive on-site soil, and use of an imported less moisture sensitive or less frost susceptible granular material may be needed. The soil must be compacted within a narrow range of the material’s optimum moisture content. The soil should not be compacted too dry as it may lose its apparent stability if it later becomes wet. Soil chemical modification may be helpful to reduce moisture contents of subgrade soils and fills.

## 5.2.2 Compaction

**Subgrade Benching:** Place fill material in horizontal lifts. Where fill materials will be placed up against sloping ground, the soil subgrade should be scarified, and the new fill benched and keyed into the existing material. Place and compact fill on a 5 (H):1 (V) or flatter slope, or step or bench as required to flatten.

**Engineered Fill Compaction:** Place and compact engineered fill in appropriate thickness loose lifts as recommended below. Give as much importance to the moisture content requirements of the material as the density requirements during placement and compaction considering the moisture sensitivity of the soil.

ENGINEERED FILL COMPACTION RECOMMENDATIONS		
Subject		Recommendation
Compaction Standard		Modified Proctor, ASTM D1557
Recommended Compaction		≥ 95 percent of Max. Dry Density
Moisture Content	Fine-grained	-1 to +3 % points of the material’s optimum value
	Coarse-grained	-3 to +3 % points of the material’s optimum value

**Fill Compaction Control:** The expanded limits of the proposed construction areas should be well defined, including the limits of the fill zones at the time of fill placement. Maintain grade control throughout the filling operations. Backfilling operations are recommended to be observed on a full-time basis by ECS to check and document that the minimum compaction requirements are being achieved. The recommended minimum frequency for field density testing of fills is listed in the Table below but should not be less than 1 test per lift.

FREQUENCY OF COMPACTION TESTS IN ENGINEERED FILL AREAS	
Location	Frequency of Tests
Expanded Structure Limits	1 test per 2,500 sq. ft. per lift
Pavement Areas	1 test per 10,000 sq. ft. per lift
Utility Trenches	1 test per 200 linear ft. per lift
Other Non-Critical Areas	1 test per 10,000 sq. ft. per lift

**Compaction Equipment:** Compaction equipment appropriate for the soil type being compacted should be used to compact the subgrades and fill materials. Sheepsfoot compaction equipment is typically used for the fine-grained soils (clays). A vibratory steel drum roller is typically used for compaction of coarse-grained soils (sands and gravels) as well as to help seal compacted surfaces.

The maximum loose lift thickness depends upon the type of compaction equipment used. For isolated excavations around footing locations or within utility excavations, a hand tamper will likely be required. Listed in the Table below are recommended maximum loose lift thicknesses for compaction based on the utilized compaction equipment.

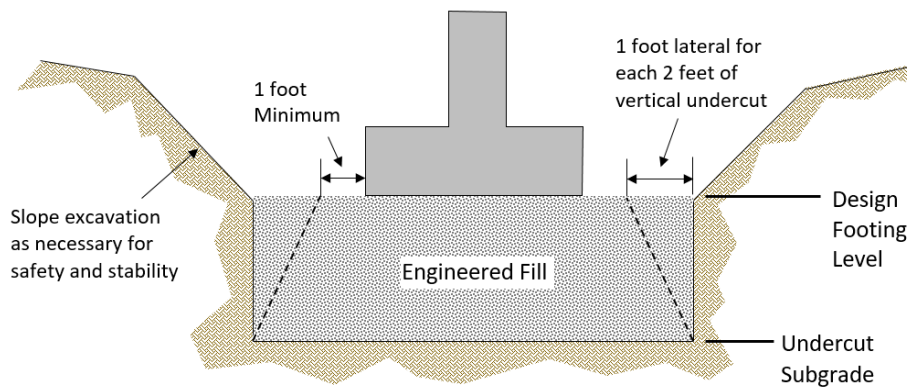
RECOMMENDED LOOSE LIFT THICKNESSES <sup>(1)</sup>	
Equipment	Maximum Loose Lift Thickness (inches)
Large/Heavy, Self-Propelled Equipment	8
Small, Self-Propelled or Remote Controlled (Rammax, etc.)	6 to 8
Hand Operated (Plate Tamps, Jumping Jacks, Wacker-Packers)	4 to 6



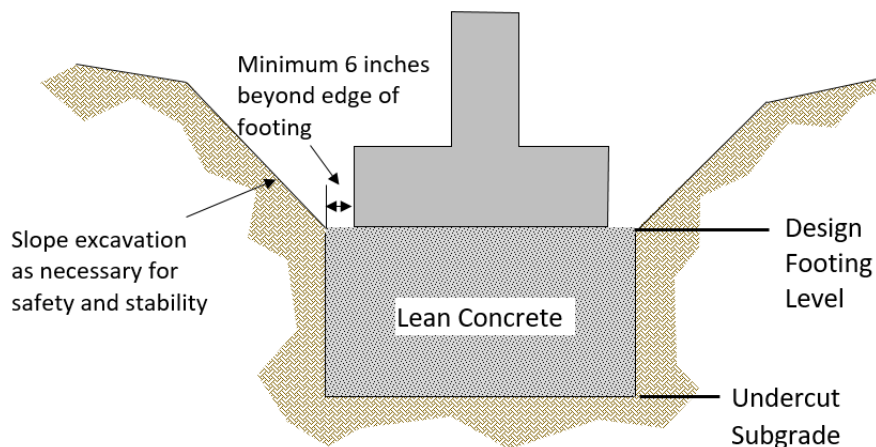
Note 1: Density testing during fill placement is important to check and document that the specified compaction is being achieved. Thinner lifts and/or more compactive energy may be needed to achieve the required degree of compaction.

In confined areas such as utility trenches, portable compaction equipment and thin lifts of 4 inches or less may be required to achieve specified degrees of compaction.

**Engineered Fill Below Foundations:** Recompact unsuitable bearing soils encountered at the proposed foundation bearing grade or within the foundation influence zone, if feasible, or removed to a competent bearing subgrade and to a lateral extent, as conceptually shown below. The engineered fill below the new building footings should consist of well-graded crushed aggregate material that is placed and compacted as recommended herein. If the engineered fill thickness below the foundation is less than 2 feet, appropriate cohesive fill materials may be used.



Alternatively, backfill undercuts with lean concrete ( $f'_c \geq 1,000$  psi at 28 days) up to the original design bottom of footing elevation. The original footing is recommended to be constructed on top of the hardened lean concrete. If lean concrete is utilized the excavation is recommended to be 1 foot wider than the footing (6 inches on each side), as conceptually shown below, and the lean concrete should be allowed to sufficiently harden prior to placement of the foundation concrete. Use of lean mix concrete to limit lateral over-excavation may not be effective due to caving of excavation sidewalls in the granular soil.



**Fill Placement Considerations:** Do not place fill materials on frozen soils, on frost-heaved soils, on excessively wet soils, or soils that are otherwise unstable. Borrow fill materials should not contain frozen materials at the time of placement, and frozen or frost-heaved soils should be removed prior to placement of engineered fill or other fill soils and aggregates. Excessively wet soils or aggregates should be scarified, aerated, and moisture conditioned.

Grade fill areas at the end of each workday to help facilitate drainage of precipitation and seal the surface by use of a smooth-drum roller to reduce infiltration of surface water. During placement and compaction of new fill at the beginning of each workday, the contractor may need to scarify existing subgrades to an approximate depth of 4 inches to reduce the potential for a weak plane to form between the new fill and the existing subgrade soils.

Drying and compaction of wet soils is typically difficult during the cold, winter months. Accordingly, earthwork should be performed during the warmer, drier times of the year, if practical. Proper drainage should be maintained during the earthwork phases of construction to prevent ponding of water which tends to degrade subgrade soils. Alternatively, if these soils cannot be stabilized by conventional methods as previously discussed, modification of the subgrade soils, such as with lime, Portland cement, or other materials may be utilized to adjust the moisture content.

Have equipment readily available during earthwork for both drying and wetting of fill soils. We do not anticipate significant problems in controlling moisture within the fill during dry weather, but moisture control may be difficult during winter months or extended periods of rain. Controlling the moisture content of clayey and silty soils can be difficult. Further, these soils are easily degraded by construction traffic when the moisture content is elevated.

### 5.3 FOUNDATION AND SLAB OBSERVATIONS

**Protection of Foundation Excavations:** Exposure to the environment may weaken the soils at the footing bearing level if the foundation excavations remain open for too long a time. Therefore, foundation concrete should be placed the same day that excavations are made. If the bearing soils are softened by surface water intrusion or exposure, the softened soils must be removed from the foundation excavation bottom immediately prior to placement of concrete. If the excavation must remain open overnight, or if rainfall becomes imminent while the bearing soils are exposed, a 1 to 3-inch thick “mud mat” of lean concrete should be placed on the bearing soils before the placement of reinforcing steel. The soils encountered at or near the anticipated bearing elevation are sensitive to disturbance when exposed, especially when wet. The contractor should exercise care and minimize traffic and potential disturbance of the soils. If disturbed, the exposed surfaces should be re-compacted prior to the placement of reinforcing steel and concrete.

**Foundation Subgrade Observations:** The recommendations of this report are predicated upon ECS checking the suitability of the in-situ foundation support soils during construction. The suitability of the actual bearing grade is recommended to be observed and tested to check that the soils are as indicated by the borings and are adequate to support the recommended maximum net allowable bearing pressure.

**Slab and Pavement Subgrade Verification:** Prior to placement of granular base course or a drainage layer, the subgrade should be prepared in accordance with the recommendations found in the **Proofroll and Subgrade Observation** section of this report.

## 5.4 UTILITY INSTALLATIONS

**Utility Subgrades:** The natural soil encountered at the borings are expected to be generally adequate for support of utility pipes. The pipe subgrades should be observed and probed for stability by ECS. Any loose or unsuitable materials encountered should be removed and replaced with appropriate compacted Engineered Fill, or pipe stone bedding material.

**Utility Backfilling:** The granular bedding material should be at least 4 inches thick, but not less than that specified by the project drawings and specifications. Fill placed for support of the utilities, as well as backfill over the utilities, should satisfy the recommendations for engineered fill given in this report. Compacted backfill should be free of topsoil, roots, ice, or any other material designated by ECS as unsuitable. The backfill should be moisture conditioned, placed, and compacted as recommended in this report.

## 5.5 GENERAL CONSTRUCTION CONSIDERATIONS

**Subgrade Protection:** Measures should also be taken to limit site disturbance, especially from rubber-tired heavy construction equipment, and to control and remove surface water from development areas, including structural and pavement areas. It would be advisable to designate a haul road and construction staging area to limit the areas of disturbance and to prevent construction traffic from excessively degrading sensitive subgrade soils and existing pavement areas. Haul roads and construction staging areas could be covered with excess depths of aggregate to protect those subgrades. The aggregate can later be removed and used in pavement areas.

**Fill Placement Considerations:** Fill materials should not be placed on frozen soils, on frost-heaved soils, on excessively wet soils, or soils that are otherwise unstable. Borrow fill materials should not contain frozen materials at the time of placement, and frozen or frost-heaved soils should be removed prior to placement of engineered fill or other fill soils and aggregates. Excessively wet soils or aggregates should be scarified, aerated, and moisture conditioned.

**Surface Drainage:** Surface drainage conditions should be properly maintained. Surface water should be directed away from the construction area, and the work area should be sloped away from the construction area at a gradient of 1 percent or greater to reduce the potential of ponding water and the subsequent saturation of the surface soils. At the end of each workday, the subgrade soils should be sealed by rolling the surface with a smooth drum roller to minimize infiltration of surface water.

**Existing Utilities:** Prior to construction, utilities in the proposed construction areas be positively identified and marked. Active utilities to remain in the construction areas should be exposed and protected during construction to reduce the potential for damage or interruption of service. Abandoned utilities should be removed and backfilled with compacted engineered fill or grouted full of lean concrete if left in-place.

**Excavation Safety:** Excavations and slopes should be constructed and maintained in accordance with OSHA excavation safety standards. The contractor is solely responsible for designing, constructing, and maintaining stable temporary excavations and slopes. The contractor's responsible person, as defined in 29 CFR Part 1926, should evaluate the soil exposed in the excavations as part of the contractor's safety procedures. In no case should slope height, slope inclination, or excavation depth, including utility trench excavation depth, exceed those specified in local, state, and federal safety regulations. ECS is providing

this information solely as a service to our client. ECS is not assuming responsibility for construction site safety or the contractor's activities; such responsibility is not being implied and should not be inferred.

**Bidding/Estimating Considerations:** Contractors bidding or undertaking any work at the site should examine the results of the subsurface exploration, satisfy themselves as to the adequacy of the information for bidding and construction, make their own interpretation of the data, and consider the effect it may have on their cost proposal, construction techniques, schedule, and equipment capabilities. Furthermore, contractors should complete any additional fieldwork and investigation they deem necessary to properly prepare a cost proposal for the site work. Soil borings do not provide the same wide-scale view of the subsurface conditions that is obtained during site grading, excavation or other aspects of earthwork construction. Additional scope may be required to obtain more detailed subsurface information needed for earthwork bid preparation, which could include test pits to better understand the lateral and vertical extents of the subsurface materials of concern such as existing undocumented fill. Even with this additional information, budget contingencies should be carried in construction to help cover potential variations in subsurface conditions.

## 6.0 CLOSING

ECS has prepared this report to guide geotechnical-related design and construction aspects of the project. We performed these services in accordance with the standard of care expected of professionals in the industry performing similar services on projects of like size and complexity at this time in the region. No other representation, express or implied, and no warranty or guarantee is included or intended in this report.

The description of the proposed project is based on information provided to ECS. If this information is inaccurate, either because of our interpretation of the documents provided, or site or design changes that may occur later, ECS should be contacted so that we can review our recommendations and provide additional or alternate recommendations as may be required to reflect the proposed construction.

We recommend ECS review the project's plans and specifications so that we may evaluate consistency of those plans/specifications with the intent of the geotechnical report recommendations.

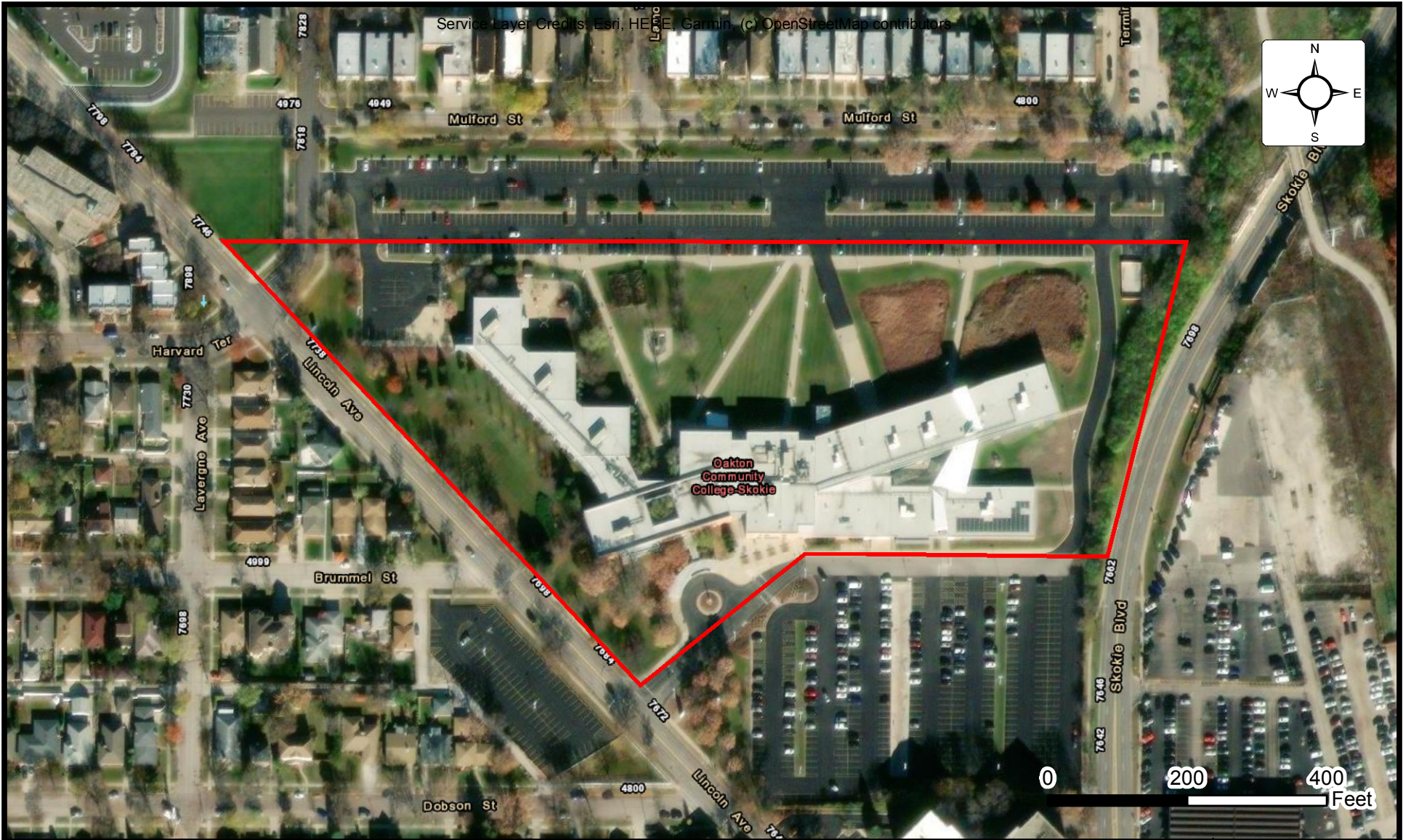
Field observations and quality assurance testing during earthwork and foundation installation are an extension of, and integral to, the geotechnical design. We recommend that ECS be retained to apply our expertise throughout the geotechnical phases of construction, and to provide consultation and recommendations should issues arise.

ECS is not responsible for the conclusions, opinions, or recommendations of others based on the data in this report.

## **Appendix A - Drawings and Reports**

Site Location Diagram

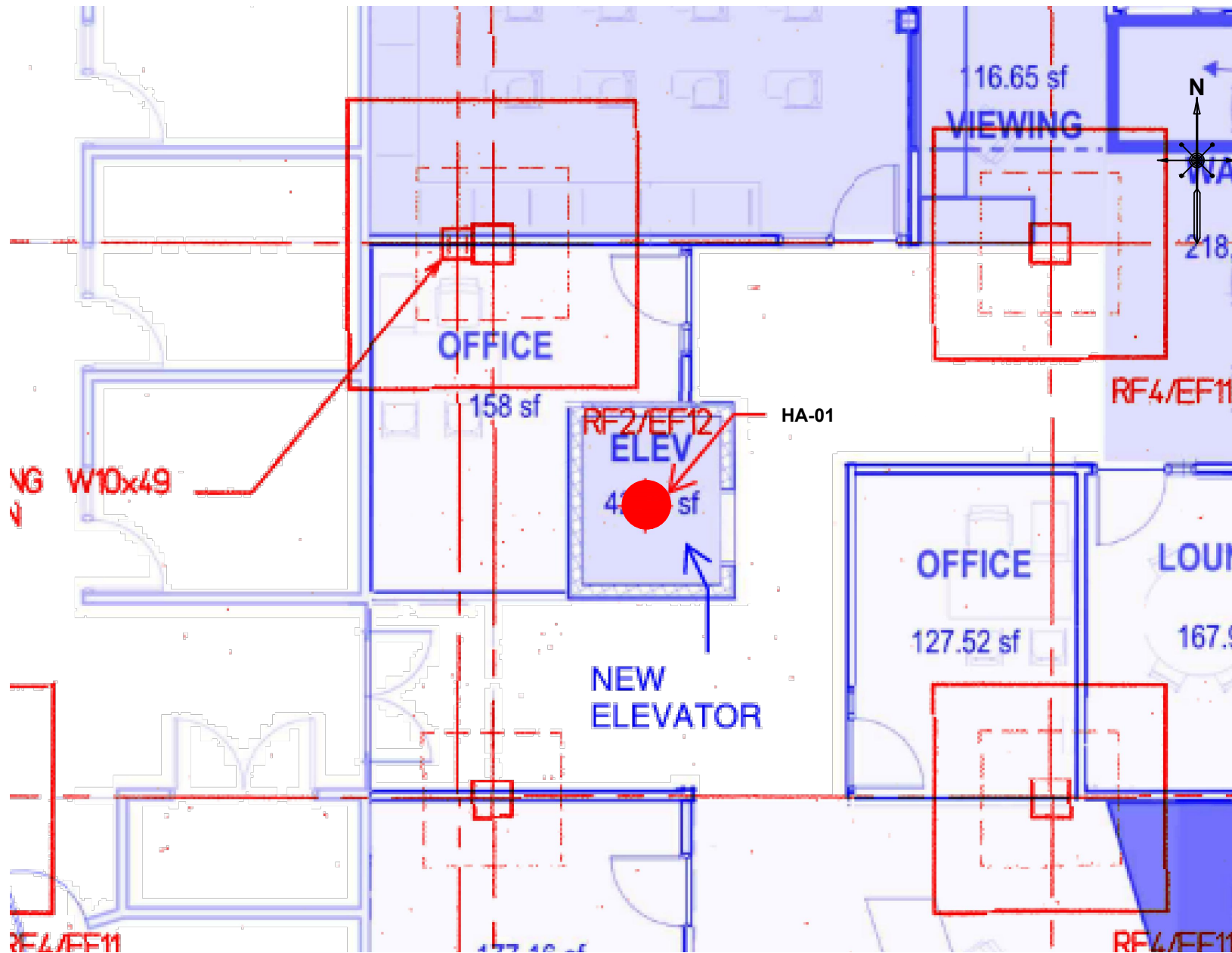
Boring Location Diagram(s)



# SITE LOCATION DIAGRAM OCC SKOKIE LEARNING CENTER - PROPOSED NEW ELEVATOR

7701 LINCOLN AVENUE, SKOKIE, ILLINOIS  
COTTER CONSULTING

ENGINEER SRB1
SCALE AS NOTED
PROJECT NO. 16:9836-I
FIGURE 1 OF 1
DATE 8/15/2023



Legend

● HA - APPROXIMATE BUILDING BORING LOCATION



**BORING LOCATION DIAGRAM**  
**OCC Skokie Learning Center -**  
**Proposed New Elevator**  
**7701 Lincoln Avenue, Illinois**

ENGINEER	TJM	SCALE	N/A
DRAFTING	RD	PROJECT NO.	16:9836-I
REVISIONS		SHEET	1
		DATE	08/16/2023



## **Appendix B – Field Operations**

Reference Notes

Exploration Procedures

Boring Logs



# REFERENCE NOTES FOR BORING LOGS

MATERIAL <sup>1,2</sup>	
	<b>ASPHALT</b>
	<b>CONCRETE</b>
	<b>GRAVEL</b>
	<b>TOPSOIL</b>
	<b>VOID</b>
	<b>BRICK</b>
	<b>AGGREGATE BASE COURSE</b>
	<b>GW WELL-GRADED GRAVEL</b> gravel-sand mixtures, little or no fines
	<b>GP POORLY-GRADED GRAVEL</b> gravel-sand mixtures, little or no fines
	<b>GM SILTY GRAVEL</b> gravel-sand-silt mixtures
	<b>GC CLAYEY GRAVEL</b> gravel-sand-clay mixtures
	<b>SW WELL-GRADED SAND</b> gravelly sand, little or no fines
	<b>SP POORLY-GRADED SAND</b> gravelly sand, little or no fines
	<b>SM SILTY SAND</b> sand-silt mixtures
	<b>SC CLAYEY SAND</b> sand-clay mixtures
	<b>ML SILT</b> non-plastic to medium plasticity
	<b>MH ELASTIC SILT</b> high plasticity
	<b>CL LEAN CLAY</b> low to medium plasticity
	<b>CH FAT CLAY</b> high plasticity
	<b>OL ORGANIC SILT or CLAY</b> non-plastic to low plasticity
	<b>OH ORGANIC SILT or CLAY</b> high plasticity
	<b>PT PEAT</b> highly organic soils

DRILLING SAMPLING SYMBOLS & ABBREVIATIONS			
SS	Split Spoon Sampler	PM	Pressuremeter Test
ST	Shelby Tube Sampler	RD	Rock Bit Drilling
WS	Wash Sample	RC	Rock Core, NX, BX, AX
BS	Bulk Sample of Cuttings	REC	Rock Sample Recovery %
PA	Power Auger (no sample)	RQD	Rock Quality Designation %
HSA	Hollow Stem Auger		

PARTICLE SIZE IDENTIFICATION		
DESIGNATION	PARTICLE SIZES	
Boulders	12 inches (300 mm) or larger	
Cobbles	3 inches to 12 inches (75 mm to 300 mm)	
Gravel:	Coarse	¾ inch to 3 inches (19 mm to 75 mm)
	Fine	4.75 mm to 19 mm (No. 4 sieve to ¾ inch)
Sand:	Coarse	2.00 mm to 4.75 mm (No. 10 to No. 4 sieve)
	Medium	0.425 mm to 2.00 mm (No. 40 to No. 10 sieve)
	Fine	0.074 mm to 0.425 mm (No. 200 to No. 40 sieve)
Silt & Clay ("Fines")	<0.074 mm (smaller than a No. 200 sieve)	

COHESIVE SILTS & CLAYS		
UNCONFINED COMPRESSIVE STRENGTH, QP <sup>4</sup>	SPT <sup>5</sup> (BPF)	CONSISTENCY <sup>7</sup> (COHESIVE)
<0.25	<2	Very Soft
0.25 - <0.50	2 - 4	Soft
0.50 - <1.00	5 - 8	Firm
1.00 - <2.00	9 - 15	Stiff
2.00 - <4.00	16 - 30	Very Stiff
4.00 - 8.00	31 - 50	Hard
>8.00	>50	Very Hard

RELATIVE AMOUNT <sup>7</sup>	COARSE GRAINED (%) <sup>8</sup>	FINE GRAINED (%) <sup>8</sup>
Trace	≤5	≤5
With	10 - 20	10 - 25
Adjective (ex: "Silty")	25 - 45	30 - 45

GRAVELS, SANDS & NON-COHESIVE SILTS	
SPT <sup>5</sup>	DENSITY
<5	Very Loose
5 - 10	Loose
11 - 30	Medium Dense
31 - 50	Dense
>50	Very Dense

WATER LEVELS <sup>6</sup>	
	WL (First Encountered)
	WL (Completion)
	WL (Seasonal High Water)
	WL (Stabilized)

FILL AND ROCK			
FILL	POSSIBLE FILL	PROBABLE FILL	ROCK

<sup>1</sup>Classifications and symbols per ASTM D 2488-17 (Visual-Manual Procedure) unless noted otherwise.

<sup>2</sup>To be consistent with general practice, "POORLY GRADED" has been removed from GP, GP-GM, GP-GC, SP, SP-SM, SP-SC soil types on the boring logs.

<sup>3</sup>Non-ASTM designations are included in soil descriptions and symbols along with ASTM symbol [Ex: (SM-FILL)].

<sup>4</sup>Typically estimated via pocket penetrometer or Torvane shear test and expressed in tons per square foot (tsf).

<sup>5</sup>Standard Penetration Test (SPT) refers to the number of hammer blows (blow count) of a 140 lb. hammer falling 30 inches on a 2 inch OD split spoon sampler required to drive the sampler 12 inches (ASTM D 1586). "N-value" is another term for "blow count" and is expressed in blows per foot (bpf). SPT correlations per 7.4.2 Method B and need to be corrected if using an auto hammer.

<sup>6</sup>The water levels are those levels actually measured in the borehole at the times indicated by the symbol. The measurements are relatively reliable when augering, without adding fluids, in granular soils. In clay and cohesive silts, the determination of water levels may require several days for the water level to stabilize. In such cases, additional methods of measurement are generally employed.

<sup>7</sup>Minor deviation from ASTM D 2488-17 Note 14.

<sup>8</sup>Percentages are estimated to the nearest 5% per ASTM D 2488-17.



## SUBSURFACE EXPLORATION PROCEDURE: STANDARD PENETRATION TESTING (SPT) ASTM D 1586 Split-Barrel Sampling

Standard Penetration Testing, or **SPT**, is the most frequently used subsurface exploration test performed worldwide. This test provides samples for identification purposes, as well as a measure of penetration resistance, or N-value. The N-Value, or blow counts, when corrected and correlated, can approximate engineering properties of soils used for geotechnical design and engineering purposes.

### SPT Procedure:

- Involves driving a hollow tube (split-spoon) into the ground by dropping a 140-lb hammer a height of 30-inches at desired depth
- Recording the number of hammer blows required to drive split-spoon a distance of 18-24 inches (in 3 or 4 Increments of 6 inches each)
- Auger is advanced\* and an additional SPT is performed
- One SPT typically performed for every two to five feet. An approximate 1.5 inch diameter soil sample is recovered.



*\*Drilling Methods May Vary*— The predominant drilling methods used for SPT are open hole fluid rotary drilling and hollow-stem auger drilling.



## **Appendix C – Laboratory Testing**

Laboratory Testing Summary

Plasticity Chart(s)



## LABORATORY PROCEDURES:

### Index Testing

**Moisture content** determination was performed on select fine-grained soil samples in accordance with ASTM D 2216.

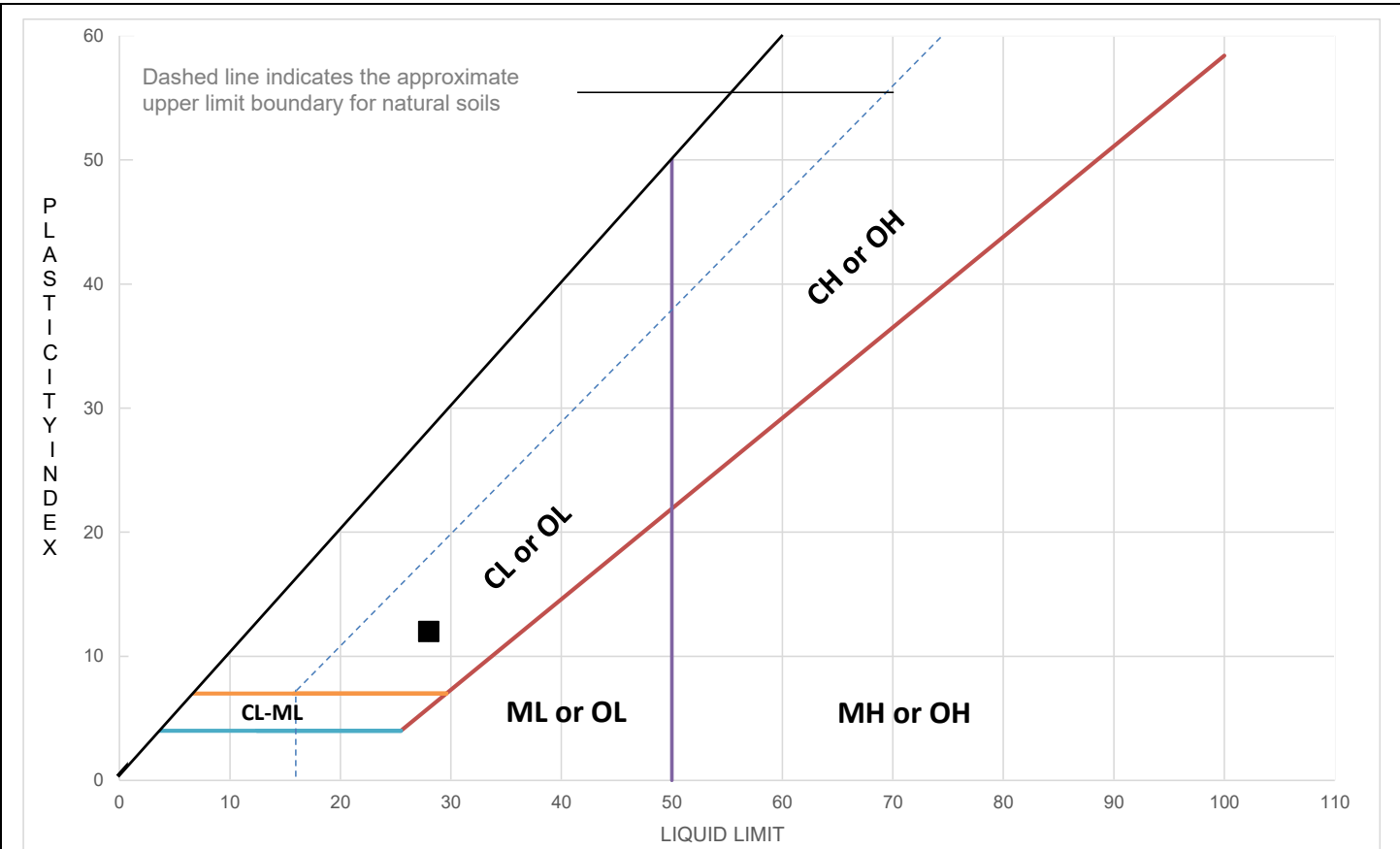
**Calibrated hand penetrometer tests (Qp)** were performed on select cohesive soil samples. In the hand penetrometer test, the unconfined compressive strength of a soil sample is estimated, to a maximum of 4.5 or 6 tons per square foot (tsf), depending on the penetrometer model, by measuring the resistance of a soil sample to penetration by a small, calibrated, spring-loaded cylinder.

**Atterberg limits** determination was performed on select fine-grained soil samples in accordance with ASTM D 4319. The Atterberg limits are a basic measure of the critical water contents of a fine-grained soil: its **liquid limit**, **plastic limit**, and **shrinkage limit**. Depending on its water content, a soil may appear in one of four states: solid, semi-solid, plastic and liquid. In each state, the consistency and behavior of a soil is different and consequently so are its engineering properties. Atterberg limits can also be used to help distinguish between silt and clay, and to distinguish between different types of silts and clays.

**Particle size distribution**, also referred to as gradation or sieve analysis, refers to the proportions by dry mass of a soil particles distributed over specified particle-size ranges. The particle size distribution is used to help classify soils for engineering purposes. Particle size distribution determination was performed on select fine-grained soil samples in accordance with ASTM D 421, D 422 and/or D 1140.

A **loss on ignition (LOI)** test is used to estimate the organic content of the soil. In the LOI test a dry sample is heated to 440° C to burn off organic matter within the sample. The lost weight is compared to the initial dry weight to estimate the percentage of organics in the material. LOI determination was performed in accordance with ASTM D 2974.

## LIQUID AND PLASTIC LIMITS TEST REPORT



### TEST RESULTS (ASTM D4318-10 (MULTIPOINT TEST))

	Sample Location	Sample Number	Sample Depth (t)	LL	PL	PI	40	200	AASHTO	USCS	Material Description
■	HA-01	S-5	6.00-7.50	28	16	12					Lean Clay

Project: OCC Skokie Learning Center - Proposed New Elevator  
 Client: Cotter Consulting

Project No.: 16:9836-I  
 Date Reported: 8/9/2023



Office / Lab  
 ECS Midwest LLC - Chicago

Address  
 1575 Barclay Boulevard  
 Buffalo Grove, IL 60089

Office Number / Fax  
 (847)279-0366  
 (847)279-0369

Tested by PGold	Checked by JForge	Approved by JForge	Date Received
--------------------	----------------------	-----------------------	---------------

## **Appendix D – Other Information**

Important Information About This Geotechnical Engineering Report



# Important Information about This

# Geotechnical-Engineering Report

Subsurface problems are a principal cause of construction delays, cost overruns, claims, and disputes.

While you cannot eliminate all such risks, you can manage them. The following information is provided to help.

**The Geoprofessional Business Association (GBA) has prepared this advisory to help you – assumedly a client representative – interpret and apply this geotechnical-engineering report as effectively as possible. In that way, you can benefit from a lowered exposure to problems associated with subsurface conditions at project sites and development of them that, for decades, have been a principal cause of construction delays, cost overruns, claims, and disputes. If you have questions or want more information about any of the issues discussed herein, contact your GBA-member geotechnical engineer. Active engagement in GBA exposes geotechnical engineers to a wide array of risk-confrontation techniques that can be of genuine benefit for everyone involved with a construction project.**

## Understand the Geotechnical-Engineering Services Provided for this Report

Geotechnical-engineering services typically include the planning, collection, interpretation, and analysis of exploratory data from widely spaced borings and/or test pits. Field data are combined with results from laboratory tests of soil and rock samples obtained from field exploration (if applicable), observations made during site reconnaissance, and historical information to form one or more models of the expected subsurface conditions beneath the site. Local geology and alterations of the site surface and subsurface by previous and proposed construction are also important considerations. Geotechnical engineers apply their engineering training, experience, and judgment to adapt the requirements of the prospective project to the subsurface model(s). Estimates are made of the subsurface conditions that will likely be exposed during construction as well as the expected performance of foundations and other structures being planned and/or affected by construction activities.

The culmination of these geotechnical-engineering services is typically a geotechnical-engineering report providing the data obtained, a discussion of the subsurface model(s), the engineering and geologic engineering assessments and analyses made, and the recommendations developed to satisfy the given requirements of the project. These reports may be titled investigations, explorations, studies, assessments, or evaluations. Regardless of the title used, the geotechnical-engineering report is an engineering interpretation of the subsurface conditions within the context of the project and does not represent a close examination, systematic inquiry, or thorough investigation of all site and subsurface conditions.

## Geotechnical-Engineering Services are Performed for Specific Purposes, Persons, and Projects, and At Specific Times

Geotechnical engineers structure their services to meet the specific needs, goals, and risk management preferences of their clients. A geotechnical-engineering study conducted for a given civil engineer

will not likely meet the needs of a civil-works constructor or even a different civil engineer. Because each geotechnical-engineering study is unique, each geotechnical-engineering report is unique, prepared *solely* for the client.

Likewise, geotechnical-engineering services are performed for a specific project and purpose. For example, it is unlikely that a geotechnical-engineering study for a refrigerated warehouse will be the same as one prepared for a parking garage; and a few borings drilled during a preliminary study to evaluate site feasibility will not be adequate to develop geotechnical design recommendations for the project.

Do not rely on this report if your geotechnical engineer prepared it:

- for a different client;
- for a different project or purpose;
- for a different site (that may or may not include all or a portion of the original site); or
- before important events occurred at the site or adjacent to it; e.g., man-made events like construction or environmental remediation, or natural events like floods, droughts, earthquakes, or groundwater fluctuations.

Note, too, the reliability of a geotechnical-engineering report can be affected by the passage of time, because of factors like changed subsurface conditions; new or modified codes, standards, or regulations; or new techniques or tools. *If you are the least bit uncertain about the continued reliability of this report, contact your geotechnical engineer before applying the recommendations in it.* A minor amount of additional testing or analysis after the passage of time – if any is required at all – could prevent major problems.

## Read this Report in Full

Costly problems have occurred because those relying on a geotechnical-engineering report did not read the report in its entirety. Do not rely on an executive summary. Do not read selective elements only. *Read and refer to the report in full.*

## You Need to Inform Your Geotechnical Engineer About Change

Your geotechnical engineer considered unique, project-specific factors when developing the scope of study behind this report and developing the confirmation-dependent recommendations the report conveys. Typical changes that could erode the reliability of this report include those that affect:

- the site's size or shape;
- the elevation, configuration, location, orientation, function or weight of the proposed structure and the desired performance criteria;
- the composition of the design team; or
- project ownership.

As a general rule, *always* inform your geotechnical engineer of project or site changes – even minor ones – and request an assessment of their impact. *The geotechnical engineer who prepared this report cannot accept*

responsibility or liability for problems that arise because the geotechnical engineer was not informed about developments the engineer otherwise would have considered.

### Most of the “Findings” Related in This Report Are Professional Opinions

Before construction begins, geotechnical engineers explore a site’s subsurface using various sampling and testing procedures. *Geotechnical engineers can observe actual subsurface conditions only at those specific locations where sampling and testing is performed.* The data derived from that sampling and testing were reviewed by your geotechnical engineer, who then applied professional judgement to form opinions about subsurface conditions throughout the site. Actual site-wide-subsurface conditions may differ – maybe significantly – from those indicated in this report. Confront that risk by retaining your geotechnical engineer to serve on the design team through project completion to obtain informed guidance quickly, whenever needed.

### This Report’s Recommendations Are Confirmation-Dependent

The recommendations included in this report – including any options or alternatives – are confirmation-dependent. In other words, they are not final, because the geotechnical engineer who developed them relied heavily on judgement and opinion to do so. Your geotechnical engineer can finalize the recommendations *only after observing actual subsurface conditions* exposed during construction. If through observation your geotechnical engineer confirms that the conditions assumed to exist actually do exist, the recommendations can be relied upon, assuming no other changes have occurred. *The geotechnical engineer who prepared this report cannot assume responsibility or liability for confirmation-dependent recommendations if you fail to retain that engineer to perform construction observation.*

### This Report Could Be Misinterpreted

Other design professionals’ misinterpretation of geotechnical-engineering reports has resulted in costly problems. Confront that risk by having your geotechnical engineer serve as a continuing member of the design team, to:

- confer with other design-team members;
- help develop specifications;
- review pertinent elements of other design professionals’ plans and specifications; and
- be available whenever geotechnical-engineering guidance is needed.

You should also confront the risk of constructors misinterpreting this report. Do so by retaining your geotechnical engineer to participate in prebid and preconstruction conferences and to perform construction-phase observations.

### Give Constructors a Complete Report and Guidance

Some owners and design professionals mistakenly believe they can shift unanticipated-subsurface-conditions liability to constructors by limiting the information they provide for bid preparation. To help prevent the costly, contentious problems this practice has caused, include the complete geotechnical-engineering report, along with any attachments or appendices, with your contract documents, *but be certain to note*

*conspicuously that you’ve included the material for information purposes only.* To avoid misunderstanding, you may also want to note that “informational purposes” means constructors have no right to rely on the interpretations, opinions, conclusions, or recommendations in the report. Be certain that constructors know they may learn about specific project requirements, including options selected from the report, *only* from the design drawings and specifications. Remind constructors that they may perform their own studies if they want to, and *be sure to allow enough time* to permit them to do so. Only then might you be in a position to give constructors the information available to you, while requiring them to at least share some of the financial responsibilities stemming from unanticipated conditions. Conducting prebid and preconstruction conferences can also be valuable in this respect.

### Read Responsibility Provisions Closely

Some client representatives, design professionals, and constructors do not realize that geotechnical engineering is far less exact than other engineering disciplines. This happens in part because soil and rock on project sites are typically heterogeneous and not manufactured materials with well-defined engineering properties like steel and concrete. That lack of understanding has nurtured unrealistic expectations that have resulted in disappointments, delays, cost overruns, claims, and disputes. To confront that risk, geotechnical engineers commonly include explanatory provisions in their reports. Sometimes labeled “limitations,” many of these provisions indicate where geotechnical engineers’ responsibilities begin and end, to help others recognize their own responsibilities and risks. *Read these provisions closely.* Ask questions. Your geotechnical engineer should respond fully and frankly.

### Geoenvironmental Concerns Are Not Covered

The personnel, equipment, and techniques used to perform an environmental study – e.g., a “phase-one” or “phase-two” environmental site assessment – differ significantly from those used to perform a geotechnical-engineering study. For that reason, a geotechnical-engineering report does not usually provide environmental findings, conclusions, or recommendations; e.g., about the likelihood of encountering underground storage tanks or regulated contaminants. *Unanticipated subsurface environmental problems have led to project failures.* If you have not obtained your own environmental information about the project site, ask your geotechnical consultant for a recommendation on how to find environmental risk-management guidance.

### Obtain Professional Assistance to Deal with Moisture Infiltration and Mold

While your geotechnical engineer may have addressed groundwater, water infiltration, or similar issues in this report, the engineer’s services were not designed, conducted, or intended to prevent migration of moisture – including water vapor – from the soil through building slabs and walls and into the building interior, where it can cause mold growth and material-performance deficiencies. Accordingly, *proper implementation of the geotechnical engineer’s recommendations will not of itself be sufficient to prevent moisture infiltration.* **Confront the risk of moisture infiltration** by including building-envelope or mold specialists on the design team. **Geotechnical engineers are not building-envelope or mold specialists.**



Telephone: 301/565-2733

e-mail: [info@geoprofessional.org](mailto:info@geoprofessional.org) [www.geoprofessional.org](http://www.geoprofessional.org)



August 23, 2023

Jamie Boller
Senior Project Manager
Cotter Consulting
100 South Wacker Drive, Suite 100
Chicago, Illinois 60606
Email: j.boller@cotterconsulting.com

ECS Project No. 53: 4419

RE: Environmental Services Supporting Soil Sampling and Analysis – OCC Skokie Learning Center - Elevator CCDD, 7701 Lincoln Avenue, Skokie, Illinois 60077

Dear Ms. Boller:

At your request, ECS Midwest, LLC (ECS) was retained to perform an environmental soil analysis of the soil associated with the planned construction at the subject property. It is our understanding that the proposed construction activities will result in removal and disposal of excavation soils. To evaluate disposal options for the excavated soils, ECS performed a broad screening soil sampling and analysis as described below.

Soil Sampling and Analysis

In order to characterize the soils that are slated for off-site disposal, ECS collected one soil sample (S-1) from a geotechnical boring installed within the anticipated excavation area. Note, that the soil sample collected for analysis was collected from the geotechnical boring and associated depth interval (approximately 1-5 feet) with the greatest potential for possible impacts (visual, olfactory, PID readings, etc.). Soil sampling and analysis was conducted in general accordance with 35 Ill. Adm. Code 1100, Clean Construction Demolition Debris Fill Operations and Uncontaminated Soil Fill Operations. The soil sample was analyzed for a broad range of contaminants including the following:

Table with 2 columns: Number of Samples, Analytical Parameters. Row 1: 1, VOCs, SVOCs, Pesticides, PCBs, PP Metals/Cyanide and pH

VOCs – Volatile Organic Compounds via Method 5035/8260B
SVOCs – Semi-Volatile Organic Compounds via Method 8270D
PCBs – Polychlorinated biphenyls via Method 8082A
Pesticides – Via Method 8081B
Priority Pollutant Metals/Cyanide – Via Method 6010B/7471B/9012B
pH – Via Method 9045D

The sample analysis was performed by Eurofins of University Park, Illinois. Eurofins is an Illinois EPA accredited analytical laboratory. The results of the soil analysis are discussed below.

### **Results of Soil Analysis**

The soil sample was analyzed for a broad variety of target compounds in order to assist in the potential disposal of the excavated soils. The target compounds and findings are provided below:

Sample ID	Analysis	Test Results
S-1	VOCs	Below Maximum Allowable Concentrations
	SVOCs	Below Maximum Allowable Concentrations
	Metals	Below Maximum Allowable Concentrations
	PCBs	Below Maximum Allowable Concentrations
	Pesticides	Below Maximum Allowable Concentrations
	Cyanide	Below Maximum Allowable Concentration
	pH	Within an Acceptable Range

**Bold and Highlighted** indicates compounds were detected above applicable MACs

The laboratory results were compared to the numerical standards listed in 35 Ill. Adm. Code 1100, Subpart F, Maximum Allowable Concentrations of Chemical Constituents in Uncontaminated Soil Used as Fill Material at Regulated Fill Operations (MACs). **As indicated above, laboratory analysis did not detect chemicals of concern at concentrations in excess of their respective MACs.** Based on experience in similar disposal at local landfills, the soils from the subject property appear to be suitable for disposal at a CCDD or soils-only facility.

Please find the attached Illinois EPA Form LPC-663 which certifies that this material is not impacted per 35 Ill Adm. Code 1100. It is noted that local landfills can choose to apply more stringent disposal requirements and may request additional analytical data, laboratory results along with Illinois EPA Form LPC-663 should be forwarded to the chosen landfill prior to transport. *Additionally, it should be noted that the landfill will make the final determination on whether or not they will choose to accept the waste, which could be regardless of laboratory results.* A copy of the laboratory report and the laboratory accreditation information are attached.

If you have any questions regarding our findings or opinions, please contact either of the undersigned at (847) 279-0366. Thank you for retaining ECS Midwest, LLC for this evaluation.

Respectfully Submitted,

**ECS MIDWEST, LLC**



Josh Voss  
 Project Manager



Jason N. Warren, REM  
 Principal

Attachments – Laboratory Analytical Report, LPC-663 Form

OCC Skokie Learning Center - Elevator CCDD  
ECS Project #53:4419  
August 2023

**Attachment I**  
**Laboratory Analytical Report**

 **ANALYTICAL REPORT****PREPARED FOR**

Attn: Josh Voss  
ECS Midwest LLC  
1575 Barclay Blvd.  
Buffalo Grove, Illinois 60089

Generated 8/22/2023 3:42:11 PM

**JOB DESCRIPTION**

OCC Skokie Learning Center - Elevator CCDD (4419)

**JOB NUMBER**

500-238111-1

# Eurofins Chicago

## Job Notes

This report may not be reproduced except in full, and with written approval from the laboratory. The results relate only to the samples tested. For questions please contact the Project Manager at the e-mail address or telephone number listed on this page.

The test results in this report relate only to the samples as received by the laboratory and will meet all requirements of the methodology, with any exceptions noted. This report shall not be reproduced except in full, without the express written approval of the laboratory. All questions should be directed to the Eurofins Chicago Project Manager.

## Authorization



Generated  
8/22/2023 3:42:11 PM

Authorized for release by  
Jim Knapp, Project Manager II  
[Jim.Knapp@et.eurofinsus.com](mailto:Jim.Knapp@et.eurofinsus.com)  
(630)758-0262



# Table of Contents

Cover Page . . . . .	1
Table of Contents . . . . .	3
Case Narrative . . . . .	4
Detection Summary . . . . .	5
Method Summary . . . . .	6
Sample Summary . . . . .	7
Client Sample Results . . . . .	8
Definitions . . . . .	11
QC Association . . . . .	12
Surrogate Summary . . . . .	15
QC Sample Results . . . . .	17
Chronicle . . . . .	28
Certification Summary . . . . .	29
Chain of Custody . . . . .	30
Receipt Checklists . . . . .	33



# Case Narrative

Client: ECS Midwest LLC  
Project/Site: OCC Skokie Learning Center - Elevator CCDD (4419)

Job ID: 500-238111-1

**Job ID: 500-238111-1**

**Laboratory: Eurofins Chicago**

## Narrative

### Job Narrative 500-238111-1

#### Receipt

The sample was received on 08/15/23 14:10. Unless otherwise noted below, the sample arrived in good condition, and where required, properly preserved and on ice. The temperature of the cooler at receipt was 1.7° C.

#### GC/MS VOA

No analytical or quality issues were noted, other than those described in the Definitions/Glossary page.

#### GC/MS Semi VOA

Method 8270E: The continuing calibration verification (CCV) analyzed in 500-728234 was outside the method criteria for the following analytes: Benzo[g,h,i]perylene and Indeno[1,2,3-cd]pyrene. As indicated in the reference method, sample analysis may proceed; however, any detection for the affected analytes is considered estimated.

No additional analytical or quality issues were noted, other than those described above or in the Definitions/Glossary page.

#### GC Semi VOA

Method 8081B: The matrix spike / matrix spike duplicate (MS/MSD) recoveries for preparation batch 500-728292 and analytical batch 500-728499 were outside control limits for one or more analytes. See QC Sample Results for detail. Sample matrix interference and/or non-homogeneity are suspected because the associated laboratory control sample (LCS) recovery is within acceptance limits.

Method 8082A: Surrogate Tetrachloro-m-xylene is outside acceptable limits for the following continuing control verification (CCVIS): (CCVIS 500-728495/3). Surrogate DCB Decachlorobiphenyl is within acceptable limits; therefore, re-analysis was not performed.

Method 8082A: The matrix spike (MS) recoveries for preparation batch 500-728292 and analytical batch 500-728495 were outside control limits for one or more analytes. See QC Sample Results for detail. Sample matrix interference and/or non-homogeneity are suspected because the associated laboratory control sample (LCS) recovery is within acceptance limits.

Method 8082A: The matrix spike duplicate (MSD) precision for preparation batch 500-728292 and analytical batch 500-728495 were outside control limits. Sample matrix interference and/or non-homogeneity are suspected because the associated laboratory control sample (LCS) precision was within acceptance limits.

No additional analytical or quality issues were noted, other than those described above or in the Definitions/Glossary page.

#### Metals

No analytical or quality issues were noted, other than those described in the Definitions/Glossary page.

#### General Chemistry

No analytical or quality issues were noted, other than those described in the Definitions/Glossary page.

#### Organic Prep

No analytical or quality issues were noted, other than those described in the Definitions/Glossary page.

# Detection Summary

Client: ECS Midwest LLC  
 Project/Site: OCC Skokie Learning Center - Elevator CCDD  
 (4419)

Job ID: 500-238111-1

**Client Sample ID: S-1**

**Lab Sample ID: 500-238111-1**

Analyte	Result	Qualifier	RL	MDL	Unit	Dil Fac	D	Method	Prep Type
Arsenic	1.4		1.0	0.35	mg/Kg	1	☼	6010D	Total/NA
Beryllium	0.14	J	0.41	0.096	mg/Kg	1	☼	6010D	Total/NA
Cadmium	0.20	J B	0.21	0.037	mg/Kg	1	☼	6010D	Total/NA
Chromium	4.6		1.0	0.51	mg/Kg	1	☼	6010D	Total/NA
Copper	5.7		1.0	0.29	mg/Kg	1	☼	6010D	Total/NA
Lead	5.4		0.52	0.24	mg/Kg	1	☼	6010D	Total/NA
Nickel	4.6		1.0	0.30	mg/Kg	1	☼	6010D	Total/NA
Zinc	16		2.1	0.91	mg/Kg	1	☼	6010D	Total/NA
Mercury	0.038		0.016	0.0084	mg/Kg	1	☼	7471B	Total/NA
pH	8.4		0.2	0.2	SU	1		9045D	Total/NA

This Detection Summary does not include radiochemical test results.

Eurofins Chicago



# Method Summary

Client: ECS Midwest LLC  
Project/Site: OCC Skokie Learning Center - Elevator CCDD  
(4419)

Job ID: 500-238111-1

Method	Method Description	Protocol	Laboratory
8260D	Volatile Organic Compounds by GC/MS	SW846	EET CHI
8270E	Semivolatile Organic Compounds (GC/MS)	SW846	EET CHI
8081B	Organochlorine Pesticides (GC)	SW846	EET CHI
8082A	Polychlorinated Biphenyls (PCBs) by Gas Chromatography	SW846	EET CHI
6010D	Metals (ICP)	SW846	EET CHI
7471B	Mercury (CVAA)	SW846	EET CHI
9012B	Cyanide, Total and/or Amenable	SW846	EET CF
9045D	pH	SW846	EET CHI
Moisture	Percent Moisture	EPA	EET CHI
3050B	Preparation, Metals	SW846	EET CHI
3541	Automated Soxhlet Extraction	SW846	EET CHI
3546	Microwave Extraction	SW846	EET CHI
5035	Closed System Purge and Trap	SW846	EET CHI
7471B	Preparation, Mercury	SW846	EET CHI
9012B	Cyanide, Total and/or Amenable, Distillation	SW846	EET CF

#### Protocol References:

EPA = US Environmental Protection Agency

SW846 = "Test Methods For Evaluating Solid Waste, Physical/Chemical Methods", Third Edition, November 1986 And Its Updates.

#### Laboratory References:

EET CF = Eurofins Cedar Falls, 3019 Venture Way, Cedar Falls, IA 50613, TEL (319)277-2401

EET CHI = Eurofins Chicago, 2417 Bond Street, University Park, IL 60484, TEL (708)534-5200

# Sample Summary

Client: ECS Midwest LLC  
Project/Site: OCC Skokie Learning Center - Elevator CCDD  
(4419)

Job ID: 500-238111-1

---

Lab Sample ID	Client Sample ID	Matrix	Collected	Received
500-238111-1	S-1	Solid	08/14/23 13:20	08/15/23 14:10

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

12

13

14

15

# Client Sample Results

Client: ECS Midwest LLC  
 Project/Site: OCC Skokie Learning Center - Elevator CCDD  
 (4419)

Job ID: 500-238111-1

**Client Sample ID: S-1**

**Lab Sample ID: 500-238111-1**

**Date Collected: 08/14/23 13:20**

**Matrix: Solid**

**Date Received: 08/15/23 14:10**

**Percent Solids: 95.4**

**Method: SW846 8260D - Volatile Organic Compounds by GC/MS**

Analyte	Result	Qualifier	RL	MDL	Unit	D	Prepared	Analyzed	Dil Fac
Acetone	ND		0.017	0.0073	mg/Kg	✳	08/15/23 17:45	08/16/23 15:36	1
Benzene	ND		0.0017	0.00042	mg/Kg	✳	08/15/23 17:45	08/16/23 15:36	1
Bromodichloromethane	ND		0.0017	0.00034	mg/Kg	✳	08/15/23 17:45	08/16/23 15:36	1
Bromoform	ND		0.0017	0.00049	mg/Kg	✳	08/15/23 17:45	08/16/23 15:36	1
Bromomethane	ND		0.0042	0.0016	mg/Kg	✳	08/15/23 17:45	08/16/23 15:36	1
Carbon disulfide	ND		0.0042	0.00087	mg/Kg	✳	08/15/23 17:45	08/16/23 15:36	1
Carbon tetrachloride	ND		0.0017	0.00048	mg/Kg	✳	08/15/23 17:45	08/16/23 15:36	1
Chlorobenzene	ND		0.0017	0.00061	mg/Kg	✳	08/15/23 17:45	08/16/23 15:36	1
Chloroethane	ND		0.0042	0.0012	mg/Kg	✳	08/15/23 17:45	08/16/23 15:36	1
Chloroform	ND		0.0017	0.00058	mg/Kg	✳	08/15/23 17:45	08/16/23 15:36	1
Chloromethane	ND		0.0042	0.0017	mg/Kg	✳	08/15/23 17:45	08/16/23 15:36	1
cis-1,2-Dichloroethene	ND		0.0017	0.00047	mg/Kg	✳	08/15/23 17:45	08/16/23 15:36	1
cis-1,3-Dichloropropene	ND		0.0017	0.00050	mg/Kg	✳	08/15/23 17:45	08/16/23 15:36	1
Dibromochloromethane	ND		0.0017	0.00054	mg/Kg	✳	08/15/23 17:45	08/16/23 15:36	1
1,1-Dichloroethane	ND		0.0017	0.00057	mg/Kg	✳	08/15/23 17:45	08/16/23 15:36	1
1,2-Dichloroethane	ND		0.0042	0.0013	mg/Kg	✳	08/15/23 17:45	08/16/23 15:36	1
1,1-Dichloroethene	ND		0.0017	0.00057	mg/Kg	✳	08/15/23 17:45	08/16/23 15:36	1
1,2-Dichloropropane	ND		0.0017	0.00043	mg/Kg	✳	08/15/23 17:45	08/16/23 15:36	1
1,3-Dichloropropene, Total	ND		0.0017	0.00058	mg/Kg	✳	08/15/23 17:45	08/16/23 15:36	1
Ethylbenzene	ND		0.0017	0.00080	mg/Kg	✳	08/15/23 17:45	08/16/23 15:36	1
2-Hexanone	ND		0.0042	0.0013	mg/Kg	✳	08/15/23 17:45	08/16/23 15:36	1
Methylene Chloride	ND		0.0042	0.0016	mg/Kg	✳	08/15/23 17:45	08/16/23 15:36	1
Methyl Ethyl Ketone	ND		0.0042	0.0018	mg/Kg	✳	08/15/23 17:45	08/16/23 15:36	1
methyl isobutyl ketone	ND		0.0042	0.0012	mg/Kg	✳	08/15/23 17:45	08/16/23 15:36	1
Methyl tert-butyl ether	ND		0.0017	0.00049	mg/Kg	✳	08/15/23 17:45	08/16/23 15:36	1
Styrene	ND		0.0017	0.00050	mg/Kg	✳	08/15/23 17:45	08/16/23 15:36	1
1,1,2,2-Tetrachloroethane	ND		0.0017	0.00053	mg/Kg	✳	08/15/23 17:45	08/16/23 15:36	1
Tetrachloroethene	ND		0.0017	0.00057	mg/Kg	✳	08/15/23 17:45	08/16/23 15:36	1
Toluene	ND		0.0017	0.00042	mg/Kg	✳	08/15/23 17:45	08/16/23 15:36	1
trans-1,2-Dichloroethene	ND		0.0017	0.00074	mg/Kg	✳	08/15/23 17:45	08/16/23 15:36	1
trans-1,3-Dichloropropene	ND		0.0017	0.00058	mg/Kg	✳	08/15/23 17:45	08/16/23 15:36	1
1,1,1-Trichloroethane	ND		0.0017	0.00056	mg/Kg	✳	08/15/23 17:45	08/16/23 15:36	1
1,1,2-Trichloroethane	ND		0.0017	0.00071	mg/Kg	✳	08/15/23 17:45	08/16/23 15:36	1
Trichloroethene	ND		0.0017	0.00056	mg/Kg	✳	08/15/23 17:45	08/16/23 15:36	1
Vinyl chloride	ND		0.0017	0.00074	mg/Kg	✳	08/15/23 17:45	08/16/23 15:36	1
Xylenes, Total	ND		0.0033	0.00053	mg/Kg	✳	08/15/23 17:45	08/16/23 15:36	1

Surrogate	%Recovery	Qualifier	Limits	Prepared	Analyzed	Dil Fac
4-Bromofluorobenzene (Surr)	95		75 - 131	08/15/23 17:45	08/16/23 15:36	1
Dibromofluoromethane	89		75 - 126	08/15/23 17:45	08/16/23 15:36	1
1,2-Dichloroethane-d4 (Surr)	97		70 - 134	08/15/23 17:45	08/16/23 15:36	1
Toluene-d8 (Surr)	103		75 - 124	08/15/23 17:45	08/16/23 15:36	1

**Method: SW846 8270E - Semivolatile Organic Compounds (GC/MS)**

Analyte	Result	Qualifier	RL	MDL	Unit	D	Prepared	Analyzed	Dil Fac
Acenaphthene	ND		0.033	0.0068	mg/Kg	✳	08/16/23 13:19	08/17/23 17:17	1
Acenaphthylene	ND		0.033	0.0057	mg/Kg	✳	08/16/23 13:19	08/17/23 17:17	1
Anthracene	ND		0.033	0.0068	mg/Kg	✳	08/16/23 13:19	08/17/23 17:17	1
Benzo[a]anthracene	ND		0.033	0.0071	mg/Kg	✳	08/16/23 13:19	08/17/23 17:17	1

Eurofins Chicago

# Client Sample Results

Client: ECS Midwest LLC  
 Project/Site: OCC Skokie Learning Center - Elevator CCDD  
 (4419)

Job ID: 500-238111-1

**Client Sample ID: S-1**

**Lab Sample ID: 500-238111-1**

**Date Collected: 08/14/23 13:20**

**Matrix: Solid**

**Date Received: 08/15/23 14:10**

**Percent Solids: 95.4**

**Method: SW846 8270E - Semivolatile Organic Compounds (GC/MS) (Continued)**

Analyte	Result	Qualifier	RL	MDL	Unit	D	Prepared	Analyzed	Dil Fac
Benzo[a]pyrene	ND		0.033	0.032	mg/Kg	✱	08/16/23 13:19	08/17/23 17:17	1
Benzo[b]fluoranthene	ND		0.033	0.032	mg/Kg	✱	08/16/23 13:19	08/17/23 17:17	1
Benzo[g,h,i]perylene	ND		0.033	0.0072	mg/Kg	✱	08/16/23 13:19	08/17/23 17:17	1
Benzo[k]fluoranthene	ND		0.033	0.013	mg/Kg	✱	08/16/23 13:19	08/17/23 17:17	1
Chrysene	ND		0.033	0.0088	mg/Kg	✱	08/16/23 13:19	08/17/23 17:17	1
Dibenz(a,h)anthracene	ND		0.033	0.033	mg/Kg	✱	08/16/23 13:19	08/17/23 17:17	1
Fluoranthene	ND		0.033	0.0077	mg/Kg	✱	08/16/23 13:19	08/17/23 17:17	1
Indeno[1,2,3-cd]pyrene	ND		0.033	0.032	mg/Kg	✱	08/16/23 13:19	08/17/23 17:17	1
Naphthalene	ND		0.033	0.0060	mg/Kg	✱	08/16/23 13:19	08/17/23 17:17	1
Phenanthrene	ND		0.033	0.0073	mg/Kg	✱	08/16/23 13:19	08/17/23 17:17	1
Pyrene	ND		0.033	0.0091	mg/Kg	✱	08/16/23 13:19	08/17/23 17:17	1
Fluorene	ND		0.033	0.0099	mg/Kg	✱	08/16/23 13:19	08/17/23 17:17	1

Surrogate	%Recovery	Qualifier	Limits	Prepared	Analyzed	Dil Fac
Nitrobenzene-d5 (Surr)	72		37 - 147	08/16/23 13:19	08/17/23 17:17	1
2-Fluorobiphenyl (Surr)	79		43 - 145	08/16/23 13:19	08/17/23 17:17	1
Terphenyl-d14 (Surr)	97		42 - 157	08/16/23 13:19	08/17/23 17:17	1

**Method: SW846 8081B - Organochlorine Pesticides (GC)**

Analyte	Result	Qualifier	RL	MDL	Unit	D	Prepared	Analyzed	Dil Fac
Aldrin	ND		0.0017	0.0012	mg/Kg	✱	08/17/23 10:12	08/18/23 11:38	1
alpha-BHC	ND		0.0017	0.00096	mg/Kg	✱	08/17/23 10:12	08/18/23 11:38	1
beta-BHC	ND		0.0017	0.0014	mg/Kg	✱	08/17/23 10:12	08/18/23 11:38	1
cis-Chlordane	ND		0.0017	0.00091	mg/Kg	✱	08/17/23 10:12	08/18/23 11:38	1
4,4'-DDD	ND		0.0017	0.00091	mg/Kg	✱	08/17/23 10:12	08/18/23 11:38	1
4,4'-DDE	ND		0.0017	0.00087	mg/Kg	✱	08/17/23 10:12	08/18/23 11:38	1
4,4'-DDT	ND		0.0017	0.00081	mg/Kg	✱	08/17/23 10:12	08/18/23 11:38	1
delta-BHC	ND		0.0017	0.00081	mg/Kg	✱	08/17/23 10:12	08/18/23 11:38	1
Dieldrin	ND		0.0017	0.00089	mg/Kg	✱	08/17/23 10:12	08/18/23 11:38	1
Endosulfan I	ND		0.0017	0.00092	mg/Kg	✱	08/17/23 10:12	08/18/23 11:38	1
Endosulfan II	ND		0.0017	0.00093	mg/Kg	✱	08/17/23 10:12	08/18/23 11:38	1
Endosulfan sulfate	ND		0.0017	0.00094	mg/Kg	✱	08/17/23 10:12	08/18/23 11:38	1
Endrin	ND		0.0017	0.00087	mg/Kg	✱	08/17/23 10:12	08/18/23 11:38	1
Endrin aldehyde	ND	F1	0.0017	0.00097	mg/Kg	✱	08/17/23 10:12	08/18/23 11:38	1
Endrin ketone	ND		0.0017	0.00083	mg/Kg	✱	08/17/23 10:12	08/18/23 11:38	1
gamma-BHC (Lindane)	ND		0.0017	0.00084	mg/Kg	✱	08/17/23 10:12	08/18/23 11:38	1
Heptachlor	ND		0.0017	0.00092	mg/Kg	✱	08/17/23 10:12	08/18/23 11:38	1
Heptachlor epoxide	ND		0.0017	0.00091	mg/Kg	✱	08/17/23 10:12	08/18/23 11:38	1
Methoxychlor	ND		0.0083	0.0011	mg/Kg	✱	08/17/23 10:12	08/18/23 11:38	1
Toxaphene	ND		0.017	0.0068	mg/Kg	✱	08/17/23 10:12	08/18/23 11:38	1
trans-Chlordane	ND		0.0017	0.00098	mg/Kg	✱	08/17/23 10:12	08/18/23 11:38	1

Surrogate	%Recovery	Qualifier	Limits	Prepared	Analyzed	Dil Fac
DCB Decachlorobiphenyl	76		33 - 148	08/17/23 10:12	08/18/23 11:38	1
Tetrachloro-m-xylene	68		30 - 121	08/17/23 10:12	08/18/23 11:38	1

**Method: SW846 8082A - Polychlorinated Biphenyls (PCBs) by Gas Chromatography**

Analyte	Result	Qualifier	RL	MDL	Unit	D	Prepared	Analyzed	Dil Fac
PCB-1016	ND	F1	0.017	0.0066	mg/Kg	✱	08/17/23 10:12	08/18/23 11:52	1

Eurofins Chicago

# Client Sample Results

Client: ECS Midwest LLC  
 Project/Site: OCC Skokie Learning Center - Elevator CCDD  
 (4419)

Job ID: 500-238111-1

**Client Sample ID: S-1**

**Lab Sample ID: 500-238111-1**

**Date Collected: 08/14/23 13:20**

**Matrix: Solid**

**Date Received: 08/15/23 14:10**

**Percent Solids: 95.4**

**Method: SW846 8082A - Polychlorinated Biphenyls (PCBs) by Gas Chromatography (Continued)**

Analyte	Result	Qualifier	RL	MDL	Unit	D	Prepared	Analyzed	Dil Fac
PCB-1221	ND		0.017	0.0066	mg/Kg	✳	08/17/23 10:12	08/18/23 11:52	1
PCB-1232	ND		0.017	0.0045	mg/Kg	✳	08/17/23 10:12	08/18/23 11:52	1
PCB-1242	ND		0.017	0.0065	mg/Kg	✳	08/17/23 10:12	08/18/23 11:52	1
PCB-1248	ND		0.017	0.0080	mg/Kg	✳	08/17/23 10:12	08/18/23 11:52	1
PCB-1254	ND		0.017	0.0057	mg/Kg	✳	08/17/23 10:12	08/18/23 11:52	1
PCB-1260	ND	F1 F2	0.017	0.0063	mg/Kg	✳	08/17/23 10:12	08/18/23 11:52	1
Polychlorinated biphenyls, Total	ND		0.017	0.0045	mg/Kg	✳	08/17/23 10:12	08/18/23 11:52	1

Surrogate	%Recovery	Qualifier	Limits	Prepared	Analyzed	Dil Fac
Tetrachloro-m-xylene	60		49 - 129	08/17/23 10:12	08/18/23 11:52	1
DCB Decachlorobiphenyl	55		37 - 121	08/17/23 10:12	08/18/23 11:52	1

**Method: SW846 6010D - Metals (ICP)**

Analyte	Result	Qualifier	RL	MDL	Unit	D	Prepared	Analyzed	Dil Fac
Antimony	ND		2.1	0.40	mg/Kg	✳	08/17/23 13:48	08/21/23 18:12	1
<b>Arsenic</b>	<b>1.4</b>		1.0	0.35	mg/Kg	✳	08/17/23 13:48	08/21/23 18:12	1
<b>Beryllium</b>	<b>0.14</b>	<b>J</b>	0.41	0.096	mg/Kg	✳	08/17/23 13:48	08/21/23 18:12	1
<b>Cadmium</b>	<b>0.20</b>	<b>J B</b>	0.21	0.037	mg/Kg	✳	08/17/23 13:48	08/21/23 18:12	1
<b>Chromium</b>	<b>4.6</b>		1.0	0.51	mg/Kg	✳	08/17/23 13:48	08/21/23 18:12	1
<b>Copper</b>	<b>5.7</b>		1.0	0.29	mg/Kg	✳	08/17/23 13:48	08/21/23 18:12	1
<b>Lead</b>	<b>5.4</b>		0.52	0.24	mg/Kg	✳	08/17/23 13:48	08/21/23 18:12	1
<b>Nickel</b>	<b>4.6</b>		1.0	0.30	mg/Kg	✳	08/17/23 13:48	08/21/23 18:12	1
Selenium	ND		1.0	0.61	mg/Kg	✳	08/17/23 13:48	08/21/23 18:12	1
Silver	ND		0.52	0.13	mg/Kg	✳	08/17/23 13:48	08/21/23 18:12	1
Thallium	ND		1.0	0.52	mg/Kg	✳	08/17/23 13:48	08/21/23 18:12	1
<b>Zinc</b>	<b>16</b>		2.1	0.91	mg/Kg	✳	08/17/23 13:48	08/21/23 18:12	1

**Method: SW846 7471B - Mercury (CVAA)**

Analyte	Result	Qualifier	RL	MDL	Unit	D	Prepared	Analyzed	Dil Fac
<b>Mercury</b>	<b>0.038</b>		0.016	0.0084	mg/Kg	✳	08/18/23 14:10	08/21/23 14:20	1

**General Chemistry**

Analyte	Result	Qualifier	RL	MDL	Unit	D	Prepared	Analyzed	Dil Fac
Cyanide, Total (SW846 9012B)	ND		1.0	0.33	mg/Kg	✳	08/18/23 08:14	08/18/23 19:31	1
<b>pH (SW846 9045D)</b>	<b>8.4</b>		0.2	0.2	SU			08/16/23 16:11	1

# Definitions/Glossary

Client: ECS Midwest LLC  
Project/Site: OCC Skokie Learning Center - Elevator CCDD  
(4419)

Job ID: 500-238111-1

## Qualifiers

### GC Semi VOA

Qualifier	Qualifier Description
F1	MS and/or MSD recovery exceeds control limits.
F2	MS/MSD RPD exceeds control limits

### Metals

Qualifier	Qualifier Description
B	Compound was found in the blank and sample.
J	Result is less than the RL but greater than or equal to the MDL and the concentration is an approximate value.

## Glossary

Abbreviation	These commonly used abbreviations may or may not be present in this report.
α	Listed under the "D" column to designate that the result is reported on a dry weight basis
%R	Percent Recovery
CFL	Contains Free Liquid
CFU	Colony Forming Unit
CNF	Contains No Free Liquid
DER	Duplicate Error Ratio (normalized absolute difference)
Dil Fac	Dilution Factor
DL	Detection Limit (DoD/DOE)
DL, RA, RE, IN	Indicates a Dilution, Re-analysis, Re-extraction, or additional Initial metals/anion analysis of the sample
DLC	Decision Level Concentration (Radiochemistry)
EDL	Estimated Detection Limit (Dioxin)
LOD	Limit of Detection (DoD/DOE)
LOQ	Limit of Quantitation (DoD/DOE)
MCL	EPA recommended "Maximum Contaminant Level"
MDA	Minimum Detectable Activity (Radiochemistry)
MDC	Minimum Detectable Concentration (Radiochemistry)
MDL	Method Detection Limit
ML	Minimum Level (Dioxin)
MPN	Most Probable Number
MQL	Method Quantitation Limit
NC	Not Calculated
ND	Not Detected at the reporting limit (or MDL or EDL if shown)
NEG	Negative / Absent
POS	Positive / Present
PQL	Practical Quantitation Limit
PRES	Presumptive
QC	Quality Control
RER	Relative Error Ratio (Radiochemistry)
RL	Reporting Limit or Requested Limit (Radiochemistry)
RPD	Relative Percent Difference, a measure of the relative difference between two points
TEF	Toxicity Equivalent Factor (Dioxin)
TEQ	Toxicity Equivalent Quotient (Dioxin)
TNTC	Too Numerous To Count



# QC Association Summary

Client: ECS Midwest LLC  
 Project/Site: OCC Skokie Learning Center - Elevator CCDD  
 (4419)

Job ID: 500-238111-1

## GC/MS VOA

### Prep Batch: 727948

Lab Sample ID	Client Sample ID	Prep Type	Matrix	Method	Prep Batch
500-238111-1	S-1	Total/NA	Solid	5035	

### Analysis Batch: 727964

Lab Sample ID	Client Sample ID	Prep Type	Matrix	Method	Prep Batch
500-238111-1	S-1	Total/NA	Solid	8260D	727948
MB 500-727964/6	Method Blank	Total/NA	Solid	8260D	
LCS 500-727964/3	Lab Control Sample	Total/NA	Solid	8260D	
LCSD 500-727964/4	Lab Control Sample Dup	Total/NA	Solid	8260D	

## GC/MS Semi VOA

### Prep Batch: 728095

Lab Sample ID	Client Sample ID	Prep Type	Matrix	Method	Prep Batch
500-238111-1	S-1	Total/NA	Solid	3546	
MB 500-728095/1-A	Method Blank	Total/NA	Solid	3546	
LCS 500-728095/2-A	Lab Control Sample	Total/NA	Solid	3546	
500-238111-1 MS	S-1	Total/NA	Solid	3546	
500-238111-1 MSD	S-1	Total/NA	Solid	3546	

### Analysis Batch: 728234

Lab Sample ID	Client Sample ID	Prep Type	Matrix	Method	Prep Batch
500-238111-1	S-1	Total/NA	Solid	8270E	728095
500-238111-1 MS	S-1	Total/NA	Solid	8270E	728095
500-238111-1 MSD	S-1	Total/NA	Solid	8270E	728095

### Analysis Batch: 728240

Lab Sample ID	Client Sample ID	Prep Type	Matrix	Method	Prep Batch
MB 500-728095/1-A	Method Blank	Total/NA	Solid	8270E	728095
LCS 500-728095/2-A	Lab Control Sample	Total/NA	Solid	8270E	728095

## GC Semi VOA

### Prep Batch: 728292

Lab Sample ID	Client Sample ID	Prep Type	Matrix	Method	Prep Batch
500-238111-1	S-1	Total/NA	Solid	3541	
MB 500-728292/1-A	Method Blank	Total/NA	Solid	3541	
LCS 500-728292/2-A	Lab Control Sample	Total/NA	Solid	3541	
LCS 500-728292/3-A	Lab Control Sample	Total/NA	Solid	3541	
500-238111-1 MS	S-1	Total/NA	Solid	3541	
500-238111-1 MS	S-1	Total/NA	Solid	3541	
500-238111-1 MSD	S-1	Total/NA	Solid	3541	
500-238111-1 MSD	S-1	Total/NA	Solid	3541	

### Analysis Batch: 728495

Lab Sample ID	Client Sample ID	Prep Type	Matrix	Method	Prep Batch
500-238111-1	S-1	Total/NA	Solid	8082A	728292
MB 500-728292/1-A	Method Blank	Total/NA	Solid	8082A	728292
LCS 500-728292/3-A	Lab Control Sample	Total/NA	Solid	8082A	728292
500-238111-1 MS	S-1	Total/NA	Solid	8082A	728292
500-238111-1 MSD	S-1	Total/NA	Solid	8082A	728292

Eurofins Chicago

# QC Association Summary

Client: ECS Midwest LLC  
Project/Site: OCC Skokie Learning Center - Elevator CCDD  
(4419)

Job ID: 500-238111-1

## GC Semi VOA

### Analysis Batch: 728499

Lab Sample ID	Client Sample ID	Prep Type	Matrix	Method	Prep Batch
500-238111-1	S-1	Total/NA	Solid	8081B	728292
MB 500-728292/1-A	Method Blank	Total/NA	Solid	8081B	728292
LCS 500-728292/2-A	Lab Control Sample	Total/NA	Solid	8081B	728292
500-238111-1 MS	S-1	Total/NA	Solid	8081B	728292
500-238111-1 MSD	S-1	Total/NA	Solid	8081B	728292

## Metals

### Prep Batch: 728348

Lab Sample ID	Client Sample ID	Prep Type	Matrix	Method	Prep Batch
500-238111-1	S-1	Total/NA	Solid	3050B	
MB 500-728348/1-A	Method Blank	Total/NA	Solid	3050B	
LCS 500-728348/2-A	Lab Control Sample	Total/NA	Solid	3050B	

### Prep Batch: 728516

Lab Sample ID	Client Sample ID	Prep Type	Matrix	Method	Prep Batch
500-238111-1	S-1	Total/NA	Solid	7471B	
MB 500-728516/12-A	Method Blank	Total/NA	Solid	7471B	
LCS 500-728516/13-A	Lab Control Sample	Total/NA	Solid	7471B	

### Analysis Batch: 728718

Lab Sample ID	Client Sample ID	Prep Type	Matrix	Method	Prep Batch
500-238111-1	S-1	Total/NA	Solid	7471B	728516
MB 500-728516/12-A	Method Blank	Total/NA	Solid	7471B	728516
LCS 500-728516/13-A	Lab Control Sample	Total/NA	Solid	7471B	728516

### Analysis Batch: 728860

Lab Sample ID	Client Sample ID	Prep Type	Matrix	Method	Prep Batch
500-238111-1	S-1	Total/NA	Solid	6010D	728348
MB 500-728348/1-A	Method Blank	Total/NA	Solid	6010D	728348
LCS 500-728348/2-A	Lab Control Sample	Total/NA	Solid	6010D	728348

### Analysis Batch: 728922

Lab Sample ID	Client Sample ID	Prep Type	Matrix	Method	Prep Batch
LCS 500-728348/2-A	Lab Control Sample	Total/NA	Solid	6010D	728348

## General Chemistry

### Prep Batch: 397053

Lab Sample ID	Client Sample ID	Prep Type	Matrix	Method	Prep Batch
500-238111-1	S-1	Total/NA	Solid	9012B	
MB 310-397053/1-A	Method Blank	Total/NA	Solid	9012B	
LCS 310-397053/2-A	Lab Control Sample	Total/NA	Solid	9012B	

### Analysis Batch: 397174

Lab Sample ID	Client Sample ID	Prep Type	Matrix	Method	Prep Batch
500-238111-1	S-1	Total/NA	Solid	9012B	397053
MB 310-397053/1-A	Method Blank	Total/NA	Solid	9012B	397053
LCS 310-397053/2-A	Lab Control Sample	Total/NA	Solid	9012B	397053

Eurofins Chicago

# QC Association Summary

Client: ECS Midwest LLC  
Project/Site: OCC Skokie Learning Center - Elevator CCDD  
(4419)

Job ID: 500-238111-1

## General Chemistry

### Analysis Batch: 728072

Lab Sample ID	Client Sample ID	Prep Type	Matrix	Method	Prep Batch
500-238111-1	S-1	Total/NA	Solid	Moisture	
500-238111-1 DU	S-1	Total/NA	Solid	Moisture	

### Analysis Batch: 728185

Lab Sample ID	Client Sample ID	Prep Type	Matrix	Method	Prep Batch
500-238111-1	S-1	Total/NA	Solid	9045D	
LCS 500-728185/2	Lab Control Sample	Total/NA	Solid	9045D	
LCSD 500-728185/3	Lab Control Sample Dup	Total/NA	Solid	9045D	

- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15

# Surrogate Summary

Client: ECS Midwest LLC  
Project/Site: OCC Skokie Learning Center - Elevator CCDD  
(4419)

Job ID: 500-238111-1

## Method: 8260D - Volatile Organic Compounds by GC/MS

Matrix: Solid

Prep Type: Total/NA

### Percent Surrogate Recovery (Acceptance Limits)

Lab Sample ID	Client Sample ID	BFB (75-131)	DBFM (75-126)	DCA (70-134)	TOL (75-124)
500-238111-1	S-1	95	89	97	103
LCS 500-727964/3	Lab Control Sample	95	89	92	104
LCS 500-727964/4	Lab Control Sample Dup	100	89	91	102
MB 500-727964/6	Method Blank	95	92	97	101

#### Surrogate Legend

BFB = 4-Bromofluorobenzene (Surr)

DBFM = Dibromofluoromethane

DCA = 1,2-Dichloroethane-d4 (Surr)

TOL = Toluene-d8 (Surr)

## Method: 8270E - Semivolatile Organic Compounds (GC/MS)

Matrix: Solid

Prep Type: Total/NA

### Percent Surrogate Recovery (Acceptance Limits)

Lab Sample ID	Client Sample ID	NBZ (37-147)	FBP (43-145)	TPHL (42-157)
500-238111-1	S-1	72	79	97
500-238111-1 MS	S-1	72	83	95
500-238111-1 MSD	S-1	69	76	83
LCS 500-728095/2-A	Lab Control Sample	85	90	98
MB 500-728095/1-A	Method Blank	84	87	99

#### Surrogate Legend

NBZ = Nitrobenzene-d5 (Surr)

FBP = 2-Fluorobiphenyl (Surr)

TPHL = Terphenyl-d14 (Surr)

## Method: 8081B - Organochlorine Pesticides (GC)

Matrix: Solid

Prep Type: Total/NA

### Percent Surrogate Recovery (Acceptance Limits)

Lab Sample ID	Client Sample ID	DCBP1 (33-148)	TCX1 (30-121)
500-238111-1	S-1	76	68
500-238111-1 MS	S-1	59	55
500-238111-1 MSD	S-1	62	54
LCS 500-728292/2-A	Lab Control Sample	68	60
MB 500-728292/1-A	Method Blank	82	72

#### Surrogate Legend

DCBP1 = DCB Decachlorobiphenyl

TCX1 = Tetrachloro-m-xylene

## Method: 8082A - Polychlorinated Biphenyls (PCBs) by Gas Chromatography

Matrix: Solid

Prep Type: Total/NA

### Percent Surrogate Recovery (Acceptance Limits)

Lab Sample ID	Client Sample ID	TCX1 (49-129)	DCBP1 (37-121)
500-238111-1	S-1	60	55

Eurofins Chicago

# Surrogate Summary

Client: ECS Midwest LLC  
Project/Site: OCC Skokie Learning Center - Elevator CCDD  
(4419)

Job ID: 500-238111-1

**Method: 8082A - Polychlorinated Biphenyls (PCBs) by Gas Chromatography (Continued)**

**Matrix: Solid**

**Prep Type: Total/NA**

## Percent Surrogate Recovery (Acceptance Limits)

Lab Sample ID	Client Sample ID	TCX1 (49-129)	DCBP1 (37-121)
500-238111-1 MS	S-1	55	46
500-238111-1 MSD	S-1	65	66
LCS 500-728292/3-A	Lab Control Sample	92	83
MB 500-728292/1-A	Method Blank	106	98

### Surrogate Legend

TCX = Tetrachloro-m-xylene

DCBP = DCB Decachlorobiphenyl

# QC Sample Results

Client: ECS Midwest LLC  
 Project/Site: OCC Skokie Learning Center - Elevator CCDD  
 (4419)

Job ID: 500-238111-1

## Method: 8260D - Volatile Organic Compounds by GC/MS

**Lab Sample ID: MB 500-727964/6**  
**Matrix: Solid**  
**Analysis Batch: 727964**

**Client Sample ID: Method Blank**  
**Prep Type: Total/NA**

Analyte	MB Result	MB Qualifier	RL	MDL	Unit	D	Prepared	Analyzed	Dil Fac
Acetone	ND		0.020	0.0087	mg/Kg			08/16/23 10:09	1
Benzene	ND		0.0020	0.00051	mg/Kg			08/16/23 10:09	1
Bromodichloromethane	ND		0.0020	0.00041	mg/Kg			08/16/23 10:09	1
Bromoform	ND		0.0020	0.00058	mg/Kg			08/16/23 10:09	1
Bromomethane	ND		0.0050	0.0019	mg/Kg			08/16/23 10:09	1
Carbon disulfide	ND		0.0050	0.0010	mg/Kg			08/16/23 10:09	1
Carbon tetrachloride	ND		0.0020	0.00058	mg/Kg			08/16/23 10:09	1
Chlorobenzene	ND		0.0020	0.00074	mg/Kg			08/16/23 10:09	1
Chloroethane	ND		0.0050	0.0015	mg/Kg			08/16/23 10:09	1
Chloroform	ND		0.0020	0.00069	mg/Kg			08/16/23 10:09	1
Chloromethane	ND		0.0050	0.0020	mg/Kg			08/16/23 10:09	1
cis-1,2-Dichloroethene	ND		0.0020	0.00056	mg/Kg			08/16/23 10:09	1
cis-1,3-Dichloropropene	ND		0.0020	0.00060	mg/Kg			08/16/23 10:09	1
Dibromochloromethane	ND		0.0020	0.00065	mg/Kg			08/16/23 10:09	1
1,1-Dichloroethane	ND		0.0020	0.00069	mg/Kg			08/16/23 10:09	1
1,2-Dichloroethane	ND		0.0050	0.0016	mg/Kg			08/16/23 10:09	1
1,1-Dichloroethene	ND		0.0020	0.00069	mg/Kg			08/16/23 10:09	1
1,2-Dichloropropane	ND		0.0020	0.00052	mg/Kg			08/16/23 10:09	1
1,3-Dichloropropane, Total	ND		0.0020	0.00070	mg/Kg			08/16/23 10:09	1
Ethylbenzene	ND		0.0020	0.00096	mg/Kg			08/16/23 10:09	1
2-Hexanone	ND		0.0050	0.0016	mg/Kg			08/16/23 10:09	1
Methylene Chloride	ND		0.0050	0.0020	mg/Kg			08/16/23 10:09	1
Methyl Ethyl Ketone	ND		0.0050	0.0022	mg/Kg			08/16/23 10:09	1
methyl isobutyl ketone	ND		0.0050	0.0015	mg/Kg			08/16/23 10:09	1
Methyl tert-butyl ether	ND		0.0020	0.00059	mg/Kg			08/16/23 10:09	1
Styrene	ND		0.0020	0.00060	mg/Kg			08/16/23 10:09	1
1,1,2,2-Tetrachloroethane	ND		0.0020	0.00064	mg/Kg			08/16/23 10:09	1
Tetrachloroethene	ND		0.0020	0.00068	mg/Kg			08/16/23 10:09	1
Toluene	ND		0.0020	0.00051	mg/Kg			08/16/23 10:09	1
trans-1,2-Dichloroethene	ND		0.0020	0.00089	mg/Kg			08/16/23 10:09	1
trans-1,3-Dichloropropene	ND		0.0020	0.00070	mg/Kg			08/16/23 10:09	1
1,1,1-Trichloroethane	ND		0.0020	0.00067	mg/Kg			08/16/23 10:09	1
1,1,2-Trichloroethane	ND		0.0020	0.00086	mg/Kg			08/16/23 10:09	1
Trichloroethene	ND		0.0020	0.00068	mg/Kg			08/16/23 10:09	1
Vinyl chloride	ND		0.0020	0.00089	mg/Kg			08/16/23 10:09	1
Xylenes, Total	ND		0.0040	0.00064	mg/Kg			08/16/23 10:09	1

Surrogate	MB %Recovery	MB Qualifier	Limits	Prepared	Analyzed	Dil Fac
4-Bromofluorobenzene (Surr)	95		75 - 131		08/16/23 10:09	1
Dibromofluoromethane	92		75 - 126		08/16/23 10:09	1
1,2-Dichloroethane-d4 (Surr)	97		70 - 134		08/16/23 10:09	1
Toluene-d8 (Surr)	101		75 - 124		08/16/23 10:09	1

# QC Sample Results

Client: ECS Midwest LLC  
 Project/Site: OCC Skokie Learning Center - Elevator CCDD  
 (4419)

Job ID: 500-238111-1

## Method: 8260D - Volatile Organic Compounds by GC/MS (Continued)

**Lab Sample ID: LCS 500-727964/3**  
**Matrix: Solid**  
**Analysis Batch: 727964**

**Client Sample ID: Lab Control Sample**  
**Prep Type: Total/NA**

Analyte	Spike Added	LCS Result	LCS Qualifier	Unit	D	%Rec	%Rec Limits
Acetone	0.0500	0.0489		mg/Kg		98	40 - 150
Benzene	0.0500	0.0503		mg/Kg		101	70 - 125
Bromodichloromethane	0.0500	0.0519		mg/Kg		104	67 - 129
Bromoform	0.0500	0.0500		mg/Kg		100	68 - 136
Bromomethane	0.0500	0.0442		mg/Kg		88	70 - 130
Carbon disulfide	0.0500	0.0454		mg/Kg		91	70 - 129
Carbon tetrachloride	0.0500	0.0472		mg/Kg		94	75 - 125
Chlorobenzene	0.0500	0.0525		mg/Kg		105	50 - 150
Chloroethane	0.0500	0.0428		mg/Kg		86	75 - 125
Chloroform	0.0500	0.0475		mg/Kg		95	57 - 135
Chloromethane	0.0500	0.0480		mg/Kg		96	70 - 125
cis-1,2-Dichloroethene	0.0500	0.0466		mg/Kg		93	70 - 125
cis-1,3-Dichloropropene	0.0500	0.0555		mg/Kg		111	70 - 125
Dibromochloromethane	0.0500	0.0536		mg/Kg		107	69 - 125
1,1-Dichloroethane	0.0500	0.0464		mg/Kg		93	70 - 125
1,2-Dichloroethane	0.0500	0.0504		mg/Kg		101	70 - 130
1,1-Dichloroethene	0.0500	0.0442		mg/Kg		88	70 - 120
1,2-Dichloropropane	0.0500	0.0499		mg/Kg		100	70 - 125
Ethylbenzene	0.0500	0.0516		mg/Kg		103	61 - 136
2-Hexanone	0.0500	0.0463		mg/Kg		93	48 - 146
Methylene Chloride	0.0500	0.0453		mg/Kg		91	70 - 126
Methyl Ethyl Ketone	0.0500	0.0485		mg/Kg		97	47 - 138
methyl isobutyl ketone	0.0500	0.0472		mg/Kg		94	50 - 148
Methyl tert-butyl ether	0.0500	0.0460		mg/Kg		92	50 - 140
Styrene	0.0500	0.0532		mg/Kg		106	70 - 125
1,1,2,2-Tetrachloroethane	0.0500	0.0491		mg/Kg		98	70 - 122
Tetrachloroethene	0.0500	0.0532		mg/Kg		106	70 - 124
Toluene	0.0500	0.0530		mg/Kg		106	70 - 125
trans-1,2-Dichloroethene	0.0500	0.0458		mg/Kg		92	70 - 125
trans-1,3-Dichloropropene	0.0500	0.0552		mg/Kg		110	70 - 125
1,1,1-Trichloroethane	0.0500	0.0461		mg/Kg		92	70 - 128
1,1,2-Trichloroethane	0.0500	0.0528		mg/Kg		106	70 - 125
Trichloroethene	0.0500	0.0515		mg/Kg		103	70 - 125
Vinyl chloride	0.0500	0.0486		mg/Kg		97	70 - 125
Xylenes, Total	0.100	0.103		mg/Kg		103	53 - 147

Surrogate	LCS LCS		Limits
	%Recovery	Qualifier	
4-Bromofluorobenzene (Surr)	95		75 - 131
Dibromofluoromethane	89		75 - 126
1,2-Dichloroethane-d4 (Surr)	92		70 - 134
Toluene-d8 (Surr)	104		75 - 124

# QC Sample Results

Client: ECS Midwest LLC  
 Project/Site: OCC Skokie Learning Center - Elevator CCDD  
 (4419)

Job ID: 500-238111-1

## Method: 8260D - Volatile Organic Compounds by GC/MS (Continued)

**Lab Sample ID: LCSD 500-727964/4**  
**Matrix: Solid**  
**Analysis Batch: 727964**

**Client Sample ID: Lab Control Sample Dup**  
**Prep Type: Total/NA**

Analyte	Spike Added	LCSD Result	LCSD Qualifier	Unit	D	%Rec	%Rec Limits	RPD	RPD Limit
Acetone	0.0500	0.0418		mg/Kg		84	40 - 150	16	30
Benzene	0.0500	0.0503		mg/Kg		101	70 - 125	0	30
Bromodichloromethane	0.0500	0.0515		mg/Kg		103	67 - 129	1	30
Bromoform	0.0500	0.0493		mg/Kg		99	68 - 136	1	30
Bromomethane	0.0500	0.0518		mg/Kg		104	70 - 130	16	30
Carbon disulfide	0.0500	0.0466		mg/Kg		93	70 - 129	3	30
Carbon tetrachloride	0.0500	0.0493		mg/Kg		99	75 - 125	4	30
Chlorobenzene	0.0500	0.0523		mg/Kg		105	50 - 150	0	30
Chloroethane	0.0500	0.0435		mg/Kg		87	75 - 125	1	30
Chloroform	0.0500	0.0466		mg/Kg		93	57 - 135	2	30
Chloromethane	0.0500	0.0465		mg/Kg		93	70 - 125	3	30
cis-1,2-Dichloroethene	0.0500	0.0460		mg/Kg		92	70 - 125	1	30
cis-1,3-Dichloropropene	0.0500	0.0541		mg/Kg		108	70 - 125	3	30
Dibromochloromethane	0.0500	0.0529		mg/Kg		106	69 - 125	1	30
1,1-Dichloroethane	0.0500	0.0464		mg/Kg		93	70 - 125	0	30
1,2-Dichloroethane	0.0500	0.0499		mg/Kg		100	70 - 130	1	30
1,1-Dichloroethene	0.0500	0.0458		mg/Kg		92	70 - 120	4	30
1,2-Dichloropropane	0.0500	0.0501		mg/Kg		100	70 - 125	0	30
Ethylbenzene	0.0500	0.0518		mg/Kg		104	61 - 136	0	30
2-Hexanone	0.0500	0.0534		mg/Kg		107	48 - 146	14	30
Methylene Chloride	0.0500	0.0453		mg/Kg		91	70 - 126	0	30
Methyl Ethyl Ketone	0.0500	0.0517		mg/Kg		103	47 - 138	6	30
methyl isobutyl ketone	0.0500	0.0508		mg/Kg		102	50 - 148	7	30
Methyl tert-butyl ether	0.0500	0.0466		mg/Kg		93	50 - 140	1	30
Styrene	0.0500	0.0523		mg/Kg		105	70 - 125	2	30
1,1,2,2-Tetrachloroethane	0.0500	0.0510		mg/Kg		102	70 - 122	4	30
Tetrachloroethene	0.0500	0.0540		mg/Kg		108	70 - 124	2	30
Toluene	0.0500	0.0526		mg/Kg		105	70 - 125	1	30
trans-1,2-Dichloroethene	0.0500	0.0468		mg/Kg		94	70 - 125	2	30
trans-1,3-Dichloropropene	0.0500	0.0554		mg/Kg		111	70 - 125	0	30
1,1,1-Trichloroethane	0.0500	0.0479		mg/Kg		96	70 - 128	4	30
1,1,2-Trichloroethane	0.0500	0.0520		mg/Kg		104	70 - 125	1	30
Trichloroethene	0.0500	0.0519		mg/Kg		104	70 - 125	1	30
Vinyl chloride	0.0500	0.0493		mg/Kg		99	70 - 125	2	30
Xylenes, Total	0.100	0.101		mg/Kg		101	53 - 147	1	30

Surrogate	LCSD		Limits
	%Recovery	Qualifier	
4-Bromofluorobenzene (Surr)	100		75 - 131
Dibromofluoromethane	89		75 - 126
1,2-Dichloroethane-d4 (Surr)	91		70 - 134
Toluene-d8 (Surr)	102		75 - 124



# QC Sample Results

Client: ECS Midwest LLC  
 Project/Site: OCC Skokie Learning Center - Elevator CCDD  
 (4419)

Job ID: 500-238111-1

## Method: 8270E - Semivolatile Organic Compounds (GC/MS)

**Lab Sample ID: MB 500-728095/1-A**  
**Matrix: Solid**  
**Analysis Batch: 728240**

**Client Sample ID: Method Blank**  
**Prep Type: Total/NA**  
**Prep Batch: 728095**

Analyte	MB	MB	RL	MDL	Unit	D	Prepared	Analyzed	Dil Fac
	Result	Qualifier							
Acenaphthene	ND		0.033	0.0068	mg/Kg		08/16/23 13:19	08/17/23 13:42	1
Acenaphthylene	ND		0.033	0.0056	mg/Kg		08/16/23 13:19	08/17/23 13:42	1
Anthracene	ND		0.033	0.0068	mg/Kg		08/16/23 13:19	08/17/23 13:42	1
Benzo[a]anthracene	ND		0.033	0.0070	mg/Kg		08/16/23 13:19	08/17/23 13:42	1
Benzo[a]pyrene	ND		0.033	0.032	mg/Kg		08/16/23 13:19	08/17/23 13:42	1
Benzo[b]fluoranthene	ND		0.033	0.032	mg/Kg		08/16/23 13:19	08/17/23 13:42	1
Benzo[g,h,i]perylene	ND		0.033	0.0072	mg/Kg		08/16/23 13:19	08/17/23 13:42	1
Benzo[k]fluoranthene	ND		0.033	0.013	mg/Kg		08/16/23 13:19	08/17/23 13:42	1
Chrysene	ND		0.033	0.0088	mg/Kg		08/16/23 13:19	08/17/23 13:42	1
Dibenz(a,h)anthracene	ND		0.033	0.033	mg/Kg		08/16/23 13:19	08/17/23 13:42	1
Fluoranthene	ND		0.033	0.0077	mg/Kg		08/16/23 13:19	08/17/23 13:42	1
Indeno[1,2,3-cd]pyrene	ND		0.033	0.032	mg/Kg		08/16/23 13:19	08/17/23 13:42	1
Naphthalene	ND		0.033	0.0060	mg/Kg		08/16/23 13:19	08/17/23 13:42	1
Phenanthrene	ND		0.033	0.0072	mg/Kg		08/16/23 13:19	08/17/23 13:42	1
Pyrene	ND		0.033	0.0091	mg/Kg		08/16/23 13:19	08/17/23 13:42	1
Fluorene	ND		0.033	0.0098	mg/Kg		08/16/23 13:19	08/17/23 13:42	1

Surrogate	MB	MB	Limits	Prepared	Analyzed	Dil Fac
	%Recovery	Qualifier				
Nitrobenzene-d5 (Surr)	84		37 - 147	08/16/23 13:19	08/17/23 13:42	1
2-Fluorobiphenyl (Surr)	87		43 - 145	08/16/23 13:19	08/17/23 13:42	1
Terphenyl-d14 (Surr)	99		42 - 157	08/16/23 13:19	08/17/23 13:42	1

**Lab Sample ID: LCS 500-728095/2-A**  
**Matrix: Solid**  
**Analysis Batch: 728240**

**Client Sample ID: Lab Control Sample**  
**Prep Type: Total/NA**  
**Prep Batch: 728095**

Analyte	Spike Added	LCS	LCS	Unit	D	%Rec	Limits
		Result	Qualifier				
Acenaphthene	3.33	3.15		mg/Kg		94	64 - 111
Acenaphthylene	3.33	3.08		mg/Kg		92	66 - 127
Anthracene	3.33	3.33		mg/Kg		100	70 - 120
Benzo[a]anthracene	3.33	3.43		mg/Kg		103	73 - 118
Benzo[a]pyrene	3.33	3.81		mg/Kg		114	73 - 122
Benzo[b]fluoranthene	3.33	3.43		mg/Kg		103	71 - 127
Benzo[g,h,i]perylene	3.33	3.36		mg/Kg		101	62 - 133
Benzo[k]fluoranthene	3.33	3.34		mg/Kg		100	64 - 140
Chrysene	3.33	3.50		mg/Kg		105	73 - 115
Dibenz(a,h)anthracene	3.33	3.24		mg/Kg		97	71 - 125
Fluoranthene	3.33	3.26		mg/Kg		98	71 - 122
Indeno[1,2,3-cd]pyrene	3.33	3.26		mg/Kg		98	73 - 130
Naphthalene	3.33	2.76		mg/Kg		83	61 - 98
Phenanthrene	3.33	3.16		mg/Kg		95	67 - 116
Pyrene	3.33	3.52		mg/Kg		106	72 - 134
Fluorene	3.33	3.14		mg/Kg		94	65 - 120

Surrogate	LCS	LCS	Limits
	%Recovery	Qualifier	
Nitrobenzene-d5 (Surr)	85		37 - 147
2-Fluorobiphenyl (Surr)	90		43 - 145

Eurofins Chicago

# QC Sample Results

Client: ECS Midwest LLC  
 Project/Site: OCC Skokie Learning Center - Elevator CCDD  
 (4419)

Job ID: 500-238111-1

## Method: 8270E - Semivolatile Organic Compounds (GC/MS) (Continued)

**Lab Sample ID: LCS 500-728095/2-A**  
**Matrix: Solid**  
**Analysis Batch: 728240**

**Client Sample ID: Lab Control Sample**  
**Prep Type: Total/NA**  
**Prep Batch: 728095**

Surrogate	LCS LCS		Limits
	%Recovery	Qualifier	
Terphenyl-d14 (Surr)	98		42 - 157

**Lab Sample ID: 500-238111-1 MS**  
**Matrix: Solid**  
**Analysis Batch: 728234**

**Client Sample ID: S-1**  
**Prep Type: Total/NA**  
**Prep Batch: 728095**

Analyte	Sample Result	Sample Qualifier	Spike Added	MS MS		Unit	D	%Rec	%Rec Limits
				Result	Qualifier				
Acenaphthene	ND		3.40	3.16		mg/Kg	☼	93	65 - 124
Acenaphthylene	ND		3.40	3.12		mg/Kg	☼	92	68 - 120
Anthracene	ND		3.40	3.42		mg/Kg	☼	101	70 - 114
Benzo[a]anthracene	ND		3.40	3.39		mg/Kg	☼	100	67 - 122
Benzo[a]pyrene	ND		3.40	3.90		mg/Kg	☼	115	65 - 133
Benzo[b]fluoranthene	ND		3.40	3.53		mg/Kg	☼	104	69 - 129
Benzo[g,h,i]perylene	ND		3.40	3.57		mg/Kg	☼	105	72 - 131
Benzo[k]fluoranthene	ND		3.40	3.16		mg/Kg	☼	93	68 - 127
Chrysene	ND		3.40	3.43		mg/Kg	☼	101	63 - 120
Dibenz(a,h)anthracene	ND		3.40	3.50		mg/Kg	☼	103	64 - 131
Fluoranthene	ND		3.40	3.50		mg/Kg	☼	103	62 - 120
Indeno[1,2,3-cd]pyrene	ND		3.40	3.85		mg/Kg	☼	113	68 - 130
Naphthalene	ND		3.40	2.56		mg/Kg	☼	75	63 - 110
Phenanthrene	ND		3.40	3.39		mg/Kg	☼	100	62 - 120
Pyrene	ND		3.40	3.62		mg/Kg	☼	106	61 - 128
Fluorene	ND		3.40	3.11		mg/Kg	☼	91	62 - 120

Surrogate	MS MS		Limits
	%Recovery	Qualifier	
Nitrobenzene-d5 (Surr)	72		37 - 147
2-Fluorobiphenyl (Surr)	83		43 - 145
Terphenyl-d14 (Surr)	95		42 - 157

**Lab Sample ID: 500-238111-1 MSD**  
**Matrix: Solid**  
**Analysis Batch: 728234**

**Client Sample ID: S-1**  
**Prep Type: Total/NA**  
**Prep Batch: 728095**

Analyte	Sample Result	Sample Qualifier	Spike Added	MSD MSD		Unit	D	%Rec	%Rec Limits	RPD	RPD Limit
				Result	Qualifier						
Acenaphthene	ND		3.39	2.78		mg/Kg	☼	82	65 - 124	13	30
Acenaphthylene	ND		3.39	2.79		mg/Kg	☼	82	68 - 120	11	30
Anthracene	ND		3.39	2.97		mg/Kg	☼	88	70 - 114	14	30
Benzo[a]anthracene	ND		3.39	2.88		mg/Kg	☼	85	67 - 122	16	30
Benzo[a]pyrene	ND		3.39	3.35		mg/Kg	☼	99	65 - 133	15	30
Benzo[b]fluoranthene	ND		3.39	3.10		mg/Kg	☼	91	69 - 129	13	30
Benzo[g,h,i]perylene	ND		3.39	3.07		mg/Kg	☼	91	72 - 131	15	30
Benzo[k]fluoranthene	ND		3.39	2.81		mg/Kg	☼	83	68 - 127	12	30
Chrysene	ND		3.39	2.99		mg/Kg	☼	88	63 - 120	14	30
Dibenz(a,h)anthracene	ND		3.39	3.08		mg/Kg	☼	91	64 - 131	13	30
Fluoranthene	ND		3.39	3.06		mg/Kg	☼	90	62 - 120	13	30
Indeno[1,2,3-cd]pyrene	ND		3.39	3.31		mg/Kg	☼	97	68 - 130	15	30
Naphthalene	ND		3.39	2.47		mg/Kg	☼	73	63 - 110	4	30

Eurofins Chicago

# QC Sample Results

Client: ECS Midwest LLC  
 Project/Site: OCC Skokie Learning Center - Elevator CCDD  
 (4419)

Job ID: 500-238111-1

## Method: 8270E - Semivolatile Organic Compounds (GC/MS) (Continued)

**Lab Sample ID: 500-238111-1 MSD**  
**Matrix: Solid**  
**Analysis Batch: 728234**

**Client Sample ID: S-1**  
**Prep Type: Total/NA**  
**Prep Batch: 728095**

Analyte	Sample	Sample	Spike	MSD	MSD	Unit	D	%Rec	%Rec	RPD	Limit
	Result	Qualifier	Added	Result	Qualifier						
Phenanthrene	ND		3.39	2.92		mg/Kg	☼	86	62 - 120	15	30
Pyrene	ND		3.39	3.09		mg/Kg	☼	91	61 - 128	16	30
Fluorene	ND		3.39	2.74		mg/Kg	☼	81	62 - 120	13	30
<b>Surrogate</b>	<b>MSD</b>	<b>MSD</b>	<b>Limits</b>								
	<b>%Recovery</b>	<b>Qualifier</b>	<b>Limits</b>								
Nitrobenzene-d5 (Surr)	69		37 - 147								
2-Fluorobiphenyl (Surr)	76		43 - 145								
Terphenyl-d14 (Surr)	83		42 - 157								

## Method: 8081B - Organochlorine Pesticides (GC)

**Lab Sample ID: MB 500-728292/1-A**  
**Matrix: Solid**  
**Analysis Batch: 728499**

**Client Sample ID: Method Blank**  
**Prep Type: Total/NA**  
**Prep Batch: 728292**

Analyte	MB	MB	RL	MDL	Unit	D	Prepared	Analyzed	Dil Fac	
	Result	Qualifier								
Aldrin	ND		0.0017	0.0012	mg/Kg		08/17/23 10:12	08/18/23 11:15	1	
alpha-BHC	ND		0.0017	0.00095	mg/Kg		08/17/23 10:12	08/18/23 11:15	1	
beta-BHC	ND		0.0017	0.0014	mg/Kg		08/17/23 10:12	08/18/23 11:15	1	
cis-Chlordane	ND		0.0017	0.00090	mg/Kg		08/17/23 10:12	08/18/23 11:15	1	
4,4'-DDD	ND		0.0017	0.00091	mg/Kg		08/17/23 10:12	08/18/23 11:15	1	
4,4'-DDE	ND		0.0017	0.00087	mg/Kg		08/17/23 10:12	08/18/23 11:15	1	
4,4'-DDT	ND		0.0017	0.00080	mg/Kg		08/17/23 10:12	08/18/23 11:15	1	
delta-BHC	ND		0.0017	0.00081	mg/Kg		08/17/23 10:12	08/18/23 11:15	1	
Dieldrin	ND		0.0017	0.00088	mg/Kg		08/17/23 10:12	08/18/23 11:15	1	
Endosulfan I	ND		0.0017	0.00091	mg/Kg		08/17/23 10:12	08/18/23 11:15	1	
Endosulfan II	ND		0.0017	0.00093	mg/Kg		08/17/23 10:12	08/18/23 11:15	1	
Endosulfan sulfate	ND		0.0017	0.00093	mg/Kg		08/17/23 10:12	08/18/23 11:15	1	
Endrin	ND		0.0017	0.00086	mg/Kg		08/17/23 10:12	08/18/23 11:15	1	
Endrin aldehyde	ND		0.0017	0.00096	mg/Kg		08/17/23 10:12	08/18/23 11:15	1	
Endrin ketone	ND		0.0017	0.00082	mg/Kg		08/17/23 10:12	08/18/23 11:15	1	
gamma-BHC (Lindane)	ND		0.0017	0.00084	mg/Kg		08/17/23 10:12	08/18/23 11:15	1	
Heptachlor	ND		0.0017	0.00091	mg/Kg		08/17/23 10:12	08/18/23 11:15	1	
Heptachlor epoxide	ND		0.0017	0.00091	mg/Kg		08/17/23 10:12	08/18/23 11:15	1	
Methoxychlor	ND		0.0083	0.0011	mg/Kg		08/17/23 10:12	08/18/23 11:15	1	
Toxaphene	ND		0.017	0.0067	mg/Kg		08/17/23 10:12	08/18/23 11:15	1	
trans-Chlordane	ND		0.0017	0.00097	mg/Kg		08/17/23 10:12	08/18/23 11:15	1	
<b>Surrogate</b>	<b>MB</b>	<b>MB</b>	<b>Limits</b>							
	<b>%Recovery</b>	<b>Qualifier</b>	<b>Limits</b>	<b>Prepared</b>	<b>Analyzed</b>	<b>Dil Fac</b>				
DCB Decachlorobiphenyl	82		33 - 148	08/17/23 10:12	08/18/23 11:15	1				
Tetrachloro-m-xylene	72		30 - 121	08/17/23 10:12	08/18/23 11:15	1				

# QC Sample Results

Client: ECS Midwest LLC  
 Project/Site: OCC Skokie Learning Center - Elevator CCDD  
 (4419)

Job ID: 500-238111-1

## Method: 8081B - Organochlorine Pesticides (GC) (Continued)

**Lab Sample ID: LCS 500-728292/2-A**  
**Matrix: Solid**  
**Analysis Batch: 728499**

**Client Sample ID: Lab Control Sample**  
**Prep Type: Total/NA**  
**Prep Batch: 728292**

Analyte	Spike Added	LCS Result	LCS Qualifier	Unit	D	%Rec	Limits
Aldrin	0.0133	0.0102		mg/Kg		77	52 - 122
alpha-BHC	0.0133	0.0103		mg/Kg		78	50 - 123
beta-BHC	0.0133	0.00942		mg/Kg		71	44 - 140
cis-Chlordane	0.0133	0.00986		mg/Kg		74	52 - 129
4,4'-DDD	0.0133	0.0106		mg/Kg		80	47 - 137
4,4'-DDE	0.0133	0.00907		mg/Kg		68	50 - 130
4,4'-DDT	0.0133	0.0117		mg/Kg		88	46 - 143
delta-BHC	0.0133	0.0103		mg/Kg		77	57 - 125
Dieldrin	0.0133	0.0103		mg/Kg		77	51 - 133
Endosulfan I	0.0133	0.00900		mg/Kg		68	30 - 120
Endosulfan II	0.0133	0.00998		mg/Kg		75	30 - 120
Endosulfan sulfate	0.0133	0.0105		mg/Kg		79	42 - 150
Endrin	0.0133	0.0109		mg/Kg		82	43 - 144
Endrin aldehyde	0.0133	0.0116		mg/Kg		87	39 - 131
Endrin ketone	0.0133	0.0114		mg/Kg		85	51 - 135
gamma-BHC (Lindane)	0.0133	0.00974		mg/Kg		73	50 - 122
Heptachlor	0.0133	0.0105		mg/Kg		79	53 - 129
Heptachlor epoxide	0.0133	0.0101		mg/Kg		76	50 - 139
Methoxychlor	0.0133	0.0122		mg/Kg		92	45 - 144
trans-Chlordane	0.0133	0.00984		mg/Kg		74	52 - 132

Surrogate	LCS %Recovery	LCS Qualifier	Limits
DCB Decachlorobiphenyl	68		33 - 148
Tetrachloro-m-xylene	60		30 - 121

**Lab Sample ID: 500-238111-1 MS**  
**Matrix: Solid**  
**Analysis Batch: 728499**

**Client Sample ID: S-1**  
**Prep Type: Total/NA**  
**Prep Batch: 728292**

Analyte	Sample Result	Sample Qualifier	Spike Added	MS Result	MS Qualifier	Unit	D	%Rec	Limits
Aldrin	ND		0.0136	0.00916		mg/Kg	⊛	67	52 - 122
alpha-BHC	ND		0.0136	0.00929		mg/Kg	⊛	68	50 - 123
beta-BHC	ND		0.0136	0.00844		mg/Kg	⊛	62	44 - 140
cis-Chlordane	ND		0.0136	0.00893		mg/Kg	⊛	66	52 - 129
4,4'-DDD	ND		0.0136	0.00925		mg/Kg	⊛	68	47 - 137
4,4'-DDE	ND		0.0136	0.00887		mg/Kg	⊛	65	50 - 130
4,4'-DDT	ND		0.0136	0.0104		mg/Kg	⊛	76	46 - 143
delta-BHC	ND		0.0136	0.00893		mg/Kg	⊛	66	57 - 125
Dieldrin	ND		0.0136	0.00921		mg/Kg	⊛	68	51 - 133
Endosulfan I	ND		0.0136	0.00785		mg/Kg	⊛	58	30 - 120
Endosulfan II	ND		0.0136	0.00883		mg/Kg	⊛	65	30 - 120
Endosulfan sulfate	ND		0.0136	0.00864		mg/Kg	⊛	63	42 - 150
Endrin	ND		0.0136	0.00963		mg/Kg	⊛	71	43 - 144
Endrin aldehyde	ND	F1	0.0136	0.00294	F1	mg/Kg	⊛	22	39 - 131
Endrin ketone	ND		0.0136	0.00983		mg/Kg	⊛	72	51 - 135
gamma-BHC (Lindane)	ND		0.0136	0.00878		mg/Kg	⊛	64	50 - 122
Heptachlor	ND		0.0136	0.00949		mg/Kg	⊛	70	53 - 129

Eurofins Chicago

# QC Sample Results

Client: ECS Midwest LLC  
 Project/Site: OCC Skokie Learning Center - Elevator CCDD  
 (4419)

Job ID: 500-238111-1

## Method: 8081B - Organochlorine Pesticides (GC) (Continued)

**Lab Sample ID: 500-238111-1 MS**  
**Matrix: Solid**  
**Analysis Batch: 728499**

**Client Sample ID: S-1**  
**Prep Type: Total/NA**  
**Prep Batch: 728292**

Analyte	Sample	Sample	Spike	MS	MS	Unit	D	%Rec	%Rec	Limits
	Result	Qualifier	Added	Result	Qualifier					
Heptachlor epoxide	ND		0.0136	0.00912		mg/Kg	⊛	67		50 - 139
Methoxychlor	ND		0.0136	0.0101		mg/Kg	⊛	74		45 - 144
trans-Chlordane	ND		0.0136	0.00870		mg/Kg	⊛	64		52 - 132
<b>MS MS</b>										
<b>Surrogate</b>	<b>%Recovery</b>	<b>Qualifier</b>	<b>Limits</b>							
DCB Decachlorobiphenyl	59		33 - 148							
Tetrachloro-m-xylene	55		30 - 121							

**Lab Sample ID: 500-238111-1 MSD**  
**Matrix: Solid**  
**Analysis Batch: 728499**

**Client Sample ID: S-1**  
**Prep Type: Total/NA**  
**Prep Batch: 728292**

Analyte	Sample	Sample	Spike	MSD	MSD	Unit	D	%Rec	%Rec	Limits	RPD	Limit
	Result	Qualifier	Added	Result	Qualifier							
Aldrin	ND		0.0136	0.00970		mg/Kg	⊛	71		52 - 122	6	30
alpha-BHC	ND		0.0136	0.00959		mg/Kg	⊛	70		50 - 123	3	30
beta-BHC	ND		0.0136	0.0109		mg/Kg	⊛	80		44 - 140	25	30
cis-Chlordane	ND		0.0136	0.00938		mg/Kg	⊛	69		52 - 129	5	30
4,4'-DDD	ND		0.0136	0.0101		mg/Kg	⊛	74		47 - 137	9	30
4,4'-DDE	ND		0.0136	0.00963		mg/Kg	⊛	71		50 - 130	8	30
4,4'-DDT	ND		0.0136	0.0111		mg/Kg	⊛	82		46 - 143	7	30
delta-BHC	ND		0.0136	0.00905		mg/Kg	⊛	66		57 - 125	1	30
Dieldrin	ND		0.0136	0.00978		mg/Kg	⊛	72		51 - 133	6	30
Endosulfan I	ND		0.0136	0.00875		mg/Kg	⊛	64		30 - 120	11	30
Endosulfan II	ND		0.0136	0.00949		mg/Kg	⊛	70		30 - 120	7	30
Endosulfan sulfate	ND		0.0136	0.00892		mg/Kg	⊛	65		42 - 150	3	30
Endrin	ND		0.0136	0.0102		mg/Kg	⊛	75		43 - 144	6	30
Endrin aldehyde	ND	F1	0.0136	0.00332	F1	mg/Kg	⊛	24		39 - 131	12	30
Endrin ketone	ND		0.0136	0.0103		mg/Kg	⊛	75		51 - 135	5	30
gamma-BHC (Lindane)	ND		0.0136	0.00885		mg/Kg	⊛	65		50 - 122	1	30
Heptachlor	ND		0.0136	0.00995		mg/Kg	⊛	73		53 - 129	5	30
Heptachlor epoxide	ND		0.0136	0.00961		mg/Kg	⊛	70		50 - 139	5	30
Methoxychlor	ND		0.0136	0.0107		mg/Kg	⊛	79		45 - 144	6	30
trans-Chlordane	ND		0.0136	0.00937		mg/Kg	⊛	69		52 - 132	7	30
<b>MSD MSD</b>												
<b>Surrogate</b>	<b>%Recovery</b>	<b>Qualifier</b>	<b>Limits</b>									
DCB Decachlorobiphenyl	62		33 - 148									
Tetrachloro-m-xylene	54		30 - 121									

## Method: 8082A - Polychlorinated Biphenyls (PCBs) by Gas Chromatography

**Lab Sample ID: MB 500-728292/1-A**  
**Matrix: Solid**  
**Analysis Batch: 728495**

**Client Sample ID: Method Blank**  
**Prep Type: Total/NA**  
**Prep Batch: 728292**

Analyte	MB	MB	RL	MDL	Unit	D	Prepared	Analyzed	Dil Fac
	Result	Qualifier							
PCB-1016	ND		0.017	0.0066	mg/Kg		08/17/23 10:12	08/18/23 11:06	1
PCB-1221	ND		0.017	0.0066	mg/Kg		08/17/23 10:12	08/18/23 11:06	1

Eurofins Chicago

# QC Sample Results

Client: ECS Midwest LLC  
 Project/Site: OCC Skokie Learning Center - Elevator CCDD  
 (4419)

Job ID: 500-238111-1

## Method: 8082A - Polychlorinated Biphenyls (PCBs) by Gas Chromatography (Continued)

**Lab Sample ID: MB 500-728292/1-A**  
**Matrix: Solid**  
**Analysis Batch: 728495**

**Client Sample ID: Method Blank**  
**Prep Type: Total/NA**  
**Prep Batch: 728292**

Analyte	MB MB		RL	MDL	Unit	D	Prepared	Analyzed	Dil Fac
	Result	Qualifier							
PCB-1232	ND		0.017	0.0045	mg/Kg		08/17/23 10:12	08/18/23 11:06	1
PCB-1242	ND		0.017	0.0065	mg/Kg		08/17/23 10:12	08/18/23 11:06	1
PCB-1248	ND		0.017	0.0079	mg/Kg		08/17/23 10:12	08/18/23 11:06	1
PCB-1254	ND		0.017	0.0057	mg/Kg		08/17/23 10:12	08/18/23 11:06	1
PCB-1260	ND		0.017	0.0063	mg/Kg		08/17/23 10:12	08/18/23 11:06	1
Polychlorinated biphenyls, Total	ND		0.017	0.0045	mg/Kg		08/17/23 10:12	08/18/23 11:06	1

Surrogate	MB MB		Limits	Prepared	Analyzed	Dil Fac
	%Recovery	Qualifier				
Tetrachloro-m-xylene	106		49 - 129	08/17/23 10:12	08/18/23 11:06	1
DCB Decachlorobiphenyl	98		37 - 121	08/17/23 10:12	08/18/23 11:06	1

**Lab Sample ID: LCS 500-728292/3-A**  
**Matrix: Solid**  
**Analysis Batch: 728495**

**Client Sample ID: Lab Control Sample**  
**Prep Type: Total/NA**  
**Prep Batch: 728292**

Analyte	Spike Added	LCS LCS		Unit	D	%Rec	%Rec Limits
		Result	Qualifier				
PCB-1016	0.167	0.140		mg/Kg		84	57 - 120
PCB-1260	0.167	0.134		mg/Kg		80	61 - 125

Surrogate	LCS LCS		Limits
	%Recovery	Qualifier	
Tetrachloro-m-xylene	92		49 - 129
DCB Decachlorobiphenyl	83		37 - 121

**Lab Sample ID: 500-238111-1 MS**  
**Matrix: Solid**  
**Analysis Batch: 728495**

**Client Sample ID: S-1**  
**Prep Type: Total/NA**  
**Prep Batch: 728292**

Analyte	Sample Sample		Spike Added	MS MS		Unit	D	%Rec	%Rec Limits
	Result	Qualifier		Result	Qualifier				
PCB-1016	ND	F1	0.173	0.0949	F1	mg/Kg	☼	55	57 - 120
PCB-1260	ND	F1 F2	0.173	0.0780	F1	mg/Kg	☼	45	61 - 125

Surrogate	MS MS		Limits
	%Recovery	Qualifier	
Tetrachloro-m-xylene	55		49 - 129
DCB Decachlorobiphenyl	46		37 - 121

**Lab Sample ID: 500-238111-1 MSD**  
**Matrix: Solid**  
**Analysis Batch: 728495**

**Client Sample ID: S-1**  
**Prep Type: Total/NA**  
**Prep Batch: 728292**

Analyte	Sample Sample		Spike Added	MSD MSD		Unit	D	%Rec	%Rec Limits	RPD	Limit
	Result	Qualifier		Result	Qualifier						
PCB-1016	ND	F1	0.174	0.117		mg/Kg	☼	67	57 - 120	21	30
PCB-1260	ND	F1 F2	0.174	0.107	F2	mg/Kg	☼	62	61 - 125	31	30

Surrogate	MSD MSD		Limits
	%Recovery	Qualifier	
Tetrachloro-m-xylene	65		49 - 129
DCB Decachlorobiphenyl	66		37 - 121

# QC Sample Results

Client: ECS Midwest LLC  
 Project/Site: OCC Skokie Learning Center - Elevator CCDD  
 (4419)

Job ID: 500-238111-1

## Method: 6010D - Metals (ICP)

**Lab Sample ID: MB 500-728348/1-A**  
**Matrix: Solid**  
**Analysis Batch: 728860**

**Client Sample ID: Method Blank**  
**Prep Type: Total/NA**  
**Prep Batch: 728348**

Analyte	MB Result	MB Qualifier	RL	MDL	Unit	D	Prepared	Analyzed	Dil Fac
Antimony	ND		2.0	0.39	mg/Kg		08/17/23 13:48	08/21/23 16:35	1
Arsenic	ND		1.0	0.34	mg/Kg		08/17/23 13:48	08/21/23 16:35	1
Beryllium	ND		0.40	0.093	mg/Kg		08/17/23 13:48	08/21/23 16:35	1
Cadmium	0.0803	J	0.20	0.036	mg/Kg		08/17/23 13:48	08/21/23 16:35	1
Chromium	ND		1.0	0.50	mg/Kg		08/17/23 13:48	08/21/23 16:35	1
Copper	ND		1.0	0.28	mg/Kg		08/17/23 13:48	08/21/23 16:35	1
Lead	ND		0.50	0.23	mg/Kg		08/17/23 13:48	08/21/23 16:35	1
Nickel	ND		1.0	0.29	mg/Kg		08/17/23 13:48	08/21/23 16:35	1
Selenium	ND		1.0	0.59	mg/Kg		08/17/23 13:48	08/21/23 16:35	1
Silver	ND		0.50	0.13	mg/Kg		08/17/23 13:48	08/21/23 16:35	1
Thallium	ND		1.0	0.50	mg/Kg		08/17/23 13:48	08/21/23 16:35	1
Zinc	ND		2.0	0.88	mg/Kg		08/17/23 13:48	08/21/23 16:35	1

**Lab Sample ID: LCS 500-728348/2-A**  
**Matrix: Solid**  
**Analysis Batch: 728860**

**Client Sample ID: Lab Control Sample**  
**Prep Type: Total/NA**  
**Prep Batch: 728348**

Analyte	Spike Added	LCS Result	LCS Qualifier	Unit	D	%Rec	%Rec Limits
Antimony	50.0	46.7		mg/Kg		93	80 - 120
Arsenic	10.0	8.48		mg/Kg		85	80 - 120
Beryllium	5.00	4.64		mg/Kg		93	80 - 120
Cadmium	5.00	4.77		mg/Kg		95	80 - 120
Chromium	20.0	18.4		mg/Kg		92	80 - 120
Copper	25.0	25.3		mg/Kg		101	80 - 120
Lead	10.0	8.96		mg/Kg		90	80 - 120
Nickel	50.0	48.2		mg/Kg		96	80 - 120
Selenium	10.0	9.14		mg/Kg		91	80 - 120
Silver	5.00	4.46		mg/Kg		89	80 - 120
Thallium	10.0	9.15		mg/Kg		92	80 - 120

**Lab Sample ID: LCS 500-728348/2-A**  
**Matrix: Solid**  
**Analysis Batch: 728922**

**Client Sample ID: Lab Control Sample**  
**Prep Type: Total/NA**  
**Prep Batch: 728348**

Analyte	Spike Added	LCS Result	LCS Qualifier	Unit	D	%Rec	%Rec Limits
Zinc	50.0	45.6		mg/Kg		91	80 - 120

## Method: 7471B - Mercury (CVAA)

**Lab Sample ID: MB 500-728516/12-A**  
**Matrix: Solid**  
**Analysis Batch: 728718**

**Client Sample ID: Method Blank**  
**Prep Type: Total/NA**  
**Prep Batch: 728516**

Analyte	MB Result	MB Qualifier	RL	MDL	Unit	D	Prepared	Analyzed	Dil Fac
Mercury	ND		0.017	0.0088	mg/Kg		08/18/23 14:10	08/21/23 13:29	1

# QC Sample Results

Client: ECS Midwest LLC  
 Project/Site: OCC Skokie Learning Center - Elevator CCDD  
 (4419)

Job ID: 500-238111-1

## Method: 7471B - Mercury (CVAA) (Continued)

Lab Sample ID: LCS 500-728516/13-A  
 Matrix: Solid  
 Analysis Batch: 728718

Client Sample ID: Lab Control Sample  
 Prep Type: Total/NA  
 Prep Batch: 728516

Analyte	Spike Added	LCS Result	LCS Qualifier	Unit	D	%Rec	%Rec Limits
Mercury	0.167	0.163		mg/Kg		98	80 - 120

## Method: 9012B - Cyanide, Total and/or Amenable

Lab Sample ID: MB 310-397053/1-A  
 Matrix: Solid  
 Analysis Batch: 397174

Client Sample ID: Method Blank  
 Prep Type: Total/NA  
 Prep Batch: 397053

Analyte	MB Result	MB Qualifier	RL	MDL	Unit	D	Prepared	Analyzed	Dil Fac
Cyanide, Total	ND		0.98	0.32	mg/Kg		08/18/23 08:14	08/18/23 19:14	1

Lab Sample ID: LCS 310-397053/2-A  
 Matrix: Solid  
 Analysis Batch: 397174

Client Sample ID: Lab Control Sample  
 Prep Type: Total/NA  
 Prep Batch: 397053

Analyte	Spike Added	LCS Result	LCS Qualifier	Unit	D	%Rec	%Rec Limits
Cyanide, Total	9.73	9.10		mg/Kg		94	90 - 110



# Lab Chronicle

Client: ECS Midwest LLC  
 Project/Site: OCC Skokie Learning Center - Elevator CCDD  
 (4419)

Job ID: 500-238111-1

**Client Sample ID: S-1**

**Lab Sample ID: 500-238111-1**

**Date Collected: 08/14/23 13:20**

**Matrix: Solid**

**Date Received: 08/15/23 14:10**

Prep Type	Batch Type	Batch Method	Run	Dilution Factor	Batch Number	Analyst	Lab	Prepared or Analyzed
Total/NA	Analysis	9045D		1	728185	LWN	EET CHI	08/16/23 16:11
Total/NA	Analysis	Moisture		1	728072	LWN	EET CHI	08/16/23 11:27

**Client Sample ID: S-1**

**Lab Sample ID: 500-238111-1**

**Date Collected: 08/14/23 13:20**

**Matrix: Solid**

**Date Received: 08/15/23 14:10**

**Percent Solids: 95.4**

Prep Type	Batch Type	Batch Method	Run	Dilution Factor	Batch Number	Analyst	Lab	Prepared or Analyzed
Total/NA	Prep	5035			727948	WRE	EET CHI	08/15/23 17:45
Total/NA	Analysis	8260D		1	727964	W1T	EET CHI	08/16/23 15:36
Total/NA	Prep	3546			728095	GM	EET CHI	08/16/23 13:19
Total/NA	Analysis	8270E		1	728234	SS	EET CHI	08/17/23 17:17
Total/NA	Prep	3541			728292	TS	EET CHI	08/17/23 10:12 - 08/17/23 15:57 <sup>1</sup>
Total/NA	Analysis	8081B		1	728499	JAB	EET CHI	08/18/23 11:38
Total/NA	Prep	3541			728292	TS	EET CHI	08/17/23 10:12 - 08/17/23 15:57 <sup>1</sup>
Total/NA	Analysis	8082A		1	728495	JAB	EET CHI	08/18/23 11:52
Total/NA	Prep	3050B			728348	BDE	EET CHI	08/17/23 13:48 - 08/18/23 10:26 <sup>1</sup>
Total/NA	Analysis	6010D		1	728860	RN	EET CHI	08/21/23 18:12
Total/NA	Prep	7471B			728516	MJG	EET CHI	08/18/23 14:10
Total/NA	Analysis	7471B		1	728718	MJG	EET CHI	08/21/23 14:20
Total/NA	Prep	9012B			397053	ENB7	EET CF	08/18/23 08:14
Total/NA	Analysis	9012B		1	397174	ZJX4	EET CF	08/18/23 19:31

<sup>1</sup> This procedure uses a method stipulated length of time for the process. Both start and end times are displayed.

**Laboratory References:**

EET CF = Eurofins Cedar Falls, 3019 Venture Way, Cedar Falls, IA 50613, TEL (319)277-2401  
 EET CHI = Eurofins Chicago, 2417 Bond Street, University Park, IL 60484, TEL (708)534-5200

# Accreditation/Certification Summary

Client: ECS Midwest LLC  
Project/Site: OCC Skokie Learning Center - Elevator CCDD  
(4419)

Job ID: 500-238111-1

## Laboratory: Eurofins Chicago

The accreditations/certifications listed below are applicable to this report.

Authority	Program	Identification Number	Expiration Date
Illinois	NELAP	IL00035	04-29-24

## Laboratory: Eurofins Cedar Falls

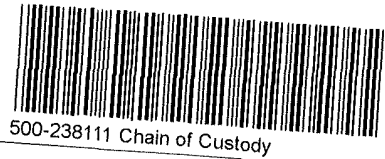
All accreditations/certifications held by this laboratory are listed. Not all accreditations/certifications are applicable to this report.

Authority	Program	Identification Number	Expiration Date
Colorado	Petroleum Storage Tank Program	IA100001 (OR)	09-29-23
Georgia	State	IA100001 (OR)	09-29-23
Illinois	NELAP	200024	11-29-23
Iowa	State	007	12-01-23
Kansas	NELAP	E-10341	01-31-24
Minnesota	NELAP	019-999-319	12-31-23
Minnesota (Petrofund)	State	3349	01-18-24
North Dakota	State	R-186	09-29-23
Oregon	NELAP	IA100001	09-29-23





Environment Testing  
America

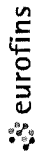


500-238111 Chain of Custody

Cooler/Sample Receipt and Temperature Log Form

<b>Client Information</b>			
Client: <u>Chicago</u>			
City/State:	CITY	STATE	Project:
		<u>IL</u>	
<b>Receipt Information</b>			
Date/Time Received:	DATE	TIME	Received By:
	<u>8-17-23</u>	<u>725</u>	<u>MU</u>
Delivery Type: <input type="checkbox"/> UPS <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> FedEx <input type="checkbox"/> FedEx Ground <input type="checkbox"/> US Mail <input type="checkbox"/> Spee-Dee			
<input type="checkbox"/> Lab Courier <input type="checkbox"/> Lab Field Services <input type="checkbox"/> Client Drop-off <input type="checkbox"/> Other: _____			
<b>Condition of Cooler/Containers</b>			
Sample(s) received in Cooler?	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No	If yes: Cooler ID: _____	
Multiple Coolers?	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No	If yes: Cooler # _____ of _____	
Cooler Custody Seals Present?	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No	If yes: Cooler custody seals intact? <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No	
Sample Custody Seals Present?	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No	If yes: Sample custody seals intact? <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No	
Trip Blank Present?	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No	If yes: Which VOA samples are in cooler? ↓	
<b>Temperature Record</b>			
Coolant:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Wet Ice <input type="checkbox"/> Blue Ice <input type="checkbox"/> Dry Ice <input type="checkbox"/> Other: _____	<input type="checkbox"/> NONE	
Thermometer ID:	<u>R</u>	Correction Factor (°C):	<u>0</u>
*Temp Blank: Temperature – If no temp blank, or temp blank temperature above criteria, proceed to Sample Container Temperature			
Uncorrected Temp (°C):	<u>0.2</u>	Corrected Temp (°C):	<u>0.2</u>
<b>Sample Container Temperature</b>			
Container(s) used:	<u>CONTAINER 1</u>	<u>CONTAINER 2</u>	
Uncorrected Temp (°C):			
Corrected Temp (°C):			
<b>Exceptions Noted</b>			
1) If temperature exceeds criteria, was sample(s) received same day of sampling? <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No			
a) If yes: Is there evidence that the chilling process began? <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No			
2) If temperature is <0°C, are there obvious signs that the integrity of sample containers is compromised? (e.g., bulging septa, broken/cracked bottles, frozen solid?) <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No			
NOTE: If yes, contact PM before proceeding. If no, proceed with log in			
<b>Additional Comments</b>			

# Chain of Custody Record



<b>Client Information (Sub Contract Lab)</b>		Lab PM: Knapp, Jim D	Carrier Tracking No(s):	COC No: 500-177960 1
Shipping/Receiving		E-Mail: Jim Knapp@et.eurofins.com	State of Origin: Illinois	Page: Page 1 of 1
Eurofins Environment Testing North Centre		Accreditations Required (See note): NELAP - Illinois		Job #: 500-238111-1
Address: 3019 Venture Way, Cedar Falls, IA, 50613		<b>Analysis Requested</b>		<b>Preservation Codes:</b> M - Hexane N - None O - AsNaO2 P - Na2OAS Q - Nitric Acid R - Na2SO3 S - H2SO4 T - TSP Dodecahydrate U - Acetone V - MCAA W - pH 4-5 Y - Trizma Z - other (specify) Other:
Due Date Requested: 8/21/2023	TAT Requested (days):	Field Filtered Sample (Yes or No)	Perform MS/MSD (Yes or No)	Total Number of Containers
PO #: 319-277-2401 (Tel) 319-277-2425 (Fax)	WO #:	Sample Date: 8/14/23	Sample Time: 13:20 Central	1
Project #: OCC Skokie Learning Center - Elevator CCDD (4419)	SSOW#:	Sample Date: 8/14/23	Sample Time: 13:20 Central	
Site:	Matrix (Water, Solid, Onestabil, BIP Tissue, A+Air)	Sample Date: 8/14/23	Sample Time: 13:20 Central	
Sample Identification - Client ID (Lab ID)	Sample Date	Sample Time	Sample Type (C=comp, G=grab)	Preservation Code
IS-1 (500-238111-1)	8/14/23	13:20 Central	Solid	
<b>Special Instructions/Note:</b>				
Special Instructions/Note:				
Note: Since laboratory accreditations are subject to change, Eurofins Chicago places the ownership of method, analyte & accreditation compliance upon our subcontract laboratories. This sample shipment is forwarded under chain-of-custody. If the laboratory does not currently maintain accreditation in the State of Origin listed above for analysis/test/matrix being analyzed, the samples must be shipped back to the Eurofins Chicago laboratory or other instructions will be provided. Any changes to accreditation status should be brought to Eurofins Chicago attention immediately. If all requested accreditations are current to date, return the signed Chain of Custody attesting to said compliance to Eurofins Chicago.				
<b>Possible Hazard Identification</b>				
Unconfirmed				
Deliverable Requested I, II, III, IV, Other (specify) Primary Deliverable Rank. 2				
Sample Disposal (A fee may be assessed if samples are retained longer than 1 month)				
Return To Client <input type="checkbox"/> Disposal By Lab <input type="checkbox"/> Archive For _____ Months				
Special Instructions/QC Requirements				
Empty Kit Relinquished by _____ Date: 8/16/23 1500				
Relinquished by _____ Date/Time: 8/17/23 9:25				
Relinquished by _____ Date/Time: _____				
Relinquished by _____ Date/Time: _____				
Custody Seals Intact: _____ Custody Seal No. _____				
Cooler Temperature(s) °C and Other Remarks:				



## Login Sample Receipt Checklist

Client: ECS Midwest LLC

Job Number: 500-238111-1

**Login Number: 238111**

**List Number: 1**

**Creator: Scott, Sherri L**

**List Source: Eurofins Chicago**

Question	Answer	Comment
Radioactivity wasn't checked or is <math>\leq</math> background as measured by a survey meter.	True	
The cooler's custody seal, if present, is intact.	True	
Sample custody seals, if present, are intact.	True	
The cooler or samples do not appear to have been compromised or tampered with.	True	
Samples were received on ice.	True	
Cooler Temperature is acceptable.	True	
Cooler Temperature is recorded.	True	1.7
COC is present.	True	
COC is filled out in ink and legible.	True	
COC is filled out with all pertinent information.	True	
Is the Field Sampler's name present on COC?	True	
There are no discrepancies between the containers received and the COC.	True	
Samples are received within Holding Time (excluding tests with immediate HTs)	True	
Sample containers have legible labels.	True	
Containers are not broken or leaking.	True	
Sample collection date/times are provided.	True	
Appropriate sample containers are used.	True	
Sample bottles are completely filled.	True	
Sample Preservation Verified.	True	
There is sufficient vol. for all requested analyses, incl. any requested MS/MSDs	True	
Containers requiring zero headspace have no headspace or bubble is <math><6\text{mm}</math> (1/4").	N/A	
Multiphasic samples are not present.	True	
Samples do not require splitting or compositing.	True	
Residual Chlorine Checked.	N/A	



# Login Sample Receipt Checklist

Client: ECS Midwest LLC

Job Number: 500-238111-1

**Login Number: 238111**

**List Number: 2**

**Creator: Costello, Mackenzie K**

**List Source: Eurofins Cedar Falls**

**List Creation: 08/17/23 10:40 AM**

Question	Answer	Comment
Radioactivity wasn't checked or is </= background as measured by a survey meter.	N/A	
The cooler's custody seal, if present, is intact.	True	
Sample custody seals, if present, are intact.	N/A	
The cooler or samples do not appear to have been compromised or tampered with.	True	
Samples were received on ice.	True	
Cooler Temperature is acceptable.	True	
Cooler Temperature is recorded.	True	
COC is present.	True	
COC is filled out in ink and legible.	True	
COC is filled out with all pertinent information.	True	
Is the Field Sampler's name present on COC?	False	Received project as a subcontract.
There are no discrepancies between the containers received and the COC.	True	
Samples are received within Holding Time (excluding tests with immediate HTs)	True	
Sample containers have legible labels.	True	
Containers are not broken or leaking.	True	
Sample collection date/times are provided.	True	
Appropriate sample containers are used.	True	
Sample bottles are completely filled.	True	
Sample Preservation Verified.	True	
There is sufficient vol. for all requested analyses, incl. any requested MS/MSDs	True	
Containers requiring zero headspace have no headspace or bubble is <6mm (1/4").	True	
Multiphasic samples are not present.	True	
Samples do not require splitting or compositing.	True	
Residual Chlorine Checked.	N/A	



OCC Skokie Learning Center - Elevator CCDD  
ECS Project #53:4419  
August 2023

**Attachment II**  
**LPC-663 Form**





# Illinois Environmental Protection Agency

1021 North Grand Avenue East • P.O. Box 19276 • Springfield • Illinois • 62794-9276 • (217) 782-3397

## Uncontaminated Soil Certification by Licensed Professional Engineer or Licensed Professional Geologist for Use of Uncontaminated Soil as Fill in a CCDD or Uncontaminated Soil Fill Operation LPC-663

Revised in accordance with 35 Ill. Adm. Code 1100, as amended by PCB R2012-009 (eff. Aug. 27, 2012)

This certification form is to be used by professional engineers and professional geologists to certify, pursuant to 35 Ill. Adm. Code 1100.205(a)(1)(B), that soil (i) is uncontaminated soil and (ii) is within a pH range of 6.26 to 9.0. If you have questions about this form, please telephone the Bureau of Land Permit Section at 217/524-3300.

This form may be completed online, saved locally, printed and signed, and submitted to prospective clean construction or demolition debris (CCDD) fill operations or uncontaminated soil fill operations.

### I. Source Location Information

(Describe the location of the source of the uncontaminated soil)

Project Name: OCC Skokie Learning Center - Elevator CCDD Office Phone Number, if available: \_\_\_\_\_

Physical Site Location (address, including number and street):

7701 Lincoln Avenue

City: Skokie State: IL Zip Code: 60077

County: Cook Township: 41N - Niles Township

Lat/Long of approximate center of site in decimal degrees (DD.ddddd) to five decimal places (e.g., 40.67890, -90.12345):

Latitude: 42.02129 Longitude: -87.74942

(Decimal Degrees)

(-Decimal Degrees)

Identify how the lat/long data were determined:

GPS  Map Interpolation  Photo Interpolation  Survey  Other

IEPA Site Number(s), if assigned: BOL: \_\_\_\_\_ BOW: \_\_\_\_\_ BOA: \_\_\_\_\_

Approximate Start Date (mm/dd/yyyy): \_\_\_\_\_ Approximate End Date (mm/dd/yyyy): \_\_\_\_\_

Estimated Volume of debris (cu. Yd.): \_\_\_\_\_

### II. Owner/Operator Information for Source Site

Site Owner

Site Operator

Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Street Address: \_\_\_\_\_

Street Address: \_\_\_\_\_

PO Box: \_\_\_\_\_

PO Box: \_\_\_\_\_

City: \_\_\_\_\_ State: \_\_\_\_\_

City: \_\_\_\_\_ State: \_\_\_\_\_

Zip Code: \_\_\_\_\_ Phone: \_\_\_\_\_

Zip Code: \_\_\_\_\_ Phone: \_\_\_\_\_

Contact: \_\_\_\_\_

Contact: \_\_\_\_\_

Email, if available: \_\_\_\_\_

Email, if available: \_\_\_\_\_

This Agency is authorized to require this information under Section 4 and Title X of the Environmental Protection Act (415 ILCS 5/4, 5/39). Failure to disclose this information may result in: a civil penalty of not to exceed \$50,000 for the violation and an additional civil penalty of not to exceed \$10,000 for each day during which the violation continues (415 ILCS 5/42). This form has been approved by the Forms Management Center.

Uncontaminated Soil Certification

**III. Basis for Certification and Attachments**

For each item listed below, reference the attachments to this form that provide the required information.

- a. A Description of the soil sample points and how they were determined to be sufficient in number and appropriately located 35 Ill. Adm. Code 1100.610(a):

The soil sample was taken from a geotechnical soil boring advanced within the area to be excavated and removed for off-site disposal. See ECS' "Environmental Services Supporting Soil Sampling and Analysis – OCC Skokie Learning Center - Elevator CCDD, 7701 Lincoln Avenue, Skokie, Illinois 60077" (ECS Project No. 53: 4419), dated August 23, 2023.

- b. Analytical soil testing results to show that soil chemical constituents comply with the maximum allowable concentrations established pursuant to 35 Ill. Adm. Code Part 1100, Subpart F and that the soil pH is within the range of 6.25 to 9.0, including the documentation of chain of custody control, a copy of the lab analysis; the accreditation status of the laboratory performing the analysis; and certification by an authorized agent of the laboratory that the analysis has been performed in accordance with the Agency's rules for the accreditation of environmental and the scope of the accreditation [35 Ill. Adm. Code 1100.201(g), 1100.205(a), 1100.610]:

The analyzed VOCs, SVOCs, PP Metals, Cyanide, Pesticides, and PCBs were found to be below maximum allowable concentrations in the area to be excavated. Additionally, pH was found to be within the acceptable range. See Eurofins Laboratory Report 500-238111-1.

**IV. Certification Statement, Signature and Seal of Licensed Professional Engineer or Licensed Professional Geologist**

I, Wilson Smith (name of licensed professional engineer or geologist)

certify under penalty of law that the information submitted, including but not limited to, all attachments and other information, is to the best of my knowledge and belief, true, accurate and complete. In accordance with the Environmental Protection Act [415 ILCS 5/22.51 or 22.51a] and 35 Ill. Adm. Code 1100.205(a), I certify that the soil from this site is uncontaminated soil. I also certify that the soil pH is within the range of 6.25 to 9.0. In addition, I certify that the soil has not been removed from the site as part of a cleanup or removal of contaminants. All necessary documentation is attached.

**Any person who knowingly makes a false, fictitious, or fraudulent material statement, orally or in writing, to the Illinois EPA commits a Class 4 felony. A second or subsequent offense after conviction is a Class 3 felony. (415 ILCS 5/44(h))**

Company Name: ECS Midwest, LLC  
Street Address: 1575 Barclay Boulevard  
City: Buffalo Grove State: IL Zip Code: 60089  
Phone: (847) 279-0366

Wilson Smith  
Printed Name:

Wilson Smith  
Licensed Professional Engineer or  
Licensed Professional Geologist Signature:

Aug 23, 2023  
Date:

